

1551
x0

ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS.

ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS

ON THE

ORIGIN AND HISTORY

OF

THE PEOPLE OF INDIA,

THEIR RELIGION AND INSTITUTIONS.

COLLECTED, TRANSLATED, AND ILLUSTRATED,

BY

J. MUIR, D.C.L., LL.D.

VOLUME FIRST.

MYTHICAL AND LEGENDARY ACCOUNTS OF THE ORIGIN OF CASTE, WITH AN
ENQUIRY INTO ITS EXISTENCE IN THE VEDIC AGE.

THIRD EDITION.



L O N D O N :

TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL.

1890.

(All rights reserved.)

*Na viśesho 'sti varṇānāṃ sarram brāhman idaṃ jagat !
Brahmaṇā pūrva-sṛiṣṭaṃ hi karmabhir varṇatūṃ gatam !*
Mahābhārata.

“There is no distinction of castes. This world, which, as created by Brāhmā, was at first entirely Brahmanic, has become divided into classes in consequence of men's works.”—See pages 138 and 140.

Salar Jung Library
WESTERN
SECTION.

PREFACE.

THE main object which I have proposed to myself in this volume is to collect, translate, and illustrate the principal passages in the different Indian books of the greatest antiquity, as well as in others of comparatively modern composition, which describe the creation of mankind and the origin of classes, or which tend to throw light upon the manner in which the caste system may have arisen.

I have not, however, hesitated to admit, when they fell in my way, such passages explanatory of the cosmogonic or mythological conceptions of the Indians as possess a general interest, although not immediately connected with the chief subject of the book.

Since the first edition appeared my materials have so much increased that the volume has now swelled to more than twice its original bulk. The second and third chapters are almost entirely new.¹ The fourteenth and fifteenth sections of the fourth chapter are entirely so. Even those parts of the book of which the sub-

¹ The contents of these chapters are not, however, absolutely new, but drawn from articles which I have contributed to the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* since the first edition of the volume appeared.

stance remains the same have been so generally expanded that comparatively little continues without some alteration of greater or less importance.

In order that the reader may learn at once what he may expect to find in the following pages, I shall supply *here a fuller and more connected summary of their contents than is furnished by the table which follows this preface.*

The Introduction (pp. 1-6) contains a very rapid survey of the sources from which our information on the subject of caste is to be derived, viz. the Vedic hymns, the Brāhmaṇas, the Epic poems, and the Purāṇas, in which the chronological order and the general characteristics of these works are stated.

The first chapter (pp. 1-160) comprehends the mythical accounts of the creation of man and of the origin of castes which are to be found in the Vedic hymns, in the Brāhmaṇas and their appendages, in the Rāmāyaṇa, the Mahābhārata, and the Purāṇas. The first section (pp. 7-15) contains a translation of the celebrated hymn called Purusha Sūkta, which appears to be the oldest extant authority for attributing a separate origin to the four castes, and a discussion of the question whether the creation there described was intended by its author to convey a literal or an allegorical sense. The second, third, and fourth sections (pp. 15-34) adduce a series of passages from the works standing next in chronological order to the hymns of the Rig-veda, which differ more or less widely from the account of the creation given in the Purusha Sūkta, and therefore justify the conclusion

that in the Vedic age no uniform orthodox and authoritative doctrine existed in regard to the origin of castes. In the fifth section (pp. 35–42) the different passages in Manu's Institutes which bear upon the subject are quoted, and shewn to be not altogether in harmony with each other. The sixth section (pp. 43–49) describes the system of great mundane periods called Yugas, Manvantaras, and Kalpas, as explained in the Purāṇas, and shews that no traces of these periods are to be found in the hymns of the Rig-veda, and but few in the Brāhmaṇas (compare p. 215 f.). Sections seventh and eighth (pp. 49–107) contain the accounts of the different creations, including that of the castes, and of the primeval state of mankind, which are given in the Vishṇu, Vāyu, and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, together with references (see pp. 52 ff., 68 ff.) to passages in the Brāhmaṇas, which appear to have furnished some of the germs of the various Puranic representations, and a comparison of the details of the latter with each other which proves that in some respects they are mutually irreconcilable (see pp. 65 ff., 102 ff.). The ninth section (pp. 107–114) adduces the accounts of Brahmā's passion for his daughter, which are given in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa and the Matsya Purāṇa. In the tenth section (pp. 114–122) are embraced such notices connected with the subject of this volume as I have observed in the Rāmāyaṇa. In one of the passages men of all the four castes are said to be the offspring of Manu, a female, the daughter of Daksha, and wife of Kaśyapa. The eleventh section contains a collection of texts from the Mahābhārata and its appendage the Hari-

vañśa, in which various and discrepant explanations are given of the existing diversity of castes, one of them representing all the four classes as descendants of Manu Vaivasvata (p. 126), others attributing the distinction of classes to an original and separate creation of each, which, however, is not always described as occurring in the same manner (pp. 128 ff. and 153); whilst others, again, more reasonably, declare the distinction to have arisen out of differences of character and action. This section, as well as the one which precedes it, also embraces accounts of the perfection which prevailed in the first yugas, and of the gradually increasing degeneracy which ensued in those that followed. The twelfth section (pp. 155–158) contains extracts from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, which coincide for the most part with those drawn from the other authorities. One text, however, describes mankind as the offspring of Aryaman and Mātṛikā; and another distinctly declares that there was originally but one caste. The thirteenth section (pp. 159 f.) sums up the results of the entire chapter, and asserts the conclusion that the sacred books of the Hindus contain no uniform or consistent theory of the origin of caste; but, on the contrary, offer a great variety of explanations, mythical, mystical, and rationalistic, to account for this social phenomenon.

The second chapter (pp. 160–238) treats of the tradition of the descent of the Indian nation from Manu. The first section (pp. 162–181) contains a series of texts from the Rig-veda, which speak of Manu as the progenitor of the race to which the authors of the hymns

belonged, and as the first institutor of religious rites ; and adverts to certain terms employed in the hymns, either to denote mankind in general or to signify certain tribal divisions. The second section (pp. 181-196) adduces a number of legends and notices regarding Manu from the Brāhmaṇas and other works next in order of antiquity to the hymns of the Rig-veda. The most interesting and important of these legends is that of the deluge, as given in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, which is afterwards (pp. 216 ff.) compared with the later versions of the same story found in the Mahābhārata and the Matsya, Bhāgavata and Agni Purāṇas, which are extracted in the third section (pp. 196-220). Some remarks of M. Burnouf and Professor Weber, on the question whether the legend of a deluge was indigenous in India, or derived from a Semitic source, are noticed in pp. 215 f. The fourth section adduces the legendary accounts of the rise of castes among the descendants of Manu and Atri, which are found in the Purāṇas ; and quotes a story given in the Mahābhārata about king Vitāhavya, a Kshattriya, being transformed into a Brāhman by the mere word of the sage Bhṛigu.

In the third chapter (pp. 239-295) I have endeavoured to shew what light is thrown by a study of the hymns of the Rig- and Atharva-vedas upon the mutual relations of the different classes of Indian society at the time when those hymns were composed. In the first section (pp. 240-265) the various texts of the Rig-veda in which the words brāhmān and brāhmaṇa occur are cited, and an attempt is made to determine the senses in which those

words are there employed. The result of this examination is that in none of the hymns of the Rig-veda, except the Purusha Sūkta, is there any distinct reference to a recognized system of four castes, although the occasional use of the word Brāhmaṇa, which is apparently equivalent to Brāhmā-putra, or “the son of a priest,” and other indications seem to justify the conclusion that the priesthood had already become a profession, although it did not yet form an exclusive caste (see pp. 258 f., 263 ff.). The second section (pp. 265–280) is made up of quotations from the hymns of the Rig-veda and various other later works, adduced to shew that persons who according to ancient Indian tradition were not of priestly families were in many instances reputed to be authors of Vedic hymns, and in two cases, at least, are even said to have exercised priestly functions. These two cases are those (1) of Devāpi (pp. 269 ff.), and (2) of Viśvāmitra, which is afterwards treated at great length in the fourth chapter. This section concludes with a passage from the Matsya Purāṇa, which not only speaks of the Kshattriyas Manu, Iḍa, and Purūravas, as “utterers of Vedic hymns” (*mantra-vādinah*); but also names three Vaiśyas, Bhalanda, Vandya, and Sankīrtti, as “composers of hymns” (*mantra-kṛitah*). The third section (pp. 280–289) shews by quotations from the Atharva-veda that at the period when those portions of that collection which are later than the greater part of the Rig-veda were composed, the pretensions of the Brāhmans had been considerably developed. The fourth section (pp. 289–295) gives an account of the opinions expressed by Professor

R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug regarding the origin of castes.

The fourth chapter (pp. 296-479) contains a series of legendary illustrations derived from the *Rāmāyana*, the *Mahābhārata*, and the *Purāṇas*, of the struggle which appears to have occurred in the early ages of Indian history between the *Brāhmans* and the *Kshattriyas*, after the former had begun to constitute an exclusive sacerdotal class, but before their rights had become accurately defined by long prescription, and when the members of the ruling caste were still indisposed to admit their pretensions. I need not here state in detail the contents of the first five sections (pp. 296-317) which record various legends descriptive of the ruin which is said to have overtaken different princes by whom the *Brāhmans* were slighted and their claims resisted. The sixth and following sections down to the thirteenth (pp. 317-426) contain, first, such references to the two renowned rivals, *Vasishṭha* and *Viśvāmitra* as are found in the hymns of the *Rig-veda*, and which represent them both as *Vedic* *rishis*; secondly, such notices of them as occur in the *Brāhmaṇas*, and shew that *Viśvāmitra*, as well as *Vasishṭha*, had officiated as a priest; and, thirdly, a series of legends from the *Rāmāyana* and *Mahābhārata* which describe the repeated struggles for superiority in which they were engaged, and attempt, by a variety of fictions, involving miraculous elements, to explain the manner in which *Viśvāmitra* became a *Brāhman*, and to account for the fact which was so distinctly certified by tradition (see pp. 361 ff.), but appeared so un-

accountable in later ages (see pp. 265 f., 364 ff.), that that famous personage, although notoriously a Kshattriya by birth, had nevertheless exercised sacerdotal functions.² The fourteenth section (pp. 426–430) contains a story from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa about king Janaka, a Rājanya, renowned for his stoical temperament and religious knowledge, who communicated theological instruction to

² As I have omitted in the body of the work to say anything of the views of Signor Angelo de Gubernatis about the purport of the Vedic texts relating to Vasishṭha and Visvāmitra, I may state here that this young Italian Sanskritist, in his Essay, entitled “*Fonti Vediche dell’Epoica*” (see the *Rivista Orientale*, vol. i. pp. 409 ff., 478 ff.), combats the opinion of Professor Roth that these passages refer to two historical personages, and to real events in which they played a part; and objects that Roth “took no account of the possibility that a legend of the heavens may have been based upon a human foundation” (p. 409). Signor de Gubernatis further observes that the 33rd and 53rd hymns of the third Maṇḍala of the Rīg-veda “may perhaps have been recited at a later period in connection with some battle which really occurred, but that the fact which they celebrate seems to be much more ancient, and to be lost in a very remote myth” (p. 410). Visvāmitra, he considers, is one of the appellations of the sun, and as both the person who bears this name, and Indra are the sons of Kuśika, they must be brothers (p. 412). See, however, the remarks in p. 347 f. of this volume on the epithet Kausika as applied to Indra). Sudās, according to Signor de Gubernatis (p. 413), denotes the horse of the sun, or the sun himself, while Vasishṭha is the greatest of the Vasus, and denotes Agni, the solar fire, and means, like Visvāmitra, the sun (p. 483). Signor de Gubernatis is further of opinion (pp. 414, 478, 479, and 483) that both the 33rd and 53rd hymns of the third, and the 18th hymn of the seventh Maṇḍala are comparatively modern; that the names of Kuśikas and Visvāmitras claimed by the authors of the two former, are fraudulently assumed; while the last (the 18th hymn of the seventh Maṇḍala) was composed by a sacerdotal family who claimed Vasishṭha as its founder. I will only remark that the theory of Signor de Gubernatis appears to me to be an improbable one. But the only point of much importance for my own special purpose is that ancient Indian tradition represents both Vasishṭha and Visvāmitra as real personages, the one of either directly divine, or of sacerdotal descent, and the other of royal lineage. They may, however, have been nothing more than legendary creations, the fictitious eponyms of the families which bore the same name.

some eminent Brāhmans, and became a member of their class. In the fifteenth section (pp. 431–436) two other instances are adduced from the same Brāhmaṇa and from two of the Upanishads, of Kshattriyas who were in possession of truths unknown to the Brāhmans, and who, contrary to the usual rule, became the teachers of the latter. *The sixteenth section (pp. 436–440) contains an extract from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa regarding king Viśvantara who, after at first attempting to prevent the Syāparṇa Brāhmans from officiating at his sacrifice, became at length convinced by one of their number of their superior knowledge, and accepted their services.* In the seventeenth section (pp. 440–442) a story is told of Matanga, the spurious offspring of a Brāhman woman by a man of inferior caste, who failed, in spite of his severe and protracted austerities, to elevate himself (as Viśvāmitra had done) to the rank of a Brāhman. The eighteenth section (pp. 442–479) contains a series of legends, chiefly from the Mahābhārata, regarding the repeated exterminations of the Kshattriyas by the warlike Brāhman Paraśurāma of the race of Bhṛigu, and the ultimate restoration of the warrior tribe, and a variety of extravagant illustrations of the supernatural power of the Brāhmans, related by the god Vāyu to king Arjuna, who began by denying the superiority of the priests, but was at length compelled to succumb to the overwhelming evidence adduced by his aerial monitor.

In the fifth chapter (pp. 480–488) I have given some account of the opinions entertained by Manu, and the

authors of the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas, regarding the origin of the tribes dwelling within, or adjacent to, the boundaries of Hindustan, but not comprehended in the Indian caste-system.

The sixth and concluding chapter (pp. 489-504) contains the Puranic accounts of the parts of the earth exterior to Bhāratavarsha, or India, embracing first, the other eight Varshas or divisions of Jambudvīpa, the central continent ; secondly, the circular seas and continents (dvīpas) by which Jambudvīpa is surrounded ; and, thirdly, the remoter portions of the mundane system.

The Appendix (pp. 505-515) contains some supplementary notes.

As in the previous edition, I have been careful to acknowledge in the text and notes of this volume the assistance which I have derived from the writings of the different Sanskrit Scholars who have treated of the same subjects. It will, however, be well to specify here the various publications to which I have been indebted for materials. In 1858, I wrote thus : " It will be seen at once that my greatest obligations are due to Professor H. H. Wilson, whose translation of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, with abundant and valuable notes, derived chiefly from the other Purāṇas, was almost indispensable to the successful completion of such an attempt as the present." In this second edition also I have had constant occasion to recur to Wilson's important work, now improved and enriched by the additional notes of the editor Dr. Fitz-edward Hall. It is to his edition, so far as it has yet ap-

peared, that my references have been made. I acknowledged at the same time the aid which I had received from *M. Langlois' French translation of the Harivaṁśa*, and from *M. Burnouf's French translation of the first nine books of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa*, which opened up an easy access to the contents of the original works. A large amount of materials has also been supplied to me, either formerly or for the preparation of the present edition, by Mr. Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*; by Professor C. Lassen's *Indian Antiquities*; Professor Rudolph Roth's *Dissertations on the Literature and History of the Vedas*, and contributions to the *Journal of the German Oriental Society*, and to *Weber's Indische Studien*, etc.; Professor Weber's numerous articles in the same *Journals*, and his *History of Indian Literature*; Professor Max Müller's *History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, *Chips from a German Workshop*, article on the *Funeral rites of the Brāhmans*, etc.; Professor Benfey's *Glossary of the Sāma Veda*, and translations of *Vedic hymns*; Dr. Haug's text and translation of the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*: while much valuable aid has been derived from the written communications with which I have been favoured by Professor Aufrecht, as well as from his *Catalogue of the Bodleian Sanskrit MSS.* I am also indebted to Professor Müller for pointing out two texts which will be found in the *Appendix*, and to Professor Goldstücker for copying for me two passages of *Kumārila Bhaṭṭa's Mīmamsā-vārttika*, which are printed in the same place, and for making some corrections in my translations of them.

I formerly observed that at the same time my own researches had “enabled me to collect a good many texts which I had not found elsewhere adduced ;” and the same remark applies to a considerable portion of the new matter which has been adduced in the present edition.

CONTENTS.

PAGES.

v.—xvi. PREFACE.

- 1—6. INTRODUCTION, CONTAINING A PRELIMINARY SURVEY OF THE SOURCES OF INFORMATION.
- 7—160. CHAPTER I.—MYTHICAL ACCOUNTS OF THE CREATION OF MAN, AND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE FOUR CASTES.
- 7— 15. SECT. I. Ninetieth hymn of the tenth Book of the Rig-veda Sanhitā, called Purusha-Sūkta, or the hymn to Purusha.
- 15— 16. SECT. II. Quotation from the Taittirīya Sanhitā, vii. 1, 1, 4 ff.
- 17— 22. SECT. III. Citations from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, the Vāyasaneī Sanhitā, and the Atharva-veda.
- 22— 34. SECT. IV. Further quotations from the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, Sanhitā, and Āraṇyaka, and from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa.
- 35— 42. SECT. V. Manu's account of the origin of castes.
- 43— 49. SECT. VI. Account of the system of yugas, manvantara, and kalpas, according to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa and other authorities.
- 49— 73. SECT. VII. Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, with some passages from the Brāhmaṇas, containing the germs of the Puranic statements.
- 74—107. SECT. VIII. Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas.

I formerly observed that at the same time my own researches had “enabled me to collect a good many texts which I had not found elsewhere adduced ;” and the same remark applies to a considerable portion of the new matter which has been adduced in the present edition.

CONTENTS.

PAGES.

v.—xvi. PREFACE.

1—6. INTRODUCTION, CONTAINING A PRELIMINARY SURVEY OF
THE SOURCES OF INFORMATION.

7—160. CHAPTER I.—MYTHICAL ACCOUNTS OF THE CREATION OF
MAN, AND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE FOUR CASTES.

7— 15. SECT. I. Ninetieth hymn of the tenth Book of the Rig-
veda Sanhitā, called Purusha-Sūkta, or the hymn to
Purusha.

15— 16. SECT. II. Quotation from the Taittirīya Sanhitā, vii. 1,
1, 4 ff.

17— 22. SECT. III. Citations from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, the
Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, the Vāyasaneī Sanhitā, and the
Atharva-veda.

22— 34. SECT. IV. Further quotations from the Taittirīya Brāh-
maṇa, Sanhitā, and Āraṇyaka, and from the Śatapatha
Brāhmaṇa.

35— 42. SECT. V. Manu's account of the origin of castes.

43— 49. SECT. VI. Account of the system of yugas, manvantaras,
and kalpas, according to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa and other
authorities.

49— 73. SECT. VII. Account of the different creations, including
that of the castes, according to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, with
some passages from the Brāhmaṇas, containing the germs
of the Puranic statements.

74—107. SECT. VIII. Account of the different creations, including
that of the castes, according to the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya
Purāṇas.

PAGES.	
107—114.	SECT. IX. Legend of <i>Brahmā</i> and his daughter, according to the <i>Aitareya Brāhmaṇa</i> , and of <i>Satarūpā</i> , according to the <i>Matsya Purāṇa</i> .
114—122.	SECT. X. Quotations from the <i>Rāmāyaṇa</i> on the creation, and on the origin of castes.
122—155.	SECT. XI. Quotations from the <i>Mahābhārata</i> and <i>Hari-vaṁśa</i> on the same subjects, and on the four yugas.
155—158.	SECT. XII. Citations from the <i>Bhāgavata Purāṇa</i> on the creation and on the origin of castes.
159—160.	SECT. XIII. Results of this chapter.
161—238.	CHAPTER II. — TRADITION OF THE DESCENT OF THE INDIAN RACE FROM MANU.
162—181.	SECT. I. On <i>Manu</i> as the progenitor of the <i>Āryan</i> Indians and the institutor of religious rites, according to the hymns of the <i>Rig-veda</i>
181—196.	SECT. II. Legend of <i>Manu</i> and the deluge from the <i>Satapatha Brāhmaṇa</i> , and other notices regarding <i>Manu</i> from the <i>Satapatha</i> , <i>Aitareya</i> , and <i>Taittirīya Brāhmaṇas</i> , the <i>Taittirīya Sanhitā</i> , and the <i>Chāndogya Upanishad</i> .
196—220.	SECT. III. Extracts from the <i>Mahābhārata</i> and the <i>Matsya</i> , <i>Bhāgavata</i> , and <i>Agni Purāṇas</i> regarding <i>Manu</i> , and the deluge; and comparison of the versions of this legend adduced in this and the preceding section.
220—238.	SECT. IV. Legendary accounts of the origin of castes among the descendants of <i>Manu</i> and <i>Atri</i> , according to the <i>Purāṇas</i> .
239—295.	CHAPTER III. — ON THE MUTUAL RELATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF INDIAN SOCIETY, ACCORDING TO THE HYMNS OF THE RIG- AND ATHARVA-VEDAS.
240—265.	SECT. I. On the signification of the words <i>brāhmān</i> and <i>brāhmaṇa</i> , etc., in the <i>Rig-veda</i> .
265—280.	SECT. II. Quotations from the <i>Rig-veda</i> , the <i>Nirukta</i> , the <i>Mahābhārata</i> and other works, to show that according to ancient Indian tradition persons not of priestly families were authors of Vedic hymns, and exercised priestly functions.
280—289.	SECT. III. Texts from the <i>Atharva-veda</i> , illustrating the progress of Brahmanical pretensions.
289—295.	SECT. IV. Opinions of Professor R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug regarding the origin of caste among the Hindus.

PAGES.
 296—400. CHAPTER IV.—EARLY CONTESTS BETWEEN THE BRĀH-
 MANS AND THE KSHATTRIYAS.

- 296—298. SECT. I. *Manu's summary of refractory and submissive monarchs.*
- 298—306. SECT. II. *Legend of Veṇa.*
- 306—307. SECT. III. *Legend of Purūravas.*
- 307—315. SECT. IV. *Story of Nahusha.*
- 316—317. SECT. V. *Story of Nimi.*
- 317—337. SECT. VI. *Vasishṭha, according to the Rig-veda and later works.*
- 337—371. SECT. VII. *Viśvāmitra, according to the Rig-veda, Aitareya Brāhmaṇa and later authorities; earlier and later relations of priestly families and the other classes.*
- 371—375. SECT. VIIa. *Do the details in the last two sections enable us to decide in what relation Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra stood to each other as priests of Sudās?*
- 375—378. SECT. VIII. *Story of Triśanku.*
- 379—388. SECT. IX. *Legend of Hariśchandra.*
- 388—397. SECT. X. *Contest of Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra, and entrance of the latter into the Brāhman caste, according to the Mahābhārata.*
- 397—411. SECT. XI. *The same legend, and those of Triśanku, and Ambarīsha, according to the Rāmāyaṇa, with a further story about Viśvāmitra from the Mahābhārata.*
- 411—414. SECT. XII. *Other accounts from the Mahābhārata of the way in which Viśvāmitra became a Brāhman.*
- 414—426. SECT. XIII. *Legend of Saudāsa, and further story of the rivalry of Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra, according to the Mahābhārata, with an extract from the Rāja Tarangīnī.*
- 426—430. SECT. XIV. *Story from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa about king Janaka becoming a Brāhman, with extracts from the Mahābhārata about the same prince.*
- 431—436. SECT. XV. *Other instances in which Brāhmans are said to have been instructed in divine knowledge by Kshatriyas.*
- 436—440. SECT. XVI. *Story of king Viśvantara and the Syāparṇa Brāhmans.*
- 440—442. SECT. XVII. *Story of Matanga, who tried in vain to raise himself to the position of a Brāhman.*

PAGES.	
442—479.	SECT. XVIII. Legend of the Brāhman Paraśurāma, the exterminator of the Kshattriyas, according to the Mahābhārata and the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, with a series of narratives from the former work illustrating the superhuman power of the Brāhmins.
480—488.	CHAPTER V. RELATION OF THE BRAHMANICAL INDIANS TO THE NEIGHBOURING TRIBES, ACCORDING TO MANU, THE MAHĀBHĀRATA, AND THE PURĀṆAS.
489—504.	CHAPTER VI. PURANIC ACCOUNTS OF THE PARTS OF THE EARTH EXTERIOR TO BHĀRATAVARSHA, OR INDIA.
505—516.	APPENDIX, CONTAINING SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES.
517—532.	INDEX.

ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS.

FIRST.

INTRODUCTION

CONTAINING A PRELIMINARY SURVEY OF THE SOURCES OF
INFORMATION.

I PROPOSE in the present volume to give some account of the traditions, legends, and mythical narratives which the different classes of ancient Indian writings contain regarding the origin of mankind, and the classes or castes into which the Hindus have long been distributed. In order to ascertain whether the opinions which have prevailed in India on these subjects have continued fixed and uniform from the earliest period, or whether they have varied from age to age, and if so, what modifications they have undergone, it is necessary that we should first of all determine the chronological order of the various works from which our information is to be drawn. This task of classification can, as far as regards its great outlines, be easily accomplished. Although we cannot discover sufficient grounds for fixing with any precision the dates of these different books, we are perfectly able to settle the order in which the most important of those which are to form the basis of this investigation were composed. From a comparison of these several literary records, it will be found that the Hindus, like all other civilized nations, have passed through various stages of development,—social, moral, religious, and intellectual. The ideas and beliefs which are exhibited in their oldest documents, are not the same as those which we encounter in their later writings.

The principal books to which we must look for information on the subjects of our enquiry are the Vedas, including the Brāhmaṇas and Upanishads, the Sūtras, the Institutes of Manu, and the Itihāsas and Purāṇas. Of these different classes of works, the Vedas are allowed by all competent enquirers to be by far the most ancient.

There are, as every student of Indian literature is aware, four Vedas,—the Rig-veda, the Sāma-veda, the Yajur-veda, and the Atharva-veda. Each of the collections of works known as a Veda consists of two parts, which are called its *mantra* and its *brāhmaṇa*.¹ The Mantras are either metrical hymns, or prose forms of prayer. The Rig-veda and the Sāmaveda consist only of mantras of the former description. The Brāhmaṇas contain regulations regarding the employment of the mantras, and the celebration of the various rites of sacrifice, and also embrace certain treatises called Āraṇyakas, and others called Upanishads or Vedāntas (so called from their being the concluding portions of each Veda), which expound the mystical sense of some of the ceremonies, and discuss the nature of the godhead, and the means of acquiring religious knowledge with a view to final liberation.

The part of each Veda which contains the mantras, or hymns, is called its Sanhitā.² Thus the Rig-veda Sanhitā means the collection of hymns belonging to the Rig-veda. Of the four collections of hymns, that belonging to the last-mentioned Veda, which contains no less than 1,017 of these compositions, is by far the most important for historical purposes. Next in value must be reckoned those hymns of the Atharva-veda, which are peculiar to that collection, another portion of which, however, is borrowed, in most cases, verbatim, from the Rig-veda.³

¹ Sāyana says in his commentary on the Rigveda (vol. p. i. p. 4): *Mantra-brāhmaṇātmutkam tūved aduṣṭam lakṣaṇam | ata eva Āpastambo yujna-paribhāṣāyām evāha 'mantra-brāhmaṇayor veda-nāmadheyani'* | "The definition (of the Veda) as a book composed of *mantra* and *brāhmaṇa*, is unobjectionable. Hence Āpastamba says in the Yajnaparibhāṣā, 'Mantra and Brāhmaṇa have the name of Veda.'"

² This definition applies to all the Sanhitās, except that of the Taittirīya, or Black Yajur, Veda, in which Mantra and Brāhmaṇa are combined. But even this Sanhitā had a separate Brāhmaṇa connected with it. See Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 350, and Weber's *Indische Literaturgeschichte*, p. 83. The general character of the Vājasaneyi and Atharva Sanhitās is not affected by the fact that the last section of the former is an Upanishad, and that the fifteenth book of the latter has something of the nature of a Brāhmaṇa.

³ For further information on the Vedas, reference may be made to Professor Max Müller's *Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, *passim*, and also to vols. ii. iii. and iv. of the present work.

From this succinct account of the contents of the Vedas, it is clear that the Mantras must constitute their most ancient portions, since the Brāhmanas, which regulate the employment of the hymns, of necessity pre-suppose the earlier existence of the latter. On this subject the commentator on the Taittirīya, or Black Yajur-veda, Sanhitā thus expresses himself (p. 9 of the Calcutta edition):—

Yadyapi mantrabrāhmaṇātmake vedas tathāpi brāhmaṇasya mantravyākṛhāna-rūpatvād mantrā evādaṁ samāmnātāḥ | “Although the Veda is formed both of Mantra and Brāhmaṇa, yet as the Brāhmaṇa consists of an explanation of the Mantras, it is the latter which were at first recorded.”⁴

The priority of the hymns to the Brāhmanas is accordingly attested by the constant quotations from the former which are found in the latter.⁵ Another proof that the hymns are far older than any other portion of Indian literature is to be found in the character of their language. They are composed in an ancient dialect of the Sanskrit, containing many words of which the sense was no longer known with certainty in the age of Yāska, the author of the Nirukta,⁶ and many grammatical forms which had become obsolete in the time of the great grammarian Pāṇini, who refers to them as peculiar to the hymns (*chhandas*).⁷ A third argument in favour of the greater antiquity of the mantras is supplied by the fact that the gods whom they represent as the most prominent objects of adoration, such as Indra and Varuṇa, occupy but a subordinate position in the Itihāsas and Purāṇas, whilst others, viz., Viṣṇu and Rudra, though by no means the most important deities of the hymns, are exalted to the first rank, and assume a different character, in the Puranic pantheon.⁸

⁴ See also the passage quoted from the Nirukta in p. 174 of the 2nd vol. of this work, and that cited from Sāyaṇa in p. 195 of the same vol. Compare the following passage of the Muṇḍaka Upanishad, i. 2, 1 : *Tad etat satyam mantreshu karmāṇi varayo yāny apasyams tāni tretāyām bahudhā santatāni* | “This is true : the rites which the rishis saw (i.e. discovered by revelation) in the hymns—these rites were in great variety celebrated in the Tretā (age).”

⁵ See vol. ii. of this work, p. 195, and the article on the “Interpretation of the Veda” in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. ii. new series, pp. 316 ff.

⁶ See vol. ii. of this work, pp. 178 ff. and my article on the “Interpretation of the Veda” in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. ii. new series, pp. 323 ff.

⁷ See vol. ii. of this work, pp. 216 ff.

⁸ See vol. ii. of this work, 212 ff. and vol. iv. 1, 2, and *passim*.

On all these grounds it may be confidently concluded that the mantras, or hymns, of the Rig-veda are by far the most ancient remains of Indian literature. The hymns themselves are of different periods, some being older, and some more recent. This is shown not only by the nature of the case,—as it is not to be supposed that the whole of the contents of such a large national collection as the Rig-veda Saṃhitā should have been composed by the men of one, or even two, generations,—but also by the frequent references which occur in the mantras themselves to older rishis, or poets, and to older hymns.⁹ It is, therefore, quite possible that a period of several centuries may have intervened between the composition of the oldest and that of the most recent of these poems. But if so, it is also quite conceivable that in this interval considerable changes may have taken place in the religious ideas and ceremonies, and in the social and ecclesiastical institutions of the people among whom these hymns were produced, and that some traces of these changes may be visible on comparing the different hymns with each other.

No sufficient data exist for determining with exactness the period at which the hymns were composed. Professor Müller divides them into two classes, the Mantras or more recent hymns, which he supposes may have been produced between 1000 and 800 years,—and the older hymns, to which he applies the name of Chhandas, and which he conceives may have been composed between 1200 and 1000 years,—before the Christian era. Other scholars are of opinion that they may be even older (see Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.*, p. 572, and the Preface to the 4th Vol. of the same author's edition of the Rig-veda, pp. iv.-xiii). This view is shared by Dr. Haug, who thus writes in his introduction to the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*, p. 47: "We do not hesitate, therefore, to assign the composition of the bulk of the Brāhmaṇas to the years 1400-1200 B.C.; for the Saṃhitā we require a period of *at least* 500-600 years, with an interval of about two hundred years between the end of the proper Brāhmaṇa period. Thus we obtain for the bulk of Saṃhitā the space from 1400-2000; the oldest hymns and sacrificial formulas may be a few hundred years more ancient still, so that we would fix the very commencement of Vedic literature between 2000-2400 B.C."

⁹ See vol. ii. of this work, pp. 206 ff., and vol. iii. pp. 116 ff., 121 ff.

Next in order of time to the most recent of the hymns come, of course, the Brāhmaṇas. Of these (1) the Aitareya and Sāṅkhāyana are connected with the Rig-veda; (2) the Tāṇḍya, the Panchaviṃśa and the Chhāndogya with the Sāma-veda; (3) the Taittirīya with the Taittirīya or Black Yajur-veda; (4) the Satapatha with the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā or White Yajur-veda; and (5) the Gopatha with the Atharva-veda.¹⁰ These works, written in prose, prescribe, as I have already intimated, the manner in which the Mantras are to be used and the various rites of sacrifice to be celebrated. They also expound the mystical signification of some of the ceremonies, and adduce a variety of legends to illustrate the origin and efficacy of some of the ritual prescriptions. That in order of age the Brāhmaṇas stand next to the Mantras is proved by their simple, antiquated, and tautological style, as well as by the character of their language, which, though approaching more nearly than that of the hymns, to classical or Pāṇinean Sanskrit, is yet distinguished by certain archaisms both of vocabulary and of grammatical form which are unknown to the Itihāsas and Purāṇas.¹¹ The most recent portions of the Brāhmaṇas are the Aranyakas and Upanishads, of which the character and contents have been already summarily indicated. The remaining works which form the basis of our investigations come under the designation of Smṛiti, as distinguished from that of Śruti, which is applied to the Mantras, Brāhmaṇas, Aranyakas, and Upanishads.

The term Smṛiti includes (1) the Vedāṅgas, such as the Nirukta of Yāska, (2) the Sūtras or aphorisms, *śrauta* and *grihya*, or sacrificial and domestic, etc., (3) the Institutes of Manu, (4) the Itihāsas and Purāṇas. To the class of Itihāsas belong (1) the Rāmāyaṇa (said to be the work of Valmīki), which contains an account in great part, at least, fabulous, of the adventures of Rāma, and the Mahābhārata, which describes the wars and adventures of the Kurus and Pāndus, and embraces also a great variety of episodes and numerous mythological narratives, as well as religious, philosophical, and political discussions, which are interwoven with, or interpolated in, the framework of the poem. This

¹⁰ For further details on these Brāhmaṇas, the reader may consult Professor Max Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 315 ff.; Professor Weber's *Indische Literaturgeschichte*, and *Indische Studien*; and Dr. Haug's *Aitareya Brahmana*.

¹¹ See, for example, the *S. P. Br.* xi. 5, 1, 15; and the *Taitt. Sanhitā*, ii. 2, 10, 2, and ii. 6, 7, 1.

work is said to be the production of Vyāsa, but its great bulk, its almost encyclopædic character, and the discrepancies in doctrine which are observable between its different parts, lead inevitably to the conclusion that it is not the composition of a single author, but has received large additions from a succession of writers, who wished to obtain currency and authority for their several opinions by introducing them into this great and venerated repository of national tradition.¹²

The Purāṇas are commonly said to be eighteen in number, in addition to certain inferior works of the same description called Upapurāṇas. For an account of these books and a summary of their contents, I must refer to the late Professor H. H. Wilson's introduction to his translation of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.¹³

In treating the several topics which are to be handled in this volume, I propose in each case to adduce, first, any texts bearing upon it which may be found in the hymns of the R̥g-veda; next, those in the Brāhmaṇas and their appendages; and, lastly, those occurring in any of the different classes of works coming under the designation of Smṛiti. By this means we shall learn what conceptions or opinions were entertained on each subject by the oldest Indian authors, and what were the various modifications to which these ideas were subjected by their successors.

¹² On the Rāmāyaṇa and Mahābhārata, see Professor Monier Williams's "Indian Epic Poetry," which contains a careful analysis of the leading narrative of each of the poems.

¹³ See also the same author's analyses of the contents of the Vishṇu, Vāyu, Agni, and Brāhma-vaiṣṇava Purāṇas in the "Gleanings of Science," published in Calcutta, and those of the Brāhma and Pādma Purāṇas in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, No. ix (1838) and No. x. (1839).

CHAPTER I.

MYTHICAL ACCOUNTS OF THE CREATION OF MAN, AND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE FOUR CASTES.

It will be seen from the different texts to be adduced in this chapter, that from a very early period the Indian writers have propounded a great variety of speculations regarding the origin of mankind, and of the classes or castes into which they found their own community divided. The most commonly received of these explanations is the fable which represents the Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, to have been separately created from the head, the breast or arms, the thighs, and the feet of the Creator. Of this mythical account no trace is to be found in any of the hymns of the Rig-veda, except one, the Purusha Sūkta.

Although for reasons which will be presently stated, I esteem it probable that this hymn belongs to the most recent portion of the Rig-veda, it will be convenient to adduce and to discuss it first, along with certain other texts from the Brāhmaṇas, Itihāsas, and Purāṇas, which professedly treat of the origin of mankind and of caste, before we proceed to examine the older parts of the hymn-collection, with the view of ascertaining what opinion the authors of them appear to have entertained in regard to the earliest history of their race, and to the grounds of those relations which they found subsisting between the different classes of society contemporary with themselves.

SECT. I.—90th Hymn of the 10th Book of the Rig-veda Sanhitā, called
Purusha Sūkta, or the hymn to Purusha.

This celebrated hymn contains, as far as we know, the oldest extant passage which makes mention of the fourfold origin of the Hindu race.

In order to appreciate the character of this passage, we must consider it in connection with its context. I therefore quote the whole of the hymn :¹⁴

R. V. x. 90. 1. *Sahasra-śīrshā Purushaḥ sahasrākṣaḥ sahasrapāt | sa bhūmim viśvato vṛitrā atyatiśṭhad daśaṅgulaḥ |* 2. *Purushaḥ credaṁ sarvaṁ yad bhūtaṁ yachcha bhāryam | utāmrītatrasycśāno yad annenātirohati |* 3. *Etārān asya mahimā ato jyāyāmscha Pūrushaḥ | pādo 'sya viśvā bhūtāni tripād asyāmṛitaṁ divi |* 4. *Tripād ūrdhva ud ait Pūrushaḥ pādo 'syachābharat punaḥ | tato vishvaṁ vyakrāmat sāśanānaśane abhi |* 5. *tasmād Vīrāḥ ajāyata Vīrājo adhi Pūrushaḥ | sa jāto aty arichyata paśchād bhūmim atho puraḥ |* 6. *Yat Purushena haviṣhā devāḥ yajnam atavata | vasanto asyāsīd ājyam grīshmaḥ idhmaḥ śarad haviḥ |* 7. *Tām yajnam barhishi praukshan Purusham jātam agrataḥ | tena devāḥ ayajanta sādhyāḥ ṛishayaś cha ye |* 8. *Tasmād yajnāt sarrahutaḥ sambhṛitam pṛishadājyam | paśūn tāmś chakre vāyavyān āranyān grāmyāś cha ye |* 9. *Tasmād yajnāt sarrahutaḥ ṛichaḥ sāmāni jajñire | chhandāmsi jajñire tasmād yajus tasmād ajāyata |* 10. *Tasmād āsvā ajāyanta ye ke cha ubhayādutaḥ | gāro ha jajñire tasmāt tasmāj jātāḥ ajāyayāḥ |* 11. *Yat Purusham vi adadhuh katidhā vi akalpayan | mukham kim asya kau bāhū kū ūrū pādū uchyete |* 12. *Brāhmaṇo 'sya mukham āsīd bāhū rājanyaḥ kṛitaḥ | ūrū tad asya yad vaiśyaḥ padbhyām śūdro ajāyata |* 13. *chandramāḥ manaso jātāś chakṣhoḥ sūryo ajāyata | mukhād Indrāś cha Agniś cha prānād Vāyur ajāyata |* 14. *Nābhyāḥ āsīd antariksham śīrshṇo dyauḥ samavarttata | padbhyām bhūmir diśaḥ śrotrāt tathā lokān akalpayan |* 15. *Saptāsyāsan paridhayaś triḥ sapta samidhaḥ kṛitāḥ | devāḥ yad yajnam tanvānāḥ abadhnan Purusham paśum |* 16. *Yajnaena yajnam ayajanta devāś tūni dharmāni pratha-*

¹⁴ The Purusha Sūkta is also found in the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā of the White Yajur-veda (31. 1-16) and in the Atharva-veda (19. 6. 1 ff.) See Colebrooke's Miscellaneous Essays, i. 167 f., and note in p. 309 (or pp. 104, and 197, of Messrs. Williams and Norgate's edition); Burnouf's Bhāgavata Purāna, vol. i. Preface, pp. cxiii. ff.; Wilson's Preface to his translation of the Rigveda, vol. i. p. xlv.; Professor Roth's remarks in the Journal of the German Oriental Society, i. pp. 78 f.; Müller in Bunsen's Philosophy of Univ. History, vol. i. p. 344; Müller's Anc. Sank. Lit., pp. 570 f.; Professor Weber's translation in Indische Studien ix. p. 6; and my own translation, notes and remarks in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, pp. 353 ff., and for 1866, pp. 282 f.

māni āsan | te ha nākam mahimānaḥ sachanta yatra pūrve sādhyāḥ santi devāḥ |

"1. Purusha has a thousand heads,¹⁵ a thousand eyes, a thousand feet. On every side enveloping¹⁶ the earth, he overpassed¹⁷ (it) by a space of ten fingers. 2. Purusha himself is this whole (universe), whatever has been and whatever shall be. He is also the lord of immortality, since (or, when) by food he expands.¹⁸ 3. Such is his greatness, and Purusha is superior to this. All existences are a quarter of him; and three-fourths of him are that which is immortal in the sky.¹⁹ 4. With three quarters Purusha mounted upwards. A quarter of him was again produced here. He was then diffused everywhere over things which eat and things which do not eat. 5. From him was born Virāj, and from Virāj, Purusha.²⁰ When born, he extended beyond the earth, both behind and before. 6. When the gods performed a sacrifice with Purusha as the oblation, the spring was its butter, the summer its fuel, and the autumn its (accompanying) offering. 7. This victim, Purusha, born in the beginning, they immolated on

¹⁵ The Atharva-veda (vix. 6, 1) reads *sahasra-bāhuḥ*, "having a thousand arms," the transcriber, perhaps, taking the verse literally, and considering that a being in human form, if he had a thousand eyes and a thousand feet, ought only to have five hundred heads, and not a thousand as in the text of the Rig-veda.

¹⁶ For *epitrā* in the R. V. the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā, 31. 1, reads *spritrā*, which seems to mean nearly the same.

¹⁷ The word is *atyatishṭhat*. Compare the S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiii. 6, 1, 1, and *atishṭhāvānaḥ* in S'. P. B. iv. 5, 4, 1, 2. Professor Weber renders *atyatishṭhat* "occupies" (Indische Studien, ix. 5).

¹⁸ The sense of this is obscure. Instead of *yad annenātirohati*, the A. V. reads *yad anyenābharat saha*, ("that which," or, "since he) was with another."

¹⁹ Compare A. V. x. 8, 7: *ardhena viśvam bhūvanam jajāna yad asya ardham kṛta tad babhūva*: "with the half he produced the whole world; what became of the (other) half of him?" See also *ibid.* v. 13.

²⁰ This sentence is illustrated by R. V. x. 72, 5, where it is said, *Aditer Dakṣo ajāyata Dakṣād u Aditih pari* | "Aditi was born from Daksha and Daksha from Aditi"—a text on which Yāska remarks (Nirukta, xi. 23): *tat katham upapadyeta | samāna-janmānau syātām iti | api vā deva-dharmena itaretara-janmānau syātām itaretatera-prakṛitī* | "how can this be possible? They may have had a common birth; or, conformably with their nature as deities, they may have been produced from one another, and possess the properties of one another." Compare A. V. 13. 4. 29 ff., where Indra is said to have been produced from a great many other gods, or entities, and they reciprocally from him. In regard to Virāj, compare the notes on the verse before us in my article on the "Progress of the Vedic religion," etc., in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, p. 354.

the sacrificial grass. With him the gods, the Sādhyas,²¹ and the rishis sacrificed. 8. From that universal sacrifice were provided curds and butter. It formed those aerial ²² (creatures) and animals both wild and tame. 9. From that universal sacrifice sprang the rich and sūman verses, the metres, and the yajush. 10. From it sprang horses, and all animals with two rows of teeth; kine sprang from it; from it goats and sheep. 11. When (the gods) divided Purusha, into how many parts did they cut him up? what was his mouth? what arms (had he)? what (two objects) are said (to have been) his thighs and feet? 12. The Brāhman was his mouth;²³ the Rājanya was made his arms; the being (called) the Vaiśya, he was his thighs;²⁴ the Sūdra sprang from his feet. 13. The moon sprang from his soul (*manas*), the sun from his eye, Indra and Agni from his mouth, and Vāyu from his breath.²⁵ 14. From his navel arose the air, from his head the sky, from his feet the earth, from his ear the (four) quarters: in this manner (the gods) formed the worlds. 15. When the gods, performing sacrifice, bound Purusha as a victim, there were seven sticks (stuck up) for it

²¹ See on the Sādhyas, Professor Weber's note, Ind. St. ix. 6 f., and the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, p. 395, note.

²² See, however, Vāj. Sanh. xiv. 30, to be quoted below.

²³ Compare the Kaushītaki Brāhmaṇa Upanishad, ii. 9: *atha paurṇamāsyām pūrastūch chandramasam dṛśyamānam upatishṭheta etayā eva ōṣitā* "somo rājāsi vichakshano pancha mukho'si prajāpatih | brāhmaṇas te ekam mukham | tena mukhena rājno'tsi | tena mukhena mām annādam kuru | rājā te ekam mukham | tena mukhena viśo'tsi | tena mukhena mām annādam kuru | śyenas te ekam mukham | ityādi | which is thus translated by Mr. Cowell: "Next on the day of the full moon let him in this same way adore the moon when it is seen in front of him (saying), 'thou art Soma, the brilliant, the wise, the five-mouthed, the lord of creatures. The Brāhman is one mouth of thine, with that mouth thou eatest kings, with that mouth make me to eat food. The king is one mouth of thine, with that mouth thou eatest common men, with that mouth make me to eat food. The hawk is one mouth of thine,' etc. The fourth mouth is fire, and the fifth is in the moon itself. I should prefer to render the words *somo rājā'si*, 'thou art king Soma,'—"king" being a frequent designation of this god in the Brāhmaṇas. See also M. Bh. iii. 12,962, where Viṣṇu is introduced as saying in the same mystical way: *Brahma vaktram bhujau kshatram urū me saṁsthitāḥ viśaḥ | pādau śūdrāḥ bhavānti vikramena kramena cha* | "The Brahman is my mouth; the Kshattra is my arms; the Viśas are my thighs; these Śūdras with their vigour and rapidity are my feet."

²⁴ Instead of *urū*, "thighs," the Atharva-veda, xix. 6, 6, reads *madhyam*, "middle."

²⁵ The Vāj. S. xxxi. 13, has a different and singular reading of the last half verse: *śrotrād vāyur cha prāṇas cha mukhād agnir ajīyata* | "From his ear came Vāyu and (breath) and from his mouth Agni."

(around the fire), and thrice seven pieces of fuel were made. 16. With sacrifice the gods performed the sacrifice. These were the earliest rites. These great powers have sought the sky, where are the former Sādhyas, gods."²⁶

I have above (p. 7) intimated an opinion that this hymn does not belong to the most ancient portion of the Rig-veda. This view is, however, controverted by Dr. Haug, who, in his tract on "the origin of Brāhmanism" (published at Poona in 1863), p. 5, writes as follows: "The few scholars who have been engaged in the study of the Vedas unanimously regard this hymn as a very late production of Vedic poetry; but there is no sufficient evidence to prove that. On the contrary, reasons might be adduced to shew that it is even old. The mystical character of the hymn is no proof at all of its late origin. Such allegorical hymns are to be met with in every book of the collection of the mantras, which goes by the name of Rig-veda samhitā. The Rishis, who were the authors of these hymns, delighted in such speculations. They chiefly were suggested to them by the sacrificial rites, which they daily were performing. According to the position which is assigned to it in the Yajur-veda (where it is found among the formulas referring to the human sacrifice), the hymn appears to have been used at the human sacrifices. That, at the earliest period of the Vedic time, human sacrifices were quite common with the Brahmins, can be proved beyond any doubt. But the more eminent and distinguished among their leaders soon abandoned the practice as revolting to human feelings. The form of the sacrifice, however, seems to have been kept for a long time; for the ritual required at that occasion is actually in the Yajur-veda; but they only tied men of different castes and classes to the sacrificial posts, and released them afterwards, sacrificing animals instead of them."

If it could be satisfactorily shewn that this hymn, in the same form as we now possess it, existed contemporaneously with the barbarous practice of human sacrifices which Dr. Haug believes to have at one time prevailed in India, we should, no doubt, have in this circumstance a strong proof of its antiquity. But if it was merely adopted as a part of the ceremonial at a later period, when the immolation of human

²⁶ This verse occurs also in R. V. i. 164. 50, and is quoted in Nirukta, xii. 14. See the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, p. 396, note, already referred to.

beings had ceased to be otherwise than formal and nominal, and animals were substituted as the actual victims, the evidence of its remote antiquity is greatly weakened.

If we now compare the Purusha Sūkta with the two hymns (162 and 163) of the first Mandala of the Rig-veda, it will, I think, be apparent that the first is not adapted to be used at a literal human sacrifice in the same manner as the last two are to be employed at the immolation of a horse. There are, no doubt, some mystical passages in the second of these two hymns, as in verse 3, where the horse is identified with Yama, Āditya, and Trita; and “in the last section of the Taittirīya Yajurveda the various parts of the horse’s body are described as divisions of time and portions of the universe: ‘morning is his head; the sun his eye; the air his breath; the moon his ear,’” etc. (Colebrooke’s Essays, i. 62).²⁷ But the persons who officiate at the sacrifice, as referred to in these hymns, are ordinary priests of the ancient Indian ritual,—the hotṛi, adhvaryu, āvayaj, etc. (i. 162, 5); and details are given of the actual slaughter of the animal (i. 162, 11). The Purusha Sūkta, however does not contain the same indications of the literal immolation of a human victim. In it the sacrifice is not offered to the gods, but by the gods (verses 6, 7, 15, 16); no human priests are mentioned; the division of the victim (v. 11) must be regarded, like its slaughter (v. 7), as the work of the deities only. And the Purusha mentioned in the hymn could not well have been regarded as an ordinary man, as he is identified with the universe (v. 2), and he himself, or his immolation, is represented as the source of the creation (vv. 8, 10, 13, 14), and of the Vedas (v. 9).

As compared with by far the largest part of the hymns of the Rig-veda, the Purusha Sūkta has every character of modernness both in its diction and ideas. I have already observed that the hymns which we find in this collection are of very different periods. This, I believe, is not disputed.²⁸ The authors themselves, as we have seen, speak of newer and older hymns. So many as a thousand compositions of this description could scarcely have been produced within a very short space of time, and there is no reason to suppose that the literary activity of the ancient Hindus

²⁷ Compare the commencement of the Brihadāranyaka Upanishad.

²⁸ See Dr. Haug’s own remarks (quoted above, p. 4) on the period when the hymns were composed.

was confined to the period immediately preceding the collection of the hymns. But if we are to recognize any difference of age, what hymns can we more reasonably suppose to be the oldest than those which are at once archaic in language and style, and naive and simple in the character of their conceptions? and, on the other hand, what compositions can more properly be set down as the most recent than those which manifest an advance in speculative ideas, while their language approaches to the modern Sanskrit? These latter conditions seem to be fulfilled in the Purusha Sūkta, as well as in hymns x. 71 and 72, x. 81 and 82, x. 121, and x. 129.

On this subject Mr. Colebrooke states his opinion as follows (Miscellaneous Essays i. 309, note): "That remarkable hymn (the Purusha Sūkta) is in language, metre, and style, very different from the rest of the prayers with which it is associated. It has a decidedly more modern tone; and must have been composed after the Sanscrit language had been refined, and its grammar and rhythm perfected. The internal evidence which it furnishes serves to demonstrate the important fact that the compilation of the Vedas, in their present arrangement, took place after the Sanscrit tongue had advanced from the rustic and irregular dialect in which the multitude of hymns and prayers of the Veda was composed, to the polished and sonorous language in which the mythological poems, sacred and prophane (*purānas* and *cāryas*), have been written."

Professor Max Müller expresses himself in a similar sense (Anc. Sansk. Lit., p. 570 f.): "There can be little doubt, for instance, that the 90th hymn of the 10th book . . . is modern both in its character and in its diction. It is full of allusions to the sacrificial ceremonials, it uses technical philosophical terms, it mentions the three seasons in the order of *Vasanta*, spring; *Grīshma*, summer; and *S'arad*, autumn; it contains the only passage in the Rig-veda where the four castes are enumerated. The evidence of language for the modern date of this composition is equally strong. *Grīshma*, for instance, the name for the hot season, does not occur in any other hymn of the Rig-veda; and *Vasanta* also, the name of spring, does not belong to the earliest vocabulary of the Vedic poets. It occurs but once more in the Rig-veda (x. 161. 4), in a passage where the three seasons are mentioned in the order of *S'arad*, autumn; *Hemanta*, winter; and *Vasanta*, spring."

Professor Weber (*Indische Studien*, ix. 3) concurs in this view. He observes: "That the Purusha Sūkta, considered as a hymn of the Rig-veda, is among the latest portions of that collection, is clearly perceptible from its contents. The fact that the Sāma-sanhitā has not adopted any verse from it, is not without importance (compare what I have remarked in my *Academical Prelections*, p. 63). The Naigeya school, indeed, appears (although it is not quite certain),²⁹ to have extracted the first five verses in the seventh prapāṭhaka of the first Archika, which is peculiar to it."

We shall see in the following chapter that the word *brāhmaṇa* occurs but rarely in the Rig-veda Sanhitā, while *brahman*, "a priest," from which the former is derived, is of constant occurrence. From this circumstance also, it may be reasonably concluded that the hymns in which the derivative occurs are among the latest. The same remark may be made of the word *vaiśya*, as compared with *viś*.³⁰

Mr. Colebrooke's opinion of the character of the Purusha Sūkta is given in the following passage of his "*Miscellaneous Essays*" (vol. i. p. 161, note; or p. 105 of Williams & Norgate's ed. of 1858); "I think it unnecessary to quote from the commentary the explanation of this curious passage of the Vedas as it is there given, because it does not really elucidate the sense; the allegory is for the most part sufficiently obvious.

In his tract on "on the origin of Brahmanism," p. 4, Dr. Haug thus remarks on verses 11 and 12: "Now, according to this passage, which is the most ancient and authoritative we have on the origin of Brahmanism, and caste in general, the Brahman has not come from the mouth of this primary being, the Purusha, but the mouth of the latter became the Brahmanical caste, that is to say, was transformed into it. The passage has, no doubt, an allegorical sense. Mouth is the seat of speech. The allegory thus points out that the Brahmins are teachers and instructors of mankind. The arms are the seat of strength. If the two

²⁹ See on this subject Weber's foot-note, p. 3.

³⁰ Professor Aufrecht informs me that the word *vaiśya* does not occur in any other hymn of the Rig-veda but the Purusha Sūkta; only once in the Atharva-veda, v. 17, 9; and not at all in the Vāj. Sanh., except in the Purusha Sūkta. The same scholar remarks, as another proof of the comparatively late date of the Purusha Sūkta, that it is the only hymn which refers to the four different kinds of Vedic compositions *rich, samān, chhandas,* and *yajush.*

arms of the Purusha are said to have been made a Kshattriya (warrior), that means, then, that the Kshattriyas have to carry arms to defend the empire. That the thighs of the Purusha were transformed into the Vaiśya means that, as the lower parts of the body are the principal repository of food taken, the Vaiśya caste is destined to provide food for the others. The creation of the Shudra from the feet of the Purusha, indicates that he is destined to be a servant to the others, just as the foot serves the other parts of the body as a firm support."

But whether the writer of the hymn intended it to be understood allegorically or not, it conveys no distinct idea of the manner in which he supposed the four castes to have originated. It is, indeed, said that the S'udra sprang from Purusha's feet; but as regards the three superior castes and the members with which they are respectively connected, it is not quite clear which (*i.e.*, the castes or the members) are to be taken as the subjects and which as the predicates, and consequently, whether we are to suppose verse 12 to declare that the three castes were the three members, or, conversely, that the three members were, or became, the three castes.

But whatever may be the sense of the passage, it is impossible to receive it as enunciating any fixed doctrine of the writers of what is called the Vedic age in regard to the origin of the four castes; since we find, if not in the mantras or hymns, at least in the Brāhmaṇas (which, as we have seen in page 2, are esteemed by orthodox Indian writers as being equally with the hymns a part of the Veda), not only (1) texts which agree with the Purusha Sūkta, but also (2) various other and discrepant accounts of the manner in which these classes were separately formed, as well as (3) third a class of narratives of the creation, in which the production of the human race is described without allusion to any primordial distinction of castes.

To the first of these classes (*viz.*, that of texts which coincide more or less exactly with the Purusha Sūkta) belongs the following passage from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā.

SECT. II.—*Quotation from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, vii. 1. 1. 4 ff.*

*Prajāpatir akāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa mukhatas brīṛitaṁ nir-
amīṁita | tam Agnir devatā 'nrasūyata gāyatrī ohlandro rathantaram*

sāma brāhmaṇo manushyānām ajāḥ paśūnām | tasmāt te mukhyāḥ mukhato hy asṛijyanta | uraso bāhubhyām panchadaśam niramimīta | tam Indro devatā 'nvasṛijyata trishṭup chhando bṛihat sāma rājanyo manushyānām ariḥ paśūnām | tasmāt te vīryūranto vīryād hy asṛijyanta | madhy-ataḥ saptadaśam niramimīta | tam Viśvedevāḥ devatāḥ anvasṛijyanta jagatī chhando vairūpam sāma vaiśyo manushyānām gūvaḥ paśūnām | tasmāt te ādyā annadhūnād hy asṛijyanta | tasmād bhūyāṁso 'nye-bhyaḥ | bhūyishṭhāḥ hi devatāḥ anvasṛijyanta | pataḥ ekaviṁśam niramimīta | tam anusṭup chhando 'nvasṛijyata vairūjam sāma śūdro manushyānām aśvaḥ paśūnām | tasmāt tau bhūta-saṅkrāmināv aśvaś cha śūdraś cha | tasmāt śūdro yajne 'navakṛipto na hi devatāḥ anvasṛijyanta | tasmāt pādāv upajīvataḥ | patto hy asṛijyetām |

“Prajāpati desired, ‘may I propagate.’ He formed the Trivṛit (*stoma*) from his mouth. After it were produced the deity Agni, the metre Gāyatrī, the Sāman (called) Rathantara, of men the Brāhmaṇ, of beasts the goats. Hence they are the chief (*mukhyāḥ*), because they were created from the mouth (*mukhataḥ*). From (his) breast, from (his) arms, he formed the Panchadaśa (*stoma*). After it were created the god Indra, the Trishṭubh metre, the Sāman (called) Bṛihat, of men the Rājanya, of beasts the sheep. Hence they are vigorous, because they were created from vigour. From (his) middle he formed the Saptadaśa (*stoma*). After it were created the gods (called) the Viśvedevas, the Jagatī metre, the Sāman called the Vairūpa, of men the Vaiśya, of beasts kine. Hence they are to be eaten, because they were created from the receptacle of food. Wherefore they are more numerous than others, for the most numerous deities were created after (the Saptadaśa). From his foot he formed the Ekaviṁśa (*stoma*). After it were created the Anusṭubh metre, the Sāman called Vairāja, of men the Śūdra, of beasts the horse. Hence these two, both the horse and the Śūdra, are transporters of (other) creatures. Hence (too) the Śūdra is incapacitated for sacrifice, because no deities were created after (the Ekaviṁśa). Hence (too) these two subsist by their feet, for they were created from the foot.”

SECT. III.—Citations from the *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa*, the *Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa*, the *Vājasaneyi Sanhitā*, and the *Atharva-veda*.

The following texts belong to the second class—i.e., that of those which recognize a distinct origination of the castes, but describe their creation differently from the Purusha Sūkta :

S. P. Br. ii. 1, 4, 11 ff.—“*Bhūr*” *iti vai Prajāpatir imām ajanayata “bhuraḥ” ity antariksham “sva” itī divam | etāvad vai idam sarvaṁ yāvad ime lokāḥ | sarveṇa eva ādhīyate | “bhūr” itī vai Prajāpatir brahma ajanayata “bhuraḥ” itī kshattram “sva” itī viśam | etāvad vai idam sarvaṁ yāvad brahma kshattram viṣ | sarveṇa eva ādhīyate | “bhūr” itī vai Prajāpatir ātmānam ajanayata “bhuraḥ” itī prajān “sva” itī paśūn | etāvad vai idam sarvaṁ yāvad ātmā prajāḥ paśavaḥ | sarveṇa eva ādhīyate |*

“(Uttering) ‘bhūḥ,’ Prajāpati generated this earth. (Uttering) ‘bhuraḥ,’ he generated the air, and (uttering) ‘svaḥ,’ he generated the sky. This universe is co-extensive with these worlds. (The fire) is placed with the whole. Saying ‘bhūḥ,’ Prajāpati generated the Brahman; (saying) ‘bhuraḥ,’ he generated the Kshattria; (and saying) ‘svaḥ,’ he generated the Viś. All this world is so much as the Brahman, Kshattria, and Viś. The fire is placed with the whole. (Saying) ‘bhūḥ,’ Prajāpati generated himself; (saying) ‘bhuraḥ,’ he generated offspring; (saying) ‘svaḥ,’ he generated animals. This world is so much as self, offspring, and animals. (The fire) is placed with the whole.”

Taitt. Br. iii. 12, 9, 2 —*Sarvaṁ hedam brahmaṇā haiva spīṣṭam | ṛigbhyo jātam vaiśyam varṇam āhuḥ | yajurvedam kshattriyasyāhur yonim | sāmavedo brāhmaṇānām prasūtiḥ | pūrve pūrvebhyo vaca etad ūchuḥ |*

“This entire (universe) has been created by Brahma. Men say that the Vaiśya class was produced from ṛich-verses. They say that the Yajur-veda is the womb from which the Kshattriya was born. The Sāma-veda is the source from which the Brāhmins sprang. This word the ancients declared to the ancients.”

To complete his account of the derivation of the castes from the

Vedas, the author had only to add that the Sūdras had sprung from the Atharvāṅgirasas (the Atharva-veda); but he perhaps considered that to assign such an origin to the servile order would have been to do it too great an honour.

Vājasaneyā Sanhitā, xiv. 28 ff. (= Taittirīya Sanhitā, iv. 3, 10, 1).—*ekayā astuvata prajāḥ adhīyanta Prajāpatir adhipatir āsīt | tisribhir astuvata brahma asṛijyanta Brahmanaspatir adhipatir āsīt | pañchabhir astuvata bhūtāny asṛijyanta Bhūtānāmpatir adhipatir āsīt | saptabhir astuvata sapta ṛishayo 'sṛijyanta Dhātū adhipatir āsīt | navabhir astuvata pitaro 'sṛijyanta Aditir adhipatny āsīt | ekādaśabhir astuvata ṛitaro 'sṛijyanta ārtavūḥ adhipatayaḥ āsan | trayodaśabhir astuvata māsā asṛijyanta samvatsaro 'dhipatir āsīt | pañchadaśabhir astuvata kshattram asṛijyanta Indro 'adhipatir āsīt | saptadaśabhir astuvata paśavo 'sṛijyanta Bṛihaspatir adhipatir āsīt | navadaśabhir astuvata sūdrāryāv asṛijyetām chorātre adhipatnī āstām | ekaviṁśatyā astuvata ekaśaphūḥ paśavo 'sṛijyanta Varuṇo 'dhipatir āsīt | trayoviṁśatyā astuvata kshudrāḥ paśavo 'sṛijyanta Pūshā adhipatir āsīt | panchaviṁśatyā astuvata aranyūḥ paśavo 'sṛijyanta Vāyur adhipatir āsīt | saptaviṁśatyā astuvata dyāvuprithivī vyaitām | Vasavo Rudrā Adityāḥ anuryūyan | te eva adhipatayaḥ āsan | navaviṁśatyā astuvata vanaspatayo 'sṛijyanta Somo 'dhipatir āsīt | ekatriṁśatā astuvata prajā asṛijyanta yavās cha ayavās cha adhipatayaḥ āsan | trayastriṁśatā astuvata bhūtāny asūmyan Prajāpatiḥ Parameshṭhī adhipatir āsīt |*

“He lauded with one. Living beings were formed: Prajāpati was the ruler. He lauded with three: the Brahman (Brāhman) was created: Brahmanaspati was the ruler. He lauded with five: existing things were created: Bhūtānāmpati was the ruler. He lauded with seven: the seven rishis were created: Dhātṛi was the ruler. He lauded with nine: the Fathers were created: Aditi was the ruler. He lauded with eleven: the seasons were created: the Ārtavas were the rulers. He lauded with thirteen: the months were created: the year was the ruler. He lauded with fifteen: the Kshattra (the Kshattriya) was created: Indra was the ruler. He lauded with seventeen: animals were created: Bṛihaspati was the ruler. He lauded with nineteen: the Sūdra and the Arya (Vaiśya) were created: day and night were the rulers. He lauded with twenty-one: animals with undivided hoofs were created: Varuna was the ruler. He lauded with twenty-three:

small animals were created: Pūshan was the ruler. He lauded with twenty-five: wild animals were created: Vāyu was the ruler (compare R.V. x. 90, 8). He lauded with twenty-seven: heaven and earth separated: Vasus, Rudras, and Ādityas separated after them: they were the rulers. He lauded with twenty-nine: trees were created: Soma was the ruler. He lauded with thirty-one: living beings were created: The first and second halves of the month³¹ were the rulers. He lauded with thirty-one: existing things were tranquillized: Prajāpati Parameśthin was the ruler." This passage is explained in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa viii. 4, 3, 1 ff.

The following text is of a somewhat mystical description; but appears to intimate a distinction in nature between the different castes corresponding to that of the gods with whom they are associated:

S. P. Br. xiv. 4, 2, 23 (= Bṛihadāranyaka Upanishad, i. 4, 11 ff. (p. 235).—*Brahma vai idam agre āsīd ekam eva* | *tad ekam san na vyabhavat* | *| tat śreyo rūpam aty asṛijata kshattram yāny etāni devatrā kshattrāni* *Indro Varunaḥ Somo Rudraḥ Parjanya Yamo Mrityur Īśānaḥ iti* | *tasmāt kshattrāt param nāsti* | *tasmād brāhmaṇaḥ kshattriṇyād adhastād upāste* *rājasūye kshattre eva tad yaśo dadhāti* | *sā eshā kshattrasya yonir yad* *brahma* | *tasmād yadyapi rājā paramatām gachhati brahma eva antataḥ* *upaniśrayati svām yonim* | *yah u ha enaṁ hinasti svām sa yonim ṛichhati* | *sa pāpīyān bhavati yathā śreyānsam hiṁsivā* | 24. *Sa na eva vyabhavat* | *sa viśam asṛijata yāny etāni deva-jātāni gaṇāśaḥ ākhyāyante vasavo* *rudrāḥ ādityāḥ viśvedevāḥ marutaḥ iti* | 25. *Sa na eva vyabhavat* | *sa śaudram varṇam asṛijata pūshanam* | *iyam vai pūshā iyam hi idam* *sarvaṁ pushyati yad idam kincha* | 26. *Sa na eva vyabhavat* | *tat śreyo* *rūpam aty asṛijata dharmam* | *tad etat kshattrasya kshattram yad dhar-* *maḥ* | *tasmād dharmāt param nāsti* | *atho abalīyān balīyāmsam āsām-* *śate dharmena yathā rājñā evam* | *yo vai sa dharmāḥ satyam vai tat* | *tasmāt satyam vadantam āhur "dharmam vadati" iti* | *dharmam vā*

³¹ The Taittirīya Sanhitā reads *yāvāḥ* and *ayāvāḥ* (instead of *yāvāḥ* and *ayāvāḥ* as in the Vajrasaneyi Sanhitā) and in another passage, v. 3, 4, 5 (as I learn from Prof. Aufrecht), explains these terms to mean respectively months and half months (*māsā vai yāvāḥ ardhmāsāḥ ayāvāḥ*), whilst the commentator on the V. S. understands them to mean the first and second halves of the month, in accordance with the S. P. B. viii. 4, 3, 18, and viii. 4, 2, 11 (*pūrvapakṣā vai yāvāḥ aparapakṣa ayāvāḥ* | *te hi idam sarvaṁ yuvate chāyuvate cha*) | Prof. Aufrecht also points out that *yāva* is explained in Kūtyayana's Śrauta Sūtras, iv. 11, 8, as equivalent to *yavamayam apūpam*, "a cake of barley."

vadantam "satyam vadati" iti | etad hy eva etad ubhayam bhavati |
 27. *Tad etad brahma kshattram viṣ sūdraḥ | tad Agnīnā eva deveshu*
brahmābhavad brāhmaṇo manushyeshu kshattriyena kshattriyo vaiśyena
vaiśyah sūdreṇa sūdraḥ | tasmād Agnāv eva deveshu lokam ichhante
brāhmaṇe manushyeshu | etābhyām hi rūpabhyām brahma abhavat |

23. "Brahma (here, according to the commentator, existing in the form of Agni, and representing the Brāhman caste³²) was formerly this (universe), one only. Being one, it did not develope. It energetically created an excellent form, the Kshattrā, viz., those among the gods who are powers (*kshattrāni*), Indra, Varuṇa, Soma, Rudra, Parjanya, Yama, Mrityu, Īśāna. Hence nothing is superior to the Kshattrā. Therefore the Brāhman sits below the Kshattriya at the rājasūya-sacrifice; he confers that glory on the Kshattrā (the royal power).³³ This, the Brahma, is the source of the Kshattrā. Hence, although the king attains supremacy, he at the end resorts to the Brahma as his source. Whoever destroys him (the Brāhman) destroys his own source. He becomes most miserable, as one who has injured a superior. 24. He did not develope. He created the Viś—viz., those classes of gods who are designated by troops, Vasus, Rudras, Ādityas, Viśvedevas, Maruts. 25. He did not develope. He created the Sūdra class, Pūshan. This earth is Pūshan: for she nourishes all that exists. 26. He did not develope. He energetically created an excellent form, Justice (*Dharma*). This is the ruler (*kshattrā*) of the ruler (*kshattrā*), namely, Justice. Hence nothing is superior to justice. Therefore the weaker seeks (to overcome) the stronger by justice, as by a king. This justice is truth. In consequence they say of a man who speaks truth, 'he speaks

³² *Atra yad ātma-sabdenoktaṁ śraśṭṛi Brahma tad Agnīn śraśṭvā agre Agni-rūpāpannam Brāhmaṇa-jāty-abhimūnavad asmin vūkye Brahma-sabdenābhidhīyate |*

³³ This rendering of the last few words is suggested by Professor Aufrecht. The commentators understand them to mean that the Brāhman gives the king their own glory (that of being a Brahman): and they refer to a formula by which at the rājasūya-sacrifice the king, after addressing the priest as Brāhman, is addressed in return with the word "Thou, king, art a Brāhmān" (*tvam rājan brahmāsi*), etc. See the Taittirīya Saṁhitā i. 8, 16, 1, where the commentator remarks. "As in common life domestic priests and others, sitting below a king seated on his throne after his return from conquering a foreign territory, address him with many benedictions and eulogies, so here too service is presented. By this benedictory service the power of cursing and showing kindness existing in the Brāhman is transferred to the king." Reference is then made to the passage before us, as noticing this custom.

justice;’ or of a man who is uttering justice, ‘he speaks truth.’ For this is both of these. 27. This is the Brahma, Kshattria, Viś, and Sūdra. Through Agni it became Brahma among the gods, the Brāhman among men, through the (divine) Kshattriya a (human) Kshattriya, through the (divine) Vaiśya a (human) Vaiśya, through the (divine) Sūdra a (human) Sūdra. Wherefore it is in Agni among the gods and in a Brāhman among men, that they seek after an abode.”

Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, i. 2, 6, 7.—*Daivyo vai varṇo brāhmaṇaḥ | asuryyo śūdraḥ*. “The Brāhman caste is sprung from the gods; the Sūdra from the Asuras.”

Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 2, 3, 9.—*Kāmam eva dūru-pātreṇa duhyāt | śūdraḥ eva na duhyāt | asato vai esha sambhūto yat śūdraḥ | ahavir eva tad ity āhur yat śūdro dogdhi iti | agnihotraṁ eva na duhyāt śūdraḥ | tad hi na utpunanti | yadā khalu vai pavitram atyeti atha tad havir iti |*

him at his will milk out with a wooden dish. But let not a milk it out. For this Sūdra has sprung from non-existence.

They say that that which a Sūdra milks out is no oblation. Let not a Sūdra milk out the Agnihotra. For they do not purify that. When that passes beyond the filter, then it is an oblation.”

Atharva-veda, iv. 6, 1.—*Brāhmaṇo jajne prathamō daśaśiršo dasāyāḥ | sa somam prathamāḥ papau sa chakārārasaṁ viśam* | “The Brāhman was born the first, with ten heads and ten faces. He first drank the soma; he made poison powerless.”

As the description (which is, perhaps, a fragment of a longer account), stops short here, we are left in the dark as to the author’s ideas about the creation of the other castes. It would have interested us to know how many heads and faces he would have assigned to the other three castes. The student of Indian poetry is aware that the giant Rāvana is represented in the Rāmāyaṇa both as a Brāhman and as having ten heads.

As implying a separate origination of the Rājanya caste, the following text also may find a place here:

Taittirīya Sanhitā, ii. 4, 13, 1.—*Devā vai rājanyāj jūyamānād abibhayuḥ | tam antar eva santaṁ dāmnā ’paumbhan | sa vai esho ’pobdho jūyate yad rājanyo | yad vai esho ’napobdho jūyeta vrittrān ghaṁś charet | yaṁ kūmayeta rājanyam “anapobdho jūyeta vrittrān ghaṁś chared” iti tasmai etam aindrā-bārhaspatyaṁ charuṁ nirvapet | aindro vai rājanyo*

brahma Bṛihaspatiḥ | brahmanā eva enaṁ dāmno 'pombhanād muñchati | hiraṇmayaṁ dāma dakṣiṇā sūkṣhād eva enaṁ dāmno 'pombhanād muñchati | "The gods were afraid of the Rājanya when he was in the womb. They bound him with bonds when he was in the womb. Consequently this Rājanya is born bound. If he were born unbound he would go on slaying his enemies. In regard to whatever Rājanya any one desires that he should be born unbound, and should go on slaying his enemies, let him offer for him this Aindra-Bārhaspatya oblation. A Rājanya has the character of Indra, and a Brahman is Bṛihaspati. It is through the Brahman that anyone releases the Rājanya from his bond. The golden bond, a gift, manifestly releases from the bond that fetters him."

In the following text of the Atharva-veda, xv. 8, 1, a new account is given of the origin of the Rājanyas :

So 'rajyata tato rājanyo 'jūyata |

"He (the Vṛātya) became filled with passion : thence sprang the Rājanya."

And in the following paragraph (A. V. xv. 9, 1 ff) we have the same origin ascribed to the Brāhman also :

Tad yasya evaṁ vidvān vrātyo rājno 'tithir grihān āgachhet śreyāṁsam enam ātmano mānayet | tathā kshattrāya nāvṛiśchate tathā rāshṭrāya nāvṛiśchate | ato vai brahma cha kshattram cha udatiśṭhatām | te abhrātām "kam praviśāva" iti |

"Let the king to whose house the Vṛātya who knows this, comes as a guest, cause him to be respected as superior to himself. So doing he does no injury to his royal rank, or to his realm. From him arose the Brahman (Brāhman) and the Kshattrā (Kshattriya). They said, 'Into whom shall we enter,' etc."

SECT. IV.—*Further Quotations from the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, Sanhitā, and Āraṇyaka, and from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa.*

The following passages belong to the third of the classes above adverted to, as in the descriptions they give of the creation, while they refer to the formation of men, they are silent on the subject of any separate origination of castes :

Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, ii. 3, 8, 1.—*Prajāpatir akāmayata "prajāyeya"*
iti | sa tapo 'lapyata | so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa haritaḥ śyāvo 'bhavat |
tasmāt strī antaratnī harinī satī śyāvā bhavati | sa vijāyamāno garbhena
atūmyat | sa tāntaḥ kṛishṇa-śyāvo 'bhavat | tasmāt tāntaḥ kṛishṇaḥ
śyāvo bhavati | tasya asur eva ajivat | 2. Tena asunū asurān asṛijata | tad
asurānam asuratvaṁ | ya evam asurānām asuratvaṁ veda asunū eva
bhavati | na enam asur jahāti | so 'surān sṛishṭvā pitū iva amanyata |
tad anu pitṛin asṛijata | tat pitṛinām pitṛitvam | ya evam pitṛinām
pitṛitvam veda pitū iva eva svānūm bhavati (3) yanty asya pitaro havam |
sa pitṛin sṛishṭvā 'manasyat | tad anu manushyān asṛijata | tad manu-
shyānām manushyatvam | yaḥ evam manushyānām manushyatvaṁ veda
manasvī eva bhavati na enam manur jahāti | tasmai manushyān sasṛi-
jānaya divā devatrā abhavat | tad anu devān asṛijata | tad devānām
devatvam | ya evam devānām devatvaṁ veda divā ha eva asya devatrā
bhavati | tāni vai etāni chatvāri ambhāṁsi derāḥ manushyāḥ pitaro
'surāḥ | teshu sarveshu ambho nabhaḥ iva bhavati |

"Prajapati desired, 'may I propagate.' He practised austerities. He became pregnant. He became yellow-brown.³⁴ Hence a woman when pregnant, being yellow, becomes brown. Being pregnant with a foetus, he became exhausted. Being exhausted, he became blackish-brown. Hence an exhausted person becomes blackish-brown. His breath became alive. 2. With that breath (*asu*) he created Asuras. Therein consists the Asura-nature of Asuras. He who thus knows this Asura-nature of Asuras becomes a man possessing breath. Breath does not forsake him. Having created the Asuras, he regarded himself as a father. After that he created the Fathers (Pitris). That constitutes the fatherhood of the Fathers. He who thus knows the fatherhood of the Fathers, becomes as a father of his own: (3) the Fathers resort to his oblation. Having created the Fathers, he reflected. After that he created men. That constitutes the manhood of men. He who knows the manhood of men, becomes intelligent. Mind³⁵ does not forsake him. To him, when he was creating men, day appeared in the heavens. After that he created the gods. This constitutes the godhead of the gods. To him who thus knows the godhead of the gods, day appears in

³⁴ *Nīla-śveta-mīra-varṇaḥ*, "of a mixed blue and white colour," says the Commentator.

³⁵ *Manuḥ* = *manana-saktiḥ*, "the power of thinking." Comm.

the heavens. These are the four streams,³⁰ viz., gods, men, Fathers, and Asuras. In all of these water is like the air."

Satapatha Brahmana, vii. 5, 2, 6.—*Prajāpatir vai idam agre āsīd ekaḥ eva | so 'kāmayata "annam sṛijeya prajāyeya" iti | sa prāṇebhyaḥ eva adhi paśūn niramimīta manasaḥ puruṣam cakshuṣho 'śvam prāṇād gām śrotrādavim vācho 'jam | tad yad enān prāṇebhyo 'dhi niramimīta tasmād āhuḥ "prāṇāḥ paśavaḥ" iti | mano vai prāṇānām prathamam | tad yad manasaḥ puruṣam niramimīta tasmād āhuḥ "puruṣaḥ prathamāḥ paśūnām vīryavattamaḥ" iti | mano vai sarve prāṇāḥ | manasi hi sarve prāṇāḥ pratishṭhitāḥ | tad yad manasaḥ puruṣam niramimīta tasmād āhuḥ "puruṣaḥ sarve paśavaḥ" iti | puruṣasya hy ete sarve bhavanti |*

"Prajāpati was formerly this (universe), one only. He desired, 'let me create food, and be propagated.' He formed animals from his breaths, a MAN from his soul, a horse from his eye, a bull from his breath, a sheep from his ear, a goat from his voice. Since he formed animals from his breaths, therefore men say, 'the breaths are animals.' The soul is the first of the breaths. Since he formed a man from his soul, therefore they say, 'man is the first of the animals, and the strongest.' The soul is all the breaths; for all the breaths depend upon the soul. Since he formed man from his soul, therefore they say, 'man is all the animals;' for all these are man's."

S. P. Br. xiv. 4, 2, 1 (= Bṛihadāranyaka Upanishad, p. 125).—*Ātmā eva idam agre āsīt puruṣa-vidhaḥ | so 'nūvīkshya na anyad ātmano 'paśyat | "so 'ham asmi" ity agre vyāharat | tato 'ham-nāmā abhavat | tasmād apy etarhy āmantrito "ham ayam" ity eva agre uktvā atha anyad nāma prabrūte yad aśya bhavati | 2. Sa yat pūrvo 'smāt sarvasmāt sarvān pūrpmanaḥ aushat tasmāt puruṣaḥ | oshati ha vai sa tam yo 'smāt pūrvam bubhūṣhati yaḥ evaṁ veda | 3. Eo 'bibhet | tasmād ekākī bibhēti |*

³⁰ The Commentary not very satisfactorily explains this as meaning, "All these four abodes of the gods, etc., are like waters—i.e., suited to yield enjoyment, as ponds, rivers, etc., are fit for bathing, drinking," etc. The phrase is repeated in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 5 (vol. i, p. 79, of Dr. Hall's edition); and in his note Professor Wilson says *ambhūmī* "is also a peculiar and probably a mystic term." It is explained in the Vāyu Purāṇa, as will be seen further on. The last words of the quotation from the Brāhmaṇa are obscure. In another passage of the same work (iii. 8, 18, 1, 2) the terms *ambhas*, *nabhas*, and *mahas*, are declared to denote respectively "earth," "air," and "sky" (. . . *ayam vai loko 'mbhūmī . . . antarikṣham vai nabhūmī . . . asau vai loko mahānī*).

sa ha ayam ikshāṇchakre yad "mad anyad nāsti kasmād nu bibhemi" iti | tataḥ eva asya bhayaṁ vīyāya | kasmād hy abheshyat | dvitīyād vai bhayaṁ bhavati | 4. Sa vai naiva reme | tasmād ekākī na ramate | sa dvitīyam aichhat | sa ha etūvān āsa yathā strī-pumūṁsau samparishvatau | 5. Sa imam eva ātmānam dvedhā 'pātayat | tataḥ patih patnī cha abhavatām | tasmād "idam ardhavṛigalam iva svaḥ" iti ha sma āha Yājñavalkyaḥ | tasmād ākūśaḥ strīyā pūryate eva | tām samabhavat | tato manushyāḥ ajāyanta | 6. Sā u ha iyam ikshāṇchakre "katham nu mā ātmanaḥ eva janayitvā sambhavati hanta tiro 'sāni" iti | 7. Sā gaur abhavat vṛishabhāḥ itaras tām sam eva abhavat | tato gūvaḥ ajāyanta | 8. Vāḍavā itarā abhavat āśvavṛishāḥ itaraḥ gardabhī itarā gardabhāḥ itaras tām sam eva abhavat | tataḥ ekasāpham ajāyata | 9. Ajā itarā abhavat vastāḥ itaraḥ 'avir itarā meshāḥ itaraḥ | tām sam eva abhavat tato 'jāvayo 'jāyanta | evam eva yad idaṁ kiñcha mithunam ā pippilikābhyaḥ tat sarcam asṛjāta |³⁷

"This universe was formerly soul only, in the form of Purusha. Looking closely, he saw nothing but himself (or soul). He first said, 'This is I.' Then he became one having the name of I. Hence even now a man, when called, first says, 'this is I,' and then declares the other name which he has. 2. Inasmuch as he, before (pūrvaḥ) all this, burnt up (aushat) all sins, he (is called) purusha. The man who knows this burns up the person who wishes to be before him. 3. He was afraid. Hence a man when alone is afraid. This (being) considered that 'there is no other thing but myself: of what am I afraid?' Then his fear departed. For why should he have feared? It is of a second person that people are afraid. 4. He did not enjoy happiness. Hence a person when alone does not enjoy happiness. He desired a second. He was so much as a man and a woman when locked in embrace. 5. He caused this same self to fall asunder into two parts. Thence arose a husband and a wife.³⁸ Hence Yājñavalkya has said that 'this one's self is like the half³⁹ of a split pea.' Hence the void is filled up by

³⁷ This passage has been already translated by Mr. Colebrooke, Essays i. 64, as well as by Dr. Roer, in the Bibliotheca Indica.

³⁸ Manu and S'atarūpā, according to the Commentator.

³⁹ Compare Taitt. Br. iii. 3, 3, 5. *Attho arddho vai eṣha ātmano yat patnī* | "Now a wife is the half of one's self;" and ibid. iii. 3, 3, 1: *Ayajno vai eṣha yo 'patnīkaḥ* | *na prajāḥ prajāyeraṇ* | "The man who has no wife is unfit to sacrifice. No children will be born to him." We must not, however, suppose from these passages that the

5. He cohabited with her. From them **men** were born. 6. She reflected, 'how does he, after having produced me from himself, cohabit with me? Ah! let me disappear.' 7. She became a cow, and the other a bull; and he cohabited with her. From them **kine** were produced. 8. The one became a mare, the other a stallion, the one a she-ass, the other a male-ass. He cohabited with her. From them the class of animals with undivided hoofs was produced. The one became a she-goat, the other a he-goat, the one a ewe, the other a ram. He cohabited with her. From them goats and sheep were produced. In this manner pairs of all creatures whatsoever, down to ants, were created."

The next passage describes men as descendants of Virasvat, or the Sun, without specifying any distinction of classes:

Taittirīya Sanhitā vi. 5, 6, 1 f.—*Aditiḥ putrakāmā sādhyebhyo devēbhyo brahmaudanam apachat | tasyai uchchheshanām adaduh | tat prāsnāt sū reto 'dhatta | tasyai chatvārah Adityāḥ ajāyanta | sū dvitīyam apachat | sū 'manyata "uchchheshanād me ime 'jñata | yad agre prāśishyāmi ito me vasīyānso janishyante" iti | sū 'gre prāsnāt sū reto 'dhatta tasyai vyridham āṇḍam ajāyata | sū Adityebhyaḥ eva tṛtīyam apachat "bhogāya me idam śrāntam astu" iti | te 'bruvan "varam vṛṇāmahai yo 'to jāyetai asmākaṁ sa eko 'sat | yo 'sya prajāyām rīdhyetai asmākaṁ bhogāya bhavād" iti | tato Virasvān Adityo 'jāyata | tasya vai iyam prajā yad manushyāḥ | tūv ekaḥ eva riddho yo yajate sa devānām bhogāya bhavati |*

"Aditi, desirous of sons, cooked a Brahmaudana oblation for the gods the Sādhyas. They gave her the remnant of it. This she ate. She conceived seed. Four Adityas were born to her. She cooked a second (oblation). She reflected, 'from the remains of the oblation these sons have been born to me. If I shall eat (the oblation) first, more brilliant

estimation in which women were held by the authors of the Brāhmaṇas was very high, as there are other texts in which they are spoken of disparagingly; such as the following: Taitt. Sanh. vi. 5, 8, 2.—*Sa somo nātishṭhata strībhyo grihyamānaḥ | tam ghṛitāṁ vajrāṁ kṛitvā 'ghnan tam nirindriyam bhūtam agriḥnan | tasmāt striyo nirindriyā adūyādīr api pāpāt pūṁsa upastilaram vadanti |* "Soma did not abide, when being poured out to women. Making that butter a thunderbolt they smote it. They poured it out when it had become powerless. Hence women, powerless, and portionless, speak more humbly than even a poor man." (Compare the quotation in the Commentary on the Taitt. Sanhitā, Vol. i. p. 996.) Taitt. Sanh. vi. 5, 10, 3. *Tasmāt striyaṁ jātūm parāsyanti ut pumāṁsam haranti |* "Hence they reject a female (child) when born, and take up a male." (Compare Nirukta, iii. 4.)

⁴⁰ Compare Taitt. Br. iii. 3, 10, 4. *Prajayā hi manushyāḥ pūrṇaḥ,* "For by offspring a man is completed."

(sons) will be born to me. She ate it first; she conceived seed; an imperfect egg was produced from her. She cooked a third (oblation) for the Ādityas, (repeating the formula) 'may this religious toil have been undergone for my enjoyment.' The Ādityas said, 'Let us choose a boon: let any one who is produced from this be ours only; let anyone of his progeny who is prosperous be for us a source of enjoyment.' In consequence the Āditya Vivasvat was born. This is his progeny, namely MEN.⁴¹ Among them he alone who sacrifices is prosperous, and comes a cause of enjoyment to the gods."⁴²

The passages next following do not specify separately the creation men (who must, however, be understood as included along with other beings under the designation *prajāh*, "offspring," or "creatures,") and therefore afford less distinct evidence that their authors did not hold the fourfold origin of mankind.

The first of these extracts is especially interesting, both on account of its own tenor, and because (along with Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 8, 1 ff. quoted in p. 23) it contains the germ of one of the Puranic accounts of the creation which will be adduced in a subsequent section.

Taitt. Br. ii. 2, 9, 1 ff.—*Idam vai agre naiva kinchana āsīt | na dyaur āsīt na prithivī na antariksham | tad asad eva sad mano 'kuruta "syām" iti | tad atapyata | tasmāt tapanūd dhūmo 'jāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata tasmāt tapanūd Agnir ajāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | 2. Tasmāt tapanāj jyotir ajāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tasmāt tapanūd archir ajāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tasmāt tapanūd marīchayo 'jāyanta | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tasmāt tapanūd udārāḥ ajāyanta | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tad abhram iva*

⁴¹ Compare Taitt. Br. i. 8, 1. *Ādityāḥ vai prajāḥ*, "Creatures are descended from Aditi."

⁴² This story is told also, but with more detail of names and somewhat differently, in Taitt. Br. i. 1, 9, 10 ff. *Aditiḥ putrakāmā sūdhyaebhyo devebhyo brahmaudanam apachat | tasyai uchchheshanam adaduh | tat prūsāt | sū reto 'dhatta | tasyai Dhātā cha Aryamā cha ajāyetām | sū dvitīyam apachat tasyai uchchheshanam adaduh | tat prūsāt | sū reto 'dhatta | tasyai Mitras cha Varuṇas cha ajāyetām | sū tritīyam apachat | tasyai uchchheshanam adaduh | tat prūsāt | sū reto 'dhatta | tasyai Āmśa cha Bhagās cha ajāyetām | sū chaturtham apachat | tasyai uchchheshanam adaduh | tat prūsāt | sū reto 'dhatta tasyai Indras cha Vivasvāns cha ajāyetām | "Aditi, desirous of sons, cooked a Brahmaudana oblation to the gods the Sūdhya. They gave her the remnant of it. She ate it. She conceived seed. Dhātṛi and Aryaman were born to her." She does the same thing a second time, when she bears Mitra and Varuṇa,—a third time, when she bears Āmśa and Bhaga,—and a fourth time, when she bears Indra and Vivasvat.*

samahanyata | tad vastim abhinat | 3. Sa samudro 'bhavat | tasmāt samudrasya na pibanti | prajananam iva hi manyante | tasmāt paśor jūyamānād āpah purastād yanti | tad dasahotā anvasṛijyata | Prajāpatir vai dasahotā | yaḥ evaṁ tapaso vīryyam vidvāṁs tapyate bhavaty eva | tad vai idam āpah salīlam āsīt | so 'rodīt Prajāpatiḥ (4) "sa kasmai ajñi yady asyāpratishṭhāyēḥ" iti | yad apso avāpadyata sū prithivy abhavat | yad vyamṛiṣṭa tad antarikṣham abhavat | yad ūrdhvam udamṛiṣṭa sū dyaur abhavat | yad arodīt tad anayoḥ rodastvam | 5. Yaḥ evaṁ veda na asya grihe rudanti | etad vai eṣhām lokānām janma | ya evam eṣhām lokānām janma veda na eṣhu lokesho ārttim ārchhati | sa imām pratishṭhām avindata | sa imām pratishṭhām vītvā akāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa jaghanād asurān asṛijata | 6. Tebhyo mṛinmaye pūtre 'nnam aduhat | yū asya sū tanūr āsīt tām apāhata | sū tamisrā 'bhavat | so 'kāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa prajananād eva prajāḥ asṛijata | tasmād imāḥ bhūyishṭhāḥ | prajananād hy enāḥ asṛijata | 7. Tūbhyo dārumaye pūtre payo 'duhat | yū asya sū tanūr āsīt tām apāhata | sa jyotsnā 'bhavat | so 'kāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa upapakṣhābhyām eva ṛitūn asṛijata | tebhyo rajate pūtre ghrītam aduhat | yū asya sū tanūr āsīt (8) tām apāhata | so 'ho-rātrayoḥ sandhir abhavat | so 'kāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa mukhād devān asṛijata | tebhyo harite pūtre somam aduhat | yū asya sū tanūr āsīt tām apāhata | tad ahar abhavat | 9. Ete vai Prajāpater dohāḥ | ya evaṁ veda duhe eva prajāḥ | "divā vai no 'bhūd" iti tad devānām devatvām | ya evaṁ devānām devatvām veda devavān eva bhavati | etad vai aho-rātrānām janma | ya evam aho-rātrānām janma veda na aho-rātreshu ārttim ārchhati | 10. Asato 'dhi mano 'sṛijyata | manāḥ Prajāpatim asṛijata | Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asṛijata | tad vai idam manasy eva paramam pratishṭhitam yadidam kīncha | tad etat śvovasyasaṁ nāma Brahma | vyuchhantī vyuchhantī asmai vasyasī vasyasī vyuchhati prajāyate prajāyā paśubhiḥ pra parameshṭhino mātṛām āpnoti ya evaṁ veda |

"At first this (universe) was not anything. There was neither sky, nor earth, nor air. Being non-existent, it resolved 'let me be.' It became fervent.⁴³ From that fervour smoke was produced. It again

⁴³ The word thus rendered is *atapyata*, which has the sense of "being heated" as well as "practising austere abstraction." I have purposely given an equivocal rendering, which may bear either sense.

became fervent. From that fervour fire was produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour light was produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour flame was produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour rays were produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour blazes⁴⁴ were produced. It again became fervent. It became condensed like a cloud. It clove its bladder. That became the sea. Hence men do not drink of the sea. For they regard it as like the place of generation. Hence water issues forth before an animal when it is being born. After that the Daśahotṛi (a particular formula) was created. Prajāpati is the Daśahotṛi. That man succeeds, who thus knowing the power of austere abstraction (or fervour), practises it. This was then water, fluid. Prajāpati wept, (exclaiming), (4) 'For what purpose have I been born, if (I have been born) from this which forms no support?'⁴⁵ That which fell⁴⁶ into the waters became the earth. That which he wiped away, became the air. That which he wiped away, upwards, became the sky. From the circumstance that he wept (*arodit*), these two regions have the name of *rodasī*, (worlds). 5. They do not weep in the house of the man who knows this. This was the birth of these worlds. He who thus knows the birth of these worlds, incurs no suffering in these worlds. He obtained this (earth as a) basis. Having obtained (this earth as a) basis, he desired, 'May I be propagated.' He practised austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created Asuras from his abdomen. 6. To them he milked out food in an earthen dish. He cast off that body of his. It became darkness.⁴⁷ He desired, 'May I be propagated.' He practised

⁴⁴ Such is the sense the commentator gives to the word *udārāḥ*, which he makes = *ulvāṇa-jvālāḥ*. Professor Roth (s. v.) explains the word as meaning "fogs."

⁴⁵ This is the mode of rendering suggested to me by Professor Aufrecht. After "if" the Commentator supplies the words—"from this non-existing earth I can create no living creature."

⁴⁶ "Prajāpati's tears," etc., according to the commentator.

⁴⁷ Compare S'. P. Br. xi. 1, 6, 8: *Atho yo 'yam avāṇ prāṇas tena asurān asṛijata | te imām eva pṛithivīm abhipadya asṛijanta | tasmai sasṛijānūya tamaḥ iva ūsa |* 9. So 'vet | *pāpmānām vai asṛikṣhi yasmai me sasṛijānūya tamaḥ iva abhūd' iti | tāms tataḥ eva pāpmānū 'vidhyat | tataḥ eva te parābhavann ityādi |* "Then he created the Asuras from this lower breath of his. It was only after reaching this earth that they were created. On him, as he continued to create, darkness fell. 9. He understood, 'I have created misery, since darkness has fallen upon me as I was creating.' Then he pierced them with misery, and they in consequence succumbed," etc. The word rendered in the text by "cast off" is applied in Taitt. Sanh. i. 5, 4, 1, to serpents

austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created living beings (*prajāḥ*) from his organ of generation. Hence they are the most numerous because he created them from his generative organ. 8. To them he milked out milk in a wooden dish. He cast off that body of his. It became moon-light. He desired, 'May I be propagated. He practised austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created the seasons from his armpits. To them he milked out butter in a silver dish. He cast off that body of his. It became the period which connects day and night. He desired, 'May I be propagated.' He practised austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created the gods from his mouth.⁴⁸ To them he milked out Soma in a golden dish. He cast off that body of his. It became day. 9. These are Prajāpati's milkings. He who thus knows milks out offspring. 'Day (*divā*) has come to us:' this (exclamation expresses) the godhead of the gods. He who thus knows the godhead of the gods, obtains the gods. This is the birth of days and nights. He who thus knows the birth of days and nights, incurs no suffering in the days and nights. 10. Mind (or soul, *manas*,) was created from the non-existent. Mind created Prajāpati. Prajāpati created offspring. All this, whatever exists, rests absolutely on mind. This is that Brahma called *Śvovasyasa*.⁴⁹ For the man who thus knows, (*Ushas*), dawning, dawning, dawns more and more bright; he becomes prolific in offspring, and (rich) in cattle; he obtains the rank of *Parameshthin*."

S. P. Br. vi. 1, 2, 11.—*Atho āhuḥ | "Prajāpatir eva imān lokān śṛiṣṭvā pṛithivyām pratyatishṭhat | tasmai imāḥ ośadhayo 'nnam apachyanta | tad āsnāt | sa garbhā abhavat | sa ūrdhvebhyaḥ eva prāṇebhyo devān aśrijata | ye 'vāñchaḥ prāṇās tebhyo martyāḥ prajāḥ" iti | yata-mathā 'śrijata tathā 'śrijata | Prajāpatis tv eva idaṁ sarvam aśrijata yad idaṁ kiñcha |*

"Wherefore they say, 'Prajāpati, having created these worlds, was shedding their old skins (*sarpāḥ vai jīryanto 'manyanta . . . tato vai te jīrṇās tanūr apāghnata*).

⁴⁸ Compare S. P. Br. xi. 1, 6, 7, quoted in the 4th Vol. of this work, p. 22 f.

⁴⁹ The Commentator explains this word to mean "that which each succeeding day becomes transcendently excellent (*uttarottara-dīne vasiyo 'tisayena śreṣṭham*). Here, he says, the highest and absolute Brahma is not meant, but mind, which has the form of Brahma, and, by means of the series of its volitions, is every successive moment more and more world-creating" (*sankalpa-paramparayū prakṣhaṇam uttarottarādhika-jagat-vraskṣṭivād idṛg-Brahma-rūpatvād manaḥ prastātam |*

supported upon the earth. For⁷him these⁸ herbs were cooked as food. That (food) he ate. He became pregnant. He created the gods from his upper vital airs, and mortal offspring from his lower vital airs. In whatever way he created, so he created. But Prajāpati created all this, whatever exists.”

S. P. Br. x. 1, 3, 1.—*Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asṛijata | sa ūrdhvebhyaḥ eva prāṇebhyo devān asṛijata | ye 'vāñchuḥ prāṇās tebhyo martyāḥ prajāḥ | atha ūrdhvam eva mṛityum prajābhyo 'ttāram asṛijata |*

“Prajāpati created living beings. From his upper vital airs he created the gods; from his lower vital airs mortal creatures. Afterwards he created death a devourer of creatures.”

Taitt. Ar. i. 23, 1.—*Āpo vai idam āsan salilam eva | sa Prajāpatir ekaḥ pushkara-parṇe samabhavat | tasya antar manasi kāmāḥ samavartata “idaṁ sṛijeyam” iti | tasmād yad puruṣho manasā 'bhigachhati tad vāchā vadati tat karmaṇā karoti | tad eṣhā 'bhyanūktā “kūmas tad agre samavartatādhi | manaso retaḥ prathamam yad āsīt | 2. Sato bandhum asati niravindan hṛdi pratishyā kavayo manishā” iti | upa evaṁ tad upanamati yat-kāmo bhavati yaḥ evaṁ veda | sa tapo 'tapyata | sa tapas taptrū śarīram adhūnuta | tasya yad mūṁsam āsīt tato 'ruṇāḥ Ketavo Vātaraśanūḥ ṛishayaḥ udatishṭhan | 3. Ye nakhās te Vāikhānasāḥ | ye bālās te Bālakhilyāḥ | yo rasaḥ so 'pām antarataḥ kūrman bhūtam sarpantam tam abravīt “mama vai traṇ-mūṁsā samabhūt” | 4. “na” ity abravīt “pūrvam eva aham iha āsam” iti | tat puruṣasya puruṣatvam iti | sa “sahasra-śīrṣhā puruṣaḥ sahasrākṣaḥ sahasra-pād” bhūtrū udatishṭhat | tam abravīt “tvam ve (sic. me or vai?) pūrvam samabhūt tvam idam pūrvāḥ kurushva” iti | sa itaḥ ūdāya apo (5) 'ñjalīnā purastād upādadhāt “evā hy eva” iti | tataḥ Ādityaḥ udatishṭhat | sū prācī dik | atha Aruṇaḥ Ketur dakṣhiṇataḥ upādadhāt “evā hy Agne” iti | tato vai Agnir udatishṭhat | sū dakṣhiṇā dik | atha Aruṇaḥ Ketuḥ pāścād upādadhāt “evā hi Vāyo” iti | 6. Tato Vāyur udatishṭhat | sū pratīcī dik | atha Aruṇaḥ Ketur uttārataḥ upādadhāt “evā hi Indra” iti | tato vai Indiraḥ udatishṭhat | sū udīcī dik | atha Aruṇaḥ Ketur madhye upādadhāt “evā hi Pūṣhann” iti | tato vai Pūṣhā udatishṭhat | sū iyam dik | 7. Atha Aruṇaḥ Ketur upariṣṭād upādadhāt “evā hi devāḥ” iti | tato deva-manuṣyāḥ pitaro gandharvāpsarasāś cha udatishṭhan | sū ūrdhva dik | yāḥ vipruṣho vi parūpatan tūbhyo 'surāḥ rakṣāṁsi piśachāś cha udatishṭhan | tasmāt te parūbhavan viprudbhyo 'hi samabhavan | taa*

eshā bhyanūktā (8) “*āpo ha yad bṛihatir*garbham āyan dakṣham dadhānāḥ janayantīḥ svayambhūm | tataḥ ime 'dhyasṛijyanta sargāḥ | adbhyo vai idam samabhūt | tasmād idam sarvaṁ Brahma svayambhū*” *iti | tasmād idam sarvaṁ śīthilam iva adhruram iva abhavat | Prajāpatiḥ vāva tat | ātmanā ātmānam vidhāya tad eva anuprāśat | tad eśhā 'bhyanūktā* (9) “*vidhāya lokān vidhāya bhūtāni vidhāya sarvāḥ pradiśo diśascha | Prajāpatiḥ prathamajūḥ ṛitasya ātmanā 'tmānam abhisāmṛiveśa*” *iti |*

“This was water, fluid. Prajāpati alone was produced on a lotus-leaf. Within, in his mind, desire arose, ‘Let me create this.’ Hence whatever a man aims at in his mind, he declares by speech, and performs by act.⁵⁰ Hence this verse has been uttered, ‘Desire formerly arose in it, which was the primal germ of mind, (2) (and which) sages, searching with their intellect, have discovered in the heart as the bond between the existent and the non-existent’ (R. V. x. 129, 4). That of which he is desirous comes to the man who thus knows. He practised austere fervour. Having practised austere fervour, he shook his body. From its flesh the rishis (called) Aruṇas, Ketus, and Vātaraśanas⁵¹ arose. 3. His nails became the Vaikhānasas, his hairs the Bālakhilyas. The fluid (of his body became) a tortoise moving amid the waters.⁵² He said to him, ‘Thou hast sprung from my skin and flesh.’⁵³ 4. ‘No,’ replied the tortoise, ‘I was here before.’ In that (in his having been ‘before’ *pūrvam*) consists the manhood of a man (*purusha*). Becoming ‘a man (*purusha*) with a thousand heads, a thousand eyes, a thousand feet’

⁵⁰ Compare Taitt. S. vi. 3, 10, 4, (quoted by Roth. s. v. *abhiḡam*) *yaḍ vai hṛidayena abhiḡachhati taj jihvayā vadati |*

⁵¹ They are mentioned again in Taitt. Ār. i. 24, 4. See Böhrtlingk and Roth's Lexicon s.v. Ketu (where the Aruṇa Ketus are stated to be a sort of superior beings or demons); Artharva-veda, xi. 10, 2; Weber's Indische Studien, ii. 177; and the verse of the M. Bh. xii. 774: *Aruṇāḥ Ketavāś chaiva sūdhūyena divaṁ gatūḥ |* “By sacred study the Aruṇas and Ketus have ascended to heaven.”

⁵² The Sanskrit scholar will observe that the text here is rather obscure. It is either corrupt, elliptical, or grammatically irregular.

⁵³ Here the Sanskrit, if it be not corrupt, must be irregular and incorrect. On the style of the Āraṇyakas, see Mr. E. B. Cowell's Preface to the Kaushītaki Upanishad, p. viii., where it is remarked: “The Āraṇyakas appear to belong to a class of Sanskrit writings, whose history has not yet been thoroughly investigated. Their style, if we may judge from that of the Taittirīya and Kaushītaki, is full of strange solecisms which sometimes half remind us of the gāthās of the Lalita Vistara. The present Upanishad has many peculiar forms, some of which are common to both recensions, while others appear only in one. Such are: *nishincha*, in p. 10; *praiti* for *prayanti*, in p. 51; *samvsiyan*, in p. 56; *veti* for *vyeti*, in p. 78; *aduḍham*, in p. 89, etc

(R.V. x. 90, 1), he arose. Prajāpati said to him, 'Thou wert produced before me: do thou first make this.' He took water from this (5) in the cavity of his two hands, and placed it on the east, repeating the text, 'so be it, o Sun.'⁶⁴ From thence the sun arose. That was the eastern quarter. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) to the south, saying, 'so be it,' o Agni.' Thence Agni arose. That was the southern quarter. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) to the west, saying 'so be it, o Vāyu.' 6. Thence arose Vāyu. That was the western quarter. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) to the north, saying 'so be it, o Indra.' Thence arose Indra. That is the northern quarter. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) in the centre, saying 'so be it, o Pūshan.' Thence arose Pūshan. That is this quarter. 7. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) above, saying 'so be it, o gods.' Thence arose gods, MEN, fathers, Gandharvas and Apsarases. That is the upper quarter. From the drops which fell apart arose the Asuras, Rakshases, and Piśāchas. Therefore they perished, because they were produced from drops. Hence this text has been uttered; (8) 'when the great waters became pregnant, containing wisdom, and generating Svayambhū, from them were created these creations. All this was produced from the waters. Therefore all this is Brahma Svayambhu.' Hence all this was as it were loose, as it were unsteady. Prajāpati was that. Having made himself through himself, he entered into that. Wherefore this verse has been uttered; (9) 'Having formed the world, having formed existing things and all intermediate quarters and quarters, Prajāpati, the firstborn of the ceremonial; entered into himself with himself.' "

From an examination of the legends contained in the Brāhmaṇas, of which some specimens have just been given, it appears (1) that they are generally, if not always, adduced, or invented, with the view of showing the origin, or illustrating the efficacy, of some particular ceremony which the writer wished to explain or recommend; (2) that the accounts which they supply of Prajāpati's creative operations are

⁶⁴ The formula is in the original *evā hy eva*. The Commentator says that the first word means "objects of desire to be obtained," and that the second *eva* signifies "the moving (Sun);" the sense of the entire formula being, "Thou, o Sun, art thyself all objects of desire." The six formulas here introduced had previously occurred at the close of a preceding section, i. 20, 1.

various and even inconsistent; and (3) that they are the sources of many of the details which are found in a modified form in the cosmogonies of the Purāṇas.

When we discover in the most ancient Indian writings such different and even discrepant accounts of the origin of man, all put forth with equal positiveness, it is impossible to imagine that any uniform explanation of the diversity of castes could have been received at the period when they were composed, or to regard any of the texts which have been cited as more orthodox and authoritative than the rest. Even, therefore, if we should suppose that the author of the Puruṣa Sūkta meant to represent the four castes as having literally sprung from separate parts of Puruṣa's body, it is evident that the same idea was not always or even generally adopted by those who followed him, as a revealed truth in which they were bound to acquiesce. In fact, nothing is clearer than that in all these cosmogonies, the writers, while generally assuming certain prevalent ideas as the basis of their descriptions, gave the freest scope to their individual fancy in the invention of details. In such circumstances, perfect coincidence cannot be expected in the narratives.

We shall hereafter see that the Puranic writers reproduce some of these discrepancies in the traditions which descended to them from earlier generations, and add many new inconsistencies of their own, which they themselves, or their commentators, endeavour to explain away by the assumption that the accounts so differing relate to the occurrences of different Kalpas or Manvantaras (great mundane periods). But of a belief in any such Kalpas or Manvantaras no trace is to be found in the hymns or Brāhmaṇas: and, as we shall hereafter see, they must be held to be the inventions of a later age. The real explanation of these differences in the Brāhmaṇas is that the writers did not consider themselves (as their successors held them) to be infallibly inspired, and consequently were not at all studious to avoid in their narratives the appearance of inconsistency with the accounts of their predecessors.

SECT. V.—*Manu's Account of the Origin of Castes.*

I shall first quote a few verses from the beginning of *Manu's* account of the creation :

i. 8. *So 'bhidyāya śarīrāt svāt sisrikshur vividhāḥ prajāḥ | apa eva sasarjādau tāsu vījam avāśrijat |* 9. *Tad aṇḍam abhavad haimaṁ sahas-rāṁśu-sama-prabham | tasmīn jājne svayam Brahmā sarva-loka-pitā-mahaḥ |* 10. *Āpo nārā iti proktāḥ āpo vai naraśūnavah | tāḥ yad asyūyanam pūrvam tena Nārāyaṇaḥ smṛitah |* 11. *Yat tat kāraṇam avyaktam nityam sad-asadātmakam | tad-viśiṣṭaḥ sa puruṣho lok-Brahmeti kirttyate |* 12. *Tasminn aṇḍe sa bhagavān ushitvā parivate saram | svayam evātmano dhyānāt tad aṇḍam akarod dvīdhā |*⁵⁵

"8. He (the self-existent) having felt desire,⁵⁶ and willing to create various living beings from his own body, first created the waters, and threw into them a seed. 9. That seed became a golden egg, of lustre equal to the sun; in it he himself was born as Brahmā, the parent of all the worlds. 10. The waters are called *nārāḥ*, for they are sprung from *Nara*; and as they were his first sphere of motion (*ayana*=path), he is therefore called *Nārāyaṇa*.⁵⁷ 11. Produced from the imperceptible, eternal, existent and non-existent, cause, that male (*puruṣa*) is celebrated in the world as Brahmā. 12. After dwelling for a year in the egg, the glorious being, himself, by his own contemplation, split it in twain."

After a description of various other preparatory creative acts (vv. 13–30) the author proceeds in vv. 31 ff. to inform us how the four castes were produced :

i. 31. *Lokānām tu virīddhyartham mukhabāhūru-pādataḥ | brāhmaṇaṁ kṣattriyaṁ vaiśyaṁ śūdraṁ cha niravarttayat |* 32. *Dvīdhā krit-vātmano deham ardhena puruṣho 'bhavat | ardhena nārī tasyām sa Virājam aśrijat prabhuḥ |* 33. *Tapas taptrā 'śrijat yaṁ tu sa svayam puruṣho*

⁵⁵ The ideas in this passage are derived (with modifications expressive of the theories current in the author's own age) from the *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa*, xi. 1, 6, 1 ff. (see vol. iv. of this work, p. 21 f.); or from some other similar account in another *Brāhmaṇa*.

⁵⁶ See S. P. Br. i. 7, 4, 1: *Prajūpatir ha vai svām duhitaram abhidadhyau.*

⁵⁷ In the M. Bh. iii. 12952, *Krishṇa* says: *apām nārāḥ iti purā sanjñā-karma kṛitam mayā | tena Nārāyaṇo py ukto mama tat tv ayanam sadā |* "The name of *nārāḥ* was formerly assigned by me to the waters: hence I am also called *Nārāyaṇa*, for there has always been my sphere of motion."

Virāṭ | taṁ mām vittāsyā sarvasyā sraśtūrāṁ drija-sattamāḥ | 34. Aham prajāḥ sisrikshus tu tapas taptvā suduścaram | patin prajānām asṛjām maharshīn ādīto daśa | 35. Marīchīm Atryangirasau Pulastyaṁ Pulahāṁ Kratum | Prachetasam Vasishṭhāṁ cha Bhṛiguṁ Nāradaṁ eva cha | 36. Ete Manūṁs tu sapṭānyūn asṛjān bhūrītejasāḥ | devān deranikāyāṁs cha maharshīṁs chāmītaujaśaḥ | 37. Yaksha-rakshaḥ-pisū-chāṁs cha gandharvāpsaraso 'surān | nāgān sarpān suparnāṁs cha pitṛīṇāṁ cha prithaggaṇān | 38. Vidyuto 'śani-meghāṁs cha rohitendra-dhanūṁsi cha | ulkā nirghāta-ketūṁs cha jyotīṁshy uchchārachāni cha | 39. Kinnarān vānarān matsyān riviḍhāṁs cha vihangamān | paśūn mṛigān manushyāṁs cha ryalūṁs chobhayatodataḥ | 40. Kṛimikīṭa-patangāṁs cha yūkā-makshika-matkuṇam | sarvāṁ cha daṁśa-māśakam sthūvaram cha prithagvidham | 41. Eṁ etair idāṁ sarvāṁ man-niyogād mahātma-bhīḥ | yathākarma tapo-yogūt sṛishṭāṁ sthāvara-jāṅgamam |

31. "That the worlds might be peopled, he caused the Brāhman, the Kshattriya, the Vaiśya, and the Sūdra to issue from his mouth, his arms, his thighs, and his feet."⁵⁸ 32. Having divided his own body into two parts, the lord (Brahmā) became, with the half a male (purusha), and with the half, a female; and in her he created Virāj⁵⁹ 33. Know, O most excellent twice-born men, that I, whom that male, (purusha)⁶⁰ Virāj, himself created, am the creator of all this world. 34. Desiring to produce living creatures, I performed very arduous devotion, and first created ten Maharshis (great rishis), lords of living beings, (35) viz., Marīchi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Prachetas, Vasishṭha, Bhṛigu, and Nārada.⁶¹ 36 They, endowed with

⁵⁸ On this Kullūka the Commentator remarks: *Daivyū cha śaktyū mukhādibhyo brāhmaṇādī-nirmāṇam Brahmano na visankaniyāṁ śruti-siddhatevāt* | "It is not to be doubted that, by his divine power, Brahmā formed the Brāhman and the other castes from his mouth and other members, since it is proved by the Veda. He then quotes the 12th verse of the Purusha Sūkta.

⁵⁹ See the Purusha Sūkta, verse 5.

⁶⁰ It will be observed that Manu applies this term *purusha* to three beings, *first* to Brahmā (v. 11), *second* to the male formed by Brahmā from the half of his own body (v. 32), and *third* to Virāj, the offspring of the male and female halves of Brahmā's body (v. 33). It will be noticed that this story of Brahmā dividing his body is borrowed from the passage of the S'. P. Br. xiv. 4, 2, 1, quoted above.

⁶¹ In the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, 2 ff., a different account is given of the origin of the world, in which no reference is made to Manu Svāyambhuva. The order of the creation there described is as follows: First everything was water. Then Brahmā Svāyāmbhū, with the deities, came into existence—Brahmā being said to have sprung

great energy, created⁶² other seven Manus, gods, and abodes of gods, and Maharshis of boundless might; (37) Yakshas, Rakshases, Pisāchas, Gandharvas, Apsarases, Asuras, Nāgas, Serpents, great Birds, and the different classes of Pitṛis; (38) lightnings, thunderbolts, clouds, Indra's bows unbent and bent, meteors, portentous atmospheric sounds, comets, and various luminaries; (39) Kinnaras, apes, fishes, different sorts of birds, cattle, deer, MEN, beasts with two rows of teeth; (40) small and large reptiles, moths, lice, flies, fleas, all gadflies and gnats, and motionless things of different sorts. 41. Thus by my appointment, and by the force of devotion, was ALL THIS WORLD BOTH MOTIONLESS AND MOVING, created by those great beings, according to the (previous) actions of each creature."

The different portions of the preceding narrative of the creation of the human species are not easily reconcileable with each other. For it is first stated in verse 31, that men of the four castes proceeded separately from different parts of Brahmā's body,—prior (as it would appear) (1) to the division of that body into two parts and to the successive production (2) of Virāj, (3) Manu, and (4) the Maharshis, who formed all existing creatures. And yet we are told in verse 39, that MEN were among the beings called into existence by those Maharshis, and in verse 41, that the entire MOVING as well as motionless WORLD was their work. It is not said that the men created by the Maharshis were distinct from those composing the four castes, and we must, therefore, assume that the latter also are included under the general appellation of men. But if men of the four castes had been already produced before the formation of all living creatures by the Maharshis, what necessity existed for the men of these castes being a second time called into being as a part of that later creation? It is possible that this

from the ether (*ākāśa*). Brahmā, with his sons, created the world. From Brahmā sprang Marichi; from Marichi, Kaś'ya; from Kaś'ya, Vivasvat; and from Vivasvat, Manu Vaivasvata. The original of this passage is quoted in the 4th vol. of this work, p. 29 ff.

⁶² These great rishis seem to be the beings denoted by the word *viśvasṛjaḥ*, "creators of the universe," in the verse of Manu (xii. 50), which will be quoted below. Reference to rishis, or to seven rishis, as "formers of existing things" (*bhūta-kṛitaḥ*), is also found in the Atharvaveda, vi. 108, 4; vi. 133, 4, 5; xi. 1, 1, 3, 24; xii. 1, 39; and the word *bhūtakṛitaḥ*, without the addition of rishis, is found in the same work iii. 28, 1; iv. 35, 2, and xix. 16, 2.

allegation of the separate creation of castes may have been engrafted as an after-thought on the other account.⁶³

After other details, regarding the propagation, nature, etc, of created things (vv. 42–50), the re-absorption of Brahmā into the Supreme Spirit, and his alternations of sleep and repose, etc. (vv. 50–57), Manu proceeds :

58. *Idaṁ sāstraṁ tu kṛtvā 'sau mām eva svayam āditaḥ | vidhivad grāhayāmāsa Marīchyādīmś tv aham munīn |* 59. *Etad vo 'yam Bhṛiguḥ sāstraṁ śrāvayishyaty aseshataḥ | etad hi matto 'dhijage sarvam esho 'khlīlam munih |* 60. *Tatas tathā sa tenokto maharshir Manunū Bhṛiguḥ | tām abravād ṛishīn sarvān prītātmā "śrūyatām" iti |* 61. *Svāyambhuvaśyāsya Manoh shad-caṁśyā Manavo 'pare | śṛiṣṭavantah prajāḥ svāḥ svāḥ mahātmāno mahaujasaḥ |* 62. *Śvārochishaś chauttamiś cha Tāmaso Raivataś tathā | Chāksushaś cha mahūtejā Vivasvat-suta eva cha |* 63. *Svāyambhuwādyāḥ saptaite Manavo bhūritejasaḥ | sve sve 'ntare sarvam idam utpādyāpuś charācharam |*

58. "Having formed this Scripture, he (Brahmā) himself in the beginning caused me to comprehend it according to rule; as I did to Marichi and the other munis. 59. This, Bhṛigu will give you to this scripture in its entirety; for this muni learned the whole from 60. Then that Maharshi (great rishi), Bhṛigu being so addressed Manu, with pleasure addressed all those rishis, saying, 'Let it heard.' 61. 'From this Manu Svāyambhuva sprang other Manus in six successive generations, great and glorious, who respectively created living beings of their own,—(62) viz., Svārochisha, Auttami, Tāmasa, Raivata, Chāksusha, and the mighty son of Vivasvat. 63. These seven⁶⁴ Manus of great power, of whom Svāyambhuva was the first, have each in his own period (*antara*) produced and possessed the world.' "

⁶³ In the same way it may be observed that in v. 22 Brahmā is said to have formed the subtle class of living gods whose essence is to act, and of the Sādhyas (*karmātmanām cha devūnām so 'ṣijjat prūṇinām prabhuḥ | sādhyānām cha gaṇān sūkṣmam*), and in v. 25, to have "called into existence this creation, desiring to form these living beings" (*śṛiṣṭiṁ sasarja chaivemām eṣaṣṭum icchann imāḥ prajāḥ*). But if the gods and all other creatures already existed, any such further account of their production by the Maharshis, as is given in verse 36, seems to be not only superfluous but contradictory.

⁶⁴ It will be observed that here Svāyambhuva is included in the seven Manus, although in verse 36 (see above) it is said that the ten Maharshis, who had themselves been created by Svāyambhuva (vv. 34 f.), produced seven other Manus.

After some preliminary explanations regarding the divisions of time as reckoned by men and gods, etc. (vv. 64-78), the author proceeds to tell us how long each of these Manus reigns :

79. *Yat prāk dvādaśa-sāhasram uditāṁ daivikaṁ yugam | tad ekasaptati-guṇam manvantaram ihochyate |* 80. *Manvantarāṇy asankhyāni sargaḥ saṁhāra eva cha | kṛīḍann ivaitat kurute Parameśṭhi punaḥ punaḥ |*

"The age (*yuga*) of the gods mentioned before, consisting of twelve thousand (years), when multiplied by seventy-one, is here called a manvantara. 80. There are innumerable manvantaras, creations and destructions. The Supreme Being performs this again and again, as if in sport."

A more detailed account of these great mundane periods will be given in the next section, when I come to take up the Vishṇu Purana. Meanwhile it may be remarked that the present manvantara is that of the last of the Manus above enumerated, or Manu Vairasvata, who, according to verse 63, must have created the existing world. But if such be the case, it does not appear why the creation of Manu Svāyambhuva, with which the present race of mortals can have little to do, should have been by preference related to the rishis in vv. 33 ff. It must, however, be observed that in v. 33 Manu Svāyambhuva described himself as the former of "this" (*i.e.*, the existing) universe, and there is no doubt that the whole code of laws prescribed in the sequel of the work is intended by the author to be observed by the existing race of Indians (see verses 102 ff. of the first book). We must, therefore, suppose that the creations of the later Manus are substantially identical with that of the first; or that there is some confusion or inconsistency in the accounts which I have cited. Perhaps both suppositions may be correct.

In vv. 81-86, the four Yugas (or great ages of the world) the Kṛita, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali, their gradual deterioration, and the special duties peculiar to each, are described.⁶⁵

⁶⁵ In v. 86 these predominant duties are said to be austere fervour in the Kṛita age, knowledge in the Tretā, sacrifice in the Dvāpara, and liberality alone in the Kali (*tāpaḥ parāṁ Kṛita-yuge tretāyāṁ jñānam uchyate | dvāpare yajnam evāhur dānam ekam kalau yuge*). This, as remarked in Weber's Indische Studien, 282 f., note, is not quite in conformity with the view of the Muṇḍaka Upanishad, i. 2, 1, which states :

At verse 87, Bhṛigu recurs to the four castes:

87. *Sarcasyāśya tu sargasya gupty-artham sa mahādyutiḥ | mukha-
bāhuru-paj-jānām prithak karmāny akalpayat |*

"For the preservation of this whole creation, that glorious being (Brahmā) ordained separate functions for those who sprang from his mouth, his arms, his thighs, and his feet."

These functions are then detailed (vv. 88-92). In verse 93, the grounds of the Brāhman's pre-eminence are stated:

93. *Uttamāngobhavāḥ jyaishṭhyād brahmaṇas chaiva dhāraṇāt | sar-
vasyaivāśya sargasya dharmato brāhmaṇaḥ prabhuḥ |* 94. *Tam hi eva-
yambhūḥ svād āsyāt tapas taptvā 'dīto 'srijat |*

Since the Brahman sprang from the most excellent organ, since he is the first-born and possesses the Veda, he is by nature the lord of this whole creation. Him, the self-existent (Brahmā) after exercising fervid abstraction, formed at the first from his own mouth."

But as there are grades of excellence among created things, and among men themselves (96), so are there also among Brahmanas:

97. *Brāhmaṇeshu cha vidvāṃso vidvatsu kṛita-buddhayaḥ | kṛita-
buddhishu karttūraḥ karttrishu brahma-vedināḥ |*

"Among Brāhmanas the learned are the most excellent, among the learned the resolute, among the resolute those who act, and among them who act they who possess divine knowledge."

In a subsequent part of the work (xii. 40 ff.) we find men in general, the castes, and indeed all existing things, from Brahmā downwards, classified according to their participation in different degrees in the three *guṇas*, or qualities (*sattva*, "goodness," *rajas*, "passion," and *amas*, "darkness").

39. *Yena yāṃs tu guṇenaishāṃ saṃsūrān pratipadyate | tān samāsena
akshyāmi sarcasyāśya yathākramam |* 40. *Devatvaṃ sātत्वikā yānti
vanuśhyatvaṃ cha rajasāḥ | tiryaktvaṃ tāmasā nityam ity eṣhā tri-*

*st etat satyam mantreshu karmūṇi kavayo yāny apāyāṃs tūni tretāyām bahudhū
matatāni |* "This is true: the rites which sages beheld in the hymns, are in great variety celebrated in the Tretā." In the same way the M. Bh. iii. v. 11,248, says that sacrifices and rites prevail in the Tretā (*tato yajnāḥ pravartante dharmāḥ cha vidhāḥ kriyāḥ | tretāyām ityādi*). See also M. Bh. xii. 13,090. The word *kṛita*, as the name of the first yuga is thus explained in a previous verse of the former of these two passages (11,235): *kṛitam eva na karttavyaṃ tasmin kāle yugottamo |* "In the time of that most excellent Yuga (everything) has been done, (and does) not (remain)

vidhā gatiḥ | . . . 43. *Hastināś cha turangās cha sūdrā mlechhās cha garhitāḥ* | *sīmhā vyāghrā varūhās cha madhyamā tāmasī gatiḥ* | . . . 46. *Rājānaḥ kshattriyās chaiva rājnās chaiva purohitāḥ* | *vāda-yuddha-pradhānās cha madhyamā rājāsī gatiḥ* | . . . 48. *Tāpasā ya-tayo viprā ye cha vaimānikā ganāḥ* | *nakshatrāṇi cha daityās cha prathamā sāttvikī gatiḥ* | 49. *Yajvāna ṛishayo devā vedā jyotīṃshi vatsarāḥ* | *pitarās chaiva sādhyās cha dvitīyā sāttvikī gatiḥ* | 50. *Brah-mā viśvasṛijo dharmo mahān avyaktam eva cha* | *uttamāṃ sāttvikīm etāṃ gatim āhur maṇishināḥ* |

"39. I shall now declare succinctly in order the states which the soul reaches by means of each of these qualities. 40. Souls endowed with the *sattva* quality attain to godhead; those having the *rajas* quality become men; whilst those characterized by *tamas* always become beasts—such is the threefold destination . . . 43. Elephants, horses, Sūdras and contemptible Mlechhas, lions, tigers, and boars form the middle dark condition . . . 46. Kings, Kshattriyas, a king's priests (*purohitāḥ*), and men whose chief occupation is the war of words, compose the middle condition of passion . . . 48. Devotees, ascetics, Brāhmans, the deities borne on aerial cars, constellations, and Daityas, constitute the lowest condition of goodness. 49. Sacrificing priests, rishis, gods, the vedas, the celestial luminaries, years, the fathers, the Sādhyas, form the second condition of goodness. 50. Brah-mā, the creators,⁶⁶ righteousness, the Great One (*mahat*), the Unapparent One (*avyakta*), compose the highest condition of goodness."

⁶⁶ These "creators" (*viśvasṛijāḥ*) are thus mentioned in Taitt. Br. iii. 12, 9, 2. *Ādarsam Agnīm chinvānāḥ pūrve viśvasṛijo 'mṛitūḥ* | *śataṃ varsha-sahasrāṇi dikṣhī-tūḥ satram āsata* | 3. *tapāḥ āsīd grihapatir Brahma brahmā 'bharat svayam* | *satyaṃ ha hotaishūm āsīd yad viśvasṛija āsata* | *amṛitam ebhya udagōyāt sahasram parivat-sarān* | *bhūtāṃ ha prastotaiṣhūm āsīd bhaviṣyat prati chāharat* | *prāṇo adhvaryur abhavad idaṃ sarvaṃ sishūsatūm* | . . . 7. *Viśvasṛijāḥ prathamāḥ satram āsata* | . . . | *tato ha jajne bhuranasya gopāḥ hiraṇmayāḥ śakunir Brahma nāma* | *yena sūryas tapati tejaseddhaḥ* | . . . 8. *Etena vai viśvasṛijāḥ idaṃ viśvam asṛijanta* | *yad viśvam asṛijanta tamād viśvasṛijāḥ* | *viśvam enān anu prajāyate* | "2. The ancient and immortal creators of the universe, keeping fire kindled till they saw the new moon, and consecrated, were engaged in a sacrifice for 100,000 years. 3. Austere fervour was the householder; Prayer itself (*brahma*) was the brahmā priest; Truth was their hotṛi, when the creators were so occupied. Immortality was their udgātṛi for a thousand years. The Past was their prastotṛi, the Future their pratiḥartṛi; Breath was the adhvaryu, whilst they were seeking to obtain all this." After a good deal more of this allegory, the author proceeds in para.: 7. "These first

It will be observed that the different parts of this account of the mode in which the three qualities are distributed, are not quite in harmony. From v. 40 it would appear that all souls having the quality of passion become men; and yet we find from vv. 43, 48, and 49, that Sūdras belong to the *tāmasa* class, and Brāhmanas, of different descriptions, to two of the *Sāttvika* grades. According to the rule enunciated in v. 40, the latter ought to have been born as gods.

It is, further, remarkable that in this enumeration Sūdras are found in the same category with Mlechhas (v. 43), that the Vaiśyas are not accommodated with a position in any of the classes, that Kshattriyas and kings' domestic priests, who are of course Brāhmanas, and others (who must be Brāhmanas) fond of disputation on learned questions⁶⁷ (though not stated to be heretical) are ranked together as "passionate" (v. 46), while other Brāhmanas of different characters are placed in two of the higher grades, Brāhmanas simply so called (*viprāḥ*) being regarded as "good" in the lowest degree (v. 48), and sacrificing priests (*yajvānaḥ*) sharing with rishis, gods, the vedas, etc., the honour of the middle condition of goodness. It is not clear whether the devotees, and ascetics, mentioned in v. 48, belong to the same caste as the Brāhmanas with whom they are associated, or may also be men of the inferior classes. Nor is it evident for what reason the sacrificing priests (*yajvānaḥ*), specified in v. 49, are so much more highly estimated than the king's priests (*rājnaḥ purohitāḥ*) in v. 46, since the latter also officiate at sacrifices. The honourable position assigned to Daityas in the lowest class of "good" beings (v. 48) is also deserving of notice. We shall see in the following chapter that the Purāṇas variously describe mankind as belonging entirely to the "passionate" class (see v. 40, above) and as characterized by the three other "qualities," according to their caste.

creators were engaged in sacrifice . . . Thence was born the preserver of the world, the golden bird called Brahma, by whom the sun glows, kindled with light. . . . 8. . . . Through this the creators created this universe. As they created the universe, they are called *visvasṛjāḥ*. . . Everything is created after them." See above the reference made to *ṛishayo bhūta-kṛitāḥ* in p. 37. The allegory in this extract from the Taitt. Br. resembles in its character that in the sixth verse of the Puruṣa Sūkta.

⁶⁷ *Sāratārthakalaha-priyūi cha* | Comm.

I shall in the next section adduce the description given in the Vishṇu Purāṇa of the creation of living creatures, and the origin of the four castes, after first supplying in the present some explanation of the great mundane periods, the *Yugas*, *Manvantaras*, *Kalpas*, etc.

The computations of these great periods are stated in the third chapter of the first book, and in the first chapter of the sixth book, and are clearly explained by Professor Wilson in his notes to page 50 of his translation.

12,000 divine years are equal to a period of four Yugas, which is

Kṛita Yuga with its mornings and evenings.....4,800 divine years

Dvāpara Yuga „ „ „ „ „ „2,400 „ „

Kali Yuga " " " " 1,200

making... 12,000 divine years.⁶⁹

As a day of the gods is = to one year of mortals, the 12,000 divine years must be multiplied by 360, the assumed number of days in a year, to give the number of the years of mortals in this great period of four yugas, thus: 12,000 divine years \times 360 = 4,320,000 years of mortals. 1000 of these periods of 12,000 divine, or 4,320,000 human, years—i.e., 4,320,000,000 human years are = 1 day of Brah-mā,⁷⁰ and his night is of the same duration. Within that period of a day of Brah-mā, 14 Manus reign,⁷¹ and a Manvantara, or period of Manu,

⁶⁸ Vishṇu P. vi. 1, 4 *ahorātram pīṭṛṇām tu māso 'bdaḥ tridivaukaśām* (See also Manu i. 66 and 67. The Taitt. Br. iii. 9, 22, 1, too, states: *ekāṁ vai etad devānām ahar yat saṁvatsarah* | "This period of a year is one day of the gods.")

⁶⁰ i. 3, 10. *Diriyair varsha-sahasraistu kṛita-tretādi-sañjñitam | chaturyugam dvādasabhis tad-vibhagām nibodha me | 11. chaṭvāri trīṇi dee chaikam kṛitādīhu yañhūkramam | diriyābdānam sahasraṇi yugesho āhur purāvidah | 12. Tat-pramāṇaṇi śataiḥ sandhyā pūrva tatrābhidhīyate | sandhyāmśakaś cha tat-tulyo yugasānāntaro hi saḥ | 13. Sandhyā-sandhyāmśayor antar yaḥ kālo muni-sattama | yugākhyāḥ sa tu vijñevah kṛita-tretādi-sañjñitam*

⁷⁰ V. P. i. 3, 14. *Kṛitām tretā dvāparaś cha kaliś chaiva cāturyugam yate tat-sahasrām cha Brahmano divasam mune* | See also Manu i. 72.

⁷¹ Y. P. i. 3, 15. *Brahmano divasā brahman Manavaś cha chaturdaśa bhadanti* |

dissolution, which occurs at the end of each Kalpa, or day of Brahmā, is called *naimittika*, incidental, occasional, or contingent. (See Wilson's Vishṇu Purana, vol. i. of Dr. Hall's edition, p. 52, with the editor's note; and vol. ii. p. 269. For an account of the other dissolutions of the universe I refer to the same work, vol. i. p. 113, and to pp. 630–633 of the original 4to. edition.)

Of this elaborate system of Yugas, Manvantaras, and Kalpas, of enormous duration, no traces are found in the hymns of the Rig-veda. Their authors were, indeed, familiar with the word *Yuga*,⁷⁸ which frequently occurs in the sense of age, generation, or tribe. Thus in i. 139, 8; iii. 26, 3; vi. 8, 5; vi. 15, 8; vi. 36, 5; x. 94, 12, the phrase *yuge yuge*⁷⁹ means "in every age." In iii. 33, 8; x. 10, 10, we have *uttarā yugāni*, "future ages," and in x. 72, 1, *uttare yuge*, "in a later age;" in vii. 70, 4, *pūrvāni yugāni*, "former ages,"⁸⁰ and in i. 184, 3, *yuga jūrṇā*, "past ages." In i. 92, 11; i. 103, 4; i. 115, 2; i. 124, 2; i. 144, 4;⁸¹ ii. 2, 2; v. 52, 4; vi. 16, 23; vii. 9, 4; viii. 46, 12; viii. 51, 9; ix. 12, 7;⁸² x. 27, 19; x. 140, 6⁸³ (in all of which places, except i. 115, 2, the word is combined with *manushyā*, *mānushā*, *manu-shah*, or *janūnām*), *yuga* seems to denote "generations" of men, or *parārdhasya varttamānasya vai devja | Vārāhaḥ iti kalpo 'yam prathamah parikalpitaḥ |*

⁷⁸ In Professor Willson's Dictionary three senses are assigned to *yuga* (neuter) (1) a pair; (2) an age as the Krita, Tretā, etc.; (3) a lustre, or period of five years. When used as masculine the word means, according to the same authority, (1) a yoke; (2) a measure of four cubits, etc.; (3) a particular drug.

⁷⁹ Sāyana, on iii. 36, 3, explains it by *pratidinam*, "every day;" on vi. 8, 5; vi. 15, 8; vi. 36, 5, by *kāle kāle*, "at every time."

⁸⁰ Sāyana takes the phrase for former "couples of husbands and wives," *mitḥunām jūyāpatirūpāni*.

⁸¹ In i. 92, 11 and i. 124, 2, Ushas (the Dawn) is spoken of as, *praminatī manushyā yugāni*, "wearing away human terms of existence, or generations." In commenting on the former text Sāyana explains *yugāni* as equivalent to *kṛita-treṭādīni*, "the Krita, Tretā, and other ages," whilst in explaining the second, he takes the same word as signifying *yugopalakshitān nimeshādi-kāṭvayavān*, "the seconds and other component parts of time indicated by the word," or as equivalent to *yugmāni*, "the conjunctions of men,"—since the dawn scatters abroad to their several occupations men who had been previously congregated together!" In his note on i. 144, 4, he gives an option of two different senses: *manoh sambhandhīni yugāni jūyāpati-rupāni hotradharyu-rupāni vā |* "couples consisting of husband and wife, or of the hotṛi and adhvarṇi priests."

⁸² This verse, ix. 12, 7, is also found in Sāma V. ii. 552, where, however, *yugā* is substituted for *yugā*.

⁸³ This verse occurs also in Sāma V. ii. 1171, and Vāj. S. xii. 111.

rather, in some places, "tribes" of men. In v. 73, 3, the phrase *nāhushā yugā* must have a similar meaning. In i. 158, 6, it is said that the rishi Dīrghatamas became worn out in the tenth *yuga*; on which Professor Wilson remarks (R. V. vol. ii. 104, note): "The scholiast understands *yuga* in its ordinary interpretation; but the *yuga* of five years is perhaps intended, a lustrum, which would be nothing marvellous." Professor Aufrecht proposes to render, "in the tenth stage of life." The first passage of the Rig-veda, in which there is any indication of a considerable mundane period being denoted, is x. 72, 2 f., where "a first," or, "an earlier age (*yuga*) of the gods" is mentioned (*devānām pūrve yuge; devānām prathame yuge*) when "the existent sprang from the non-existent" (*asataḥ sad ajāyata*); but no allusion is made to its length. In the same indefinite way reference is made in x. 97, 1, to certain "plants which were produced before the gods,—three ages (*yugas*) earlier" (*yāḥ oshadhīḥ pūrvāḥ jātāḥ devebhyas tri-yugam purā*). In one verse of the Atharva-veda, however, the word *yuga* is so employed as to lead to the supposition that a period of very long duration is intended. It is there said, viii. 2, 21: *śataim te ayutaīm hāyanān dve yuge tṛiṇi chatvāri kṛiṇmaḥ* | "we allot to thee a hundred, ten thousand, years, two, three, four ages (*yugas*)."⁶⁴ As we may with probability assume that the periods here mentioned proceed in the ascending scale of duration, two *yugas*, and perhaps even one *yuga*, must be supposed to exceed 10,000 years.

The earliest comparison between divine and human periods of duration of which I am aware is found in the text of the Taitt. Br. quoted above in a note to p. 43: "A year is one day of the gods."⁶⁵ But so far as that passage itself shows, there is no reason to imagine that the statement it contains was anything more than an isolated idea, or that the conception had, at the time when the Brāhmaṇas were compiled, been developed, and a system of immense mundane periods, whether

⁶⁴ For the context of this line see Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, page 42.

⁶⁵ An analogous idea is found in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa xiv. 7, 1, 33 ff. (= Brihadāranyaka Upanishad pp. 817 ff. of Cal. ed.) *atha ye śatam manushyānām ānandāḥ sa ekah pitṛiṇām jitalokūnām ānandah* | "now a hundred pleasures of men are one pleasure of the Pitṛis who have conquered the worlds." And so on in the same way: a hundred pleasures of the Pitṛis equalling one pleasure of the Karmadevas (or gods who have become so by works); a hundred pleasures of the latter equalling one pleasure of the gods who were born such, etc.

human or divine, had been elaborated. That, however, the authors of the Brāhmanas were becoming familiar with the idea of extravagantly large numbers is clear from the passage in the Taitt. Br. iii. 12, 9, 2, quoted above, p. 41, in the note on Manu xii. 50, where it is said that the creators were engaged in a sacrifice for 100,000 years.

Professor Roth is of opinion (see his remarks under the word *Kṛita* in his Lexicon) that according to the earlier conception stated in Manu i. 69, and the Mahābhārata (iii. 826 ff.), the four Yugas—*Kṛita*, *Tretā*, *Dvāpara*, and *Kali*, with their mornings and evenings, consisted respectively of no more than 4,800; 3,600; 2,400; and 1,200 ordinary years of mortals; and that it was the commentators on Manu, and the compilers of the Purāṇas, who first converted the years of which they were made up into divine years. The verse of Manu to which Professor Roth refers (i. 69), and the one which follows, are certainly quite silent about the years composing the *Kṛita* age being divine years:

Chatvāry āhuḥ sahasrāṇi varshāṇām tu kṛitām yugam | tasya tārach chhatī sandhyā sandhyāṁśchaścha tathāvidhaḥ | 70. Itareshu sasandhyeshu sasandhāṁśeshu cha trishu | ekapāyena varṭtante sahasrāṇi śatāni cha |
 “They say that four thousand years compose the *kṛita* yuga, with as many hundred years for its morning and the same for its evening. 70. In the other three yugas, with their mornings and evenings, the thousands and hundreds are diminished successively by one.”

Verse 71 is as follows: *Yad etat parisankhyātam ādāv eva chatur-yugam | etad dvādaśa-sahasraṁ devānām yugam uchyate |* which, as explained by Medhātithi, may be thus rendered: “Twelve thousand of these periods of four yugas, as above reckoned, are called a Yuga of the gods.” Medhātithi’s words, as quoted by Kullūka, are these: *Chaturyugair eva dvādaśa-sahasra-sankhyair divyam yugam |* “A divine Yuga is formed by four yugas to the number of twelve thousand.” Kullūka, however, says that his predecessor’s explanation is mistaken, and must not be adopted (*Medhātithiher bhramo nādarttaryah*). His own opinion is that the system of yugas mentioned in vv. 69 and 71 are identical, both being made up of divine years. According to this view, we must translate v. 71 as follows: “The period of four yugas, consisting of twelve thousand years, which has been reckoned above, is called a Yuga of the gods.” This certainly appears to be the

preferable translation, and it is confirmed by the tenor of verse 79. Verse 71, however, may represent a later stage of opinion, as it is not found in the following passage of the Mahābhārata, where the previous verse (69) is repeated, and verse 70 is expanded into three verses, though without any alteration of the sense:

M. Bh. iii. 12826 ff. — *Ādīto manuḥ-vyāghra kṛitsnasya jagataḥ kshaye | chatvāry āhuḥ sahasrāṇi varshāṇāṃ tat kṛitāṃ yugam | tasya tārachchhatī sandhyā sandhyāmścha tathāvidhaḥ |*

"In the beginning, after the destruction of the entire universe, they say that there are four thousand years: that is the Kṛita Yuga, which has a morning of as many hundred years, and an evening of the same duration." And then, after enumerating in like manner the other three Yugas with their respective thousands and hundreds successively diminished by one, the speaker (the sage Mārkaṇḍeya) proceeds in verse 12831: *Eshā dvādaśahasrī yugākhyā parikīrtitā | etat sahasraparyantam aho brāhmam udāhṛitam |* "This period of twelve thousand years is known by the appellation of the Yugas. A period extending to a thousand of these is called a day of Brahmā."

Nowhere, certainly, in this passage is any mention made of the years being divine years.

The earliest known text in which the names of the four Yugas are found is a verse occurring in the story of Sunahśepha in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa vii. 15: *Kaliḥ śayāno bhavati sanjihānas tu dvāparaḥ | uttiṣṭhaṃs tretā bhavati kṛitāṃ sampadyate charan |* "A man while lying is the Kali; moving himself, he is the Dvāpara; rising, he is the Tretā; walking, he becomes the Kṛita."⁸⁶ But this brief allusion leaves us

⁸⁶ This verse has been already translated no less than six times; twice into German by Weber and Roth (Ind. Stud. i. 286 and 460), once into Latin by Streiter (see Ind. Stud. ix. 315), and thrice into English, by Wilson (Journ. R. A. S. for 1851, p. 99), Müller (Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 412), and Haug (Ait. Br. ii. 464). All these authors, except the last, concur in considering the verse as referring to the four Yugas. Dr. Haug, however, has the following note: "Sāyana does not give any explanation of this important passage, where the names of the Yugas are mentioned for the first time. These four names are, as is well known from other sources, . . . names of dice, used at gambling. The meaning of this Gāthā is, There is every success to be hoped; for the unluckiest die, the Kali is lying, two others are slowly moving and half fallen, but the luckiest, the Kṛita, is in full motion. The position of dice here given is indicative of a fair chance of winning the game." Both Dr. Haug's translation and note are criticised by Professor Weber (Ind. Stud. ix. 319). Of the following verses, which occur in Manu ix. 301 f., the second is a paraphrase of that in the Aitareya Brāh-

quite in the dark as to the duration which was assigned to these *yugas* in the age when the *Brāhmaṇa* was compiled.

SECT. VII.—*Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vishṇu Purāṇa.*

I commence with the following general account of the cosmogony of the *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, extracted from Professor Wilson's Preface to his translation of that work, vol. i. p. xciii. :

"The first book of the six, into which the work is divided, is occupied chiefly with the details of creation, primary (*sarga*), and secondary (*pratisarga*); the first explains how the universe proceeds from *Prakṛiti*, or eternal crude matter;⁸⁷ the second, in what manner the forms of things are developed from the elementary substances previously evolved, or how they re-appear after their temporary destruction.⁸⁸ Both these creations are periodical; but the termination of the first occurs only at the end of the life of *Brahmā*, when not only all the gods and all other forms are annihilated, but the elements are again merged into primary substance, besides which only one spiritual being exists. The latter takes place at the end of every *Kalpa* or day of *Brahmā*, and affects only the forms of inferior creatures and lower worlds, leaving the substances of the universe entire, and sages and gods unharmed."⁸⁹

mana : Kṛitam tretā-yugaṁ chaiva dvāparam kalir eva cha | rājno vṛittānt sarrvāṁsī rājā hi yugam uchyate | 302. *Kaliḥ prasupto bhavati sa jāgrat dvāparam yugam | karmasv abhyudyatas tretā vicharaṁs tu kṛitāṁ yugam |* "301. The *Kṛita*, *Tretā*, *Dvāpara*, and *Kali* yugas are all modes of a king's action; for a king is called a *yuga*. 302. While asleep he is the *Kali*; waking he is the *Dvāpara* age; intent upon action he is the *Tretā*, moving about he is the *Kṛita*." The former of these two verses of *Manu* is reproduced nearly verbatim in the *M. Bh.* xii. 3408; and the same idea is expanded in the same book of the same poem, vv. 2674 ff., 2682, 2684, 2686, 2693 ff. The words *kṛita*, *tretā*, *dvāpara*, and *kali*, are found in the *Vāj.-Sanhitā*, xxx. 18, and in the *Taitt. Brāhmaṇa*, iii. 4, 1, 16; but in both places they denote dice, as does also the word *kṛita* in the *Chhāndogya Upan.* iv. 1, 4 (where see the commentary). On the *Yugas* the reader of German may also consult *Weber's Indische Studien*, i. pp. 39, 87 f., 282 ff.

⁸⁷ [See Book i. chapter ii.]

⁸⁸ [See the fourth and following chapters of Book i.]

⁸⁹ See Book i. at the close of chapter vii. p. 113 of vol. i. of Professor Wilson's translation, 2nd edition, and also p. 621 and 630 of the original 4to. edition. As regards,

I proceed with the details of the creation which took place in the Vārāha Kalpa, as described in book i. chapter 4, vv. 2, ff. :

*Atīta-kalpārasāne niśū-suptotthitāḥ prabhuḥ | sattvrodrikas tato
Brahmā śūnyāṁ lokam ataikshata | 3. Nārāyaṇaḥ paro 'chintyaḥ
paresham api sa prabhuḥ | Brahma-svarūpī bhavagān anādiḥ sarva-
sambhavaḥ | . . . 6. Toyāntaḥ sa mahīm jñātvā jagaty ekūrṇave pra-
bhuḥ | anumānād tad-uddhāraṁ karttu-kāmaḥ prajāpatiḥ | 7. Akarot sa
tanūm anyāṁ kalpādishu yathā purā | matsya-kūrmādikūṁ tadvad
vārāhaṁ vapur āsthitāḥ | 8. Veda-yajnamayaṁ rūpam āśeṣa-jagataḥ
sthitau | sthitāḥ sthirātmā sarvātmā paramātmā prajāpatiḥ | 9. Jana-
loka-gataiḥ siddhair Sanakādyair abhishṭhutaḥ | praviveśa tadā toyam
ātmādhāro dharā-dharaḥ | . . . 45. Evaṁ śaṁstūyamānastu para-
mātmā mahādharaḥ | ujjahāra mahīm kshipraṁ nyastarāmś cha mahām-
bhasi | 46. Tasyopari jalaughasya mahatī naur iva sthitā | vitatatatvāt
tu dehasya na mahi yāti samplavam | tataḥ kshitiṁ samām kṛitrā prithi-
vyāṁ so 'chinod girīn | yathā-vibhāgam bhagavān anādiḥ puruṣhottamaḥ
| 47. Prāk-sarga-dagdhān akhilān parvatān prithivītale | amoghena
prabhāvena sasarjāmogha-vāṁchhitaḥ | 48. Bhūri bhāgaṁ tataḥ kṛitrā
sapta-dvīpān yathātathā | bhūr-ādyāmś chaturō lokān pūrvarat sama-
kalpayat | 49. Brahma-rūpadharo devas tato 'sau rajasā 'vṛitaḥ |
chakāra śṛiṣṭim bhagavāmś chatur-vaktra-dharo Hariḥ | 50. nimitta-
mātram evāsau śṛijyānām sarga-karmanām | pradhāna-kāranībhūtā
yato vai śṛijya-śaktayaḥ | 51. Nimitta-mātram muktvaikam nānyat
kinchid apekshyate | nīyate tapatām śreṣṭha sva-śaktyā vastu vastutām |*

“2. At the end of the past (or Pādma) Kalpa, arising from his night slumber, Brahmā, the lord, endowed predominantly with the quality of goodness, beheld the universe void. 3. He (was) the supreme lord Nārāyaṇa, who cannot even be conceived by other beings, the deity without beginning, the source of all things, existing in the form of Brahmā.” [The verse given in Manu i. 10, regarding the derivation of the word Nārāyaṇa (see above p. 35) is here quoted]. “6. This lord of creatures, discovering by inference,—when the world had become one ocean,—that the earth lay within the waters, and being desirous to raise it up, (7) assumed another body. As formerly, at the beginnings of the Kalpas, he had taken the form of a fish,

however, the statement with which the paragraph concludes, compare vol. i. p. 50, as well as vol. ii. p. 269, of the same work.

a tortoise, and so forth,⁹⁰ (so now) entering the body of a boar (8),—a form composed of the vedas and of sacrifice,—the lord of creatures, who, throughout the entire continuance of the world, remains fixed, the universal soul, the supreme soul, self-sustained, the supporter of the earth (9),—being hymned by Sanaka and the other saints, who had (at the dissolution of the lower worlds) proceeded to Janaloka,—entered the water.” [He is then addressed by the goddess Earth in a hymn of praise, as Vishṇu, and as the supreme Brahmā, vv. 10-24. The boar then rises from the lower regions, tossing up the earth with his tusk, and is again lauded by Sanandana and other saints in a second hymn, in the course of which he himself is identified with sacrifice, and his various members with its different instruments and accompaniments, vv. 25-44]. “45. Being thus lauded, the supreme soul, the upholder of the earth, lifted her up quickly and placed her upon the great waters. 46. Resting upon this mass of water, like a vast ship, she does not sink, owing to her expansion. Then, having levelled the earth, the divine eternal Purushottama heaped together mountains according to their divisions. 47. He whose will cannot be frustrated, by his unfailing power, created on the surface of the earth all those mountains which had been burnt up in the former creation. 48. Having then divided the earth, just as it had been, into seven dvīpas, he formed the four worlds Bhūrloka and others as before. 49. Becoming next pervaded with the quality of passion, that divine being Hari, assuming the form of Brahmā, with four faces, effected the creation. 50. But he is merely the instrumental cause of the things to be created and of the creative operations, since the properties of the things to be created arise from Pradhāna as their (material) cause. 51. Excepting an instrumental cause alone, nothing else is required. Every substance (*vastu*) is brought into the state of substance (*vastutā*) by its own inherent power.”⁹¹

⁹⁰ No mention is made in the Brūhmaṇas (as I have already observed) of any such periods as the Kalpas. But here an attempt is made to systematize the different stories scattered through those older works which variously describe the manner in which the creation was effected—with the view, perhaps, of reconciling the discrepancies in those free and artless speculations which offended the critical sense of a later age.

⁹¹ See Professor Wilson's translation of these verses, and the new version proposed by the editor of the second edition, Dr. Hall, p. 66, note. I do not think the phrase

[Before proceeding further with the narrative of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, I wish to quote or refer to some passages from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā and Brāhmaṇa and from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, which appear to furnish the original germs of the legends of the boar, fish, tortoise, and dwarf incarnations.

The first of these texts is from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, vii. 1, 5, 1 ff:

Āpo vai idam agre salilam āsīt | tasmin Prajāpatiḥ vāyur bhūtvā acharat | sa imām apaśyat | tam varāho bhūtvā āharat | tām Viśvakarmā bhūtvā vyamūrṣ | sū aprathata | sū prithivy abhavat | tat prithivyai prithivītvam | tasyām āsrāmyat Prajāpatiḥ | sa devān asṛijata Vasūn Rudrān Ādityān | te devāḥ Prajāpatim abruvan "prajāyāmahai" iti | so 'bravīd "yathā aham yushmāns tapasā asṛikṣhi evaṁ tapasi prajānanam icchhadhvam" iti | tebhyo 'gnim āyatanam prūyachhad "etena āyatanena śrāmyata" iti | te 'gninā āyatanena āsrāmyan | te saṁvatsare śkāṁ gām asṛijanta |

"This universe was formerly waters, fluid. On it Prajāpati, becoming wind, moved.⁹² He saw this (earth). Becoming a boar, he took her up. Becoming Viśvakarman, he wiped (the moisture from) her. She extended. She became the extended one (prithivī). From this the earth derives her designation as the extended one. In her Prajāpati performed arduous devotion. He created gods, Vasus, Rudras,⁹⁴ and Adityas. The gods said to Prajāpati, 'let us be propagated.' He answered, 'As I have created you through austere fervour, so do ye seek after propagation in austere fervour.' He gave them Agni as a resting-place (saying), 'With this as a resting-place perform your devotion.' They (accordingly) performed devotion with Agni as a resting-place. In a year they created one cow, etc."⁹³

sva-saktyā can be properly rendered, as Dr. Hall does, "by its potency." The reading of the MSS. in v. 50, *pradhāna-kāraṇābhūtāḥ* seems to me doubtful, as it would most naturally mean "have become the Pradhāna-cause." I conjecture *pradhāna-kāraṇodbhūtāḥ*, which gives the sense which seems to be required.

⁹² It is possible that the idea assigned to the word *Nārāyaṇa* (see Manu i. 10, above), "he whose place of movement is the waters," may be connected with this passage. See also Genesis i. 2, "And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters."

⁹³ After having noticed this passage in the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, I became aware that it had been previously translated by Mr. Colebrooke (Essays i. 75, or p. 44 of Williams & Norgate's edition). Mr. Colebrooke prefaces his version by remarking, "The pre-

The second passage is from the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, i. 1, 3, 5 ff. *Āpo vai idam agre salilam āsīt | tena Prajāpatiḥ āsrūmyat "katham idaṁ syād" iti | so 'paśyat pushkara-parnaṁ tishthat | so 'manyata "asti vai tad yasminn idam adhitishthati" iti | sa varāho rūpaṁ kṛtvā upanyamajjat | sa pṛthivīm adhaḥ ārechhat | tasyā upahatya udamajjat | tat pushkara-parne 'prathayat | yad "aprathata" tat pṛthivyai pṛthivītvam | "abhūt vai idam" iti tad bhūmyai bhūmitvam | tām diśo 'nu vātaḥ samavahat | tām śarkarābhīr adṛimhat |*

"This (universe) was formerly water, fluid." With that (water) Prajāpati practised arduous devotion (saying), 'how shall this (universe be (developed))?' He beheld a lotus-leaf standing.⁹³ He thought, 'there is somewhat on which this (lotus-leaf) rests.' He as a boar—having assumed that form—plunged beneath towards it. He found the earth down below. Breaking off (a portion of) her, he rose to the surface. He then extended it on the lotus-leaf. Inasmuch as he extended it, that is the extension of the extended one (the earth). This became (*abhūt*). From this the earth derives its name of *bhūmī*. The wind carried her, to the four quarters. He strengthened her with gravel, etc., etc. *१३ १४ १५ १६ १७ १८ १९ २० २१ २२ २३ २४ २५ २६ २७ २८ २९ ३० ३१ ३२ ३३ ३४ ३५ ३६ ३७ ३८ ३९ ४० ४१ ४२ ४३ ४४ ४५ ४६ ४७ ४८ ४९ ५० ५१ ५२ ५३ ५४ ५५ ५६ ५७ ५८ ५९ ६० ६१ ६२ ६३ ६४ ६५ ६६ ६७ ६८ ६९ ७० ७१ ७२ ७३ ७४ ७५ ७६ ७७ ७८ ७९ ८० ८१ ८२ ८३ ८४ ८५ ८६ ८७ ८८ ८९ ९० ९१ ९२ ९३ ९४ ९५ ९६ ९७ ९८ ९९ १००*

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiv. 1, 2, 11, has the following reference to the same idea, although here Prajāpati himself is not the boar:

Iyatī ha vai iyam agre pṛthivyā āsa prādeśa-mātrī | tām Emūshaḥ itī varāhaḥ ujjaghāna | so 'syāḥ patiḥ Prajāpatis tena eva enam etan-mithunena priyena dhūmnā samardhayati kṛtsnaṁ karoti |

"Formerly this earth was only so large, of the size of a span. A boar called Emūsha raised her up. Her lord Prajāpati, therefore, prospers him with (the gift of) this pair, the object of his desire, and makes him complete."

Another of the incarnations referred to in the preceding passage of

sent extract was recommended for selection by its allusion to a mythological notion, which apparently gave origin to the story of the *Varāha-avatāra*, and from which an astronomical period, entitled *Calpa*, has perhaps been taken."

⁹⁴ The Commentator gives an alternative explanation, viz., that the word *salila* is the same as *sarira*, according to the text of the Veda, "these worlds are *sarira*" ("*ime vai lokāḥ sariram" iti śruteḥ*).

⁹⁵ "Supported upon the end of a long stalk" (*dirghanālagre'vasthitam*), according to the Commentator. In a passage from the Taitt. Āranyaka, already quoted (p. 32, above), it is said that Prajāpati himself was born on a lotus-leaf.

the Vishṇu Purāṇa is foreshadowed in the following text from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, vii. 5, 1, 5 :

Sa yat kūrmo nāma | etad vai rūpaṁ kṛtvā Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asṛijata | yad asṛijata akarot tat | yad akarot tasmāt kūrmaḥ | kaśyapo vai kūrmaḥ | tasmād āhuḥ "sarvāḥ prajāḥ kāśyapyāḥ" iti | sa yaḥ sa kūrmo sau sa Ādityaḥ |

"As to its being called *kūrma* (a tortoise); Prajāpati having taken this form, created offspring. That which he created, he made (*akarot*); since he made, he is (called) *kūrmaḥ*. The word *kaśyapa* means tortoise; hence men say all creatures are descendants of Kaśyapa. This tortoise is the same as Āditya."⁹⁶

The oldest version of the story of the fish incarnation, which is to be found in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 8, 1, 1 ff., will be quoted in the next chapter.

For the passages which appear to supply the germ of the dwarf incarnation, the reader may consult the fourth volume of this work, pp. 54-58 and 107 f.

It will have been noticed that in the passage above adduced from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, the word Nārāyaṇa is applied to Vishṇu, and that it is the last named deity who (though in the form of Brahmā) is said to have taken the form of a boar. In the verses formerly cited from Manu (i. 9, 10), however, Nārāyaṇa is an epithet, not of Vishṇu, but of Brahmā; and in the following text, from the Rāmāyaṇa, xi. 110, 3, it is Brahmā who is said to have become a boar :

*Sarvaṁ salilam evāsīt prithivī tatra nirmītā | tataḥ samabhavad Brahmā svayambhūr daivataiḥ saha*⁹⁷ | *sa varāhas tato bhūtvā projjahāra va-sundharām ityādi |*

"All was water only, and in it the earth was fashioned. Then arose

⁹⁶ With this compare the mention made of a tortoise in the passage cited above, p. 32, from the Taitt. Āranyaka.

⁹⁷ Such is the reading of Schlegel's edition, and of that which was recently printed at Bombay, both of which, no doubt, present the most ancient text of the Rāmāyaṇa. The Gauḍa recension, however, which deviates widely from the other, and appears to have modified it in conformity with more modern taste and ideas, has here also introduced a various reading in the second of the lines quoted in the text, and identifies Brahmā with Vishṇu in the following manner: *tataḥ samabhavad Brahmā svayambhūr Viṣṇur avyayaḥ* | "Then arose Brahmā the self-existent and imperishable Vishṇu."

Brahmā, the self existent, with the deities. He then, becoming a boar, raised up the earth," etc.

I now return to the narrative of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.]

The further process of cosmogony is thus described in chapter v. :

Maitreya uvācha | 1. *Yathā sasarjja devo 'sau devarshi-pitri-dānavān | manushya-tiryag-vṛikshādīn bhū-vyoma-salilaukasah |* 2. *Yad-guṇaṁ yat-svabhūvaṁ cha yad-rūpaṁ cha jagad dvija | sargūdaṁ śṛiṣṭavān Brahmā tad mamāchakaksha vistarāt | Parāśara uvācha* | 3. *Maitreya kathayāmy esha śṛiṇushva susamūhitah | yathā sasarjja devo 'sau devādīn akhilān vibhuh | śṛiṣṭīm chintayatas tasya kalpādishu yathā purā | abuddhi-pūrvakah sargah prādurbhūtas tamomayah |* 4. *Tamo moho mahāmohas tūmisro hy andha-saṁjnītaḥ | avidyā pancha-parvaishū prādurbhūtā mahātmanah |* 5. *Panchadhā 'vasthitaḥ sargo dhyāyato 'prati-bodharān | vahir-anto-'prakāśas cha saṁvṛittātmā nagātmakah |* 6. *Mukhyā nagā yataḥ choktā mukhya-sargas tatas tv ayam |* 7. *Taṁ dṛiṣṭvā 'sūdhakāṁ sargam amanyad aparam punah | tasyūbhidyāyataḥ sargas tiryak-srotū⁹⁸ 'bhyavarttata |* 8. *Yasmāt tiryak pravṛittah sa tiryak-srotas tataḥ smṛitah |* 9. *Paśvādayas te vikhyūtās tamaḥ-prayāḥ hy are-dinaḥ | utpatha-grāhīnas chaiva te 'jñāne jñāna-māninaḥ |* 10. *Ahamkṛitā ahammānū ashlāvīṁśad-vadhūn vitūḥ | antaḥ-prakāśās te sarve āvṛitās cha parasparam |* 11. *Tam apy asūdhakam matvā dhyāyato 'nyas tato 'bhavat | ūrdhvasrotas tṛitīyas tu sūttvikorddhvam avarttata⁹⁹ |* 12. *Te sukha-prīti-bahulā bahir antaḥ cha nāvṛitūḥ¹⁰⁰ | prakāśū bahir antaḥ cha ūrdhvas-roto-bhavāḥ smṛitūḥ |* 13. *Tusṭy-ūtmakas tṛitīyas tu deva-sargas tu yaḥ smṛitah | tasmin sarge 'bhavat prītir nishpanne Brahmanas tadā |* 14. *Tato 'nyāṁ sa tadā dadhyau sūdhakāṁ sargam uttamam | asūdhakāṁs tu tūn jñātvā mukhya-sargūdi-sambharān |* 15. *Tathā 'bhidyāyatas tasya satyābhidyāyinas tataḥ | prādurbhūtas tadā 'vyaktād arvāk-srotas tu sūdhakah |* 16. *Yasmād arvāg vyavarttanta tato 'rvāk-srotasas tu te | te cha prakāśa-bahulā tamodriktū¹⁰¹ rajo 'dhikūḥ | tasmāt te duḥkha-bahulā bhūyo bhūyas cha kārīṇah | prakāśū bahir antaḥ cha manushyā sūdhakās tu te | . . . 23. Ity ete tu samākhyūtā nava sargūḥ Prajā-*

⁹⁸ *iti sandhir āśhaḥ* —Comm.

⁹⁹ The reading of the Vāyu P., in the parallel passage, is *tasyūbhidyāyato nityāṁ sūttvikah samavarttata | ūrdhvasrotas tṛitīyas tu sa chaivordhvaṁ vyavasthitaḥ |* The combination *sūttvikorddhvam* in the text of the Vishṇu P. must be *āśha*.

¹⁰⁰ For *nāvṛitūḥ* the Vāyu P. reads *saṁvṛitūḥ*.

¹⁰¹ *Iti sandhirāśhaḥ* | Comm. But there is a form *tama*. The Vāyu P. has *tamaḥ-saktāḥ*.

*pateḥ | prākṛitā caikṛitās chaiva jagato mūla-hetavaḥ | sṛijato jagadīśa-
 sya kim anyach chhrotum ichhasi | Maitreya uvācha | 24. Saṁkshēpāt
 kathitāḥ sargo devādīnām tvayā mune | vistarāch chhrotum ichhāmi
 tvatto munivarottama | Parāśara uvācha | karmabhir bhāvitāḥ pūrvaiḥ
 kuśalakuśalais tu tāḥ | khyātyā tayā hy anirmuktāḥ saṁhāre hy upa-
 saṁhṛitāḥ | 25. Sthāvarāntāḥ surādyaścha prajā brahmaṁś chaturvi-
 dhāḥ | Brahmaṇaḥ kurvataḥ sṛiṣṭīm jajñire mūnasis tu tāḥ | 26. Tato
 devāsrapitṛiṇ mūnushāṁś cha chatuṣṭayam | sisṛikṣhur ambhāmśy
 etāni svam ātmānam ayūyujat | 27. Yuktātmanas tamomātrā udriktā
 'bhūt Prajāpateḥ | sisṛikṣhur jaghanāt pūrvam asurāḥ jajñire tataḥ |
 28. Utsasarja tatas tām tu tamo-mātrātmikām tanum | sū tu tyaktā
 tanus tena Maitreyābhūḍ vibhāvarī | 29. Sisṛikṣhur anya-deha-sthaḥ
 pṛitim āpa tataḥ surāḥ | sattvodriktāḥ samudbhūtāḥ mukhato Brah-
 maṇo dvija | 30. Tyaktā sū 'pi tanus tena sattva-prāyam abhūḍ dinam |
 tato hi balino rātrāv asurā devatā divā | 31. Sattvamātrātmikām eva
 tato 'nyām jagṛihe tanum | pitṛivād manyamānasya pitaras tasya
 jajñire | 32. Utsasarja pitṛiṇ sṛiṣṭrū tatas tām api sa prabhuh | sū
 chotsṛiṣṭā 'bhavat sandhyā dina-naktāntara-sthitiḥ | 33. Rajo-mātrātmikām
 anyām jagṛihe sa tanum tataḥ | rajo-mātrokṣatā jātā manushyā
 dvija-sattama | tām apy āsū sa tatyāja tanum ādyaḥ Prajāpatih |
 jyotsnā samabhatat sū 'pi prāk-sandhyā yā 'bhidhīyate | 34. Jyotsno-
 dgame tu balino manushyāḥ pitaras tatāḥ | Maitreya sandhyā-samaye
 tasmād ete bhavanti vai | 35. Jyotsnā-rātry-ahanī sandhyā chatvāry
 etāni vai vibhoḥ | Brahmaṇas tu śarīrāni triguṇūpāśrayāni cha |
 36. Rajo-mātrātmikām eva tato 'nyām jagṛihe tanum | tataḥ kṣud
 Brahmaṇo jātā jajñe kopas tayā tataḥ | 37. Kṣut-khāmān andhakūre
 'tha so 'sṛijad bhagavāms tataḥ | Virūpāḥ śmaśrulā jātās te 'bhyadhā-
 vaṁś tataḥ prabhum | 38. "Maivam bho rakṣyatām esha" yair uktaṁ
 rūkṣhas tu te | ūchuḥ "khādūma" ity anye ye te yakṣhās tu yakṣhaṇāt |*

"Maitreya said: 1. Tell me in detail how at the beginning of the creation that deity Brahmā formed the gods, rishis, fathers, dānavas, men, beasts, trees, etc., dwelling respectively on the earth, in the sky, and in the water; 2. and with what qualities, with what nature, and of what form he made the world. Parāśara replied: 3. I declare to thee, Maitreya, how that deity created the gods and all other beings; listen with attention. While he was meditating on creation, as at the beginnings of the (previous) Kalpas, there appeared an insentient crea-

tion, composed of gloom (*tamas*). 4. Gloom, illusion, great illusion, darkness, and what is called utter darkness—such was the five-fold ignorance, which was manifested from that great Being, 5. as he was meditating—an insensible creation,¹⁰² under five conditions, devoid of feeling either without or within,¹⁰³ closed up, motionless. 6. And since motionless objects are called the primary objects, this is called the primary (*mukhya*) creation.¹⁰⁴ 7. Beholding this creation to be ineffective,¹⁰⁵ he again contemplated another. As he was desiring it the brute (*tiryaksrotas*) creation came forth. 8. Since (in its natural functions) it acts horizontally it is called Tiryaksrotas. 9. The (creatures composing it) are known as cattle, etc., distinguished mainly by darkness (*tamas*) ignorant, following irregular courses,¹⁰⁶ while in a state of ignorance having a conceit of knowledge, (10) self-regarding, self-esteeming, affected by the twenty-eight kinds of defects, endowed with inward feeling, and mutually closed. 11. As Brahmā, regarding this creation also as ineffective, was again meditating, another creation, the third, or *ūrdhvasrotas*, which was good, rose upward. 12. They (the creatures belonging to this creation) abounding in happiness and satisfaction, being unclosed both without and within, and possessed both of external and internal feeling, are called the offspring of the *Ūrdhvasrotas* creation. 13. This third creation, known as that of the gods, was one full of enjoyment. When it was completed, Brahmā was pleased. 14. He then contemplated another creation, effective and most excellent, since he regarded as ineffective the beings sprung from the primary and other creations. 15. While he, whose will is efficacious, was so desiring, the Arvāksrotas, an effective creation, was manifested.¹⁰⁶ 16. They

¹⁰² The Vāyu P. here inserts an additional line, *sarvatas tamasū chaiva dīpaḥ kumbha-vad āvṛitaḥ* | “and covered on all sides with darkness, as a lamp by a jar.”

¹⁰³ *Vahir-anto 'prakūśascha* appears to be the true reading, as the Commentator renders the last word by *prakṛiṣṭa-jñāna-śūnyaḥ*, “devoid of knowledge.” But if this be the correct reading, it is ungrammatical, as *antaḥ* and *aparakūśa* would properly make *antar-aparakūśa*, not *anto 'prakūśa*. But the Purāṇas have many forms which are irregular (*ārsha*, “peculiar to the rishis,” “vedic,” or “antiquated” as the Commentators style them). The Taylor MS. of the Vāyu Purāṇa reads in the parallel passage *bahir-antaḥ-prakūśascha*.

¹⁰⁴ See Dr. Hall's note p. 70 on Professor Wilson's translation; and also the passage quoted above p. 16 from the Taitt. Sanh. vii. 1, 1, 4, where the word *mukhya* is otherwise applied and explained.

¹⁰⁵ *Bhakshyādi-vivēkak-ānāḥ* | “Making no distinction in food, etc., etc.” Comm.

¹⁰⁶ Compare M. Bh. xiv. 1038.

(the creatures belonging to it) are called *Arvāksrotas*, because (in their natural functions) they acted downwardly. And they abound in sensation (*prakāśa*) and are full of darkness (*tamas*) with a preponderance of passion (*rajas*). Hence they endure much suffering, and are constantly active, with both outward and inward feeling. These beings were men, and effective."¹⁰⁷

In the next following verses, 17–22, the names of the different creations, described in the first part of this section, and in the second chapter of the first book of the *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, are recapitulated, and two others, the *Anugraha* and the *Kaumāra*, are noticed, but not explained.¹⁰⁸

The speaker *Parāśara* then adds: "23. Thus have the nine creations of *Prajāpati*, both *Prākṛita* and *Vaikṛita*, the radical causes of the world, been recounted. What else dost thou desire to hear regarding the creative lord of the world? *Maitreya* replies: 24. By thee, most excellent *Muni*, the creation of the gods and other beings has been summarily narrated: I desire to hear it from thee in detail. *Parāśara* rejoins: Called into (renewed) existence in consequence of former actions, good or bad, and unliberated from that destination when they were absorbed at the (former) dissolution of the world, (25) the four descriptions of creatures, beginning with things immovable and ending with gods, were produced, o *Brāhman*, from *Brahmā* when he was creating, and they sprang from his mind. 26. Being then desirous to create these streams (*ambhūmāsi*)¹⁰⁹—the four classes of Gods, Asuras, Fathers, and Men, he concentrated himself. 27. *Prajāpati*, thus concentrated, received a body, which was formed of the quality of gloom (*tamas*); and as he desired to create, Asuras were first produced from his groin. 28. He then abandoned that body formed entirely of gloom; which when abandoned by him became night. 29. Desiring to create, when he had occupied another body, *Brahmā* experienced pleasure; and then gods, full of the quality of goodness, sprang from his mouth. 30. That body

¹⁰⁷ The *Vāyu P.* adds here: *Lakṣaṇais tārakadyaiścha aṣṭadhū cha vyavasthitūḥ | siddhātmanō manushyās te gandharva-saha-dharmīṇaḥ | ity eṣa tajasah sargo hy arvāksrotāḥ prakīrtitāḥ |* "Constituted with preservative(?) characteristics, and in an eightfold manner. These were men perfect in their essence, and in nature equal to *Gandharvas*. This was the lustrous creation known as *Arvāksrotas*."

¹⁰⁸ See Dr. Hall's edition of *Wilson's V. P.* pp. 32 ff.; and pp. 74 ff.

¹⁰⁹ This word is borrowed from the passage of the *Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa*, ii. 3, 8, 3, quoted above, p. 23. Most of the particulars in the rest of the narrative are imitated from another passage of the same *Brāhmaṇa*, ii. 2, 9, 5 ff., also quoted above, p. 28.

also, being abandoned by him, became day, which is almost entirely good. Hence the Asuras are powerful by night¹¹⁰ and the gods by day. 31. He then assumed another body formed of pure goodness; and the Fathers were born from him, when he was regarding himself as a father.¹¹¹ 32. The Lord, after creating the Fathers, abandoned that body also; which, when so abandoned, became twilight, existing between day and night. 33. He next took another body entirely formed of passion; and men, in whom passion is violent, were produced. The primeval Prajāpati speedily discarded this body also, which became faint light (*jyotsnā*), which is called early twilight. 34. Hence, at the appearance of this faint light, men are strong, while the fathers are strong at evening-twilight. 35. Morning-twilight, night, day, and evening-twilight, these are the four bodies of Brahmā, and the receptacles of the three qualities. 36. Brahmā next took another body entirely formed of passion, from which sprang hunger, and through it anger was produced. 37. The Divine Being then in darkness created beings emaciated with hunger, which, hideous of aspect, and with long beards, rushed against the lord. 38. Those who said, 'Let him not be preserved' (*rakshyatām*) were called Rākshasas, whilst those others who cried, 'Let us eat (him)' were called Yakshas from 'eating' (*yakshanāt*).¹¹²

It is not necessary for my purpose that I should quote at length the conclusion of the section. It may suffice to say that verses 39 to 51 describe the creation of serpents from Brahmā's hair; of Bhūtas; of Gandharvas; of birds (*vayūṁsi*) from the creator's life (*vayas*), of sheep from his breast, of goats from his mouth, of kine from his belly and sides, and of horses,¹¹³ elephants, and other animals from his feet; of plants from his hairs; of the different metres and vedas from his eastern, southern, western, and northern mouths. Verses 52 ff. contain a recapitulation of the creative operations, with some statement of the

¹¹⁰ In the Rāmāyaṇa, Sundara Kāṇḍa 82, 13 f. (Gorresio's edit.) we read: *Rakshasāṁ rajanī-kūlaḥ saṁyugeshu prasasyate* | 14. *Tasmād rājan nīṣā-yuddhe jayo 'mākaṁ na saṁsayaḥ* | "Night is the approved time for the Rakshases to fight. We should therefore undoubtedly conquer in a nocturnal conflict."

¹¹¹ This idea also is borrowed from Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 8, 2.

¹¹² See Wilson's V. P. vol. i. p. 83, and Dr. Hall's note.

¹¹³ See the passage from the Taitt. Saṁh. vii. 1, 1, 4 ff. quoted above, p. 16, where the same origin is ascribed to horses.

principles according to which they were conducted. Of these verses I quote only the following: 55. *Teshām ye yāni karmāni prak-śiṣṭhyām pratipedire | tāny eva pratipadyante śriyamānāḥ punaḥ punaḥ | . . .* 60. *Yathārtāv ritu-lingāni nānūrūpāni paryaye | dṛiṣyante tāni tānyeva tathā bhāvā yugādishu |* 61. *Karoty evamvidhām śiṣṭim kalpātau sa punaḥ punaḥ | śiṣṭikṣāśakti-yukto 'sau śriya-śakti-prachoditaḥ |* "These creatures, as they are reproduced time after time, discharge the same functions as they had fulfilled in the previous creation . . . 60. Just as, in each season of the year, all the various characteristics of that season are perceived, on its recurrence, to be the very same as they had been before; so too are the beings produced at the beginnings of the ages"¹¹⁴ 61. Possessing both the will and the ability to create, and impelled by the powers inherent in the things to be created, the deity produces again and again a creation of the very same description at the beginning of every Kalpa."

The sixth section of the same book of the V. P., of which I shall cite the larger portion, professes to give a more detailed account of the creation of mankind.

V. P. i. 6, 1. *Maitreya uvācha | Arrāksrotas tu kathito bhavatā yas tu mūnushaḥ | brahman vistarato brūhi Brahmā tam aśrijad yathā |* 2. *Yathā cha varṇān aśrijad yad-guṇānīś cha mahāmune | yachcha teshām smṛitām karma vipṛadīnām tad uchyatām | Parāśara uvācha |* 3. *Satyābhidyūyinas tasya śiṣṭikṣor Brahmano jagat | ajāyanta dviśaśreshṭha sattvadrīktū mukhāt prajāḥ |* 4. *Vakshaso rajasodriktās tathā 'nyā Brahmano 'bhavan | rajasū tamasū chaiva samudriktās tathorutaḥ |* 5. *Padbhyām anyūḥ prajā Brahmā sasarija dviśa-sattama | tamaḥ-pradhūnās tūḥ sarvās chāturvarṇyam idaṁ tataḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kṣattriyā vaiśyāḥ śūdrāscha dviśa-sattama | pādoru-vakshaḥ-sthalato mukhataś cha samudgatāḥ |* 6. *Yajna-nishpattaye sarvam etad Brahmā chakāra vai | chāturvarṇyam mahābhūga yajna-sādhanam uttamam |* 7. *Yajnair āpyūyitā devā vṛiṣṭy-utsargena vai prajāḥ | āpyūyayante dharma-jna yājñāḥ kalyāṇa-hetavaḥ |* 8. *Nishpadyante narais tais tu sva-karmābhiritaiḥ sadā | viruddhācharanāpetaiḥ sadbhīḥ sanmārga-gāmibhīḥ |* 9. *Svargūpatargau mūnushyūt prāpnuvanti narā mune | yach chābhiruchitām sthūnām tad yānti manuḥ dviśa |* 10. *Prajās tūḥ Brahmanā śiṣṭās chāturvarṇya-vyavasthitau | samyak śraddhā-samāchāra-pra-*

¹¹⁴ Verses similar to this occur in Manu i. 30; and in the Mahābhārata xii. 8550 f.

*vanā muni-sattama | 11. Yatthechhā-vāsa-niratāḥ sarvābādha-vivarjitāḥ |
 śuddhāntaḥ-karaṇāḥ śuddhāḥ sarvānushṭhāna-nirmalāḥ | 14.¹¹⁵ Sud-
 dhe cha tāsām manasi śuddhe 'ntaḥ-saṁsthite Harau | śuddha-jñānam
 prapaśyanti Viśṇu-ākhyam yena tatpadam | 15. Tataḥ kālātmake yo
 'sau sa chāṁśaḥ kathito Hareḥ | sa pātayaty agho ghoram alpam alpālpa-
 sūravat | 16. Adharma-vīja-bhūtaṁ tu tamo-lobha-samudbhavam | pra-
 jāsū tāsū Maitreya rāgādikam asādhakam | 17. Tataḥ sā sahaajā siddhis
 tāsām nātiva jāyate | rasollāsūdayaś chānyāḥ siddhayaḥ 'śṭau bhavanti
 yāḥ | 18. Tāsū kṣhīṇāsv aśeshāsu varddhamāne cha pūtake | dvandvādi-
 bhava-duḥkharāntāḥ tā bhavanti tataḥ prajāḥ | 19. Tato durgāṇi tās cha-
 krur vārkyam pūrvatam audakam | kṛitimaṁ cha tathā durgam pura-
 karvataḥ yat | 20. Gṛihāṇi cha yathānyāyāṁ teshu chakruḥ purā-
 dishu | śītātapaḍi-bādhānām praśamāya mahāmāte | 21. Pratikāram
 imaṁ kṛitvā śītādes tāḥ prajāḥ punaḥ | vārttopāyaṁ tataś chakrur
 hasta-siddhaṁ cha karma-jam | . . . 26. Grāmyāranyāḥ smṛitā hy etā
 ośadhyaś cha chaturdaśa | yajna-nishpattaye yajnas tathā "sām hetur
 uttamaḥ | 27. Etāś cha saha yajṇena prajānām karūnam param |
 parāpara-vidāḥ prājñās tato yajnān vitanvate | 28. Ahany ahany
 anushṭhānam yajnānām munisattama | upakūra-karam puṁsām kriya-
 mānāḥ cha śānti-dam | 29. Teshāṁ tu kālā-sṛishṭo 'sau pāpa-vindur
 mahāmāte | chetassu varṛidhe chakrus te na yajneshu mānasam | 30.
 Veda-vādāṁs tathā devān yajnakarmādikaṁ cha yat | tat sarvaṁ nin-
 damānās te yajna-ryāsedha-kāriṇaḥ | 31. Pravrṛitti-mārga-vyuchchitti-
 kāriṇo veda-nindakāḥ | durātmāno durāchārā babhūruḥ kuṭilāśayāḥ |
 32. Saṁsiddhāyām tu vārttāyām prajāḥ sṛishṭvā Prajāpatiḥ | maryā-
 dām sthāpayāmāsa yathā-sthānam yathā-guṇam | 34. Varnānām āśra-
 mānām cha dharmān dharmā-bhṛitām vara | lokāṁś sarva-varṇānām
 samyag dharmānupālīnām | 35. Prājāpatyam brāhmaṇānām smṛitām
 sthānām kriyāvātām | sthānam aindraṁ kṣhatṛiyānām sangrāmeshv
 anivarttīnām | 36. Vaiśyānām mārutam sthānām śva-dharmam anu-
 varttīnām | gāndharāṁ śūdra-jātīnām paricharyāsu varttīnām |*

"Maitreya says: 1. You have described to me the Arvāksrotas, or human, creation: declare to me, o Brahman, in detail the manner in which Brahmā formed it. 2. Tell me how, and with what qualities, he created the castes, and what are traditionally reputed to be the

¹¹⁵ There are no verses numbered 12 and 13, the MSS. passing from the 11th to the 14th.

functions of the Brāhmans and others. Parāśara replies: 3. When, true to his design, Brahmā became desirous to create the world, creatures in whom goodness (*sattva*) prevailed sprang from his mouth; (4) others in whom passion (*rajas*) predominated came from his breast; others in whom both passion and darkness (*tamas*) were strong, proceeded from his thighs; (5) others he created from his feet, whose chief characteristic was darkness. Of these was composed the system of four castes, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, who had respectively issued from his mouth, breast, thighs, and feet. 6. Brahmā formed this¹¹⁶ entire fourfold institution of classes for the performance of sacrifice, of which it is an excellent instrument. 7. Nourished by sacrifices, the gods nourish mankind by discharging rain. Sacrifices, the causes of prosperity, (8) are constantly celebrated by virtuous men, devoted to their duties, who avoid wrong observances, and walk in the right path. 9. Men, in consequence of their humanity, obtain heaven and final liberation; and they proceed to the world which they desire. 10. These creatures formed by Brahmā in the condition of the four castes, (were) perfectly inclined to conduct springing from religious faith, (11) loving to dwell wherever they pleased, free from all sufferings, pure in heart, pure, spotless in all observances. 14. And in their pure minds,—the pure Hari dwelling within them,—(there existed) pure knowledge whereby they beheld his highest station, called (that of) Viṣṇu.¹¹⁷ 15. Afterwards that which is described as the portion of Hari consisting of Time¹¹⁸ infused into those beings direful sin, in the form of desire and the like, ineffective (of man's end), small in amount, but gradually increasing in force, (16) the seed of unrighteousness, and sprung from darkness and cupidity. 17. Thenceforward their innate perfectness was but slightly evolved: and as all the other eight perfections called *rasollāsa* and the rest (18) declined, and sin increased, these creatures (mankind) were afflicted with suffering arising

¹¹⁶ How does this agree with the statements made in the Taitt. Sanh. vii. 1, 1, 4 ff. as quoted above, p. 16, and in the Taitt. Br. iii. 2, 3, 9, p. 21, that the Sūdra is incapacitated for sacrifice, and that anything he milks out is no oblation?

¹¹⁷ This alludes to an expression in the Rig-veda, i. 22, 20. See the 4th vol. of this work, p. 64.

¹¹⁸ In regard to *Kāla*, "Time," see Wilson's V. P. vol. i. p. 18 f., and the passages from the Atharva-veda, extracted in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 380 ff.

out of the pairs (of susceptibilities to pleasure and pain, etc., etc.) 19. They then constructed fastnesses among trees, on hills, or amid waters, as well as artificial fortresses, towns, villages, etc. 20. And in these towns, etc., they built houses on the proper plan, in order to counteract cold, heat, and other discomforts. 21. Having thus provided against cold, etc., they devised methods of livelihood depending upon labour, and executed by their hands." The kinds of grain which they cultivated are next described in the following verses 22 to 25. The text then proceeds, verse 26: "These are declared to be the fourteen kinds of grain, cultivated and wild, fitted for sacrifice; and sacrifice is an eminent cause of their existence. 27. These, too, along with sacrifice, are the most efficacious sources of progeny. Hence those who understand cause and effect celebrate sacrifices. 28. Their daily performance is beneficial to men, and delivers from sins committed. 29. But that drop of sin which had been created by time increased in men's hearts, and they disregarded sacrifice. 30. Reviling the Vedas, and the prescriptions of the Vedas, the gods, and all sacrificial rites, etc., obstructing oblations, (31) and cutting off the path of activity,¹¹⁹ they became malignant, vicious, and perverse in their designs. 32. The means of subsistence being provided, Prajāpati, having created living beings, established a distinction according to their position and qualities (see verses 3 to 5 above), (and fixed) the duties of the castes and orders, and the worlds (to be attained after death) by all the castes which perfectly fulfilled their duties. 33. The world of Prajāpati is declared to be the (future) abode of those Brāhmanas who are assiduous in religious rites; the realm of Indra the abode of those Kshatriyas who turn not back in battle; (34) that of the Maruts the abode of those Vaiśyas who fulfil their duties; and that of the Gandharvas the abode of the men of Śudra race who abide in their vocation of service." In the remaining verses of the chapter (35 to 39) the realms of blessedness destined for the reception of more eminent saints are briefly noticed, as well as the infernal regions, to which the wicked are doomed.

¹¹⁹ *Pravṛtti-mārga-vyuchchitti-kṛināḥ*. The Commentator ascribes this to the human race being no longer sufficiently propagated, for he adds the explanation: *yajñānanuṣṭhāne devair avarshaṇād annābhūvena prajā-ṛiddher asiḍdheḥ* | "because population did not increase from the want of food caused by the gods ceasing to send rain in consequence of the non-celebration of sacrifice."

At the beginning of the seventh section, without any further enquiry on the part of Maitreya, Parāśara proceeds as follows :

V. P. i. 7, 1. *Tato 'bhidhyāyatas tasya jajnire mānasīḥ prajāḥ | tach-chharira-samutpannaiḥ kūryais taiḥ kūranaiḥ saha | 2. Kshettrajñāḥ samavarttanta gūtrebhyas tasya dhimataḥ | te sarve samavarttanta ye mayā prāg udāhṛitāḥ | 3. Devādyāḥ sthāvarāntās cha traigunya-vishaye sthitāḥ | eram bhūtāni śṛiṣṭāni charāni sthāvarāni cha | 4. Yadā 'sya tāḥ prajāḥ sarvā va vyavarddhanta dhimataḥ | athānyān mānasān putrān sadṛiṣān ātmano 'srijat | 5. Bhṛiguṃ Pulastyaṃ Pulahaṃ Kratum Angirasaṃ tathā | Marīchiṃ Dakṣhaṃ Atriṃ cha Vasish-ṭhaṃ chaiva mānasān | nava brahmāṇa ity ete purāṇe niśchayaṃ gatāḥ | 6. Sanandanādayo ye cha purvaṃ śṛiṣṭās tu Vedhasā | na te lokeshv asajjanta nirapekshūḥ prajāsu te | sarve te chāgata-jñānā vīta-rāgā vimatsarāḥ | 7. Teshv evaṃ nirapeksheshu loka-śṛiṣṭau mahātmanaḥ | Brahmano 'bhūd mahākrodhas trailokya-dahana-kshamaḥ | 8. Tasya krodhāt samudbhūta-jvālā-mālā-vidīpitam | Brahmano 'bhūt tadā sarvaṃ trailokyam akhīlam mune | 9. Bhrūkuṭī-kuṭīlāt tasya lalūṭāt krodha-dīpitāt | samutpannas tadā Rudro madhyāhnūrka-sama-prabhaḥ | ardha-nārī-nara-vapuḥ prachando 'tisarāvān | vibhajātmanam ity uktrvā tam Brahmā 'ntardadhe punaḥ | 10. Tathokto 'sau dvīdhā strītram puruṣatvaṃ tathā 'karot | bibheda puruṣtvaṃ cha daśadhā chaikadhā cha saḥ | 11. Saumyāsaumyais tathā śāntūśāntaiḥ strītvāṃ cha sa prabhuḥ | bibheda bahudhā devaḥ svarūpair asitaiḥ sitaiḥ | 12. Tato Brahmā 'tma-sambhūtam pūrvaṃ svāyambhuvam prabhum | ātmānam eva kṛitavān pra-jāpālam Manuṃ dvija | 13. Sātarūpāṃ cha tāṃ nārīṃ tapo-nirdhūta-kalmashām | svāyambhuvo Manur devaḥ patnyarthāṃ jagrihe vibhuḥ | 14. Tasmāch cha puruṣhād devī Satarūpā vyajāyata | Priyavratottāna-pūḍau Prasūtyākūti-sanjñitam | kanyā-dvayaṃ cha dharma-jña rūpau-dūrya-guṇānvitam | 15. Dadau Prasūtiṃ Dakṣhūyāthākūtiṃ Ruchaye purā ityādi |*

“1. Then from him, as he was desiring, there were born mental sons with effects and causes¹²⁰ derived from his body. 2. Embodied spirits sprang from the limbs of that wise Being. All those creatures sprang forth which have been already described by me, (3) beginning

¹²⁰ The Commentator explains these words *kūryais taiḥ kūranaiḥ saha* to mean “bodies and senses.”

with gods and ending with motionless objects, and existing in the condition of the three qualities. Thus were created beings moving and stationary. 4. When none of these creatures of the Wise Being multiplied, he next formed other, mental, sons like to himself, (5) Bhṛigu, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Angiras, Marīchi, Daksha, Atri, and Vasishṭha, all born from his mind. These are the nine Brahmās who have been determined in the Purāṇas. 6. But Sanandana and the others who had been previously created by Vedhas (Brahmā) had no regard for the worlds, and were indifferent to offspring. They had all attained to knowledge, were freed from desire, and devoid of envy. 7. As they were thus indifferent about the creation of the world, great wrath, sufficient to burn up the three worlds, arose in the mighty Brahmā. 8. The three worlds became entirely illuminated by the wreath of flame which sprang from his anger. 9. Then from his forehead, wrinkled by frowns and inflamed by fury, arose Rudra, luminous as the midday sun, with a body half male and half female, fiery, and huge in bulk. After saying to him, 'Divide thyself,' Brahmā vanished. 10. Being so addressed, Rudra severed himself into two, into a male and a female form. The god next divided his male body into eleven parts, (11) beautiful and hideous, gentle and ungentle; and his female figure into numerous portions with appearances black and white. 12. Brahmā then made the lord Svāyambhuva, who had formerly sprung from himself, and was none other than himself, to be Manu the protector of creatures. 13. The god Manu Svāyambhuva took for his wife the female Satarūpā, who by austere fervour had become freed from all defilement. 14. To that Male the goddess Satarūpā bore Priyavrata and Uttānapāda, and two daughters called Prasūti and Ākūti, distinguished by the qualities of beauty and magnanimity. 15. He of old gave Prasūti in marriage to Daksha, and Ākūti to Ruchi."

From a comparison of the preceding narratives of the creation of mankind, extracted from the fifth and sixth chapters of the First Book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, it will be seen that the details given in the different accounts are not consistent with each other. It is first of all stated in the fifth chapter (verse 16) that the arvāksrotas, or human creation was characterized by the qualities of darkness and passion. In the second account (verse 33) we are told that Brahmā assumed a body composed of passion, from which men, in whom that quality is power-

ful, were produced.¹²¹ In neither of these narratives is the slightest allusion made to there having been any primeval and congenital distinction of classes. In the third statement given in the sixth chapter (verses 3 to 5) the human race is said to have been the result of a four-fold creation; and the four castes, produced from different parts of the creator's body, are declared to have been each especially characterized by different qualities (*guṇas*), viz., those who issued from his mouth by goodness (*sattva*), those who proceeded from his breast by passion (*rajas*), those who were produced from his thighs by both passion and darkness (*tamas*), and those who sprang from his feet by darkness. In the sequel of this account, however, no mention is made of any differences of conduct arising from innate diversities of disposition having been manifested in the earliest age by the members of the different classes. On the contrary, they are described (verses 10 ff.) in language applicable to a state of perfection which was universal and uniform, as full of faith, pure-hearted and devout. In like manner the declension in purity and goodness which ensued is not represented as peculiar to any of the classes, but as common to all. So far, therefore, the different castes seem, according to this account, to have been undistinguished by any variety of mental or moral constitution. And it is not until after the deterioration of the entire race has been related, that we are told (in verses 32 f.) that the separate duties of the several castes were fixed in accordance with their position and qualities. This sketch of the moral and religious history of mankind, in the earliest period, is thus deficient in failing to explain how beings, who were originally formed with very different ethical characters, should have been all equally excellent during their period of perfection, and have also experienced an uniform process of decline.

In regard to the variation between the two narratives of the creation found in the fifth chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, Professor Wilson remarks as follows in a note to vol. i. p. 80: "These reiterated, and not always very congruous, accounts of the creation are explained by the Purāṇas as referring to different Kalpas or renovations of the world, and therefore involving no incompatibility. A better reason for their appearance

¹²¹ Compare the passage given above at the close of Sect. V. pp. 41 ff., from Manu xii. 39 ff. and the remarks thereon.

is the probability that they have been borrowed from different original authorities."¹²²

As regards the first of these explanations of the discrepancies in question, it must be observed that it is inapplicable to the case before us, as the text of the Vishṇu Purāṇa itself says nothing of the different accounts of the creation having reference to different Kalpas: and in absence of any intimation to the contrary we must naturally assume that the various portions of the consecutive narration in the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh chapters, which are connected with each other by a series of questions and answers, must all have reference to the creation which took place at the commencement of the existing or Vārūha Kalpa, as stated in the opening verse of the fourth chapter. Professor Wilson's supposition that the various and discrepant accounts "have been borrowed from different original authorities" appears to have probability in its favour. I am unable to point out the source from which the first description of the creation, in the early part of the fifth chapter, verses 1 to 23, has been derived. But the second account, given in verses 26 to 35, has evidently drawn many of its details from the passages of the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa ii. 2, 9, 5-9, and ii. 3, 8, 2 f., and Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa xi. 1, 6, 6 ff. which I have quoted above. And it is possible that the references which are found in the former of these descriptions in the Vishṇu Purāṇa to different portions of the creation

¹²² The discrepancies between current legends on different subjects are occasionally noticed in the text of the Vishṇu Purāṇa. Thus in the eighth chapter of the first book, v. 12, Maitreya, who had been told by Parāśara that S'ri was the daughter of Bhrigu and Khyāti, enquires: *Kṣhīrābdhau S'rīḥ puotpannā śrūyate'mṛita-manthane | Bhri-goh Khyātyāṁ samutpannety etad āha katham bhavān |* "It is reported that S'ri was produced in the ocean of milk when ambrosia was churned. How do you say that she was born to Bhrigu by Khyāti?" He receives for answer: 13. *Nityaiva sā jagan-mātū Vishṇoh S'rīr anapāyini* (another MS. reads *anuyāy nī*) *yathā sarvagato Vishṇus tatthaiveyaṁ dvijottama |* "S'ri, the mother of the world, and wife of Vishṇu, is eternal and undecaying" (or, according to the other reading, "is the eternal follower of Vishṇu"). "As he is omnipresent, so is she," and so on. The case of Daksha will be noticed further on in the text. On the method resorted to by the Commentators in cases of this description Professor Wilson observes in a note to p. 203 (4to. edition), "other calculations occur, the incompatibility of which is said, by the Commentators on our text and on that of the Bhāgavata, to arise from reference being made to different Kalpas; and they quote the same stanza to this effect: *Kvachit kvachit pu-rāṇeshu virodho yadi lakshyate | kalpa-bheda'dibhis tatra virodhaḥ sadbhir ishyate |* 'Whenever any contradictions in different Purāṇas are observed, they are ascribed by the pious to differences of Kalpas and the like.'"

being ineffective may have been suggested by some of the other details in the Brāhmanas, which I shall now proceed to cite. At all events some of the latter appear to have given rise to the statement in the fourth verse of the seventh chapter of the Vishṇu P. that the creatures formed by Brahmā did not multiply, as well as to various particulars in the narratives which will be quoted below from the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas. The Brāhmanas describe the creative operations of Prajāpati as having been attended with intense effort, and often followed by great exhaustion; and not only so, but they represent many of these attempts to bring living creatures of various kinds into existence, to sustain them after they were produced, and to ensure their propagation, as having been either altogether abortive, or only partially successful. The following quotations will afford illustrations of these different points:

Taitt. Br. i. 1, 10, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asṛijata | sa ririchāno 'manyata | sa tapo 'tapyata | sa ātman vīryam apaśyat tad avarddhata |*

“Prajāpati created living beings. He felt himself emptied. He performed austere abstraction. He perceived vigour in himself. It increased, etc.”

Taitt. Br. i. 2, 6, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ sṛishṭvā vṛitto¹²³ 'śayat | tasmā devāḥ bhūtānām rasaṁ tejah sambhṛitya tena enam abhishajyan “mahān avavartti” iti |*

“Prajāpati after creating living beings lay exhausted. The gods, collecting the essence and vigour of existing things, cured him therewith, saying he has become great, etc.”

Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 6, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ sṛishṭvā vyasraṁsata | sa hṛidayam bhūto 'śayat |*

“Prajāpati, after creating living beings, was paralysed. Becoming a heart, he slept.”

S. P. Br. iii. 9, 1, 1. *Prajāpatir vai prajāḥ sasṛijāno ririchānaḥ iva amanyata | tasmāt parāchyah prajāḥ āsuh | na asya prajāḥ śriye 'nnādyāya jajnire | 2. Sa aikshata “arikhya aham asmai (? yasmai) u kāmāya asṛikshi na me sa kāmah samārdhi parāchyō mat-prajāḥ abhūvan na me prajāḥ śriye 'nnādyāya asthishata” iti | 3. Sa aikshata Prajāpatiḥ “katham nu punar ātmānam āpyādyeya upa mā prajāḥ samāvartterāṁs tishṭheran me prajāḥ śriye annādyāya” iti | so 'rchhan śrāmyamś cha-*

chūra prajā-kūmaḥ | sa etām ekādaśinīm apaśyat | sa ekādaśinyā ishṭvā Prajāpatiḥ punar ātmānam āpyāyayata upa enam prajāḥ samāvarttanta atishṭhanta asya prajāḥ śriye 'nnādyāya sa vasīyān eva ishṭvā 'bhavat |

“Prajāpati when creating living beings felt himself as it were emptied. The living creatures went away from him. They were not produced so as to prosper and to eat food. 2. He considered: ‘I have become emptied: the object for which I created them has not been fulfilled: they have gone away, and have not gained prosperity and food.’ 3. He considered: ‘how can I again replenish myself; and how shall my creatures return to me, and acquire prosperity and food?’ Desirous of progeny, he went on worshipping and performing religious rites. He beheld this Ekādaśinī (Eleven); and sacrificing with it, he again replenished himself; his creatures returned to him, and gained prosperity and food. Having sacrificed, he became more brilliant.”

S. P. Br. x. 4, 2, 2. *So 'yaṁ saṁvatsaraḥ Prajāpatiḥ sarvāṇi bhūtāni sarṛje yach cha prāṇi yach cha aprāṇam ubhayān deva-manuṣhyān | sa sarvāṇi bhūtāni śṛishṭvā ririchāna iva mene | sa mṛityor bibhiyānchakūra |* 2. *Sa ha ikṣhānchakre “kathāṁ nv aham imāni sarvāṇi bhūtāni punar ātmann āvapeya punar ātman dadhiya kathāṁ nv aham eva eṣhām sarveṣhām bhūtānām punar ātmā sṃjām” iti |*

“This Year, (who is) Prajāpati, created all beings, both those which breathe and those that are without breath, both gods and men. Having created all beings he felt himself as it were emptied. He was afraid of death. 2. He reflected, ‘How can I again unite all these beings with myself, again place them in myself? How can I alone be again the soul of all these beings?’”

S. P. Br. x. 4, 4, 1. *Prajāpatir vai prajāḥ sṛijamānam pāpmā mṛityur abhiparijaghāna | sa tapo 'tapyata sahasraṁ saṁvatsarān pāpmānam vijihāsan |*

“Misery, death, smote Prajāpati, as he was creating living beings. He performed austere abstraction for a thousand years, with the view of shaking off misery.”

S. P. Br. ii. 5, 1, 1. *Prajāpatir ha vai idam agre ekaḥ eva āsa | sa aikshata “kathāṁ nu prajāyeya” iti | so 'śrūmyat sa tapo 'tapyata | sa prajāḥ sṛijata | tāḥ asya prajāḥ śṛishṭūḥ parābhabhūruḥ | tāni imāni vayāmsi | puruṣo vai Prajāpater nedishṭham | dvīpād vai ayam puruṣaḥ | tasmād dvīpādo vayāmsi |* 2. *Sa aikshata Prajāpatiḥ | “yathā*

*no eva purā eko 'bhūtam evam u no eva apy etarhy eka eva asmi" iti | sa dvitīyāḥ sasrije | tūḥ asya parū eva babhūvuh | tad idaṁ kshudraṁ sarī-
sṛipam yad anyat sarpebhyah | tritīyāḥ sasrije ity āhus tūḥ asya parū eva
babhūvuh | te ime sarpāḥ . . . | 3 So 'rchhan śrāmyan Prajāpatir
ikshāṇchakre "katham nu me prajāḥ sṛiṣṭūḥ parābhavanti" iti | sa ha
etat eva dadarśa "anaśanatayū vai me prajāḥ parābhavanti" iti | sa
ātmanah eva agre stanayoh paya āpyāyayāṇchakre | sa prajāḥ asṛijata |
tūḥ asya prajāḥ sṛiṣṭūḥ stanāv eva abhipadya tās tataḥ sambabhūvuh |
tūḥ imāḥ aparābhūtāḥ |*

"1. Prajāpati alone was formerly this universe. He reflected, 'How can I be propagated?' He toiled in religious rites, and practised austere fervour. He created living beings. After being created by him they perished. They were these birds. Man is the thing nearest to Prajāpati. This being, man, is two-footed. Hence birds are two-footed creatures. Prajāpati reflected, 'As I was formerly but one, so am I now also only one.' He created a second set of living beings. They also perished. This was the class of small reptiles other than serpents. They say he created a third set of beings, which also perished. They were these serpents . . . 3. Worshipping and toiling in religious rites, Prajāpati reflected, 'How is it that my creatures perish after they have been formed?' He perceived this, 'they perish from want of food.' In his own presence he caused milk to be supplied to breasts. He created living beings, which resorting to the breasts were then pre-
served. These are the creatures which did not perish."

Taitt. Br. i. 6, 2, 1. *Vaiśvadevena vai Prajāpatih prajāḥ asṛijata | tūḥ
sṛiṣṭūḥ na prājūyanta | so 'gnir akāmayata "aham imāḥ prajānāyeyam"
iti | sa Prajāpataye śueham adadhāt | so 'śochat prajāṁ ichhamānaḥ |
tasmād yaṁ cha prajā bhunakti yaṁ cha na tūv ubhau śochataḥ prajāṁ
ichhamānau | tāsv Agnim apy asṛijat | tā Agnir adhyait (2) Somo
reto 'dadhāt Saritā prajānayat | Sarasvatī vācham adadhāt | Pūṣhā
'poshayat | te vai ete triḥ saṁvatsarasya prayujyante ye devāḥ pushti-
patayah | saṁvatsaro vai Prajāpatih | saṁvatsarena eva asmai prajāḥ
prajānayat | tūḥ prajāḥ jātāḥ Maruto 'ghnan "asmān api na prāyuk-
shata" iti | 3. Sa etam Prajāpatir mārutaṁ saptakapūlam apaśyat |
taṁ niravapat | tato vai prajābhyo 'kalpata | . . . sa Prajāpatir aśochat
"yūḥ pūrvūḥ prajāḥ asṛikshi Marutas tūḥ avadhishuḥ katham aparāḥ*

srījeya" iti | tasya śushma āṇḍam bhūtaṁ niravarttata | tad vyudāharat | tad aśoshayat | tat prājūyata |

"Prajāpati formed living creatures by the vaiśvadeva (offering to the Viśvedevas). Being created they did not propagate. Agni desired 'let me beget these creatures.' He imparted grief to Prajāpati. He grieved, desiring offspring. Hence he whom offspring blesses, and he whom it does not bless, both of them grieve, desiring progeny. Among them he created Agni also. Agni desired (?) them. Soma infused seed. Savitṛi begot them. Sarasvatī infused into them speech. Pūshan nourished them. These (gods) who are lords of nourishment are employed thrice in the year. Prajāpati is the Year. It was through the year that he generated offspring for him. The Maruts killed those creatures when they had been born, saying 'they have not employed us also. 3. Prajāpati saw this Māruta oblation in seven platters. He offered it. In consequence of it he became capable of producing offspring . . . Prajāpati lamented, (saying) 'the Maruts have slain the former living beings whom I created. How can I create others?' His vigour sprang forth in the shape of an egg. He took it up. He cherished it. It became productive."

Taitt. Br. iii. 10, 9, 1. *Prajāpatir devān asṛijata | te pūpmanā sanditāḥ ajāyanta | tān vyadyat |*

"Prajāpati created gods. They were born bound by misery. He released them."

Taitt. Br. ii. 7, 9, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asṛijata | tāḥ asmāt sṛiṣṭāḥ parūchīr āyan | sa etam Prajāpatir odanam apaśyat | so 'nnam bhūto 'tishṭhat | tāḥ anyatra annādyam avitrū Prajāpatim prajāḥ upāvartanta |*

"Prajāpati created living beings. They went away from him. He beheld this odana. He was turned into food. Having found food nowhere else, they returned to him."

Taitt. Br. i. 6, 4, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ Savitā bhūtvā prajāḥ asṛijata | tā enam atyamanyanta | ta asmād apākrāman | tā Varuṇo bhūtvā prajāḥ Varuṇena agrūhayat | tāḥ prajāḥ Varuṇa-grihitāḥ Prajāpatim punar upādūvan nātham ichhamānāḥ |*

"Prajāpati, becoming Savitṛi, created living beings. They disregarded him, and went away from him. Becoming Varuṇa he caused Varuṇa to seize them. Being seized by Varuṇa, they again ran to Prajāpati, desiring help."

Taitt. Br. ii. 2, 1, 1. *Tato vai sa (Prajāpatiḥ) prajāḥ asrijata | tā! asmat śriṣṭā apākrāman |*

“Prajāpati then created living beings. They went away from him.”

I have perhaps quoted too many of these stories, which are all similar in character. But I was desirous to afford some idea of their number as well as of their tenor.

As regards the legend of Satarūpā, referred to in the seventh chapter of the first book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, I shall make some further remarks in a future section, quoting a more detailed account given in the Matsya Purāṇa.

Of the two sons of Manu Svāyambhuva and Satarūpā, the name of the second, Uttānapāda, seems to have been suggested by the appearance of the word Uttānapad in Rig-veda x. 72, 3, 4, as the designation (nowhere else traceable, I believe) of one of the intermediate agents in the creation.¹²⁴ A Priyavrata is mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa vii. 34, and also in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa x. 3, 5, 14, (where he has the patronymic of Rauhiṇāyana) but in both these texts he appears rather in the light of a religious teacher, who had lived not very long before the age of the author, than as a personage belonging to a very remote antiquity. Dakṣa also, who appears in this seventh chapter as one of the mindborn sons of Brahmā, is named in R. V. ii. 27, 1, as one of the Ādityas, and in the other hymn of the R. V. just alluded to, x. 72, vv. 4 and 5, he is noticed as being both the son and the father of the goddess Aditi. In the S. P. ii. 4, 4, he is identified with Prajāpati.¹²⁵ In regard to his origin various legends are discoverable in the Purāṇas. Besides the passage before us, there are others in the V. P. in which he is mentioned. In iv. 1, 5, it is said that he sprang from the right thumb of Brahmā, and that Aditi was his daughter (*Brahmanascha dakṣiṇāṅgushṭha-janmū Dakṣaḥ | Prajāpater Dakṣasyūpy Aditiḥ*). In another place, V. P. i. 15, 52, it is said that Dakṣa, although formerly the son of Brahmā, was born to the ten Prachetases by Mārishā (*Daśabhyas tu Prachetobhyo Mārishūyām Prajāpatiḥ | jāne Dakṣo mahābhāgo yaḥ pūrvam Brahmano 'bhavat |*). This double pa-

¹²⁴ See the 4th vol. of this work, pp. 10 f.

¹²⁵ See the 4th vol. of this work, pp. 10 ff. 24, 101; Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, for 1865, pp. 72 ff.; Roth in the Journal of the German Oriental Society,

rentage of Daksha appears to Maitreya, one of the interlocutors in the Purāṇa, to require explanation, and he accordingly enquires of his informant, vv. 60 ff.: *Anguṣṭhād dakṣiṇād Dakṣhaḥ pūrvaṁ jataḥ śrutam mayā | katham Prāchetaso bhūyaḥ sa sambhūto mahāmune | eṣha me saṁśayo brahman samahūn hṛidi varttate | yad dauhitras cha somasya punaḥ śvaśuratām gataḥ | Parāśara uvācha | utpattiḥ cha nirodhaḥ cha nityau bhūteshu vai mune | ṛishayo 'tra na muhyanti ye chānye ditya-ckakṣuṣhaḥ | 61. Yuge yuge bhavanty ete Dakṣādyaḥ muni-sattama | punaḥ chaiva nirudhyante vidvāṁs tatra na muhyati | 62. Kānīṣṭhyāṁ jyaishṭhyam apy eṣhām pūrvaṁ nābhūd dvijottama | tapa eva gariyo 'bhūt prabhāvaḥ chaiva kāraṇam |*

"60. I have heard that Daksha was formerly born from the right thumb of Brahmā. How was he again produced as the son of the Prachetases? This great doubt arises in my mind; and also (the question) how he, who was the daughter's son of Soma,¹²⁸ afterwards became his father-in-law. Parāśara answered: Both birth and destruction are perpetual among all creatures. Rishis, and others who have celestial insight, are not bewildered by this. In every age Daksha and the rest are born and are again destroyed: a wise man is not bewildered by this. Formerly, too, there was neither juniority nor seniority: austere fervour was the chief thing, and power was the cause (of distinction)."

The reader who desires further information regarding the part played by Daksha, whether as a progenitor of allegorical beings, or as a creator, may compare the accounts given in the sequel of the seventh and in the eleventh chapters of Book I. of the V. P. (pp. 108 ff. and 152 ff.) with that to be found in the fifteenth chapter (vol. ii. pp. 10 ff.).

I will merely add, in reference to Akūti, the second daughter of Manu Svāyambhuva and Satarūpā, that the word is found in the Rig-veda with the signification of "will" or "design;" but appears to be personified in a passage of the Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 12, 9, 5 (the context of which has been cited above, p. 41), where it is said: *Irā pātṇī viśvasrijām ākūtir apināḍ hariḥ |* "Irā (Idā) was the wife of the creators. Akūti kneaded the oblation."

SECT. VIII.—*Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas.*

I now proceed to extract from the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas the accounts which they supply of the creation, and which are to the same effect as those which have been quoted from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, although with many varieties of detail.

I shall first adduce a passage from the fifth chapter of the Vāyu (which to some extent runs parallel with the second chapter of the Viṣṇu Purāṇa¹²⁷), on account of its containing a different account from that generally given of the triad of gods who correspond to the triad of qualities (*guṇas*).

Vāyu Purāṇa, chapter v. verse 11. *Ahar-mukhe pravṛtite cha paraḥ prakṛiti-sambhavaḥ | kshobhayāmāsa yogena pareṇa parameśvaraḥ | 12. Pradhānam puruṣam chaiva praviśyāṇḍam Maheśvaraḥ | 13. Pradhānāt kshobhyamānāt tu rajo vai samavarttata | rajaḥ pravarttakam tatra vījeshu api yathā jalam | 14. Guṇa-raishamyam āsādy prasūyante hy adhiṣṭhitāḥ | guṇebhyaḥ kshobhyamāṇebhyas trayo devā vijajnire | 15. Āśritāḥ¹²⁸ paramā guhyūḥ sarvātmānaḥ śarīriṇaḥ | rajo Brahmā tamo hy Agniḥ sattvam Viṣṇur ajāyata | 16. Rajaḥ-prakāśako Brahmā sraṣṭṛitvena vyavasthitāḥ | tamaḥ-prakāśako 'gnis tu kālātvena vyavasthitāḥ | 17. Sattva-prakāśako Viṣṇur audāsīnye vyavasthitāḥ | ete eva trayo lokā ete eva trayo guṇāḥ | 18. Ete eva trayo vedā ete eva trayo 'gnayaḥ | parasparāśritāḥ hy ete parasparam anuvratāḥ | 19. Paraspareṇa varttante dhārayanti parasparam | anyonya-mithunā hy ete hy anyonyam upajivinaḥ | 20. Kṣanaṁ viyogo na hy eṣāṁ na tyajanti parasparam | Īśvaro hi paro devo Viṣṇus tu mahataḥ paraḥ | 21. Brahmā tu rajosa-driktāḥ sargāyeha pravarttate | paraścha puruṣo jneyaḥ prakṛitiścha parā smṛitā |*

“11, 12. At the beginning of the day, the supreme Lord Maheśvara, sprung from Prakṛiti, entering the egg, agitated with extreme intentness both Pradhāna (= Prakṛiti) and Puruṣa. 13. From

¹²⁷ See pp. 27 and 41 f. of Wilson's V. P. vol. i.

¹²⁸ The Gaikowar MS. of the India office, No. 2102, reads *āsthitūḥ*, instead of *āśritāḥ*, as in the Taylor MS.

Pradhāna, when agitated, the quality of passion (*rajas*) arose, which was there a stimulating cause, as water is in seeds. 14. When an inequality in the *Guṇas* arises, then (the deities) who preside over them are generated. From the *Guṇas* thus agitated there sprang three gods (15), indwelling, supreme, mysterious, animating all things, embodied. The *rajas* quality was born as *Brahmā*, the *tamas* as *Agni*,¹²⁹ the *sattva* as *Vishṇu*. 16. *Brahmā*, the manifestor of *rajas*, acts in the character of creator; *Agni*, the manifestor of *tamas*, acts in the capacity of time; 17. *Vishṇu*, the manifestor of *sattva*, abides in a condition of indifference. These deities are the three worlds, the three qualities, (18) the three *Vedas*, the three fires; they are mutually dependent, mutually devoted. 19. They exist through each other, and uphold each other; they are twin-parts of one another, they subsist through one another. 20. They are not for a moment separated; they never abandon one another. *Īśvara* (*Mahādeva*) is the supreme god; and *Vishṇu* is superior to *Mahat* (the principle of intelligence); while *Brahmā*, filled with *rajas*, engages in creation. *Purusha* is to be regarded as supreme, as *Prakṛiti* is also declared to be."

The sixth section of the *Vāyu P.*, from which the next quotation will be made, corresponds to the fourth of the *Vishṇu P.* quoted above.

1. *Āpo hy agre samabhavan nashte 'gnau prithivī-tale | sántarālaikalīne 'smīn nashte sthāvara-jangame |* 2. *Ekārnave tadā tasmin na prajñāyata kinchana | tadā sa bhagavān Brahmā sahasrākṣaḥ sahasra-pāt |* 3. *Sahasra-śīrṣhā Puruṣo rukma-varṇo hy atīndriyaḥ | Brahmā Nārāyaṇākhyāḥ sa sushvāpa salile tadā |* 4. *Sattvotrekat prabuddhas tu śūnyam lokam udīkṣya saḥ | imam chodāharanty atra ślokaṁ Nārāyaṇam prati |* 5. *Āpo nārā vai tanavaḥ¹³⁰ ity apām nāma śūśrūma | apsu śete cha yat tasmāt tena Nārāyaṇaḥ smṛitah |* 6. *Tulyaṁ yuga-sahasrasya naiṣam kalam upāśya saḥ | śarvāry-ante prakurute brahmatvam sargakāraṇāt |* 7. *Brahmā tu salile tasmin vāyur bhūtvā tadā 'charat | nīśāyām iva khadyotīḥ prāvṛṇī-kāle tatas tataḥ |* 8. *Tatas tu salile tasmin vijñāyāntargatām mahīm | anumāṇād asammūḍho bhūmer uddharāṇam prati |*

¹²⁹ The *Mārka. P.* chap. 46, verse 18, has the same line, but substitutes *Rudra* for *Agni*, thus: *Rajo Brahmā tamo Rudro Vishṇuḥ sattvaṁ jagat-patīḥ |* The two are often identified. See Vol. IV. of this work, 282 ff.

¹³⁰ See *Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa*, p. 57, with the translator's and editor's notes. Verses 1 to 6 are repeated towards the close of the 7th section of the *Vāyu P.* with variations.

9. *Akarot sa tanuṁ hy anyām kalpādishu yathā purā | tato mahātmā manasā divyaṁ rūpam achintayat |* 10. *Salilenāplutām bhūmim dṛishṭvā sa tu samantataḥ | “kim nu rūpam mahat kṛitvā uddhareyam aham mahīm” |* 11. *Jala-kṛīḍā-suruchiram vārūhaṁ rūpam asmarat | adhrishyaṁ sarra-bhūtānāṁ vāñmayam dharma-sanjñitam |*

“1. When fire had perished from the earth, and this entire world motionless and moving, together with all intermediate things, had been dissolved into one mass, and had been destroyed—waters first were produced. As the world formed at that time but one ocean, nothing could be distinguished. Then the divine Brahmā, Purusha, with a thousand eyes, a thousand feet, (3) a thousand heads, of golden hue, beyond the reach of the senses—Brahmā, called Nārāyaṇa, slept on the water. 4. But awaking in consequence of the predominance (in him) of the sattva quality, and beholding the world a void—: Here they quote a verse regarding Nārāyaṇa: 5. ‘The waters are the bodies of Nara: such is the name we have heard given to them; and because he sleeps upon them, he is called Nārāyaṇa.’ 6. Having so continued for a nocturnal period equal to a thousand Yugas, at the end of the night he takes the character of Brahmā in order to create. 7. Brahmā then becoming Vāyu (wind) moved upon that water,¹⁸¹ hither and thither, like a firefly at night in the rainy season. 8. Discovering then by inference that the earth lay within the waters, but unbewildered, (9) he took, for the purpose of raising it up, another body, as he had done at the beginnings of the (previous) Kalpas. Then that Great Being devised a celestial form. 10. Perceiving the earth to be entirely covered with water, (and asking himself) ‘what great shape shall I assume in order that I may raise it up?’—he thought upon the form of a boar, brilliant from aquatic play, invincible by all creatures, formed of speech, and bearing the name of righteousness.”

The body of the boar is then described in detail, and afterwards the elevation of the earth from beneath the waters, and the restoration of its former shape, divisions, etc.¹⁸²—the substance of the account being

¹⁸¹ This statement, which is not in the corresponding passage of the Vishṇu P., is evidently borrowed, along with other particulars, from the text of the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, vii. 1, 5, 1, quoted above p. 62.

¹⁸² Following the passage of the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, quoted above, the writer in one verse ascribes to Brahmā as Visvakarman the arrangement of the earth, *tatas teshu viśvīrṇeshu lokodadhi-gīrīṣhe atha | Viśvakarmā vibhajate kalpādishu punaḥ punaḥ |*

much the same, but the particulars different from those of the parallel passage in the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

Then follows a description of the creation coinciding in all essential points¹³³ with that quoted above, p. 55, from the beginning of the fifth chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

The further account of the creation, however, corresponding to that which I have quoted from the next part of the same chapter of that Purāṇa, is not found in the same position in the Vāyu Purāṇa,¹³⁴ but is placed at the beginning of the ninth chapter, two others, entitled *Pratisandhi-kīrttana* and *Chaturāśrama-vibhāga*, being interposed as the seventh and eighth. With the view, however, of facilitating comparison between the various cosmogonies described in the two works, I shall preserve the order of the accounts as found in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, and place the details given in the ninth chapter of the Vāyu Purāṇa before those supplied in the eighth.

The ninth chapter of the Vāyu Purāṇa, which is fuller in its details than the parallel passage in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, begins thus, without any specific reference to the contents of the preceding chapter :

Sūta uvācha | 1. *Tato 'bhidhyāyatas tasya jajnire mānasīḥ prajāḥ | tach-chharīra-samutpannairiḥ kāryais taiḥ kāraṇairiḥ saha* | 2. *Kṣhetrajñūḥ samavarttanta gūtrebhyas tasya dhimataḥ | tato devāsura-piṭrīn mānavaṁ cha chatusṭayam* | 3. *Sisṛikshur ambhāmśy etāni svātmanā samayūyujat | yuktātmanas tatas tasya tamomātrā śrayambhuvāḥ* | 4. *Tam abhidhyāyataḥ sargam prayatno 'bhūt Prajāpateḥ | tato 'sya jaghanāt pūrvam asurā jajnire sutāḥ* | 5. *Asuḥ prāṇaḥ smṛito viprais taj-janmānas tato 'surāḥ | yayā śṛiṣṭāsūrās tanvā tām tanuṁ sa vyapohata*¹³⁵ | 6. *Sā 'pariddhā tanus tena sadyo rātrir ajāyata | sū tamobahulā yasmāt tato rātris triyāmikā* | 7. *Ācṛitās tamasū rātrau prajāś tasmāt svapanty uta | dṛiṣṭrā 'surāṁś tu deveśas tanum anyām apadyata* | 8. *Aryaktām sattra-bahulām tatas tām so 'bhyayūyujat | tutas tām yunjatas tasya priyam āsit prabhoḥ kila* | 9. *Tato mukhe samutpannā dīvyatas tasya devatāḥ | yato 'sya dīvyato jātās tena devūḥ*

¹³³ This is also the case with the details given in the Mārķ. P. xlvii. 15-27 and ff.

¹³⁴ The Mārķ. P. however observes the same order as the Vishṇu P.

¹³⁵ The reading in the passage of the Taitt. Br. ii. 2, 9, 6, from which this narrative is borrowed (see above, p. 28), is *apāhata*,—which, however, does not prove that that verb with *vi* prefixed should necessarily be the true reading here; as the Taylor and Gaikowar MSS. have *vyapohata* throughout, and in one place *vyapohat*.

prakīrtitāḥ | 10. *Dhātur divīti yaḥ proktaḥ krīḍāyām sa vibhāryate* | *tasmāt* (? *yasmāt*) *tanvām tu diryāyām jajñire tena devatāḥ* | 11. *Devūn śṛiṣṭṛa 'tha dereśas tanum anyām apadyata* | *sattva - mātrātmikām devas tato 'nyām so 'bhyapadyata*¹³⁶ | 12. *Pitṛivad manyamānas tūn putrūn prādhyāyata prabhuh* | *pitaro hy upapakṣābhyām*¹³⁷ *rātry-ahnor antarā 'srijat* | 13. *Tasmāt te pitaro devāḥ putratvaṁ tena teshu tat* | *yayā śṛiṣṭās tu pitaras tām tanuṁ sa vyapohata* | 14. *Sā 'pariddhā tanus tena sadyaḥ sandhyā prajāyata* | *tasmād ahas tu devānām rātrir yā sū* "surī smṛitā | 15. *Tayor madhye tu vai pitrī yā tanuḥ sū garī-yasī* | *tasmād derāsurāḥ sarve ṛishayo manavas tathā* | 16. *Te yuktās tām upāsante rātry-ahnor*¹³⁸ *madhyamām tanum* | *tato 'nyām sa punar Brahmā tanuṁ vai pratyapadyata* | 17. *Rajo-mātrātmikām yām tu manasā so 'srijat prabhuh* | *rajaḥ-prāyān tataḥ so 'tha mānasūn asrijat sutūn* | 18. *Manasas tu tatas tasya mānasā jajñire prajāḥ* | *drishṭrā punaḥ prajāś chāpi svām tanuṁ tām apohata* | 19. *Sā 'pariddhā tanus tena jyotsnā sadyas tv ajāyata* | *tasmād bhavanti saṁhṛiṣṭā jyotsnāyām udbhavḥ prajāḥ* | 20. *Ity etās tanavas tena vyapariddhā mahatmanā* | *sadyo rātry-ahanī chaiva sandhyā jyotsnā cha jajñire* | 21. *Jyotsnā sandhyā tathā 'haścha sattva-mātrātmakām svayam* | *tamo-mātrātmikā rātriḥ sū vai tasmāt triyāmikā* | 22. *Tasmād devā dirya-tanvā*¹³⁹ *drish-tāḥ śṛiṣṭā mukhāt tu vai* | *yasmāt teshām divā janma balinas tena te divā* | 23. *Tanvā yad asurān rātrau jaghanād asrijat punaḥ* | *prāṇebhyo rātri-janmāno hy asahyā niśi tena te* | 24. *Etāny eram bhaviṣhyānām devānām asurāḥ saha* | *pitṛinām mānavūnām cha atītānāgateshu vai* | 25. *Manvantareshu sarreshu nimittāni bhavanti hi* | *jyotsnā rātry-ahanī sandhyā chatvāry ambhāṁsi tāni vai* | 26. *Bhānti yasmāt tato 'mbhāṁsi bhā-śabdo 'yam manīṣibhiḥ* | *vyūpti-dīptyām nigadito pumāṁś chāha Prajāpatiḥ* | 27. *So 'mbhāṁsy etāni drishṭvā tu deva-dānava-mānavān* | *pitṛiṁś chaivāsrijat so 'nyān ātmano vivīdhān punaḥ* | 28. *Tām uterjya tanuṁ kṛitsnām tato 'nyām asrijat prabhuh* | *mūrttiṁ rajas-tama-prāyām punar evābhyayuyujat* | 29. *Andhakūre kshudhāviṣṭas tato 'nyām srijate punaḥ* | *tena śṛiṣṭāḥ kshudhātmānas te 'mbhāṁsy ādātum udyatāḥ* | 30. "Ambhāṁsy etāni rakṣhāma" *uktavantaścha teshu ye* | *rākṣhasās te smṛitāḥ loke krodhātmāno niśācharāḥ* |

¹³⁶ This line is omitted in the Gaikowar MS.

¹³⁷ The Gaikowar MS. seems to read *upapūrīvābhyām*.

¹³⁸ The Gaikowar MS. reads *Brahmaṇo madhyamām tanum*.

¹³⁹ The Gaikowar MS. reads *divā tanvā*.

“Sūta says: 1. Then, as he was desiring, there sprang from him mind-born sons, with those effects and causes derived from his body. 2. Embodied spirits were produced from the bodies of that wise Being. 3. Then willing to create these four streams (*ambhāmsi*) gods, Asuras, Fathers, and men, he fixed his spirit in abstraction. As Svayambhū was thus fixed in abstraction, a body consisting of nothing but darkness (invested him). 4. While desiring this creation, Prajāpati put forth an effort. Then Asuras were first produced as sons from his groin. 5. *Asu* is declared by Brahmans to mean breath. From it these beings were produced; hence they are *Asuras*.¹⁴⁰ He cast aside the body with which the Asuras were created. 6. Being cast away by him, that body immediately became night. Inasmuch as darkness predominated in it, night consists of three watches. 7. Hence, being enveloped in darkness, all creatures sleep at night. Beholding the Asuras, however, the Lord of gods took another body, (8) imperceptible, and having a predominance of goodness, which he then fixed in abstraction. While he continued thus to fix it, he experienced pleasure. 9. Then as he was sporting, gods were produced in his mouth. As they were born from him, while he was sporting (*divyatah*), they are known as *Devas* (gods). 10. The root *div* is understood in the sense of sporting. As they were born in a sportive (*divya*)¹⁴¹ body, they are called *Devatās*. 11. Having created the deities, the Lord of gods then took another body, consisting entirely of goodness (*sattra*). 12. Regarding himself as a father, he thought upon these sons: he created Fathers (*Pitris*) from his armpits in the interval between night and day. 13. Hence these Fathers are gods: therefore that sonship belongs to them. He cast aside the body with which the Fathers were created. 14. Being cast away by him, it straightway became twilight. Hence day belongs to the gods, and night is said to belong to the Asuras. 15. The body intermediate between them, which is that of the Fathers, is the most important. Hence gods, Asuras, Fathers, and men (16) worship intently this intermediate body of Brahmā. He then took again another body. But from that body, composed altogether of passion (*rajas*)

¹⁴⁰ This statement, which is not found in the parallel passage of the Vishnu Purāṇa is borrowed from Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 3, 2, quoted above.

¹⁴¹ *Divya* properly means “celestial.” But from the play of words in the passage the writer may intend it to have here the sense of “sportive.”

which he created by his mind, he formed mind-born¹⁴² sons who had almost entirely a passionate character. 18. Then from his mind sprang mind-born sons. Beholding again his creatures, he cast away that body of his. 19. Being thrown off by him it straightway became morning twilight. Hence living beings are gladdened by the rise of early twilight. 20. Such were the bodies which, when cast aside by the Great Being, became immediately night and day, twilight and early twilight. 21. Early twilight, twilight, and day have all the character of pure goodness. Night has entirely the character of darkness (*tamas*); and hence it consists of three watches. 22. Hence the gods are beheld with a celestial body, and they were created from the mouth. As they were created during the day, they are strong during that period. 23. Inasmuch as he created the Asuras from his groin at night, they, having been born from his breath, during the night, are unconquerable during that season. 24, 25. Thus these four streams, early twilight, night, day, and twilight, are the causes of gods, Asuras, Fathers, and men, in all the Manvantaras that are past, as well as in those that are to come. 26. As these (streams) shine, they are called *ambhāṁsi*. This root *bhā* is used by the intelligent in the senses of pervading and shining, and the Male, Prajāpati, declares (the fact). 27. Having beheld these streams (*ambhāṁsi*), gods, Dānavas, men, and fathers, he again created various others from himself. 28. Abandoning that entire body, the lord created another, a form consisting almost entirely of passion and darkness, and again fixed it in abstraction. 29. Being possessed with hunger in the darkness, he then created another. The hungry beings formed by him were bent on seizing the streams (*ambhāṁsi*). 30. Those of them, who said 'let us preserve (*rakshāma*) these streams,' are known in the world as Rākshasas, wrathful, and prowling about at night."

This description is followed by an account of the further creation corresponding with that given in the same sequence in the Vishṇu Purāṇa; and the rest of the chapter is occupied with other details which it is not necessary that I should notice. I therefore proceed to make some quotations from the eighth chapter, entitled *Chaturāśramavibhāga*, or "the distribution into four orders," which corresponds, in

¹⁴² *Mānasān*. We might expect here however, *mānavūn* or *mānushān*, "human," in conformity with the parallel passages both in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (see above, p. 50), and the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, xlviii. 11.

its general contents, with the sixth chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, book i., but is of far greater length, and, in fact, extremely prolix, as well as confused, full of repetitions, and not always very intelligible.

The chapter immediately preceding (*i.e.* the seventh), entitled *Pratibandhi-kīrttanam*, ends with the words: "I shall now declare to you the present Kalpa; understand." Sūta accordingly proceeds at the opening of the eighth chapter to repeat some verses, which have been already quoted from the beginning of the sixth chapter, descriptive of Brahmā's sleep during the night after the universe had been dissolved, and to recapitulate briefly the elevation of the earth from beneath the waters, its reconstruction, and the institution of Yugas. At verse 22 the narrative proceeds:

Kalpasyūdau kṛtayuge prathame so 'srijat prajāḥ | 23. *Prāg uktā yā mayā tubhyam pūrva-kāle prajāḥ tu tāḥ* | *tasmin samvarttamāne tu kalpe dagdhās tadā 'gninā* | 24. *Aprāptā yās tapo-lokaṁ jana-lokaṁ samāsritāḥ* | *pravarttati punaḥ sarge vījārthaṁ tā bhavanti hi* | 25. *Vījārthena sthitās tatra punaḥ sargasya kāraṇāt* | *tatas tāḥ sṛjyamānās tu santānārtham bhavanti hi* | 26. *Dharmārtha-kāma-mokṣhāṇāṁ iha tāḥ sādhiḥ smṛitāḥ* | *devās cha pitaraschaiva ṛishayo manavas tathā* | 27. *Tatas te tapasā yuktāḥ sthānāny āpūrayanti hi* | *Brahmaṇo mānasās te vai siddhātmanō bhavanti hi* | 28. *Ye sangādvēsha-yuktena karmaṇū te divaṁ gatāḥ* | *āvarttamānā iha te sambhavanti yuge yuge* | 29. *Sra-karma-phala-śeṣheṇa khyātyā chaiva tathātṁmikā (? tathātṁmakāḥ)* | *sambhavanti janāl lokāt karma-saṁśaya-bandhanāt* | 30. *Āśayaḥ kāraṇaṁ tatra boddhavyaṁ karmaṇū tu saḥ* | *taiḥ karmabhis tu jāyante janāl lokāt śubhāśubhaiḥ* | 31. *Grihṇanti te śarīrāṇi nānā-rūpāṇi yonishu* | *devād-yaḥ sthāvarāntās cha utpadyante parasparam (? paramparam)* | 32. *Teshāṁ ye yāni karmāṇi prāk-sṛishṭau pratipedire* | *tāny eva pratipadyante sṛjyamānāḥ punaḥ punaḥ* | 33. *Himsrāhimsre mṛidu-krūre dharmādharṁe rītānṛite* | *tadbhāvitāḥ prapadyante tasmāt tat tasya rochate* | 34. *Kalpeshu āsan vyatīteshu rūpa-nāmāni yāni cha* | *tāny evānāgate kāle prūyaśaḥ pratipedire* | 35. *Tasmāt tu nāma-rūpāṇi tāny eva pratipedire* | *punaḥ punas te kalpeshu jāyante nāma-rūpataḥ* | 36. *Tataḥ sarge hy avasṭabdhḥ sisṛikṣhor Brahmanas tu vai* | 37.¹⁴³ *Prajās tā dhyūyatas*

¹⁴³ The narrative in the 49th chapter of the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa (verses 3-13) begins at this verse, the 37th of the Vāyu Purāṇa, and coincides, though with verbal differences, with what follows down to verse 47. After that there is more variation.

tasya satyābhidyāyinas tadā | mithunānām sahasram tu so 'srijad vai mukhāt tadā | 38. Janās te hy upapadyante sattvodriktāḥ suchetasah¹⁴⁴ | sahasram anyad vakshasto mithunānām sasarja ha | 39. Te sarve rajasodriktāḥ śuśhmiṇaś chūpy aśuśhmiṇaḥ¹⁴⁵ | śriṣṭvā sahasram anyat tu dvandvānām ūrutāḥ punaḥ | 40. Rajas-tamobhyām udriktā iḥśilūs tu te smṛitāḥ | padbhyām sahasram anyat tu mithunānām sasarja ha | 41. Udriktās tamasā sarve niḥśrikā hy alpa-tejasāḥ | tato vai harshamānūs te drandrotpannās tu prāṇinaḥ | 42. Anyonya-hriḥhayāviṣṭā maithunāyopachakramuḥ | tataḥprabhṛiti kalpe 'smin maithunotpattir uchyate | 43. Māsi māsy ārttaraṁ yat tu na tadā 'sit tu yoshitām¹⁴⁶ | tasmāt tadā na sushuruḥ sevitaṛ api maithunaiḥ | 44. Āyusho 'nte prasūyante mithunāny eva tāḥ sakṛit | kuṇṭhakūḥ kuṇṭhikaś chaira utpadyante mumūṣhatām¹⁴⁷ | 45. Tataḥ prabhṛiti kalpe 'smin mithunānām hi sambhavaḥ | dhyāne tu manasā tāsām prajānām jāyate sakṛit | 46. Sabdādi-vishayaḥ śuddhaḥ pratyekam pancha-lakṣaṇaḥ | ity evam mānasī¹⁴⁸ pūrvam prāk-śriṣṭīr yā Prajāpateḥ | 47. Tasyānnavāye sambhūtā yair idam pūritaṁ jagat | sarit-saraḥ-samudrāṁś cha serante parratān api | 48. Tudā nātyanta-śītośnā yuge tasmin charanti vai | prithivī-rasodbhavaṁ nāma āhāraṁ hy āharanti vai¹⁴⁹ | 49. Tāḥ prajāḥ kāma-chārinyo mānasīm siddhim āsthitāḥ | dharmādharmau na tāsū āstām nirviśeśhāḥ prajāś tu tāḥ | 50. Tulyam āyuh sukhaṁ rūpaṁ tāsām tasmin kṛite yuge | dharmādharmau na tāsū āstām kalpādaḥ tu kṛite yuge | 51. Svena svenādhi-kāreṇa jānīre te kṛite yuge | chatvāri tu sahasrāṇi varshānām dirya-sankhyayā | 52. Ādyāṁ kṛita-yugam prākuḥ sandhyānām tu chatuḥśatam | tataḥ sahasraśas tūsa prajāsu prathitāsv api | 53.¹⁵⁰ Na tāsām pratighāto 'sti na dvandvaṁ nāpi cha klamaḥ | parratodadhi-sevinyo hy aniketāśrayās tu tāḥ | 54. Viśokāḥ sattva-bahulāḥ hy ekānta-sukhitāḥ prajāḥ | tāḥ vai nishkāma-chārinyo nityam mudita-mānasāḥ | 55. Pasa-

¹⁴⁴ For *suchetasah* the Märk. P. reads *sutejasah*.

¹⁴⁵ For *aśuśhmiṇaḥ* the Märk. P. reads *amarśhinaḥ*, "irascible."

¹⁴⁶ I have corrected this line from the Märkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, 49, 9 b. The reading of the MSS. of the Vāyu Purāṇa cannot be correct. It appears to be: *māse māse 'rttaraṁ yad yat tat tadāśīd hi yoshitām* | The negative particle seems to be indispensable here.

¹⁴⁷ This half verse is not found in the Märk. P.

¹⁴⁸ The Märk. P. has *mānuṣhī*, "human," instead of *mānasī*, "mental."

¹⁴⁹ This verse is not in the Märk. P.; and after this point the verses which are common to both Purāṇas do not occur in the same places.

¹⁵⁰ Verses 53-56 coincide generally with verses 14-18 of the Märk. P.

vaḥ pakṣhiṇaś chaiva na tadāsan sarīṣṛipāḥ | nodbhijjū nārakaś¹⁵¹ chaiva
te hy adharma-prasūtayaḥ | 56. Na mūla-phala-pushpaṁ cha nārttavam
ṛitavo na cha | sarva-kāma-sukhaḥ kālo nātyarthaṁ hy uśṇa-śitatā¹⁵² |
57. Manobhilashitāḥ kāmās tāsām sarvatra sarvadā | uttiṣṭhanti prithiv-
yām vai tābhir dhyātā rasolvanāḥ | 58. Balavarṇa-karī tāsām siddhiḥ
sū roga-nāśinī | asaṁskūryyaiḥ śarīraiś cha prajāś tāḥ sthirayauvanāḥ |
59. Tāsām viśuddhāt sankalpāj jāyante mithunāḥ prajāḥ | samam janma
cha rūpaṁ cha mriyante chaiva tāḥ samam | 60. Tadā satyam alobhaś
cha kṣamā tuṣṭiḥ sukhaṁ damaḥ | nirviśeṣhūś tu tāḥ sarvā rūpāyuh-
śīla-chesṭitaiḥ | 61. Abuddhipūrvakaṁ vṛttam prajānām jāyate svayam |
apravṛttitḥ kṛta-yuge karmaṇoḥ śubhapāpayoḥ | 62. Varṇāśrama-rya-
vasthūś cha na tadā "san na sankarah | anichhādresha-yuktūś te varṭta-
yanti parasparam | 63. Tulya-rūpāyushaḥ sarvāḥ adhamottama-varj-
itāḥ¹⁵³ | sukha-prāyā hy aśokūś cha udpadyante kṛite yuge | 64. Nitya-
prahrīṣṭa-manaso mahāsattvā mahābalāḥ | lābhālābhau na tāśv āstām
mītrāmītre priyāpriye | 65. Manasā viśhayas tāsām nirihūṇām pravart-
tate | na lipsanti hi tā'nyoyaṁ nānugrihṇanti chaira hi | 66. Dhyānam
paraṁ kṛta-yuge tretāyām jñānam uchyate | pravṛttitāṁ dvāpare yajnaṁ
dānam kali-yuge varam | 67. Sattvaṁ kṛitāṁ rajas tretā dvāparaṁ tu
rajas-tamau | kalau tamas tu vijñeyam yuga-vṛtta-vaśena tu | 68. Kūlaḥ
kṛite yuge tv eśha tasya sankhyām nibodhata | chatvāri tu sahasrūṇi var-
śhāṇām tat kṛitāṁ yugam | 69. Sandhyāmśau tasya divyāni śatāny
aśṭau cha sankhyayā | tadā tāsām babhūvāyur na cha kleśa-vipat-
tayaḥ¹⁵⁴ | 70. Tataḥ kṛitayuge tasmin sandhyāmśe hi gate tu vai | pādū-
vaśiṣṭho bhavati yuga-dharmas tu sarvaśaḥ | 71. Sandhyāyām apy atitā-
yām anta-kāle yugasya vai | pādāśas chāvaśiṣṭe tu sandhyā-dharmo
yugasya tu | 72. Eraṁ kṛite tu niḥśeṣe siddhis tv antardadhe tadā |
tasyām cha siddhau bhrasṭāyām mūnasyām abhavat tataḥ | 73. Siddhir

¹⁵¹ The Mār. P. has *nakrūh*, "crocodiles," in its enumeration.

¹⁵² The Mār. P. here inserts some other lines, 186-21a, instead of 57 and 58a of the Vāyu P.

¹⁵³ The Mār. P. inserts here the following verses: 24. *Chatvāri tu sahasrūṇi varśhāṇām mūnushāṇi tu | āyuh-pramūṇām jīvanti na cha kleśād vipattayaḥ | 25. Kvachit kvachit punaḥ sū bhūt kṣhitir bhūgyena sarvaśaḥ | kālena gachchātā nūśam upayānti yathā prajāḥ | 26. Tathā tāḥ kramaśaḥ nūśām jagmuḥ sarvatra siddhayaḥ | tāsū sarvāśu nashṭāśu nabhasaḥ prachyutā narūḥ (atūḥ in one MS.) | prāyasaḥ kalpa-erikṣhāś te sambhūtā grīha-saṁsthitāḥ |*

¹⁵⁴ Instead of *babhūvāyuh*, etc., the Gaikowar MS. has *prayuktāni na cha kleśo babhūva ha |*

anyā yuga tasmīns tretāyām antare kṛitā | sargūdaṁ yā mayā 'śhṭau tu mūnasyo vai prakīrtitāḥ | 74. Aśhṭau tāḥ krama-yogena siddhaya yānti sankshayam | kalpādaṁ mānasaḥ hy ekā siddhir bharati sū kṛite | 75. Manvantareshu sarveshu chatur-yuga-vibhūgaśaḥ | varṇūśramūchāra-kṛitaḥ karma-siddhodbharaḥ (karma-siddhyudbharaḥ?) smṛitaḥ | 76. Sandhyā kṛitasya pādena sandhyā pādena chūṁsataḥ | kṛita-sandhyāṁśakā hy ete trīms trīn pūdān parasparam | 77. Hrasanti yuga-dharmais te tapaḥ-śruta-balāyushaiḥ | tataḥ kṛitāmśe kṣhīne tu babhūva tad-anantaram | 78. Tretā-yugam amanyanta kṛitāmśam ṛishi-sattamāḥ | tasmin kṣhīne kṛitāmśe tu tach-chhishṭāsu prajāsv iha | 79. Kalpādaṁ sampravṛittāyās tretāyāḥ pramukhe tadā | prajāsyati tadā siddhiḥ kāla-yogena nānyathā | 80. Tasyām siddhau prajāśhṭāyām anyā siddhir avarttata | apām saukshmye pratigata tadā meghātmanā tu vai | 81. Meghebhyāḥ stanayitnubhyāḥ pravṛittam ṛishi-sarjanam | sakṛid eva tayā ṛishiṭyā saṁyukto pṛithivī-tale | 82. Prādūrāsaṁs tadā tāsām ṛikṣhās tu griha-saṁsthītāḥ¹⁵⁵ | sarva-pratyupabhogas tu tāsām tebhyaḥ prajāyate | 83. Varttayanti hi tebhyaḥ tās tretā-yuga-mukhe prajāḥ | tataḥ kālena mahatā tāsām eva viparyayāt | 84. Rūgalobhātmaḥ bhāvas tadā hy ākasmiko 'bhavat | yat tad bhavati nārīnām jīvitānte tad ārtaram | 85. Tadā tad vai na bhavati punar yuga-balena tu | tāsām punaḥ pravṛitte tu māse māse tad ārtaram (-re?) | 86. Tatas tenaiva yogena varittatām maithune tadā | tāsām tāt-kāla-bhāritvād māsi māsy upayachhatām | 87. Akāle hy ārttarot-pattir garbhotpattir ajāyata | viparyyayena tāsām tu tena kālena bhāvinā | 88. Prajāsyanti tataḥ sarve ṛikṣhās te grihasaṁsthītāḥ | tatas teshu prajāśhṭeshu vibhrāntā vyākulendriyāḥ | 89. Abhidhyāyanti tām siddhiṁ satyābhidhyāyinas tadā | prādurbabhūvus tāsām tu ṛikṣhās te grihasaṁsthītāḥ | 90.¹⁵⁶ Vastrāṇi cha prasūyante phalesho ābharaṇāṇi cha | teshv eva jāyate tāsām gandha-varṇa-rasānvitam | 91. Amākshikam mahāvīryam puṭake puṭake madhu | tena tū varttayanti sma mukhe tretā-yugasya vai | 92. Hṛiṣṭa-tuṣṭās tayā siddhyā prajā vai vigata-jvarāḥ | punaḥ kālāntareṇaiva punar lobhāvṛitās tu tāḥ | 93. Ṛikṣhāṁs tān paryagrīhṇanta madhu chāmākshikam balāt | tāsām tenāpachāreṇa punar lobha-kṛitena vai | 94. Prajāśhṭā madhunā sūrdham kalpa-ṛikṣhāḥ kva-

¹⁵⁵ Verses 27-35 of the Märk. P. correspond more or less to this and the following verses down to 98.

¹⁵⁶ This and the following verses correspond more or less closely to the Märk. P. 30 ff.

chit kvachit | tasyām evālpa-sishṭyāyām sandhyā-kāla-vaśāt tadā | 95.
varttatām tu tadā tāsām dvandvāny abhyutthitāni tu | śitavātātapaśi
tivrais tatas tāḥ duḥkhitā bhṛīśam | 96. Dvandvais tāḥ pīḍyamānās tu
chakrur āvaranāni cha | kṛitvā dvandva-pratīkūram niketāni hi bhejire |
97. Pūrvam nikāma-chārās te aniketāśrayā bhṛīśam | yathā-yogyam
yathā-prīti niketeshu avasan punaḥ | 98. Maru-dhanvasu nimneshu par-
*vateshu darīshu cha*¹⁵⁷ *| saṁśrayanti cha durgūṇi dhanvānam śāśvatoda-*
kam | 99. Yathā-yogaṁ yathā-kūmaṁ sameshu viśhameshu cha | ārabdhās
te niketā vai karttuṁ śītoshna-pūranam | 100. Tatas tā māpayāmāsuḥ
kheṭāni cha purāṇi cha | grāmāṁś chaiva yathā-bhāgaṁ tathāivāntaḥ-
*purāṇi cha | . . . 123.*¹⁵⁸ *Kṛiteshu teshu sthāneshu punaś chakrur grī-*
hāni cha | yathā cha pūrram āsan vai vṛikshās tu grīha-saṁsthitāḥ |
124. Tathā karttuṁ samārabdhās chintayitrā punaḥ punaḥ | vṛidhās
chaiva gatāḥ śākhā natās chaivāparā gatāḥ | 125. Ata ūrdhvam gatās
chānyā enam tiryaggatāḥ parāḥ | buddhyā 'nvishya tathā 'nyā yā vṛik-
sha-śākhā yathā gatāḥ | 126. Tathā kṛitās tu taiḥ śākhās tasmāch
chhālās tu tāḥ smṛitāḥ | evam prasiddhāḥ śākhābhyah sālās chaiva
grīhāṇi cha | 127. Tasmāt tā vai smṛitāḥ sālāḥ sālātraṁ chaiva
tāsu tat | prasīdati manas tāsu manah prāsādayamś cha tāḥ | 128.
Tasmād grīhāṇi sālās cha prāsādās chaiva sanjnitāḥ | kṛitvā dvand-
*vopaghātāṁś tām vārttopāyam achintayan | 129.*¹⁵⁹ *Naśṭeshu ma-*
dhunā sārddham kalpa-vṛiksheshu vai tadā | viśhāda-tyākulās tā vai
prajāś tṛishṇā-kshudhānvitāḥ | 130. Tataḥ prādurbabhau tāsām sid-
dhis tretā-yuge punaḥ | vārttārtha-sādhikā hy anyā vṛishṭis tāsām hi
kāmataḥ | 131. Tāsām vṛishṭy-udakāniha yāni nimnair gatāni tu |
vṛishṭyā nimnā(?) nirabhavan srotāḥ-khātāni nimnagāḥ | 132. Etam
nadyah pravṛittās tu dṛitiye vṛishṭi-sarjane | ye purastād apām stokā
āpannāḥ pṛithivītalā | 133. Apām bhūmes cha saṁyogād ośhadhyas tāsu
chābhavan | pushpa-mūlaphalīnyas tv ośhadhyas tāḥ prajājnire | 134.
Aphāla-kṛishṭās chānuptā grāmyāranyaś chaturdaśa | ṛitu-pushpa-pha-
lāschaiva vṛikshūḥ gulmās cha jajnire | 135. Prādurbhavas cha tretāyām
ādyo 'yam aushadhasya tu | tenaushadhena varttante prajāś tretāyuge
tadā | 136. Tataḥ punar abhūt tāsām rāgo lobhās cha sarvasaḥ | avāśyam-

¹⁵⁷ I have corrected this line from Märk. P. xlix. 35.

¹⁵⁸ Verses 52-54 of the Märk. P. correspond in substance to verses 123-128 of the Vāyu P.

Verses 55-62 of the Märk. P. correspond to verses 129-137 of the Vāyu P.

bhāvinā 'rthena tretā-yuga-śaśena tu | 137. *Tatas tāḥ paryagrihṇanta nadīḥ kshetrāṇi parvatān* | *ṛṣikṣhān gulmaushadhīś chaiva prasahya tu yathā-balam* | 138. *Siddhātmanās tu ye pūrvam vyākhyātāḥ prāk kṛite mayā* | *Brahmaṇo mānasās te vai utpannā ye janād iha* | 139. *Sūntās cha sushmīnās chaiva karmino duḥkṣinas tadā* | *tataḥ pravarttamānūs te tretāyām jajñire punaḥ* | 140. *Brāhmaṇūḥ kshattriyā vaiśyāḥ śūdrā drohijanās tathā* | *bhāvitāḥ pūrva-jūtiśhu karmabhiś cha śubhāśubhaiḥ* | 141. *Itas tebhyo 'balā ye tu śatyāśilā hy ahiṃsakāḥ* | *ṛta-lobbhā jītāt-māno nivasanti sma teshu vai* | 142. *Pratigrihṇanti kurvanti tebhyaś chānyo 'lpa-tejaśaḥ* | *evam vipratipānneśhu prapānneśhu paraśparam* | 143. *Tena doṣheṇa teshām tā ośadhyo miśatām tadā*¹⁶⁰ | *praṇaśtū hriya-mānū vai muṣṭībhyām sikatā yathā* | 144.¹⁶¹ *Agrasā bhūr yuga-balād grāmyāranyūs chaturdaśa* | *phalam grihṇanti puṣpaiścha phalaiḥ patraiḥ punaḥ punaḥ* | 145.¹⁶² *Tatās tāsu praṇaśtūsu vibhṛāntās tāḥ prajāś tadā* | *Sṛayambhuvam prabhuṃ jagmuḥ kṣudhāviśtāḥ prajāpatim* | 146. *ṛṣitty-artham abhilipsantaḥ ādau tretā-yugasya tu* | *Brahmā Sṛayambhūr bhagavān jñātvā tāsām manīṣhitam* | 147. *Yuktam pratyakṣa-dṛiṣṭeṇa darśanena vicāryya cha* | *grastāḥ prithivīyā ośadhyo jñātvā pratyaduhat punaḥ* | 148. *Kṛtvā vatsaṃ sumerum tu dudoha prithivīm imām* | *dugdheyaṃ gaus tadā tena vijāni prithivī-tale* | 149. *Jajñire tāni vijāni grāmyāranyūs tu tāḥ punaḥ* | *ośadhyāḥ phala-pākāntāḥ śana-saptadaśās tu tāḥ* | . . . 155. *Utpannāḥ prathamam hy etā ādau tretā-yugasya tu* | 156. *Aphāla-kṛiṣṭā ośadhyo grāmyāranyūs tu sarvaśaḥ* | *ṛṣikṣhā gulma-latā-callyo vīrudhas trīṇa-jātayaḥ* | 157. *Mūlaiḥ phalaiś cha rohiṇyo 'grihṇan puṣpaiś cha yūḥ phalam* | *prithivī dugdhā tu vijāni yāni pūrvam Sṛayambhuvā* | 158. *Ṛitu-puṣpa-phulās tā vai ośadhyo jajñire tv iha* |¹⁶³ *yadā praśṛiṣṭā ośadyo na prarohanti tāḥ punaḥ* | 159. *Tataḥ sa tāsām ṛṣitty-artham vārttopāyaṃ chakūra ha* | *Brahmā Sṛayambhūr bhagavān hasta-siddham tu karma-jam* | 160. *Tataḥ-prabhṛity athauśadhyāḥ kṛiṣṭa-pachyās tā jajñire* | *saṃsiddhāyām tu vārttāyām tatas tāsām Sṛayambhuvāḥ* | 161. *Maryādāḥ sthāpayāmāsa yathārabdhāḥ paraśparam* |¹⁶⁴ *ye vai parigrihītāras tāsām āsan badhātmakāḥ* | 162. *Itareshām kṛita-trāṇūn sthāpayāmāsa kshattriyān* | *upatiṣṭhanti ye tān*

¹⁶⁰ Märk. P. verse 63a.

¹⁶¹ Märk. P. verse 68b.

¹⁶² Verses 64-67 of the Märk. P. correspond to verses 145-149 of the Vāyu P.

¹⁶³ Verses 73-75 of the Märk. P. correspond to verses 158b-160a of the Vāyu P.

¹⁶⁴ This with all what follows down to verse 171 is omitted in the Märk. P.

vai yāvanto nirbhayās tathā | 163. Satyam brahma yathā bhūtam bruvanto brāhmaṇās tu te | ye chānye 'py abalās teshām vaiśasaṁ karma saṁsthitāḥ | 164. Kīṇāsū nāsayanti sma prithivyām prāg atandritāḥ | vaiśyān eva tu tān āhuḥ kīṇāsūn vṛtti-sādhakān | 165. Sōchantas cha dravantaś cha paricharyyāsu ye ratāḥ | nistejaso 'lpa-vīryyās cha śūdrān tān abravīt tu saḥ | 166. Teshām karmāṇi dharmāmś cha Brahmā 'nuvyadadhāt prabhuḥ | saṁsthitau prakṛitāyām tu chāturvarṇyasya sarvasaḥ | 167. Funāḥ prajāś tu tū mohāt tān dharmān nānvapālayan | varṇa-dharmair ajīvantyo vyarudhyanta parasparam | 168. Brahmā tam artham buddhvā tu yāthātathyena vai prabhuḥ | kshattriyāṇām balam daṇḍam yuddhaṁ ājīvam ādiśat | 169. Yājanādhyayanam chaiva tṛtīyāṁ cha parigraham | brāhmaṇānām vibhus teshām karmāṇy etāny athādiśat | 170. Pāsupāyaṁ vāṇijyāṁ cha kṛishīm chaiva viśūm dadau | śilpājīvam bhṛitīm chaiva śūdrāṇām vyadadhāt prabhuḥ | 171. Sāmānyūni tu karmāṇi brahma-kshattri-viśūm punaḥ | yājanādhyayanaṁ dānam sāmānyāni tu tesu vai | 172. Karmājīvaṁ tato datvā tebhyas chaiva parasparam | lokāntareshu sthānāni teshām siddhyāy¹⁶⁵ adāt prabhuḥ | 173.¹⁶⁶ Prājāpatyaṁ brāhmaṇānām smṛitaṁ sthānaṁ kṛiyaratām | sthānaṁ aindraṁ kshattriyāṇām sangrāmeshv apālāyinām | 174. Vaiśyānām mārutaṁ sthānaṁ sva-dharmam upajīvinām | gāndharvaṁ śūdra-jūtinām pratichāreṇa (parichāreṇa?) tiśṭhatām | 175. Sthānāny etāni varṇānām vyasyāchāraratām svayam | tataḥ sthiteshu varṇeshu sthūpayāmāsa chūśramān | 176. Gṛihastham brahmachāritvaṁ vanaprastham sabhikshukam | āśramāmś chaturō hy etūn pūrvam asthūpayat prabhuḥ | 177. Varṇa-karmāṇi ye kechit teshām iha na kurvate | kṛita-karmakshitiḥ(?) prāhur āśrama-sthāna-vāsināḥ | 178. Brahmā tān sthūpayāmāsa āśramān nāma nāmataḥ | nirdeśārthaṁ tatas teshām Brahmā dharmān prabhāshata | 179. Prasthānāni cha teshām vai yamāmścha niyamāmś cha ha | chāturvarṇyāt-makaḥ pūrvam gṛihasthas tv āśramāḥ smṛitaḥ | 180. Trāyāṇām āśramānām cha pratishṭhā yonir eva cha | yathākramam pravakshyāmi yamais cha niyamais cha taiḥ | . . . 190. Vedāḥ sāngūs cha yajñās cha vratāni niyamās cha ye | 191. Na siddhyanti prādushṭasya bhāvadoshe upagate | bahiḥ-karmāṇi sarvāni prasiddhyanti (na siddhyanti?) kadūchana |

¹⁶⁵ I conjecture *siddhyāy adāt* to be the proper reading. The MSS. | *dadāt*, or *siddhyādadāt*, etc. .

¹⁶⁶ Verses 173 f. are found in the Mār. P. verses 77 f.; but all that follows down to verse 193 is omitted there

192. *Antar-bhāva-pradushṭasya kurvato'hi parākramāt | sarvasvam api yo dadyāt kaluṣhenāntarātmanā |* 193. *Na tena dharma-bhāk sa syād bhāva eva hi kāraṇam | . . .* 199. *Evaṁ varṇāśramānām vai prati-bhāge kṛite tadā |* 200. *Yadā'sya na vyavardhanta prajā varṇāśramat-mikāḥ | tato 'nyā mānasīḥ so 'tha tretā-madhye 'srijat prajāḥ |* 201. *Āt-manas tāḥ śarīrāchcha tulyāś chaivātmanā tu vai | tasmin tretā-yuge prāpte madhyam prāpte kramena tu |* 202. *Tato 'nyā manasīs tatra pra-jāḥ sraśṭum prachakrame | tataḥ satva-rajodriktāḥ prajāḥ so 'thāsrijat prabhūḥ |* 203. *Dharmārtha-kāma-mokṣhānām vūrttāyās chaiva sādhi-kāḥ | devās cha pitaras chaiva ṛishayo manavas tatḥā |* 204. *Yugānu-rūpā dharmena yair imā vichitāḥ prajāḥ | upasthite tadā tasmin prajā-dharme (-sarge?) Svayambhuraḥ |* 205. *Abhidadhyau prajāḥ sarvā nānā-rūpās tu mānasīḥ | pūrvoktā yā mayā tubhyaṁ jana-lokaṁ samāsritāḥ |* 206. *Kalpe'tite tu tā hy āsan devādyās tu prajā iha | dhyāyatas tasya tāḥ sarvāḥ sambhūty-artham upasthitāḥ |* 207. *Manvantara-kramencha ka-nishṭhe prathamē matāḥ | khyātyā 'nubandhais tais tais tu sarvārthair iha bhāvitāḥ |* 208. *Kuśalākuśala-prāyair karmabhis taiḥ sadā prajāḥ | tat-karma-phala-śeshena upaśṭabdhāḥ prajajñire |* 209. *Devāsura-pitṛi-tvais tu paśu-pakṣhi-sarīṣipaiḥ | vṛikṣha-nāraka-kīṭatvais tais tair bhā-vair upasthitāḥ | ādhinārtham prajānām cha ātmanā vai vinirmame |*

"22. At the beginning of the Kalpa, in the first Kṛita age, he created those living beings (23) which I have formerly described to thee; but in the olden time, at the close of the Kalpa, those creatures were burnt up by fire. 24. Those of them who did not reach the Tapoloka took refuge in the Janaloka; and when the creation again commences, they form its seed. 25. Existing there as a seed for the sake of another creation, they then, as they are created, are produced with a view to progeny. 26. These are declared to accomplish, in the present state (the four ends of human life, viz.), duty, the acquisition of wealth, the gratification of love, and the attainment of final liberation, — both gods, Fathers, Rishis, and Manus. 27. They, then, filled with austere fervour, replenish (all) places. These are the mental sons of Brahmā, perfect in their nature. 28. Those who ascended to the sky by works characterized by devotion to external objects, but not by hatred, return to this world and are born in every age. 29. As the result of their works, and of their destination, (returning) from the Janaloka, they are born of the same character (as

before), in consequence of the (previous) deeds by which they are bound.¹⁰⁷ 30. It is to be understood that the cause of this is their tendency (or fate), which itself is the result of works. In consequence of these works, good or bad, they return from Janaloka and are born, (31) and receive various bodies in (different) wombs. They are produced again and again in all states, from that of gods to that of motionless substances. 32. These creatures, as they are born time after time, receive the same functions as they had obtained in each previous creation. 33. Destructiveness and undestructiveness, mildness and cruelty, righteousness and unrighteousness, truth and falsehood—actuated by such dispositions as these, they obtain (their several conditions); and hence particular actions are agreeable to particular creatures. 34. And in succeeding periods they for the most part obtain the forms and the names which they had in the past Kalpas. 35. Hence they obtain the same names and forms. In the different Kalpas they are born with the same name and form. 36. Afterwards, when the creation had been suspended, as Brāhmā was desirous to create, (37) and, fixed in his design, was meditating upon offspring,—he created from his mouth a thousand couples of living beings, (38) who were born with an abundance of goodness (*sattva*) and full of intelligence.¹⁰⁸ He then created another thousand couples from his breast: (39) they all abounded in passion (*rajas*) and were both vigorous and destitute of vigour.¹⁰⁹ After creating from his thighs another thousand pairs, (40) in whom both passion and darkness (*tamas*) prevailed, and who are described as active,—he formed from his feet yet another thousand couples (41) who were all full of darkness, inglorious, and of little vigour. Then the creatures sprung from the couples (or thus produced in couples) rejoicing, (42) and filled with mutual love, began to cohabit. From that period sexual intercourse is said to have arisen in this Kalpa. 43. But at that time women had no monthly discharge: and they consequently bore no children, although cohabit-

¹⁰⁷ *Karma-saṁśaya-bandhanāt*. I am unable to state the sense of *saṁśaya* in this compound.

¹⁰⁸ *Suchetasah*. The reading of the Märk. P. *sutejasah*, "full of vigour," is recommended, as an epithet of the Brāhmins, by its being in opposition to *alpa-tejasah*, "of little vigour," which is applied to the Sūdras a few lines below.

¹⁰⁹ The reading of the Märk. P. *amarśinah*, "irascible," gives a better sense than *asuhmīṇah*, "devoid of vigour," which the Vāyu P. has.

ation was practised. 44. At the end of their lives they once bore twins. Weak-minded boys and girls were produced when (their parents) were on the point of death. 45. From that period commenced, in this Kalpa, the birth of twins; and such offspring was once only born to these creatures by a mental effort, in meditation (46),—(offspring which was) receptive (?) of sound and the other objects of sense, pure, and in every case distinguished by five marks. Such was formerly the early mental creation of Prajapāti. 47. Those creatures by whom the world was replenished, born as the descendants of this stock, frequented rivers, lakes, seas, and mountains. 48. In that age (*yuga*) they lived unaffected by excessive cold or heat, and appropriated the food which was produced from the essences of the earth. 49. They acted according to their pleasure, existing in a state of mental perfection. They were characterized neither by righteousness nor unrighteousness; were marked by no distinctions. 50. In that *Kṛita yuga*, in the beginning of the Kalpa, their age, happiness, and form were alike: they were neither righteous nor unrighteous. 51. In the *Kṛita* age they were produced each with authority over himself. Four thousand years, according to the calculation of the gods, (52) and four hundred years for each of the morning and evening twilights, are said to form the first, or *Kṛita*, age.¹⁷⁰ Then, although these creatures were multiplied by thousands, (53) they suffered no impediment, no susceptibility to the pairs of opposites (pleasure and pain, cold and heat, etc.) and no fatigue. They frequented mountains and seas, and did not dwell in houses. 54. They never sorrowed, were full of goodness (*sattra*), and supremely happy; acted from no impulse of desire,¹⁷¹ and lived in continual delight. 55. There were at that time no beasts, birds, reptiles, or plants,¹⁷² (for these things are produced by unrighteousness),¹⁷³ (56) no roots, fruits,

¹⁷⁰ The first of the verses, which will be quoted below, in a note on verse 63, from the *Mārk. P.*, seems to be more in place than the description of the *Kṛita* age given here, of which the substance is repeated in verses 68 and 69.

¹⁷¹ Perhaps we should read here *nikūma-chārinyo* instead of *nishkūma*:- if so, the sense will be, "they moved about at will."

¹⁷² The text adds here *nūrakūḥ* or *narakūḥ*, which may mean "hellish creatures."

¹⁷³ This, although agreeing with what is said further on in verses 82, 133, and 155, does not seem in consonance with what is stated in the *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, verse 46, where it is declared: *oshadhyāḥ phala-mūlīnyo romabhyas tasya jainire | tretā-yuga-mukhe Brahmā kalpasūyātau dvijottama | śriṣṭvā paśu-oshadhīḥ samyag yuyojā sa tadā 'dhvare |* "Plants bearing roots and fruits sprang from his hairs. At the com-

flowers, productions of the seasons, nor seasons. The time brought with it every object of desire and every enjoyment. There was no excess of heat or cold. 57. The things which these people desired sprang up from the earth everywhere and always, when thought of, and had a powerful relish. 58. That perfection of theirs both produced strength and beauty, and annihilated disease. With bodies, which needed no decoration, they enjoyed perpetual youth. 59. From their pure will alone twin children were produced. Their form was the same. They were born and died together. 60. Then truth, contentment, patience, satisfaction, happiness, and self-command prevailed. They were all without distinction in respect of form, term of life, disposition and actions. 61. The means of subsistence were produced spontaneously, without forethought on their parts. In the Kṛita age they engaged in no works which were either virtuous or sinful. 62. And there were then no distinctions of castes or orders, and no mixture of castes. Men acted towards each other without any feeling of love or hatred. 63. In the Kṛita age they were born alike in form and duration of life, without any distinction of lower and higher,¹⁷⁴ with abundant happiness, free from grief, (64) with hearts continually exulting, great in dignity

mencement of the Tretā age Brahmā—having at the beginning of the Kalpa created animals and plants—employed them in sacrifice.” Although the order of the words renders the sense in some degree uncertain, it appears to be that which Prof. Wilson assigns in his translation (i. 84), “Brahmā, having created, in the commencement of the Kalpa, various [animals and] plants, employed them in sacrifices in the beginning of the Tretā age.” This interpretation is supported by the Commentator, who remarks: *Tad evaṁ kalpasyādau eva paśūn ośadhīś cha śriṣṭvā 'nantaram tīetā-yuga-mukhe prāpte sati samyag grāmāṛanya-ryasthāyā tadā 'dhvare sūnatayā (samyaktayā?) yugoja kṛita-yuge yojnasyūpravrūtteḥ* | “Having then thus at the very beginning of the Kalpa created animals and plants, he afterwards, when the commencement of the Tretā age arrived, employed them properly, according to the distinction of domestic and wild, in sacrifice,—since sacrifice did not prevail in the Kṛita age.” This agrees with the course of the preceding narrative which makes no allusion to plants and animals having been produced in a different Yuga from the other beings whose creation had been previously described. (See Wilson i. 82–84.) The parallel passage in the Vāyu P. x. 44–46, is confused.

¹⁷⁴ The Mārka. P. xlix. 24 inserts here the following lines: “They lived for four thousand years of mortals, as the measure of their existence, and suffered no calamities from distress. 25. In some places the earth again enjoyed prosperity in every respect. As through lapse of time the creatures were destroyed, so too those perfections everywhere gradually perished. 26. When they had all been destroyed, creeping-plants fell from the sky, which had nearly the character of Kalpa-trees (i.e. trees which yield all that is desired), and resembled houses.”

and in force. There existed among them no such things as gain or loss, friendship or enmity, liking or dislike. 65. It was through the mind (alone, i.e. without passion?) that these disinterested beings acted towards each other. They neither desired anything from one another; nor shewed any kindness to each other.¹⁷⁵ Contemplation is declared to be supreme in the Kṛita age, knowledge in the Tretā; sacrifice began in the Dvāpara; liberality is the highest merit in the Kali. 67. The Kṛita age is goodness (*sattva*), the Tretā is passion (*rajas*), the Dvāpara is passion and darkness (*tamas*), in the Kali it is to be understood that darkness (prevails), according to the necessary course of these ages. 68. The following is the time in the Kṛita age: understand its amount. Four thousand years constitute the Kṛita; (69) and its twilights endure for eight hundred divine years. Then their life was (so long?)¹⁷⁶ and no distresses or calamities befel them. 70. Afterwards, when the twilight in the Kṛita was gone, the righteousness peculiar to that age was in all respects reduced to a quarter (of its original sum). 71. When further the twilight had passed, at the close of the Yuga, and the righteousness peculiar to the twilight had been reduced to a quarter, (72) and when the Kṛita had thus come altogether to an end,—then perfection vanished. When this mental perfection had been destroyed, there arose (73) another perfection formed in the period of the Tretā age. The eight mental perfections, which I declared (to have existed) at the creation, (74) were gradually extinguished. At the beginning of the Kalpa mental perfection alone (existed), viz., that which existed in the Kṛita age. 75. In all the Manvantaras there is declared to arise a perfection proceeding from works, produced by the discharge of the duties belonging to castes and orders, according to the fourfold division of Yugas. 76. The (morning) twilight (deteriorates) by a quarter of the (entire) Kṛita,—and the evening twilight by (another) quarter;—(thus) the Kṛita, the morning twilight, and the evening

¹⁷⁵ This representation of the condition of mankind during the Kṛita age, the period of ideal goodness, was no doubt sketched in conformity with the opinions which prevailed at the period when the Purāṇa was compiled; when dispassion was regarded as the highest state of perfection.

¹⁷⁶ It would seem as if the writer here meant to state that the period of life was that which in the verse of the Mārka. P. (xlix. 24), quoted in the note on verse 63, it is declared to have been. But the expression here is, from some cause or other, imperfect.

twilight (together) deteriorate successively to the extent of three quarters, in the duties peculiar to the Yuga, and in austere fervour, sacred knowledge, strength, and length of life.¹⁷⁷ Then after the evening of the Kṛita had died out, (78) the Tretā age succeeded,—(which) the most excellent rishis regarded as the evening of the Kṛita. But when the evening of the Kṛita had died out, (79) from the influence of time, and for no other reason, perfection disappeared from among the creatures who survived at the commencement of the Tretā age which ensued at the beginning of the Kalpa. 80. When that perfection had perished, another perfection arose. The subtile form of water having returned in the form of cloud (to the sky),¹⁷⁸ (81) rain began to be discharged from the thundering clouds. The earth having once received that rain, (82) trees resembling houses¹⁷⁹ were provided for these creatures. From them all means of enjoyment were produced. 83. Men derived their subsistence from them at the beginning of the Tretā. Subsequently, after a great length of time, owing to their ill fortune, (84) the passions of desire and covetousness arose in their hearts uncaused. The monthly discharge, which occurred at the end of women's lives, (85) did not then take place: but as it commenced again, owing to the force of the age (*yuga*), (86) and as the couples, in consequence of it, began to cohabit, and approached each other monthly, from necessity occasioned by the time,—(87) an unseasonable^{179a} production of the monthly discharge, and of pregnancy ensued. Then through their misfortune, and owing to that fated time, (88) all those house-like trees perished. When these had been destroyed, men disturbed and agitated, (89) but genuine in their desire, longed after that perfection (which they had lost). Then those house-like trees appeared to them; (90) and among their fruits yielded clothes and jewels. On these trees too, in the hollow of every leaf, there was produced, (91) without the aid of bees, honey of great potency, having scent, colour, and flavour. By this means they subsisted at the beginning of the Tretā, (92) delighted with this per-

¹⁷⁷ Such is the only sense I can extract from these rather obscure lines.

¹⁷⁸ Such is the only sense of the words here rendered which occurs to me.

¹⁷⁹ *Gṛiha-saṁsthītāḥ*. Professor Wilson, in his Dictionary, gives "like, resembling," among the meanings of *saṁsthita*.

^{179a} Instead of *ākāle*, "out of season," Professor Aufrecht suggests *ākūle*, "in season," as the proper reading.

fection and free from trouble. Again, through the lapse of time, becoming greedy, (93) they seized by force those trees, and that honey produced without bees. And then, owing to that misconduct of theirs, (occasioned by cupidity, (94) the Kalpa trees, together with their honey, were in some places destroyed. As but little of it¹⁸⁰ remained, owing to the effects of the period of twilight, (95) the pairs (of opposites, as pleasure and pain, etc.) arose in men when existing (in this state); and they became greatly distressed by sharp cold winds, and heats. 96. Being thus afflicted by these opposites, they adopted means of shelter: and to counteract the opposites they resorted to houses. 97. Formerly they had moved about at their will, and had not dwelt at all in houses: but subsequently they abode in dwellings, as they found suitable and pleasant, (98) in barren deserts, in valleys, on mountains, in caves; and took refuge in fortresses,—(in a) desert with perpetual water.¹⁸¹ 99. As a protection against cold and heat they began to construct houses on even and uneven places, according to opportunity and at their pleasure. 100. They then measured out towns, cities, villages, and private apartments, according to the distribution of each.” [The following verses 101–107 give an account of the different measures of length and breadth, which is followed, in verses 108–122, by a description of the various kinds of fortresses, towns, and villages, their shapes and sizes, and of roads. The author then proceeds in verse 123:] “These places having been made, they next constructed houses; and as formerly trees existed, formed like houses,¹⁸² (124) so did they (now) begin to erect them, after repeated consideration. (Some) boughs are spread out, others are bent down, (125) others rise upwards, while others again stretch horizontally. After examining thus by reflection how the different boughs of trees branch out, (126) they constructed in like manner the apartments (*śākhāḥ*) (of their houses): hence they

¹⁸⁰ “Perfection” seems to be here intended. If so, it would seem as if this line had been separated from its proper context.

¹⁸¹ *Dhanvānam sūcatodakam*. Perhaps we should read here with the Mārķ. P. xlix. 35, *vārķshyam pūrvatam audakam* “(fortresses) protected by trees, built on mountains, or surrounded by water.”

¹⁸² Whatever may be thought of this rendering of the phrase, *erikshāḥ grihasāṁ sthitāḥ*, the Mārķ. P. (xlix. 52), at least, is quite clear: *grihākūrā yathā pūrvam teshāṁ āsan mahāruḥāḥ | tathā saṁsṛītya tat sarvaṁ chakrur veimūni tūḥ prajāḥ |* “As they had formerly had trees with the shape of houses, so recalling all that to mind, these people built their dwellings.”

are called rooms (*śālāḥ*).¹³³ In this way rooms and houses derive their appellation from branches. 127. Hence rooms are called *śālā*, and in that their character as rooms (*śālātram*) consists. And inasmuch as the mind takes pleasure in them, and as they have gladdened (*prāsādayan*), the mind, (128) houses, rooms, and palaces are termed respectively *griha*, *śālā*, and *prāsāda*. Having adopted these means of defence against the 'opposites,' they devised methods of subsistence. 129. The kalpa-trees having been destroyed along with their honey, those creatures, afflicted with thirst and hunger, became disquieted by dejection. 130. Then again another perfection arose for them in the Tretā age,—which fulfilled the purpose of subsistence,—viz., rain at their pleasure. 131. The rain-water, which flowed into the hollows, burst out in the form of springs, water-courses, and rivers,¹³⁴ through the rain. 132. Thus at the second fall of rain rivers began to flow. When the drops of water first reached the ground, then (133) from the conjunction of the waters and the earth plants sprang up among them, which bore both flowers, roots, and fruits. 134. Fourteen kinds of plants, cultivated and wild, were produced without ploughing or sowing, as well as trees and shrubs which bore flowers and fruit at the proper season. 135. This was the first appearance of plants in the Tretā age, and by them men subsisted at that period. 136. Then there again arose among them, universally, desire and cupidity, through a necessary process, and as a result of the Tretā age. 137. They then appropriated to themselves, by force and violence, rivers, fields, hills, trees, shrubs, and plants. 138. Those perfect beings, who were described by me as existing formerly in the Kṛita,—the mind-born children of Brahmā, who had been produced in this world when they came from the Janaloka,—(139) who were (some) tranquil, (some) fiery, (some) active, and (others) distressed,—were again born in the Tretā, (140) as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, Sūdras, and injurious men, governed by the good and bad actions (performed) in former births. 141. Then those who were weaker than they, being truthful and innocent, dwelt among them, free from cupidity, and self-restrained; (142) whilst

¹³³ The reasoning here does not seem very cogent, as the two words *śālāḥ* and *śālā* do not appear to have any close connection. But such unsuccessful attempts at etymology are frequent in Sanskrit works.

¹³⁴ The text here does not seem to be in a satisfactory state. The Calc. edition of the Mār. P. reads *ṛiśāḥyāvaruddhair abhavat*, etc.

others, less glorious than they, took and did.¹⁸⁵ When they had thus become opposed to each other, — (143) through their misconduct, while they struggled together, the plants were destroyed, being seized with their fists like gravel. 144. Then the earth swallowed up the fourteen kinds of cultivated and wild plants, in consequence of the influence exerted by the Yuga: for men had seized again and again the fruit, together with the flowers and leaves. 145. After the plants had perished, the famished people, becoming bewildered, repaired to Svayambhū the lord of creatures, (146) in the beginning of the Tretā age, seeking the means of subsistence.¹⁸⁶ Learning what they desired, (147) and determining by intuition what was proper to be done, the Lord Brahmā Svayambhū, knowing that the plants had been swallowed up by the earth, milked them back. 148. Taking Sumeru as a calf, he milked this earth. When this earth (or cow)¹⁸⁷ was milked by him, roots were

¹⁸⁵ It is difficult to extract any satisfactory sense out of this line.

¹⁸⁶ The S. P. Br. ii. 4, 2, 1, also speaks of different classes of creatures applying to the creator for food: *Prajāpatiṃ vai bhūtāny upāsīdan | prajāḥ vai bhūtāni | "vi no dheḥi yathā jīvāma" iti | tato devā yajnōpavitino bhūtā dakṣiṇāṃ jānu āchya upāsīdan | tūn abravīt "yajno vo 'nnam amṛitatvaṃ va ūrg vaḥ sūryo vo jyotir" iti | 2. Atha enam pitarāḥ prāchināvītinaḥ savyāṃ jānu āchya upāsīdan | tūn abravīt "māsi māsi vo 'śanām svadhā vo manojavo vaḥ chandramā vo jyotir" iti | 3. Atha enam manushyāḥ prāvṛitāḥ upasthāṃ kṛtvā upāsīdan | tūn abravīt "sāyam prutar vo 'śanam prajāḥ vo mṛityur vo 'gnir vo jyotir" iti | 4. Atha enam paśavaḥ upāsīdan | tebhyaḥ svaisham eva chakūra "yadū eva yūyam kadūcha labhādhvai yadi kule yady anūkūle atha eva aśnūtha" iti | tasmād ete yadū kadūcha labhante yadi kule yady anūkūle atha eva aśnanti | 5. Atha ha enam śas'vad apy asurāḥ upasēdur ity ūhuḥ | tebhyaḥ tamaś cha mūyāṃ cha pradadāu | asty aha eva asura-mūyā iti iva | parābhūtā ha to eva tāḥ prajāḥ | tūḥ imūḥ prajāḥ tathaiva upajīvanti yathaiva ābhyaḥ Prajā-patir adadāt | "All beings resorted to Prajāpati, — (creatures are beings), — (saying) 'provide for us that we may live.' Then the gods, wearing the sacrificial cord, and bending the right knee, approached him. To them he said, 'let sacrifice be your food, your immortality your strength, the sun your light.' 2. Then the Fathers, wearing the sacrificial cord on their right shoulders, and bending the left knee, approached him. To them he said, 'you shall eat monthly, your oblation (svadhā) shall be your rapidity of thought, the moon your light.' 3. Then men, clothed, and inclining their bodies, approached him. To them he said, 'ye shall eat morning and evening, your offspring shall be your death, Agni your light.' 4. Then cattle repaired to him. To them he accorded their desire, (saying), 'Whosoever ye find anything, whether at the proper season or not, eat it.' Hence whenever they find anything, whether at the proper season or not, they eat it. 5. Then they say that the Asuras again and again resorted to him. To them he gave darkness (tamaś) and illusion. There is, indeed, such a thing as the illusion, as it were, of the Asuras. But those creatures succumbed. These creatures subsist in the very manner which Prajāpati allotted to them."*

¹⁸⁷ *Gauh* means both.

produced again in the ground,—(149) those plants, whereof hemp is the seventeenth, which end with the ripening of fruits.” [The plants fit for domestic use, and for sacrifice are then enumerated in verses 150–155.] “155. All these plants, domestic and wild, were for the first time¹⁸⁸ produced at the beginning of the Tretā age, (156) without cultivation, trees, shrubs, and the various sorts of creepers and grasses, both those which produce roots as their fruits, and those which bear fruit after flowering. The seeds for which the earth was formerly milked by Svayambhū (158) now became plants bearing flowers and fruits in their season. When these plants, though created, did not afterwards grow, (159) the divine Brahmā Svayambhū devised for the people means of subsistence depending on labour effected by their hands. 160. From that time forward the plants were produced and ripened through cultivation. The means of subsistence having been provided, Svayambhū (161) established divisions among them according to their tendencies.¹⁸⁹ Those of them who were rapacious, and destructive, (162) he ordained to be Kshattriyas, protectors of the others.¹⁹⁰ As many men as attended on these, fearless, (163) speaking truth and propounding sacred knowledge (*brahma*) with exactness, (were made) Brāhmins. Those others of them who had previously been feeble, engaged in the work of slaughter,¹⁹¹ who, as cultivators (*kīnāsāḥ*), had been destructive, and were active in connection with the ground, were called Vaiśyas, husbandmen (*kīnāsān*), providers of subsistence. 165. And he designated as Sūdras those who grieved (*śochantāḥ*), and ran (*dravantāḥ*),¹⁹² who were addicted to menial tasks, inglorious and feeble.

¹⁸⁸ See the note on verse 55, above.

¹⁸⁹ *Yathākārābhūḥ*. The Mārk. P. has *yathā-nyāyāṁ yathā-guṇam*, “according to fitness and their qualities.”

¹⁹⁰ *Itareshūṁ kṛita-trāṇān*. The M. Bh. xii. 2247, thus explains the word Kshattriya: *brūhmaṇyūnām kṣhata-trāṇāt tataḥ kshattriya uchyate* | “(a king) is called Kshattriya because he protects Brāhmins from injuries.”

¹⁹¹ *Vaiśasam karma*. The former word has the senses of (1) “hindrance, impediment,” and (2) “slaughter,” assigned to it in Wilson’s Dictionary.

¹⁹² The reader who is familiar with the etymologies given in Yūska’s Nirukta, or in Professor Wilson’s Dictionary on Indian authority, will not be surprised at the absurdity of the attempts made here by the Purāṇa-writer to explain the origin of the words Kshattriya, Vaiśya and Sūdra. To account for the last of these names he combines the roots *śuch*, “to grieve,” and *dru*, “to run,” dropping, however, of necessity the last letter (*ch*) of the former. The word *kshattriya* is really derived from *kshattrā*, “royal power;” and *vaiśya* comes from *viś*, “people,” and means “a man of the people.”

166. *Brahmā* determined the respective functions and duties of all these persons. But after the system of the four castes had been in all respects established, (167) those men from infatuation did not fulfil their several duties. Not living conformably to those class-duties, they came into mutual conflict. 168. Having become aware of this fact, precisely as it stood, the Lord *Brahmā* prescribed force, criminal justice, and war, as the profession of the *Kshattriyas*. 169. He then appointed these, viz., the duty of officiating at sacrifices, sacred study, and the receipt of presents, to be the functions of *Brāhmans*. 170. The care of cattle, traffic, and agriculture, he allotted as the work of the *Vaiśyas*; and the practice of the mechanical arts, and service, he assigned as that of the *Sūdras*. 171. The duties common to *Brāhmans*, *Kshattriyas*, and *Vaiśyas* were the offering of sacrifice, study, and liberality. 172. Having distributed to the classes their respective functions and occupations, the Lord then allotted to them abodes in other worlds for their perfection. 173. The world of *Prajāpati* is declared to be the (destined) abode of *Brāhmans* practising rites; *Indra's* world that of *Kshattriyas* who do not flee in battle; (174) the world of the *Maruts* that of *Vaiśyas* who fulfil their proper duty; the world of the *Gaṇḍharvas* that of men of *Sūdra* birth who abide in the work of service. 175. Having allotted these as the future abodes of (the men of the different) classes, who should be correct in their conduct, he ordained orders (*āśramas*) in the classes which had been established. 176. The Lord formerly instituted the four orders of householder, religious student, dweller in the woods, and mendicant. 177. To those of them who do not in this world perform the duties of their castes, the men who dwell in hermitages apply the appellation of 'destroyer of works.' 178. *Brahmā* established these orders by name, and in explanation of them he declared their duties, (179) their methods of procedure, and their various rites. First of all there is the order of householder, which belongs to all the four classes, (180) and is the foundation and source of the other three orders. I shall declare them in order with their several observances." [The following verses 181-189, which detail these duties, need not be cited here. I shall, however, quote verses 190 ff. for their excellent moral tone.] "190. The *Vedas*, with their appendages, sacrifices, fasts, and ceremonies, (191) avail not to a depraved man, when his disposition has become corrupted. All external rites are

fruitless (192) to one who is inwardly debased, however energetically he may perform them. A man who bestows even the whole of his substance with a defiled heart will thereby acquire no merit—of which a good disposition is the only cause.” [After giving some further particulars about the celestial abodes of the righteous, verses 194–198, the writer proceeds:] “199. When—after the division into castes and orders had thus been made—(200) the people living under that system did not multiply, Brahmā formed other mind-born creatures in the middle of the Tretā (201) from his own body and resembling himself. When the Tretā age had arrived, and had gradually reached its middle, (202) the Lord then began to form other mind-born creatures. He next formed creatures in whom goodness (*sattva*) and passion (*rajas*) predominated, (203) and who were capable of attaining (the four objects of human pursuit) righteousness, wealth, love, and final liberation, together with the means of subsistence. Gods, too, and Fathers, and Rishis, and Manus (were formed), (204) by whom these creatures were classified (?) according to their natures in conformity with the Yuga. When this character(?) of his offspring had been attained, Brahmā (205) longed after mental offspring of all kinds and of various forms. Those creatures, whom I described to you as having taken refuge in Janaloka, (206) at the end of the Kalpa, all these arrived here, when he thought upon them, in order to be reproduced in the form of gods and other beings. 207. According to the course of the Manvantaras the least were esteemed the first (?), being swayed by destiny, and by connections and circumstances of every description. 208. These creatures were always born, under the controuling influence of, and as a recompence for their good or bad deeds. 209. He by himself formed those creatures which arrived in their several characters of gods, asuras, fathers, cattle, birds, reptiles, trees, and insects, in order that they might be subjected (anew) to the condition of creatures.”¹⁹³

The substance of the curious speculations on the origin and primeval condition of mankind contained in the preceding passage may be stated as follows: In verses 22–34 we are told that the creatures, who at the close of the preceding Kalpa had been driven by the mundane conflagration to Janaloka, now formed the seed of the new creation, which took place in the Kṛita Yuga, at the commencement of the present

¹⁹³ I confess that I have had great difficulty in attaching any sense to the last words.

Kalpa. These were mind-born sons of Brahmā, perfect in nature, and they peopled the world. As a rule, we are informed, those beings who have formerly been elevated from the earth to higher regions, return again and again to this world, and, as a result of their previous works, are born in every age, in every possible variety of condition, exhibiting the same dispositions and fulfilling the same functions as in their former states of existence. It is next stated, verses 35-40, that when creation had, in some way not explained, come to a stand-still, four classes of human beings, consisting each of a thousand pairs of males and females, characterized respectively by different qualities, physical and moral, were produced from different members of the Creator's body.¹⁹⁴ These creatures sought to propagate the race, but abortively, for the reason specified (43). Children however were produced by mental effort (45 and 59), and in considerable numbers (52). The state of physical happiness, absolute and universal equality, moral perfection, and complete dispassion, in which mankind then existed, is depicted (48-65). The means of subsistence and enjoyment, which they are said to have drawn from the earth (48 and 57), were not of the ordinary kind, as we are informed (55 f.) that neither animals nor plants, which are the products of unrighteousness, existed at that period. No division into castes or orders prevailed during that age of perfection (62). A gradual declension, however, had been going on, and at the end of the Kṛita Yuga, the perfection peculiar to it had altogether disappeared (70-79). Another kind of perfection, peculiar to the Tretā, however, subsequently arose (73 and 80), and in the different Yugas there has existed a perfection springing from the performance of the duties belonging to each caste and order (75). The perfection described as prevailing in the Tretā was of a physical kind, consisting in the production of ruin and the growth of trees, shaped like houses, which at the same time yielded the materials of all sorts of enjoyments (80-82). Passion, however, in its various forms began to take the place of the previous dispassion (84). The constitution of women, which had formerly incapacitated them for effective impregnation, became ultimately so modified as to ensure the successful propagation of the species, which

¹⁹⁴ This statement agrees with that in the Mārka. P. xlix. 3 ff. but differs from that already given from the Viṣṇu P. in so far as the latter does not specify the numbers created, or say anything about pairs being formed.

accordingly proceeded (84-87).¹⁰⁵ We have then the destruction, and subsequent reproduction of the trees, formed like houses, described (88-91). These trees now produced clothes and jewels, as well as honey without bees, and enabled mankind to live in happiness and enjoyment. Again, however, the trees disappeared in consequence of the cupidity which led to their misuse (92-94). The absence of perfection occasioned suffering of various kinds, from moral as well as physical causes, and men were now driven to construct houses, which they had hitherto found unnecessary (96-99 and 123), and to congregate in towns and cities (100). Their houses were built after the model furnished by trees (123-128). The hunger and thirst which men endured from the loss of the trees which had formerly yielded all the means of subsistence and enjoyment, were relieved by means of a new perfection which appeared in the shape of rain, and the streams thereby generated, and by the growth of plants, which now sprang up for the first time as a result of the conjunction of water and earth (130-135 and 155). Desire and cupidity, however, now again arose and led to acts of violent appropriation (136 f.). At this juncture the perfect mind-born sons of Brahmā, of different dispositions, who had formerly existed in the Kṛita age, were reproduced in the Tretā as Brāhmans, Kshatriyas, Vaiśyas, Sūdras, and destructive men, as a result of their actions in their former existence (138-140). But in consequence of their dissensions and rapacity, the earth swallowed up all the existing plants (142-144). Under the pressure of the distress thus occasioned the inhabitants of the earth resorted to Brahmā, who milked the earth, through the medium of mount Sumeru acting as a calf, and recovered the plants which had disappeared (145-149). As, however, these plants did not propagate themselves spontaneously, Brahmā introduced agriculture (158-160). Having thus provided the means of subsistence, he divided the people into classes according to their characteristics (160-165). But as these classes did not perform their several duties, and came into mutual conflict, Brahmā prescribed their respective functions with greater precision (166-171); and assigned the future celestial abodes which the members of each class might attain by their fulfilment (172-174). He then ordained the four orders of householder, religious

¹⁰⁵ It is not quite clear, however, what is intended by the word *akāśa*, "out of season," in verse 87. See the emendation proposed above in the note on that verse.

student, etc. (175-190). After a few verses in praise of moral purity (190-193), the abodes and destinies of the eminently righteous are set forth (194-199). Just when we had arrived at a point in the narrative, from which we might have imagined that it had only to be carried on further to afford us a sufficient explanation of the state of things existing up to the present age, we are suddenly arrested (199-202) by being informed that the people distributed according to the system of castes and orders did not multiply, and are introduced to a new mind-born creation, which took place in the Tretā age, to remedy this failure. We are next told (203) of what appears to be another creation of beings endowed with goodness and passion. And, finally, a yet further re-incorporation of previously existing souls is described as having taken place (205-209). It would thus seem that after all we are left without any account of the origin of the system of castes which prevailed when the Purāṇa was compiled. The only suppositions on which this conclusion can be avoided are either (1) that the cessation in the increase of the generation alluded to in verse 200, which led to the new creation, was not universal, that the race then existing did not entirely die out, but that the old blood was re-invigorated by that of the newly created beings; or (2) that the other set of creatures, mentioned in verse 203, as characterized by goodness and passion, were the progenitors of the present race of men. On these points, however, the text throws no light.

The preceding account of the creation of mankind and of the vicissitudes and deterioration of society, is in some places obscure and confused, and its several parts do not appear to be consistent with each other. At the outset the writer describes the creation of four thousand pairs of human beings, of whom each separate set of one thousand is distinguished by widely different innate characters, the first class having the quality of goodness, the second that of passion, the third those of passion and darkness, and the fourth that of darkness. Nevertheless (as in the parallel passage of the Viṣṇu Purāṇa) we cannot find in the narrative the least trace of those inherent differences of character having for a long time manifested themselves by producing dissimilarity either of moral conduct or of physical condition; for the perfection, which is described as existing in the Kṛita age, is spoken of as if it was universal; and not only is no distinction alluded to as prevailing at this period between

the component parts of society, but we are expressly told that no castes or orders then existed. The deterioration also, which ensued towards the end of the Kṛita age, is described as general, and not peculiar to any class. How is this complete uniformity, first of perfection, and afterwards of declension, which, for anything that appears to the contrary, is predicated of the descendants of the whole of the four thousand pairs, to be reconciled with the assertion that each thousand of those pairs was characterized by different innate qualities? The difficulty is not removed by saying that the writer supposed that these inherent varieties of character existed in a latent or dormant state in the different classes, and were afterwards developed in their descendants; for he distinctly declares (verse 54) in general terms that mankind were at that period *sattra-bahulāḥ*, i.e. "possessed the quality of goodness in abundance;" and in the earlier part of the subsequent narrative no allusion is made to the different qualities at first ascribed to the four sets of a thousand pairs being separately developed in the members of the four classes respectively. In verse 74, indeed, it appears to be assumed that the division into castes had existed from the creation; for we there find an assertion that in "all the Manvantaras, according to the division of the four yugas," (including apparently the Kṛita) "there is declared to have existed a perfection effected by the observances of the castes and orders, and arising from the fulfilment of works;" but how is this to be reconciled with the express statement of verses 60 and 61, that "in the Kṛita age no works were performed which were either virtuous or sinful," and that "there then existed neither distinctions of caste or order, nor any mixture of castes?" In the Tretā age the state of deterioration continued, but no reference is made of any separation of classes till we come to verse 138, where it is said that the beings who in the Kṛita age had existed as the perfect mind-born sons of Brahmā, were now, as a consequence of their former actions, recalled into human existence, and in conformity with their previous characters as calm, fiery, laborious, or depressed, became Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, Sūdras, and men of violence. These creatures, after they had been furnished with the means of subsistence, were eventually divided into classes, according to their varieties of disposition, character, and occupation; and as at first they did not fulfil their proper duties, but encroached upon each others'

provinces, their functions were afterwards more stringently defined and the means of enforcing obedience were provided. Here it is intimated that different sets of beings were born as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, on account of the different qualities which they had manifested in a previous existence, and that in conformity with those same characteristics they were afterwards formally distributed into castes. This description is therefore so far consistent with itself. The difference of caste is made to depend upon the dispositions of the soul. But how are we to reconcile this postulation of different characters formerly exhibited with the description given in the previous part of the narrative, where we are informed that, in the earlier parts, at least, of the Kṛita age, all men were alike perfect, and that no actions were performed which were either virtuous or vicious? If such was the case at that period, how could the beings who then existed have manifested those differences of disposition and character which are asserted to have been the causes of their being subsequently reborn as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Sūdras, and Vaiśyas? It may be admitted that the differences of character, which are attributed in the Purāṇa to the four primeval sets of a thousand pairs of human beings, correspond to those qualities which are described as having subsequently given rise to the division into castes; but the assertion of such a state of uniform and universal perfection, as is said to have intervened between the creation of mankind and the realization of caste, seems incompatible with the existence of any such original distinctions of a moral character.

As regards this entire account when compared with the other two descriptions of the creation given in the previous part of this section, the same remarks are applicable as have been made in the last section, p. 65 f., on the corresponding passages from the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

The chapter which I have just translated and examined, is followed immediately by the one of which I have already in a preceding page quoted the commencement, descriptive of the creation of Asuras, Gods, Fathers, etc., from the different bodies assumed and cast off successively by Brahṁā.

I shall now give an extract from the following, or tenth chapter, in which the the legend of Śatarūpā is related.

Śūta uvācha | 1. *Evambhūteshu lokeshu Brahmanā loka-karttrīṇā*¹⁰⁰ |

¹⁰⁰ This form *karttrīṇā* (one which, as is well known, may be optionally employed in

yadā tāḥ na pravarttante prajāḥ kenāpi hetunā | 2. *Tamo-mātrārṇvito Brahmā tadā-prabhṛiti duḥkḥitāḥ* | *tataḥ sa vidadhe buddhim arthanischaya-gāminim* | 3. *Athātmani samasrūṣhit tamo-mātrām nijāt-mikām* | *rajaḥ-sattvam parājitya varttamānaḥ sa dharmataḥ* | 4. *Tapyate tena duḥkkena śokaḥ chakre jagat-patiḥ* | *tamas tu ryanudat tasmād rajas tach cha samācṛinot* | 5. *Tat tamaḥ pratinuttaḥ vai mithunaḥ samvyaṇyayata* | *adharmaś charaṇāj jāne hiṃsā śokād ajāyata* | 6. *Tatas tasmīn sumudbhūte mithune charaṇātmani* | *tataś cha bhagavān āsit pritiśchainam aśiśriyat* | 7. *Svām tanuḥ sa tato Brahmā tām apohat abhāsvarām* | *dvidhā 'karot sa taṁ deham ardhenā puruṣo 'bhavat* | 8. *Ardhenā nārī sū tasya Satarūpā vyajāyata* | *prākṛitām bhūta-dhātṛim tām kāmād vai śriṣṭarān vibhuḥ* | 9. *Sū divam prithivīm chaira mahimnā vyāpya dhikṣhītā* | *Brahmanaḥ sū tanuḥ pūrvā divam ācṛitya tiṣṭhati* | 10. *Yā tv ardhāt śrijate nārī S'atarūpā vyajāyata* | *sū devī niyataḥ taptrā tapaḥ parama-duṣcharam* | *bharttāram diptayaśasam Puruṣam pratyapadyata* | 11. *Sa vai Svāyambhuraḥ pūrvam Puruṣo Manur uchyate* | *tasyaikasaptati-yugam Manrantaram ihochyate* | 12. *Labdhvā tu puruṣaḥ patnīm Satarūpām ayonijām* | *tayā sa ramate sūrdham tasmāt sū Ratir uchyate* | 13. *Prathamāḥ samprayogaḥ sa kalpādaḥ samavarttata* | *Virājam aśrijat Brahmā so 'bhavat Puruṣo Virāṭ* | 14. *Sa samrāṭ māsarūpāt tu vairājaḥ sa sarge puruṣo Manuḥ smṛitāḥ* | *sa vairājaḥ prajā-sargaḥ sa sarge puruṣo Manuḥ* | 15. *Vairājāt puruṣād virāḥ chhatarūpā vyajāyata* | *Priyavratottānapādaḥ putrau putratātām varau* |

“1. When the worlds had thus been formed by Brahmā their creator,¹⁹⁷ but the creatures, for some reason did not engage in action, (2) Brahmā, enveloped in gloom, and thenceforward dejected, formed a resolution tending to ascertain the fact. 3. He then created in himself (a body) of his own, formed of pure gloom (*tamas*), having overpowered the passion (*rajas*) and goodness (*sattva*) which existed (in him) naturally. 4. The Lord of the world was afflicted with that suffering, and la-

the neuter, but not in the masculine) is here used for metrical reasons. Such irregularities are, as we have seen, designated by the Commentators as *ārsā*. It is unlikely that Brahman should be here used in a neuter sense.

¹⁹⁷ The true reading here may be *pravaraddhante*, in which case the sense will be “did not multiply.” Compare the parallel passage in the Vishnu Purāṇa, i. 7, 4, p. 64.

mented.¹⁹⁸ He then dispelled the gloom, and covered over the passion.

5. The gloom, when scattered, was formed into a pair.¹⁹⁹ Unrighteousness arose from activity (?), and mischief sprang from sorrow.²⁰⁰

6. That active (?) pair having been produced, he became glorious (?) and pleasure took possession of him. 7. Brahmā after that cast off that body of his, which was devoid of lustre, and divided his person into two parts; with the half he became a male (*purusha*) (8) and with the half a female: it was Satarūpā who was so produced to him. Under the impulse of lust he created her a material supporter of beings. 9. By her magnitude she pervaded both heaven and earth. That former body of Brahmā invests the sky. 10. This divine female Satarūpā, who was born to him from his half, as he was creating, by incessantly practising austere fervour of a highly arduous description, acquired for herself as a husband a Male (*purusha*) of glorious renown. He is called of old the Male, Manu Svāyambhuva; and his period (*manvantara*) is declared to extend to seventy-one Yugas. 12. This Male, having obtained for his wife, Satarūpā, not sprung from any womb, lived in dalliance with her (*ramate*); and from this she is called Rati (the female personification of sexual love). 13. This was the first cohabitation practised in the beginning of the Kalpa. Brahmā created Virāj; he was the Male, Virāj. 14. He is the sovereign (*samrāj*), from his having the form of a month; and Manu is known as the son of Virāj.²⁰⁰ This creation of living beings is called that of Virāj. In this creation Manu is the male. 15. Satarūpā bore to the heroic Purusha, son of Virāj, two sons, Priyavrata and Uttānapāda, the most eminent of these who have sons." This is followed by a further genealogy, into which I will not enter.

By comparing this account with the one extracted above, p. 64 f. from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 7, 1 ff., it will be seen that while it makes no allusion to the production of Rudra, as related in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (which, as well as the birth of the mental sons of Brahmā, the Vāyu Purāṇa had described in the preceding chapter, verses 67-83), it is somewhat fuller in regard to the legend of Satarūpā; and although it

¹⁹⁸ With this account of Brahmā's dejection and grief the accounts quoted above pp. 68 ff. from the Brāhmanas may be compared.

¹⁹⁹ Compare the narrative of the Vishṇu Purāṇa i. 7, 9 ff. quoted in p. 64 f.

²⁰⁰ Compare the account given in Manu's Institutes, above, p. 86.

does not allow that Brahmā cohabited with his daughter, and assigns to her another husband, Manu Svāyambhūva, it describes the creator as having been actuated by carnal desire in generating her. I shall give further illustrations of this story in the next section.

Sect. IX.—*Legend of Brahmā and his daughter, according to the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and of Satarūpā, according to the Matsya Purāṇa.*

The story which forms the subject of the present section is noticed at some length in the fourth volume of this work, pp. 38–46, where one of the oldest passages in which it is related, is quoted from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 7, 4, 1 ff., together with one of a comparatively late age from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, iii. 12, 28 ff. As however the legend, ~~though repulsive in its character~~, is not without interest as illustrating the opinions which Indian mythologists have entertained regarding their deities, I shall quote two other texts in which it is narrated.

The first, from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 33, has, no doubt (along with the passage of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa just referred to, and another from the same work, xiv. 4, 2, 1 ff., quoted above, in p. 24 ff.), furnished the ideas which are expanded in the later versions of the story. It is as follows :

Prajāpatir vai svām dukhitarāṃ abhyadhyāyat | Diram ity anye āhur Uhasam ity anye | tām ṛśyo bhūtvā rohitām bhūtām abhyait | tam devā apasūyan | “akṛitaṃ vai Prajāpatiḥ kuroti” iti | te tam aichhan yaḥ enam āriṣhyati | etam anyonyasmin na acindan | teshām yā eva ghoratāmās tanvaḥ āsāṃs tāḥ ekadhā samabharan | tāḥ sambhṛitāḥ eṣa devo 'bharat | tad asya etad bhūtaran-nāma | bhavati vai sa yo'sya etad evaṃ nāma veda | tam devā abhuran “ayaṃ vai Prajāpatir akṛitaṃ akur imam vidhya” iti | sa “tathā” ity abharit | “sa vai vo varam vṛṇai” iti | “vṛṇīṣhva” iti | sa etam eva varam arṇīta paśūnām ūdhipatyam | tad asya etat paśuman-nāma | paśumān bhavati yo'sya etad evaṃ nāma veda | tam abhyāyatyā avidhyat | sa viddhaḥ ūrddho udaprāpatad ityādi²⁰¹ |

²⁰¹ See the translation of this passage given by Dr. Haug in his Aitareya Brāhmaṇa

"Prajāpati lusted after his own daughter. Some call her the Sky, others Ushas. Becoming a buck, he approached her after she had become a doe. The gods saw him; (and said) Prajāpati does a deed which was never done (before).²⁰² They sought some one who should take vengeance on him. Such a person they did not find among themselves. They then gathered together their most dreadful bodies. These when combined formed this god (Rudra). Hence (arises) his name connected with Bhūta (*Bhūtapati*). That man flourishes²⁰³ who thus knows this name of his. The gods said to him, 'This Prajāpati has done a deed which was never done before: pierce him.' He replied, 'so be it,' (adding), 'let me ask a boon of you.' They rejoined, 'ask.' He asked for this boon, viz., lordship over cattle. Hence arises his name connected with Paśu (*Paśupati*). He who thus knows his name, becomes the owner of cattle. He then attacked (Prajāpati) and pierced him. He, when pierced, soared upwards," etc. etc. *in such a way*

The second passage I proposed to cite is from the Matsya Purāṇa, chapter iii. verses 32 ff.: *Etad tattvātmakam kṛitrā jagad dvedhā ajījanat* | 33. *Sāvitṛim loka-siddhyartham hṛidi kṛitvā samāsthitaḥ* | *tataḥ sanjapatas tasya bhūtvā deham akalmasham* | 34. *strī-rūpam arddham akarod arddham puruṣa-rūparat* | *Satarūpā cha sū khyātā Sāvitṛi cha nigadyate* | 35. *Sarasvaty atha Gāyatrī Brahmāṇī cha parantapa* | *tataḥ sa Brahmadevās tām ātmajām ity akalpayat* | 36. *Dṛiṣṭvā tām tyathitas tāvat kūma-cūṇārdito vibhuḥ* | "aho rūpam aho rūpam" ity uvācha tadā 'vyayaḥ | 37. *Tato Vasishṭha-pramukhā "bhaginīm" iti chukruṣuḥ* | *Brahmā na kinchid dadṛise tan-mukhālokanād ṛite* | 38. "Aho rūpam aho rūpam" iti āha punaḥ punaḥ | *tataḥ praṇāma-namrūm tām punas tām abhyalokayat* | 39. *Atha praduḥkṣhīṇam chakre sū pitur varatarṇinī* | *putrehhyo lujjitasyāsyā tad-rūpālokanekhayā* | 40. *Āvirbhūtam tato vaktram dakṣhiṇam pāṇḍu-gaṇḍuvat* |

vol. ii. pp. 218 ff.; and the remarks on this translation by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, ix. 217 ff.; and also Professor Roth's explanation of the word *bhūtavat* in his *Lexicon*.

²⁰² This seems to be imitated in the line of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa iii. 12, 30, quoted in vol. iv. of this work, p. 40: *naitat pūrvaiḥ kṛitām tvad ye na karishyanti chāpare* | "This was never done by those before thee, nor will those after thee do it."

²⁰³ *Bhavati*. In the Brāhmaṇas this verb has frequently the sense of prospering, as opposed to *parābhavati*, "he perishes." See Böttlingk and Roth's *Lexicon*, s. v., and the passages there referred to.

vismaya-sphurad-oshṭhaṁ cha pāschātyam udagāt tataḥ | 41. Chatur-
 thum abhavat paśchād vūmaṁ kūma-śarāturam | tato 'nyad abhavat
 tasya kāmāturatayā tathā | 42. Utpatantyās tadā "kūśe ālokena kutū-
 halūt | śriṣṭy-arthaṁ yat kṛitam tena tapaḥ paramadārunam | 43. Tat
 sarvam nāśam agamat sva-sutopagamechhayā | tenāśu²⁰⁴ taktram abhavat
 panchamaṁ tasya dhīmataḥ | 44. Āvirbhavaj jaṭūbhiṣcha tad vaktranchū-
 rṇinot prabhuḥ | tatas tām abravīd Brahmā putrān ātma-samudbhavān |
 45. "Prajāḥ srijadhvam abhitaḥ sa-devāsura-mānushāḥ" | evam uktūś
 tataḥ sarve sasrijur vividhāḥ prajāḥ | 46. Gateshu tesku śriṣṭyartham
 praṇāmūranatām imām | upayame sa viśvātmā S'atarūpām aninditām |
 47. Sambabhūva tayā sārddham atikāmāturo vibhuḥ | salajjām chakame
 deraḥ kamalodara-mandire | 48. Yāvād abda-śataṁ diryaṁ yathā 'nyāḥ
 prākṛito janaḥ | tataḥ kālēna mahatā tasyāḥ putro 'bhavad Manuḥ | 49.
 Svāyambhūva iti khyātāḥ sa Virūḍḍ iti naḥ śrutam | tad-rūpa-guṇa-sāmā-
 nyād adhipūruṣa uchyate | 50. Vairājū yatra te jātāḥ bahavaḥ saṁśita-
 vratāḥ | Srāyambhuvā mahābhūgūḥ sapta sapta tathā 'pare | 51. Srā-
 rochishādyaḥ sarve te Brahma-tulya-srarūpiṇāḥ | Auttami-pramukhās
 tadrad yeshām traṁ saptamo 'dhunā | (Adhyāya. 4.) Manur uvācha |
 1. Aho kashṭataraṁ chaitad angajūgamanaṁ vibhoḥ | Kathaṁ na doṣham
 agamat karmanā tena Padmajāḥ | 2. Parasparaṁcha sambandhaḥ sago-
 trāṇām abhūt katham | vaivāhikas tat-sutānām chhindi me saṁśayaṁ
 vibho | Matsya uvācha | 3. Divyeyam ādi-śriṣṭis tu rajo-guṇa-samud-
 bhavā | atīndriyendriyā tadrad atīndriya-śarīrikā | 4. Dirya-tejomayī
 bhūpa dirya-jnāna-samudbhavā | na chānyair abhitaḥ śakyā jñātum vai
 māṁsa-chakshushā | 5. Yathā bhujangāḥ sarpāṇām ākūśe sarva-pakshi-
 ṇām | vidanti mārgām divyānām diryā eva na mānavāḥ | 6. Kūryā-
 kūryeṇa devāścha śubhāśubha-phala-pradūḥ | yasmāt tasmād na rājendra
 tad-ricchāro nṛṇām śubhaḥ | 7. Anyachcha sarva-devānām adhishṭhātā
 chaturmukhaḥ | gāyatrī Brahmanas tadrad anga-bhūtā nigadyate | 8.
 Amūrta-mūrttimad vāpi mithunancha prachakshate | Viranchir yatra
 bhagavāns tatra devī Sarasvatī | 9. Bhūrati yatra yatraiva tatra tatra
 Prajāpatīḥ | yathātapaṇa rahitā chhāyā vai (? na) dṛśyate krachit |
 10. Gāyatrī Brahmanāḥ pārśvam tathāiva na vimunchati | veda-rāśiḥ
 smṛito Brahmā Sāvitrī tad-adhishṭhitā | 11. Tasmād na kashchid doṣhaḥ
 syāt Sāvitrī-gamano vibhoḥ | tathāpi lajjāvanataḥ Prajāpatir abhūt purā |
 12. Sva-sutopagamād Brāhmā śāsūpa Kusumāyudham | yasmād mamāpi

²⁰⁴ Instead of tenāśu the Gaikowar MS. reads tenordhva.

bharatā manah saṁkshobhitāṁ śaraiḥ | 13. *Tasmāt trad-deham achirād Rudro bhasmīkarishyati* | *tataḥ prasādayāmāsa Kāmādevas Chaturmukham* | 14. “*Na mām akāraṇāṁ śaptuṁ tram ihārhasi mām ara* | *aham eraṁ-ridhaḥ śṛishṭas trayaira chaturānana* | 15. *Indriya-kshobha-janakah sarceshām eca dehinām* | *stri-puṁsor avichāreṇa mayā sarvatra sarvadā* | 16. *Kshobhyam manah prayatnena trayairuktam purā vibho* | *tasmād anaparūdhena trayā śaptas tathā vibho* | 17. *Kuru prasādam bhāgavan sa-śarīrūptaye punaḥ* | *Brahmā uvācha* | 18. *Tairasvate 'ntare prāpte Yādārānaya-sambharaḥ* | *Rāmo nūma yadā martyo mat-sattra-balam āśritah* | 19. *Avatiryāsura-dhvaṁsī Drārakūm adhiratsyati* | *tad-dhātus tat-samaścha* ²⁰⁵ *traṁ tadā putratram eśhyasi ityādi* |

“32. Having thus formed the universe, consisting of the principles, he generated a twofold creation, (33) having, with a view to the completion of the world, placed and kept Sāvitṛī in his heart. Then as he was muttering prayers, he divided his spotless body (34) and gave to the half the form of a woman, and to the half that of a male. (This female) is called Satarūpā, Sāvitṛī, (35) Sarasvatī, Gāyatrī, and Brahmānī. Brahmā then took her for his daughter. 36. Beholding her, the imperishable deity, distressed, tortured with the arrows of love, exclaimed, ‘o what beauty! o what beauty!’ 37. Then (his sons) headed by Vasishṭha, cried aloud, ‘(our) sister.’ Brahmā saw nothing else, looking only at her face; (38) and exclaimed again and again, ‘o what beauty! o what beauty!’ He then again gazed upon her, as she bend forward in obeisance. 39. The fair woman then made a circuit round her father. As on account of his sons he felt ashamed from his desire of gazing on her beauty (40) there appeared (on his head) a southern face with pale cheeks; and there was afterwards manifested a western face with lips quivering with astonishment. 41. A fourth was subsequently formed, beautiful, disquieted by the arrows of love. Then another was produced from the disturbing influence of the same passion, (42) and from eagerness in gazing after her as she rose upwards in the sky. That austere fervour, extremely dreadful, which Brahmā had practised with a view to creation, (43) was entirely lost through his desire to approach his daughter (carnally). Through this was produced speedily the fifth face (or, according to one MS., the upper

²⁰⁵ Such appears to be the reading of the Gaikowar MS. The original reading of the Taylor MS. has been erased, and another substituted, *tatas tat-samaye tvam cha*.

AND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE FOUR CASTES.

the fifth face) of the wise deity, (44) which appeared with matted hair, and which he covered up. Brahmā then said to the sons who had sprung from him, (45) 'create living beings everywhere, gods, asuras, and men.' They, being thus addressed, created beings of various kinds, 46. When they had gone away for the purpose of creating, he, who is the universe, took for his wife the unblamed Satarūpā. 47. Sickened with love, he cohabited with her: like any ordinary being, he loved her,—though she was full of shame—embowered in the hollow of a lotus, (48) for a hundred years of the gods. A long time after, a son was born to her, Manu (49) called Svāyambhuva, who, as we have heard, is Viṣṇu. From their community of form and qualities he is called Adhipūruṣa.³⁰⁶ 50. From him were sprung those numerous Vainājas, steadfast in religious observances, those seven glorious sons of Svāyambhū, and those other seven Manus, (51) beginning with Svārochisha and Auttami, in form equal to Brahmā, of whom thou³⁰⁷ art now the seventh. (4th chapter) 1. Manu says: 'Ah! this is most afflicting, this entrance of love into the god. How was it that the lotus-born did not incur guilt by that act? 2. And how did a matrimonial connection take place between persons of the same family who were sprung from him? Solve this doubt of mine, o Lord. The Fish replied: 3. This primeval creation was celestial, produced from the quality of passion (*rajas*); it had senses removed beyond the cognizance of sense, and bodies of the same description, (4) was possessed of celestial energy, derived from celestial knowledge, and cannot be perfectly perceived by others with the eye of flesh. 5. Just as serpents know the path of serpents, and (beings living) in the sky know the path of all sorts of birds, so too the celestials alone, and not men, know the way of celestials. 6. And since it is the gods who award the recompence, favourable or unfavourable, according as good or bad deeds have been done,—it is not good for men to examine this (question). 7. Furthermore, the four-faced (Brahmā) is the ruler of all the gods, and in like manner the Gāyatrī is declared to be a member of Brahmā. 8. And, as

³⁰⁶ Compare the Puruṣa Sūkta, above p. 8, in the fifth verse of which the words *Vīrūjo adhi pūruṣaḥ* occur. If the last two words are combined they give the name in the text.

³⁰⁷ This account is given by the deity represented as incarnate in a Fish, to Manu Vaivasvata.

they say, there is a pair consisting of the formless, and of that which has form. Wherever the divine Viranchi (Brahmā) is, there is also the goddess Sarasvatī. 9. Wherever Bhārati (a name of Sarasvatī) is, there is also Prajāpati. Just as shadow is nowhere seen without sunshine, (10) so Gāyatrī never forsakes the side of Brahmā. He is called the collected Veda, and Sāvitrī rests upon him; (11) there can therefore be no fault in his approaching her. Nevertheless, Brahmā, the lord of creatures, was bowed down with shame, (12) because he had approached his own daughter, and cursed Kusumāyudha ²⁰⁸ (Kāma), (in these words) 'As even my mind has been agitated by thy arrows, Rudra shall speedily reduce thy body to ashes.' Kāmadeva then propitiated the four-faced deity, saying, (14) 'Thou oughtest not to curse me without cause: preserve me. It is by thee thyself that I have been created with such a character, (15) an agitator of the organs of sense of all embodied creatures. The minds both of men and women must always and everywhere (16) be energetically stirred up by me without hesitation: this thou thyself hast formerly declared. It is therefore, without any fault of mine that I have been thus cursed by thee. 17. Be gracious, lord, that I may recover my body.' Brahmā answered: 18. 'When the Vaivasvata Manvantara shall have arrived, a mortal, named Rāma, sprung from the Yādava race, deriving force from my essence, (19) and, becoming incarnate as a destroyer of Asuras, shall inhabit Dvārakā. Thou shalt then become a son of his substance and like to him," etc.

The narrator of this legend does not hesitate to depict in the strongest colours (though without the least approach to grossness) the helpless subjection of Brahmā to the influence of sexual desire. This illicit indulgence was regarded by the authors of the Satapatha and Aitareya Brāhmaṇas as in the highest degree scandalous, and they do not attempt to palliate its enormity by any mystical explanation, such as that which we find in the Matsya Purāṇa. Whether this apology proceeded from the original narrator, or from a later writer of a more sensitive disposition, who perceived its inconsistency with any elevated idea of the superior powers, is difficult to say. It is quite possible that the same writer who gave his fancy scope in describing the unbecoming scene, of which the substance had been handed down in works regarded

²⁰⁸ The word means "He whose weapons are flowers."

as authoritative, may also have thought it necessary to discover some device for counteracting the scandal. On the other hand, the original writer seems to cut himself off from the privilege of resorting to any mystical refinements to explain away the offence, by having in the first instance represented Brahmā's indulgence as on a level with that of ordinary beings. And even after the apology has been concluded, we are still told that Brahmā could not help feeling ashamed of what he had done. The writer of the explanation ought to have perceived that if his defence was of any value, the deity for whom he was apologizing had no ground for humiliation. But he did not venture to expunge the popular features of the story. The grounds on which the apology proceeds are partly of the same character as those which the writer of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa assumes in the passage (x. 33, 27 ff.) which is given in the fourth volume of this work, pp. 42 f., viz., that the gods are not to be judged on the same principles as men,—that "the celestials have laws of their own" (*sunt superis sua jura*). The Bhāgavata Purāṇa has, however, different measures for Brahmā and for Kṛishṇa; for whilst the adultery of the latter is defended in the verses just referred to, no desire is shown to vindicate the former in the other passage, iii. 12, 28 ff., adduced in the same volume, page 40.

As regards the details of the story according to the different Purāṇas, I may observe that while the Viṣṇu, the Vāyu (see above, pp. 65, and 106), and the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, xl. 13 f., represent Śatarūpā as the wife of Manu Svāyambhuva, the Matsya Purāṇa, as we have just seen, declares her to have been the spouse of Brahmā himself, and the mother of Manu Svāyambhuva.²⁰⁰ This is repeated in the twenty-sixth verse of the fourth chapter:

*Yā sū dehārdha-sambhūtā Gāyatrī brahma-rūdinī | jananī yā Manor
devī Śatarūpā Śatendriyā | 27. Itir Manas Tapo Buddhī mahad-ādī-
samudbhavā²¹⁰ | tataḥ sa Śatarūpāyām sapatnyāṃ ajījanat | 28. Ye
Marīchyādayaḥ putrāḥ mānasāḥ tasya dhīmataḥ | teshām ayam abhū
lokaḥ sarva-jñānātmakeḥ purā | 29. Tato śrījad Vāmadevam trisūla-
vara-dhārinam | Sanatkumāraṇcha vibhum pūrvashām api pūrvajam | 30.*

²⁰⁰ Compare the account given in Manu's Institutes (above, p. 36), which does not coincide in all particulars with any of the Purāṇas here quoted.

²¹⁰ In this line the original readings are in several places erased in the Taylor MS. I have endeavoured to restore it with the help of the Gaikowar MS.

Vāmadevaś tu bhagavān asṛjaḥ mukhato dvijān | rājanyān asṛjaḥ bāhvor Viṣ-sūdrāv ūru-pādayoḥ | . . . 35. Svāyambhuvo Manur dhīmāns tapas taptvā suduścharam | patnīm avāpa rūpāḍhyām Anantām nāma nāmataḥ | Priyavratottānapāḍau Manus tasyām aṣṛjanat |

“She who was produced from the half of his body, Gāyatrī the declarer of sacred science, she who was the mother of Manu, the goddess Satarūpā (*i.e.* having a hundred forms), Satendriyā (*i.e.* having a hundred senses), (27) (was also) Rati, Mind, Austere Fervour, Intellect, sprung from Mahat and the other principles. He then begot upon Satarūpā seven sons. 28. This world, composed of all knowledge, sprang from Marīchi, and the others who were the mind-born sons of that wise Being. He next created Vāmadeva (Mahādeva), the wielder of the excellent trident, and the lord Sanatkumāra, born before the earliest. 30. Then the divine Vāmadeva created Brāhmins from his mouth, Rājanyas from his breast, the Viś and the Sūdra from his thighs and feet.” [After describing in the following verses some other creations of Vāmadeva, the writer proceeds in verse 35:] “The wise Manu Svāyambhuva, having practised austere fervour of the most arduous kind, obtained a beautiful wife named Anantā. On her he begot Priyavrata and Uttānapāda.”

Having made Manu the son of Satarūpā, the writer was obliged to give him another female for a wife, as we see he has here done.

It will be observed that in this passage Vāmadeva—and not Brahmā, as in the other Purāṇas—is described as the creator of the four castes.

SECT. X.—*Quotations from the Rāmāyaṇa on the Creation, and on the Origin of Castes.*

The substance of the first of the following passages has already been stated above in a note on page 36. Part of it is also quoted in p. 54, and it is more fully cited in the fourth volume of this work, p. 29, but for facility of reference I repeat it here.

Rāmāyaṇa (Bombay edition) ii. 110, 1. *Kruddham ājnāya Rāmaṁ tu Vasishṭhaḥ pratyuvācha ha | Jābālir api jānīte lokasyānya gatāgatim | 2. Nivarttayitu-kūmas tu tvām etad vākyam abravīt | imām loka-samut-*

*pattiṁ loka-nātha nibodha me | 3. Sarvaṁ salilam evāṣīt pṛithivī tatra
nirmītā | tataḥ samabhavat Brahmā Svayambhūr daivataiḥ saha | 4. Sa
varūhas tato bhūtvā projjahāra vasundharām | asṛjach cha jagat sarvaṁ
saha putraiḥ kṛitātmanibhiḥ | 5. Ākāśaprabhavo Brahmā śūsvato nitya
aryayaḥ | tasmād Marīchiḥ sanjajne Marīcheḥ Kaśyapaḥ sutaḥ | 6. Vivas-
vān Kaśyapāj jagne Manur Vairasvataḥ svayam | sa tu prajāpatiḥ pūr-
vam Ikshvākuḥ tu Manuḥ sutaḥ | 7. Yasyeyam prathamam dattā samṛid-
dhā Manunā mahī | tam Ikshvākum Ayodhyāyām rājānam viddhi pūr-
vakam |*

"1. Perceiving Rāma to be incensed²¹¹ Vasisṭha replied: 'Jābali also knows the destruction and renovation of this world. 2. But he spoke as he did from a desire to induce you to return. Learn from me, lord of the earth, this (account of) the origin of the world. 3. The universe was nothing but water. In it the earth was fashioned. Then Brahmā Svayambhū came into existence, with the deities. He next, becoming a boar, raised up the earth, and created the entire world, with the saints his sons. 5. Brahmā, the eternal, unchanging, and undecaying, was produced from the æther (*ākāśa*). From him sprang Marichi, of whom Kaśyapa was the son. 6. From Kaśyapa sprang Vivasvat: and from him was descended Manu, who was formerly the lord of creatures (*prajāpati*). Ikshvāku²¹² was the son of Manu (7) and to him this prosperous earth was formerly given by his father. Know that this Ikshvāku was the former king in Ayodhyā."

The account which I next quote does not agree with the last in its details, as, besides representing the Prajāpatis or sons of Brahmā to be seventeen in number, it places Marīchi, Kaśyapa, and Vivasvat in the same rank as contemporaries, while the former narrative declares them to have been respectively father, son, and grandson.

Rāmāyaṇa iii. 14, 5. *Rāmasya vachanaṁ śrutvā kulam ātmānam eva
cha | āchachakṣhe dvijas tasmai sarva-bhūta-samudbhavam | 6. Pūrva-
kāle mahābāho ye prajāpatayo 'bhavan | tān me nigadataḥ sarvān ūditaḥ
śṛṇu Rāghava | 7. Kārdamaḥ prathamāś teshāṁ Vikṛitaś tad-anan-
taram | Śeṣhaś cha Saṁśrayaś chaiva Bahuputraś cha vīryavān | 8.*

²¹¹ On account of a materialistic and immoral argument which had been addressed to him by Jābali to induce him to disregard his deceased father's arrangements regarding the succession to the throne. See Journ. Roy. As. Soc. vol. xix. pp. 303 ff.

²¹² The name Ikshvāku occurs in R. V. x. 60, 4. See Professor Max Müller's article in Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, pp. 461 and 462.

*Sthānur Marīchir Atrīś cha Kratuś chaira mahābalaḥ | Pulastyaś chān-
gīrāś chaira Prachetāḥ Pulahas tathā | 9. Dakṣho Virasvān aparo 'rish-
ṭanemiś cha Rāghava | Kāśyapaś cha mahatejās teshām āśīch cha paśchi-
mah | 10. Prajāpates tu Dakṣasya babhūvur iti viśrutāḥ | shashtīr
duhitaro Rāma yāśasvinyo mahāyasāḥ | 11. Kāśyapaḥ pratijagrāha
tāsām aṣṭau sumadhyamāḥ | Aditiṁ cha Ditiṁ chaiva Danūm api cha
Kālakām | 12. Tāmrām Krodhavaśām chaiva Manuṁ²¹³ chāpy Analām
api | tās tu kanyās tataḥ prītaḥ Kāśyapaḥ punar abravīt | 13. Putrāṁś
trailokyā-bhartrīn vai janayishyatha mat-samān | Aditiś tan-mānāḥ
Rāma Ditiścha Danūr eva cha | 14. Kālakā cha mahābāho śeṣhās tv
amanaso²¹⁴ bhavan | Adityām jajnīre devās trayastriṁśad arindama |
15. Ādityā Vasavo Rudrā Āśvinau cha parantapa | . . . 29. Manur
manuṣyān janayat Kāśyapasya mahātmanah | brāhmaṇān kṣhattriyaṁ
vaiśyaṁ śūdrāṁś cha manujarṣhabha | 30. Mukhato brāhmaṇā jātāḥ ura-
saḥ kṣhattriyaś tathā | ūrubhyām jajnīre vaiśyaḥ padbhyaṁ śūdrā iti
śrutiḥ | 31. Sarvān puṇya-phalān vṛikṣhān Analā 'pi vyajāyata |*

"5. Having heard the words of Rāma, the bird (*Jaṭāyus*) made known to him his own race, and himself, and the origin of all beings. 6. 'Listen while I declare to you from the commencement all the Prajāpatis (lords of creatures) who came into existence in the earliest time. 7. Kardama was the first, then Vikṛita, Śeṣha, Saṁśraya, the energetic Bahuputra, (8) Sthānu, Marīchi, Atri, the strong Kratu, Pulastya, Angiras, Prachetas, Pulaha, (9) Daksha, then Virasvat, Arishṭanemi, and the glorious Kāśyapa, who was the last. 10. The Prajāpati Daksha is famed to have had sixty daughters. 11. Of these Kāśyapa took in marriage eight elegant maidens, Aditi, Diti, Danū, Kālakā, (12) Tāmrā, Krodhavaśā, Manu,²¹⁵ and Analā. Kāśyapa, pleased, then said

²¹³ *Balām Atibalām api.*—Gorr.

²¹⁴ *Manoratha-hīnāḥ.*—Comm.

²¹⁵ I should have doubted whether Manu could have been the right reading here, but that it occurs again in verse 29, where it is in like manner followed in verse 31 by Analā, so that it would certainly seem that the name Manu is intended to stand for a female, the daughter of Daksha. The Gauda recension, followed by Signor Gorresio (iii. 20, 12), adopts an entirely different reading at the end of the line, viz. *Balām Atibalām api*, "Balā and Atibalā," instead of Manu and Analā. I see that Professor Roth s.v. adduces the authority of the Amara Kośha and of the Commentator on Pāṇini for stating that the word sometimes means "the wife of Manu." In the following text of the Mahābhārata i. 2553, also, Manu appears to be the name of a female: *Anavadyām Manuṁ Vāṁśūm Asurām Mārgaṇapriyām | Anūpām Subhagām Bhāsim iti Prūdhā vyajāyata |* "Prūdhā (daughter of Daksha) bore Anavadyā, Manu, Vansā, Asurā, Mārgaṇapriyā, Anūpā, Subhagā, and Bhāsi.

to these maids, (13) 'ye shall bring forth sons like to me, preservers of the three worlds.' Aditi, Diti, Danū, (14) and Kālakā assented; but the others did not agree. Thirty-three gods were borne by Aditi, the Ādityas, Vasus, Rudras, and the two Aśvins." [The following verses 15-28 detail the offspring of Diti, Danū, Kālakā, Tāmṛā, Krodhavaśā, as well as of Kraunchī, Bhāsi, Syenī, Dhṛitarāshṭrī, and Sūkī the daughters of Kālakā, and of the daughters of Krodhavaśā. (Compare the Mahābharata, i. 2620-2635; and Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. ii. pp. 72 f.) After this we come upon Manu and the creation of mankind.] "29. Manu, (wife) of Kaśyapa,²¹⁶ produced men, Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras. 30. 'Brāhmanas were born from the mouth, Kshattriyas from the breast, Vaiśyas from the thighs, and Sūdras from the feet,' so says the Veda. 31. Analā gave birth to all trees with pure fruits."

It is singular to observe that in this passage, after having represented men of all castes as sprung from Manu, the writer next adds a verse to state, on the authority of the Veda, that the different castes were produced from the different parts of the body out of which they issued. Unless Manu's body be here meant, there is a contradiction between the two statements. If Manu's body is meant, the assertion conflicts with the common account. And if the Manu here mentioned is, as appears from the context, a woman, we should naturally conclude that her offspring was born in the ordinary way; especially as she is said to have been one of the wives of Kaśyapa.

The next passage from the Uttara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, 74, 8 f., describes the condition of men in the Kṛita age, and the subsequent introduction of the caste system in the Tretā. The description purports to have been occasioned by an incident which had occurred just before. A Brāhman had come to the door of Rāma's palace in Ayodhyā, carrying the body of his dead son,²¹⁷ and bewailing his loss, the blame

²¹⁶ The text reads Kāśyapa, "a descendant of Kāśyapa," who, according to Rām. ii. 110, 6, ought to be Vivasvat. But as it is stated in the preceding part of this passage iii. 14, 11 f. that Manu was one of Kāśyapa's eight wives, we must here read Kāśyapa. The Gauda recension reads (iii. 20, 30) *Manur manushyāṁś cha tathā janayāmāsa Rāghava*, instead of the corresponding line in the Bombay edition.

²¹⁷ The boy is said, in 73, 5, to have been *apṛūpta-yauvanam bālam pancha-varsha-sahasrakam* | "a boy of five thousand years who had not attained to puberty!" The Commentator says that *varsha* here means not a year, but a day (*varsha-sabdo 'tra* |

of which (as he was himself unconscious of any fault) he attributed to some misconduct on the part of the king. Rāma in consequence convoked his councillors, when the divine sage Nārada spoke as follows :

8. *Sṛiṇu rājan yathā 'kāle prāpto bālasya sankshayaḥ | śrutvā kartaryatām rājan kurushva Raghunandana |* 9. *purā kṛta-yuge rājan brāhmaṇā vai tapasvinaḥ |* 10. *Abrāhmaṇas tadā rājan na tapasvī kathanchana | tasmin yuge prajvalite brahmabhūte tv anāṛṇite |* 11. *Amṛityavas tadā sarve jājnire dīrgha-darśinaḥ | tatas tretā-yugaṁ nāma mānarānām capushmatām |* 12. *Kshattriyā yatra jāyante pūrveṇa tapasā 'nritāḥ | vīryeṇa tapasā chaiva te 'dhikāḥ pūrva-janmani | mānavā ye mahātmānas tatra tretā-yuge yuge |* 13. *Brahma kshattriṇā cha tat sarvaṁ yat pūrvam avaram cha yat | yugayor ubhayor asīt sama-vīryya-samanvitam |* 14. *Apāśyantas tu te sarve viśesham adhikaṁ tataḥ | sthūpanaṁ chakrire tatra chāturvarṇyasya sammatam |* 15. *Tasmin yuge prajvalite dharmabhūte hy anāṛṇite | adharmāḥ pādām ekaṁ tu pātayat prithivītale | 19. Pātite tv anṛite tasminn adharmena mahītale | śubhāny evācharaḥ lokāḥ satya-dharma-parāyaṇaḥ |* 20. *Tretā-yuge cha varttante brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyās cha ye | tapo 'tapyanta te sarve śūśrūṣhām apare janāḥ |* 21. *Sva-dharmaḥ paramas teshām vaiśya-śūdraṁ tadā "gamat | pūjāṁ cha sarva-varṇānām śūdrās chakrur viśeshataḥ | 23. Tataḥ pādām adharmasya dvitīyam arātārayat | tato dvāpara-sankhyā sā yugasya samujjyata |* 24. *Tasmin dvāparā-sankhye tu varttamāne yuga-kshaye | adharmas chānritaṁ chaiva varṇidhe puruṣharṣhabha |* 25. *Asmin dvāpara-sankhyāte tapo vaiśyān samāviśat | tribhyo yugebhyas trīn varṇān kramād vai tapa āviśat |* 26. *Tribhyo yugebhyas trīn varṇān dharmascha parinishkṛitāḥ | na śūdro labhate dharmāṁ yugatas tu naraṣhabha |* 27. *Iti na-varṇo nripa-śreṣṭhṥa tupyate sumahat tapaḥ | bhaviṣhyachchhūdrayonyām hi tapaś-charyā kalau yuge |* 28. *adharmāḥ paramo rājan dvāpure śūdra-janmanaḥ | sa vai viśaya-paryante tava rājan mahātapaḥ |* 29. *Adya tupyati durbuddhis tena bāla-budho hy ayam |*

Nārada speaks: 8. "Hear, o king, how the boy's untimely death occurred: and having heard the truth regarding what ought to be

dinoparaḥ),—just as it does in the ritual prescription that a man should perform a sacrifice lasting a thousand years ("sahasra-saṁvatsaram satram upāsita" *iti vat*),—and that thus some interpreters made out the boy's age to be sixteen, and others under fourteen. But this would be a most unusual mode of reckoning age.

done, do it. 9. Formerly, in the Kṛita age, Brāhmins alone practised austere fervour (*tapas*). 10. None who was not a Brāhman did so in that enlightened age, instinct with divine knowledge (or, with Brahma) unclouded (by darkness). 11. At that period all were born immortal, and far-sighted. Then (came) the Tretā age, the era of embodied men, (12) in which the Kshattriyas were born, distinguished still by their former austere fervour; although those men who were great in the Tretā age had been greater, both in energy and austere fervour, in the former birth. 13. All the Brāhmins and Kshattriyas, both the former and the later, were of equal energy in both Yugas.²¹⁸ 14. But not perceiving any more distinction (between the then existing men) they all²¹⁹ next established the approved system of the four castes. 15. Yet in that enlightened age, instinct with righteousness, unclouded (by darkness), unrighteousness planted one foot upon the earth." [After some other remarks (verses 16-18), which are in parts obscure, the writer proceeds:] 19. "But, although this falsehood had been planted upon the earth by unrighteousness, the people, devoted to true righteousness, practised salutary observances. 20. Those Brāhmins and Kshattriyas who lived in the Tretā practised austere fervour, and the rest of mankind obedience. 21. (The principle that) their own duty was the chief thing pervaded the Vaiśyas and Sūdras among them: and the Sūdras especially paid honour to all the (other) classes. . . . 23. Next the second foot of unrighteousness was planted on the earth, and the number of the Dvāpara (the third yuga) was produced. 24. When this deterioration of the age numbered as the Drāpara, had come into existence,

²¹⁸ The Commentator says, this means that in the Kṛita age the Brāhmins were superior, and the Kshattriyas inferior (as the latter had not then the prerogative of practising *tapas*), but that in the Tretā both classes were equal (*ubhayor yugayor madhye kṛita-yuge brahma pūrvam tapo-vīryābhyām utkrīṣṭam kshattriān chāvarāṇ cha tābhyām tapo-vīryābhyām nyūnam āsit | tat sarvam brahma-kshattrā-rūpam ubhayam tretāyām sama-vīrya-samanvitam āsit | kṛite kshattriānām tapasy anadhikūrāt tad-yugīyebhyo brāhmaṇebhyas teshām nyūnatā | tretāyām tu ubhayo rapī tapo-dhikūrāt ubhāv api tapo-vīryābhyām samau* | But in the previous verse (12) it is said that the Kshattriyas were born in the Tretā distinguished by their former *tapas*. But perhaps they were formerly Brahmins, according to verses 9, 10, and 12.

²¹⁹ Manu and other legislators of that age, according to the Commentator (*Mano-ādayaḥ sarve tātkūlikāḥ dharma-pravarttanādadhikṛitāḥ*). He adds that in the Kṛita age all the castes were spontaneously devoted to their several duties, although no fixed system had been prescribed (*kṛite tu vinaiva sthāpanam svayam eva sarve varṇāḥ sva-sva-dharma-ratāḥ*).

unrighteousness and falsehood increased. 25. In this age, numbered as the *Dvāpara*, austere fervour entered into the *Vaiśyas*. Thus in the course of three ages it entered into three castes; (26) and in the three ages righteousness (*dharma*) was established in three castes. But the *Sūdra* does not attain to righteousness through the (lapse of these three) ages. 27. A man of low caste performs a great act of austere fervour. Such observance will belong to the future race of *Sūdras* in the *Kali* age, (28) but is unrighteous in the extreme if practised by that caste in the *Dvāpara*. On the outskirts of thy territory such a foolish person, of intense fervour, is practising austerities. Hence this slaughter of the boy."

Here then was a clue to the mystery of the young *Brāhman's* death. A presumptuous *Sūdra*, paying no regard to the fact that in the age²²⁰ in which he lived the prerogative of practising self-mortification had not yet descended to the humble class to which he belonged, had been guilty of seeking to secure a store of religious merit by its exercise. *Rāma* mounts his car *Pushpaka*, makes search in different regions, and at length comes upon a person who was engaged in the manner alleged. The *Sūdra*, on being questioned, avows his caste, and his desire to conquer for himself the rank of a god by the self-mortification he was undergoing. *Rāma* instantly cuts off the offender's head. The gods applaud the deed, and a shower of flowers descends from the sky upon the vindicator of righteousness. Having been invited to solicit a boon from the gods, he asks that the *Brāhman* boy may be resuscitated, and is informed that he was restored to life at the same moment when the *Sūdra* was slain. (Sections 75 and 76.)²²¹

The following curious account of the creation of mankind, among whom it states that no distinction of class (or colour) originally existed, is given in the *Uttara Kānda*, xxx. 19 ff., where *Brahmā* says to *Indra*:

*Amarendra mayā buddhyā prajāḥ śṛiṣṭās tathā prabho | eka-varṇāḥ
sama-bhāṣhā eka-rūpās cha sarvaśaḥ | 20. Tāsāṃ nāsti viśeṣho hi darśane
lakṣhane 'pi vā | tato 'ham ekāgramanūs tāḥ prajāḥ samachintayam |
21. So 'ham tāsāṃ viśeṣhārtham striyam ekām vinirmame | yad yat
prajānām pratyangam viśiṣṭāṃ tat tad uddhṛitam | 22. Tato mayā*

²²⁰ The *Tretā*, according to the Commentator.

²²¹ See the Rev. Professor Banerjea's *Dialogues on the Hindu philosophy*, pp. 44 ff., where attention had previously been drawn to the story.

*rūpa-guṇair ahalyā strī vinirmatā | haḥalam nāmeḥa vairūpyaṁ halyaṁ
tat-prabhavam bhavet | 23. Yasyā na vidyate halyam tenāhalyeti viśrutā |
Ahalyety eva cha mayā tasyā nāma prakīrtitam | 24. Nirmitāyāṁ cha
devendra tasyām nāryāṁ surarshabha | bhaviṣyatīti kasyaiśā mama
chintā tato 'bharat | 25. Traṁ tu Śakra tadā nārīm jānīṣhe manasā
prabho | sthānādhikatayā patnī mamaīṣheti purandara | 26. Sa mayā
nyāsa-bhūtā tu Gautamasya mahātmanaḥ | nyastā bahūni varṣhāni tena
niryātītā cha ha | 27. Tatas tasya pariṇyāya mahāsthairyam mahāmune-
neḥ | jñātvā tapasi siddhiṁ cha patny-arthaṁ sparsitā tadā | 28. Sa
tayā saha dharmātānā ramate sma mahāmuniḥ | āsan nīrāsā devās tu
Gautame dattayā tayā | 29. Traṁ kruddhas tv iha kāmātmā gatvā
tasyāśramam muneḥ | dṛṣṭvānīś cha tadā tām strīm dīptām agni-
śikhām ira | 30. Sā trayā dharṣitā Śakra kāmārttena samanyunā |
dṛṣṭvā traṁ cha tadā tena āśrame paramarṣhiṇā | 31. Tataḥ kruddhena
tenāsi śaptatḥ puramatījasā | gato 'si yena devendra daśā-bhūga-ripar-
ṇayam |*

“19. O chief of the immortals (Indra) all creatures were formed by my will of one class (or colour), with the same speech, and uniform in every respect. 20. There was no distinction between them in appearance, or in characteristic marks. I then intently reflected on these creatures. 21. To distinguish between them I fashioned one woman. Whatever was most excellent in the several members of different creatures was taken from them, (22) and with this (aggregate) I formed a female, faultless in beauty and in all her qualities. *Haḥala* means ‘ugliness,’ and *halya*, ‘what is produced from ugliness.’ 23. The woman in whom there is no *halya*, is called *Ahalyā*. And this was her name to which I gave currency. 24. When this female had been fashioned, I anxiously considered to whom she should belong. 25. Thou, Indra, didst, from the eminence of thy rank, determine in thy mind, ‘She must be my spouse.’ 26. I, however, gave her in trust to the great Gautama; and after having retained her in charge for many years, he restored her. 27. Knowing then the great steadfastness of that distinguished Muni, and the perfection of his austere fervour, I, in due form, gave her to him for his wife. 28. The holy sage lived with her in the enjoyment of connubial love. But the gods were filled with despair when she had been given away to Gautama. 29. And thou, Indra, angry, as well as inflamed with lust, wentest to the Muni’s hermitage,

and didst behold that female brilliant as the flame of fire. 30. She was then corrupted by thee who wert tormented by lust, as well as heated by anger.²²² But thou wert then seen by the eminent rishi in the hermitage, (31) and cursed by that glorious being in his indignation. Thou didst in consequence fall into a reverse of condition and fortune,²²³ etc., etc.

SECT. XI.—*Extracts from the Mahābhārata on the same subjects.*

The first passage which I shall adduce is from the Ādi Parvan, or first book, verses 2517 ff. :

Vaiśampāyana uvācha | hanta te kathayishyāmi namaskṛitya Svayambhūre | surādīnām ahaṁ samyak lokānām prabhavāpyayam | Brahmanō mānasāḥ putrāḥ viditāḥ śaṅ-maharshayaḥ | Marīchir Atry-angirasau Pulastyaḥ Pulahaḥ Kratuḥ | Marīcheḥ Kāśyapaḥ putraḥ Kāśyapāt tu prajā imāḥ | prajājnire mahābhāgā Dakṣa-kanyās trayodaśa | 2520. Aditir Ditir Danuḥ Kālā Danūyukḥ Sindhikā tathā | Krodhū Pradhū cha Vīśvā cha Vinatā Kapilā Munih | Kadrūś cha manujaryāghra Dakṣa-kanyaiva Bhārata | etāsūṁ vīrya-sampannam putra-pautram anantakam |

Vaiśampāyana said: I shall, after making obeisance to Svayambhū, relate to thee exactly the production and destruction of the gods and other beings. Six²²³ great rishis are known as the mind-born sons

²²² In regard to this story of Indra and Ahalyā, as well as to that of Brahmā and his daughter, above referred to, see the explanation given by Kumārila Bhāṭṭa, as quoted by Professor Max Müller in his Hist. of Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 529 f. The name of Ahalyā is there allegorically interpreted of the night, to which this name is said to have been given because it is absorbed in the day (*ahani tīyamānatayā*). Indra is the sun.

²²³ Another passage (S'ānti-p. 7569 ff.) raises the number of Brahmā's sons to seven by adding Vasishṭha: *Ekah Svayambhūr bhagavān ādya Brahmā sanātanaḥ | Brahmaṇaḥ sapta vai putrā mahātmīnāḥ Svayambhūvaḥ | Marīchir Atry-Angirasau Pulastyaḥ Pulahaḥ Kratuḥ | Vasishṭhaścha mahābhāgah sadṛśo vai Svayambhuvā | sapta Brahmīna ity ete purāṇe nischayaṁ gatāḥ |* "There is one primeval eternal lord, Brahmā Svayambhū; who had seven great sons, Marīchi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasishṭha, who was like Svayambhū. These are the seven Brahmās who have been ascertained in the Puranic records." In another part of the same S'āntiparvan, verses 12685 ff., however, the Prajāpatis are increased to twenty-one: *Brahmā Sthūgūr Manur Dakṣo Bhṛiguḥ Dharmaḥ tathā Yamaḥ | Marīchir Angirā trīścha Pulastyaḥ Pulahaḥ Kratuḥ | Vasishṭhaḥ Parameshṭhī cha Vivasvān Soma eva cha | Kardamaś chōpi yaḥ proktaḥ Krodho Vikṛita eva cha | ekaviṁsatir utpannās te prajāpatayaḥ smṛitāḥ |* "There are reputed to have been twenty-one Prajāpatis produced, viz. Brahmā, Sthūgu, Manu, Dakṣa, Bhṛigu, Dharma, Yama, Marīchi,

of Brahmā, viz., Marīchi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu. ¹⁷¹ Kāśyapa was the son of Marīchi; and from Kāśyapa sprang these creatures. There were born to Daksha thirteen daughters of eminent rank, (2520) Aditi, Diti, Danu, Kālā, Dānāyu, Sīmīhikā, Krodhā, Pradhā, Viśvā, Vinatā, Kapilā, and Muni.²²¹ Kadrū also was of the number. These daughters had valorous sons and grandsons innumerable."

Daksha, however, had other daughters, as we learn further on in verses 2574 ff., where the manner of his own birth also is related :

*Dakshas tv ajāyatāngushthād dakshinād bhagavān ṛṣih | Brahmanah
prithivipāla śāntātmā sumahātāpāh | vāmād ajāyatāngushthād bhāryā
tasya mahātmanah | tasyām panchāsātam kanyāḥ sa evājanayad muniḥ |
. . . . 2577. Dadau cha daśa Dharmāya saptaviṃsatim Indave | divyena
vidhina rājan Kāśyapāya trayodaśa | 2581. Paitūmahah Manur
deras tasya putrah prajāpatiḥ | tasyāshṭau Vasavaḥ putrās teshām rak-
shyāmi vistaram | 2595. Stanaṁ tu dakṣiṇam bhitvā Brah-
maṇo nara-vigrahaḥ | nissṛito bhagavān Dharmah sarva-loka-sukhātahaḥ |
trayas tasya varāḥ putrāḥ sarva-bhūta-manoharāḥ | Samah Kūmas cha
Harshaś cha tejasaḥ loka-dhūrīṇaḥ | 2610. Ārushī tu Manoh
kanyā tasya patnī manishīṇaḥ | 2614. Drau putrau Brahmanas
tv anyau yayos tishṭhati lakṣhaṇam | loka Dhātā Vīdhātā cha yau sthitau
Manunā saha | tayor eva srasā devī Lakṣmī padma-grīhā śubhā | tasyās
tu mānasāḥ putrās turagāḥ vyoma-chūrīṇaḥ | 2617. Prajūnām
annakāmūnām anyonya-paribhakṣaṇāt | Adharmas tatra sanjātaḥ sarva-
bhūta-vināśakaḥ | tasyāpi Nirṛitir bhāryā nairṛitā yena Rākṣasāḥ |
ghorās tasyās trayah putrāḥ pūpa-karma-ratūḥ sadū | Bhayo Mahā-
bhayas chaiva Mrityur bhūtāntakas tathā | na tasya bhāryā putro vā
kaśchid asty antako hi saḥ |*

Angiras, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Vasishṭha, Parameshṭhin, Vivasvat, Soma, the person called Kardama, Krodha, and Vikṛita." (Here, however, only twenty names are specified including Brahmā himself.) Compare this list with those quoted above, p. 116, from the Rāmāyana, iii. 14, 7 ff., from Manu in p. 36, and from the Vishṇu P. in p. 65.

²²¹ That Muni is a name, and not an epithet, is shown (1) by the fact that we have otherwise only twelve names; and (2) by her descendants, both gods and gandharvas, being afterwards enumerated in verses 2550 ff. (*ity eto deva-gandharvā Mauneyāḥ parikīrtitāḥ*). Kapilā, another of the thirteen daughters of Daksha is said to have been the mother of Ambrosia, Brāhmaṇas, kine, Gandharvas and Apsarasas (*amṛitam brāhmaṇā gāvo gandharvāpsarasas tathā | apatyam kapilāyās tu purā;*

“2574. Daksha, the glorious rishi, tranquil in spirit, and great in austere fervour, sprang from the right thumb of Brahmā.²²⁵ From the left thumb sprang that great Muni's wife, on whom he begot fifty²²⁶ daughters. Of these he gave ten to Dharma, twenty-seven to Indu (Soma),²²⁷ and according to the celestial system, thirteen to Kaśyapa.” I proceed with some other details given in the verses I have extracted:

2581. “Pitāmaha's descendant, Manu, the god and the lord of creatures, was his (it does not clearly appear whose) son. The eight Vasus, whom I shall detail, were his sons. 2595. Dividing the right breast of Brahmā, the glorious Dharma (Righteousness), issued in a human form, bringing happiness to all people. He had three eminent sons, Sama, Kāma, and Harsha (Tranquillity, Love, and Joy), who are the delight of all creatures, and by their might support the world. 2610. Arushī, the daughter of Manu, was the wife of that sage (Chyavana, son of Bhrigu). 2614. There are two other sons of Brahmā, whose mark remains in the world, Dhātṛi,²²⁸ and Vidhātṛi, who remained with Manu. Their sister was the beautiful goddess Lakshmī,²²⁹ whose home is in the lotus. Her mind-born sons are the steeds, who move in the sky. 2617. When the creatures who were desirous of food, had devoured one another, Adharma (Unrighteousness) was produced, the destroyer of all beings. His wife was Nirriti, and hence the Rākshasas are called Nairṛitas, or the offspring of Nirriti. She had three dreadful sons, continually addicted to evil deeds, Bhaya Mahābhaya (Fear and Terror) and Mṛityu (Death) the ender of beings. He has neither wife, nor any son, for he is the ender.”²³⁰

The next passage gives a different account of the origin of Daksha; and describes the descent of mankind from Manu:

Adip. 3128. *Tejobhir uditāḥ sarve maharshi-sama-tejasah | daśa Pra-*

²²⁵ See above, p. 72 f. The Matsya P. also states that Daksha sprang from Brahmā's right thumb, Dharma from his nipple, Kāma from his heart, etc.

²²⁶ The passage of the Rāmāyaṇa, quoted above, p. 116, affirms that they were sixty in number. Compare Wilson's Vishṇu P. vol. i. pp. 109 ff., and vol. ii. pp. 19 ff.

²²⁷ The Taitt. Saṁhitā, ii. 3, 5, 1, says Prajāpati had thirty-three daughters, whom he gave to King Soma (*Prajāpates trayastrīṁśad dukhītura ūsan | tāḥ Somāya rūjṇa ādāt*).

²²⁸ Dhātṛi had been previously mentioned, in verse 2523, as one of the sons of Aditi. See also Wilson's Vishṇu P. ii. 152.

²²⁹ See Wilson's Vishṇu P. i. pp. 109, 118 ff., 144 ff. and 152.

²³⁰ The Vishṇu P. (Wilson, i. 112) says he had five children.

*chelasah putrāḥ santah punya-janūḥ smṛitāḥ | mukhojenāgninū yais te
pūrvaṁ dagdhā mahānjasah | tebhyaḥ Prāchetaso jajne Daksho Dakshād
imāḥ prajāḥ | sambhūtāḥ puruṣa-vyūghra sa hi loka-pitāmahaḥ |
Vīriṇyū saha sangamya Dakshaḥ Prāchetaso muniḥ | ātma-tulyān aja-
nayat sahasraṁ śaṁsita-vratān | sahasra-sankhyān sambhūtān Daksha-
putrāṁś cha Nāradaḥ | mokṣam adhyāpayāmāsa sāṅkhyā-jñānam anu-
tamam | tataḥ pañcāśataṁ kanyāḥ putrikāḥ abhisandadhe | Prajāpatiḥ
prajāḥ Dakshaḥ śisṛikṣur Janamejaya | dadau cha daśa Dharmāya
Kāśyapāya trayodaśa | kūlasya nayane yuktāḥ sapta-vimśatim Indare |
3135. Trayodaśānām patnīnām yā tu Dakshāyaṇī varā | Mūrīchaḥ
Kāśyapas tasyām Ādityān samajījanat | Indrādīn vīryya-sampannūn
Vīrasvantam athūpi cha | Vīrasrataḥ suto jajne Yamo Vairasrataḥ pra-
bhuh | Mūrtandasya Manur dhīmān ajāyata sutaḥ prabhuh | Yamaś
chūpi suto jajne khyātas tasyānujāḥ prabhuh | dharmātmā sa Manur
dhīmān yatra vaṁśah pratishṭhitah | Manor vaṁśo mānavānām tato 'yam
prathito 'bhavat | brahma-kṣatrādayas tasmād Manor jātās tu mānavāḥ |
tato 'bhavad mahārāja brahma kṣattrēṇa sangatam | 3140. Brāhmaṇā
mānavās teshām sāṅgam vedam adhkārayan | Venam Dhṛiṣṇuṁ Narish-
yantam Nūbhūgekshrākum eva cha | Kūrūsham atha Sāryatiṁ tathā
chāivāśṭamīm Ilām | Prīṣhadhraṁ narāmam prāhuḥ kṣattrā-dharma-
parāyaṇam | Nūbhūgūriṣṭa-daśamān Manoh putrān prachakṣate | pañ-
chāśat tu Manoh putrās tathāivānye 'bhavan kṣhitau | anyonya-bhedāt te
sarve vīcēsur iti naḥ śrutam | Purūravas tato vidvān Ilāyaṁ samapad-
yata | sūrai tasyābhavad mātā pitā chāiveti naḥ śrutam |*

“3128. Born all with splendour, like that of great rishis, the ten sons of Prachetas are reputed to have been virtuous and holy; and by them the glorious beings²³¹ were formerly burnt up by fire springing from their mouths. From them was born Daksha Prāchetasa;²³² and from Daksha, the Parent of the world (were produced), these creatures. Cohabiting with Vīriṇī, the Muni Daksha begot a thousand sons like himself, famous

²³¹ “Trees and plants,” according to the Commentator (*mahāprabhūvā vrikṣāṇa-shadhyāḥ*). Compare Wilson's Vishṇu P. ii. p. 1.

²³² The same account of Daksha's birth is given in the S'āntip. 7573: *Daśānām tanayas tv eko Daksho nūma prajāpatiḥ | tasya dve nūmanī loke Dakshaḥ Ka iti cha-
chyate* | “These ten Prachetas had one son called Daksha, the lord of creatures. He is commonly called by two names, Daksha and Ka.” (Compare vol. iv. of this work, p. 13, note 30, and p. 24; and the S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, vii. 4, 1, 19, and ii. 4, 4, 1, there quoted.) The following verse 7574 tells us that Kāśyapa also had two names, the other being Arishṭanemi. See Rām. iii. 14, 9, quoted above.

for their religious observances, to whom Nārada taught the doctrine of final liberation, the unequalled knowledge of the Sāṅkhya. Desirous of creating offspring, the Prajāpati Dakṣa next formed fifty daughters, of whom he gave ten to Dharma, thirteen to Kaśyapa, and twenty-seven, devoted to the regulation of time,²³³ to Indu (Soma). . . . 3135. On Dākṣhāyānī,²³⁴ the most excellent of his thirteen wives, Kaśyapa, the son of Marichi, begot the Ādityas, headed by Indra and distinguished by their energy, and also Vivasvat.²³⁵ To Vivasvat was born a son, the mighty Yama Vaivasvata. To Mārtaṇḍa (i.e. Vivasvat, the Sun) was born the wise and mighty Manu, and also the renowned Yama, his (Manu's) younger brother. Righteous was this wise Manu, on whom a race was founded. Hence this (family) of men became known as the race of Manu. Brāhmanas, Kṣhatṛiyas, and other men sprang from this Manu. From him, o king, came the Brāhman conjoined with the Kṣhatṛiya. 3140. Among them the Brāhmanas, children of Manu, held the Veda with the Vedāṅgas. The children of Manu are said to have been Vena, Dhṛiṣṇu, Narishyanta, Nābhāga, Ikṣhvāku, Kārusha, Suryāti, Ilā the eight, Pṛishadra the ninth, who was addicted to the duties of a Kṣhatṛiya, and Nābhāgārishṭa the tenth. Manu had also fifty other sons; but they all, as we have heard, perished in consequence of mutual dissensions. Subsequently the wise Purūravas was born of Ilā, who, we heard, was both his mother and his father."

The tradition, followed in this passage, which assigns to all the castes one common ancestor, removed by several stages from the creator, is, of course, in conflict with the account which assigns to them a fourfold descent from the body of Brahmā himself.

The Śāntiparvan, verses 27.9 ff., contains an account of the origin of castes which has evidently proceeded from an extreme assertor of the dignity of the Brahmanical order. The description given of the prerogatives of the priestly class is precisely in the style, and partly in almost the identical words, of the most extravagant declarations of

²³³ This phrase *kūlasya nayane yuktūḥ* had previously occurred in verse 2580, where it is followed by the words *sarvā nakshatra-yoginyo loka-yūtrā-vidhānataḥ* | "all identified with the lunar asterisms, and appointed to regulate the life of men." See also Vishṇu P. i. 15, 56, and Professor Wilson's translation ii. p. 10, note 1, and p. 28, note 1.

²³⁴ i.e. Aditi. See verses 2520, 2522, and 2600 of this same book.

²³⁵ The account in the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, 5 ff., agrees with this in making Kaśyapa son of Marichi, and father of Vivasvat.

Manu (i. 99 f.) on the same subject. In other places, however, the *Mahābhārata* contains explanations of a very different character regarding the origin of the distinctions, social and professional, which prevailed at the period of its composition. A comparison of these various passages will afford an illustration of the fact already intimated in p. 6,²³⁰ that this gigantic poem is made up of heterogeneous elements, the products of different ages, and representing widely different dogmatical tendencies, the later portions having been introduced by successive editors of the work to support their own particular views, without any regard to their inconsistency with its earlier contents. In fact, a work so vast, the unaided compilation of which would have taxed all the powers of a Didymus Chalkenterus, could scarcely have been created in any other way than that of gradual accretion. And some supposition of this kind is certainly necessary in order to explain such discrepancies as will be found between the passages I have to quote, of which the three first are the productions of believers (real or pretended) in the existence of a natural distinction between their own Brahmanical order and the other classes of the community, while two of those which follow, viz., in pp. 134 and 139, have emanated from fair and moderate writers who had rational views of the essential unity of mankind, and of the superiority of moral and religious character to any factitious divisions of a social description.

In the first passage, Bhīṣma, the great uncle of the Pāndus, when describing to Yudhishtira the duties of kings, introduces one of those ancient stories which are so frequently appealed to in the *Mahābhārata*. Without a minute study of the poem it would be difficult to say whether these are ever based on old traditions, or are anything more than mere vehicles invented to convey the individual views of the writers who narrate them. Bhīṣma says, *Sāntiparvan*, 2749 :

*Ya eva tu sato rakshed asataś cha nivarttayet | sa eva rājñā karttavyo
rājan rāja-purohitaḥ |* 2750. *Atrāpy udāharantimam itihāsam purā-
tanam | Purūrarasa Ailasya saṁvādam Mātariśvanaḥ | Purūrarā urācha |
Kutaḥ svid brāhmaṇo jāta varṇāś chāpi kutas trayāḥ | kasmāchcha bhavati
śreṣṭhas tan me vyākhyātum arhasi | Mātariśvovācha | Brahmaṇo mu-
khataḥ śriṣṭo brāhmaṇo rāja-sattama | bāhubhyāṁ kshattriyaḥ śriṣṭa
urubhyāṁ vaiśya eva cha | varṇānām parichāryyārtham trayāṇām Bha-*

²³⁰ See also the fourth volume of this work, pp. 141 ff. and 152.

*ratarshabha | varṇas̄ chaturthaḥ sambhūtaḥ padbhyām sūdro vinirmītaḥ |
brāhmaṇo jāyamāno hi prithiryaṁ anujāyate*²⁵⁷ | *īśvaraḥ sarva-bhūtānām
dharma-koshasya guptaye | 2755. Atāḥ prithiryaṁ yantūram kshattriyaṁ
daṇḍa-dhūrane | dr̥tīyam Daṇḍam akarot prajānām anut̥riptyaye | vaiśyas
tu dhana-dhānyena tr̥ṇ varṇān bibhṛiyād imān | sūdro hy etān pari-
chared iti Brahmānuśāsanam | Aila uvācha | dr̥ijasya kshattrabandhor
vā kasyeyam prithirī bharet | dharmataḥ saha vittena samyag Vāyo pra-
chakshva me | Vāyur uvācha | viprasya sarraṁ eraitud yat kinchij jagati-
gatam | jyeshṭhenābhijaneneha tad dharma-kusālā viduḥ | sram eva brāh-
maṇo bhunkte sram vaste sram dadāti cha | gurur hi sarva-varṇānām
jyeshṭhaḥ śreshṭhaḥ cha vai dr̥ijaḥ | 2760. Paty-abhāre yathaiva strī
devaram kurute patim | esha te prathamāḥ kalpaḥ ūpady anyo bhaved
ataḥ |*

“2749. The king should appoint to be his royal priest²⁵⁸ a man who will protect the good, and restrain the wicked. 2750. On this subject they relate this following ancient story of a conversation between Purūravas the son of Ilā, and Mātariśvan (Vāyu, the Wind-god). Purūravas said: You must explain to me whence the Brāhmaṇ, and whence the (other) three castes were produced, and whence the superiority (of the first) arises. Mātariśvan answered: The Brāhmaṇ was created from Brahmā's mouth, the Kshattriya from his arms, the Vaiśya from his thighs, while for the purpose of serving these three

²⁵⁷ Manu, i. 99, has *adhi jāyate*.

²⁵⁸ *Rāja-purohitaḥ*. The king's priest (*rāja-purohitaḥ*) is here represented as one who should be a confidential and virtuous minister of state. Such is not, however, the character always assigned to this class of persons. In Manu xii. 46, quoted above (p. 41f.), the purohita is placed in a lower class than other Brāhmaṇs. And in the following verse (4527) of the Anusūsanaparvan, taken from a story in which the Rishis utter maledictions against anyone who should have stolen certain lotus roots, part of the curse spoken by Visvāmitra is as follows: *varshācharo 'stu bhṛitako rājnas̄ chāstu puro-
hitaḥ | ayājyasya bhavato ṛitrig visa-stānyaṁ karoti yaḥ* | “Let the man who steals lotus roots be a hireling trafficker in rain incantations (?) and the domestic priest of a king, and the priest of one for whom no Brāhmaṇ should officiate.” Again, in verse 4579, the same person says: *karotu bhṛitako 'varshām rājnas̄ chāstu purohitaḥ | ṛitrig
astu hy ayājyasya yas te harati pushkaram* | “Let him who steals thy lotus perform as a hireling incantations to cause drought, and be a king's domestic priest, and the priest of one for whom no Brāhmaṇ should officiate.” I have had partly to guess at the sense of the words *varshācharaḥ* and *avarshām*. The Commentator does not explain the former; and interprets the latter (for which the Edinburgh MS. reads *avarshāḥ*) by *vr̥ṣhti-nibandham*, “causing drought.” He adds, *papishṭhāḥ eva avarshāḥ*, “those who cause drought are most wicked.”

castes was produced the fourth class, the Sūdra, fashioned from his feet. The Brāhman, as soon as born, becomes the lord of all beings upon the earth, for the purpose of protecting the treasure of righteousness. 2755. Then (the creator) constituted the Kshattriya the controulor of the earth, a second Yama to bear the rod, for the satisfaction of the people. And it was Brahmā's ordinance that the Vaiśya should sustain these three classes with money and grain, and that the Sūdra should serve them. The son of Ilā then enquired: Tell me, Vāyu, to whom the earth, with its wealth, rightfully belongs, to the Brāhman or the Kshattriya? Vāyu replied: All this, whatever exists in the world, is the Brāhman's property²³⁰ by right of primogeniture: this is known to those who are skilled in the laws of duty. It is his own which the Brāhman eats, puts on, and bestows. He is the chief of all the castes, the first-born and the most excellent. Just as a woman when she has lost her (first) husband, takes her brother in law for a second; so the Brāhman is thy first resource in calamity; afterwards another may arise."

A great deal is shortly afterwards added about the advantages of concord between Brāhmans and Kshattriyas. Such verses as the following (2802): "From the dissensions of Brāhmans and Kshattriyas the people incur intolerable suffering" (*mitho bhedād brāhmaṇa-kshattriyāṇām prajā duḥkhaṁ dussahaṁ chāriṣanti*) afford tolerably clear evidence that the interests of these two classes must frequently have clashed.

In the same strain as the preceding passage is the following:

Vanaparvan, 13436. *Nādhyāpanād yūjanād vā anyasmād vā pratigrahāt | dosho bhavati viprāṇām jvalitāgni-samā dvijāḥ | durvedā vā suvedā vā prākṛitāḥ saṁskṛitās tathā | brāhmaṇā nūvamantaryā bhasmachannā ivāgnayaḥ | yathā śmaśāne diptaṁ yūḥ pāvako naiva dushyati | evaṁ vidvān avidvān vā brāhmaṇo daivatam mahat | prākūraiḥ cha puradvūraiḥ prāsūdaiḥ cha prithag-vidhaiḥ | nagarāṇi na śobhante hināṇi brāhmaṇottamaiḥ | vedādhyā rṣitta-sampannā jñānavantas tapasvinaḥ | yatra tiṣṭhanti vai viprās tan-nāma nagaraṁ nripa | vraje vā py athavā*

²³⁰ Kullūka, the Commentator on Manu (l. 100), is obliged to admit that this is only spoken in a panegyric or hyperbolic way, and that property is here used in a figurative sense, since theft is afterwards predicated by Manu of Brāhmans as well as others ("evam" *iti stutya uchyate | evam iva evam na tu evam eva | brāhmaṇasyāpi Manuḥ steyasya vakṣyamāṇatvāt*).

'*raṇye yatra santi bahu-śrutāḥ | tat tad nagaram ity āhuḥ pārtha tīr-
thaṁ cha tad bhavet |*

"No blame accrues to Brāhmins from teaching or sacrificing, or from receiving money in any other way : Brāhmins are like flaming fire. Whether ill or well versed in the Veda, whether untrained or accomplished, Brāhmins must never be despised, like fires covered by ashes. Just as fire does not lose its purity by blazing even in a cemetery, so too, whether learned or unlearned, a Brāhmin is a great deity. Cities are not rendered magnificent by ramparts, gates, or palaces of various kinds, if they are destitute of excellent Brāhmins. 13440. The place where Brāhmins, rich in the Veda, perfect in their conduct, and austere fervid, reside, is (really) a city (*nāgara*). Wherever there are men abounding in Vedic lore, whether it be a cattle-pen, or a forest, that is called a city, and that will be a sacred locality."

The following verses from the Anuśāsanap. 2160 ff. are even more extreme in their character, and are, in fact, perfectly sublime in their insolence :

*Brāhmaṇānāṁ paribhavād asurāḥ salile śayāḥ | brāhmaṇānāṁ prasā-
dāḥ cha devāḥ svarga-nivāsinaḥ | āśakyāṁ srashtum ākūśam achālyo
himavān giriḥ | adhāryyā setunā Gangā durjayā brāhmaṇā bhuvi | na
brāhmaṇa-virodhena sakyā śāstuṁ vasundharā | brāhmaṇā hi mahātmāno
devānāṁ api devatāḥ | tān pūjayasva satatāṁ dānena paricharyyayā |
yadichhasi mahim bhoktum imāṁ sāgara-mekhalām |*

"Through the prowess of the Brāhmins the Asuras were prostrated on the waters ; by the favour of the Brāhmins the gods inhabit heaven. The ether cannot be created ; the mountain Himavat cannot be shaken ; the Gangā cannot be stemmed by a dam ; the Brāhmins cannot be conquered by any one upon earth. The world cannot be ruled in opposition to the Brāhmins ; for the mighty Brāhmins are the deities even of the gods. If thou desire to possess the sea-girt earth, honour them continually with gifts and with service."

The next passage seems to be self-contradictory, as it appears to set out with the supposition that the distinction of castes arose after the creation ; while it goes on to assert the separate origin of the four classes :

Sāntiparvan, 10861. *Janaka uvācha | varṇo viśeṣha-varṇānāṁ ma-
harshe kena jāyate | etad ichhāmy ahaṁ jñātum tad brāhi vadatāṁ vara |
yad etaj jāyate 'patyaṁ sa evāyam iti śrutiḥ | katham brāhmaṇato jāto*

viśeṣhe grahaṇām gataḥ | Parāśara uvācha | Evam etad mahārāja yena jātāḥ sa eva saḥ | tapasas tv apakarshena jātigrahaṇatām gataḥ | sukshe-trāchcha suvijāch cha punyo bhavati sambhavaḥ | ato 'nyatarato hīnād avaro nāma jāyate | 10865. Vaktrād bhujābhyām ūrubhyām padbhyām chaivātha jajñire | srijataḥ Prajāpater lokān iti dharmavido viduḥ | mukha-jā brāhmaṇās tāta bāhujāḥ kshattriyāḥ smṛitāḥ | ūrujāḥ dhanino rājan pādajāḥ parichārakāḥ | chaturṇām eva varṇānām āgamaḥ puru-ṣaḥśabha | ato 'nye vyatirikṭā ye te vai sankarajāḥ smṛitāḥ | 10870. Janaka uvācha | Brahmaṇaikena jātānām nūnātvaṁ gotrataḥ katham | bahūnāḥ hi loka vai gotrāṇi muni sattama | yatra tatra kathāṁ jātāḥ svayonim (? suyonim) munayo gatāḥ | śuddha-yonau samutpannā viyonau cha tathā 'pare | Parāśara uvācha | rājan naitad bhaved grāhyam apakṛiṣṭena janmanā | matātmanāṁ samutpattis tapasā bhūvitātmanām | utpādya putrān munayo nṛipate yatra tatra ha | svenaiva tapasā teshām ṛiṣhitvam pradadhuḥ punaḥ | 10876. Ete svām prakṛitīm prāptū Vaideha tapasośrayāt | pratishṭhitū veda-vido damena tapasaiva hi |

“Janaka asks: 10861. How, o great rishi, does the caste of the separate classes arise? Tell me, as I desire to know. According to the Veda, the offspring which is born (to any one) is the very man himself. How does offspring born of a Brāhmaṇ fall into distinct classes? Parāśara replied: It is just as you say, o great king. A son is the very same as he by whom he was begotten; but from decline of austere fervour, (men) have become included under different classes. And from good soil and good seed a pure production arises, whilst from those which are different and faulty springs an inferior production. Those acquainted with duty know that men were born from the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of Prajāpati when he was creating the worlds. The Brāhmaṇs sprang from his mouth, the Kshattriyas from his arms, the merchants from his thighs, and the servants from his feet. The scriptural tradition speaks only of four classes. The men not included in these are declared to have sprung from a mixture (of the four). 10870. Janaka asked: How is there a difference in race between men sprung from one and the same Brahmā? for there are now many races in the world. How have Munis born anywhere (indiscriminately) entered into a good family; some of them having sprung from a pure source and others from an inferior stock? Parāśara replied: It would not be credible that noble-minded men, whose souls

had been perfected by austere fervour, should have been the offspring of a degraded birth. Munis who had begotten sons in an indiscriminate way conferred on them the position of rishis by their own austere fervour." The speaker then names a number of sages (10876) "famed for their acquaintance with the Veda, and for their self-command and austere fervour," as "having all attained to their respective conditions by practising the latter observance."

In the latter verses the speaker appears to admit, at the very moment that he denies, the degraded origin of some of the renowned sages of Indian antiquity. What else is the meaning of the verse, "Munis who had begotten sons in an indiscriminate way conferred on them the position of rishis by their own austere fervour?" No doubt it is intended to represent those as exceptional times: but while we refuse to admit this assumption, we may find some reason to suppose that the irregularities, as they were afterwards considered to be, which this assumption was intended to explain away, were really samples of the state of things which commonly prevailed in earlier ages.

The next extract declares that there is a natural distinction between the Brāhmanas and the other castes; and appears to intimate that the barrier so constituted can only be overpassed when the soul re-appears in another body in another birth:

Anuśāsana-parva, 6570. *Deva uvācha* | *Brāhmanyāṁ devī dushprāpyāṁ nisargād brāhmaṇaḥ śubhe* | *kshattriyo vaiśyaśūdrau vā nisargād iti me matiḥ* | *karmanā dushkṛiteneha sthūnād bhraśyati vai dvijaḥ* | *jyeshṭham varṇam anuprāpya tasmād raksheta vai dvijaḥ* | *sthito brāhmaṇa-dharmena brāhmanyam upajīvati* | *kshattriyo vā 'tha vaiśyo vā brahmabhūyam sa gachhati* | *yas tu brahmatvam utsṛjya kshātraṁ dharmam nishvate* | *brāhmanyūt sa paribhrasṭaḥ kshātra-yonau prajāyate* | *vaiśya-karma cha yo vipro lobha-moha-vyapāśrayaḥ* | *brāhmanyāṁ durlabham prāpya karoty alpa-matiḥ sadā* | *sa dvijo vaiśyatām eti vaiśyo vā śūdratām iyat* | *sva-dharmāt prachyuto vipras tataḥ śūdratvam āpnute* | 6590. *Ebhis tu karmabhir devī subhair ācharitais tathā* | *śūdro brāhmaṇatām yāti vaiśyaḥ kshattriyatām vrajet* | *śūdra-karmāṇi sarvāṇi yathānyāyam yathāvidhi* | *śūśrūṣhām paricharyyāṁ cha jyeshṭhe varṇe prayatnataḥ* | *kuryād ityādi* |

Mahādeva says: 6570. "Brāhmanhood, o fair goddess, is difficult to

be attained. A man, whether he be a Brāhman, Kshattriya, Vaiśya, or Sūdra, is such by nature; this is my opinion. By evil deeds a twice-born man falls from his position. Then let a twice-born man who has attained to the highest caste, keep it. The Kshattriya, or Vaiśya, who lives in the condition of a Brāhman, by practising the duties of one, attains to Brāhmanhood. But he who abandons the state of a Brāhman and practises the duty of a Kshattriya, falls from Brāhmanhood and is born in a Kshattriya womb. And the foolish Brāhman, who, having attained that Brāhmanhood which is so hard to get, follows the profession of a Vaiśya, under the influence of cupidity and delusion, falls into the condition of a Vaiśya. (In like manner) a Vaiśya may sink into the state of a Sūdra. A Brāhman who falls away from his own duty becomes afterwards a Sūdra. . . . 6590. But by practising the following good works, o goddess, a Sūdra becomes a Brāhman, and a Vaiśya becomes a Kshattriya: Let him actively perform all the functions of a Sūdra according to propriety and rule, i.e. obedience and service to the highest caste," etc.

The next passage is the first of those which I have already noted, as in spirit and tenor very different from the preceding. The conversation which it records arose as follows: Yudhishtira found his brother Bhīmasena caught in the coils of a serpent, which, it turned out, was no other than the famous king Nahusha, who by his sacrifices, austerities, etc., had formerly raised himself to the sovereignty of the three worlds: but had been reduced to the condition in which he was now seen, as a punishment for his pride and contempt of the Brāhmans. He promises to let Bhīmaseva go, if Yudhishtira will answer certain questions. Yudhishtira agrees, and remarks that the serpent was acquainted with whatever a Brāhman ought to know. Whereupon the Serpent proceeds:

Vana-parva, verses 12459 ff.: *Sarpa uvācha | brāhmaṇaḥ ko bhaved rājan vedyam kiṁ cha Yudhishtira |* (12470). *Bravīhy atimatim tvām hi vakyair anumimāmahe | Yudhishtira uvācha | satyam dānam kshamā śīlam anṛśaṁsyaṁ tapo ghrīṇā | dṛśyantaḥ yatra nāgendra sa brāhmaṇaḥ iti smṛitiḥ | vedyam sarpa param Brahma nirduḥkham asukham cha yat | yatra gatvā na śochanti bhavataḥ kiṁ vivakṣitam | Sarpa uvācha | chāturvārṇyam pramāṇam cha satyam cha brahma chaiva hi | Sūdreṣv api cha satyam cha dānam akrodha va cha | anṛśaṁsyaṁ ahimsā cha ghrīṇā chaiva Yudhishtira | vedyam yach chātura nirduḥkham asukham cha na-*

Sūdras also truth, liberality, calmness, innocence, harmlessness, and compassion. And as for the thing to be known, which is free from pain and pleasure, I perceive that there is no other thing free from these two influences. Yudhishtira rejoined: 12475. The qualities characteristic of a Sūdra do not exist in a Brāhman (nor *vice versa*). (Were it otherwise) the Sūdra would not be a Sūdra, nor the Brāhman a Brāhman.²⁴¹ The person in whom this regulated practice is perceived is declared to be a Brāhman; and the man, in whom it is absent, should be designated as a Sūdra. And as to what you say further, that there is nothing other than this (Brahma) to be known, which is free from the susceptibilities in question; this is also (my own) opinion, that there is nothing free from them. Just as between cold and heat there can be neither heat nor cold, so there is nothing free from the feeling of pleasure and pain. Such is my view; or how do you consider? The Serpent remarked: 12480. If a man is regarded by you as being a Brāhman only in consequence of his conduct, then birth is vain until action is shown. Yudhishtira replied: O most sapient Serpent, birth is difficult to be discriminated in the present condition

ity arthaḥ | evaṁ cha satyādikaṁ yadi śūdre 'py asti tarhi so 'pi brāhmaṇa eva syād iti āha "śūdreshv api" iti | "The serpent, however, understanding by the term Brāhman mere birth, shows in a sloka and a half that Yudhishtira's definition fails by being applicable also to a Sūdra. *Chāturvarṇya* means 'beneficial to the four castes.' (Such is the Veda), which is also 'true' and 'authoritative,' as establishing what is duty. Inasmuch as the Smṛiti which prescribes a Sūdra's conduct is itself founded on the Veda; all conduct, etc., is based on the Veda. And so if (the characters of) truth, etc., are found also in a Sūdra, he too must be a Brāhman—such is his argument in the words 'In Sūdras also.'" According to this explanation the connection between the first line and the second and third may be as follows: The Veda is beneficial to all the castes, and therefore Sūdras also, having the advantage of its guidance, although at second hand, may practise all the virtues you enumerate; but would you therefore call them Brāhman?

²⁴¹ This verse is not very lucid; but the sense may be that which I have assigned. The Commentator says: *Itaras tu brāhmaṇa-padena brahma-vidāṁ vivakṣitvū śūdrāder api brāhmaṇatvam abhyupagamya pariharati "Śūdre tv" iti | Śūdra-lakṣhya-kāmādikāṁ na brāhmaṇe 'sti na brāhmaṇa-lakṣhya-sāmādikāṁ śūdre 'sti ity arthaḥ | śūdro 'pi sāmādy-upeto brāhmaṇaḥ | brāhmaṇo 'pi kāmādy-upetaḥ śūdra eva ity arthaḥ* | "The other (Yudhishtira), however, understanding by the word Brāhman one who knows the Veda (or, Brahma), and conceding the fact of a Sūdra's Brāhmanhood, obviates by the words 'but in a Sūdra,' etc. (the objection thence drawn). The qualities, lust, etc., distinctive of a Sūdra, do not exist in a Brāhman, nor do the qualities tranquillity, etc., characteristic of a Brāhman exist in a Sūdra. A Sūdra distinguished by the latter is a Brāhman; while a Brāhman characterized by lust, etc., is a Sūdra."

of humanity, on account of the confusion of all castes.²⁴³ All (sorts of)

²⁴³ In the tenth vol. of his *Indische Studien*, p. 83, Professor Weber adduces some curious evidence of the little confidence entertained in ancient times by the Indians in the chastity of their women. He refers to the following passages: (1) *Nidāna Sūtra*, iii. 8. *Uchchāvacha-charaṇāṅ striyo bhavanti | saha deva-sūkshe cha manushya-sūkshe cha yeshām putro vakshye teshām putro bhaviṣhyāmi | yāmścha putrān vakshye te me putrāḥ bhaviṣhyanti* | “Women are irregular in their conduct. Of whatsoever men, I, taking gods and men to witness, shall declare myself to be the son, I shall be their son; and they whom I shall name as my sons shall be so.” (2) *Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa*, iii. 2, 1, 40. *Atha yad “brāhmaṇaḥ” ityūha | anaddhā iva vai asya atah purā jñanam bhavati | idam hy āhuḥ “rakṣāṁsi yoshitam anusachante tad uta rakṣāṁsy eva reta ādadhati iti | atha atra addhā jñyate yo brāhmaṇo yo yajnāj jñyate | tasmād api rājanyaṁ vā vaiśyaṁ vā “brāhmaṇaḥ” ity eva brūyāt | brāhmaṇo hi jñyate yo yajnāj jñyate | tasmād āhuḥ “na savana-kṛtāṁ hanyad enasv ha eva savana-kṛtā” iti* | “Now as regards what he says ‘(this) Brāhman (has been consecrated):’ before this his birth is uncertain. For they say this that ‘Rakshases follow after women, and therefore that it is Rakshases who inject seed into them.’” (Compare what it said of the Gandharvas in *Atharva V.* iv. 37, 11, 12, and *Journ. Roy. As. Soc.* for 1865, p. 301.) So then he is certainly born who is born from sacred science (*brahma*) and from sacrifice. Wherefore also let him address a Rājanya or a Vaiśya as ‘Brāhman,’ for he is born from sacred science (*brāhma*, and consequently a Brāhman) who is born from sacrifice. Hence they say ‘let no one slay an offerer of a libation, for he incurs (the) sin (of Brahmanicide?) by so doing.’” (3) On the next passage of the *S’ P. Br.* ii. 5, 2, 20, Professor Weber remarks that it is assumed that the wife of the person offering the Varuṇa praghūsa must have one or more paramours: *Atha pratipras’hātā pratiparaiti | sa patnīm udīneshyan prichhati ‘kena (jāreṇa Comm.) charasi’ iti | Varuṇyaṁ vai etat strī karoti yad anyasya saty anyena charati | atho “na id me ntaḥ-salpū juhuvad” iti tasmāt prichhati | niruktaṁ vai enaḥ kaṇṇyo bhavati | satyaṁ hi bhavati | tasmād vā iva prichhati | sū yad na prati-jñāta jñatibhyo ha asyai tad ahitaṁ syāt* | “The pratiprasthātṛi (one of the priests) returns. Being about to bring forward the wife, he asks her, ‘with what (paramour) dost thou keep company?’ For it is an offence incurring punishment from Varuṇa that being the wife of one man she keeps company with another. He enquires ‘in order that she may not sacrifice with me while she feels an inward pang.’ For a sin when declared becomes less: for it is not attended with falsehood. Therefore he enquires. If she does not confess, it will be ill for her relations.” (This passage is explained in *Kātyāyana’s S’rauta Sūtras*, v. 5, 6–11.) (4) *S’ P. Br.* i. 3, 2, 21. *Tad u ha uvācha Yājñavalkyo “yathūdishṭam patnyāḥ astu | kas tad ūdriyeta yat para-puṁsā vā patnī syūt”* | “Yājñavalkya said this (in opposition to the doctrine of some other teachers): ‘let the prescribed rule be followed regarding a wife. Who would mind his wife consorting with other men?’” The last clause has reference to the consequence which the other teachers said would follow from adopting the course they disapproved, viz., that the wife of the man who did so would become an adulteress. (5) *Taitt. S.* v. 6, 8, 3. *Na agniṁ chitvā rāmām upeyād “ayonau reto dhasyāmi” iti | na doṣṭīyaṁ chitvā nyasya striyam upeyāt | na trīṭīyaṁ chitvā kāncana upeyāt | reto vai etad nidhātte yad agniṁ chinute | yad upeyād retasā vyridhyeta* | “Let not a man, after preparing the altar for the sacred fire, approach a woman (a S’ūdra-woman, according to the Commentator), (considering) that in doing so, he would be discharging seed into an improper place. Let no man, after a second time preparing the fire-

men are continually begetting children on all (sorts of) women. The speech, the mode of propagation, the birth, the death of all mankind are alike. The text which follows is Vedic and authoritative: 'We who (are called upon) we recite the text.'²⁴³ Hence those men who have an insight into truth know that virtuous character is the thing chiefly to be desired. 'The natal rites of a male are enjoined to be performed before the section of the umbilical cord (Manu, ii. 29). Then Sāvitrī (the Gāyatrī, Manu ii. 77) becomes his mother and his

altar, approach another man's wife. Let no man, after a third time preparing the fire-altar, approach any woman: for in preparing the fire-altar he is discharging seed. Should he approach (a woman in these forbidden cases) he will miscarry with his seed." This prohibition of adultery in a certain case, seems to prove that it was no uncommon occurrence, and is calculated, as Professor Weber remarks, to throw great doubt on the purity of blood in the old Indian families.

²⁴³ To explain the last elliptical expression I will quote part of the Commentator's remarks on the beginning of Yudhishtira's reply: *Vāgādīnām iva maithūnasyāpi sādāhāraṇyāj jātir durjneyā | tathā chā śrutiḥ "na chaitad vidmo brāhmaṇāḥ smo vayam abrahmaṇā vā" iti brāhmaṇya-saṁśayaṁ upanyasyati | nanu jāty-anīśchaye katham "brāhmaṇo 'ham" ityādī abhimāna-purassaram yāgādaḥ pravartteta ity āśankyāha "idam ārsham" iti | atra "ye yajāmahe" ity anena cha ye vayam smo brāhmaṇāḥ anye vā te vayam yajāmahe iti brāhmaṇye 'navadhāraṇāṁ darśitam | mantra-lingam api "ya evāsmi sa san yaje" iti | . . . Tasmād āchūra eva brāhmaṇya-nīśchayahetur veda-prāmāṇyād ity upasāṁharati |* "As the mode of propagation is common to all the castes, just as speech, etc. are, birth is difficult to be determined. And accordingly, by the words: 'We know not this, whether we are Brāhmans or no Brāhmans,' the Veda signifies a doubt as to Brāhmanhood. Then, having raised the difficulty 'how, if birth is undetermined, can a man engage in sacrifice, etc., with the previous consciousness that he is a Brāhman, etc.?' the author answers in the words 'this text is Vedic, etc.' It is both shewn by the words 'we who . . . recite,' (which mean) 'we, whoever we are,—Brāhmans or others,—we recite,' that the fact of Brāhmanhood is unascertained; and this is also a characteristic of the formula, 'whosoever I am, being he who I am, I recite.'" The comment concludes: "Hence he briefly infers from the authoritative character of the Veda, that conduct is the cause of certainty in regard to Brāhmanhood." Prof. Aufrecht has pointed out to me that the words *ye yajāmahe* occur in S'. P. Br. i. 5, 2, 16, and in Taitt. S. i. 16, 11, 1. The Commentator on the last-named passage refers in explanation of them to Asvalāyana's S'rauta Sūtras, i. 5, 4 f., where it is said that these two words constitute the formula called *āguḥ*, which comes in at the beginning of all the *yājyās* which are unaccompanied by any *anuyāja*. The Commentator interprets the two words thus: *sarve "ye" vayam hotāro dhvāryuṇā "yaja" iti prashīdās te vayam "yajāmahe" yājyām paṭhāmaḥ |* "All we hotri priests who are called upon by the adhvaryu by the word 'recite,' we recite, i.e. repeat the *yājyā*." (See Haug's Ait. Br. ii. p. 133, and note 11.) Prof. Aufrecht thinks the words in the Commentator's note *ya evāsmi sa san yaje* may be a free adaptation of Atharva V. vi. 123, 3, 4. It does not appear from what source the words *na chaitad vidmaḥ* etc. are derived.

religious teacher his father (Manu, ii. 170, 225). 12485. Until he is born in the Veda, he is on a level with a Sūdra' (Manu, ii. 172);—so, in this diversity of opinions did Manu Svāyambhuva declare. The castes (though they have done nothing) will have done all they need do,²⁴⁴ if no fixed rules of conduct are observed. In such a case there is considered to be a gross confusion of castes. I have already declared that he is a Brāhman in whom purity of conduct is recognized."

The next passage from the Sāntiparvan, verses 6930 ff., is even more explicit than the last in denying any natural distinction between the people of the different castes :

Bhṛigur uvācha | Aṣṛijad brāhmaṇān evam pūrvam Brahmā prajāpatin | ātma-tejo 'bhinirvrittān bhāskarāgni-sama-prabhān | tataḥ satyaṁ cha dharmāṁ cha tapo brahma cha śāśvatam | āchāram chaiva śaucaṁ cha svargāya vidadhṛe prabhuḥ | deva-dānava-gandharvā daityāsura-mahoragāḥ | yaksha-rākshasa-nāgās cha piśāchā manujās tathā | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyāḥ śūdrās cha dvija-sattama | ye chānye bhūta-saṅghānām varṇas tāms chāpi nirmame | brāhmaṇānām sito varṇaḥ kshattriyānām cha lohitaḥ | vaiśyānām pītako varṇaḥ śūdrānām asitas tatha | 6935. Bharadrāja uvācha | Chāturvarnyasya varṇena yadi varṇo vibhidhyate | sarveshūṁ khalu varṇānām dṛśyate varṇa-sankarāḥ | kūmaḥ krodho bhayaṁ lobhaḥ śokaś chintā kshudhā śramaḥ | sarveshūṁ naḥ²⁴⁵ prabhavati kasmād varṇo vibhidhyate | sveda-mūtra-purīṣhāni śleshmā pittaṁ sa-sonitam | tanuḥ ksharati sarveshūṁ kasmād varṇo vibhajyate | jangamānām asaṁkhyeyāḥ sthāvarānām cha jātayaḥ | teshūṁ vividha-varṇānām kuto varṇa-viniśchayaḥ | Bhṛigur uvācha | Na viśesho 'sti varṇānām sarvam brāhmaṇa idaṁ jagat | Brahmaṇā pūrva ṣṛiṣṭāṁ hi karmabhir varṇatūṁ gatam | 6940. Kāma-bhoga-priyās tīkshṇāḥ krodhanāḥ priya-sāhasāḥ |

²⁴⁴ The Commentator thus explains the word *kṛita-kṛitya* : *Kṛita-kṛityāḥ śūdra-tulyāḥ | tathā cha smṛtiḥ "na śūdre pātakaṁ kinchid na cha saṁskāram arhati" iti teshāṁ saṁskāranarhatva-nishpāpatvūbhidūnat kṛita-kṛityatvam darśayati | tadvat traivarnikā api syur ity arthaḥ | "Kṛita kṛityāḥ (lit. having done what was to be done) means, like S'ūdras ; so the Smṛiti (when it says), 'No sin exists in a S'ūdra, nor is he fit for purificatory rites,' shews, by declaring the unfitness of this class for such rites, and its freedom from sin, that it has the character of kṛita-kṛityatva, i.e. of having done all it had to do. And such (in the event supposed) would be the case with men of the three (upper) classes also."*

²⁴⁵ The Calcutta edition reads *na*, "not," which cannot be right. The MS. in the Library of the Edinburgh University has *naḥ*, "of us."

tyakta-svadharmā raktāṅgās te dvijāḥ kshattratām gatāḥ | gobhyo vṛittiṁ samāsthāya pitāḥ kṛishy-upajīvināḥ | sva-dharmān nānutiśṭhanti te dvijā vaiśyatām gatāḥ | hīmsāṇṛita-priyā lubdhāḥ sarva-karmopajīvināḥ | kṛishnāḥ śaucha-paribhrashtās te dvijāḥ śūdratām gatāḥ | ity etaiḥ karmabhir vyastā dvijā varnāntaram gātāḥ | dharmo yajna-kriyā teshām nityam na pratishidhyate | ity ete chaturō varnā yeshām brāhmī sarasvati | vīhitā Brāhmaṇā pūrvam lobhāt tv ajnānatām gātāḥ | 6945. Brāhmaṇā brahma-tantra-sthās²⁴⁶ tapas teshām na naśyati | brahma dhārayatām nityam vratāni niyamāms tathā | brahma chaiva param śṛiṣṭam ye na jnānti te 'dvijāḥ | teshām bahuvīdhās tv anyās tatra tatra hī jātayaḥ | piśūchā rākshasāḥ pretā vivīdhā mlechha-jātayaḥ | pranashṭajnāna-vijnānāḥ svachhandūchāra-cheshṭitāḥ | prajā brāhmaṇa-saṁskārāḥ sva-karma-kṛita-niśchayāḥ | ṛishibhiḥ svena tapasā śṛijyante chāpare paraiḥ | ādi-deva-samudbhūtā brahma-mūlā 'kshayā 'vyayā | sū śṛiṣṭir mūnasī nāma dharmatantra-parāyanā | 6950. Bharadvāja uvācha | Brāhmaṇaḥ kena bhavati kshattriyo vā dvijottama | vaiśyaḥ śūdraś cha viprarshe tad brūhi vadatām vara | Bhṛigur uvācha | Jata-karmādibhir yas tu saṁskārāḥ saṁskṛitāḥ śūchiḥ | vedādhyayana-sampannaḥ śaṭsu karmasv avasthitaḥ | śauchaehāra-sthitaḥ samyag vighasāsī guru-priyaḥ | nitya-vratī satyaparaḥ sa vai brāhmaṇa uchyate | satyam dānam athādroha āṇṛisāṁsyaṁ trapā ghṛinā | tapas cha dṛiśyate yatra sa brāhmaṇa iti smṛitaḥ | kshattrajaṁ sevate karma vedādhyayana-sangataḥ | dānādāna-ratir yas tu sa vai kshattriya uchyate | 6955. Viśaty āsū paśubhyas cha kṛishy-ādāna-ratīḥ śūchiḥ | vedādhyayana-sampannaḥ sa vaiśyaḥ iti sanjnitāḥ | sarva-bhākshya-ratir nityam sarva-karma-karo 'śūchiḥ | tyakta-vedas tv anūchārah sa vai śūdraḥ iti smṛitaḥ | śūdro chaitad bhavel lakshyam dvije tach cha na vidyate | sa vai śūdro bhavesh chhūdro brāhmaṇo brāhmaṇo na cha |

“Bhṛigu replied: 6930. ‘Brahmā thus formerly created the Prajāpatis, Brahmanic,²⁴⁷ penetrated by his own energy, and in splendour equalling the sun and fire. The lord then formed truth, righteousness, austere fervour, and the eternal veda (or sacred science), virtuous practice, and purity for (the attainment of) heaven. He also formed the gods, Dānavas, Gandharvas, Daityas, Asuras, Mahoragas, Yakshas,

²⁴⁶ *Brahma-tantram* = *vedoktānushṭhānam* | Comm.

²⁴⁷ *Brāhmaṇān*, “Brāhmaṇs,” is the word employed. It may mean here “sons of Brahman.”

Rākshasas, Nāgas, Pisāchas, and men, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, as well as all other classes (*varṇāḥ*) of beings. The colour (*varṇa*) of the Brāhmins was white; that of the Kshattriyas red; that of the Vaiśyas yellow, and that of the Sūdras black.’³⁴⁸ 6935. Bhara-dvāja here rejoins: ‘If the caste (*varṇa*) of the four classes is distinguished by their colour (*varṇa*), then a confusion of all the castes is observable. Desire, anger, fear, cupidity, grief, apprehension, hunger, fatigue, prevail over us all: by what, then, is caste discriminated? Sweat, urine, excrement, phlegm, bile, and blood (are common to all); the bodies of all decay: by what then is caste discriminated? There are innumerable kinds of things moving and stationary: how is the class (*varṇa*) of these various objects to be determined?’ Bhṛigu replies: ‘There is no difference of castes:³⁴⁹ this world, having been at first created by Brahmā entirely Brahmanic,³⁵⁰

³⁴⁸ It is somewhat strange, as Professor Weber remarks in a note to p. 215 of his German translation of the Vajra Sūchī, that in the passage of the Kāthaka Brāhmaṇa xi. 6, which he there quotes, a white colour is ascribed to the Vaiśya and a dark hue to the Rājanya. The words are these: *Yach chhuklūnām (brihīnām) ādityebhyo nir-vapati tasmāch chhukla iva vaiśyo jāyate | yat kṛṣhṇānām vāruṇām tasmād dhūma iva rājanyaḥ* | “Since the Vaiśya offers an oblation of white (rice) to the Ādityas, he is born as it were white; and as the Vāruṇa oblation is of black (rice) the Rājanya is as it were dusky.”

³⁴⁹ Compare with this the words attributed in S’āntiparvan, verses 2819 ff., to King Muchukunda, who had been reproached by the god Kuvera with trusting for victory to the aid of his domestic priest instead of to his own prowess: *Muchukundas tataḥ kṛddhah pratyvūcha Dhaneśvaram | nyāya-pūrvam asaṅgurādham asambhrāntam idaṁ vachah | brahma kshatram idaṁ śṛṣṭam eka-yoni svayambhuvā | prithag-bala-viḍhānaṁ tanna lokam paripālayet | topo-mantra-balam nityam brāhmaṇeshu pratishṭhitam | astra-bāhu-balam nityam kshattriyeshu pratishṭhitam | tābhyām sambhūya kartavyam prajānām paripālanam* | “Muchukunda then, incensed, addressed to the Lord of riches these reasonable words, which did not partake of his anger or excitement: ‘Brāhmins and Kshattriyas were created by Brahmā from the same womb (or source) with different forces appointed to them: this cannot (neither of these separate forces can?) protect the world. The force of austere fervour and of sacred texts abides constantly in the Brāhmins; and that of weapons and their own arms in the Kshattriyas. By these two forces combined the people must be protected.’”

³⁵⁰ *Brāhman* is the word employed. That it is to be understood in the sense of “Brāhmanical” appears from the following lines in which the word *dvijāḥ* must be taken in the special signification of Brāhmins and not of “twice born men” (who may be either Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, or Vaiśyas) in general. The Brāhman is considered to have been formed of the essence of Brahmā, and to represent the original type of perfect humanity as it existed at the creation. The Commentator takes the word *brāhman* as = *brāhmaṇa-jātimat*, “having the caste of Brāhmins;” and he explains the different colours mentioned in the next verses as follows: red (*rakta*)

became (afterwards) separated into castes in consequence of works. 6940. Those Brāhmans (*lit.* twice-born men), who were fond of sensual pleasure, fiery, irascible, prone to violence, who had forsaken their duty, and were red-limbed, fell into the condition of Kshattriyas. Those Brāhmans, who derived their livelihood from kine, who were yellow, who subsisted by agriculture, and who neglected to practise their duties, entered into the state of Vaiśyas. Those Brāhmans, who were addicted to mischief and falsehood, who were covetous, who lived by all kinds of work, who were black and had fallen from purity, sank into the condition of Sūdras. Being separated from each other by these works, the Brāhmans became divided into different castes. Duty and the rites of sacrifice have not been always forbidden to (any of) them. Such are the four classes for whom the Brahmanic²⁵¹ Sarasvatī was at first designed by Brahmā, but who through their cupidity fell into ignorance. 6945. Brāhmans live agreeably to the prescriptions of the Veda; while they continually hold fast the Veda, and observances, and ceremonies, their austere fervour (*tapas*) does not perish. And sacred science was created the highest thing: they who are ignorant of it are no twice-born men. Of these there are various other classes in different places, Piśāchas, Rākshasas, Pretas, various tribes of Mlechhas, who have lost all knowledge sacred and profane, and practise whatever observances they please. And different sorts of creatures with the purificatory rites of Brāhmans, and discerning their own duties, are created by different rishis through their own austere fervour. This creation, sprung from the primal god, having its root in Brahma, undecaying, imperishable, is called the mind-born creation, and is devoted to the prescriptions of duty.' 6950. Bharadvāya again enquires: 'What is that in virtue of which a man is a Brāhman, a Kshattriya,

means "formed of the quality of passion" (*rajo-guṇa-maya*); yellow (*pīta*) "formed of the qualities of passion and darkness" (*rajas-tamo-maya*), and black (*kṛishṇa*, or *asita*) "formed of darkness only" (*kevala-tamomaya*).

²⁵¹ *Brāhmī*. This word is thus interpreted by the Commentator: *vedamayī | chatur-ṇām api varṇānām Brahmanā pūrvam vikitā | lobha-doshena tu ajñānatām tamo-bhāvaṁ gatāḥ sūdrāḥ anadhikārīṇo vede jātāḥ* | "Sarasvatī, consisting of the Veda, was formerly designed by Brahmā for all the four castes: but the Sūdras having through cupidity fallen into 'ignorance,' i.e. a condition of darkness, lost their right to the Veda." See *Indische Studien*, ii. 194, note, where Professor Weber understands this passage to import that in ancient times the Sūdras spoke the language of the Āryas.

a Vaiśya, or a Sūdra; tell me, o most eloquent Brahman rishi.' Bhṛigu replies: 'He who is pure, consecrated by the natal and other ceremonies, who has completely studied the Veda, lives in the practice of the six ceremonies, performs perfectly the rites of purification, who eats the remains of oblations, is attached to his religious teacher, is constant in religious observances, and devoted to truth,—is called a Brāhman. 6953. He in whom are seen truth, liberality, inoffensiveness, harmlessness, modesty, compassion, and austere fervour,—is declared to be a Brāhman. He who practises the duty arising out of the kingly office, who is addicted to the study of the Veda, and who delights in giving and receiving,²⁵²—is called a Kṣatriya. 6955. He who readily occupies himself with cattle,²⁵³ who is devoted to agriculture and acquisition, who is pure, and is perfect in the study of the Veda,—is denominated a Vaiśya. 6956. He who is habitually addicted to all kinds of food, performs all kinds of work, who is unclean, who has abandoned the Veda, and does not practise pure observances,—is traditionally called a Sūdra. And this (which I have stated) is the mark of a Sūdra, and it is not found in a Brāhman: (such) a Sūdra will remain a Sūdra, while the Brāhman (who so acts) will be no Brāhman.'²⁵⁴ *132 of many right in 6956 but none*

The passage next to be quoted recognizes, indeed, the existence of castes in the Kṛita age, but represents the members of them all as having been perfect in their character and condition, and as not differing from one another in any essential respects. *as Brāhman, Kṣatriya, Vaiśya, Sūdra*

It is related in the Vanaparvan that Bhīmasena, one of the Pāndus,

²⁵² *Dānam viprebhyaḥ | ādānam prajabhyah*, "Giving to Brāhmins, receiving from his subjects."—Comm.

²⁵³ *Paśūn vānījyāya upayoginah upalabdhvā viśati pratisthām labhate* | "Who perceiving cattle to be useful for trade, 'enters,' obtains a basis (for his operations)." —Comm. As we have seen above p. 97, these etymologies are frequently far-fetched and absurd.

²⁵⁴ On this verse the Commentator annotates as follows: *etat satyūdi-saptakam doṣe trairvarṇike | dharma eva varṇa-vibhāge kāraṇaṁ na jūtir ity arthaḥ* | "These seven virtues, beginning with truth (mentioned in verse 6953), exist in the twice-born man of the first three classes. The sense is that righteousness, and not birth, is the cause of the division into classes." This explanation is not very lucid. But the sense seems to be that the seven good qualities referred to are the proper characteristics of the three upper castes, while the defects specified in verse 6956 are the proper distinctive marks of the Sūdras. Thus the Sūdra who has the four defects will remain a Sūdra, but a Brāhman who has them will be no Brāhman.

in the course of a conversation with his brother²⁵⁶ Hanūmat the mon-
key chief, had requested information on the subject of the Yugas and
their characteristics. Hanūmat's reply is given in verses 11234 ff.:

*Kṛitaṁ nāma yugaṁ tāta yatra dharmāḥ sanātanaḥ | kṛitaṁ eva na
kartavyaṁ tasmin kāle yugottame | na tatra dharmāḥ śīdanti kṣhīyante
na cha vai prajāḥ | tataḥ kṛita-yugam nāma kālena guṇatām gatam |
deva-dānava-gandharva-yaksha-rākshasa-pannagāḥ | nāsan kṛita-yuge tāta
tadū na kraya-vikrayaḥ²⁵⁶ | na sūma-ṛig-yajur-varṇāḥ²⁵⁷ kriyā nāsīch cha
mūnāvī | abhidyāya phalaṁ tatra dharmāḥ sannyaṣa eva cha | na tasmin
yuga-saṁsarge vyūdhayo nendriya-kṣayaḥ | nāsūyā nāpi ruditam na
darpo nāpi vaikṛitaṁ²⁵⁸ | na vigrahaḥ²⁵⁹ kutas tandrī na dresho na cha pai-
śunam | 11240. Na bhayaṁ nāpi santāpo na chershyā na cha matsaraḥ |
tataḥ paramakam Brahma sū gatiṛ yoginām parā | ātmā cha sarva-bhū-
tānām śuklo Nārāyaṇas tadū | brāhmaṇāḥ kṣattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrāścha
kṛita-lakṣaṇāḥ | kṛite yuge samabhavan sva-karma-nirataḥ prajāḥ | sa-
māśrayaṁ samāchāraṁ sama-jñānaṁ cha kevalam | tadū hi sāmākarmāṇo
varṇā dharmān avāpnuvan | eka-deva-sadū-yuktāḥ eka-mantra-vidhi-kri-
yāḥ | prithagdharmās tv eka-vedū dharmam ekam anuvratāḥ | chāturas-
ramya-yuktena karmanū kāla-yoginā | 11245. Akāma-phala-saṁyogāt
prāpnuvanti parām gatim | ātma-yoga-samāyukto dharmo 'yaṁ kṛita-
lakṣaṇaḥ | kṛite yuge chaturpādās chāturvārnyasya śūśvataḥ | etat kṛita-
yugaṁ nīma traigunya-parivārjītam | tretām api nibodha tvaṁ tasmin
sattram pravarttate | pūdena hrasate dharmo raktatām yāti chāchyutaḥ |
satya-pravṛittūś cha narāḥ kriyū-dharma-parāyaṇāḥ | tato yajnāḥ pra-
varttante dharmāścha vidadhāḥ kriyāḥ | tretāyām bhāva-sankalpāḥ
kriyā-dāna-phalopagāḥ | prachalanti na vai dharmāt tapo-dāna-parā-
yaṇāḥ | 11250. Sva-dharma-sthāḥ kriyāvanto narāś tretā-yuge 'bha-
van | dvāpare tu yuge dharmo dvibhūgaṇaḥ pravarttate | Viśṇur vai
pītatām yāti chaturdhū veda eva cha | tato 'nye cha chatur-vedās tri-
vedās cha talhū pare | dvi-vedās chaika-vedās chāpy anṛichaś cha talhū
pare | evaṁ śūstreshu bhīnneshu bahudhū nīyate kriyā | tapo-dāna-pra-
vṛittū cha rājāsī bhavati prajā | eka-vedasya chājñānād vedās te bahavuh*

²⁵⁶ Both were sons of Vāyu. See verses 11134, 11169 f. and 11176 f. of this same
book. The Rāmāyaṇa is mentioned in verse 11177.

²⁵⁷ The MS. in the Edinburgh University Library reads as the last pūda: *dānū-
dhyayana-vīśramāḥ*.

²⁵⁸ The Edinburgh MS. reads *vedāḥ* instead *varṇāḥ*.

²⁵⁹ *Kapaṭam*—Comm.

²⁶⁰ *Vatram*—Comm.

*kṛitāḥ | sattvasya cheha vibhramśūt satye*²⁰⁰ *kaśchid avasthitāḥ | sattvāt prachyavamānānām vyādhayo bahavo 'bhavan | 11255. Kāmās chopadra-
vāśchaiva tadā vai daiva-kūritāḥ | yair ardyamānāḥ subhṛīṣam tapas
tapyanti mānarāḥ | kāmā-kāmāḥ svarga-kāmā yajñāṁś tanvanti chūpare |
evaṁ dvāparam āsādyā prajāḥ kṣhīyanty adharmataḥ | pādenaikena Kaun-
teya dharmāḥ kali-yuge sthitāḥ | tāmasaṁ yugam āsādyā kṛishṇo bhavati
Keśavaḥ | vedāchārāḥ praśūmyanti dharma-yajña-kriyās tathā | itayo vyā-
dhayas trandṛi doṣhāḥ krodhādayās tathā | upadravās cha varttante
ādhayah kṣhud bhayam tathā | yugeshv āvarttamāneshu dharmo vyāvart-
tate punaḥ | dharme vyāvarttamāne tu loko vyāvarttate punaḥ | loko
kṣhīṇe kṣhayaṁ yūnti bhāvā loka-pravarttakāḥ | yuga-kṣhaya-kṛitā dhar-
māḥ prārthanāni vikurcate | etat kaliyugam nāma achirād yat pravart-
tate | yugānuvarttanaṁ tv etat kurvanti chirajīvinaḥ |*

"11234. The Kṛita is that age in which righteousness is eternal. In the time of that most excellent of Yugas (everything) had been done (*kṛita*), and nothing (remained) to be done. Duties did not then languish, nor did the people decline. Afterwards, through (the influence of) time, this yuga fell into a state of inferiority.²⁰¹ In that age there were neither Gods,²⁰² Dānavas, Gandharvas, Yakshas, Rākshasas, nor Pannagas; no buying or selling went on; the Vedas were not classed²⁰³ as Sāman, Rich, and Yajush; no efforts were made by men:²⁰⁴ the fruit (of the earth was obtained) by their mere wish: righteousness and abandonment of the world (prevailed).

²⁰⁰ The Edinburgh MS. reads *sattve* instead of *satye*.

²⁰¹ In thus rendering, I follow the Commentator, whose gloss is this: *Mukh-
yam apy amukhyatām gatam* | "although the chief, it fell into inferiority." In
Bühlingk and Roth's Lexicon this line is quoted under the word *gunatā*, to which the
sense of "superiority, excellence," is assigned.

²⁰² Compare with this the verses of the Vāyu Purāṇa quoted in p. 90, which state
that in the Kṛita age there were neither plants nor animals; which are the products
of unrighteousness.

²⁰³ I do not venture to translate "there was then no [division of the Veda into]
Sāman, Rich, and Yajush, nor any castes," (1) because the Edinburgh MS. reads
vedāḥ instead of *varṇāḥ*, and the Commentator does not allude to the word *varṇāḥ*; and
(2) castes (*varṇāḥ*) are referred to below (verses 11242 f.) as existing, though without
much distinction of character. The Commentator explains: *trayī-dharmasya chitta-
śuddhy-arthatvāt tasyās cha tadānīm svabhāvatvāt na sāmāṇīy āsan* | "As the ob-
ject of the triple veda is purity of heart, and as that existed naturally at that period,
there were no (divisions of) Sāman, etc."

²⁰⁴ I follow the Commentator whose gloss is: "*Mānaso kriyā*" *kṛishy-ādya-āram-
bha-bhūta* | *kintu* "*abhidhyāya phalam*," *sankalpād eva sarvam sampādyaṭe* |

No disease or decline of the organs of sense arose through the influence of the age; there was no malice, weeping, pride, or deceit; no contention, and how could there be any lassitude? no hatred, cruelty, (11240) fear, affliction, jealousy, or envy. Hence the supreme Brahma was the transcendent resort of those Yogins. Then Nārāyaṇa, the soul of all beings, was white.²⁶⁵ Brāhmanas, Kshatriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras possessed the characteristics of the Kṛita.²⁶⁶ In that age were born creatures devoted to their duties. They were alike in the object of their trust, in observances and in their knowledge. At that period the castes, alike in their functions, fulfilled their duties, were unceasingly devoted to one deity, and used one formula (*mantra*), one rule, and one rite. Though they had separate duties, they had but one Veda, and practised one duty.²⁶⁷ By works connected with the four orders, and dependent on conjunctures of time,²⁶⁸ (11245) but unaffected by desire, or (hope of) reward, they attained to supreme felicity. This complete and eternal righteousness of the four castes during the Kṛita was marked by the character of that age and sought after union with the supreme soul. The Kṛita age was free from the three qualities.²⁶⁹ Understand now the Tretā, in which sacrifice commenced,²⁷⁰ righteousness decreased by a fourth, Vishnu became red;

²⁶⁵ In verse 12981 of this same Vanaparvan the god says of himself: *svataḥ kṛita-yuge varṇaḥ pītaḥ tretāyuge mama | rakto dōṣparam āsādyā kṛishṇaḥ kali-yuge tathā |* "My colour in the Kṛita age is white, in the Tretā yellow, when I reach the Dvāpara it is red, and in the Kali black."

²⁶⁶ The Commentator's gloss is: *kṛitāni svataḥ siddhāni lakṣaṇāni samo damas tapa ity-ādāni yeshāṃ te |* "They were men whose characteristics, tranquillity, etc., were effected, spontaneously accomplished." On verse 11245 he explains the same term *kṛita-lakṣaṇaḥ* by *kṛita-yuga-sūchakaḥ*, "indicative of the Kṛita age."

²⁶⁷ The different clauses of this line can only be reconciled on the supposition that the general principle of duty, and the details of the duties are distinguished. *Dharma* is the word used in both parts of the verse for "duty."

²⁶⁸ *Kāla-yoginā*. The Commentator explains: *kālo darsādīḥ | tad-yuktona |* "connected with time, i.e. the appearance of the new moon, etc."

²⁶⁹ And yet we are told in the Vāyu P. that the creation itself proceeded from the influence of the quality of passion (see above, p. 75), and that the four castes when originally produced were characterized in different ways by the three qualities, pp. 62 and 89

²⁷⁰ Compare S'ānti-parva, 13088. *Idam kṛita-yugaṃ nāma kālāḥ treshṭhaḥ pravartitāḥ | ahiṃsyā yajna-pasavo yuge'smin na tad anyathā | chatuṣpātī sakalo dharma bhaviṣyaty atra vai surāḥ | tatas tretā-yugaṃ nāma trayī yatra bhaviṣyati | prokṣhitā yatra pasavo badham prāpsyanti vai makhe |* "This Kṛita age is the most excellent of periods: then victims are not allowed to be slaughtered; complete and

and men adhered to truth, and were devoted to a righteousness dependent on ceremonies. Then sacrifices prevailed, with holy acts and a variety of rites. In the Tretā men acted with an object in view, seeking after reward for their rites and their gifts, and no longer disposed to austerities and to liberality from (a simple feeling of) duty. 11250. In this age, however, they were devoted to their own duties, and to religious ceremonies. In the Dvāpara age righteousness was diminished by two quarters, Viṣṇu became yellow, and the Veda fourfold. Some studied four Vedas, others three, others two, others one, and some none at all.²⁷¹ The scriptures being thus divided, ceremonies were celebrated in a great variety of ways; and the people being occupied with austerity and the bestowal of gifts, became full of passion (*rājasī*). Owing to ignorance of the one Veda, Vedas were multiplied. And now from the decline of goodness (*sattva*) few only adhered to truth. When men had fallen away from goodness, many diseases, (11255) desires and calamities, caused by destiny, assailed them, by which they were severely afflicted, and driven to practice austerities. Others desiring enjoyments and heavenly bliss, offered sacrifices. Thus, when they had reached the Dvāpara, men declined through unrighteousness. In the Kali righteousness remained to the extent of one-fourth only. Arrived in that age of darkness, Viṣṇu became black: practices enjoined by the Vedas, works of righteousness, and rites of sacrifice, ceased. Calamities, diseases, fatigue, faults, such as anger, etc., distressed, anxiety, hunger, fear, prevailed. As the ages revolve, righteousness again declines. When this takes place, the people also decline. When they decay, the impulses which actuate them also decay. The practices generated by this declension of the Yugas frustrate men's aims. Such is the Kali Yuga which has existed for a short time. Those who are long-lived act in conformity with the character of the age."

The next passage from the same book (the Vana-parvan) does not make any allusion to the Yugas, but depicts the primeval perfection of mankind with some traits peculiar to itself, and then goes on to describe their decline. Mārkaṇdeya is the speaker.

perfect righteousness will prevail. Next is the Tretā in which the triple veda will come into existence; and animals will be slain in sacrifice." See note 65, page 39, above.

²⁷¹ The Commentator explains *anṛiṣas* ("without the Rig-veda") by *kṛita-kṛitṛyāḥ*. On the sense of the latter word see above.

12619. *Nirmalāni śarīrāṇi viśuddhāni śarīrinām | sasarja dharmatantrāṇi pūrvotpannaḥ Prajāpatiḥ | amogha-phala-sankalpāḥ suvatāḥ satyavādīnaḥ | brahma-bhūtā narāḥ punyāḥ purāṇāḥ kuru-sattama | sarve devaiḥ samāḥ yānti svachhandena nabhas-talam | tatas cha punar āyānti sarve svachhanda-chārīnaḥ | svachhanda-maraṇās chāsan narāḥ svachhanda-chārīnaḥ | alpa-bādhā nirātankāḥ siddhārthā nirupadravāḥ | drash-ṭaro deva-saṅghānām ṛṣhīnām cha mahātmanām | pratyakṣhāḥ sarva-dharmānām dāntā vigata-matsarāḥ | āsan varsha-sahasrīyās tathā putra-sahasrīnaḥ |* 12625. *Tataḥ kālāntare 'nyasmin prithivī-tala-chārīnaḥ | kāma-krodhādhibhūtās te māyā-ryājopajīvīnaḥ | lobha-mohābhibhūtās te saktā dehais tato narāḥ | aśubhaiḥ karmabhiḥ pāpās tiryāṇ-niraya-gāmināḥ |*

"The first-born Prajāpati formed the bodies of corporeal creatures pure, spotless, and obedient to duty. The holy men of old were not frustrated in the results at which they aimed; they were religious, truth-speaking, and partook of Brahma's nature. Being all like gods they ascended to the sky and returned at will. They died too when they desired, suffered few annoyances, were free from disease, accomplished all their objects, and endured no oppression. Self-subdued and free from envy, they beheld the gods²⁷³ and the mighty rishis, and had an intuitive perception of all duties.²⁷³ They lived for a thousand years, and had each a thousand sons. Then at a later period of time, the in-

²⁷³ See the passage from S'ankara's Commentary on the Brahma Sūtras i. 3, 32, in the 3rd vol. of this work, pp. 49 f., and note 49 in p. 95; and S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, ii. 3, 4, 4, *ubhaye ha vai idaṁ agre saha āsur devāḥ cha manushyāḥ cha | tad yad ha sma manushyāṇām na bhavati tad ha devān yāchante* "idaṁ vai no nāsti idaṁ no 'stv" iti | *te tasyai eva yāchanyāyai dvesheṇa devās tirobhūtā* "na id hinasāni na id dveshyo 'sāni" iti | "Gods and men, together, were both originally (component parts of) this world. Whatever men had not they asked from the gods, saying, 'We have not this; let us have it.' From dislike of this solicitation the gods disappeared, (saying each of them) 'let me not hurt (them), let me not be hateful.'" Compare also the passage of the S. P. Br. iii. 6, 2, 26, referred to by Professor Weber in Indische Studien, x. 158: *Te ha sma ete ubhaye deva-manushyāḥ pitarāḥ sampibante | sū eshā sampā | te ha sma dṛṣyamāṇā eva purā sampibante uta etarhy adṛṣyamānāḥ* | "Both gods, men, and fathers drink together. This is their symposium. Formerly they drank together visibly: now they do so unseen." Compare also Plato, Philebus, 18: *Καὶ οἱ μὲν παλαιοί, κρείττονες ἡμῶν καὶ ἐγγυτέρω θεῶν δικοῦντες, ταυτὴν φημὴν παρέδωκαν*, "And the ancients who were better than ourselves, and dwelt nearer to the gods, have handed down this tradition."

²⁷³ Compare the passage of the Nirukta, i. 20, beginning, *sākṣhāt-kṛtā-dharmāṇa ṛishayo babhūvuh*, quoted in the 2nd vol. of this work, p. 174.

habitants of the earth became subject to desire and anger, and subsisted by deceit and fraud. Governed by cupidity and delusion, devoted to carnal pursuits, sinful men by their evil deeds walked in crooked paths leading to hell," etc., etc.

At the end of the chapter of the Bhishmaparvan, entitled *Jambū-khanda-nirmāna*, there is a paragraph in which Sanjaya gives an account of the four yugas in Bhāratavarsha (Hindustan), and of the condition of mankind during each of those periods. After stating the names and order of the yugas, the speaker proceeds :

389. *Chatvāri tu sahasrāṇi varshāṇām Kuru-sattama | āyuh-sankhyā kṛita-yuge sankhyātā rāja-sattama | tathā trīṇi sahasrāṇi tretāyām manujādhipa | dve sahasre dvāpare cha bhuvi tishṭhanti sāmpratam | na pramāṇa-sthitir hy asti tishye 'smin Bharatarshabha | garbha-sthās cha mriyante cha tathā jātā mriyanti cha | mahābalā mahāsattvāḥ prajñā-guṇa-samanvitāḥ | prajāyante cha jātās cha śataśo 'tha sahasraśaḥ | jātāḥ kṛita-yuge rājan dhaninaḥ priya-darśinaḥ | prajāyante cha jātās cha munayo vai tapodhanāḥ | mahotsāhāḥ mahātmāno dhūrmikāḥ satya-vādinaḥ | priyadarśanā vapuṣhmanto mahāvīryā dhanurdharāḥ | varārṇhū yudhi jāyante kṣhattriyaḥ sūra-sattamāḥ | tretāyām kṣhattriya rājan sarve vai chakravarttinaḥ | āyushmanto mahāvīrā dhanurdhara-varā yudhi | jāyante kṣhattriya vīrās tretāyām vāsa-varttinaḥ | sarve varṇā mahārāja jāyante dvāpare sati | mahotsāhā vīryavantaḥ paraspara-jayaishinaḥ | tejasā 'lpena saṃyuktāḥ krodhanāḥ puruṣhā nṛipa | lubdhā anṛitakūś chaiva tishye jāyanti Bhārata | īrṣhā mānas tathā krodho māyā 'sūyā tathaiva cha | tishye bhavati bhūtānām rāgo lobhaś cha Bhārata | sankṣhepo vart-rājan dvāpare 'smin narādhipa |*

"389. Four thousand years are specified as the duration of life in the Kṛita age,²⁷⁴ three thousand in the Tretā, and two thousand form the period at present established on earth in the Dvāpara. There is no fixed measure in the Tishya (Kali): embryos die in the womb, as well as children after their birth. Men of great strength, goodness, wisdom, and virtue were born, and born too in hundreds and thousands. In the Kṛita age men were produced opulent and beautiful, as well as munis rich in austere fervour. Energetic, mighty, righteous, voracious, beautiful, well-formed, valorous, bow-carrying, (395) heroic Kshattriya,

²⁷⁴ See above, p. 91, note 174.

distinguished in battle, were born.²⁷⁵ In the Tretā all sovereigns were Kshattriyas. Heroic Kshattriyas were born in the Tretā, long-lived, great warriors, carrying bows in the fight, and living subject to authority. During the Dvāpara all castes are produced, energetic, valorous, striving for victory over one another. In the Tishya age are born men of little vigour, irascible, covetous, and mendacious. During that period, envy, pride, anger, delusion, ill-will, desire, and cupidity prevail among all beings. During this Dvāpara age there is some restriction."

As it is here stated that men of all castes were born in the Dvāpara, while Brāhmins and Kshattriyas only are spoken of as previously existing, it is to be presumed that the writer intends to intimate that no Vaiśyas or Sūdras existed during the Kṛita and Tretā ages. This accords with the account given in the passage quoted above from the Uttara Kānda of the Rāmāyaṇa, chapter 74, as well as with other texts which will be quoted below.

The following verses might be taken for a rationalistic explanation of the traditions regarding the yugas; but may be intended as nothing more than a hyperbolical expression of the good or bad effects of a king's more or less active discharge of his duties:

Sānti-parva, 2674. *Kālo vā kāraṇam rājño rājā vā kāla-kāraṇam | iti te saṁśayo mā bhūd rājā kālasya kāraṇam | daṇḍa-nītyāṁ yadā rājā samyak kūrtsnyena varttate | tadā kṛita-yugam nāma kāla-sṛiṣṭam pravarttate |* 2682. *Daṇḍa-nītyāṁ yadā rājā trīṇ aṁśān anuvarttate | chaturtham aṁśam utsṛijya tadā tretā pravarttate |* 2684. *Ardhaṁ tyaktvā yadā rājā nīty-arthaṁ anuvarttate | tatas tu dvāparaṁ nāma sa kālaḥ sampravarttate |* 2686. *Daṇḍa-nītim parityajya yadā kūrtsnyena bhūmipah | prajāḥ klišnāty ayogena pravartteta tadā kalih |* 2693. *Rājā kṛita-yuga-sraṣṭā tretāyā dvāparasya cha | yugasya cha chaturthasya rājā bhavati kāraṇam |*

"2674. The time is either the cause of the king, or the king is the cause of the time. Do not doubt (which of these alternatives is true): the king is the cause of the time. When a king occupies himself fully in criminal justice, then the Kṛita age, brought into existence by time,

It does not appear clearly whether we are to suppose them to have been produced in the Kṛita, or in the Tretā, as in the passage of the Rāmāyaṇa, quoted in page 119.

prevails." [Then follows a description of the results of such good government: righteousness alone is practised; prosperity reigns; the seasons are pleasant and salubrious; longevity is universal; no widows are seen; and the earth yields her increase without cultivation.] "2682. When the king practises criminal justice only to the extent of three parts, abandoning the fourth, then the Tretā prevails." [Then evil is introduced to the extent of a fourth, and the earth has to be tilled.] "2684. When the king administers justice with the omission of a half, then the period called the Dvāpara prevails." [Then evil is increased to a half, and the earth even when tilled yields only half her produce.] "2686. When, relinquishing criminal law altogether, the king actively oppresses his subjects, then the Kali age prevails." [Then the state of things, which existed in the Kṛita age, is nearly reversed.] "2693. The king is the creator of the Kṛita, Tretā, and Dvāpara ages, and the cause also of the fourth yuga."

The next extract is on the same subject of the duties of a king, and on the yugas as forms of his action (see Manu, ix. 301, quoted above, p. 49):

Sānti-parvan, 3406. *Karma śūdre kṛishir vaiśye daṇḍa-nītiś cha rājani | Brahmacharyyaṁ tapo mantrāḥ satyaṁ chāpi dvijātishu | teshāṁ yā kshattriyo veda vastrāṇāṁ iva śodhanam*²⁷⁶ | śīla-doshān vinirharttum sa pitā sa prajāpatiḥ | kṛitāṁ tretā dvāparaṁ cha kaliś Bharatarshabha | rāja-vṛttāni sarvāni rājaiḥ yugam uchyate | chāturvarnyaṁ tathā vedāś chāturāśramyam eva cha | sarvaṁ pramūhyate hy etad yadā rājā pramūdyati |

"3406. Labour (should be found) in a Śūdra, agriculture in a Vaiśya, criminal justice in a King, continence, austere fervour, and the use of sacred texts in a Brāhman. The Kshattriya, who knows how to separate their good and bad qualities, (as (a washerman) understands the cleansing of clothes), is a father and lord of his subjects. The Kṛita, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali, are all modes of a King's action. It is a King who is called by the name of Yuga. The four castes, the Vedas, and the four orders, are all thrown into disorder when the king is regardless."

²⁷⁶ This comparison is more fully expressed in a preceding verse (3404): *Yo na jānāti nirharttum vastrāṇāṁ rājako jñālam | raktānāṁ vā śodhayitūṁ yathā nāsti tathaiḥ saḥ |*

In two of the preceding passages different colours are represented as characteristic either of particular castes (Śānti-p. verses 6934 ff.), or of particular yugas (Vana-p. verses 11241 ff.). Colours (though not ranked in the same order of goodness) are similarly connected with moral and physical conditions in verses 10058 ff. of the Śāntiparvan, of which I shall offer a few specimens :

Shad jīva-varṇāḥ paramam pramāṇaṁ kṛishṇo dhūmro nīlam athāsya madhyam | raktam punaḥ sahyataraṁ sukhaṁ tu hāridra-varṇam susu-khaṁ cha śuklam | parantu śuklam vimalaṁ viśokaṁ gata-klamaṁ siddhyati dānavendra | gatvā tu yoni-prabhavāni daitya sahasraśah siddhim upaiti jīvaḥ | 10060. . . . *Gatiḥ punar varṇa-kṛitū prajānām varṇas tathā kāla-kṛito 'surendra |* 10062. *Kṛishṇasya varṇasya gatiḥ nikṛishṭā sa sajate narake pachyamānaḥ |*

“ 10058. Six colours of living creatures are of principal importance, black, dusky, and blue which lies between them; then red is more tolerable, yellow is happiness, and white is extreme happiness. White is perfect, being exempted from stain, sorrow, and exhaustion; (possessed of it) a being going through (various) births, arrives at perfection in a thousand forms. 10060. . . . Thus destination is caused by colour, and colour is caused by time. . . . 10062. The destination of the black colour is bad. When it has produced its results, it clings to hell.”

The next passage, from the Harivaṁśa, assigns to each of the four castes a separate origin, but at the same time gives an explanation of their diversity which differs from any that we have yet encountered : unless, indeed, any one is prepared to maintain that the four principles, out of which the castes are here represented to have arisen, are respectively identical with the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of Brahmā ! This passage, however, corresponds with one of those already quoted in associating different colours with the several castes. The question with which the passage opens refers to an account which had been given in the preceding section (verses 11799 ff.) of the creation of

and Angiras, to both of whom the epithet “progenitor of Brāh-
mans” (*brahma-vaṁśa-kara*) is applied. No mention is made there of
Kshattriyas or any other castes. M. Langlois, the French translator of
the Harivaṁśa, remarks that the distinction between the age of the
Brāhmanas and that of the Kshattriyas is an unusual one, and receives

no explanation in the context. But in two of the passages which have been quoted above (1) from the Uttara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, chapter 74 (p. 119), and (2) from the Bhīṣma-parva of the Mahābhārata, verses 393 ff. (p. 149), I think we find indications that the Kṛita Yuga was regarded as an age in which Brāhman alone existed, and that Kshattriyas only began to be born in the Tretā.

Harivaṁśa, 11808. *Janameya wācha | Śrutam brahma-yugam brahman yugānām prathamam yugam | kshattrasyāpi yugam brahman śrotum ichhāmi tattvataḥ | asaṁskshepaṁ savistaram niyamaiḥ bahubhiḥ chitam | upāya-jnaiḥ cha kathitām kratubhiḥ chopasobhitam | Vaiśampāyana wācha |* 11810. *Etat te kathayishyāmi yajna-karmabhir architam | dāna-dharmais cha vividhaiḥ prajābhir upasobhitam | te 'ngushṭha-mātrā munayaḥ ādattūḥ sūrya-raśmibhiḥ | moksha-prāptena vidhinā nirābādhenā karmānā | pravṛitte chāpravṛitte cha nityam Brahma-parāyanāḥ | parāyanasya sangamya Brahmanas tu mahipate | śrī-vṛittāḥ pūvanās chaiva brāhmanās cha mahipate | chārīta-brahmacharyyās cha brahma-jnānena bodhitāḥ | pūrṇe yuga-sahasrānte prabhāve pralayaṁ gatāḥ | brāhmanā vṛitta-sampannā jñāna-siddhāḥ samāhitāḥ |* 11815. *Vyatirik-tendriyo Viṣṇur yogātmā brahma-sambhavaḥ | Dakṣaḥ prajāpatir bhūtvā sṛjate vipulāḥ prajāḥ | akṣarād brāhmanāḥ saumyāḥ kṣharāt kshattriya-bāndhavāḥ | vaiśyā vikārataḥ chaiva śūdrāḥ dhūma-vikārataḥ | śveta-lohitakair varṇaiḥ pītair nīlaiḥ cha brāhmanāḥ | abhinirvartitāḥ varṇāṁś chintayānena Viṣṇunā | tato varṇatvam āpannāḥ prajā loka chaturvidhāḥ | brāhmanāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyāḥ śūdrās chaiva mahipate | eka-lingāḥ prithag-dharmā dvipādāḥ paramādbhutāḥ | yātanayā 'bhisampannā gati-jnāḥ sarva-karmasu | trayāṇāṁ varṇa-jātānāṁ veda-proktāḥ kriyāḥ smṛitāḥ | tena brāhmaṇa-yogena vaiśṇavena mahipate | prajñayā tejasā yogāt tasmāt Prūchetasaḥ prabhūḥ | Viṣṇur eva mahāyogī karmānām antaram gataḥ | tato nirvāna-sambhūtāḥ śūdrāḥ karma-vivarjitāḥ | tasmād nārḥanti saṁskāram na hy atra brahma vidyate | yathā 'gnau dhūma-saṅghāto hy aranyā mathyamānayā | prādurbhūto visarpan vai nopayujyati karmaṇi | evaṁ śūdrā visarpanto bhūvi kārṣṇyena janmanā | na saṁskṛitena²⁷ dharmena veda-proktena karmānā |*

“Janamejaya says: 11808. I have heard, o Brāhman, the (description of the) Brahma Yuga, the first of the ages. I desire also to be accurately informed, both summarily and in detail, about the age of the

²⁷ The printed text reads *nāsaṁskṛitena*; but *na saṁskṛitena* seems necessary.

Kshatriyas, with its numerous observances, illustrated as it was by sacrifices, and described as it has been by men skilled in the art of narration. Vaiśampāyana replied: 11810. I shall describe to you that age revered for its sacrifices and distinguished for its various works of liberality, as well as for its people. Those Munis of the size of a thumb had been absorbed by the sun's rays. Following a rule of life leading to final emancipation, practising unobstructed ceremonies, both in action and in abstinence from action constantly intent upon Brahma, united to Brahma as the highest object,—Brāhmins glorious and sanctified in their conduct, leading a life of continence, disciplined by the knowledge of Brahma,—Brāhmins complete in their observances, perfect in knowledge, and contemplative,—when at the end of a thousand yugas, their majesty was full, these Munis became involved in the dissolution of the world. 11815. Then Vishṇu sprung from Brahma, removed beyond the sphere of sense, absorbed in contemplation, became the Prajāpati Daksha, and formed numerous creatures. The Brāhmins, beautiful (or, dear to Soma),²⁷⁸ were formed from an imperishable (*akshara*), the Kshatriyas from a perishable (*kshara*), element, the Vaiśyas from alteration, the Sūdras from a modification of smoke. While Vishṇu was thinking upon the castes (*varṇān*), Brāhmins were formed with white, red, yellow, and blue colours (*varṇaiḥ*).²⁷⁹ Hence in the world men have become divided into castes, being of four descriptions, Brāhmins, Kshatriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, one in form, distinct in their duties, two-footed, very wonderful, full of energy(?), skilled in expedients in all their occupations. 11820. Rites are declared to be prescribed by the Vedas for the three (highest) castes. By that contemplation practised by the being sprung from Brahma (see v. 11815)—by that practised in his character as Vishṇu,—the Lord Prāchetasa (Daksha), *i.e.* Vishṇu the great contemplator (*yogin*), passed through his wisdom and energy from that state of meditation into the sphere of works.²⁸⁰ Next the Sūdras, produced from extinction, are destitute

²⁷⁸ In verse 11802, we read *abhiśichhya tu Somañ cha yawarājyē Pitāmahaḥ | brāhmaṇūnām cha rājānām sāsṣvatañ rajanī-charam* | “Brahmā also inaugurated Soma as the heir to the kingdom, as the king of the Brāhmins who walks eternally through the night.”

²⁷⁹ This play upon the two senses of the word *varṇa* will be noticed.

²⁸⁰ I do not profess to be certain that I have succeeded in discovering the proper meaning of this last sentence.

of rites. Hence they are not entitled to be admitted to the purificatory ceremonies, nor does sacred science belong to them. Just as the cloud of smoke which rises from the fire on the friction of the fuel, and is dissipated, is of no service in the sacrificial rite, so too the Sūdras wandering over the earth, are altogether (useless for purposes of sacrifice) owing to their birth, their mode of life devoid of purity and their want of the observances prescribed in the Veda."

The next extract gives an account at variance with all that precedes, as it does not assign to all the Brāhmans themselves the same origin, but describes the various kinds of officiating priests as having been formed from different members of Viṣṇu's body :

Harivaṁśa, 11355. *Evam ekārṇave bhūte śete loke mahādyutiḥ | prachhādyā salilāṁ sarvaṁ Harir Nārāyaṇaḥ prabhuḥ | mahato rajaso madhye mahārṇava-samasya vai | virajasko mahābūhur aksharam brāhmaṇā viduḥ | ātma-rūpa-prakāśena tapasā saṁvṛitaḥ prabhuḥ | trikam āchhādyā kālāṁ tu tataḥ sushvāpa sas tadā | puruṣho yajna ity evaṁ yat param parikīrtitaṁ | yach chānyat puruṣhākhyāṁ tu tat sarvaṁ puruṣhottamaḥ | ye cha yajnaparā viprā ṛitvijā iti saṁjñitāḥ | ātma-dehāt purā bhūtā yajnebhyaḥ śrūyatām tadā |* 11360. *Brahmāṇam paramaṁ vaktrād udgātāraṁ cha sūma-gāṁ | hotāraṁ atha chādhvaryuṁ bāhubhyām asṛijāt prabhuḥ | brāhmāṇo brāhmaṇatvāch cha prastotāraṁ cha sarvaśaḥ | tam maitravaruṇam sṛishṭvā pratishṭhātāraṁ eva cha | udarāt pratiharttāraṁ potāraṁ chaiva Bhārata | achhāvākam atherubhyām neshtāraṁ chaiva Bhārata | pāṇibhyām athachāgnīdhram brahmaṇyaṁ chaiva yajñiyam | grāvāṇam atha bāhubhyām unnetāraṁ cha yājñikam | evam eraisha bhagavān shoḍaśaitān jagatpatiḥ | pravaktrīṁ sarva-yajñānām ṛitvijo 'sṛijad uttamān | tad esha vai yajnamayaḥ puruṣho veda-saṁjñitaḥ | vedūś cha tanmayūḥ sarve sāṅgopanishada-kriyūḥ |*

Vaisampāyana said : 1135. "Thus the glorious Lord Hari Nārāyaṇa, covering the entire waters, slept on (the world) which had become one sea, in the midst of the vast expanse of fluid²⁸¹ (*rajas*), resembling a mighty ocean, himself free from passion (*virajaskaḥ*), with mighty arms.—Brāhmans know him as the undecaying. Invested through austere fervour with the light of his own form, and clothed with triple time (past, present, and future), the Lord then slept. Puruṣhottama

²⁸¹ *Rajas* is said in two places of the Nirukta, iv. 19, and x. 44, to have the sense of "water."

(Vishṇu) is whatever is declared to be the highest, Purusha the sacrifice, and everything else which is known by the name of Purusha. Hear how the Brāhman devoted to sacrifice, and called *ṛitvijes*, were formerly produced by him from his own body for offering sacrifices. 11360. The Lord created from his mouth the brāhman, who is the chief, and the udgātri, who chaunts the Sāman; from his arms the hotri and the adhvaryu. He then . . . ²⁸² created the prastotri, the maitrāvaruṇa, and the pratishthātri; from his belly the pratiharttri and the potri, from his thighs the achhāvāka and the neshttri, from his hands the agnīdhra and the sacrificial brahmanya, from his arms the grāvan and the sacrificial unnetri. Thus did the divine Lord of the world create these sixteen excellent ritvijes, the utterers of all sacrifices. Therefore this Purusha is formed of sacrifice and is called the Veda; and all the Vedas with the Vedāngas, Upanishads, and ceremonies, are formed of his essence."

SECT. XII.—*Extracts from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa on the same subject.*

I will conclude my quotations from the Purāṇas on the subject of the origin of mankind and of castes with a few passages from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa. The first extract reproduces some of the ideas of the Purusha Sūkta²⁸³ more closely than any of the Puranic accounts yet given.

ii. 5, 34. *Varsha-pūga-sahasrānte tad aṇḍam udake śayam | kāla-karma-svabhāva-stho jīvo 'jīvam ajīvayat |* 35. *Sa eva Purushas tasmād aṇḍam nirbhedyā nirgataḥ | sahasrorv-anghri-bāhv-akshaḥ sahasrānana-śrīrshavān |* 36. *Yasyehāvayavair lokān kalpayanti manīṣināḥ | kaṭy-*

²⁸² I am unable to make a proper sense out of the words *brahmaṇo brāhmaṇatvāch cha*, which, however, as I learn from Dr. FitzEdward Hall, are found (with only a difference of long and short vowels) in the best MSS. to which he has access, as well as in the Bombay edition. One of the sixteen priests, the Brāhmanāchhaṁsin, is not found in the enumeration, and his name may therefore have stood at the beginning of the line. Instead of the inept reading *sarvasaḥ*, at the end, the author may perhaps have written *vakshaḥ*, "from his chest," as, indeed, one MS. reads in the next line. The Bombay edition reads *prishthāt*, "from the back," instead of *prishṭvā*.

²⁸³ M. Burnouf remarks in the Preface to the first vol. of his edition of the Bhāgavata, pp. cxxii. ff., on the manner in which its author has gone back to Vedic sources for his materials. The same thing is noticed by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, i. 286, note.

ādibhir adhaḥ sapta saptordhvaṃ jaghanādībhiḥ | 37. *Purushasya mukham brahma kshatram etasya bāhavaḥ* | *ūrvor vaiśyo bhagavataḥ padbhyāṃ śūdro vyajāyata* | 38. *Bhūlokaḥ kalpitaḥ padbhyāṃ bhūvarloko 'sya nābhitaḥ* | *hṛidā svarloka urasā maharloko mahātmanaḥ* |

"34. At the end of many thousand years the living soul which resides in time, action, and natural quality gave life to that lifeless egg floating on the water. 35. Purusha then having burst the egg, issued from it with a thousand thighs, feet, arms, eyes, faces, and heads. 36. With his members the sages fashion the worlds, the seven lower worlds with his loins, etc., and the seven upper worlds with his groin, etc. 37. The Brāhman (was) the mouth of Purusha, the Kshattriya his arms, the Vaiśya was born from the thighs, the Śūdra from the feet of the divine being. The earth was formed from his feet, the air from his navel; the heaven by the heart, and the maharloka by the breast of the mighty one."

In the following verse the figurative character of the representation is manifest :

ii. 1, 37. *Brahmānanaṃ kshattrā-bhujō mahātmā vid-ūrur anghri-śṛita-kṛishṇa-varṇaḥ* |

"The Brāhman is his mouth; he is Kshattriya-armed, that great One, Vaiśya-thighed, and has the black caste abiding in his feet."

The next passage is more in accord with the ordinary representation, though here, too, the mystical view is introduced at the close :

iii. 22, 2. *Brahmā 'srijat sva-mukhato yushmān ātma-parīpsayā* | *chhandomayas tapo-vidyā-yoga-yuktān alampaṭān* | 3. *Tat-trūṇyā-srijach chāsmān doḥ-sahasrāt sahasra-pāt* | *hṛidayāṃ tasya hi brahma kshatram angam prachakshate* |

"Brahmā, who is formed of the Veda (*chhandas*), with a view to the recognition of himself, created you (the Brāhmans) who are characterized by austere fervour, science, devotion and chastity, from his mouth. For their protection he, the thousand-footed, created us (the Kshattriyas) from his thousand arms: for they declare the Brāhman to be his heart, and the Kshattriya his body."

iii. 6, 29 ff. contains another reference to the production of the castes :

29. *Mukhato 'varttata brahma Purushasya Kurūdvaha* | *yastūn-mukhatodā varṇānām mukhyo 'bhūd brāhmaṇo guruḥ* | 30. *Bāhubhṛjo 'varttata kshattrāṃ kshattriyas tad-anuvrataḥ* | *yo jūtas trāyate varṇān*

paurushaḥ kaṇṭaka-kshatāt | 31. Viśo 'varttanta tasyorvor loka-vṛttikarīr vibhoḥ | vaiśyas tad-udbhavo vārttām nṛiṇām yaḥ samavarttayāt | 32. Padbhyaṃ bhagavato jāne śūśrūṣhā dharmā-siddhaye | tasyām jātāḥ purā śūdro yad-vṛtityā tushyate Hariḥ | 33. Ete varṇāḥ sva-dharmena yajanti sva-guruṃ Hariṃ | śraddhayā 'tma-viśuddhyartham yaj jātāḥ saha vṛttibhiḥ |

"29. From the mouth of Purusha, o descendant of Kuru, issued divine knowledge (*brahma*), and the Brāhman, who through his production from the mouth became the chief of the castes and the preceptor. 30. From his arms issued kingly power (*kshattrā*), and the Kshātriya devoted to that function, who, springing from Purusha, as soon as born defends the castes from the injury of enemies. 31. From the thighs of the Lord issued the arts,²³⁴ affording subsistence to the world; and from them was produced the Vaiśya who provided the maintenance of mankind. 32. From the feet of the divine Being sprang service for the fulfilment of duty. In it the Sūdra was formerly born, with whose function Hari is well satisfied. By fulfilling their own duties, with faith, for the purification of their souls, these castes worship Hari their parent, from whom they have sprung together with their functions."

In viii. 5, 41, we find the following:

Vipro mukhād brahma cha yasya guhyaṃ rājanya āsīd bhujayor balaṃ cha | ūrvor viḍ oja 'ngirir āveda-śūdrau prasīdatām naḥ sa mahāvibhūtīḥ |

"May that Being of great glory be gracious to us, from whose mouth sprang the Brāhman and the mysterious Veda, from whose arms came the Rājanya and force, from whose thighs issued the Viś and energy, and whose foot is no-veda (*āveda*) and the Sūdra."

The same work gives the following very brief account of the *Arvāk-srotas* creation, which is described with somewhat more detail in the passages extracted above from the Vishṇu and Vāyu Purāṇas:

iii. 20, 25. *Arvāk-srotas tu navamaḥ kshattar eka-vidho nṛiṇām | rajo 'dhikāḥ karma-parāḥ duḥkhe cha sukha-māninaḥ |*

²³⁴ The word so rendered is *viśaḥ*, which in the hymns of the Rig-veda has always the sense of "people." Here, however, it seems to have the sense assigned in the text, if one may judge from the analogy of the following verse, in which the Sūdra is said to be produced from his special function, *śūśrūṣhā*, "service." The Commentator explains *viśaḥ* = *kṛiṣhy-ādī-vyavasāyāḥ*, "the professions of agriculture," etc.

"The Arvaksrotas creation was of one description,²⁸⁵ viz., of men, in whom the quality of passion abounded, who were addicted to works, and imagined that in pain they experienced pleasure."

In vi. 6, 40, a new account is given of the origin of mankind. We are there told :

Aryamaṇo Mātṛikā patnī tayoś Charshaṇayaḥ sutāḥ | yatra vai mānushī jātir Brahmanū chopakalpita |

"The wife of Aryaman (the son of Aditi) was Mātṛikā. The Charshaṇis were the sons of this pair, and among them the race of men was formed by Brahmā." The word *charshaṇi* signifies "men," or "people" in the Veda.

In the following verse (which forms part of the legend of Purūravas, quoted in the 3rd vol. of this work, pp. 27 ff.) it is declared that in the Kṛita age there was only one caste :

ix. 14, 48. *Eka eva purū vedāḥ pranavaḥ sarva-vāñmayāḥ | devo Nārāyaṇo nānya eko 'gnir varṇa eva cha | Purūravasa evāsīt trayī tretā-mukhe nṛipa |*

"There was formerly but one Veda, the *pranava* (the monosyllable *Om*), the essence of all speech ; only one god, Nārāyaṇa, one Agni, and (one) caste. From Purūravas came the triple Veda, in the beginning of the Tretā."

Some of the Commentator's remarks on this text will be found in vol. iii. p. 29. He says the one caste was called "Hansa" (*varṇas cha eka eva haṁso nāma*), and concludes his note by remarking : "The meaning is this: In the Kṛita age when the quality of goodness predominated in men, they were almost all absorbed in meditation ; but in the Tretā, when passion prevailed, the method of works was manifested by the division of the Vedas, etc."

²⁸⁵ The Sāṅkhya Kārikā, 53, says: *aṣṭa-vikalpo daivas tairgygyonyas cha pañchadhā bhavati mānushyas chaika-vidhaḥ saṁśato bhautikaḥ sargaḥ* ; which is thus translated by Mr. Colebrooke (in Wilson's Sāṅkhya Kārikā, p. 164) : "The divine kind is of eight sorts ; the grovelling is five-fold ; mankind is single in its class. This, briefly, is the world of living beings." The Commentator Gaudapāda shortly explains the words *mānushyas chaikavidhaḥ* by *mānushayonir ekaiva*, "the source of production of mankind is one only." Vijnāna Bhikshu, the Commentator on the Sāṅkhya Pravachana, iii. 46, paraphrases the same words thus, *mānushya-sargaḥ chaika-prakāraḥ*, "the human creation is of one sort."

SECT. XIII.—*Results of this Chapter.*

The details which I have supplied in the course of this chapter must have rendered it abundantly evident that the sacred books of the Hindus contain no uniform or consistent account of the origin of castes; but, on the contrary, present the greatest varieties of speculation on this subject. Explanations mystical, mythical, and rationalistic, are all offered in turn; and the freest scope is given by the individual writers to fanciful and arbitrary conjecture.

First: we have the set of accounts in which the four castes are said to have sprung from progenitors who were separately created; but in regard to the manner of their creation we find the greatest diversity of statement. The most common story is that the castes issued from the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of Purusha, or Brahmā. The oldest extant passage in which this idea occurs, and from which all the later myths of a similar tenor have no doubt been borrowed, is, as we have seen, to be found in the Purusha Sūkta; but it is doubtful whether, in the form in which it is there presented, this representation is anything more than an allegory. In some of the texts which I have quoted from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, traces of the same allegorical character may be perceived; but in Manu and the Puranas the mystical import of the Vedic text disappears, and the figurative narration is hardened into a literal statement of fact. In other passages, where a separate origin is assigned to the castes, they are variously said to have sprung from the words Bhūh, Bhuvah, Svah; from different Vedas; from different sets of prayers; from the gods, and the asuras; from nonentity (pp. 17–21), and from the imperishable, the perishable, and other principles (Harivamśa, 11816). In the chapters of the Viṣṇu, Vāyu, and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, where castes are described as coeval with the creation, and as having been naturally distinguished by different guṇas, or qualities, involving varieties of moral character, we are nevertheless allowed to infer that those qualities exerted no influence on the classes in whom they were inherent, as the condition of the whole race during the Kṛita age is described as one of uniform perfection and happiness; while the actual separation into castes did

not take place, according to the Vāyu Purāṇa, until men had become deteriorated in the Tretā age.

Second: in various passages from the Brāhmanas, Epic poems, and Puranas, the creation of mankind is, as we have seen, described without the least allusion to any separate production of the progenitors of the four castes (pp. 23–27, and elsewhere). And whilst in the chapters where they relate the distinct formation of the castes, the Puranas, as has been observed, assign different natural dispositions to each class, they elsewhere represent all mankind as being at the creation uniformly distinguished by the quality of passion. In one of the texts I have quoted (p. 26 f.) men are said to be the offspring of Vivasvat; in another his son Manu is said to be their progenitor; whilst in a third they are said to be descended from a female of the same name. The passage which declares Manu to have been the father of the human race explicitly affirms that men of all the four castes were descended from him. In another remarkable text the Mahābhārata categorically asserts that originally there was no distinction of classes, the existing distribution having arisen out of differences of character and occupation. Similarly, the Bhāgavata Purāṇa in one place informs us that in the Kṛita age there was but one caste; and this view appears also to be taken in some passages which I have adduced from the Epic poems.

In these circumstances we may fairly conclude that the separate origination of the four castes was far from being an article of belief universally received by Indian antiquity.

I shall now proceed to enquire what opinion the writers of the older Vedic hymns appear to have entertained in regard to the origin of the race to which they themselves belonged.

CHAPTER II.

TRADITION OF THE DESCENT OF THE INDIAN RACE FROM MANU.¹

It appears from the considerations urged in the preceding chapter that in all probability the Purusha Sūkta belongs to the most recent portion of the Rig-veda Sanhitā, and that it is at least doubtful whether the verse in which it connects the four castes with the different members of the creator's body is not allegorical. And we have seen that even if that representation is to be taken as a literal account of the creation of the different classes, it cannot, in the face of many other statements of a different tenor, and of great antiquity, be regarded as expressing the fixed belief of the writers of the period immediately succeeding the collection of the hymns in regard to the origin of the social divisions which prevailed in their own time. But the notions entertained of the origin of caste at the date of the Purusha Sūkta, whatever they may have been, will afford no criterion of the state of opinion on the same subject in an earlier age; and it therefore remains to enquire whether those hymns of the Rig-veda, which appear to be the most ancient, contain either (1) any tradition regarding the origin of mankind, or of the Indian tribes; or (2) any allusion to the existence, in the community contemporary with their composition, of separate classes corresponding to those afterwards known as Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and S'ūdras; and if they embrace any reference of the latter kind, whether they afford any explanation of the manner in which these orders of men came to occupy their respective positions

¹ On the subjects treated in this chapter compare my article in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, vol. xx. for 1863, pp. 406 ff., where a reference is made to the other writers who had previously treated of them, such as M. Nève, Mythe des Ribhavas, etc.

in society. We shall find on examination that the hymns supply some information on both these branches of enquiry.

Numerous references are undoubtedly to be found in all parts of the hymn-collection to a variety of ranks, classes, and professions; of which an account will be given in the next chapter; but no hint is anywhere discoverable, except in the single text of the Purusha Sūkta, of those classes being distinguished from each other by any original difference of race. If, however, the early Vedic Indians had all along believed in the quadruple production of their nation from the different members of Purusha, one might naturally have expected to find allusions to such a variety of birth running through the hymns. But nothing, I repeat, of this kind is to be traced. On the contrary it appears from a considerable number of passages that at least the superior ranks of the community were regarded as being of one stock, the Aryan, and as having one common ancestor. This chapter will therefore embrace, First, the texts which are found in the hymns regarding the origin of the Indian tribes, and the history of their progenitor, and Secondly those passages which occur in the Brāhmaṇas, and other later works in which the statements of the early Vedic poets on these subjects are re-echoed or developed.

SECT. I.—*Manu as the progenitor of the Aryan Indians and the institutor of religious rites according to the Hymns of the Rig-veda.*

In this section I shall first quote the texts which allude to Manu as father (which must of course be understood to designate him as the actual human progenitor of the authors of the hymns, and of the bulk of the people to whom they addressed themselves); and then adduce those which speak of him as the institutor of religious rites, or as the object of divine protection.

(1) The following texts are of the first class :

i. 80, 16. *Yām Atharvā Manush pitā Dadhyañ dhiyam atnata | tasmin brahmāṇi pūrvathā Indre ukthā samagmata |*

“Prayers and hymns were formerly congregated in that Indra, in the ceremony which Atharvan, father Manu, and Dadhyanch celebrated.”²

² This verse is quoted in the Nirukta, xii. 34, where the words *Manush pitā*,

i. 114, 2. *Yat śaṁ cha yoś cha Manur āyeje pitā tad aśyāma tadv Rudra pranītishu* |

“Whatever prosperity or succour father Manu obtained by sacrifice, may we gain all that under thy guidance, O Rudra.”

ii. 33, 13. *Yā vo bhesajā Marutaś śuchini yā śantamā vṛishaṇo yā mayobhū | yāni Manur avṛiṇīta pitā naḥ tā śaṁ cha yoś cha Rudrasya vaśmi* |

“Those pure remedies of yours, O Maruts, those which are most auspicious, ye vigorous gods, those which are beneficent, those which our³ father Manu chose, those, and the blessing and succour of Rudra, I desire.”

viii. 52, 1 (Sāma-veda, i. 355). *Sa pūrṇyo mahānām veno kratubhir ānaje | yasya dvārā Manuḥ pitā deveshu dhiyaḥ ānaje* |

“That ancient friend hath been equipped with the powers of the mighty (gods). Father Manu has prepared hymns to him, as portals of access to the gods.”⁴

“father Manu,” are explained as meaning *Manuścha pitā mīnavānām*, “Manu the father of men.” Sāyana, the Commentator on the Rig-veda, interprets them as meaning *sarvāsām prajānām pitribhūto Manuścha*, “Manu the father of all creatures.” In R.V., x. 82, 3, the words “our father and generator” (*yo naḥ pitā janitā*), are applied to Visvakarman, the creator of the universe. The word “father” in the R.V. is often applied to Dyaus, the Sky, and “mother” to the Earth, as in vi. 51 5. (Compare Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1864, pp. 55 ff.) But in these passages it is not necessary to suppose that the words are employed in any other than a figurative sense; although in a hymn to the Earth in the Atharva-veda, xii. 1, we find the following verse (the 15th): *Trāj-jātas trayi charanti martyās tvam bibharshi dvipadas tvam chatuspadah | tavame prithivi pancha-mānavāḥ yebhyo jyotir amṛitam martyebhyaḥ udyan sūryo rasmibhir ātanoti* | “Mortals born of thee live on thee: thou supportest both bipeds and quadrupeds. Thine, o Earth, are these five races of men, these mortals on whom the sun rising, sheds undying light with his rays;”—where it might almost appear as if the poet meant to represent mankind as actually generated by the earth. Brihaspati (iv. 50, 6; vi. 73, 1) and the other gods, as Indra, are called “father,” or compared to fathers (vii. 52, 3); as are Rudra, vi. 49, 10; and the Rishi, R.V., x. 81, 1; x. 82, 1, 3, 4. S’ P. Br., i. 5, 3, 2, has *Prajāpataḥ pitarī*; and Taitt. Br. iii. 9, 22, 1, *Prajāpatim pitaram*. In both the last places Prajāpati is referred to as the father of the gods.

³ It is to be observed that while in the two preceeding passages Manu is styled merely “father Manu,” he is here called “our father Manu” (*Manuḥ pitā naḥ*).

⁴ I am indebted to Professor Aufrecht for the above translation of this, to me, obscure verse. Sāyana explains it thus: *Sa pūrṇyo mukhyo mahānām pūjyānām yajamānānām kratubhiḥ karmabhir nimittabhūtair venaḥ kūntas tesāṁ haviḥ kāmāyamūnaḥ ānaje āgachhati | yasyendrasya dvārā dvārāni prāptyupāyāni dhiyaḥ karmanī deveshv eteshu madhye pitā sarveshām pālako Manur ānaje prāpa | ānajiḥ prāpti-*

The sense of the next text is less clear, but it appears at least to allude to the common designation of Manu as a father:

x. 100, 5. *Yajno Manuḥ pramatir naḥ pitā hi kam |*

"Sacrifice is Manu, our protecting father."

The following verse, according to the Commentator at least, speaks of the *paternal* or *ancestral* path of Manu. Professor Aufrecht thinks it need not mean more than the *ancestral human path*:

viii. 30. 3. *Te nas trādhvam te avata te u no adhi rochata | mā nuḥ pathaḥ pitryād mānarād adhi dūram naiṣṭa parāvataḥ |*

"Do ye (gods) deliver, protect, and intercede for us; do not lead us far away from the paternal path of Manu."⁵

As in the preceding passages Manu is spoken of as the progenitor of the worshippers, so in the following the same persons may perhaps be spoken of as his descendants, although it is also true that the phrases employed may be merely equivalent to "children of men."

i. 68, 4. *Hotā nishatto Manor apatyē sa chit nu ūsām patih rayinūm |*

"He (Agni) who abides among the offspring of Manu as the invoker (of the gods), is even the lord of these riches."⁶

karmā | "This chief one, in consequence of the rites of the venerable sacrificers, desiring their oblation, comes,—he (Indra) as means of attaining whom Manu the preserver of all has obtained rites among these gods." Professor Benfey renders the verse, where it occurs in the Sāma-veda, thus: "He is the chief of the rich, through works the dear one enlightens him, whose doors father Manu has, and illuminates observances towards the gods." From Prof. Benfey's note to the passage (p. 230) it appears that the Commentator on the Sāma-veda explains *ūnaje* by *vyaktīkaroti ātmānam*, "makes himself distinct" (herein differing from Sāyana), Manu by *jñātā sarvasya* = *Indraḥ*, "the knower of all, Indra," and *ūnaje*, where it occurs the second time, by *ūgamayati*, "causes to come." Such are the differences of opinion regarding the interpretation of some parts of the hymns.

⁵ On this verse Sāyana comments thus: *Sarveshūm Manuḥ pitū tataḥ ūgatāt | parāvataḥ | pitā Manur dūram mārgam chakre | tasmāt patho mārgāt no asmūn mā naiṣṭa mā nayata | apanayanam mā kuruta ity arthaḥ | sarvadū brahmacharyyāgni-hotrādi-karmāṇi yenu mārgeṇa bhavanti tam eva asmūn nayata | kintu dūram ya etad-vyatirikto viprakṛishṭo mārgo 'sti tasmād adhi adhikam ity arthaḥ asmūn apanayata |* "Of Manu" means, come from Manu who is the father of all. 'Distant': Father Manu journeyed along a distant path. Do not lead us away from that path. Lead us along that path in which continence, the agnihotra sacrifice, and other duties have always been practised. But lead us away from the distant path which is different from that."

⁶ The Commentator here explains "the offspring of Manu" as offspring or creatures in the form of worshippers (*yajamāna-svarūpāyām prajāyām*); and adds that according to a Brūhmaṇa "creatures are sprung from Manu" ("*Mānavyo hi prajāḥ*"

iii. 3, 6. *Agnir devebhir manushascha jantubhis tanvāno yajnam puru-
peśasam dhiyā |*

"Agni, together with the gods, and the children (*jantubhiḥ*) of Manush, celebrating a multiform sacrifice with hymns," etc.

In the following texts reference is made to the *people* of Manu, the word for "people" being *viś*, from which *vaiśya*, "a man of the people," is derived:

iv. 37, 1. *Upa no Vājāḥ adhvaram Ribhukshāḥ devāḥ yāta pathibhir
devayānaiḥ | yathā yajnam manusho vikshu āsu dadhirdre ranvāḥ sudine-
shu ahnām |*

"Ye gods, Vājas, and Ribhukshans, come to our sacrifice by the path travelled by the gods, that ye, pleasing deities, may institute a sacrifice among these people of Manush (*Manusho vikshu*) on auspicious days."

vi. 14, 2. *Agnim hotāram īlate yajneshu manusho viśaḥ |*

"The people of Manush praise in the sacrifices Agni the invoker."

viii. 23, 13. *Yad vai ā viśpatiḥ śitaḥ supṛito manusho viśi | viśvā id
Agniḥ prati rakshāṁsi sedhati |*

"Whenever Agni, lord of the people,⁷ kindled, abides gratified among the people of Manush, he repels all Rakshases."

(2.) From the preceding texts it appears that the authors of the hymns regarded Manu as the progenitor of their race. But (as is clear from many other passages) they also looked upon him as the first person by whom the sacrificial fire had been kindled, and as the institutor of the ceremonial of worship; though the tradition is not always consistent on this subject. In one of the verses already quoted (i. 80, 16) Manu is mentioned in this way, along with Atharvan and *iti hi brāhmaṇam*). Yūska (Nir. iii. 7) gives the following derivations of the word *manushya*, "man:" *Manushyāḥ kasmāt | matvā karmāṇi śivanti | manasyamānena śpiṣṭāḥ . . . | Manor apatyam Manusho vā |* "From what are men (named)? Because after reflection they sew together works; (or) because they were created by one who reflected (or, according to Durga, "rejoiced") . . . (or) because they are the offspring of Manu, or Manush."

⁷ *Viśpati*. Compare vi. 48, 8, where it is said: *viśvāsām grihapatir viśām asi tvam Agne mānushīnam |* "Agni, thou art the master of the house of all human people (or, people sprung from Manush);" and x. 80, 6, *Agnim viśaḥ īlate mānushīr yāḥ Agnim Manusho Nahusho vi jātūḥ |* "Human people (or, people descended from Manush) praise Agni: (people) sprung from Manush, from Nahush, (praise) Agni." Or if *manushaḥ* be the nom. plur. the last clause will run thus. "men sprung from Nahush (praise) Agni."

Dadhyanah, as having celebrated religious rites in ancient times. The following further passages refer to him as a kindler of fire, and offerer of oblations :

i. 36, 19. *Ni tvām Agne Manur dadhe jyotir janīya śaśvate |*

“Manu has placed (or ordained) thee, Agni, a light to all the people.”

i. 76, 5. *Yathā viprasya Manusho havirbhir devān ayajaj kavibhiḥ kariḥ san | eva hotaj satyatara tram adya Agne mandrayā juhvū yajasva |*

“As thou, thyself a sage, didst, with the sages, worship the gods with the oblations of the wise Manush, so to-day, Agni, most true invoker, worship them with a cheerful flame.”

v. 45, 6. *Ā ita dhiyam kṛṇavāma sakhūyah . . . Jayā Manur Viśi-
śipram jigāya . . .*

“Come, friends, let us perform the prayer . . . whereby Manu conquered Viśiśipra . . .

viii. 10, 2. *Yad vā yajnam Manave sammimikshathur eva it Kūṇvasya bodhatam |*

“Or if ye (Aśvins) sprinkled the sacrifice for Manu, think in like manner of the descendant of Kanva.”

ix. 96, 11. *Tryā hi naḥ pitarah Soma pūrve karmāni chakruḥ paramāna dhīrāḥ | . . . 12. Yathā apavathūḥ Manave vayodhāḥ amitrahā varivocid havishmān | eva pavasva . . .*

“For through thee, O pure Soma, our early fathers, who were wise, performed their rites . . . 12. As thou didst flow clear for Manu, thou upholder of life, destroyer of foes, possessor of wealth, rich in oblations, so (now) flow clear.” . . .

x. 63, 7. *Yebhyo hotrām prathamām āyeje Manuḥ samiddhūgnir manasā supta hotṛibhiḥ | tā Ādityā abhayam śarma yachhata . . .*

“O ye Ādityas, to whom Manu, when he had kindled fire, presented along with seven hotṛi priests the first oblation with a prayer, bestow on us secure protection.”

x. 69, 3. *Yat te Manur yad anikam Sumitrah samīdhe Agne tad idam navīyah”⁶ |*

⁶ The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa (i. 4, 2, 5) thus explains the words *deveddho Manvid-dhah*:—*Manviddhah iti | Manur hy etam agre aindha | tasmād āha “Manviddhah” iti | “The gods formerly kindled it (fire): hence it is called ‘god-kindled.’ Manu formerly kindled it: and hence it is called ‘kindled by Manu.’*” The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (ii. 34), however, explains the word *Manu-iddhah* from the fact that “men kindle it” (*imam hi manushyū indhate*).

"That lustre of thine which Manu, which Sumitra, kindled is this same which is now renewed."

In conformity with the preceding texts, the following may be understood as declaring that the sacrificial fire had been first kindled by Manu :

i. 13, 4 (= S.V. ii. 700). *Agne sukhata me rathe devān iṣitaḥ ā vaha | asi hotā Manurhitaḥ |*

"O Agni, lauded, bring the gods hither in a most pleasant chariot. Thou art the invoker (of the gods) placed by Manush."⁹

i. 14, 11. *Tam hotā Manurhito 'gne yajneshu sīdasi | saḥ imam no adhvaram yaja |*

"Thou, Agni, the invoker placed by Manush, art present at the sacrifices: do thou present this our oblation." (See also R.V. iii. 2, 15.)

vi. 16, 9. *Tam hotā Manurhitaḥ*

"Thou art the invoker placed by Manush"

viii. 19, 21. *Īḷe girā Manurhitam yam devā dūtam aratim ni erire | yajishṭham harya-vāhanam |*

"With a hymn I laud that adorable bearer of oblations placed by Manush,¹⁰ whom the gods have sent as a ministering messenger."

⁹ The compound word which I have here rendered "placed by Manush" is in the original *Manur-hita*. Professor Aufrecht would render it "given to man," and quotes i. 36, 10, in support of this view. The sense I have given is supported by i. 36, 19, where the same root, *dhā*, from which *hita* (originally *dhita*) comes, is used, joined with the particle *nī*. The same participle *hita* is used in vi. 16; I, where it is said: *Tam Agne yajmānām hotā sarveshām hitaḥ | devebhir mānushaḥ jane |* "Thou, Agni, hast been placed, or ordained, among the race of Manush by the gods as the invoker at all sacrifices." The fact that Agni is here said to have been placed by the gods among the race of Manush does not forbid us to suppose that there are other passages in which, either inconsistently, or from a different point of view, Agni may have been said to be placed by Manu. The compound *manur-hita* occurs also in the following texts, where, however, it has probably the sense of "good for man," viz.: i. 106, 5. *Bṛihaspate sadam id naḥ sugaṁ krīdhi sām yor yat te manur-hitam tad īmahe |* "Bṛihaspati, do us always good: we desire that blessing and protection of thine which is good for man." (Sāyana says that here *manur-hitam* means either 'placed in thee by Manu, i.e., Brahmā,' or, 'favourable to man.' Benfey, in loco, renders "destined for man.") vi. 70, 2. *Rājantī asya bhuvanasya rodasī asme retāḥ sinchataṁ yad manur-hitam |* "Heaven and earth, ruling over this world, drop on us that seed which is good for man." x. 26, 5. *Rishih sa yo manur-hitaḥ |* "He (Pūshan) who is a rishi kind to man," etc. Professor Roth s.v. gives only the latter sense.

¹⁰ Though the word *manur-hita* is here interpreted by Sāyana as meaning "placed by Manu Prajāpati who sacrificed," it might also signify "friendly to men," as Agni is also said to have been sent by the gods.

viii. 34, 8. *Ā tvā hotā Manurhito devatrā vakshad īdyaḥ* |

"May the adorable invoker placed by Manu bring thee (Indra) hither among the gods," etc.

There is also a class of passages in which the example of Manush may be referred to by the phrase *manush-vat*, "like Manush," or, "as in the case of Manush."¹¹ Thus in i. 44, 11, it is said :

Ni tvā yajnasya sūadhanam Agne hotāram ṛitvijam manushvad deva dhīmahi |

"Divine Agni, we, like Manush, place thee, the accomplisher of the sacrifice, the invoker, the priest," etc.

v. 21, 1. *Manushvat tvā ni dhīmahi Manushvat sam idhīmahi* | *Agne Manushvad Angiro devān devayate yaja* |

"Agni, we place thee like Manush, we kindle thee like Manush. Agni, Angiras, worship the gods like Manush, for him who adores them."

vii. 2, 3. *Manushvad Agnim Manunā samiddham sam adhrarāya sadam in mahema* |

"Let us, like Manush, continually invoke to the sacrifice Agni who was kindled by Manu."

viii. 27, 7. *Suta-somāso Varuṇa havāmahe Manushvad iddhāgnayaḥ* |

"We invoke thee, Varuṇa, having poured out soma, and having kindled fire, like Manush."

viii. 43, 13. *Uta tvā Bhṛiguvat śuche Manushvad Agne āhuta* | *Angirastvad havāmahe* | 27. *Yam tvā janāsa indhate Manushvad Angirastama* | *Agne sa bodhi me vacaḥ* |

"Like Bhṛigu, like Manush, like Angiras, we invoke thee, bright Agni, who hast been invoked. . . . 27. Agni, most like to Angiras, whom men kindle like Manush, attend to my words."

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 5, 1, 7, explains thus the word *Manushvat* :¹²—*Manur ha vai agre yajnena īje* | *tad anukṛitya imāḥ prajāḥ ya-*

¹¹ I should observe that Prof. Aufrecht thinks the phrase—except perhaps with the single exception of viii. 43, 13—means "amongst men." Prof. Roth gives only the sense "like men," "as among, or for, men."

¹² The same work in the same passage thus explains the phrase *Bharata-vat*. "He bears (*bharati*) the oblation to the gods ; wherefore men say, Bharata (or 'the bearer') is Agni. Or, he is called Bharata (the 'sustainer') because, being breath, he sustains these creatures." This phrase may, however, refer to the example of King Bharata. See Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiii. 5, 4, 14.

janto | *tasmād āha* "Manush-vad" *iti* | "Manor yajnaḥ" *iti u vai āhuḥ* | *tasmād vā iva āhur* "Manushvad" *iti* | "Manu formerly sacrificed with a sacrifice. Imitating this, these creatures sacrifice. He therefore says, *Manushvat*, 'like Manu.' Or, they say 'like Manu,' because men speak of the sacrifice as being Manu's."

It must, however, be admitted that Manu is not always spoken of in the hymns of the first, or only, kindler of fire or celebrator of religious rites. In i. 80, 16, already quoted, Atharvan and Dadhyanch are specified along with him as having offered sacrifice in early times.

In the following verses Atharvan is mentioned as having generated fire :

vi. 16, 13. *Imam tu tyam Atharva-vad Agnim mathanti vedhasaḥ* |

"The wise draw forth this Agni, as Atharvan did."

vi. 16, 13 (= S. V. i. 9; Vāj. Sanh. xi. 32). *Trām Agne pushkarād adhy Atharvā nir amanthata . . .* | 14. *Tam u tvā Dadhyaññ rishiḥ putraḥ idhe Atharvanaḥ* |

"Agni, Atharvan drew thee forth from the lotus leaf," etc. 14. "Thee the rishi Dadhyanch, son of Atharvan, kindled," etc.

[In the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā, the first of these verses is immediately preceded by the following words (xi. 32): *Atharvā tvā prathamō nir amanthad Agne* | "Atharvan was the first who drew thee forth, Agni."]

Again it is said in the Rig-veda, x. 21, 5. *Agnir jāto Atharvanā vidad viścāni kūr्या* | *bhuvad dūto Vivasvataḥ* | "Agni, produced by Atharvan, knows all wisdom, and has become the messenger of Vivasvat."

In i. 83, 5, Atharvan is mentioned as the earliest institutor of sacrifice: *Yajnair Atharvā prathamāḥ pathas tate tataḥ sūryo vratapāḥ venāḥ ājani* | "Atharvan was the first who by sacrifices opened up paths; then the friendly Sun, the upholder of ordinances, was produced," etc.: so too in x. 92, 10. *Yajnair Atharvā prathamō vi dhārayād devā dakshair Bhṛigavaḥ sam chikitrire* | "Atharvan, the first, established (all things) with sacrifices. The divine Bhṛigus co-operated with their powers." ¹³

¹³ These two texts might, though not very probably, be understood to mean not that Atharvan was the first to employ sacrifice, but to use it for the purpose referred to in the context.

The next texts speak of the Bhrigus as the institutors of sacrifice by fire :

i. 58, 6. *Dadhur tvā Bhrigavo mānusheshv ā rayim na chārum suhavam janebhyah | hotāram Agne |*

"The Bhrigus have placed thee, o Agni, among men, as an invoker, like a beautiful treasure, and easily invoked for men," etc.

ii. 4, 2. *Imam vidhanto apām sadasthe dvitā adadhur Bhrigavo vikshu Āyoh |*

"Worshipping him (Agni) in the receptacle of waters, the Bhrigus placed him among the people of Āyu."

x. 46, 2. *Imam vidhanto apām sadasthe paśum na nashtam padair anugman | guhā chatantam usijo namobhir ichhanto dhīrā Bhrigavo avindan |*

"Worshipping him in the receptacle of waters, and desiring him with prostrations, the wise and longing Bhrigus followed him with their steps, like a beast who had been lost, and found him lurking in concealment" ¹⁴ (i. 65, 1).

In other places, the gods, as well as different sages, are mentioned as introducing or practising worship by fire, or as bringing down the sacred flame from heaven :

i. 36, 10. *Yam tvā devāso manave dadhur iha yajishtham havyavāhana | yam Kanvo Medhyātithir dhanaspritam yam Vrishū yam Upastutaḥ |*

"Thou, o bearer of oblations, whom the gods placed here as an object of adoration to man (or Manu); whom Kanva, whom Medhyātithi, whom Vrishan, whom Upastuta (have placed) a bringer of wealth," etc. Compare vi. 16, 1, quoted above, p. 167, note 9.

iii. 5, 10. *Yadī Bhrigubhyah pari Mātariśvā guhā santañ havyavāham samidhe |*

"When Mātariśvan kindled for the Bhrigus Agni, the bearer of oblations, who was in concealment."

x. 46, 9. *Dyāvā yam Agnim prithivī janishthām āpas Tvashṭā Bhrigavo yam saho bhīḥ | īḷenyam prathamam Mātariśvā devās tatakshur manave yajatram |*

"Mātariśvan and the gods have made, as the first adorable object of worship to man (or Manu), that Agni whom heaven and earth, whom

¹⁴ In the following passages also the Bhrigus are mentioned as connected with the worship of Agni: i. 71, 4; i. 127, 7; i. 143, 4; iii. 2, 4; iv. 7, 1; vi. 15, 2; viii. 43, 13; viii. 91, 4; x. 122, 5.

the waters, whom Tvashtṛi, whom the Bhṛigus, have generated by their powers."

In the 8th verse the Āyus, and in the 10th the gods, as well as men, are said to have placed Agni.

In i. 60, 1; i. 93, 6; i. 148, 1; iii. 2, 13; iii. 5, 10; iii. 9, 5; vi. 8, 4, Mātariśvan is again spoken of as the bringer or generator of fire. (Compare note 1, in p. 416, of my article "On Manu the progenitor of the Āryan Indians," in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. xx. for 1863.)

But to return to Manu. Although the distinction of having been the first to kindle fire is thus, in various passages, ascribed to Atharvan or the Bhṛigus, this does not disprove the fact that in other places, it is, somewhat inconsistently, assigned to Manu; and none of these other personages is ever brought forward as disputing with Manu the honour of having been the progenitor of the Aryan race. In this respect the Vedic tradition exhibits no variation, except that Yama also seems in some places to be represented as the first man. (See my article in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, for 1865, pp. 287 ff., and especially the words of the Atharva-veda, xviii. 3, 14. *Yo mamāra prathamō marttyānām* | "Who (Yama) died first of men.")

(III.) The following passages describe Manu as being the object of special favour or intervention on the part of some of the gods:

i. 112, 16. *Yābhir narā Sayave yābhir Atraye yābhiḥ purā Manave gātum īshathuḥ* | *yābhiḥ śārīr ājatam Syūmaraśmaye tābhir u shu ūtibhir Aśvinā gatam* | 18. . . . *Yābhir Manum śūram īshā samāvatam* |

"Come, Aśvins, with those succours, whereby, o heroes, ye effected deliverance for Sayu, for Atri, and formerly for Manu, whereby ye shot arrows for Syūmaraśmi. 18. . . . whereby ye preserved the hero Manu with food."¹⁵

viii. 15, 5. *Yena jyotīṃshi Āyave Manave cha riveditha* | *mandāno asya barhiṣho vi rājasi* |

"Exulting in this (exhilaration), wherewith thou didst make known the luminaries to Āyu, and to Manu, thou art lord of the sacrificial grass."

¹⁵ This passage, as far as it concerns Manu, is thus explained by Sāyana: "And with those succours, whereby ye made a path, a road which was the cause of escape from poverty, by sowing barley and other kinds of grain, etc., for Manu, the royal hi of that name; according to another text" (i. 117, 21).

When compared with the preceding verse it seems not improbable that the following text may refer to the same tradition, and that instead of *Vāyave* we should read *Āyave* :

vii. 91, 1. *Kurīd anga namasā ye vridhāsah purā devā anavadyāsah āsan | te Vāyave (Āyave ?) Manave bādhitāya avāsayan Ushasam Sūryena |*

“Certainly those gods who were magnified by worship were of old faultless. They displayed the dawn with the sun to Vāyu (Āyu ?), to Manu when distressed.

There is also a reference to the sky being displayed to Manu in the following verse, unless the word (*manu*) is to be there taken as an epithet of Purūravas, which does not seem a probable supposition :

i. 31, 4. *Tvam Agne Manave dyām avāsayaḥ Purūravase sukrīte sukṛittaraḥ |*

“Thou, Agni, didst display the sky to Manu, to the beneficent Purūravas, (thyself) more beneficent.”

If Manu be taken for a proper name in vii. 91, 1, it may reasonably be understood in the same way in vi. 49, 13, where the person referred is similarly spoken of as distressed :

vi. 49, 13. *Yo rajāmśi viname pārthivāni trīs chid Vishṇur Manave bādhitāya |*

“Vishṇu who thrice measured the terrestrial regions for Manu when distressed.”

And in that case the word Manu may perhaps also be taken to denote a person in vii. 100, 4, *Vichakrame prithivīm esha etām kshetrāya Vishṇur Manave daśasyan |* “This Vishṇu strode over this earth, bestowing it on Manu for an abode.” Although here the general sense of “man” would make an equally good sense.

I may introduce here another text in which, from its conjunction with other proper names, it must be held that the word Manu denotes a person.

i. 139, 9. *Dadhyañ ha me janusham pūrvo Angirāḥ Priyamedhaḥ Kaṇvo Atrir Manur vidus te me pūrve Manur viduḥ |*

“Dadhyan, the ancient Angiras, Priyamedha, Kaṇva, Atri, Manu, know my (Paruchhepa’s?) birth ; they, my predecessors, Manu, know it.”

There are, as we have seen, some passages in the hymns in which it is doubtful whether the words *manu* and *manush* denote an

individual, or stand for man in general; and there are also texts in which the latter sense is clearly the only one that can be assigned. Such are the following :

(1.) *Manu* in the singular :

i. 130, 5. . . . *Dhenur iva manave viśvadohaso janāya viśvadohasah* |
 “All-productive as a cow to *man*, all-productive to a person.”

v. 2, 12. *Barhishmate manave śarma yaṁsad havishmate manave śarma yaṁsat* |

“That he may bestow protection on the *man* who sacrifices, on the *man* who offers oblations.”

viii. 47, 4. *Manor viśvasya gha id ime Ādityāḥ rāya īśate* . . . |

“These Ādityas are lords of every *man*’s riches” . . .

(2.) *Manu* in the plural :

viii. 18, 22. *Ye chid hi mṛityubandhavaḥ Ādityāḥ manavaḥ smasi* |
pra su naḥ āyur jīvase tiretana |

“O ye Ādityas, prolong the days of us who are men who are of kin to death, that we may live.”

x. 91, 9. *Yad devayanto dadhati prayāṁsi te havishmanto manaro vṛikta-barhishah* |

“When these pious *men* sacrificing, and spreading the sacrificial grass, offer thee oblations.”

(3.) *Manush* in the singular :

i. 167, 7. *Guhā charantī manusho na yoshā* |

“Like the wife of a *man* moving secretly.”

vii. 70, 2. . . . *atāpi gharmo manusho durone* |

“Fire has been kindled in the *man*’s abode.”

The same phrase *manusho durone* occurs also in viii. 76, 2; x. 40, 13; x. 104, 4; x. 110, 1. In x. 99, 7, we find the words *druhvane manusho*, “against the injurious *man*.”

(4.) *Manush* in the plural :

iv. 6, 11. *Hotāram Agnim manusho nishedur namasyanta usijah saṁsam āyoh* |

“*Men* offering worship, and eager, attend upon Agni the invoker, the object of *man*’s (or Āyu’s) praises.”

In the following passages, if the word *Manu* is not to be understood as denoting a person, the progenitor of men, it seems, at all events, to designate his descendants, the favoured race to which the authors of

the hymns believed themselves to belong, and appears to be in some cases at least nearly synonymous with Ārya, the name by which they called men of their own stock and religion, in contradistinction to the *Dasyus*, a term by which we are either to understand hostile demons, or the rude aboriginal tribes :

i. 130, 8. *Indraḥ samatsu yajamānam āryam prāvad viśveshu śatamūtir ājishu . . . | manave śāsad arratān tvacham kṛishṇām arandhayat* | ¹⁶

"Indra who bestows a hundred succours in all conflicts . . . has preserved the Ārya in the fights. Chastising the lawless, he has subjected the black skin to the man (*manave*)."

Compare i. 117, 21, where instead of *manu*, or *manush*, the word *manusha* is employed :

Yavaṁ vṛikeṇa Āśvinā vapantū iṣham duhantū manushāya dasrū | abhi dasyum bakureṇa dhamantū uru jyotiś chakrathur āryāya |

"Sowing barley with the wolf, ye, o potent Āśvins, milking out food for man (*manusha*), blowing away the *Dasyu* with the thunder-bolt (?), have made a broad light for the Ārya."

i. 175, 3. *Tram hi śuraḥ sanitū chodayo manusho ratham | sahārān dasyum arratam oshaḥ pātram na śochishā |*

"Thou, a hero, a benefactor, hast impelled the chariot of man : victorious, thou hast burnt up the rite-less *Dasyu*, as a vessel is consumed by a blaze."

ii. 20, 6. *Sa ha śruta Indro nāma deva ūrddhvo bhuvad manushe dasmatamaḥ | ava priyam arśasūnasya sahvān śiro bharad dāsasya svadhūvān |* 7. *Sa vṛittrahā Indraḥ kṛishṇayonīḥ purandaro dūsir airayad vi | ajanayad maṇave kṣhām apaścha satrū śaṁsam yajamānasya tūlot |*

"The god renowned as Indra hath arisen most mighty for the sake of man. Violent, self-reliant, he has smitten down the dear head 'of the destructive *Dāsa*. 7. Indra, the slayer of *Vṛittra*, the destroyer of cities, has scattered the *Dasyu* (hosts) sprung from a black womb. He

¹⁶ A similar opposition between the word *āyu*, "man," and *dasyu* is to be noted in the following passage, vi. 14, 3 : *nānū hi Agne avase spardhante rūyo aryaḥ | tūrvanto dasyum āyavo vrataih sīkshanto avratam |* "In various ways, o Agni, the riches of the enemy emulously hasten to the help (of thy worshippers). The men destroy the *Dasyu*, and seek by rites to overcome the riteless."

¹⁷ See Prof. Roth's explanation of this passage as given in a note to the article on *Manu* the progenitor of the *Aryan* Indians, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, vol. xx. p 418.

has produced for *man* the earth¹⁸ and the waters; he has perfectly fulfilled the aspiration of his worshipper."

vi. 21, 11. *Nu me ā vācham upa yāhi vidvān viśvebhīḥ sūno sahaso yajatraiḥ | ye agnijiḥvāḥ ṛitasūpaḥ āsur ye manum chakrur uparam dasāya |*

"Do thou, o wise god, son of strength, approach my hymn with all the adorable (deities), who were fire-tongued, rite-frequenting, and made *man* superior to the Dāsa."

viii. 87, 5. *Abhi hi satya somapāḥ ubhe babhūtha rodasī | Indrāsi sūvato ṛidhaḥ patir divaḥ | 6. Tram hi śasvatīnām Indra dartā purām asi | hantū dasyor manor ṛidhaḥ patir divaḥ |*

"5. For thou, o true soma-drinker, hast overcome both worlds. Indra, thou art the prosperer of him who makes libations, the lord of the sky. 6. Thou, Indra, art the destroyer of all the cities, the slayer of the Dasyu, the prosperer of *man*, the lord of the sky."

ix. 92, 5. *Tan nu satyam paramānasya astu yatra viśve kūṛavaḥ saṁnasanta | jyotir yad ahne akrīṇod u lokam prāvad manum dasyave kar abhikam |*

"Let this be the true (abode) of the pure god (Soma) where all the sages have assembled; since he has made light and space for the day, has protected *man*, and repelled the Dasyu."

x. 49, 7. *Yad mā sāvo manushaḥ āha nirṇije ṛidhak kṛiṣhe dāsam kṛitvyam hathaiḥ |*

"When the libation of *man* calls me to splendour, I tear in pieces (?) with blows the vigorous Dāsa."

x. 73, 7. *Tram jaghantha Namuchim makhasyum dāsam kṛiṇvānaḥ ṛishaye vimāyam | tram chakartha manave syonān patho devatrā anjasā iva yānān |*

"Thou hast slain the lusty Namuchi, making the Dāsa bereft of magic against the *rishi*: thou made for *man* beautiful paths leading as it were straightway to the gods."

It is to be observed that in none of these passages is the Brahmanical, or any other, caste singled out as having been the special object of divine protection. Men, or Āryas, are the favourites of the gods. And

¹⁸ In iv. 26, 7, Indra says: "*Aham bhūmim adadām āryāya aham vṛiṣṭim dāśuṣhe martyāya* | "I gave the earth to the Ārya; I gave rain to the sacrificing mortal."

even in such hymns as R.V. i. 112 ; i. 116 ; i. 117 ; i. 119, etc., where the *Āsṛvins* are celebrated as having interposed for the deliverance of many of their worshippers, whose names are there specified, we are nowhere informed that any of these were Brāhmins, although reference is often made to their being *rishis*.¹⁹

There is one other text of considerable interest and importance, R.V. iii. 34, 9, which, although it is unconnected with Manu, may be here cited, as it connects the word *ārya* with the term *varṇa*, "colour," which in later times came to signify "caste," as applied to the Brāhmins and other classes. It is this :

*Sasānātyān uta sūryam sasāna Indrah sasāna purubhojasam gām |
hiranyayam uta bhogam sasāna hatvī dasyūn pra āryam varṇam āvat |*

"*Indra* bestowed horses, he bestowed the sun, he bestowed the many-nourishing cow, he bestowed golden wealth : having slain the *Dasyu*, he protected the *Āryan* colour." *λ λ λ*

It is to be observed that here the word *varṇa* is used in the singular. Thus all the persons coming under the designation of *Ārya*, are included under one class or colour, not several.²⁰

We shall see in the next chapter that, irrespective of the verse of the *Purusha Sūkta*, there are in the *Rig-veda Sanhitā* a few texts in which the Brāhmins are mentioned alone of all the four castes, without any distinct reference being found anywhere to the second class as *Rājanyas*, or *Kshattriyas*, or to the third and fourth as *Vaiśyas* and *Sūdras*.

In the mean time I shall advert to some other phrases which are employed in the hymns, either to denote mankind in general, or to signify certain national or tribal divisions. The most important of these is that of the "five tribes," who are frequently referred to under the appellations of *pancha-kṛishṭayah*, *pancha-kshitayah*, *pancha-kshitayo mānushyayah* (vii. 97, 1), *pancha-charshanayah*, *pancha-janūh*, *pāṇchajanyā viś* (viii. 52, 7), *pancha bhūma* (vii. 69, 2), *pancha jātā* (vi. 61, 12).²¹

¹⁹ See Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, pp. 7 ff.

²⁰ *Sāyaṇa*, indeed, interprets the word *āryam varṇam* by *uttamam varṇam traivarṇikam* | "the most excellent class consisting of the three upper castes ;" but he of course explains according to the ideas of his own age. In the *S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa*, *Kāṇva Sūkhā* (*Adhvarya Kāṇḍa*, i. 6) it is stated that the upper three castes only were *Āryas* and fit to offer sacrifice (*ārya eva brāhmaṇo vā kshattriyo vā vaiśyo vā te hi jayiniyāh*) see Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, p. 281.

²¹ In iii. 49, 1, mention is made not of the five tribes, but of *all* the tribes : *S'āṁsa*

Some of these terms are occasionally used of the gods, as in x. 53, 4: *urjāda uta yajiniyāsah panchajanā mama hotraṃ jushadhvam* | "Ye five tribes who eat (sacrificial) food, and are worthy of adoration, receive my oblation with favour."²²

On this verse Yaska remarks, Nirukta, iii. 8: "*Gandharvāḥ pitaro devā asurā rakshāṃsi*" *ity eke* | "*chatvāro varṇā nishādaḥ panchamaḥ*" *ity Aupamanyavaḥ* | "Some say the word denotes the Gandharvas, fathers, gods, asuras, and rakshases. Aupamanyava says it denotes the four castes and the Nishādas."²³

If Aupamanyava was right, the Nishādas also were admissible to the worship of the gods in the Vedic age, as the "five classes" are represented in various texts as votaries of Agni. Such are the following:

vi. 11, 4. *Āyūṃ na yaṃ namasū rātaḥavyāḥ anjanti suprayasam pancha janāḥ* |

"Agni, whom, abounding in oblations, the five tribes, bringing offerings, honour with prostrations, as if he were a man."¹

Sāyaṇa here defines the five tribes as "priests and offerers of sacrifices" (*ritvig-yajamāna-lakshanāḥ*).

ix. 65, 22. *Ye somāsah . . sunvire . .* | 23. *Ye vā janeshu panchasu* |

mahūm Indraṃ yasmin viśvā ā kṛishṭayah somapāḥ kūmam aryan | "Praise the great Indra, in whom all the tribes drinking soma have obtained their desire."

²² Compare x. 60, 4. "In whose worship Ikshvāku prospers, wealthy and foe-destroying, like the five tribes in the sky (*divīra pancha kṛishṭayah*). Sāyaṇa, however, renders "His five tribes (the four castes and the Nishādas) are as (happy as) if in heaven." Prof. Müller, Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, p. 462, renders, "as the five tribes in heaven."

²³ In his note on this passage in his "Illustrations of the Nirukta," p. 28, Prof. Roth remarks: "The conception of the five races which originally comprehended all mankind . . . is here transferred to the totality of the divine beings. Hence also arises the diversity of understanding, when the number has to be indicated." Prof. Roth then quotes part of Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 31, which I give a little more fully from Dr. Haug's edition: *Panchajanyaṃ vai etad uktham yad vaisvadevam* | *sarveshūṃ vai etat panchajanānām uktham deva-manushyānām gandharvāpsarasām sarpāṇām cha pitṛīnām cha* | *eteshūṃ vai etat panchajanūnām uktham* | *sarve enam panchajanā viduḥ* | *ā enam panchinyai janatūyai havino gachhanti ya evam veda* | "This Vaisvadeva uktha belongs to the five classes of beings. It belongs to all the five classes of gods, men, gandharvas and apsaras, serpents, and fathers. To these five classes belongs this uktha. All these five classes know him (who uses it). Those of this five-fold set of beings who are skilled in invocation come to the man who knows this." See Dr. Haug's Ait. Br. ii. 214, where it is said that Gandharvas and Apsaras are counted as one class.

"Or those soma-libations which have been poured out . . (23) among the five tribes."

x. 45, 6. *Fiḷuṁ chid adrim abhinat parāyan janāḥ yad agnim aya-janta pancha* | १२५, ५८, ५९, ६०, ६१, ६२

"He (Agni), travelling afar, clove even the strong mountain, when the five tribes worshipped Agni."

vii. 15, 2. *Yat pancha charshanīr abhi nishasūda dame dame* | *karir grihapatir yuvā* |

"The wise and youthful master of the house (Agni) who has taken up his abode among the five tribes in every house."

In vi. 61, 12, Sarasvatī is spoken of as "augmenting or prospering the five tribes" (*pancha jūtā rardhayanti*).

In viii. 52, 7, it is said: *Yat pāñchajanyayā viśā Indre ghoshāḥ asṛikshata* | "When shouts were uttered to Indra by the people of the five tribes," etc.

In R.V. i. 117, 3, Atri is styled *ṛishim pāñchajanyam*, "a rishi belonging to the five tribes." In v. 32, 11, the epithet *satpatih pāñchajanyah*, "the good lord of the five tribes," is applied to Indra. And in ix. 66, 20, Agni is called the purified rishi, the priest of the five tribes (*pāñchajanyah purohitaḥ*).²⁴ ५१, ६१, ७१, ८१, ९१, १०१

In other passages, however, it is far from clear that the "five races" are intended to be identified with the Aryas, or people of honourable race, to whom the authors of the hymns belonged. Such, perhaps, is the case in the following verse: ii. 2, 10. *Asmākaṁ dyumnam adhi pancha kṛishṭishu uchchā svar na śusūchita duṣṭaram* | "May our glory shine aloft among the five tribes, like the heaven unsurpassable." See also vi. 46, 7, to be quoted below.

On the same subject, Professor Roth remarks as follows in his *Lexicon* under the word *kṛishṭi*: "The phrase *five races* is a designation of all nations, not merely of the Aryyan tribes. It is an ancient enumeration, of the origin of which we find no express explanation in the Vedic texts. We may compare the fact that the cosmical spaces or points of the compass are frequently enumerated as *five*, especially in

²⁴ See *Mahābhārata*, iii. 14160, as referred to by Roth under *jana*, where the birth of a being of five colours, apparently a form of Agni, is described, who was generated by five rishis, and who was known as the god of the five tribes (*pāñchajanya*) and the producer of five races.

the following text of the A.V. iii. 24, 2: *imā yāḥ pancha pradiśo mānaviḥ pancha kṛiṣṭayaḥ* | 'these five regions; the five tribes sprung from Manu'; among which (regions) we should have here to reckon as the fifth the one lying in the middle (*dhruvā dik*, A.V. iv. 14, 8; xviii. 3, 34), that is, to regard the Aryyas as the central point, and round about them the nations of the four regions of the world. . . . According to the Vedic usage, five cannot be considered as designating an indefinite number."

We cannot therefore regard the use of the term "five races" as affording any evidence of the existence of a rigidly defined caste-system at the period when it was in frequent use. The frequent reference to such a division, which fell into disuse in later times, rather proves the contrary. The caste-system was always a quadruple, not a quintuple, one; and although the Nishādas are added by Aupamanyava as a fifth division of the population, this class was esteemed too degraded to allow us to suppose that they could ever have formed part of a universally recognized five-fold division, of which all the parts appear to be regarded as standing on an equal, or nearly equal, footing.

It is supposed by Dr. Kuhn²⁵ that the "five tribes" are to be identified with the clans whose names are mentioned in the following verse:

i. 108, 8. *Yad Indrāgnī Yadushu Turvaśeshu yad Druhyushv Anushu Pūrushu sthah | atah pari vṛishanāv ā hi yātam athā somasya pibataṁ sutasya* |

"If, o Indra and Agni, ye are abiding among the Yadus, Turvaśas, Druhyus, Anus, Pūrus,—come hither, vigorous heroes, from all quarters, and drink the Soma which has been poured out."

Although, however, these tribes are often mentioned separately in the Rig-veda, this is either the only, or almost the only, text in which they are all connected with one another. Their identity with the "five classes" is therefore doubtful.

There is another word employed in the Rig-veda to designate a race well known to the authors of the hymns, viz., *nahush*. We have already met with this term in a verse (x. 80, 6) I have quoted above, where it appears clearly to denote a tribe distinct from the descendants of Manush; and the adjective derived from it occurs in vi. 46, 7 (=

²⁵ See Weber's *Indische Studien*, i. 202, where Dr. Kuhn's paper in the *Hall. Allg. Lit. Z.* for 1846, p. 1086, is referred to.

S.V. i. 262), where also the tribes of Nahush appear to be discriminated from the five tribes, whoever these may be supposed to be. The words are these: *Yad Indra nāhushishv ā ojo nrimnaṁ cha kṛishṭishu | yad vā pancha kshitināṁ dyumnam ā bhara satrā viśvāni pauṁsyā |* "Indra, whatever force or vigour exists in the tribes of Nahush, or whatever glory belongs to the five races, bring it (for us); yea all manly energies together." *He is the one who is called the son of the gods.*

Professor Roth (see his *Lexicon*, s. v.) regards the people designated by the word *nahush* as denoting men generally, but with the special sense of stranger, or neighbour, in opposition to members of the speaker's own community; and he explains the words of x. 80, 6, twice referred to above, as signifying "the sons of our own people, and of those who surround us."

These descendants of Nahush, whoever they may have been, are, however, distinctly spoken of in x. 80, 6 (the passage just adverted to), as worshippers of Agni, and can scarcely, therefore, have been regarded by the Aryas as altogether aliens from their race and worship.

Setting aside, as before, the Purusha Sūkta, there are few distinct references in the hymns of the Rig-veda to the creation of men, and none at all to the separate creation of castes. The following text ascribes the generation of mankind to Agni, R.V. i. 96, 2: *Sa pūrvayā nividā karyatā āyor imāḥ prajāḥ ajanayad manūnām | virasvatā chakshasā dyūm apas cha devā Agniṁ dhārayan dravinodām |* "By the first nivid, by the wisdom of Āyu, he (Agni) created these children of men; by his gleaming light the earth and the waters: the gods sustained Agni the giver of riches."²⁸ *He is the one who is called the son of the gods.*

The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa introduces this verse by the following passage, ii. 33: *Prajāpatir vai idam eka eva agre āsa | so 'kāmayata "prajāyeya bhūyūn syām" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | sa vācham ayachhat | sa saṁvat-sarasya parastād vyāharad dvādaśa kṛitvah | dvādaśapadū vai eśhū nivit | etām vāva tām nividāṁ vyāharat | tām sarvāni bhūtāny anvas-riyyanta | tad etad ṛishih paśyann abhyanūvacha "sa pūrvayā" ityādinā |* "Prajāpati alone was formerly this universe. He desired 'may I be propagated, and multiplied.' He practised austere fervour. He suppressed his voice. After a year he spoke twelve times. This nivid

²⁸ See Dr. Haug's translation in his *Ait. Br.* ii. 143; and Benfey's German version in his *Orient und Occident*, ii. 512.

consists of twelve words. This nivid he uttered. After it all beings were created. Beholding this the rishi uttered this verse, 'by the first nivid,' etc.

The generation of "creatures" (*prajāḥ*) is ascribed in various texts to different gods, in iii. 55, 19⁷ to Tvashtṛi Savitṛi; in ix. 86, 28 to Soma; in viii. 85, 6 (*ya imā jānāna vīśvā jātāni*) to Indra. In x. 54, 1 Indra is said to have "generated the father and mother (heaven and earth) from his own body" (*yan mātaraṁ cha pitaraṁ cha sākam ajanayathās tawāḥ svāyāḥ*); while Viśvakarman, who in x. 81, 2, 3 is said to have generated heaven and earth, is also in x. 82, 3 called "our father and generator" (*yo naḥ pitā janitā*). All these passages are, however, too vague to afford us any insight into the ideas of their authors regarding the creation of the human race.

SECT. II.—*Legends and Notices regarding Manu from the Satapatha, Aitareya, and Taittirīya Brāhmaṇas, the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, and the Chhāndogya Upanishad.*

The first passage which I adduce contains the very important legend of the deluge, which has already been quoted in the 2nd vol. of this work, pp. 324 ff., and which has also been rendered into English by Professor Max Müller (Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 425 ff.) and by Professor M. Williams (Ind. Epic Poetry, p. 34), as well as into German by its earliest translator, Professor Weber, in the year 1849 (Ind. Studien, i. 163 f.).

Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 8, 1, 1. *Manave ha vai prātar avanegyam udakam ājhrur yathā idam pāṇibhyām aranejanāya āharanti | evaṁ tasya avanenijānasya matsyaḥ pāṇi āpede | 2. Sa ha asmai vācham uvāda "bibhṛihi mā pārayishyāmi tvā" iti | "kasmād mā pārayishyasi" iti | "aughaḥ imāḥ sarvāḥ prajāḥ nirvodhā tatas tvā pārayitāsmi" iti | "Katham te bhṛitir" iti | 3. Sa ha uvācha "yūvad vai kshullakāḥ bhavāmo bahvī vai nas tūvad nūshṭrā bhavaty uta matsya eva matsyam gilati | kumbhyām mā agre bibharāsi | sa yadā tām ativardhā atha karshūm khātvā tasyām mā bibharāsi | sa yadā tām ativardhā atha mā samudram abhyavaharāsi | tarhi vai atinūshṭro bhavitāsmi" iti | 4. S'asvad²⁸ ha*

²⁷ Perhaps, however, we are to understand Tvashtṛi's function of aiding in procreation to be here referred to.

²⁸ *S'asvat-śabdo 'tra sāmāthyāt kshipra-vachanaḥ.*—Comm.

'*āsa sa hi jyeshṭham*³⁰ *rardhate* | "*atha itithīm samām tad aughaḥ āgantā tad mā nāvam upakalpya upāsāsai | sa aughe utthite nāvam āpadyāsai tatas tvā pārayitāsmi*" *iti* | 5. *Tam evam bhṛitrā samudram abhyatajahūra | sa yatithīm tat samām paridideśa tatithīm samām nāvam upakalpya upāsānchakre | sa aughe utthite nāvam āpade | tam sa matsyaḥ upanyāpuplure | tasya śṛinge nāraḥ pāsām pratimumocha | tena etam uttaram girim*³¹ *atidudrūva*³² | 6. *Sa ha urūcha "apīparam vai tvā vṛikṣhe nāram pratibadhnīshva | tam tu tvā mā girau santam udakam antaschhait-sīd yāvad yāvad udakam samarūyāt tūrat tūrad anvarasarpāsi*" *iti* | *Sa ha tūrat tūrad eva anvarasasarpa | tad api etad uttarasya girer "Manor atasarpanam*" *iti* | *augho ha tāḥ sarrāḥ prajāḥ nirurūha atha iha Manur era ekaḥ parisīśiṣhe* | 7. *Saḥ archan śrāmyaṁś chachūra prajākūmah | tatra api pūka-yajnena ije | sa ghṛitam dadhi mastv āmikshām ity apsu juhuvānchakūra | tataḥ sāmrvatsare yoshit sambabhūra | sū ha pibdamānū*³³ *iva udeyāya | tasyai ha sma ghṛitaṁ pade santishṭhate | tayā Mitrā-Farunau sanjagmāte* | 8. *Tām ha ūchatuḥ "kā asi"* *iti* | "*Manor duhitā*" *iti* | "*āvayor brūshva*" *iti* | "*na*" *iti* *ha urūcha "yaḥ eva mām ajījanata tasya eva aham asmi"* *iti* | *tasyām apitram*³⁴ *īshāte* | *tad vā jujnau tad vā na jajnūr*³⁵ *ati tu eva iyūya | sū Manum ūjagāma* | 9. *Tām ha Manur urūcha "kā asi"* *iti* | "*tara duhitā*" *iti* | "*katham bhagarati mama duhitā*" *iti* | "*yūḥ amūr apsu āhutir ahaushīr ghṛitaṁ dadhi mastv āmikshām tato mām ajījanathūḥ | sū āśīr asmi tām mā yajne arakalpaya | yajne ched vai mā arakalpayishyasi bahuh prajāyā paśubhir bhavishyasi yām u mayā kāncha āśisham āśāśishyase sū te sarrā samardhishyate*" *iti* | *tām etad madhye yajnasya arūkalpayat | madhyaṁ hi etad yajnasya yad antarā prayājñunuyājñan* | 10. *Tayā archan śrāmyaṁś chachūra prajākūmah | tayā imām prajātim prajājne yā iyam Manoh prajātiḥ | yām u enayū kāncha āśisham āśāsta sū asmai sarrā samārdhyata | sū eṣhā nidānena yad Idū | sa yo ha eram vidvān Idayū charati etām ha eva prajātim prajāyate yām Manuḥ prajāyata | yām u enayū kāncha āśisham āśāste sū asmai sarrā samṛidhyate* |

"1. In the morning they brought to Manu water for washing, as

³⁰ *Jhaṣho mahā-matsyaḥ*.—Comm.

³⁰ *Jyeshṭham vṛiddhatamam*.—Comm.

³¹ *Uttaram girim Himavantam*.—Comm.

³² Some MSS. read *adhidudrūva*.

³³ *Pibdamānā . . . ghṛita-prabhavatvāt ghṛitam eravanti sunighdhā udakād ut-thitā*.—Comm.

³⁴ *Apitvam dhūgaḥ | tam prārthitavantau*.—Comm.

³⁵ *Pratijnūlavatī cha na cha pratijnūlavatī*.—Comm.

men are in the habit of bringing it to wash with the hands. As he was thus washing, a fish³⁶ came into his hands, (2) (which spake to him) 'preserve me; I shall save thee.' (Manu enquired) 'From what wilt thou save me?' (The fish replied) 'A flood shall sweep away all these creatures;³⁷ from it I will rescue thee.' (Manu asked) 'How (shall) thy preservation (be effected)?' 3. The fish said: 'So long as we are small, we are in great peril, for fish devours fish; thou shalt preserve me first in a jar. When I grow too large for the jar, then thou shalt dig a trench, and preserve me in that. When I grow too large for the trench, then thou shalt carry me away to the ocean. I shall then be beyond the reach of danger.' 4. Straightway he became a large fish; for he waxes to the utmost. (He said) 'Now in such and such a year, then the flood will come; thou shalt, therefore, construct a ship, and resort to me; thou shalt embark in the ship when the flood rises, and I shall deliver thee from it.' 5. Having thus preserved the fish, Manu carried him away to the sea. Then in the same year which the fish had enjoined, he constructed a ship and resorted to him. When the flood rose, Manu embarked in the ship. The fish swam towards him. He fastened the cable of the ship to the fish's horn. By this means he passed over³⁸ this northern mountain.³⁹ 6. The fish said, 'I have delivered thee; fasten the ship to a tree. But lest the water should cut thee off whilst thou art on the mountain, as much as the water subsides, so much shalt thou descend after it.' He accordingly descended after it as much (as it subsided). Wherefore also this, viz., 'Manu's descent' is (the name) of the northern mountain. Now the flood had swept away all these creatures; so Manu alone was left here. 7. Desirous of offspring, he lived worshipping and toiling in arduous religious rites. Among these he also sacrificed with the pāka offering. He cast clarified butter, thickened milk, whey and curds, as an oblation into the waters. Thence in a year a woman was produced. She rose

³⁶ *Bhūvino'rthasya siddhyartham devatā eva matsya-rūpeṇa vijagāma* | "To accomplish what was to follow, it was a deity which came in the form of a fish."—Comm.

³⁷ *Angṛhaḥ udaka-saṅghātāḥ | sa imāḥ Bharatavarsha-nirāsiniḥ prajāḥ niḥśeṣaṁ vodhā | deśāntaram prāpayitū* | "The flood will entirely carry these creatures abiding in Bharatavarsha;—will convey them to another country."—Comm.—I do not see why the verb *nirvodhā* should have the sense here assigned to it: at all events we are afterwards told that Manu alone was left after the flood.

³⁸ Or, if *adhidūrāva* be the true reading, "he hastened to."

³⁹ The *Himavat* or *Himālaya*, according to the Commentator.

up as it were unctuous.⁴⁰ Clarified butter adheres to her steps. Mitra and Varuṇa met her. They said to her, 'Who art thou?' 'Manu's daughter,' (she replied). 'Say (thou art) ours,' (they rejoined). 'No,' she said, 'I am his who begot me.' They desired a share in her. She promised that, or she did not promise that; but passed onward. She came to Manu. 9. Manu said to her, 'Who art thou?' 'Thy daughter,' she replied. 'How, glorious one,' asked Manu, '(art thou) my daughter?' 'Thou hast generated me,' she said, 'from those oblations, butter, thick milk, whey and curds, which thou didst cast into the waters. I am a benediction. Apply me in the sacrifice. If thou wilt employ me in the sacrifice, thou shalt abound in offspring and cattle. Whatever benediction thou wilt ask through me, shall accrue to thee.' He (accordingly) introduced her (as) that (which comes in) the middle of the sacrifice; for that is the middle of the sacrifice which (comes) between the introductory and concluding forms. 10. With her he lived worshipping and toiling in arduous religious rites, desirous of offspring. With her he begot this offspring which is this offspring of Manu.⁴² Whatever benediction he asked with her, was all vouchsafed to him. This is essentially that which is Idā. Whosoever, knowing this, lives with Idā, begets this offspring which Manu begot. Whatever benediction he asks with her, is all vouchsafed to him."

⁴⁰ Such is the rendering of *pibdamānū* given by the Commentator, who is followed by Professors Weber and Müller. Professor Roth in his *Lexicon*, s.v., explains it by "firm," i.e. "the woman arose solid out of the fluid mass."

⁴¹ I should observe that the same verb (*prajājñe*) by which the generative act of Manu is here described, is in other passages of the same Brāhmaṇa (ii. 2, 4, 1; ii. 5, 1, 1; vi. 1, 1, 8; vi. 1, 3, 1; vii. 5, 2, 6; xi. 5, 8, 1) applied in another tense to the god Prajāpati, of whom it is said that he considered how he should beget progeny (*sa aikṣhata 'katham nu prajāyeya*). (Compare xi. 1, 6, 1.) In other parts of the same work, however, it is said that Prajāpati created (*asrijata*) the waters (vi. 1, 1, 9), or creatures (*prajāḥ asrijata*, vii. 4, 3, 5; x. 2, 2, 1); and the fact of the word "beget" being applied to Prajāpati, either in a figurative, or anthropomorphic sense, does not authorize us to suppose that the author of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, in the passage before us (the legend of the deluge), intended to represent Manu as the creator of the human race, and not as their progenitor in the natural sense. (In R.V. ii. 33, 1; i. 70, 3, we find the phrase *prajāyemahi prajābhīḥ | pra prajābhīr jūyate* | "let us beget children," "he begets children.")

⁴² Compare Taitt. Sanhitā, v. 1, 5, 6. "*Śivo bhava prajābhyām*" ity ūha prajābhyā va enam śamayati | "*mānushībhyas tvām angirah*" ity ūha mānavyo hi prajāḥ | He says, 'be auspicious to the twain offspring;' for he pacifies him from (injuring) his offspring. He says, '(We pacify) thee from (injuring) the human offspring, *angirā*.' For creatures are descended from Manu."

From this interesting legend we learn that, according to its author's belief, Manu was not the creator of mankind, as some later accounts considered him to have been, but himself belonged to an earlier race of living beings, which was entirely destroyed by the deluge which is described. The legend regards him as a representative of his generation, who, for some reason, perhaps his superior wisdom, or sanctity, or position, was selected out of the crowd of ordinary mortals to be rescued from the impending destruction. That he was regarded as a mere man, and not as a being of a superior order, is shown by the fact of his requiring the aid of a higher power to preserve him. A supernatural fish, apparently some divine person, conceived as taking the form of a creature which would be perfectly secure and at home in the midst of the raging waters, undertook to deliver him, and guided the ship on which he was directed to embark, through all dangers to its destined haven. No one but Manu took refuge in the ship, for he alone, the story expressly records, was preserved, while all the other living beings were overwhelmed. Finding himself the sole survivor when the waters subsided, he became desirous of progeny; and with intense devotion performed certain religious rites in the hope of realizing his wish through their efficacy. As a result of his oblations, a woman arose from the waters into which they had been cast. A male and a female now existed, the destined parents of a new race of men who sprang from their union,—a union the fruitfulness of which was assured by their assiduous practice of sacred ceremonies. From Manu and Idā, we are expressly told, the race known as that of Manu, *i.e.* the race of men, was produced. The legend says nothing whatever of this race being originally characterized by any distinction of castes, or about four sons, the ancestors of Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vais̥yas, and Sūdras being born to Manu and Idā. We must therefore suppose that the author of the legend intends to represent the early race of mankind, or at least the first inhabitants of Bharata-varsha, as descended from one common progenitor without any original varieties of caste, however different the professions and social position of their descendants afterwards became. We are consequently entitled to regard this legend of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa as at variance with the common fable regarding the separate origin of the Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vais̥yas, and Sūdras.

The following are some other passages in which Manu and Idā are both referred to :

Taitt. S. ii. 6, 7, 1. *Manuḥ prithivyāḥ yajniyam aichhat | sa ghṛitam nishiktam arindat | so 'bravīt "ko 'sya īśvaro yajne 'pi karttor" iti | tāv abrūtām Mitrā-Varuṇau "gor eva āvām īśvarau karttoḥ svah" iti | tau tato gām samairayatām | sū yatra yatra nyakrāmat tato ghṛitam apīḍyata | tasmād ghṛitapadī uchyate | tad asyai janma | . . . 3. Idūm upahrayate | paśavo vai Idā | paśūn eva upahrayate | chatur upahrayate | chatushpādo hi paśarāḥ | "Mānavī" ity āha | Manur hy etām agre 'paśyat | "ghṛitapadī" ity āha | yad eva asyai padād ghṛitam apīḍyata tasmād eram āha | "Maitrāvaruṇī" ity āha | Mitrāvaruṇau hy enām samairayatām |*

"Manu sought whatever upon earth was fit for sacrifice. He found butter poured out. He said, 'Who has power to employ this in sacrifice also?' Mitra and Varuṇa replied, 'We two have power to employ the cow.' They then sent forth the cow. Wherever she went forth, butter was pressed out. Hence she is called the 'butter-footed.' This is her birth . . . 3. He calls upon Idā. Animals are Idā. He calls upon animals. He calls upon them four times. For animals are four-footed. He says 'Mānavī.' For Manu first saw her. He says 'Butter-footed.' He says so, because butter was pressed from her foot. He says 'Maitrāvaruṇī.' For Mitra and Varuṇa sent her forth." (Comp. Taitt. Br. iii. 7, 5, 6.)

Taitt. Br. i. 1, 4, 4. *Idā vai Mānavī yajnānukāśiny⁴⁵ āsīt | sū 'śrinod "Asurā agnim adadhate" iti . . . | 6. Sū 'bravīt Idā Manum "tathā vai aham tava agnim ādhāsyāmi yathā pra prajāyā paśubhir mīlhunair janishyase praty asmin loke sthāsyasi abhi svargaṁ lokaṁ jeshyasi" iti | gārhapatyam agre ādadhāt | . . . gārhapatyena eva asmai prajāṁ paśūn prajānayat |*

"Idā, the daughter of Manu, was a revealer of sacrifice. She heard, 'the Asuras are placing fire.' . . . 6. Idā said to Manu, 'I shall so place thy fire that thou shalt increase in offspring, cattle, and twins; thou shalt be firmly established in this world, and shalt conquer the heavenly world.'⁴⁶ She first placed the gārhapatya fire. It was

⁴⁵ *Yajna-tattva-prakāśana-samāsthā.*—Comm.

⁴⁶ Compare the Kāthaka Br. viii. 4, quoted in Weber's Indische Studien, iii. 463, where Idā is said to have promised to Manu: *tathā te Agnim ādhāsyāmi yathā ma-*

through the gārhapatya that she produced for him offspring and cattle." *cr. 1/2 25 9*

Taitt. S. i. 7. 1, 3. *Sarvena vai yajñena devāḥ suvargaṁ lokam āyan | pākayajñena Manur āsrāmyat | sū Idā Manum upāvarttata | tām devāsurāḥ vyahvayanta pratīchīm devūḥ parāchīm Asurāḥ | sū devān upāvarttata |*

"The gods arrived at the heavenly world by the whole sacrifice. Manu worshipped with the *pākayajña*. That Idā came to Manu. The gods and asuras called her away in different directions, the gods in front, the asuras behind. She came to the gods."

The following texts refer to Manu alone, as a celebrator of religious ceremonies :

Taitt. S. ii. 5, 9, 1. "*Agne mahān asi*" ity āha | *mahān hy esha yad Agniḥ* | "*brāhmaṇa*" ity āha | *brāhmaṇo hy esha* | "*bhārata*" ity āha | *esha hi derebhyo haryam bharati* | "*deveddha*" ity āha | *devāḥ hy etam aindhata* | "*Manviddha*" ity āha | *Manur hy etam uttaro derebhyah aindha* |

"He says, 'Agni, thou art great.' For this Agni is great. He says, 'o Brāhman.' For he is a Brāhmam. He says, 'o Bhārata.' For he bears the oblation to the gods. He says, 'kindled by the gods.' For the gods kindled him. He says, 'kindled by Manu.' For Manu kindled him after the gods."

Taitt. S. vi. 2, 5, 2 f. *Trivratō vai Manur asīd dvivratā asurā ekavratā devūḥ | prātar madhyandine sāyam tud Manor vratam āsīt pākayajñasya rūpam pushṭyai | prātāścha sāyāncha asurānām nirmadhyam kshūdhō rūpam | tatas te parābharan | madhyandine madhyarātre devānām tatas te 'bharan suvargaṁ lokam āyan |*

"Manu performed three rites; the asuras two, the gods one. Manu's rite was in the morning, at noon, and in the evening, the form of a pākayajña for nourishment. That of the asuras was in the morning and evening, without any midday rite, a form of hunger. Hence they perished. That of the gods was at midday and midnight. Hence they prospered, and arrived at the heavenly world."

Taitt. S. vii. 5, 15, 3. *Etayā* (i.e. *abhijityā*) *vai Indram devāḥ ayājayan | tasmād "Indrasavaḥ" | etayā Manum manushyāḥ | tasmād "Manu-savaḥ" |*

nushyā devān upaprajanishyante | "I will so place Agni for thee, than men shall be born among the gods."

yathā Indro devānām yathā Manur manushyāṇām eva bhavati yaḥ evaṁ vidvān etayā iṣṭyā yajate |

“With this (*abhijiti*) the gods sacrificed for Indra. Hence it is called ‘Indra-sava.’ Men sacrificed with it for Manu. Hence it is called ‘Manu-sava.’ As Indra is among gods, and Manu among men, so he becomes who thus knowing sacrifices with this oblation.”

In Taitt. S. ii. 2, 10, 2, we find nearly the words which Kullūka quotes on Manu’s Institutes, i. 1: *Yad vai kincha Manur avadat tad bhesajam* | “Whatever Manu said was a remedy.”

In Satapatha Br. vi. 6, 1, 19, Manu is called a Prajāpati: “*Prajāpataye Manave siāhā*” *iti* | *Prajāpatir vai Manuḥ* | *sa hi idam sarvam amanuta* | *Prajāpatir vai etad agre karma akarot* | “Svāhā to Manu the lord of creatures. Manu is a lord of creatures (*prajā-pati*) for he thought (*amanuta*) all this. The lord of creatures (*prajā-pati*) formerly did all this work.”

The following story in its different versions also connects Manu with religious observances and represents him as very devout:

S. P. Br. i. 1, 4, 14 ff. *Manor ha vai ṛishabhah ūsa* | *tasmīn asura-ghnī sapatna-ghnī vāk pravṛṣṭā ūsa* | *tasya ha sma śvasathād ravathād asura-rākshasāni mṛidyamānāni yanti* | *te ha asurāḥ samūdīre* “*pāpāni vata no ’yam ṛishabhah sachate katham nva imāni dabhnyūma*” *iti* | “*Kīlātākulī*” *iti* *ha asura-brahmāv ūsatuḥ* | *tau ha ūchatuḥ* “*śraddhā-devo vai Manuḥ* | *āvām nu vedūva*” *iti* | *tau ha āgatya ūchatur* “*Mano yūjayūva tvā*” *iti* | “*kena*” *iti* | “*anena ṛishabhena*” *iti* | “*tathā*” *iti* | *tasya ūlabdhasya sū vāg apachakrāma* | *sū Manor eva jūyām Mūnūvīm praviveśa* | *tasyai ha sma yatra vadantyai śṛiṇvanti tato ha sma eva asura-rākshasāni mṛidyamānāni yanti* | *te ha asurāḥ samūdīre* “*ito vai naḥ pūpīyah sachate bhūyo hi mānushī vāg vaduḥ*” *iti* | *Kīlātākulī ha eva ūchatuḥ* “*śraddhā-devo vai Manur āvām nu eva vedūva*” *iti* | *tau ha āgatya ūchatur* “*Mano yūjayūva tvā*” *iti* | “*kena*” *iti* | “*enayā eva jūyayū*” *iti* | “*tathā*” *iti* | *tasyai ūlabdhāyai sū vāg apachakrāma sū yajnam eva yajna-pātrāni praviveśa* | *tato ha enām na śekutur nirhan-tum* | *sū eṣhū asura-ghnī vāg udvadati* | *sa yasya ha evaṁ viduṣaḥ etām atra vācham pratyudvūdayanti pūpīyūṁso ha eva asya sapatnāḥ bhavanti* |

“Manu had a bull. Into it an Asura-slaying, enemy-slaying voice had entered. In consequence of this (bull’s) snorting and bellowing, Asuras and Rakshasas were continually destroyed. Then the Asuras

said : ' This bull, alas, does us mischief ; how shall we overcome him ? ' Now there were two priests of the Asuras called Kilāta and Akuli. They said : ' Manu is a devout believer : let us make trial of him. ' They went and said to him, ' let us sacrifice for thee. ' ' With what (victim) ? ' he asked. ' With this bull, ' they replied. ' Be it so, ' he answered. When it had been slaughtered, the voice departed out of it, and entered into Manu's wife Manāvī. Wherever they hear her speaking, the Asuras and Rākshasas continue to be destroyed in consequence of her voice. The Asuras said : ' She does us yet more mischief ; for the human voice speaks more. ' Kilāta and Akuli said, ' Manu is a devout believer : let us make trial of him. ' They came and said to him, ' Manu, let us sacrifice for thee. ' ' With what (victim) ? ' he asked. ' With this (thy) wife, ' they replied. ' Be it so, ' he answered. When she had been slaughtered the voice departed out of her and entered into the sacrifice and the sacrificial vessels. Thence they were unable to expel it. This is the Asura-slaying voice which speaks out (when the two stones are struck with the *śamyā*, as a part of the ceremonial). Wretched become the enemies of that man for whom, when he knows this, they cause this voice here to reverberate."

Taitt. Br. iii. 2, 5, 9. *Manoḥ śraddhā-dēvasya yajamānasya asura-ghnī vāg yajnāyudheshu pravishṭā āsit | te 'surāḥ yāvanto yajñāyudhānām uvdadatām upāśrinvaṁs te parābharan |*

"An asura-slaying voice had entered into the sacrificial implements of the devout believer and sacrificer Manu. The Asuras, as many as heard the sacrificial implements sounding, were overcome."

Kāṭhaka Br. ii. 30, 1.⁴⁵ *Manor vai kapālāny āsan | tair yāvato yāvato 'surān abhyupādadhāt te parābharan | atha tarhi Trishṭhā-varātri* ⁴⁶ *āstām asura-brahmau | tū asurāḥ abruvann "imāni śaṭ kapālāni yāche-thām" iti | tau prataritvānā abhiprāpadyetām "Vāyave Agne Vāyave Indra" iti | "kiṁkāmau sthaḥ" ity abravīt | "imāni nau kapālāni dehi" iti | tāny ābhyām adañāt | tāny aranyām parāhṛitya samapiṁśṭām | tad Manor gūvo 'bhivṛyatishṭhanta | tūni ṛishabhaḥ samaleṭ | tasya ruvato yāvanto 'surāḥ upāśrinvaṁs te parābharan |*

⁴⁵ Extracted from Weber's Indische Studien, iii. 461 f. A translation of this, as well as of the next passage, is given by Prof. Weber in the Journal of the German Oriental Society, vol. xviii. 284 ff.

⁴⁶ Roth in his Lexicon s. v. reads :

tau prātaritrānā abhiprāpadyetām “Vāyave Agne Vāyave Indra” iti | “kīmākāmau sthaḥ” ity abravīt | “anena tvā ṛishabhena yājayāra” iti | tat patnīm yajur vadantīm pratyapadyata | tasyāḥ dyām rāg ātishṭhat | tasyūḥ vadantyūḥ yāvanto ’surāḥ upāsṛinraṁs te parābhavan | tasmād naktān strī chandratarān vadati | tau prātaritrānā abhiprāpadyetām “Vāyave Agne Vāyave Indra” iti | “kīmākāmau sthaḥ” ity abravīt | “anayā tvā patnyā yājayara” iti | sū paryagnikṛitā āsīt | atha Indro ’chāyad “Manvam śraddhādevam Trishṭhāravarūtrī asura-brahmau jāyayā vyardhayatam” iti | sa āgachhat | so ’bravīd “ābhyān tvā yājayāni” iti | “na” ity abravīd “na vai aham anayor īse” iti | atithipatir vāra atithēr īse” ity abravīt | tū asmai prāyāśchhat | sa prativēso veditū kurrann āsta | tū aprīśchhatām “ko ’si” iti | “brāhmaṇaḥ” iti | “katamo brāhmaṇaḥ” iti | “kim brāhmaṇasya pītaram kim u pri-chhasi mūtaram | śrutaṁ ched asmin vedyam sa pītū sa pītāmahaḥ” iti | tū arittām “Indro vai” iti | tau prāpatatām | tayor yāḥ prokshaṇīr āpaḥ āsaṁs tābhir anuvīśṛijya śīrśhe āśchhinat | tau ṛishas cha yavāśas cha abhavatām | tasmāt tau varsheshu śushyataḥ | adbhīr hi hatan | tām paryagnikṛitām udāsṛijat | tayā ”rdhnōt | tāḥ imāḥ Mānaryah prajāḥ | yat paryagni-kṛitam pātnīvatam utsrijati yām eva Manur ṛiddhim ārdhnōt tām ṛidhnōti |

“Manu had platters. All the Asuras, against whom he laid out the sacrifice with these were destroyed. Now Trishṭha and Varūtri were at that time the priests of the Asuras. The Asuras said to them, ‘ask for these six platters.’ These two arrived as morning guests, repeating the formula, ‘To Vāyu, o Agni, to Vāyu, o Indra.’ ‘What do you desire?’ asked Manu. ‘Give us these platters,’ they replied. He gave them to them. Taking them they smashed them in the forest. Then Manu’s cattle were standing round. The bull licked the platters. As many Asuras as heard him bellowing were destroyed. The two Asura priests came as morning guests, repeating the formula, ‘To Vāyu, o Agni, to Vāyu, o Indra.’ ‘What do you desire?’ enquired Manu. ‘Let us sacrifice for thee with this bull,’ they answered. He then came to his wife who was uttering a yajush. Her voice reached to the sky. As many Asuras as heard her speaking were destroyed. Hence a woman speaks more pleasantly by night. The two Asura priests arrived as morning guests, repeating the formula, ‘To Vāyu, o Agni, to Vāyu, o Indra.’ ‘What do you desire?’ asked Manu. ‘Let us sacrifice for thee with

this thy wife (as the victim),' they replied. The fire was carried round her. Then Indra perceived, 'Trishṭha and Varūtri, the two Asura priests are depriving the devout believer Manu of his wife.' He came and said (to Manu), 'Let me sacrifice for thee with these two Asura priests (for victims).' 'No,' answered Manu, 'I am not their master.' 'The host is master of the guest,' rejoined Indra. Manu then gave them to him. (Standing) near them he was making an altar. They asked 'Who art thou?' 'A Brāhman,' he replied. 'What (class of) Brāhman,' they enquired. He rejoined (with a verse), 'Why askest thou the father or the mother of a Brāhman? If Vedic tradition is to be discovered in him, that is his father, that his grandfather.' They knew, 'this is Indra.' They fled. He threw after them the water which was there for consecration, and therewith cut off their heads. They became, (the one) a *vrisha*, (the other) a *yavāsha* plant. Hence these (two plants) wither in the rains, because they were killed with water. He released her (Manu's wife) after the fire had been carried round her. By her he prospered. These are the creatures sprung from Manu. Whenever a man releases the victim offered to Agni Pātnīvata, after fire has been carried round it, he prospers with the same prosperity with which Manu prospered."

Compare with this a passage of the Taitt. Sanh. vi. 6, 6, 1. *Indraḥ patniyā Manum ayājayat | tām paryagnikṛitām udasrijat | tayā Manur ūrdhnōt | yat paryagnikṛitam pātnīvatam utsrijati yām eva Manur ūrdhīm ūrdhnōt tām eva yajamāna ūrdhnōti |*

"Indra was sacrificing for Manu with his wife (as the victim). He released her after the fire had been carried round her. By her Manu prospered. Whenever the worshipper releases the victim offered to Agni Pātnīvata after fire has been carried round it, he prospers with the same prosperity with which Manu prospered."

I quote the following passages also from the interest which they possess as relating to a personage so ancient and venerable as Manu is reputed to be:

Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, v. 14. *Nūbhānedishṭhaṁ vai Mānavam brahma-charyyaṁ rasantam bhrātaro nirabhajan | so 'bravīd etya "kim mahyam abhākta" iti | "etam eva nishṭhāvam avavaditūram" ity abruvan | tas-mād ha apy etarhi pītaram putrāḥ "nishṭhāvo 'vavaditā" ity eva ācha-kshate | sa pītaram etya abravīt "tvām ha vāva mahyaṁ tata abhākskur"*

*īti | tam pitā 'bravīd "mā putraka tad ādrithāh | Angiraso vai ime
 svargāya lokāya satram āsate | te shashṭham shashṭham eva ahar āgatya
 muhyanti | tūn ete sūkte shashṭhe 'hani śaṁsaya | teshūn yat sahasraṁ
 satra-pariveshanaṁ tat te svar yanto dūsyanti" iti | "tathā" iti | tūn
 upait "pratigribhṇīta Mūnavam sumedhasaḥ" iti | tam abruvan "kīm-
 kūmo vadasi" iti | "idam eva raḥ shashṭham ahaḥ prajñāpayāni" ity
 abravīd "atha yad vai etat sahasraṁ satra-pariveshanaṁ tad me svar
 yanto datṭa" iti | "tathā" iti | tūn ete sūkte shashṭhe 'hany āśaṁsayat |
 tato vai te pra yajnam ajānan pra svargaṁ lokam | tad yad ete sūkte
 shashṭhe 'hani śaṁsati yajnasya prajñātyai svargasya lokasya anukhyāt-
 yai | tam svar yanto 'bruvann "etat te brāhmaṇa sahasram" iti | tad
 enaṁ samākurvānam puruṣaḥ kṛṣṇaśa-rāsy uttarataḥ upoṭthāya abravīd
 "mama vai idam mama vai vāstuham" iti | so 'bravīd "mahyaṁ vai
 idam adur" iti | tam abravīt "tad vai nau tara eva pitari praśnaḥ" iti |
 sa pitaram ait | tam pitā 'bravīd "nanu te putraka adur" iti | "adur
 eva me" ity abravīt "tat tu me puruṣaḥ kṛṣṇaśa-rāsy uttarataḥ upo-
 datishṭhat 'mama vai idaṁ mama vai vāstuham' iti ādita" iti | tam pitā
 'bravīt "tasya eva putraka | tat tubhyaṁ sa dūsyati" iti | sa punar etya
 abravīt "tara ha vāra kila bhagaraḥ idam iti me pitā āha" iti | so
 'bravīt "tad aham tubhyam eva dadāmi yaḥ eva satyam avādīr" iti |
 tasmād evaṁ viduṣhā satyam eva vaditāryam | sa eṣa sahasra-saṁir man-
 tro yad nābhānedishṭham | upa enaṁ sahasraṁ namati pra shashṭhena
 ahnā svargaṁ lokam jñāti yaḥ evaṁ veda | 47*

"The brothers of Nābhānedishṭha disinherited him whilst he was living in the state of a Brahmachārin. Coming (to them) he said: 'What share have you given to me?' They replied, '(we have given thee) this judge and divider (as thy share).' In consequence sons even now speak of their father as the 'judge and divider.' He came to his father and said, 'Father, they have given thee to me as my share.' His father answered, 'Do not, my son, care about that. These Angirases are performing a sacrifice in order to (secure) the heavenly world; but as often as they come to the sixth day (of the ceremony) they become perplexed. Make them recite these two hymns (R.V. x. 61 and 62) on the sixth day; and when they are going to heaven, they will give

47 This passage has been already translated into German by Prof. R. Roth, *Journal of the German Oriental Society*, vi. 244, and into English by Prof. Max Müller in his *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 423 f., and by Dr. M. Haug in his *Ait. Br.* vol. ii. p. 341 f.

thee that provision of a thousand⁴⁸ which has been made for the sacrifice.' He said, 'So be it.' He approached them, saying, 'Receive me, the son of Manu, ye sages.' They replied, 'With what object dost thou speak?' He said, 'Let me make known to you this sixth day; and then you shall give me this sacrificial provision of a thousand, when ye are going to heaven.' 'Let it be so,' they answered. He made them repeat these two hymns on the sixth day. They then knew the sacrifice, and the heavenly world. Hence when any one repeats these two hymns on the sixth day, it is with a view to a knowledge of the sacrifice, and to the revelation of the heavenly world. When they were going to the heavenly world, they said to him, 'This thousand, o Brāhman,⁴⁹ is thine.' As he was collecting (the thousand) a man in dark clothing rose up before him from the north, and said, 'This is mine; what remains on the spot is mine.' Nābhānedishṭha replied: 'But they have given it to me.' (The man) rejoined: 'It belongs to (one of) us; let thy father be asked.' He went to his father, who enquired: 'Have they not given thee (the thousand), my son?' 'They did give it to me,' he replied, 'but a man in dark clothes rose up before me from the north, and took it from me, saying, 'This is mine; what remains on the spot is mine.' His father said: 'It is his; but he will give it to thee.' He returned, and said (to the man): 'This is thine, reverend sir, so my father says.' (The man) replied: 'I will give it to thee, who hast spoken the truth.' Wherefore one who has this knowledge should speak only truth. That is a hymn which bestows a thousand, that Nābhānedishṭha hymn. A thousand falls to his lot, he knows the heavenly world on the sixth day—the man who knows this."

Taittirīya Sanhitā, iii. 1, 9, 4. *Manuḥ putrebhyo dāyaṁ vyabhajat | sa Nābhānedishṭham brahmacharyāṁ vasantāṁ nirabhajat | sa āgachhat | so 'bravīt "kathā mā nirabhāg" iti | "na tvā nirabhāksham" ity abravīt "Angirasah ime satram āsate te suvargam lokam na prajñanti | tebhyah idam brāhmaṇam brūhi | te suvargam lokam yanto ye eśhām paśavas tūns te dāsyanti" iti | tad ebhyo 'bravīt | te suvargam*

⁴⁸ See R.V. x. 62, 7.

⁴⁹ The application of this title to Nābhānedishṭha is to be remarked, as his father Manu is recorded in the Puranic legends as ancestor of the solar race of kings. See the passage from the M. Bh. i. 3135 ff., quoted above, p. 126.

*lokam yanto ye eshām paśaraḥ ūsaṁśe tām asmai adaduh | tam p
charantam yajna-vāstau Rudraḥ āgachhat | so 'bravīt "mama vai ime
paśaraḥ" iti | "adur vai mahyam imān" ity abravīt | "na vai tasya te
śate" ity abravīt | "yad yajnavāstau hīyate mama vai tad" iti | tas-
mūd yājnavāstau na abhyacetyam | so 'bravīt | "yajne māñbhaja atha te
paśūn na abhimañsyē" iti | tasmai etam manthināḥ sañsṛāvam ajuhot |
tato vai tasya Rudro paśūn na abhyamanyata | yatra etam eva vidvān
manthināḥ sañsṛāvam juhōti na tatra Rudraḥ paśūn abhimanyate |*

"Manu divided his property among his sons. He disinherited his son Nābhānedishṭha who was living as a Brahmachārin. He came and said, 'How hast thou disinherited me?' 'I have not disinherited thee,' replied (his father); 'these Angirases are celebrating a sacrifice; they do not know the heavenly world; declare to them this Brāhmaṇa; and when they are going to heaven, they will give thee the cattle they have.' He declared the Brāhmaṇa to them, and when they were going to heaven they gave him the cattle they had. Rudra came to him as he was on the place of sacrifice employed with the cattle and said: 'These are my cattle.' 'But,' replied Nābhānedishṭha, 'they have given them to me.' 'They have not power to do so; that which is left on the place of sacrifice is mine,' answered Rudra. Hence the place of sacrifice must not be approached. (Rudra further) said: 'Give me a share in the sacrifice, and I shall not injure thy cattle.' He offered him this libation of soma and flour. Then Rudra did not injure his cattle. Whenever any one knows this libation of soma and flour and offers it up, Rudra does not injure his cattle."⁵⁰

A passage, quoted above, p. 26 f., from the Taittirīya Sanhitā, vi. 5,

⁵⁰ The reader who knows German, and wishes to see an able discussion of the question, whether the legend of Nābhānedishṭha, as given in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, has any real connection with the two hymns of the Rig-veda (x. 61 and 62) which are referred to in it, and whether it contains any reminiscence, or symbolical representation, of ancient historical events, may consult Prof. Roth's paper on the subject, in the 6th vol. of the Journal of the German Oriental Society, pp. 243 ff. The learned writer settles both questions in the negative, maintaining that the legend is manufactured out of certain misinterpreted allusions in the hymns, with the view of asserting the superiority of priestly knowledge to earthly power and worldly wealth, and that there never existed either a Nābhānedishṭha or a Manu. The object which I have in view in the collection of these texts does not require that I should express any opinion on these points. I only seek to ascertain what were the traditions received by the most ancient Indian writers themselves regarding the origin of their race, and not what was the historical value of those traditions.

6, 1 ff., may perhaps also be considered as affirming the descent of men from Manu when it declares them to be the offspring of Vivasvat; since the latter is regarded as the father of Manu.

In the Chhândogya Upanishad, iii. 11, 4 (p. 178 of Bibliotheca Indica, vol. iii.) the following reference to Manu occurs:

Tad ha etad Brahmā Prajāpataye Prajāpatir Manave Manuḥ prajābhyaḥ | tad ha etad Uddālakūya Ārunaye putrāya jyeshthāya pitā brahma provācha |

“This (doctrine) Brahmā declared to Prajāpati, Prajāpati to Manu, Manu to (his) offspring. This sacred truth was declared to his eldest son Uddālaka Aruṇi by his father.”

The first half of this passage is repeated in viii. 15, 1, of the same work (p. 625).

In his commentary on the former of the two passages, Śankara Āchāryya gives this explanation:

Brahmā Hiranyagarbho Virāje Prajāpataye uvācha | so 'pi Manave | Manur Ikshvāku-ūtibhyaḥ prajābhyaḥ provācha |

“Brahmā Hiranyagarbha declared it to the Prajāpati Virāj; he to Manu; and Manu declared it to his descendants Ikshvāku and the rest.”

In his note on the second passage, viii. 15, 1, he varies somewhat in his explanation of the personages by whom the doctrine was transmitted:

Brahmā Hiranyagarbhaḥ Paramēśvaro vā tad-dvāreṇa Prajāpataye Kaśyapāya uvācha | asāv api Manave sva-putrāya | Manuḥ prajābhyaḥ |

“Brahmā Hiranyagarbha, or the supreme Lord (Paramēśvara) through his instrumentality, declared it to the Prajāpati Kaśyapa; he to his son Manu; Manu to his descendants.”

In these two passages of the Chhândogya Upanishad Brahmā is distinguished from Prajāpati, and Prajāpati from Manu, who again is said to have handed down the doctrine, not to any one person in particular, but “to the offspring,” or “descendants” (*prajābhyaḥ*), apparently his own descendants. This Upanishad therefore seems to coincide in the doctrine of the hymns, and of the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, that Manu was the progenitor of mankind. The Commentator, it will have been noticed, in one place declares that Prajāpati is identifiable with Virāj, and again that Kaśyapa is to be understood under that appellation. Virāj and Kaśyapa are not, however, generally regarded as the same.

Nor is Kaśyapa commonly considered to be Manu's father. In the passages from the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, and Mahābhārata, quoted above, pp. 115 and 126, Kaśyapa is said to be the father of Vivasvat, and he again of Manu.

However this may be, as Manu is said to have handed down the sacred tradition to his descendants, we must suppose that those descendants included the whole of the progenitors of the Aryan Indians who were worthy of being made the depositaries of such a tradition; and must therefore conclude that the Chhândogya Upanishad agrees with the passage quoted above, p. 126, from the Mahābhārata, in recognizing Manu as the progenitor of the Brāhmins, as well as the other castes.

SECT. III.—*Extracts from the Mahābhārata regarding Manu.*

I have already adduced in the preceding chapter, page 126, an important passage of the Mahābhārata, Ādiparvan verses 3128 ff., in which Manu Vaivasvata is expressly declared to have been the progenitor of mankind including the four castes. A legend of the deluge, corresponding to the one which has been adduced from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, in the last section, is also to be found in the Vana-parvan of the Mahābhārata, and although it does not represent Manu as the parent from whom the human race was reproduced, but as the creator by whom the world was renewed, after the flood, I shall extract the entire text. Its style of narration is tedious, when compared with the quaint brevity of the Brāhmaṇa; but I shall condense it as much as possible in the translation. It begins thus, verse 12747 :

*Mārkaṇḍeya uvācha | Vivasvataḥ suto rājan maharshiḥ supratūpavān |
bābhūta nara-sūrdūla Prajāpati-sama-dyutiḥ | ojasū tejasū lakshmyā
tapasū cha viśeshataḥ | atichakrāma pīṭaram Manuḥ svaṁ cha pītāmahaṁ |
ūrdhva-bāhur viśālāyām Badaryām sa narādhipaḥ | eka-pāda-sthitas
tīvram chachāra sumahat tapaḥ | 12750. Avāk-śirās tathā chāpi netrair
animishair dṛiḍham | so 'tapyata tapo ghorāṁ varshānām ayutaṁ tadā |
taṁ kadāchit tapasyantam ādrachīraṁ jaṭā-dharam | Chirīṇī-tīraṁ
āgamy matsyo vachanam abravīt | " bhagavan kshudra-matsyo 'sni bala-
vadbhyo bhayam mama | matsyebhyo hi tato mām tvam trātum arhasi su-
vrata | durbalam balavanto hi matsyam matsyā viśeshataḥ | āsvadanti sudā
vṛttir vihitā naḥ sanātānī | tasmād bhayaughād mahato majjantam mām
viśeshataḥ | trātum arhasi karttāsmi kṛite pratikṛitāṁ tava " | 12755.*

*Sa matsya-vachanaṁ śrutvā kṛipayā 'bhipariplutaḥ | Manur Vaivasvato
 'grihnāt tam matsyaṁ pāninā svayam | udakāntam upānīya matsyaṁ
 Vaivasvato Manuḥ | alinjire prākshipat tam chandrāmśu-sadṛīṣa-
 prabhe | sa tatra varṇidhe rājan matsyaḥ parama-satkṛitaḥ | pu-
 travat svīkarot tasmai Manur bhūvam viśeshataḥ | atha kālena mahatā
 sa matsyaḥ sumahān abhūt | alinjire yathā chaira nāsau samabhavat
 kila | atha matsyo Manuḥ dṛishṭvā punar evābhyabhāshata | "bha-
 gavan sādhu me 'dyānyat sthānaṁ sampratipādaya" | 12760. Uddhṛi-
 tyālinjirāt tasmāt tataḥ sa bhagavān Manuḥ | tam matsyam anayaś
 vāpīm mahatīm sa Manus tadā | tatra tam prākshipach chāpi Manuḥ
 para-puranjaya | athāvardhata matsyaḥ sa punar varsha-gaṇān ba-
 hūn | dvī-yojanāyatā vāpī vistrīṭā chāpi yojanam | tasyām nāsau sama-
 bhavat matsyo rājiva-lochanah | vicheshṭitum cha Kaunteya matsyo vā-
 pyām viśāmpatē | Manuḥ matsyas tato dṛishṭvā punar evābhyabhāshata |
 "naya mām bhagavan sādho samudra-mahishīm priyām | Gangām tatra
 niratsyāmi yathā vā tāta mānyase | 12765. Nideśe hi mayā tubhyaṁ
 sthātavyam anasūyatā | vṛiddhir hi paramā prāptā tat-kṛite hi mayā
 'nagha" | evam ukto Manur matsyam anayaś bhagavān vaśi | nadīm
 Gangām tatra chainam svayam prākshipad achyutaḥ | sa tatra varṇidhe
 matsyaḥ kanchit kālam arindama | tataḥ punar Manuḥ dṛishṭvā mat-
 syo vachanam abravīt | "Gangāyām na hi śaknōmi bṛihatvāch cheshṭitum
 prabho | samudraṁ naya mām āśu prasīda bhagavān" iti | uddhṛitya
 Gangā-salīlāt tato matsyam Manuḥ svayam | samudram anayat pārtha
 tatra chainam avāsrijat | 12770. Sumahān api matsyas tu sa Manuḥ
 nayatas tadā | āśid yatheshṭa-hāryyaścha sparśa-gandha-sukhaścha vai |
 yadā samudro prakshipat sa matsyo Manuḥ tadā | tata enam idaṁ
 vākyaṁ smayamāna ivābravīt | "bhagavan hi kṛitā rakṣā trayā sarvā
 viśeshataḥ | prāpta-kālaṁ tu yat kṛyāṁ trayā tach chhṛīyatām
 mama | aśirād bhagavan bhaumam idaṁ sthāvara-jangamam | sarvam
 eva mahābhāga pralayaṁ vai gamishyati | samprakṣhālana-kālo 'yaṁ
 lokānām samupasthitaḥ | tasmāt tūm bodhayāmy adya yat te hitam
 anuttamam | trasānām sthāvarāṇām cha yach chengam yach cha nen-
 goti | tasya savyasya samprāptaḥ kālāḥ parama-dārunāḥ | nauś cha
 kūrayitavyā te dṛiḍhā yukta-vaṭārakā | tatra saptarshibhiḥ sārddham
 āruhetā mahāmune | vijāni chaira sarvāṇi yathoktāni dvijaiḥ purā |
 tasyām ūrohayer nāvi susanguptāni bhūgaśaḥ | nau-sthaś cha mām
 pratikṣethās tato muni-juna-priya | āgamishyāmy ahaṁ śṛingi vijne-*

yas tena tāpasa | evam etat tvayā kuryam āprishṭo 'si vrajāmy aham |
tā na śakyā mahatyō vai āpas tarttum mayā vinā | 12780. Nābhi-
śankyam idaṁ chāpi vachanam me tvayā vibho" | "evaṁ karishye"
iti taṁ sa matsyam pratyabhāshata | jagmatus cha yathākūmam anu-
jñāpya parasparam | tato Manur mahārūja yathoktam matsyakena ha |
vijāny ādāya sarvāṇi sāgaram pupluve tadā | naukayā śubhayā vīra
mahormiṇam arindama | chintayāmāsa cha Manus tam matsyam pri-
thirīpate | sa cha tach-chintitaṁ jñātvā mutsyaḥ parapuranjaya | śringī
tatrājagāmāsu tadā Bharata-sattama | taṁ dṛishṭvā manuja-vyūghra
Manur matsyaṁ jalārṇave | 12785. Śringinaṁ taṁ yathoktena rūpeṇā-
drim ivochhritam | vaṭarakamayam pūsam atha matsyasya mūrdhani |
Manur manuja-śārdūla tasmin śringe nyavesayat | saṁyatas tena pūṣena
matsyaḥ para-puranjaya | vegena mahatā nūvam prākarsaḥ lavaṇām-
bhasi | sa cha tāṁs tūrayan nūvā samudram manujesvara | nṛityamānam
ivormibhir garjamānam ivāmbhasā | kshobhyamānā mahāvataiḥ sū naus
tasmin mahodadhau | ghūrṇate chapaleva strī mattā para-puranjaya |
naiva bhūmir na cha diśaḥ pradiśo vā chakāśire | 12790. Sarvam ām-
bhasam evāsīt khaṁ dyauś cha narapungava | evambhūte tadā loka sankule
Bharatarshabha | adṛiṣyanta saptarshayaḥ Manur matsyas tathaiṣa cha |
evam bahūn varsha-gaṇūn tāṁ nūvam so 'tha matsyakaḥ | chakarshātandrito
rājaṇ tasmin salila-sanchaye | tato Himavataḥ śringaṁ yat param Bharatar-
shabha | tatrākarsat tato nūvaṁ sa matsyaḥ Kurunandana | athābravīt
tadā matsyas tūn ṛishīn pralasan śanaiḥ | "asmin Himavataḥ śringe nūvaṁ
baddhīta m'chiram" | sū baddhā tatra tais tūṇam ṛishibhir Bharatarsha-
bha | 12795. Naur matsyasya vachaḥ śrūtvā śringe Himavatas tadā | tach
cha Naubandhanaṁ nūma śringam Himavataḥ param | khyātam adyāpi
Kaunteya tad viddhi Bharatarshabha | athābravīt anismishas tūn ṛishīn
sa hitas tadā | "aham Prajāpatir Brahmā yat-param nūdhigamyate |
matsya-rūpeṇa yūyaṁ cha mayā 'smād mokshitā bhayāt | Manunā cha
prajāḥ sarvāḥ sa-devāsura-mūnushāḥ | sraśṭaryāḥ sarva-lokāś cha yach
chengaṁ yach cha nengati | tapasā chāpi tivreṇa pratibhā 'sya bhavish-
yati | mat-prasūdat prajā-sarge na cha mohaṁ gamishyati" | 12800. Ity
uktvā vachanam matsyaḥ kṣaṇenūdarsanaṁ gataḥ | sraśṭu-kūmaḥ prajāś
chāpi Manur Vaitasvataḥ svayam | pramūḍho 'bhūt prajā-sarge tapas tepe
mahat tataḥ | tapasā mahatā yuktaḥ so 'tha sraśṭum prachakrame | sar-
vāḥ prajā Manuḥ sākṣhād yathāvad Bharatarshabha | ity etad mātṣyakam
nūma purāṇam parikīrtitām |

"12747. Mārkaṇḍeya said: There was a great rishi Manu, son of Vivasvat, majestic, in lustre equal to Prajāpati. In energy, fiery vigour, prosperity, and austere fervour he surpassed both his father and his grandfather. Standing with uplifted arm, on one foot, on the spacious Badari, he practised intense austere fervour. 12750. This direful exercise he performed, with his head downwards,⁵¹ and with unwinking eyes, for 10,000 years. Once, when, clad in dripping rags, with matted hair, he was so engaged, a fish came to him on the banks of the Chīriṇī, and spake: 'Lord, I am a small fish; I dread the stronger ones, and from them you must save me. For the stronger fish devour the weaker; this has been immemorially ordained as our means of subsistence. Deliver me from this flood of apprehension in which I am sinking, and I will requite the deed.' 12755. Hearing this, Manu, filled with compassion, took the fish in his hand, and bringing him to the water threw him into a jar bright as a moon-beam. In it the fish, being excellently tended, grew; for Manu treated him like a son. After a long time he became very large, and could not be contained in the jar. Then, seeing Manu, he said again: 'In order that I may thrive, remove me elsewhere.' 12760. Manu then took him out of the jar, brought him to a large pond, and threw him in. There he continued to grow for very many years. Although the pond was two *yojanas* long, and one *yojana* broad, the lotus-eyed fish found in it no room to move; and again said to Manu: 'Take me to Gangā, the dear queen of the ocean-monarch; in her I shall dwell; or do as thou thinkest best, (12765) for I must contentedly submit to thy authority, as through thee I have exceedingly increased.' Manu accordingly took the fish and threw him into the river Gangā. There he waxed for some time, when he again said to Manu: 'From my great bulk I cannot move in the Gangā; be gracious and remove me quickly to the ocean.' Manu took him out of the Gangā; and cast him into the sea. 12770. Although so huge, the fish was easily borne, and pleasant to touch and smell, as Manu carried him. When he had been thrown into the ocean he said to Manu: 'Great lord, thou hast in every way preserved me: now hear from me what thou must do when the

⁵¹ He could not have stood on one foot and with his head downwards (if this means standing on his head) at one and the same time. The text may mean that these attitudes were successively adopted

time arrives. Soon shall all these terrestrial objects, both fixed and moving, be dissolved. The time for the purification of the worlds has now arrived. I therefore inform thee what is for thy greatest good. 12775. The period dreadful for the universe, moving and fixed, has come. Make for thyself a strong ship, with a cable attached; embark in it with the seven rishis, and stow in it, carefully preserved and assorted, all the seeds which have been described of old by Brāhmans.⁵³ When embarked in the ship, look out for me: I shall come recognizable by my horn. So shalt thou do; I greet thee and depart. These great waters cannot be crossed over without me. 12780. Distrust not my word.' Manu replied, 'I shall do as thou hast said.' After taking mutual leave they departed each on his own way. Manu then, as enjoined, taking with him the seeds, floated on the billowy ocean in the beautiful ship. He then thought on the fish, which, knowing his desire, arrived with all speed, distinguished by a horn. When Manu saw the horned leviathan, lofty as a mountain, he fastened the ship's cable to the horn. Being thus attached, the fish dragged the ship with great rapidity, transporting it across the briny ocean which seemed to dance with its waves and thunder with its waters. Tossed by the tempests, the ship whirled like a reeling and intoxicated woman. Neither the earth, nor the quarters of the world appeared; (12790) there was nothing but water, air, and sky. In the world thus confounded, the seven rishis, Manu, and the fish were beheld. So, for very many years, the fish, unwearied, drew the ship over the waters; and brought it at length to the highest peak of Himavat. He then, smiling gently, said to the rishis, 'Bind the ship without delay to this peak.' They did so accordingly. 12795. And that highest peak of Himavat is still known by the name of Naubandhana ('the Binding of the Ship'). The friendly fish (or god, *animisha*) then said to the rishis, 'I am the Prajāpati Brahmā, than whom nothing higher can be reached. In the form of a fish I have delivered you from this great danger. Manu shall create all living beings, gods, asuras, MEN, with all worlds, and all things moving and fixed. By my favour and through severe austere fervour, he shall attain perfect insight into his creative work, and shall not be

⁵³ The S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa is silent as to these seeds, as well as to the seven rishis; but it is possible that the reference here made to them may have been borrowed from some other ancient source.

come bewildered.' 12800. Having thus spoken, the fish in an instant disappeared. Manu, desirous to call creatures into existence and bewildered in his work, performed a great act of austere fervour; and then began visibly to create all living beings. This which I have narrated is known as the Mātsyaka Purāṇa (or 'Legend of the Fish')."

It will be observed that towards the close of this narrative it is stated that Manu (not Brahmā himself) was the creator of Men, as well of gods and asuras; and that no reference is made to the formation of separate castes.

The commentators seem disinclined to take this legend in its literal sense. We shall see below what reason the scholiast on the Bhāgavata Purāṇa assigns for this procedure. The following are some of the remarks of the Commentator Nilakanṭha on the above passage of the Mahābhārata :

"*Manoḥ*" *manute ity abhimānātmako 'hankāro Manuḥ | viśeṣeṇa vāste ūcchādayati chit-prakāśam iti vireka-jñānam tad-vān vivasvān māyāvi īśvaraḥ "māyinaṁ tu mahēśvaram" iti śruteḥ | tasya Vairasvatasya charitam sancharaṇam | "avidyā-nāśe saty āvidyako 'hankāraḥ kathaṁ sancharati | nahi tantu-dāhe paṭas tishṭhati" ity ākshepaḥ | . . . atra para-brahmaṇa eva rūpāntaram matsyākhyo jīvaḥ | so 'hankāreṇa Manunā uttarottara-śreṣṭheṣhu alinjirādi-rūpeṣhu sthūla-deheṣhu tapo-balād nipātyate | sa cha samudrākhye vairāje dehe nipātitaś cha kalpānte avidyā-nāśa-rūpe saty api dūdha- (dagdha?) -paṭa-nyāyena anuvarttamānam ahankāraṁ saptarshi-sanjnakaiḥ prānūtibhiḥ vija-sanjanaiḥ prārabdha-karmabhiḥ cha sahitaṁ charama-deha-nāry ārūḍham vāsanā-varatrayā jīva-matsyena pralaya-kāle 'py ūhyamānam meru-śṛiṅga same 'chale bhavato (Himavad-?) rūpe sadvāsanayā labdhāspadam vilīnam anulakṣhya jīva-matsyo 'darśanam prāptaḥ | atī-vilīne hy ahankāre jīvatvam naśyati | sa punar nirasta-jīva-bhāvo 'hankāro brahma-rūpatām ūpanno yathā pūrvaṁ vāsanayā jagat sṛijati | naśṭe 'py avidyākhye kāraṇe saṁsāra-bhūta-lakṣhaṇaṁ kāryaṁ chakra-bhramam ita kanchit kālam anuvarttate ity adhyāya-tātparyam | akṣarārthas tv ityādi |*

"'Manu,' that which imagines, denotes the consciousness of self (ahankāra), consisting in the idea that objects refer to one's self (abhimāna).⁵³ 'Vivasvat' is he who possesses the discriminating knowledge that (such and such a thing) obscures the light of the mind, i.e.

⁵³ See Colebrooke's Misc. Essays, vol. i. 212.

he is the Illuder, *Īśvara*, for the Veda⁵⁴ speaks of 'Maheśvara the Illuder.' It is the 'history,' the action, of this son of Vivasvat, that is related. It is objected, 'how can Ahankāra, which arises from ignorance, operate when ignorance is destroyed?' for when the threads are burnt the cloth no longer remains' . . . Here the embodied soul, called in this passage a 'Fish,' is only another form of the supreme Brahma. This 'Fish' is thrown by 'Manu,' who is Ahankāra, through the power of austere fervour, into gross bodies, here represented by 'a jar,' 'a pond,' etc., which gradually rise in excellence. Being at last cast into the body of Virāj, called 'the ocean,' although 'the close of the Kalpa' means the destruction of ignorance, still the embodied soul denoted by the 'Fish,' contemplating Ahankāra still remaining like the ashes of burnt cloth, then entering, along with the breath and other vital airs named 'the seven rishis,' and the works of a former birth designated as 'seeds,' into the ship which signifies its last body, and then borne along even in the period of dissolution by the embodied soul itself symbolized as a 'Fish,' by means of the 'rope' of the remaining consciousness of past perceptions (*vāsanā*), obtaining at length through a consciousness of former perceptions, which were pure (*sadvāsanā*), a resting-place on a mountain like the peak of Meru, represented by the Himavat (?), and finally dissolved;—the embodied soul under the figure of a 'Fish' having contemplated all this,—vanishes. For when Ahankāra has become entirely dissolved, the state of the embodied soul ceases. Then Ahankāra, after the state of the embodied soul has been dispelled, obtains the condition of Brahma; but by its consciousness of past perceptions creates the world as before. Even when the cause called ignorance has been destroyed, the effect in the shape of the semblance of the world continues for some time, like the revolution of a wheel. Such is signification of the section."

According to this allegorical interpretation "Vivasvat," father of Manu, represents *Īśvara*, the Illuder. "Manu" is Ahankāra, or self-consciousness. The "Fish" is the embodied soul, which fancies itself to be, but is not, distinct from the Supreme spirit. Ahankāra, denoted by 'Manu,' places the embodied soul, symbolized by the "Fish," in a variety of bodies gradually increasing in excellence, which are signified

⁵⁴ The words are taken from one of the Upanishads, to which, at the time of correcting this sheet, I am unable to give the necessary reference.

by the "jar," "pond," "Gangā," and "ocean." Although the end of the Kalpa means the removal of ignorance, still Ahankāra continues for a time; and along with the "seven rishis," who stand for the vital airs, and the "seeds," which are former works, embarks on the "ship," which is its last body, and is drawn over the ocean by the embodied soul by means of a "rope," which signifies the consciousness of former perceptions. Ahankāra at length finds a resting-place, denoted by Mount Himavat; and when it has been destroyed, the embodied soul vanishes. Ahankāra, however, passes into the form of Brahma, and, through the operation of the cause explained by the Commentator, creates the world anew.

It is scarcely necessary to remark that the narrator of the legend himself appears to have had no idea of making it the vehicle of any Vedantic allegory such as is here propounded.

The following is another version of the same legend from the Matsya Purāṇa :

i. 12.⁵⁵ *Purā rājū Manur nāma chīrṇavān vipulaṁ tapaḥ | putre rājyaṁ samūropya kshamāvān Ravi-nandanah |* 13. *Malayasyaika-dēse tu sarvātmāguṇa-saṁyutaḥ | sama-duḥkha-sukho vīrah prāptavān yogam uttamam |* 14. *Vachanaṁ⁵⁶ varadaś chāsya varshāyuta-śate gate | "varam vṛṇīṣhva" provācha prītātmā Kamalāsanaḥ |* 15. *Evam ukto 'brahṇa rājū prañamya sa Pitāmaham | "ekam evāham icchāmi tratto varam anuttamam |* 16. *Bhūta-grāmasya sarvasya sthāvarasya charasya cha | bhavyaṁ rakshaṇyūlam pralaye samupasthite |* 17. *"Evam astu" iti vīśrātmā tattraivāntaradhīyata | pushpa-vṛṣṭiś cha mahatī khāt papāta surārpitā |* 18. *Kadāchid āśrame tasya kurvataḥ pītri-tarpanam | papāta paṇyor upari śapharī jala-saṁyutā |* 19. *Drīṣṭvā tach-chhapharī-rūpaṁ sa dayūlur mahīpatiḥ | rakshaṇyūkarod yatnaṁ sa tasmin karakodare |* 20. *Ahorātreṇa chaikena shoḍaśāṅgula-vistṛitaḥ | so 'bharad mutsya-rūpeṇa "pāhi pāhīti" chābravit |* 21. *Sa tam ādāya manike prākshipaj jalu-chārīṇam | tatrāpi chaikurātreṇa hasta-trayam avarddhata |* 22. *Punaḥ prāhārttanādēna Suhasrakiraṇātmajam | sa matsyaḥ "pāhi pāhīti" "tvām ahaṁ śaraṇaṁ gataḥ" |* 23. *Tataḥ sa kūpe tam matsyam prāhiṇoḍ Ravi-nandanah | yadā na mātī tatrapī kūpe matsyaḥ*

⁵⁵ This passage is extracted in Professor Aufrecht's Catalogue of the Bodleian Sanskrit MSS. p. 347.

⁵⁶ The Taylor MS. reads *babhūva*, instead of *vachanam*.

sarocare | 24. Kshiptaḥ sa prithutām āgāt punar yojana-sammitām |
 tatrōpy āha punar dīnaḥ “pāhi pāhi nripottama” | 25. Tataḥ sa
 Manunā kshipto Gangāyām apy avarddhata | yadā tadā samudre tam
 prākshipad medinīpatih | 26. Yadā samudram akhilaṁ vyūpyāsau
 samavasthitaḥ | tadā prūha Manur bhītaḥ “ko 'pi tram asurelaraḥ |
 27. Athavā Vāsudevas tram anya idrik katham bhavet | yojanāyuta-
 viṁśatyā kasya tulyam bhaved rapuḥ | 28. Jñātas tram matsya-rū-
 pena mām khedayasi Kēśava | Hṛishīkeśa jagannātha jagad-dhūma
 namo 'stu te” | 29. Eram uktaḥ sa bhagarān matsya-rūpī Janūrdanaḥ |
 “sādhu sādhu” iti chorācha “samyag jñātaṁ trayā 'nagha | 30. Achire-
 naiva kālena medinī medinīpate | bhavishyati jale magnā sū-saila-rana-
 kānanā | 31. Naur iyaṁ sarva-dērānām nikāyena vinirmīta | mahā-jīva-
 nikāyasya rakshaṇārtham mahīpate | 32. Svedāṇḍajodbhijā jīvā ye cha
 jīvā jarāyujāḥ | asyaṁ nidhāya sarvāṁs tān anarthāt⁵⁷ pāhi surratu |
 33. Yugānta-rūtābhīhatā yadā chalati naur nṛipa | śṛinge 'smīn mama
 rājendra tademām saṁyamishyasi | 34. Tato layānte sarvasya sthāvarasya
 charasya cha | prajāpatih tram bhavitā jagataḥ prithivī-pate | 35. Evaṁ
 kṛite mahārāja⁵⁸ sarvajno dhṛitimān ṛishih | manvantarādhipas chāpi
 deva-pūjyo bhavishyasi | 36. Adhyāya ii. Sūta uvācha | 1. Eram ukto
 Manus tena paprachhāsura-sūdanam | varshair kiyadbhir bhagavan bhavish-
 yaty antara-kshayaḥ | 2. Sattvāni cha kathaṁ nātha rakshishye Madhu-
 sūdana | trayā saha punar yogaḥ kathaṁ vā bhavitā mama | 3. Sṛī-matsya
 uvācha | adya-prabhṛity anāvṛishṭir bhavishyati mahītale | yāvad varsha-
 śataṁ sāgraṁ durbhikshaṁ narakāvaham | 4. Tato 'lpa-sattva-kshayaḍā
 rcasmayaḥ sapta dūrūnāḥ | sapta-sapter bhavishyanti prataptāṅgūra-var-
 shinaḥ | 5. Aurvānalo 'pi vikṛitīm gamishyati yuga-kshaye | vishāgnīś
 chāpi pūtālāt sankarshaṇa-mukha-chyutaḥ | 6. Bhavasyāpi lalūṭthas
 tṛitīya-nayanānalaḥ | jagad dagdhaṁ tathā kshobhaṁ gamishyati mahā-
 mate | 7. Evaṁ dagdhā mahī sarvā yadā syād bhasma-sannibhā⁵⁹ | ākāśam
 ushmaṇā taplam bhavishyati parantapa | 8. Tataḥ sa-deva-nakshatraṁ
 jagad yūsyati sankshayam | saṁvartto bhīmanūdas cha droṇas chandō⁶⁰ ba-
 lūhakaḥ | 9. Vidyutpatūkaḥ soṇūmbuḥ saptaite laya-vāridūḥ | agni-pra-
 sveda-sambhūtāḥ plāvayishyanti medinīm | 10. Samudrāḥ kshobham āgatya

⁵⁷ Instead of *anarthāt* the Taylor MS. reads *anūthūn*.

⁵⁸ The Taylor MS. reads here *evaṁ kṛita-yugasyādaṁ*.

⁵⁹ *Kūrma-sannibhā* | Taylor MS.

⁶⁰ The Taylor and Guikowar MSS. have *chandō*.

chaikatvena vyavasthitāḥ | etad ekūrṇavañ sarvaṃ karishyanti jagat-tra-
yam | 11. Divyāñ nāvaṃ⁶¹ imāñ grihya sarva-vijāñi sarvaśaḥ | āropya
rajjvā yogena mat-prayuktena suvata | 12. Sañyamyā nāvaṃ mach-
chkringe mat-prabhāvābhirakshitāḥ | ekaḥ sthāsyaśi deveshu dagdhesho api
parantapa | 13. Soma-sūryāv aham Brahmā chatur-loka-samanvitāḥ |
Narmadā cha nadī punyā Mārkaṇḍeḃyo mahāñ ṛishiḥ | 14. Bhavo vedāḥ
purāṇāñ cha vidyābhiḥ sarvato vṛitam | trayā sārddham idañ sarvañ
sthāsyaśy antara-sankshaye | 15. Eḃam ekūrṇave jāte Chākshushāntara-
sankshaye | vedāñ pravarttayishyāmi tvat-sargūḃau mahāpate | 16. Sūta
urācha | Eḃam ukteḃ sa bhagarāñs tatraivāntaradhīyata | Manur apy
āsthito yogañ Vāsudeva-prasūḃajam | 17. Athābhūch cha tathā-bhūtaḥ
samplaraḥ pūrva-sūchitāḥ | kāle yathokte sanjāte Vāsudeva-mukhodyate |
18. Śṛiṅgī prādurbabhūvātha matsya-rūpī Janūrdanaḥ | Ananto rajju-
rūpeṇa Manoh pārsvaṃ upāgamat | 19. Bhūta-saṅgāñ samākṛishya yoge-
nāropya dharmavit | bhujanga-rajjvā matsyasya śṛiṅge nāvaṃ ayojayat |
20. Uparyy upasthitas tasyāḥ pranīpatya Janūrdanam | ābhūta-samplare
tasmīñ atīte yoga-śūyīnā | 21. Prishṭena Manuṇā proktam purāṇam
matsyarūpīnā | tad idāññ pravakshyāmi śṛiṇudhvam ṛishi-sattamāḥ |

"12. Formerly a heroic king called Manu, the patient son of the Sun, endowed with all good qualities, indifferent to pain and pleasure, after investing his son with the royal authority, practised intense austere fervour, (13) in a certain region of Malaya (Malabar), and attained to transcendent union with the Deity (yoga). 14. When a million years had elapsed, Brahmā became pleased and disposed to bestow a boon, which he desired Manu to choose. 15. Bowing before the father of the world the monarch said, 'I desire of thee this one incomparable boon, that when the dissolution of the universe arrives I may have power to preserve all existing things, whether moving or stationary.' 17. 'So be it,' said the Soul of all things, and vanished on the spot; when a great shower of flowers, thrown down by the gods, fell from the sky. 18. Once as, in his hermitage, Manu offered the oblation to the Manes, there fell, upon his hands, along with some water, a Supharī fish (a carp), (19) which the kind-hearted king perceiving, strove to preserve in his water-jar. 20. In one day and night the fish grew to the size of sixteen fingers, and cried, 'preserve me, preserve me.' 21. Manu then took and threw him into a large pitcher, where in one night he

⁶¹ The Taylor MS. reads *ekā* "the chin of the Veda."

increased three cubits, (22) and again cried, with the voice of one distressed, to the son of Vivasvat, 'preserve me, preserve me, I have sought refuge with thee.' 23. Manu next put him into a well, and when he could not be contained even in that, (24) he was thrown into a lake, where he attained to the size of a yojana; but still cried in humble tones, 'preserve me, preserve me.' 25. When, after being flung into the Gangā he increased there also, the king threw him into the ocean. 26. When he filled the entire ocean, Manu said, in terror, 'Thou art some god, (27) or thou art Vāsudeva; how can any one else be like this? Whose body could equal 200,000 yojanas? 28. Thou art recognised under this form of a fish, and thou tormentest me, Keśava; reverence be to thee, Hrīhikeśa, lord of the world, abode of the universe!' 29. Thus addressed, the divine Janārdana, in the form of a fish, replied: 'Thou hast well spoken, and hast rightly known me. 30. In a short time the earth with its mountains, groves, and forests, shall be submerged in the waters. 31. This ship has been constructed by the company of all the gods⁶² for the preservation of the vast host of living creatures. 32. Embarking in it all living creatures, both those engendered from moisture and from eggs, as well as the viviparous, and plants, preserve them from calamity. 33. When driven by the blasts at the end of the yuga, the ship is swept along, thou shalt bind it to this horn of mine. 34. Then at the close of the dissolution thou shalt be the Prajāpati (lord of creatures) of this world, fixed and moving. 35. When this shall have been done,⁶³ thou, the omniscient, patient rishi, and lord of the Manvantāra, shalt be an object of worship to the gods." 2nd Adhyāya: "1. Sūta said: Being thus addressed, Manu asked the slayer of the Asura, 'In how many years shall the (existing) Manvantara come to an end? 2. And how shall I preserve the living creatures? or how shall I meet again with thee?' The fish answered: 'From this day forward a drought shall visit the earth for a hundred years and more, with a tormenting famine. 4. Then the seven direful rays of the sun, of little power, destructive, shall rain burning charcoal. 5. At the close of the yuga the submarine fire shall burst forth,

⁶² The reading of the Taylor MS. here is partially erased; but it may have been *sarva-vedūnām*, "of all the Vedas." Compare the various reading in verse 11 of the next *adhyāya*.

⁶³ According to the reading of the Taylor MS. we should have to substitute the words, "Thus at the beginning of the Kṛita age, thou" etc.

while the poisonous flame issuing from the mouth of Sankarshana (shall blaze) from Pātālā, and the fire from Mahādeva's third eye shall issue from his forehead. Thus kindled the world shall become confounded.

7. When, consumed in this manner, the earth shall become like ashes, the æther too shall be scorched with heat. 8. Then the world, together

with the gods and planets, shall be destroyed. The seven clouds of the period of dissolution, called Saṁvartta, Bhīmanāda, Droṇā, Chanda, Balāhaka, (9) Vidyutpatāka, and Sṇāmbu, produced from the steam of the fire, shall inundate the earth. 10. The seas agitated, and joined

together, shall reduce these entire three worlds to one ocean. 11. Taking

this celestial ship, embarking on it all the seeds, and through contemplation fixed on me fastening it by a rope (12) to my horn, thou alone

shalt remain, protected by my power, when even the gods are burnt up.

13. The sun and moon, I Brahmā with the four worlds, the holy river-

Narmadā,⁶⁴ the great rishi Mārkaṇḍeya, (14) Mahādeva, the Vedas, the

Purāṇa with the sciences,—these shall remain with thee at the close of the Manvantara. 15. The world having thus become one ocean at the

end of the Chākshusha manvantara, I shall give currency to the Vedas

at the commencement of thy creation.' 16. Sūta continued: Having

thus spoken, the divine Being vanished on the spot; while Manu fell into a state of contemplation (*yoga*) induced by the favour of Vāsudeva.

17. When the time announced by Vāsudeva had arrived, the predicted deluge took place in that very manner. Then Janārdana appeared in

the form of a horned fish; (the serpent) Ananta came to Manu in the

shape of a rope. 19. Then he who was skilled in duty (*i.e.* Manu)

drew towards himself all creatures by contemplation (*yoga*) and stowed

them in the ship, which he then attached to the fish's horn by the

serpent-rope, (20) as he stood upon the ship, and after he had made

obscance to Janārdana. 21. I shall now declare the Purāṇa which,

in answer to an enquiry from Manu, was uttered by the deity in the

form of the fish, as he lay in a sleep of contemplation till the end of the

universal inundation: Listen." The Matsya Purāṇa gives us no further

information here about the progress and results of the deluge; and this

narrative does not appear to be ever afterwards resumed.

⁶⁴ In the opinion of this writer, therefore, the Narmadā (Nerbudda) must have been a holier stream than the Gangā: otherwise we should have expected him to select the latter as the river to be preserved at the dissolution.

The Bhāgavata P. viii. 24, 7, gives the same story with variations as follows :

Āsīd atīta-kalpānte brāhmo naimittiko layaḥ | samudropaplutās tatra lokā bhūr-ādayo nṛipa | 8. Kālenāgata-nidrasya Dhātuh śiṣayishor balī | mukhato nissṛītān vedān Hayagrīvo 'ntike 'harat | 9. Jnātvā tad dūnavendrasya Hayagrīvasya cheshtitam | dadhāra śapharī-rūpam bhagavān Harir īśvaraḥ | 10. Tatra rāja-rishih kaśchid nūmnā Satyavrato mahān | Nārāyaṇa-paro 'tapyat tapaḥ sa salilāsanaḥ | 11. Yo 'sāv asmin mahākalpe tanayaḥ sa Vivasvataḥ | Srūddhadeva iti khyāto manut্রে Harinū 'rpitah | 12. Ekadhā Kṛitamūlāyām kurvato jala-tarpanam | tasyānjaly-udake kāchich chhaphary ekā 'bhyapadyata | 13. Satyavrato 'njali-gatām saha toyena Bhūrata | utsasarja nadī-toye śapharīm Dravideśvaraḥ | tam āha sātikarūnam mahākūrūnikām nṛipam | yādobhyo jnāti-ghātibhyo dīnām mām dīnavatsala | katham visṛijase rājan bhūtām asmin sarīj-jale | 32. Saptame 'dyatanād ūrddhram ahany etad arindama | nimanakshyaty apyayāmbhodhau trailokyam bhūr-bhurādikam | 33. Trilokyām liyamānāyām saṁvarttāmbhasi vai tadā | upas'hāsyati nauḥ kāchid viśālā trām mayeritā | 34. Trām tāvad oshadhiḥ sarvā vījany uchchāvachāni cha | saptarshibhiḥ parirpitah sarva-sattroparīṁhitah | 45. Āruhya vṛihatīm nūvām richarishyasy aviklaraḥ | ekārṇave nirāloko rishīṇām eva varchasā | 36. Dodhūyamānām tām nūvām samīreṇa baliyasā | upasthitasya me śṛinge nibadhnīhi mahāhinā | 37. Aham trām rishibhiḥ sākām sahanācam udanvati | rikarshan richarishyāmi yāvad Brāhmī niśū prabho | 41. Tutaḥ samudraḥ udelaḥ sarvataḥ plāvayan mahīm | vardhamāno mahāmeghair varshadbhiḥ samadṛīyata | 42. Dhyūyan bhagavad-ādeśaṁ dadṛīse nūvam āgatām | tām ūruroha viprendrair ādūyaushadhi-vīrudhaḥ | 43. Tam ūchur munayaḥ prītā rājan dhyūyasva Kēśavam | sa vai naḥ sankatād asmād avitā saṁ vidhāsyati | 44. So 'nudhyātas tato rūjñā prādūrāsīd mahārṇave | eka-śṛingadhara matsyo haimo niyuta-yojanaḥ | 45. Nibadhya nūvām tach-chṛiṅge yathokto Harinū purā | varatrenūhinā tushṭas tushṭāva Madhusūdanam | 54. Ity uktavantaṁ nṛipatīm bhagavān Ādipūruṣaḥ | matsyarūpī mahāmbhodhau viharāṁs tattvam abravīt | 55. Purāṇa-saṁhitām divyām Sāṅkhyā-Yoga-kriyāvatīm | Satyavratasya rājarsher ātma-guhyam aśeshataḥ | 56. Āsraushīd rishibhiḥ sākām ātma-tattvam asaṁśayam | nūvy āsīno bhagavatā proktam brahma sanātanam | 57. Atīta-pralayūpāye utthitāya sa Vedhase | hatvāsuraṁ Hayagrīvaṁ vedān prat-

yāharad Hariḥ | 58. Sa tu Satyavrato rājā jñāna-tijñāna-samyuktah
Vishnoḥ prasādāt kalpe 'smin āsīd Vaivasvato Manuḥ |

“7. At the close of the past Kalpa there occurred an occasional⁶⁵ dissolution of the universe arising from Brahmā's nocturnal repose; in which the Bhūloka and other worlds were submerged in the ocean. 8. When the creator, desirous of rest, had under the influence of time been overcome by sleep, the strong Hayagrīva coming near, carried off the Vedas which had issued from his mouth. 9. Discovering this deed of the prince of the Dānavas, the divine Hari, the Lord, took the form of a Sapharī fish. 10. At that time a certain great royal rishi, called Satyavrata, who was devoted to Nārāyaṇa, practised austere fervour, subsisting on water. 11. He was the same who in the present great Kalpa is the son of Visvasvat, called Srāddhadeva,⁶⁶ and was appointed by Hari to the office of Manu. 12. Once, as in the river Kṛitamālā he was offering the oblation of water to the Pitris, a Sapharī fish came into the water in the hollow of his hands. 13. The lord of Draviḍa, Satyavrata, cast the fish in his hands with the water into the river. 14. The fish very piteously cried to the merciful king, ‘Why dost thou abandon me poor and terrified to the monsters who destroy their kindred in this river?’” [Satyavrata then took the fish from the river, placed it in his waterpot, and as it grew larger and larger, threw it successively into a larger vessel, a pond, various lakes, and at length into the sea. The fish objects to be left there on the plea that it would be devoured; but Manu replies that it can be no real fish, but Vishṇu himself; and with various expressions of devotion enquires why he had assumed this disguise, verses 15–31.] The god replies: 32. “On the seventh day after this the three worlds Bhūloka, etc., shall sink beneath the ocean of the dissolution. 33. When the universe is dissolved in that ocean, a large ship, sent by me, shall come to thee. 34. Taking with thee the plants and various seeds, surrounded by the seven rishis, and attended by all existences, (35) thou shalt embark on the great ship, and shalt without alarm move over the one dark ocean, by the sole light of the rishis. When the ship shall be vehemently shaken by

⁶⁵ *Naimittika*. See above p. 45.

⁶⁶ Manu is called Srāddhadeva in the Mahābhārata also, S'āntip. 4507. In the Brāhmaṇas, however, he receives the appellation, or epithet, not of Srāddhadeva, but of Srāddhādeva. See above, p. 188 ff.

the tempestuous wind, fasten it by the great serpent to my horn—for I shall come near. 37. So long as the night of Brahmā lasts, I shall draw thee with the rishis and the ship over the ocean.” [The god then disappears after promising that Satyavrata shall practically know his greatness and experience his kindness, and Satyavrata awaits the predicted events, verses 38–40.] 41. “Then the sea, augmenting as the great clouds poured down their waters, was seen overflowing its shores and everywhere inundating the earth. 42. Meditating on the injunctions of the deity, Satyavrata beheld the arrival of the ship, on which he embarked with the Brāhmanas, taking along with him the various kinds of plants. 43. Delighted, the Munis said to him, ‘meditate on Keśava; he will deliver us from this danger, and grant us prosperity.’ 44. Accordingly when the king had meditated on him, there appeared on the ocean a golden fish, with one horn, a million yojanas long. 45. Binding the ship to his horn with the serpent for a rope, as he had been before commanded by Hari, Satyavrata lauded Madhusūdana.” [Verses 46–53 contain the hymn.] 54. When the king had thus spoken, the divine primeval Male, in the form of a fish, moving on the vast ocean declared to him the truth; (55) the celestial collection of Puranas, with the Sāṅkhya, Yoga, the ceremonial, and the mystery of the soul. 56. Seated on the ship with the rishis, Satyavrata heard the true doctrine of the soul, of the eternal Brahmā, declared by the god. 57. When Brahmā arose at the end of the past dissolution, Hari restored to him the Vedas, after slaying Hayagrīva. 58. And King Satyavrata, master of all knowledge, sacred and profane, became, by the favour of Viṣṇu, the son of Vivasvat, the Manu in this

Before adducing the remarks of the commentator Śrīdhara Svāmī on the passage last cited from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, I shall quote one more version of the same legend from the Agni Purāṇa.⁶⁷ It is not of any great consequence, as, though more condensed, it coincides in purport with that in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa: which of the two has bor-

⁶⁷ This has been copied by Professor Aufrecht from a MS. of the Agni Purāṇa, belonging to the Royal Asiatic Society of London. I am informed by Prof. Aufrecht that the East India Office Library has two MSS. of the Vahni Purāṇa, which (although Vahni is, in later Sanskrit, synonymous with Agni) differ entirely in their contents from the Agni Purāṇa.

rowed from the other, or whether both are derived from a common source, I am unable to say.

Vasishṭha uvācha | 1. *Matsyādi-rūpiṇaṁ Viṣṇuṁ brāhi sargādi-kāranam* | *purāṇam brahma chāgneyaṁ yathā Viṣṇoḥ purā śrutam* | *Agnir uvācha* | 2. *Matsyūrātārāṁ vakshye 'haṁ Vasishṭha śṛiṇu vai Hareḥ* | *avatāra-kriyāṁ duṣṭa-nashtyai sat-pālanāya hi* | 3. *Āsīd atita-kalpānte brāhma naimittiko layaḥ* | *sanudropaplūtās tatra lokā bhūrādikā mune* | 4. *Manur Vairasratas tepe tapo vai bhukti-muktaye* | *ekadū Kṛitalmālayāṁ kurrato jala-tarpaṇam* | 5. *Tasyānjaly-udake matsyaḥ scalpa eko 'bhyapadyata* | *kṣheptu-kāmaṁ jale prāha "na mām kshipa narottama* | 6. *Grahādibhyo bhayam me 'tra* " *tach chhruvā kalaśe 'kshipat* | *Manuṁ vṛiddhaḥ punar matsyaḥ prāha taṁ "dehi me vṛihat* " | 7. *Tasya tad rachanaṁ śrutvā rājā 'tha randane 'kshipat* | *tatra vṛiddho 'bravīd bhūpam "prīthu dehi pudam mama* " | 8. *Sarocare punaḥ kshipto carvīdho tat-pramāṇarāt* | *ūche "dehi vṛihat sthānam* " *prākshipach chāmbudhau tataḥ* | 9. *Lakṣha-yojana-vistīrṇaḥ kṣāṇa-mātrena so 'bharat* | *matsyaṁ tam adbhutaṁ dṛishṭvā rismitaḥ prābravīd Manuḥ* | 10. *"Ko bhavān nanu vai Viṣṇur Nārāyaṇa namo 'stu te* | *māyayā mohayasi mām kimarthaṁ cha Janārdana* " | 11. *Manur-ukto* ⁶⁸ *'bravīd matsyo Manuṁ tai pālāne ratam* | *avatīrṇo bhavāyāsya jagato duṣṭa-nashtaye* | 12. *"Saptame divase tv abdhiḥ plāvayishyati vai jagat* | *upasthitāyāṁ nāvi traṁ vījadini vidhūya cha* | 13. *Saptarshibhiḥ parivṛito nīśām brāhmīṁ charishyasi* | *upasthitasya me śṛinge nibadhnūhi mahāhina* " | 14. *Ity uktrā 'ntardadhe matsyo Manuḥ kāla-pratikṣakaḥ* | *stītaḥ samudra udrele nāram āruruhe tadā* | 15. *Eka-śṛiṅga-dhara matsyo haimo niyuta-yojanaḥ* | *nūvam babandha tach-chhṛinge matsyākhyāṁ cha purāṇakam* | 16. *Sūsrāva matsyāt pāpa-ghnaṁ sa-śrutam śrutibhiḥ śrutam (?)* | *brahma-veda-praharttārāṁ Hayagrīvaṁ cha dānavam* | 17. *Avadhīd veda-mantrādyān pālayāmāsa Keśavaḥ* |

"Vasishṭha said: 1. Declare to me Viṣṇu, the cause of the creation, in the form of a Fish and his other incarnations; and the Puranic revelation of Agni, as it was originally heard from Viṣṇu. Agni replied: 2. Hear, o Vasishṭha, I shall relate to thee the Fish-incarnation of Viṣṇu, and his acts when so incarnate for the destruction of

⁶⁸ Professor Aufrecht's transcript has this reading *Manur-ukto*; which I have retained, although I was not aware that *Manus* was commonly used for *Manu*, except in the Vedic period.

the wicked, and protection of the good. 3. At the close of the past Kalpa there occurred an occasional dissolution of the universe caused by Brahmā's sleep, when the Bhūrloka and other worlds were inundated by the ocean. 4. Manu, the son of Vivasvat, practised austere fervour for the sake of worldly enjoyment as well as final liberation. Once, when he was offering the libation of water to the Pitris in the river Kṛitamālā, (5) a small fish came into the water in the hollow of his hands, and said to him when he sought to cast it into the stream, 'Do not throw me in, (6) for I am afraid of alligators and other monsters which are here.' On hearing this Manu threw it into a jar. Again, when grown, the Fish said to him, 'Provide me a large place.' 7. Manu then cast it into a larger vessel (?). When it increased there, it said to the king, 'Give me a wide space.' 8. When, after being thrown into a pond, it became as large as its receptacle, and cried out for greater room, he flung it into the sea. 9. In a moment it became a hundred thousand yojanas in bulk. Beholding the wonderful Fish, Manu said in astonishment: (10) 'Who art thou? Art thou Viṣṇu? Adoration be paid to thee, o Nārāyaṇa. Why, o Janārdana, dost thou bewilder me by thy illusion?' 11. The Fish, which had become incarnate for the welfare of this world and the destruction of the wicked, when so addressed, replied to Manu, who had been intent upon its preservation: (12) 'Seven days after this the ocean shall inundate the world. A ship shall come to thee, in which thou shalt place the seeds, (13) and accompanied by the rishis shalt sail during the night of Bruhmā. Bind it with the great serpent to my horn, when I arrive. 14. Having thus spoken the Fish vanished. Manu awaited the promised period, and embarked on the ship when the sea overflowed its shores. 15. (There appeared) a golden Fish, a million yojanas long, with one horn, to which Manu attached the ship, (16) and heard from the Fish the Matsya Purāṇa, which takes away sin, together with the Veda. Kṛṣṇa then slew the Dānava Hayagrīva who had snatched away the Vedas, and preserved its mantras and other portions."

The following is Śrīdhara's comment, before referred to, on the legend of the deluge, as told in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa. These remarks have been well translated and explained in the preface to the 3rd volume of his edition of this Purāṇa (pp. xxxviii ff.) by M. Burnouf, whose elaborate discussion of the legend extends from p. xxiii to p. liv.

Atra idaṁ chintyaṁ “kim ayam mahāpralayo dainandino vā” iti | tatra tūvad “brāhmo layaḥ” (v. 7) iti “yo ’sāv asmin mahā-kalpe” (v. 11) iti cha ukter “mahāpralayaḥ” iti prāptaṁ “na” iti brūmaḥ | mahāpralaye prithivy-ādīnām avaśeṣhāsambhavād “yūvad brāhmī niśā” (v. 37) ity-ūdy-ukti- virodhāc cha | ato “dainandana” iti yuktam | na cha etad api sangachhate | saṁvarttakair anūcrīṣṭy-ādibhir vinā akasmād eva “saptame ’hani trailokyaṁ nimankshyati” (v. 32) iti matsyokter anupapatteḥ | yathoktam prathama-skandhe “rūpam” (i. 3, 15) ity ādi tad api tadā durghaṭam | na hi pralaya-draṇe ’pi “mahīmāyāṁ nāry” ārohaḥ sambhavati na cha Chākshusha-manvantare pralayo ’sti | tathā cha sati saptamo Manur Vaivasvataḥ ity api durghaṭam syāt | “tvāṁ tūvad ośadhīḥ sarvūḥ” (viii. 24, 34) ity-ādi-nirdeśo ’pi na sangachhate | na hi tadā ośadhy-ādīnām sattrīnām cha avaśeṣhaḥ sambhavati | tasmād anyathā varnyate | naivāyaṁ cāstaraḥ ko ’pi pralayaḥ | kintu Satyavratasya jñānopadeśaya āvirbhūto bhagavān vairāgyārtham akasmāt pralayaṁ iva darśayāmāsa yathā ’sminn eva Vaivasvata-manvantare Mārkaṇḍeyāya darśitavān | tad-apekshayā eva cha “mahā-kalpe ’sminn” iti viśeṣhanāṁ sangachhate | tathā cha “tataḥ samudraḥ udrelaḥ sarvataḥ samadṛīsyata” (v. 41) iti tasyaiva yathā darśanam uktam ity eṣhā dik |

“Here we have to consider whether this was a great dissolution of the universe, or one of those which occur at the close of each day of Brahmā. If it be supposed from the expressions ‘a dissolution proceeding from Brahmā’ (v. 7), and ‘he is the same who in this Mahā-kalpa’ (v. 11), that it was a great dissolution, we reply,—no; because in a great dissolution the earth and other worlds cannot possibly remain in existence, and because this would be opposed to the words ‘so long as the night of Brahmā lasts’ (v. 37). Hence it might appear that it must be one of the dissolutions which occur at the end of a day of Brahmā. But this also is impossible, because it would be at variance with the Fish’s words that ‘the three worlds should be submerged on the seventh day,’ (v. 32) suddenly, without the drought and other calamities which precede a dissolution. What is stated in the first book (iii. 15), ‘at the deluge, in the Chākshusha Manvantara, he took the form of a Fish, and preserved Manu Vaivasvata, whom he placed in a ship formed of the earth,’⁶⁰ would also in that case be inconceivable; for

⁶⁰ Bhāgavata Purāṇa, i. 3. 15. *Rupam sa jagrihe mūteyaṁ Chākshushodadhi-sam-
plave | nāvy ūroṇyā mahīmāyāṁ apād Vaivasvatam Manuṁ |* On this passage also

(1.) in neither of the two dissolutions could any one be placed 'in a ship in the form of the earth' (as the earth is submerged in the one case and altogether destroyed in the other); (2.) there is no dissolution of the world in the Chākshusha Manvantara; (3.) in the case supposed the existence of a seventh Manu, the son of Vivasvat would be impossible (for the fourteen Manus succeed each other in one Kalpa without the intervention of any dissolution). And in that case the command to take 'all the plants into the ship' (viii. 24, 34), would be inconceivable, since no plants or other such substances are left at such a period. Such being the fact, the narrative must be otherwise explained. It was in fact no real dissolution which is here related. But the deity, who appeared to teach Satyavrata knowledge, shewed him suddenly the semblance of a dissolution to instil into him dispassion, just as in the Vairasvata Manvantara he shewed to Mārkaṇḍeya. And if referred to this, the words 'in this Māhākālpa' will be conceivable. And consequently the words 'Then the sea was beheld overflowing its shores on every side' are spoken with reference to what Satyavrata saw (in the vision). Such is an indication of the purport of the Section."

Sṛīdhara Svāmin here reasons only upon the data supplied by the particular version of the story which he found before him in the Bhāgavata, and does not seem to have extended his researches so far as to ascertain whether the legend might not exhibit some variations as narrated in other Puranas. If he had turned to the Matsya Purāṇa he would have found that one of his objections, viz., that drawn from the absence of any reference to the calamities supposed to precede a dissolution, did not apply to the account there given; since that narrative expressly asserts that these premonitory signs were manifested. Others of his objections apply no doubt to the other narratives as well as to that in the Bhāgavata. According to the ordinary Puranic theory (see above, pp. 43 ff.) fourteen Manus exist in each Kalpa, and one succeeds another without the intervention of any *pralaya* or dissolution. It is obviously inconsistent with this theory to represent such a dissolution. Sṛīdhara remarks: *Yadyapi manvantarāvasthāna pralayo nāsti tathāpi kenachit kau-
tukena Satyavratīya mūyā pradarśitā | yathā "akūṇḍe Mārkaṇḍeyūya" iti drash-
ṭavyam |* "Although there is no dissolution at the end of a Manvantara, yet, through a certain sport an illusion was shown to Satyavrata, as in the other passage where it is said 'Suddenly to Mārkaṇḍeya,' etc."

as taking place either during the life of any of the Manus, or after his disappearance. It is even doubtful, or more than doubtful (Wilson's Vish. P. i. p. 50 f. and p. 44, above) whether one Manu can exist contemporaneously with another, and yet, according to the Matsya and Agni Purāṇas (see above, pp. 205 ff., 211 f.) Manu Vaivasvata is said to have lived during his predecessor's period, although the Bhāgavata avoids this difficulty by making Satyavrata the hero of the story and by representing him as being born again as Manu Vairasvata at the beginning of the next Manvantara. (M. Burnouf's Preface above referred to may be consulted for further remarks on this subject.) The authors of the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas do not, however, appear to have been so sensitively alive to inconsistencies of this description as Śrīdhara. Perhaps the system of Kalpas and Manvantaras may not have been so clearly defined, or so generally current, when the older parts, at least of the Mahābhārata, were composed, as at a later period.⁷⁰ And even the Puranic writers may not have cared very much to preserve a strict congruity in all that they wrote. In fact they may have had no great faith in the authority of speculations so arbitrary and artificial as those relating to the great mundane periods to which I refer,—speculations which were derived from no higher source than previous writers of their own class. The case, however, was different with the Commentators, who lived at a later period, and who seem to have regarded the established doctrine regarding Kalpas and Manvantaras as an article of faith.

There is, however, no doubt that, for the reasons above assigned, this legend of a Flood, such as is described in the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas, does not fit into the system of Kalpas and Manvantaras. But what is the inference which we ought to draw from this circumstance? M. Burnouf believes (1.) that the theory of great mundane periods and periodical dissolutions of the universe was received in India from very early times (Bhāg. P. iii. Pref. p. xliii.) and (2) that it was older than the legend of a deluge, as, although the latter may have been derived from ancient tradition, the style in which it is related in the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas has nothing of the archaic colouring of the Itihāsas contained in the Brāhmaṇas, and it had not, so far as he knew,

⁷⁰ The Svāyambhuva Manvantara is mentioned in the S'āntip. verse 12658, but no details are given (*kr̥te yuge mahārāja pura Svāyambhuve 'ntare*).

been found in any work of the class last named (p. xxvii.), and was not, he anticipated, likely to be discovered there (lii.). The conclusion which he deduces from these premises, and from the absence of any tradition of any great local inundation (pp. xlviii. and li.), is that, although, as related in the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas, the legend of the deluge has received in some respects an Indian character (xxx. ff. ; xlv. ff.), it is not in its origin Indian, (li.), but was most probably imported into Hindustan from a Semitic source, whether Hebrew or Assyrian (lii.-liv.). The first of M. Burnouf's premises, regarding the great antiquity of the system of Kalpas, Manvantaras, and mundane dissolutions, is not borne out by the Vedic hymns, or anything that has yet been found in the Brāhmaṇas (see above, pp. 45 ff.). And his anticipation that no reference to a deluge would be discovered in any of the older Indian records has proved incorrect, as is shewn by the legend of Manu quoted above (p. 181 ff.) from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa.

Professor Weber, by whom attention was first drawn (in his *Indische Studien*, i. 160 ff.) to this passage, shows how materially it interferes with Burnouf's results. If there is no proof of the great antiquity of the cosmical theory which that great scholar supposes to be inconsistent with the early existence in India of any tradition of a deluge, whilst on the other hand there is distinct evidence that that tradition was actually current there at a much earlier period than he imagined, it is clear that his supposition of its having been introduced into that country from an exclusively Semitic source loses much of its probability.

The explanation by which Sridhara endeavours to maintain the consistency of the Puranic narratives and theories seems to be altogether unfounded. There is no appearance of the authors either of the Bhāgavata, or Matsya, or Agni Purāṇas having intended to represent the deluge as a mere vision. They evidently meant this narrative to be taken literally, just as much as anything else that they describe.

I shall now compare the versions of the legend given in the Mahābhārata and Purāṇas with each other, and with that quoted above from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa.

I. The following are the peculiarities of the narrative in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa :

(1.) It makes no reference to any great mundane periods, such as Kalpas or Manvantaras.

(2.) It does not speak of a dissolution of the world (*pralaya*), but of a flood (*augha*) which swept away all living creatures except Manu.

(3.) It does not fix the number of days or years after which the flood should come.

(4.) It speaks of Manu simply, without assigning to him any patronymic, such as Vaivasvata.⁷¹

(5.) It contains no allusion to the locality in which he was when the fish came to him.

(6.) It makes no mention of the fish being thrown into any river.

(7.) It is silent as to Manu being accompanied by any rishis when he embarked on the ship, and as to his taking any seeds along with him.

(8.) It speaks of the ship as having rested on the "Northern mountain," and of a place called "Manu's Descent."

(9.) It does not say anything of any deity being incarnate in the fish.

(10.) It represents Idā as produced from Manu's oblation, and as the mother of his offspring, begotten apparently in the natural way.

It is manifest from this abstract, when compared with what follows, that the flood described in the Brāhmaṇa is distinguishable in various respects from the dissolution, or *pralaya*, of the later works.

II. The legend as told in the Mahābhārata agrees with that of the S. P. Br. in some, and differs from it in other particulars:

(1.) It does not specify any Kalpa or Manvantara.

(2.) It speaks of a dissolution of the universe (*pralaya*), and of the time of its purification by water (*samprakṣhālana-kālāḥ*) having arrived.

(3.) It makes the fish declare that this event should take place speedily (*achirāt*), and alludes to no antecedent calamities.

⁷¹ Manu Vaivasvata is however mentioned in S. P. Br. xiii. 4, 3, 3. "*Manur Vaivasvato rājā*" ity āha | *tasya manushyā vīśaḥ* | "He says 'Manu Vaivasvata king.' Men are his subjects." Further on, xiii. 4, 3, 6, Yama Vaivasvata is spoken of as King of the Pitris. Compare R.V. x. 14, 1; 17, 1. In the Vāṇakhilya hymns attached to the R.V. iv. 1, Indra is mentioned as drinking Soma in the house of Manu Vivasvat (not Vaivasvata). In the Atharva-veda, viii. 10, 24, Manu Vaivasvata is spoken of as the calf of the cow Virāj (*tasyā Munur Vaivasvato vatsaḥ*). Yama is similarly spoken of in the preceding verse. In Vāṇakhilya, iii. 1, Indra is said to have drunk Soma in Manu Sāmvarṇi's house. The connection of the words *Sūvarṇya* and *Sūvarṇi* with the word *manu*, "man," in R.V. x. 68, 8 f. and 11, no doubt gave rise to the idea of a Manu Sūvarṇi. See Wilson's Vishnu P. 4to. ed. pp. 266 ff., and Roth's remark in Journal Germ. Or. Soc. vi. 245 f., and R.V. x. 17, 2.

(4.) It assigns to Manu the patronymic of Vaivasvata, but mentions no other Manu.

(5.) It represents the fish as coming to him when on the banks of the Chirīṇī river.

(6.) It describes the fish as thrown into the Ganges before it was taken to the sea.

(7.) It speaks of Manu as embarking on the ship with the seven rishis, and as taking with him all the seeds described by the Brahmans.

(8.) It declares that the ship rested on the highest peak of the Himālaya, which was thence called Naubandhana.

(9.) It makes the fish reveal himself as Brahmā Prajāpati.

(10.) It describes Manu not as begetting offspring but as creating all sorts of living beings including MEN.

III. The Matsya Purāṇa agrees in some points, and differs in others from the above details.

(1.) It states that Manu, whom it styles the son of the Sun (*Sahasrakiraṇātmaja*, and *Ravi-nandana*), i.e. Manu Vaivasvata, practised austerity after making over his kingdom to his son (v. 12). One might have supposed that he could only have done this in his own Manvantara; but it is said further on (v. 34 f.) that he was informed by the fish that when the dissolution should come to an end, he should become a Prajāpati and lord of the Manvantara; and he receives a promise that he should be preserved during the dissolution (ii. 12), which, as appears from v. 15, was to take place at the end of the Chākshusha Manvantara. After this he was to create the world anew. We must therefore suppose the writer to have regarded Manu Vaivasvata as existing during the period of his predecessor, but as then occupying the inferior position of a king. This difficulty is, as I have already remarked, avoided in the Bhāgavata, which makes King Satyavrata the hero of the story.

(2.) This Purāṇa speaks of a dissolution (*pralaya*) and yet (i. 15 ff.) represents Manu as asking and receiving from Brahmā as a boon that when that dissolution should arrive, he should be the preserver of all things stationary and moving.

(3.) It states that a hundred years and more would elapse before the dissolution, which was to be preceded by famine and various terrific phenomena.

(4.) It represents Manu as the son of the Sun. See under head (1.).

(5.) It mentions Malaya (Malabar) as the scene of Manu's austerity, and of the apparition of the fish.

(6.) It agrees with the Mahābhārata in describing the fish as thrown into the Ganges, though at so great a distance from Malabar.

(7.) It is silent as to the seven rishis embarking on the ship, but speaks of Manu taking with him all sorts of creatures (living apparently) as well as seeds (chap. ii. v. 11).

(8.) It does not bring the narrative to a conclusion (see above, p. 207), and thus has no opportunity of saying anything of the place where the ship rested.

(9.) It speaks of Janārdana (Vishnu) as the god who was manifested in the Fish.

(10.) It refers to Manu as about to effect a creation (ii. 15), but also as preserving the existing animals and plants (ch. i. 15 ff., 31 f.; ii. 2, 19).

IV. According to the Bhāgavata Purāṇa :

(1.) The event described was an "occasional dissolution" (*naimittiko layah*, see above, p. 45) at the end of a Kalpa (viii. 24, 7); and yet in contradiction with this it had previously been alluded to (i. 3, 15) as occurring at the close of the Chākshusha Manvantara.

(2.) See head (1.).

(3.) The dissolution was to take place after seven days (viii. 24, 32); and no premonitory calamities are referred to.

(4.) The hero of the story is Satyaṛata, king of Dravida, who was born again in the present *mahākalpa* as the son of Vivasvat (vv. 10, 11, 58).

(5.) The scene of the incidents, with which the narrative begins, was the river *Kṛitamālā*, in the country of Dravida.

(6.) The fish is not thrown into any river after it had been once taken out of the *Kṛitamālā*, and had grown large.

(7.) Satyaṛata is commanded to take with him into the ship the seven rishis, as well as plants, seeds, and all beings (*sarva-sattropa-*

(8.) Nothing is said of the place where the ship rested.

(9.) Vishnu is the deity who took the form of a fish with the view of recovering the Vedas carried away by the Dānava Hayagrīva (vv. 9, 57).

(10.) No mention is made in this chapter of any creation effected by Manu: but in ix. i. an account is given of his descendants.

V. The narrative in the Agni Purāṇa agrees with that in the Bhāgavata, except in its much greater conciseness, and in making Manu Vaivasvata, and not Satyavrata, the hero of the story.

SECT. IV.—*Legendary Accounts of the Origin of Castes among the Descendants of Manu and Atri, according to the Purāṇas.*

We have already seen that it is distinctly affirmed in a passage quoted above (p. 126) from the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 3138 ff., that men of all classes, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras were descended from Manu, a statement which is clearly at variance with the notion of their having been separately created from different members of Brahmā. This tallies with the account of the origin of castes which is found in those parts of the Purāṇas which profess to record the history of the two royal races, the solar and the lunar, which are said to have sprung from Manu Vaivasvata and Atri.

The Vishṇu Purāṇa (which is here written in prose) makes the following statement regarding Manu's descendants :

iv. 1. 4. *Sakala-jagatām anādir ādibhūtaḥ ṛig-yajuḥ-sāmādimaya-bhagavad-Vishṇumayasya Brahmaṇo mūrttirūpam Hiranyagarbho brahmāṇḍato bhagavān Brahmā prāg babhūva | Brahmaṇas cha dakṣhiṇāṅgushthajanmā Dakṣaḥ prajāpatiḥ | Dakṣasyāpy Aditiḥ | Aditer Vivasvān | Vivasvato Manuḥ | Manor Ikṣvāku-Nṛiga-Dhrishta-Saryāti-Narishyanta-Prāṇśu-Nābhāganedishta-Kārūsha-Prishadhrākhyāḥ putrāḥ babhūruḥ | 6. Ishtiṁ cha Mitrā-Varuṇayor Manuḥ putra-kāmas chakāra | 7. Tatrūpahute hotur apachārād Ilā nāma kanyā babhūva | 8. Saiva Mitra-Varuṇa-prasādāt Sudyumno nāma Manuḥ putro Maitreyāsīt | punas cha Īsvara-kopāt strī satī Soma-sūnor Budhasya ūśrama-samīpe babhūva | 9. Sūnurāgas cha tasyām Budhaḥ Purūravasam ātmajam utpādayāmāsa | 10. Jāte cha tasminn amita-tejobhiḥ paramarshibhir ishtimayaḥ ṛiṇmayo yajurmayaḥ sāmamayo 'tharvamayaḥ sarvamayo manomayo jñānamayo 'kinchinmayo bhagavān yajna-puruṣa-svarūpī Sudyumnasya puṁstram abhilashadbhir yathāvad ishtaḥ | tatprasādāt Ilā punar api Sudyumno 'bhavat |*

“Before the mundane egg existed the divine Brahmā Hiranyagarbha, the eternal originator of all worlds, who was the form and essence of Brahmā, who consists of the divine Vishṇu, who again is identical with

the Rik, Yajush, Sāman and Atharva-Vedas. From Brahmā's right thumb⁷² was born the Prajāpati Daksha; Daksha had a daughter Aditi; from her was born Vivasvat; and from him sprang Manu. Manu had sons called Ikshvāku, Nṛiga, Dhṛishta, Saryāti, Narishyanta, Prāmśu, Nābhāgedishṭa, Karūsha, and Prishadhra.⁷³ Desirous of a son, Manu sacrificed to Mitra and Varuṇa; but in consequence of a wrong invocation through an irregularity of the hotṛi-priest, a daughter called Ilā was born. Then through the favour of Mitra and Varuṇa she became to Manu a son called Sudyumna. But being again changed into a female through the wrath of Īśvara (Mahādeva) she wandered near the hermitage of Budha the son of Soma (the Moon); who becoming enamoured of her had by her a son called Purūrasas. After his birth, the god who is formed of sacrifice, of the Rik, Yajush, Sāman, and Atharva Vedas, of all things, of mind, of nothing,⁷⁴ he who is in the form of the sacrificial Male, was worshipped by the rishis of infinite splendour who desired that Sudyumna should recover his manhood. Through the favour of this god Ilā became again Sudyumna."

Regarding the different sons of Manu the Purāṇas supply the following particulars:

(1.) Prishadhra.—The Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 1, 12:

Prishadhras tu guru-go-badhāch chhūdratvam āgamat |

"Prishadhra became a Sūdra in consequence of his having killed his religious preceptor's cow."

On the same subject the Harivaṃśa tells us, verse 659:

Prishadhro hiṃsayitvā tu guror gām Janamejaya | śūpāch chhūdratvam āpannaḥ |

"Prishadhra having killed his Guru's cow, became a Sūdra in consequence of his curse."

This story is variously amplified in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, section cxii., and in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa ix. 2, 3-14. See Professor Wilson's note, Vishṇu Purāṇa, 4to. edit. p. 351, where the author remarks that

⁷² See above, p. 72 f.

⁷³ Compare with this the list of Manu's sons given in the passage from the M. Bh. Ādip. quoted above, p. 126. Nābhāgedishṭa (not Nābhāgedishṭa) is mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and Taittirīya Saṃhitā (see above, p. 191), and S'aryūta in the S'. P. Br. iv. 1, 5, 1. See Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, p. 11 ff. The Mārkaṇḍeya P. cxi. 3 ff., and the Bhāg. P. ix. 1, 11 ff. treat also of Manu's sons and of the birth of Ilā. See Wilson's Vishṇu P. 4to. ed. pp. 348-58, and Burnouf's Bhāg. P. vol. iii. pref. lxx. ff.

⁷⁴ *Akinchinmayah*, "not consisting of anything."

“the obvious purport of this legend, and of some that follow, is to account for the origin of the different castes from one common ancestor.”

(2.) Karūsha.—The Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 1, 13:

Kārūshāt Kārūshā mahābalāḥ Kshattriyā babhūruḥ |

“From Kārūsha the Kārūshas, Kshattriyas of great power, were descended.”

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 2, 16, says:

Kārūshād Mūnavād āsan Kārūshāḥ Kshattrā-jātayaḥ | uttarāpatha-goptāro brahmaṇyū dharma-ratsalāḥ |

“From Karūsha, son of Manu, came the Kārūshas of the Kshattriya caste, protectors of the northern region, devout, and lovers of duty.”

(3.) Nābhāga.—The Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 1, 14:

Nābhāgo Nedishṭa-putras tu vaiśyatām agamat |

“Nābhāga, the son of Nedishṭa, became a Vaiśya.”

The Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa says he was the son of Dishṭa, and relates how he became a Vaiśya, by marrying the daughter of a man of that class (section cxiii. and Wilson, p. 352, note). The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 2, 23, says he became a Vaiśya in consequence of his works (*Nābhāgo Dishṭa-putro 'nyaḥ karmabhir vaiśyatām gataḥ*). And yet a long list of his descendants is given, and among them occurs Marutta who was a Chakravartin, or universal monarch (Vishṇu P. iv. 1. 15-17; Bhāg. P. ix. 2, 23-28; Mārka. P. cxxviii.-xxxii.). He had a grandson called Dama, of whom the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa relates that at a Svayamvara he was chosen by the daughter of the King of Daśārṇa for her husband (cxxxiv. 8), and that when the bride had been seized by three of his rejected rivals (verse 16) she was rescued by him after he had slain one of them and vanquished another (verse 53); that subsequently that same vanquished rival in revenge killed Dama's father, who had retired into the wilderness as an ascetic (cxxxv. 18). The Purāṇa in one of its recensions ends with the following curious particulars:

Tataś chakūra tātasya raktenaivodaka-kriyām | anṛiṇyam prāpya sa pituḥ punaḥ prāyāt sva-mandiram | Vapushmataś cha māṁsena piṇḍa-dānaṁ chakūra ha | brāhmaṇān bhojāyāmāsa rakshaḥ-kula-samudbhavān | evaṁvidhā hi rājāno babhūruḥ sūrya-vaṁśa-jāḥ | anye 'pi sudhiyaḥ sūra yajvānaḥ śāstra-kovidāḥ | vedāntam paṭhamānāṁs tūn na sankhyātum ihotsahe |

“Dama then (after tearing out the heart of Vapushmat) performed

with blood the rites to the manes of his father; and having thus discharged his debt to his parent, he returned home. With the flesh of Vapushmat he formed the oblation which he offered, and fed the Brāhmanas who were of Rākshasa descent. Of such character were the kings of the Solar race. There were also others who were wise, brave, priests, and skilled in the scriptures. I am unable here to enumerate those of them who studied the Vedānta.”⁷⁵

The Harivaṁśa (section xi. verse 658) tells us that “two sons of Nābhāgārishṭa, who were Vaiśyas, became Brāhmanas” (*Nābhāgārishṭa-putrau dvau vaiśyau brāhmaṇatām gatau*).

(4.) Dhṛiṣṭa.—Of him the Viṣṇu Purāṇa relates, iv. 2, 2 :

Dhṛiṣṭasyāpi Dhārṣṭakam Kṣhattraṁ samabharat |

“From Dhṛiṣṭa sprang the Dhārṣṭaka Kṣhattriya.”

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 2, 17 :

Dhṛiṣṭād Dhārṣṭam abhūt Kṣhattram brahma-bhūyam gatam kṣhitau |

“From Dhṛiṣṭa were descended the Dhārṣṭa Kṣhattriya, who obtained Brāhmanhood⁷⁶ on earth.”

(5.) The last-named Purāṇa enumerates in verses 19 ff. of the same section the descendants of Narishyanta, among whom was Agniveśya, verse 21 :

Tato 'gniveśyo bhagavān Agniḥ srayam abhūt sutaḥ | Kānina iti vikhyaṭo Jātūkarnyo mahān ṛishiḥ | tato brahma-kulaṁ jātam Agniveśyāyanaṁ nṛipa | Narishyantānvayaḥ proktaḥ |

“From him (Devadatta) sprang a son Agniveśya, who was the lord Agni himself, and who was also called Kānina and Jātūkarnya the great rishi. From him was descended the Agniveśyāyana race of

⁷⁵ This quotation, which will be partly found in Prof. Wilson's note 22, p. 353, is taken from the section given separately by Prof. Banerjea at the end of his edition of this Purāṇa from a Maithila MS. which differs from that followed in his text (see his Preface, p. 30). In verses 6 f. of section cxxvi. however, of Prof. Banerjea's text, Duma threatens to do something of the same sort as in the other recension he is described to have actually done : 6. *Yad aham tasya raktena dehotthena Vapushmataḥ | na karomi guros triptim tat pravekshye hutāsanaṁ |* 7. *Tuechhhoṇitenodaka-karma tasya tātasya sankhye vinipīṭitasya | mūṁsena samyag drīja-bhojanaṁ cha na chet pravekshyāmi hutāsanaṁ tat |* “6. If I do not satiate my father with the blood from Vapushmat's body, then I shall enter the fire 7. If I do not celebrate with his blood the obsequial rites of my father prostrated in the fray, and feed the Brāhmanas with (his) flesh, I shall enter the fire.”

⁷⁶ The Commentator explains *brahma-bhūyam* by *brāhmagatram*, “the state of Brāhmanas.”

Brāhmans. The offspring of Narishyanta has been declared." That of Dishta is next taken up.

Some of the names of Manu's sons are repeated in the subsequent narrative. Thus we find a second Prānsu named among the descendants of Nābhāga (Wilson, 352). And in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 2, 2, a second Nābhāga is mentioned as follows :

Nābhāgasyātmajo Nābhāgas tasya Ambarīshaḥ | Ambarīshasyāpi Virūpo 'bharat Virūpāt Pṛishadaśvo jajne tatas cha Rathītaraḥ | tatrāyaṁ ślokaḥ | "ete kshattri-prasūtā vai punas chāṅgirasasḥ smṛitāḥ | Rathītārāṇām pravarāḥ kshattropetā drijātayaḥ" |

"The son of Nābhāga was Nābhāga ; his son was Ambarīsha. From him sprang Virūpa ; from him Pṛishadaśva ; and from him Rathītara ; regarding whom this verse is current: 'These persons sprung from a Kshattriya, and afterwards called Angirases, were the chief of the Rathītaras, twice-born men (Brāhmans) of Kshattriya race.'"

The Bhāgavata thus explains the circumstance, ix. 6, 2 :

Rathītārasyāprajasya bhāryāyām tantave 'rthitāḥ | Angirā janayā mūsa brahmatarchasinaḥ sūtān | ete kshetre prasūtā vai punas tv Āngirasasḥ smṛitāḥ | Rathītārāṇām pravarāḥ kshattropetā drijātayaḥ |

"Angiras being solicited for progeny, begot sons possessing Brahmanical glory on the wife of Rathītara who was childless. These persons being born of a (Kshattriya's) wife, but afterwards called descendants of Angiras, were the chief of the Rathītaras, twice-born men (Brāhmans) of Kshattriya lineage."

It will be observed that in this last verse the Bhāgavata reads *kshettre prasūtāḥ* "born of the wife (of a Kshattriya)," instead of *kshattri-prasūtāḥ*, "sprung from a Kshattriya," and thus brings this verse into a closer conformity with the one preceding it. Professor Wilson (p. 359, note) considers that the form given to the legend in the Bhāgavata "is an afterthought, not warranted by the memorial verse cited in our text." It is difficult to determine whether or not this may be the case without knowing which of the two readings in that verse is the original one.

(6.) The Vishṇu Purāṇa next proceeds to enumerate the descendants of Ikshvāku son of Manu. The representative of his line in the twenty-first generation was Harita, of whom it is said, iv. 3, 5 :

" See Prof. Wilson's note in p. 359 on this passage.

*Ambarishasya Māndhātus tanayasya Yuvanāśvaḥ putro 'bhūt | tasmād
Hārīto yato 'ngiraso Hārītāḥ |*

“The son of Ambarīsha⁷⁸ son of Māndhātṛi was Yuvanāśva. From him sprang Harita, from whom the Hārīta Angirases were descended.”

These words are thus paraphrased by the Commentator: “from him sprang the Hārīta Angirases, Brāhmins, chief of the family of Harita” (*tasmād Hārītā Angiraso dvijāḥ Harita-gotra-pravarāḥ*).

The Linga Purāṇa, quoted by Prof. Wilson, states the same thing:

*Hārīto Yuvanāśvasya Hārītū yata ūtmajāḥ | ete hy Angirasaḥ pakṣaḥ
kṣhattropetā dvijātayaḥ |*

“The son of Yuvanāśva was Harita, of whom the Hārītas were sons. They were on the side of Angiras, twice-born men (Brāhmins) of Kshattriya lineage.”

And the Vāyu Purāṇa tells us with some variation:

*Hārīto Yuvanāśvasya Hārītū bhūrayaḥ smṛitāḥ | ete hy Angirasaḥ
putrāḥ kṣhattropetā dvijātayaḥ |*

“Harita was the son of Yuvanāśva: (after whom) many persons were called Hārītas. These were the sons of Angiras, twice-born men (Brāhmins) of Kshattriya race.”

This may mean that they were begotten by Angiras, as is said by the Bhāgavata (see above) to have been the case with Rathītara's sons. In that case, however, as Nābhāga and Ikshvāku were brothers and Rathītara was only the fifth in descent from Nābhāga, whilst Harita was the twenty-first after Ikshvāku,—Angiras (if we suppose one and the same person be meant in both cases) must have lived for sixteen generations!

Such are the remarkable notices given in the Purāṇas of the rise of different castes among the descendants of some of the sons of Manu. Vaivasvata the legendary head of the solar line of kings. I shall now add some similar particulars connected with the lunar dynasty.

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa (iv. 6, 2 ff.) Atri was the son of Brahmā, and the father of Soma (the moon), whom Brahmā installed as the sovereign of plants, Brāhmins and stars⁷⁹ (*aśeṣhaushadhi-dvijanakṣatrāṇām ādhipatyē 'bhyasechayat*). After celebrating the rājasūya sacrifice, Soma became intoxicated with pride, and carried off Tārā

⁷⁸ We have already had a person of this name the son of Nābhāga. See above.

⁷⁹ See Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1865, p. 135 ff.

(Star), the wife of Bṛihaspati the preceptor of the gods, whom, although admonished and entreated by Brahmā, the gods, and rishis, he refused to restore. Soma's part was taken by Uśanas; and Rudra, who had studied under Angiras, aided Bṛihaspati (*Angirasaścha sakūśopalabdhavidyo bhagavān Rudro Bṛihaspateḥ sākāyāṃ akarot*)⁶⁰ A fierce conflict ensued between the two sides, supported respectively by the gods and the Daityas, etc. Brahmā interposed, and compelled Soma to restore Tāra to her husband. She had, however, in the mean time become pregnant, and bore a son Budha (the planet Mercury), of whom, when strongly urged, she acknowledged Soma to be the father. Purūravas, as has been already mentioned, was the son of this Budha by Ilā, the daughter of Manu. The loves of Purūravas and the Apsaras Urvaśī are related in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xi. 5, 1, 1;⁶¹ in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, iv. 6, 19 ff.; in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 14;⁶² and in the Harivaṃśa, section 26. The Mahābhārata, Ādip. sect. 75, alludes to Purūravas as having been engaged in a contest with the Brāhmins. This passage will be quoted hereafter. According to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, iv. 7, 1, Purūravas had six sons, of whom the eldest was Āyus. Āyus had five sons: Nahusha, Kṣhatravṛiddha, Rambha, Rūji, and Anenas. The narrative proceeds (iv. 8, 1):

Kṣhatravṛiddhāt Sunahotraḥ⁶³ putro 'bhavat | Kāśa-Leśa-Gṛitsamādās trayo 'syābhavan | Gṛitsamadasya Saunakāś chāturvarṇya-pravarttayitā 'bhūt | Kāśasya Kāśirājaś tato Dīrghatamāḥ putro 'bhavat | Dhanvantariś Dīrghatamaso 'bhūt |

“Kṣhatravṛiddha had a son Sunahotra, who had three sons, Kāśa, Leśa, and Gṛitsamada. From the last sprang Saunaka, who originated the system of four castes.⁶⁴ Kāśa had a son Kāśirāja, of whom again Dīrghatamas was the son, as Dhanvantari was of Dīrghatamas.”

⁶⁰ This is the only mention I have ever happened to encounter of the great Mahādeva having been at school!

⁶¹ This passage is translated by Professor Müller in the Oxford Essays for 1856, pp. 62 f.; and the legend has been formed on the basis of the obscure hymn in the R.V. x. 95, in which the two names of Purūravas and Urvaśī occur as those of the interlocutors in a dialogue.

⁶² A short quotation has been already made from this narrative. See above, p. 158.

⁶³ Both my MSS. read *Sunahotra*. Professor Wilson has *Suhotra*.

⁶⁴ The Commentator explains the words *chāturvarṇya-pravarttayitā* by saying that the four castes were produced among his descendants (*ind-vaṃśe chatvāro varṇā abhavan*). This explanation agrees with the statement of the Vāyu Purāṇa given in the text.

The Vayu Purāṇa, as quoted by Professor Wilson (V. P. 4to. ed. p. 406), expresses the matter differently, thus :

Putro Ḡṛitsamadasya cha Sunako yasya Saunakaḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshatriyāś chaiva vaiśyāḥ śūdrās tathaiva cha | etasya vaṁśe samudbhūtā vichitraiḥ karmabhir dvijāḥ |

“The son of Ḡṛitsamada was Sunaka, from whom sprang Saunaka. In his family were born Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras, twice-born men with various functions.”⁸⁵

In like manner the Harivaṁśa states in section 29, verse 1520 :

Putro Ḡṛitsamadasyāpi Sunako yasya Saunakāḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshatriyāś chaiva vaiśyāḥ śūdrās tathaiva cha |

“The son of Ḡṛitsamada was Sunaka, from whom sprang the Saunakas, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras.”

Something similar is said of Ḡṛitsamati (who was the son of a Suhotra, although not the grandson of Kshattravṛiddha) in a following section, the 32nd of the same work, verse 1732 :

Sa chāpi Vitathaḥ putrān janayāmāsa pancha vai | Suhotraṁ cha Suhotāram Gayāṁ Gargāṁ tathaiva cha | Kapilāṁ cha mahātmanam Suhotrasya suta-dvayam | Kāśakaś cha mahāsattvas tathā Ḡṛitsamatir nripaḥ | tathā Ḡṛitsamateḥ putrā brāhmaṇāḥ kshatriyāḥ viśaḥ |

“Vitatha was the father of five sons, Suhotra, Suhotrī, Gaya, Garga, and the great Kapila. Suhotra had two sons, the exalted Kāśaka, and King Ḡṛitsamati. The sons of the latter were Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas.”

The Bhagavata Purāṇa, ix. 17, 2 f., has the following notice of Kshattravṛiddha's descendants :

Kshattravṛiddha-sutasyāsan Suhotrasyāmajās trayāḥ | Kāśyāḥ Kuśo Ḡṛitsamadaḥ iti Ḡṛitsamadād abhūt | Sunako Saunako yasya bahvṛichāḥ pravarō muniḥ |

“Suhotra, son of Kshattravṛiddha, had three sons, Kāśya, Kuśa, and Ḡṛitsamada. From the last sprang Sunaka, and from him Saunaka, the eminent Muni, versed in the Rig-veda.”

⁸⁵ On this Professor Wilson remarks, note, p. 406 : “The existence of but one caste in the age of purity, however incompatible with the legend which ascribes the origin of the four tribes to Brahmā, is everywhere admitted. Their separation is assigned to different individuals, whether accurately to any one may be doubted ; but the notion indicates that the distinction was of a social or political character.”

It is to be observed that this Gṛitsamada, who is here described as belonging to the regal lineage of Purūravas, is the reputed rishi of many hymns in the second Maṇḍala of the Rig-veda. Regarding him the Commentator Sāyaṇa has the following remarks in his introduction to that Maṇḍala :

Maṇḍala-drashṭā Gṛitsamadaḥ ṛishiḥ | sa cha pūrvam Āngirasa-kule Sunahotrasya putrah san yajna-kūle 'surair gṛihītaḥ Indreṇa mochitaḥ | paśchāt tad-rachanenaiva Bhṛigu-kule Sunaka-putro Gṛitsamada nāmū 'bhūt | tathā chānukramanikā "Yah Āngirasaḥ Sāunahotro bhūtvā Bhārgavaḥ Sāunako 'bhavat sa Gṛitsamado dritiyam maṇḍalam apaśyad" iti | tathā tasyaiva Sāunakasya vachanam ṛishy-anukramaṇe "tvam Agne" iti | "Gṛitsamadaḥ Sāunako Bhṛigutām gataḥ | Sāunahotro prakṛityā tu yah Āngirasa uchyate" iti | tasmād maṇḍala-drashṭā Sāunako Gṛitsamadaḥ ṛishiḥ |

"The seer (*i.e.* he who received the revelation) of this Maṇḍala was the rishi Gṛitsamada. He, being formerly the son of Sunahotra in the family of the Āngirases, was seized by the Asuras at the time of sacrifice and rescued by Indra. Afterwards, by the command of that god, he became the person named Gṛitsamada, son of Sunaka, in the family of Bhṛigu. Thus the Anukramanikā (Index to the Rig-veda) says of him : 'That Gṛitsamada, who, having been an Āngirasa, and son of Sunahotra, became a Bhārgava and son of Sunaka, saw the second Maṇḍala.' So, too, the same Sāunaka says in his Ṛishi-anukramaṇa regarding the Maṇḍala beginning with 'Thou, o Agni' :—'Gṛitsamada son of Sunaka who is declared to have been naturally an Āngirasa, and the son of Sunahotra, became a Bhṛigu.' Hence the seer of the Maṇḍala is the rishi Gṛitsamada son of Sunaka."

It will be noticed that (unless we are to suppose a different Gṛitsamada to be intended in each case) there is a discrepancy between the Purāṇas on the one hand, and Sāyaṇa and the Anukramanikā on the other ; as the Purāṇas make Gṛitsamada the son of Sunahotra or Sunahotra, and the father of Sunaka ; whilst the Anukramanikā, followed by Sāyaṇa, represents the same personage as having been, indeed, originally the son of Sunahotra of the race of Angiras, but as having afterwards become, by what process does not appear, the son of Sunaka of the race of Bhṛigu.

In his translation of the Rig-veda (ii. 207 f.) Professor Wilson refers

to a legend about King Vītahavya in the Anuśāsana-parvan of the Mahābhārata (verses 1944–2006) which gives a different account of Gṛitsamada's parentage. It begins: *Sṛiṇu rājān yathā rājā Vītahavyo mahāyusāḥ | rājarshir durlabham prāpto brāhmaṇyaṁ loka-satkṛitam |* "Hear, o king, how the renowned Vītahavya, the royal rishi, attained the condition of Brāhmaṇhood venerated by mankind, and so difficult to be acquired." It happened that Divodāsa, King of Kāśī (Benares) was attacked by the sons of Vītahavya, and all his family slain by them in battle. The afflicted monarch thereupon resorted to the sage Bhārādvāja, who performed for him a sacrifice in consequence of which a son named Pratardana was born to him. Pratardana, becoming an accomplished warrior, was sent by his father to take vengeance on the Vītahavyas. They rained upon him showers of arrows and other missiles, "as clouds pour down upon the Himālaya"⁸⁶ (*abhyavarshanta rājānam himavantam ivāmbudāḥ*); but he destroyed them all, and "they lay with their bodies besmeared with blood, like kinsuka-trees⁸⁷ cut down" (*apatan rudhirūdrāṅgā nikṛittā iva kiṁśukāḥ*). Vītahavya himself had now to fly to another sage, Bhṛigu, who promised him protection. The avenger Pratardana, however, followed and demanded that the refugee should be delivered up:

Asyedānīm badhād adya bhaviṣhyāmy anṛiṇaḥ pītuh | tam uvācha kṛipārishto Bhṛigur dharma-bhṛitām varaḥ | "nehāsti kṣhattriyaḥ kaśchit sarre hīme dvijātayaḥ" | etat tu vachanaṁ śrutvā Bhṛigos tathyam Pratardanaḥ | pādāv upasprīṣya śanaiḥ prahṛiṣhto rākyam abravīt | evam apy asmi bhagavan kṛitakṛityo na saṁśayaḥ | tyājito hi mayā jūtim esha rājā Bhṛigūdvaḥ | tatas tenābhyanuñjāto yayau rājā Pratardanaḥ | yathā-gatam mahārāja muktvā viśham ivoragaḥ | Bhṛigor vachana-mātreṇa sa cha brahmarshitām gataḥ | Vītahavyo mahārāja brahmarūditram eva cha | tasya Gṛitsamadaḥ putro rūpenendra ivāparaḥ | "Śakras tram" iti yo daityair nigrihītaḥ kilūbhavat | rigrāde varttate chāgryā śrutir yasya mahātmanah | yatra Gṛitsamado "brahman" brāhmaṇaiḥ sa mahīyate | sa brahmachārī viprarshiḥ śrīmān Gṛitsamado bhavat |

"Pratardana says: 'By the slaughter of this (Vītahavya) I shall

⁸⁶ This simile seems to indicate a familiarity with the manner in which the clouds collect, and discharge their contents on the outer range of the Himālaya.

⁸⁷ The Kinsuka is a tree bearing a red |

now, to-day, be acquitted of my debt to my father.' Bhṛigu, the most eminent of religious men, filled with compassion, answered : 'There is no Kshattriya here : all these are Brāhman.' Hearing this true assertion of Bhṛigu, Pratardana was glad, and gently touching the sage's feet, rejoined : 'Even thus, o glorious saint, I have gained my object for I have compelled this King (*i.e.* Rājanya) to relinquish his caste.' King Pratardana then, after receiving the sage's salutations, departed, as he came, like a serpent which has discharged its poison - while Vītahavya by the mere word of Bhṛigu became a Brāhman-rishi, and an utterer of the Veda. Ṛitsamada, in form like a second Indra, was his son ; he was seized by the Daityas, who said to him, 'Thou art Śakra' (Indra). In the Rig-veda the texts (*śruti*) of this great rishi stand first.⁸⁸ There Ṛitsamada is honoured by the Brāhman (with the title of) 'Brāhmān.' This illustrious personage was a Brahmacārin, and a Brāhman-rishi."

According to the enumeration of Ṛitsamada's family, which follows here, Śunaka was his descendant in the twelfth generation, and Śaunaka in the thirteenth. The story concludes with these words :

*Evaṁ vipratvam agamad Vītahavyo narādhipaḥ | Bhṛigoh prasādā
rājendra kshattriyaḥ kshattriyarshabha |*

"Thus did King Vītahavya, a Kshattriya, enter into the condition of Brāhmanhood by the favour of Bhṛigu."

In the next chapter we shall again notice Vītahavya among the Kshattriyas who are declared by tradition to have been the authors of Vedic hymns.

King Divodāsa was the sixth in descent from Kāśa brother of Ṛitsamada. Of him the Harivaṁśa states, section 32, verse 789 f. :

*Divodāsasya dāyādo brahmarshir Mitrāyur nṛipaḥ | Maitrāyaṇas
tataḥ Soma Maitreyās tu tataḥ smṛitāḥ | ete vai saṁśritāḥ paksham
kshattropetās tu Bhārgavāḥ |*

"The son of Divodāsa was the King Mitrāyu a Brāhman-rishi. From him sprang Soma Maitrāyaṇa, from whom the Maitreyas received their name. They, being of Kshattriya lineage, adhered as Bhārgavas to the side (of the latter)."

⁸⁸ If I have correctly interpreted this verse, and if by "first" we are to understand first in order, it does not accurately represent the state of the case : as the hymns of Ṛitsamada only appear in the second Maṇḍala.

The twentieth in descent from the same Kāsa, brother of Gṛtsamada, was Bhārgabhūmi, of whom the Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 8, 9 :

Bhārgasya Bhārgabhūmiḥ | tatas̄ chāturvarṇya-pravṛtitiḥ | ity ete Kāsayo bhūpatayaḥ kathitāḥ |

“The son of Bhārga was Bhārgabhūmi, from whom the four castes originated. Thus have the kings called Kāsis been declared.”

In two passages of the Harivaṁśa, names identical, or nearly so, are found, but with a different progenitor in each case, in reference to which a similar statement is made. The first is in section 29, verse 1596 :

Venuhotra-sutas̄ chāpi Bhargo nāma prajēsvaraḥ | Vatsasya Vatsabhūmis tu Bhṛigubhūmis tu Bhārgavāt | ete hy Angirasas̄ putrā jātū vaṁśe 'tha Bhārgave | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyās trayas̄ putrāḥ⁸⁹ sahasraśaḥ |

“The son of Venuhotra was King Bharga. From Vatsa sprang Vatsabhūmi, and Bhṛigubhūmi from Bhārgava. These descendants of Angiras were then born in the family of Bhṛigu, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas three (classes of) descendants in thousands.”

The second passage is in the 32nd section, verse 1752 :

Sukumārasya putras tu Satyaketur mahārathaḥ | suto 'bhavad mahatejā rājā parama-dhārmikāḥ | Vatsasya Vatsabhūmis tu Bhārgabhūmis tu Bhārgavāt | ete hy Angirasas̄ putrā jātū vaṁśe 'tha Bhārgave | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyāḥ sūdrās̄ cha Bharatarshabha |

“The warrior Satyaketu was the son of Sukumāra, and a prince of great lustre and virtue. From Vatsa sprang Vatsabhūmi, and Bhārgabhūmi from Bhārgava. These descendants of Angiras were then born in the family of Bhṛigu, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas and Sūdras.”

The parallel passage in the Vāyu Purāṇa, as quoted by Professor Wilson, p. 409, has names which are mostly different :

Venuhotra-sutas̄ chāpi Gārgyo vai nāma viśrutaḥ | Gārgyasya Gārgabhūmis tu Vatsa Vatsasya dhīmataḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyās̄ chaiva trayas̄ putrāḥ sudhārmikāḥ |

“The son of Venuhotra was the renowned Gārgya. Gārgabhūmi was the son of Gārgya; and Vatsa of the wise Vatsa. Brāhmins and Kshattriyas were the virtuous sons of these two.”⁹⁰

⁸⁹ Professor Wilson, p. 410, note, gives *tejoyuktāḥ*, “glorious,” instead of *trayas̄* *putrāḥ*, as the reading either of the Brāhma Purāṇa, or of the Harivaṁśa, or both.

⁹⁰ In regard to these passages the reader may consult the remarks of Professor

Another son of Āyus (son of Purūravas) was Rambha, of whom the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 17, 10 :

Rambhasya Rabhasaḥ putro Gabhīraś chākriyas tataḥ | tasya kshettre brahma jajne śṛiṇu vaiṣṇam Ancenasah |

“The son of Rambha was Rabhasa, from whom sprang Gabhīra and Akriya. From his wife Brāhmans were born : here now the race of Ancnas” (another son of Āyus).

Of the same Rambha the Vishṇu Purāṇa says (iv. 9, 8), *Rambhas to anapatyō 'bharat |* “Rambha was childless.”

Another son of Āyus, as we have seen, Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 8, 1, was Nahusha. He had six sons (V. P. iv. 10, 1), of whom one was Yayāti. The sons of the latter were Yadu, Turvasu, Druhyu, Anu, and Pūru (Ibid. iv. 10, 2).⁹¹ One of these five, Anu, had, as we are told, in the twelfth generation a son called Bali, of whom the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 18, 1, relates :

Hemāt Sulapās tasmād Balir yasya kshettre Dīrghatamasū Anga-Banga-Kalinga-Suhma-Pundrākhyam Bāleyaṁ kshattram ajanyata |

“From Hema sprang Sutapas ; and from him Bali, on whose wife⁹² Bāleya Kshattriyas (*i.e.* Kshattriyas of the race of Bali), called Anga, Banga, Kalinga, Suhma, and Pundra were begotten by Dīrghatamas.”

Professor Wilson (p. 445, note 12) quotes from the Vāyu Purāṇa a statement regarding the same person that he had “sons who founded the four castes” (*putrān chāturvarṇya-karān*) ; and refers to a passage in the Matsya Purāṇa, in which Bali is said to have obtained from

Wilson, p. 409, note 16, where a commentator (on the Brāhma Purāṇa, or the Hari-vaṁśa) is quoted, who says that in the passage from these works “another son of Vatsa the father of Alarka is specified, viz., Vatsabhūmi ; while Bhārgava is the brother of Vatsa ; and that (the persons referred to were) Angirases because Gālava belonged to that family, and (were born in the family) of Bhṛigu, because Visvāmitra belonged to it” (*Vatsasya Alarka-pituh putrāntaram ūha “Vatsabhūmir” iti | “Bhārgavād” Vatsa-bhṛituh | “Angiraso” Gālavasya Angirasatvāt | “Bhārgave” Viśvāmitrasya Bhārgavatvāt*). The Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 8, 6, says that Vatsa was one of the names of Prataṛdana, son of Divodāsa, a descendant of Kūśa, and a remote ancestor of Bhārgabhūmi. See however Professor Wilson’s note 13, p. 408. It is possible that the resemblance of the word Bhūrga to Bhārgava may have occasioned the descendants of the former to be connected with the family of Bhṛigu.

⁹¹ These five names occur together in the plural in a verse of the Rig-veda, i. 109, quoted above, p. 179.

⁹² *Kshettre bhāryāyāṁ jātavād Bāleyāḥ |* “They were called descendants of Bali because they were born of his wife.”

Brahmā the boon that he should “establish the four fixed castes” (*chaturō niyatān varṇāṃs tvaṃ sthāpayeti*).

The Harivaṃśa gives the following account of Bali, in the course of which the same thing is stated; section 31, verses 1682 ff.:

*Phenāt tu Sutapā jajne sutāḥ Sutapasō Baliḥ | jāto mānusha-yonau tu
sa rājā kānchaneshudhiḥ | mahāyogī sa tu Balir babhūva nṛipatiḥ purā |
putrān utpādayāmāsa pancha vaṃśa-karān bhuvi | Angaḥ prathamato
jajne Vangaḥ Suhmas tathaiva cha | Puṇdraḥ Kalingaś cha tathā Bāle-
yaṃ kshatṛam uchyaṭe | Bāleyā brāhmaṇāś chaiva tasya vaṃśakarā
bhuvi | Bales tu Brahmaṇā datto varaḥ prītena Bhārata | mahāyogitvam
āyus cha kalpasya parimāṇataḥ | saṅgrāme chāpy ajeyatvaṃ dharme
chaiva pradhānataḥ | trailokya-darśanaṃ chāpi prādhānyam prasave
tathā | bale chāpratimatvaṃ vai dharma-tattvārtha-darśanam | chaturō
niyatān varṇāṃs tvaṃ cha sthāpayitēti cha | ity ukto vibhūnā rājā Baliḥ
sūntim parāṃ yayau | tasyaite tanayāḥ sarve kṣhetrajā muni-puṅgavāt |
sambhūtā Dīrghatapasāḥ Sudeshṇūyām mahaujausaḥ |*

“From Phenā sprang Sutapas; and the son of Sutapas was Bali. He was born of a human mother, this prince with the golden quiver; but King Bali was of old a great yogin. He begot five sons, who were the heads of races upon the earth. Anga was first born, then Vanga, Suhma, Puṇdra and Kalinga; such are the names of the Kshattriyas descended from Bali (*Bāleyāḥ*). There were also Bāleya Brāhmans, founders of his race upon the earth. By Brahmā, who was pleased, the boon was granted to Bali that he should be a great yogin, should live the entire length of a Kalpa, should be invincible in battle, should have pre-eminence in virtue, should have the power of beholding the whole three worlds, should have a superiority in begetting progeny, should be unequalled in strength, and should comprehend the essential principles of duty. And being thus addressed by the Lord in these words, ‘Thou shalt establish the four regulated castes,’ King Bali attained supreme tranquillity. All these sons, the offspring of his wife, were begotten on Sudeshṇā by the glorious muni Dīrghatapas.”⁹³

⁹³ M. Langlois must have found in his MS. a different reading of the last line, as he renders it otherwise. Professor Wilson remarks (V.P. pp. 444, note 12): “The Matsya calls Bali the son of Virochana, and *āyu-kalpa-pramāṇīkaḥ*, ‘existing for a whole Kalpa;’ identifying him, therefore, only in a different period and form, with the Bali of the Vāmana Avatāra” (Dwarf-incarnation). (See Wilson’s Vishṇu P. p. 265, note, and the Bhāgavata P. ix. sects. 15–23, and other works quoted in the 4th vol. of this work, pp. 116 ff.

Apratiratha is recorded as being a descendant of Pūru (another of Yayāti's sons), in the thirteenth generation (Wilson, p. 448). Of him it is related, Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 19, 2 :

Ṛṭeyoḥ Rantināraḥ putro 'bhūt | Tamsam Apratiratham Dhruvam cha Rantināraḥ putrān acāpa | Apratirathāt Kaṇvaḥ | tasyāpi Medhātithiḥ | yataḥ Kaṇvāyanā dvijā babhūbhuh | Tamsor Anilas tato Dushyantādyaś chatvāraḥ putrā babhūruḥ | Dushyantāch chakravartti Bharato 'bhavat |

"Ṛṭeyu had a son Rantināra, who had Tansu, Apratiratha and Dhruva for his sons. From Apratiratha sprang Kaṇva. His son was Medhātithi; from whom the Kāṇvāyana Brāhmins were descended. From Tansu sprang Anila, who had four sons, Dushyanta, and others. From Dushyanta sprang the emperor Bharata."

With some variations the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 20, 1 :

Pūrora vaṁsam pravakshyāmi yatra jāto 'si Bhārata | yatra rājārshayo vaṁsyā brahma-vaṁśyaś cha jajnire | . . . 6. Ṛṭeyoḥ Rantibhāro 'bhūt trayas tasyātmaḥ nṛipa | Sumatir Dhruvo 'pratirathāḥ Kaṇvo 'pratirathāmajaḥ | tasya Medhātithis tasmāt Praskaṇvādya dvijātayaḥ | putro 'bhūt Sumater Raibhyo Dushyantas tat-suto mataḥ |

"I shall declare the race of Pūru from which thou hast sprung, o Bhārata; and in which there have been born royal rishis, and men of Brahmanical family . . . 6. From Ṛṭeyu sprang Rantibhāra; who had three sons, Sumati, Dhruva, and Apratiratha. Kaṇva was the son of the last; and the son of Kaṇva was Medhātithi, from whom the Praskaṇvas and other Brāhmins were descended."

A little further on, in the chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa just quoted (iv. 19, 10), Kaṇva and Medhātithi are mentioned as having had a different parentage from that before assigned, viz., as being the son and grandson of Ajamiḍha, who was a descendant in the ninth generation of Tansu, the brother of Apratiratha :

Ajamīdhāt Kaṇvaḥ | Kaṇvād Medhātithir yataḥ Kāṇvāyanā dvijāḥ | Ajamīdhasyūnyaḥ putro Bṛihadishuḥ |

"From Ajamiḍha sprang Kaṇva: from Kaṇva Medhātithi, from whom were descended the Kāṇvāyana Brāhmins. Ajamiḍha had another son Bṛihadishu."⁹⁴

⁹⁴ On this the Commentator remarks: *Ajamīdhasya Kaṇvādir oko vaṁśo Bṛihadisho-ādīr aparō vaṁśo Nīlādir aparāḥ Rikshādīs chāparāḥ |* "Ajamiḍha had one set of descendants, consisting of Kaṇva, etc., a second consisting of Bṛihadishu, etc.,

On this last passage Professor Wilson observes, p. 452, note : "The copies agree in this reading, yet it can scarcely be correct. Kaṇva has already been noticed as the son of Apratiratha." But the compiler of the Purāṇa may here be merely repeating the discordant accounts which he found in the older authorities which he had before him.

Regarding Ajamīdha the Bhāgavata says, ix. 21, 21 :

Ajamīdhasya vaṁśyāḥ syuḥ Priyamedhādayo dvijāḥ | Ajamīdhād Bṛihadishuḥ |

"Priyamedha and other Brāhmins were descendants of Ajamīdha. From Ajamīdha sprang Bṛihadishu."

The Viṣṇu Purāṇa (iv. 19, 16) gives the following account of Mudgala, a descendant of Ajamīdha in the seventh generation :

Mudgalāc cha Maudgalyāḥ kṣhattropetā dvijātayo babhūvuḥ | Mudgalād Bahvaśvo Bahvaśvād Divodāso 'halyā cha mithunam abhūt | Saradvato 'halyāyām Sātānando 'bharat |

"From Mudgala were descended the Maudgalya Brāhmins of Kshatriya stock. From Mudgala sprang Bahvaśva; from him again twins, Divodāsa and Ahalyā. Sātānanda was born to Saradvat⁶⁵ by Ahalyā."

Similarly the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 21, 33 f. :

Mudgalād brahma nirṛittam gotram Maudgalya-sanjnitam | mithunam Mudgalād Bhārmīyād Divodāsaḥ pumān abhūt | Ahalyā kanyakā yasyām Sātānandas tu Gautamāt |

"From Mudgala sprang Brāhmins, the family called Maudgalyas. To the same father, who was son of Bharmīyaśva, were born twins, Divodāsa, a male, and Ahalyā, a female child, who bore Sātānanda to Gautama."

The words of the Matsya Purāṇa on the same subject, as quoted by Professor Wilson, p. 454, note 50, are :

Mudgalasyāpi Maudgalyāḥ kṣhattropetā dvijātāyaḥ | ete hy Angirasaḥ pakshe saṁsthitāḥ Kaṇva-Mudgalāḥ |

"From Mudgala sprang the Maudgalyas, Brāhmins of Kshatriya stock. These Kaṇva and Mudgalas stood on the side of Angiras."

a third consisting of Nīla, etc., and a fourth consisting of Riksha, etc." The last two sons of Ajamīdha are mentioned further on, Nīla in v. 15, and Riksha in v. 18, of the same chapter of the V. P.

⁶⁵ The Commentator says this is a name of Gautama. Regarding Ahalyā and Gautama see the story extracted above, p. 121, from the Rāmāyana.

The Harivaṁśa, section 32, verse 1781, thus notices the same family :

*Mudgalasya tu dāyādo Maudgalyaḥ sumahāyaśūḥ | ete sarve mahāt-
māno kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ | ete hy Angirasaḥ pakshaṁ saṁśritāḥ
Kāṇva-Mudgalāḥ | Maudgalyasya suto jyeshṭho brahmarshiḥ suma-
hāyaśūḥ |*

“The renowned Maudgalya was the son of Mudgala. All these great personages were Brāhmins of Kshattriya descent. These Kāṇvas and Mudgalas adhered to the side of Angiras. Maudgalya's eldest son was a celebrated Brahman-rishi.”

Regarding Kshemaka, a future descendant of Ajamīdha in the 31st generation, the Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 21, 4 :

*Tato Niramitras tasmāch cha Kshemakaḥ | tatrāyaṁ slokaḥ | “brah-
ma-kshattrasya yo yonir⁹⁶ vaṁśo rājarshi-satkṛitah | Kshemakam prāpya
rājānaṁ sa saṁsthāṁ prāpsyate kalau |*

“From him (Khaṇḍapāṇi) shall spring Niramitra; and from him Kshemaka; regarding whom this verse (is current): ‘The race, consecrated by royal rishis, which gave birth to Brāhmins and Kshattriyas, shall terminate in the Kali age, after reaching King Kshemaka.’”

The corresponding verse quoted by Professor Wilson (p. 462, note 24) from the Matsya and Vāyu Purāṇas substitutes *devarshi*, “divine rishis,” or “gods and rishis,” for the *rājarshi*, “royal rishis,” of the Vishṇu Purāṇa. The verse in question is there described as *anuvāṁśa-śloka* ‘*yaṁ gīto vipraiḥ purātanaḥ*, “a genealogical verse sung by ancient Brāhmins.”

According to the details given from the Purāṇas in this section several persons, Gṛtsamada, Kāṇva, Medhātithi, and Priyamedha, to whom hymns of the Rig-veda are ascribed by Indian tradition as their rishis, were of Kshattriya descent.

In the line of the same Tansu, brother of Apratiratha, we find in the sixth generation a person named Garga, of whom the Vishṇu Purāṇa relates, iv. 19, 9 :

Gargāt S'iniḥ | tato Gārgyāḥ S'ainyāḥ kshattropetā dvijātayo babhūvuḥ |

“From Garga sprang Sini; from them were descended the Gārgyas and Sainyas, Brāhmins of Kshattriya race.”⁹⁷

⁹⁶ On this words the Commentator has this note : *Brahmaṇaḥ brāhmaṇasya Kshattrasya kshattriyasya cha yoniḥ kāraṇam pūrvain yathoktatvāt |* “‘Brahma’ and ‘Kshattr’ stand for Brāhman and Kshattriya. This race is the ‘source,’ cause (of these), as has been declared above.”

⁹⁷ On this the Commentator only remarks : *Tatas tūbhyāṁ Gārgyāḥ S'ainyāḥ cha*

Similarly the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 21, 19, says:

Gargāt S'ini's tato Gārgyaḥ kshattrād brahma hy avarttata |

"From Garga sprang S'ini; from them Gārgya, who from a Kshatriya became a Brāhman."⁹⁸

The Vishṇu Purāṇa records a similar circumstance regarding the family of Mahāvīryya, the brother of Garga (iv. 19, 10):

Mahāvīryyād Urukshayo nāma putro 'bhūt | tasya Trayyarūṇa-Pushkarīṇau Kapiś cha putra-trayam abhūt | tach cha tritayam api paśchād vipratām upajagāma |

"Mahāvīryya had a son named Urukshaya; who again had three sons, Trayyarūṇa, Puskarin, and Kapi; and these three⁹⁹ afterwards entered into the state of Brāhmans (*i.e.* became such)."

The Bhāgavata states, ix. 21, 19 f.:

Duritakshayo Mahāvīryyāt tasya Trayyārūṇiḥ Kaviḥ | Pushkarārūṇiṭy atra ye brāhmaṇa-gatīm gatāḥ |

"From Mahāvīryya sprang Duritakshaya. From him were descended Trayyarūṇi, Kavi, and Pushkarārūṇi, who attained to the destination of Brāhmans."¹⁰⁰

According to the Matsya Purāṇa also, as quoted by Professor Wilson (451, note 22), "all these sons of Uruksha (*sic*) attained the state of Brāhmans" (*Urukshataḥ sutū hy ete sarve brāhmaṇatām gatāḥ*); and in another verse of the same Purāṇa, cited in the same note, it is added: *Kāryūnām tu varā hy ete trayāḥ proktā maharshayaḥ | Gargāḥ Sankṛitayāḥ Kāryū kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ |* "These three classes of great rishis, viz. the Gargas, Sankṛitis, and Kāryas, Brāhmans of Kshattriya race, are declared to be the most eminent of the Kāryas, or descendants of Kavi." The original Garga was, as we have seen, the brother of Mahāvīryya, the father of Kavi, or Kapi; while, according to the

Garga-vaṁśyatvāt S'ini-vaṁśyatvāch cha samūkhyātāḥ | kshattriyā eva kenachit kārṇena brāhmaṇās cha babhūvuh | "They were called Gārgyas and S'ainyas because they were of the race of Gārga and S'ini. Being indeed Kshattriyas they became Brāhmans from some cause or other."

⁹⁸ The Commentator does not say how this happened.

⁹⁹ Unless Professor Wilson's MSS. had a different reading from mine, it must have been by an oversight that he has translated here, "The last of whom became a Brāhman."

¹⁰⁰ On this the Commentator annotates: *Ye atra kshattrā-vaṁśe brāhmaṇa-gatīm brāhmaṇa-rūpatām gatās te |* "Who in this Kshattriya race attained the destination of Brāhmans,—the form of Brāhmans."

Vishṇu Purāṇa (iv. 19, 9), and Bhāgarata Purāṇa (ix. 21, 1), Sankṛiti was the son of Nara, another brother of Mahavīrya.

The series of passages just quoted is amply sufficient to prove that according to the traditions received by the compilers of the ancient legendary history of India (traditions so general and undisputed as to prevail over even their strong hierarchical prepossessions), Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and even Vaiśyas and Sūdras, were, at least in many cases, originally descended from one and the same stock. The European critic can have no difficulty in receiving these obscure accounts as true in their literal sense; though the absence of precise historical data may leave him without any other guide than speculation to assist him in determining the process by which a community originally composed for the most part of one uniform element, was broken up into different classes and professions, separated from each other by impassable barriers. On the other hand, the possibility of this common origin of the different castes, though firmly based on tradition, appeared in later times so incredible, or so unpalatable, to some of the compilers of the Purāṇas, that we find them occasionally attempting to explain away the facts which they record, by statements such as we have encountered in the case of the Kings Rathītara and Bāli, that their progeny was begotten upon their wives by the sages Angiras and Dīrghatamas, or Dīrghatapās; or by the introduction of a miraculous element into the story, as we have already seen in one of the legends regarding Gṛitsamada, and as we shall have occasion to notice in a future chapter in the account of Viśvāmitra.

CHAPTER III.

ON THE MUTUAL RELATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF
INDIAN SOCIETY ACCORDING TO THE HYMNS OF THE RIG-
AND ATHARVA-VEDAS.

In the last chapter I have attempted to shew that in general the authors of the hymns of the Rig-veda regarded the whole of the Aryan people, embracing not only the priests and chiefs, but the middle classes also of the population, as descended from one common father, or ancestor, whom they designate by the name of Manu. This reference to a common progenitor excludes, of course, the supposition that the writers by whom it is made could have had any belief in the myth which became afterwards current among their countrymen, that their nation consisted of four castes, differing naturally in dignity, and separately created by Brahmā.

In that chapter I proposed to leave for further consideration any specific notices which the Rig-veda might contain regarding the different classes of which the society contemporary with its composition was made up. On this consideration I now enter. As that great collection of hymns embodies numerous references, both to the authors themselves and to the other agents in the celebration of divine worship, it may be expected to supply, incidentally or indirectly, at least, some information respecting the opinion which these ministers of religion entertained of themselves, and of the ecclesiastical and civil relations in which they stood to the other sections of the community. I shall now endeavour to shew how far this expectation is justified by an examination of the Rig-veda.

It will be understood, from what I have already (pp. 7 and 11 ff.) written on the subject of that one hymn of the Rig-veda in which the

four castes are distinctly specified, *i.e.* the Purusha Sūkta, that in the enquiry, which I am now about to undertake, I confine myself in the first instance to those hymns which for any reason (see p. 4, above) appear to be the most ancient, leaving out of account until afterwards, all those compositions which, like the one just mentioned, are presumably of a later age.

It will, I think, be found on investigation that not only the older hymns, but the great bulk of the hymns, supply no distinct evidence of the existence of a well defined and developed caste-system at the time when they were composed.

SECT. I.—*On the signification of the words brāhmān, brāhmaṇa, etc., in the Rig-veda.*

As the Rig-veda Sanhitā is made up almost entirely of hymns in praise of the gods, it was not to be anticipated that it should furnish any systematic or detailed explanations on the points which form the object of our enquiry. But as was natural in compositions of the early and simple age to which these hymns belong, they do not always confine themselves to matters strictly connected with their principal subject, but indulge in occasional references to the names, families, personal merits, qualifications, relations, circumstances, and fortunes of the poets by whom they were produced, or of their patrons or other contemporaries, or of their predecessors.

I have, in another volume of this work,¹ enquired into the views which the authors of the hymns appear to have held on the subject of their own authorship. The conclusion at which I arrived was, that they did not in general look upon their compositions as divinely inspired, since they frequently speak of them as the productions of their own minds (vol. iii. pp. 128-140). But although this is most commonly the case (and especially, as we may conjecture, in regard to the older hymns), there is no doubt that they also attached a high value to these productions, which they describe as being acceptable to the gods (R.V. v. 45, 4; v. 85, 1; vii. 26, 1, 2; x. 23, 6; x. 54, 6; x. 105,

¹ Original Sanskrit Texts, vol. iii. pp. 116-161.

8), whose activity they stimulated (iii. 34, 1; vii. 19, 11), and whose blessing they drew down. In some of the hymns a supernatural character or insight is claimed for the rishis (i. 179, 2; vii. 76, 4; iii. 53, 9; vii. 33, 11 ff.; vii. 87, 4; vii. 88, 3 ff.; x. 14, 15; x. 62, 4, 5), and a mysterious efficacy is ascribed to their compositions (vol. iii. pp. 173 f.) The rishis called their hymns by various names, as *arka*, *uktha*, *rich*, *gir*, *dhī*, *nītha*, *nivid*, *mantra*, *mati*, *sūkta*, *stoma*, *vāch*, *vachas*, etc. etc.; and the also applied to them the appellation of *brahma* in numerous passages.² That in the passages in question *brahma* has generally the sense of hymn or prayer is clear from the context of some of them (as in i. 37, 4; viii. 32, 27, where the word is joined with the verb *gāyata*, “sing,” and in vi. 69, 7, where the gods are supplicated to hear the *brahma*), as well as from the fact that the poets are said (in i. 62, 13; v. 73, 10; vii. 22, 9; vii. 31, 11; x. 80, 7) to have fashioned or generated the prayer, in the same way as they are said to have fashioned or generated hymns in other texts (as i. 109, 1; v. 2, 11; vii. 15, 4; viii. 77, 4; x. 23, 6; x. 39, 14), where the sense is indisputable; while in other places (iv. 16, 21; v. 29, 15; vi. 17, 13; vi. 50, 6; vii. 61, 6; x. 89, 3) new productions of the poets are spoken of under the appellation of *brahma*.

That *brahma* has the sense of hymn or prayer is also shown by the two following passages. In vii. 26, 1, it is said: *Na somaḥ Indram asuto mamūda na abrahmāṇo maghavānaṁ sūtasaḥ | tasmai ukthaṁ janaye yaj jujoshad nṛivad navīyaḥ śrinavad yathā naḥ |* 2. *Ukthe ukthe somaḥ Indram mamūda nīthe nīthe maghavānaṁ sūtasaḥ | yad im̐ sabādhaḥ pitaraṁ na putrūḥ samāna-dakṣhūḥ avase havante |* “Soma unless poured out does not exhilarate Indra; nor do libations without hymns (*abrahmāṇaḥ*). I generate for him a hymn (*uktha*) which he will love, so that like a man he may hear our new (production). 2. At each hymn (*uktha*) the soma exhilarates Indra, at each psalm (*nītha*) the libations (exhilarate) Maghavat, when the worshippers united, with one effort, invoke him for help, as sons do a father.”³ Again in x. 105, 8, it is

² For a list of these texts and other details which are here omitted, I refer to my article “On the relations of the priests to the other classes of Indian Society in the Vedic age,” in the Journal of the Roy. As. Soc. for 1866 (from which this section is mostly borrowed).

³ It is clear from the context of this passage that *abrahmāṇaḥ* means “unattended by hymns,” and not “without a priest.” After saying that soma-libations without

said: *Ava no r̥ijindā śiśhi r̥ichā canema an̥richaḥ | na abrahmā r̥idhag joshati tve* | "Drive away our calamities. With a hymn (*r̥ichā*) may we slay the men who are hymnless (*an̥richaḥ*). A sacrifice without prayer (*abrahmā*) does not please thee well."

I have said that great virtue is occasionally attributed by the poets to their hymns and prayers; and this is true of those sacred texts when called by the name of *brahma*, as well as when they receive other appellations, such as *mantra*. Thus it is said, iii. 53, 12, *Viśvāmitrasya rakshati brahma idam Bhūrataṁ janam* | "This prayer (*brahma*) of Viśvāmitra protects the tribe of Bharata;" v. 40, 6, *Gūḥam sūryaṁ tamasā apavratena turīyena brahmaṇā arindad Atriḥ* | "Atri with the fourth prayer (*brahmaṇā*) discovered the sun concealed by unholy darkness;" vi. 75, 19, *Brahma varma mama antaram* | "Prayer (*brahma*) is my protecting armour;" vii. 33, 3, *Eva id nu kam dūśarājne Sudāsam pravad Indro brahmaṇā vo Vasishṭhāḥ* | "Indra preserved Sudās in the battle of the ten kings through your prayer, o Vasishṭhas." In ii. 23, 1, *Brahmaṇaspati* is said to be the "great king of prayers" (*jyeshṭharājam brahmaṇām*) (compare vii. 97, 3), and in verse 2, to be the "generator of prayers" (*janitā brahmaṇām*); whilst in x. 61, 7, prayer is declared to have been generated by the gods (*svādhyo ajanayan brahma devāḥ*). Compare vii. 35, 7.

Brāhmān in the masculine is no doubt derived from the same root as *brāhmān* neuter, and though differing from it in accent⁴ as well as gender, must be presumed to be closely connected with it in signification, just as the English "prayer" in the sense of a petition would be with "prayer," a petitioner, if the word were used in the latter sense. As, then, *brāhmān* in the neuter means a hymn or prayer, *brāhmān* in the masculine must naturally be taken to denote the person who composes or repeats a hymn or prayer. We do not, however, find that the composers of the hymns are in general designated by the word

hymns are unacceptable to Indra, the poet does not add that he is himself a *priest*, or that he is attended by one, but that he generates a hymn; and the same sense is required by what follows in the second verse. Accordingly we find that Sāyana explains *abrahmāṇaḥ* by *stotra-hīnāḥ*, "destitute of hymns." The same sense is equally appropriate in the next passage cited, x. 105, 8. On iv. 16, 9, where *abrahmā* is an epithet of *dasyu*, "demon," Sāyana understands it to mean "without a priest," but it may mean equally well or better, "without devotion, or prayer."

⁴ In *brāhmān* neuter the accent is on the first syllable; in *brāhmān* masculine on the last.

brāhmān, the name most commonly applied to them being *ṛishi*, though they are also called *vipra*, *vedhas*, *kavi*, etc. (see vol. iii. of this work, pp. 116 ff.). There are, however, a few texts, such as i. 80, 1; i. 164, 35; ii. 12, 6; ii. 39, 1; v. 31, 4; v. 40, 8; ix. 113, 6, etc., in which the *brāhmān* may or must be understood as referred to in the capacity of author of the hymn he utters. So, too, in ii. 20, 4, and vi. 21, 8, a new composer of hymns seems to be spoken of under the appellation of *nutānasya brāhmānyataḥ*; and in ii. 19, 8, the Ṛṛtsamadas are referred to both as the fabricators of a new hymn (*manma navīyaḥ*) and as (*brāhmānyāntaḥ*) performing devotion.⁵ In three passages, vii. 28, 2; vii. 70, 5, and x. 89, 16, the *brāhmā* and *brāhmāni*, "prayer" and "prayers," or "hymn" and "hymns," of the *ṛishis* are spoken of; and in vii. 22, 9, it is said, "that both the ancient and the recent *ṛishis* have generated prayers" (*ye cha pūrve ṛishayo ye cha nūtnāḥ Indra brāhmāni janayanta viprāḥ*). In i. 177, 5, we find *brāhmāni karoḥ*, "the prayers of the poet." The fact that in various hymns the authors speak of themselves as having received valuable gifts from the princes their patrons, and that they do not there allude to any class of officiating priests as separate from themselves, would also seem to indicate an identity of the poet and priest at that early period.

The term *brahman* must therefore, as we may conclude, have been originally applied (1) to the same persons who are spoken of elsewhere in the hymns as *ṛishi*, *kavi*, etc., and have denoted devout worshippers and contemplative sages who composed prayers and hymns which they themselves recited in praise of the gods. Afterwards when the ceremonial gradually became more complicated, and a division of sacred functions took place, the word was more ordinarily employed (2) for a minister of public worship, and at length came to signify (3) one particular kind of priest with special duties. I subjoin a translation of the different passages in which the word occurs in the Rig-veda, and I have attempted to classify them according as it seems to bear, in each case, the first, second, or third of the senses just indicated. This, however, is not always an easy task, as in many of these texts there is nothing to fix the meaning of the term with precision, and one signi-

⁵ In another place (x. 96, 5) Indra is said to have been lauded by former worshippers, *pūrvebhīr yājvādhīḥ*, a term usually confined (as *brāhmān* was frequently applied) in after times to the offerers of sacrifice.

fication easily runs into another, and the same person may be at once the author and the reciter of the hymn.

I. Passages in which *brāhmān* may signify "contemplator, sage, or poet."

(In all these texts I shall leave the word untranslated.)

i. 80, 1. *Itthā hi some id made brahmā chakāra varddhanam* |

"Thus in his exhilaration from soma juice the *brāhmān* has made (or uttered) a magnifying⁶ (hymn)."

i. 164, 34. *Prichhāmi tvā param antam prithivyāḥ prichhāmi yatra bhuvanasya nābhiḥ | prichhāmi tvā vṛishṇo āsvasya retaḥ prichhāmi vāchaḥ pāramam vyoma* | 35. *Iyaṁ vediḥ paro antaḥ prithivyāḥ ayaṁ yajño bhuvanasya nābhiḥ ayaṁ somo vṛishṇo āsvasya reto brahmā ayam vāchaḥ paramam vyoma* |

"I ask thee (what is) the remotest end of the earth; I ask where is the central point of the world; I ask thee (what is) the seed of the vigorous horse; I ask (what is) the highest heaven⁷ of speech. 35. This altar is the remotest end of the earth; this sacrifice is the central point of the world; this soma is the seed of the vigorous horse; this *brāhmān* is the highest heaven of speech.⁸

ii. 12, 6. *Yo radhrasya choditū yaḥ kṛisasya yo brahmaṇo nādhamānasya kireḥ* |

"He (Indra) who is the quickener of the sluggish, of the emaciated, of the suppliant *brāhmān* who praises him," etc.

vi. 45, 7. *Brahmānam brahma-vāhasam gīrbhiḥ sakḥāyam ṛigmiyam | gūm na dohase huve* |

"With hymns I call Indra, the *brāhmān*,—the carrier of prayers (*brāhmā-vāhasam*), the friend who is worthy of praise,—as men do a cow which is to be milked."

vii. 33, 11. *Uta asi Maitrāvaruṇo Vasishṭha Urvaśyūḥ brahman manaso 'dhi jūtaḥ | drapsam skannam brahmaṇū daivyena viśve devūḥ pushkare tvā 'dadanta* |

"And thou, o Vasishṭha, art a son of Mitra and Varuṇa (or a Maitrāvaruṇa-priest), born, o *brāhmān*, from the soul of Urvaśī. All the

⁶ *Varddhanam* = *vriddhi-karam stotram* (Sāyana).

⁷ Compare R.V. iii. 32, 10; x. 109, 4, below, and the words, the highest heaven of invention."

⁸ Compare R.V. x. 71 and x. 125.

gods placed in the vessel thee, the drop which had fallen through divine contemplation."

viii. 16, 7. *Indro brahmā Indrah ṛishir Indrah puru puruhūtaḥ | mahān mahībhīḥ śachībhīḥ |*

"Indra is a *brāhmān*, Indra is a rishi,⁹ Indra is much and often invoked, great through his mighty powers."

x. 71, 11. (See the translation of the entire hymn below. The sense of *brāhmān* in verse 11 will depend on the meaning assigned to *jāta-vidyā*.)

x. 77, 1. (In this passage, the sense of which is not very clear, the word *brāhmān* appears to be an epithet of the host of Maruts.)

x. 85, 3. *Somam manyate papivān yat sampiṁshanti oshadhīm | somaṁ yam brahmāno vidur na tasya aśnāti kaśchana |* 16. *Dve te chakre Sūrye brahmāno ṛituthā viduḥ | atha ekaṁ chakraṁ yad guhā tad addhātayaḥ id viduḥ |* 34. . . . *Sūryāṁ yo brahmā vidyāt sa id vādhūyam arhati |*

"A man thinks he has drunk soma when they crush the plant (so called). But no one tastes of that which the *brāhmāns* know to be soma (the moon). 16. The *brāhmāns* rightly know, Sūryā, that thou hast two wheels; but it is sages (*addhātayaḥ*) alone who know the one wheel which is hidden. 34. The *brāhmān* who knows Sūryā deserves the bride's garment."¹⁰

x. 107, 6. *Tam eva ṛishiṁ tam u brahmānam āhur yajnanyaṁ sāma-gām uktha-śūsam | sa śukrasya tanvo veda tisraḥ yaḥ prathamam dakṣinayā rarādha |*

"They call him a rishi, him a *brāhmān*, reverend, a chanter of Sāma verses (*sāma-gām*), and reciter of *ukthas*,—he knows the three forms of the brilliant (Agni)—the man who first worshipped with a largess."

Even in later times a man belonging to the Kshattriya and Vaiśya castes may perform all the Vedic rites. Any such person, therefore, and consequently a person not a Brāhman might, according to this verse, have been called, though, no doubt, figuratively, a priest (*brahmā*).

⁹ Different deities are called *ṛishi*, *kavi*, etc., in the following texts: v. 29, 1; vi. 14, 2; viii. 6, 41; ix. 96, 18; x. 107, 7; x. 27, 22; x. 112, 9.

¹⁰ See Dr. Haug's Ait. Br. vol. i. Introduction, p. 20.

x. 117, 7. . . . *Vadan brahmā avadato vaniṣṭhān prīṇann āpir aprīṇantam abhi syāt* |

"A *brāhmān*" who speaks is more acceptable than one who does not speak: a friend who is liberal excels one who is illiberal."¹¹

x. 125, 5. *Yaṁ kāmāye taṁ tam ugraṁ kṛinomi tam brahmāṇaṁ tam ṛishiṁ taṁ sumedhām* |

"I (says Vāch) make him whom I love formidable, him a *brāhman*, him a *rishi*, him a sage."

This would seem to prove that sometimes, at least, the *brāhmān* was such not by birth or nature, but by special favour and inspiration of the goddess. In this passage, therefore, the word cannot denote the member of a caste, who would not be dependent on the good will of Vāch for his position.

II. In the passages which follow the word *brāhmān* does not seem to signify so much a "sage or poet," as a "worshipper or priest."

i. 10, 1. *Gāyanti trā gāyatrīṇo archanti arkam arkiṇaḥ* | *brahmāṇas tvā Satakrato ud vaṁśam iva yemire* |

"The singers sing thee, the hymnners recite a hymn, the *brāhmāns*, o Satakratu, have raised thee up like a pole."¹²

i. 33, 9. *Amānyamānān abhi manyamānair nir brahmaḥ air adhamo dasyum Indra* |

"Thou, Indra, with the believers, didst blow against the unbelievers, with the *brāhmāns* thou didst blow away the Dasyu."¹³

i. 101, 5. *Yo viśvasya jagataḥ prānatas patir yo brahmane prathamogāḥ avindat* | *Indro yo dasyūn adharūn avātirat* . . .

"Indra, who is lord of all that moves and breathes, who first found the cows for the *brāhmān*, who hurled down the Dasyu."

i. 108, 7. *Yad Indrāgnī madathaḥ sve durone yad brahmaṇi rūjani vā yajatrā* | *ataḥ pari ṛishiṇūv ā hi yūtam athā somasya pibataṁ sutasya* |

"When, o adorable Indra and Agni, ye are exhilarated in your own

¹¹ The word here seems clearly to indicate an order or profession, as the *silent* priest is still a priest.

¹² See Dr. Haug's remark on this verse, Ait. Br. Introd. p. 20. The contexts of the two last passages are given in my article "Miscellaneous Hymns from the R. and A. Vedas," pp. 32 f.

¹³ Compare i. 5, 8; i. 7, 1; viii. 16, 9. See Dr. Haug's remark on this verse, Ait. Br. Introd. p. 20.

¹⁴ See on this verse the remarks of M. Bréal, *Hercule et Cacus*, etc. p. 152.

abode, or with a *brāhmān* or a *rājan*,¹⁵ come thence, ye vigorous (deities), and then drink of the poured out soma."¹⁶

i. 158, 6. *Dirghatamāḥ Māmateyo jujurvān daśame yuge | apām arthaṁ yatīnām brahmā bhavati sārathiḥ |*

"Dirghatamas, son of Mamatā, being decrepit in his tenth lustre, (though) a *brāhmān*, becomes the charioteer of (or is borne upon) the waters which are hastening to their goal."

(Professor Aufrecht understands this to mean that Dirghatamas is verging towards his end, and thinks there is a play on the word "charioteer" as an employment not befitting a priest.)

ii. 39, 1. . . . *Ḡṛidhrā iva vṛikshaṁ nidhimantam acha | brahmānū iva, vidathe ukthaśāsā . . . |*

"Ye (Aśvins) (cry) like two vultures on a tree which contains their nest; like two *brāhmāns* singing a hymn at a sacrifice."

iv. 50, 7. *Sa id rājā pratijanyāni viśvā śushmeṇa tasiḥāv abhi rīryeṇa | Bṛihaspatiṁ yaḥ subhṛitam bibhartti valgūyati vandate pūrva-bhūjam |*
8. *Sa it ksheti sudhitaḥ okasi sve tasmai ilā pīnvate viśradānīm | tasmai viśaḥ svayam eva namante yasmin brahmā rājani pūrvaḥ eti |* 9. *Apratīto iayati saṁ dhanāni pratijanyāni uta yā sajanyā | acasyave yo varivaḥ kṛiṇoti brahmaṇe rājā tam avanti devāḥ |*

"That king overcomes all hostile powers in force and valour who maintains *Bṛihaspati* in abundance, who praises and magnifies him as (a deity) enjoying the first distinction. 8. He dwells prosperous in his own palace, to him the earth always yields her increase,¹⁷ to him the

¹⁵ A distinction of orders or professions appears to be here recognised. But in v. 64, 7, a *rishi* and a *rājan* are distinguished much in the same way as a *brāhmān* and *rājan* are in i. 108, 7: *Sa na jīynte Maruto na hanyate na sredhati na vyathate na rishyati | na asya rāyaḥ upa dasyanti na ūtayaḥ rishim vā yaṁ rājānaṁ vā sushūdatha |* "That man, whether rishi or prince, whom ye, o Maruts, support, is neither conquered nor killed, he neither decays nor is distressed, nor is injured; his riches do not decline, nor his supports." Compare v. 14, where it is said: *Yūgaṁ rayim marutaḥ spārha-vīram yūgam rishim avatha sāma-vīram | yūgam arvantam Bharatāya vājāṁ yūgaṁ dhattha rājānaṁ śrushiṁmantam |* "Ye, o Maruts, give riches with desirable men, ye protect a rishi who is skilled in hymns; ye give a horse and food to Bharata, ye make a king prosperous." In iii. 43, 6, reference is found to Viśvāmitra, or the author, being made by Indra both a prince and a rishi (*kuvid mā gopāṁ karase janasya kuvid rājānam maghavann rjīṣin | kuvid mā rishim papivāṁsām sutasya*).

¹⁶ See on this verse Prof. Benfey's note, *Orient und Occident*, 3, 142.

¹⁷ Compare R.V. v. 37, 4 f.: *Na sa rājā vyathate yasminn Indras tīvram somam pivati go-sakhāyam |* "That king suffers no distress in whose house Indra drinks the pungent soma mixed with milk," etc.

people bow down of themselves,—that king in whose house a *brāhmān* walks first.¹⁸ 9. Unrivalled, he conquers the riches both of his enemies and his kinsmen—the gods preserve the king who bestows wealth on the *brāhmān* who asks his assistance.”¹⁹

iv. 58, 2. *Vayaṁ nāma pra bravāma gṛīṭasya asmin yajne dhārayāma namobhiḥ | upa brahmā śrinavat śasyamānaṁ chatuḥ-śringo avamid gau-rah etat |*

“Let us proclaim the name of butter; let us at this sacrifice hold it (in mind) with prostrations. May the *brāhmān* (Agni?) hear the praise which is chanted. The four-horned bright-coloured (god) has sent this forth.”

v. 29, 3. *Uta brahmāno Maruto me asya Indrah somasya sushutasya peyāḥ |*

“And, ye Maruts, *brāhmāns*, may Indra drink of this my soma which has been poured out,” etc.

v. 31, 4. *Anavas te ratham aśvāya takshaṇ Tvashṭā vajram puruhūta dyumantam | brahmānaḥ Indram mahayanto arkair avarddhayann Ahaye hantavai u |*

“The men²⁰ have fashioned a car for thy (Indra’s) horse, and Tvashṭri a gleaming thunderbolt, o god greatly invoked. The *brāhmāns*, magnifying Indra, have strengthened him for the slaughter of *Ahi*.”

v. 32, 12. *Evā hi tvām ṛituthā yātayantam maghā viprebhyo dadataṁ śrinomi | kim te brahmāno gṛīhate sakhāyo ye tvāyāḥ nidadhuḥ kāmam Indra |*

“I hear of thee thus rightly prospering, and bestowing wealth on, the sages (*viprebhyaḥ*). What, o Indra, do the *brāhmāns*, thy friends, who have reposed their wishes on thee, obtain?”

v. 40, 8. *Grāvno brahmā yuyujānaḥ saparyan kīriṇā devān namasā upasikshan | Atriḥ sūryasya divi chakshur ā adhāt Svarbhānor apa mā-yāḥ aghukshat |*

“Applying the stones (for pressing soma), performing worship, honouring the gods with praise and obeisance, the *brāhmān* Atri placed

¹⁸ Compare viii. 69, 4; x. 39, 11; x. 107, 5; and the word *purohita*, used of a ministering priest as one placed in front. Prof. Aufrecht, however, would translate the last words, “under whose rule the priest receives the first or principal portion.”

¹⁹ See on this passage Roth’s article, “On Brahma and the Brāhmans,” Journ. Germ. Or. Soc. i. 77 ff. See also Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, viii. 26.

²⁰ Are the Ribhus intended?

the eye of the sun in the sky, and swept away the magical arts of Svarbhānu."

vii. 7, 5. *Asūdi vṛito vahnir ājaganvān Agnir brahmā nṛi-shadane vidharttā* |

"The chosen bearer (of oblations), Agni, the *brāhmān*, having arrived, has sat down in a mortal's abode, the upholder."

vii. 42, 1. *Pra brahmāno Angiraso nakshanta* |

"The *brāhmāns*, the *Angirases*, have arrived," etc.

viii. 7, 20. *Kva nūnam sudānavo madātha vṛikta-barhishah* | *brahmā ko vah saparyati* |

"Where now, bountiful (Maruts), are ye exhilarated, with the sacrificial grass spread beneath you? What *brāhmān* is serving you?"

viii. 17, 2. *Ā tvā brahma-yujā harī vahatām Indra keśinā* | *upa brahmāni nah śrinu* | 3. *Brahmānas tvā vayah yujā somapām Indra sominah* | *sutāvanto havāmahe* |

"Thy tawny steeds with flowing manes, yoked by prayer (*brahma-yujā*),²¹ bring thee hither, Indra; listen to our prayers (*brāhmāni*). 3. We *brāhmāns*, offerers of soma, bringing oblations, continually invoke the drinker of soma."

viii. 31, 1. *Yo yajāti yajāte it sunavach cha pachāti cha* | *brahmā id Indrasya chākanat* |

"That *brāhmān* is beloved of Indra who worships, sacrifices, pours out libations, and cooks offerings."

viii. 32, 16. *Na nūnam brahmanam rinam prāsūnam astī sunvatām* | *na somo apratā pape* |

"There is not now any debt due by the active *brāhmāns* who pour out libations. Soma has not been drunk without an equivalent."

viii. 33, 19. *Adhaḥ paśyasva mā upari santaram pādakau hara* | *mā te kasa-plakau drīṣan striḥ hi brahmā babhūvitha* |

"Look downward, not upward; keep thy feet close together; let them not see those parts which should be covered; thou, a *brāhmān*, hast become a woman."

viii. 45, 39. *Ā te etā vacho-yujā harī grībhno sumadrathā* | *yad im brahmabhyah id dadaḥ* |

²¹ Compare viii. 45, 39, below: *brahma-yuj* occurs also in i. 177, 2; iii. 35, 4; viii. 1, 24; viii. 2, 27.

"I seize these thy tawny steeds, yoked by our hymn (*vachoyujā*)²² to a splendid chariot, since thou didst give (wealth) to the *brāhmāns*.

viii. 53, 7. *Kva sya vṛishabho yuvā tuvi-grivo anānataḥ | brahmā kas taṁ saparyati |*

"Where is that vigorous, youthful, large-necked, unconquered (Indra)? What *brāhmān* serves him?"

viii. 66, 5. *Abhi Gandharvam atriṇad abudhneshu rajassu ā | Indro brahmabhyah id vṛidhe |*

"Indra clove the Gandharva in the bottomless mists, for the prosperity of the *brāhmāns*."

viii. 81, 30. *Mo su brahmā iva tandrayur bhuvo vājānām pate | matsva sutasya gomataḥ |*

"Be not, o lord of riches (Indra), sluggish like a *brāhmān*.²³ Be exhilarated by the libation mixed with milk."

viii. 85, 5. *Ā yad vajram bāhvor Indra dhatse mada-chyutam Ahare hantavai u | pra parvatāḥ anavanta pra brahmāno abhinakshanta Indram |*

"When, Indra, thou seizest in thine arms the thunderbolt which brings down pride, in order to slay Ahi, the (aerial) hills and the cows utter their voice, and the *brāhmāns* draw near to thee."

ix. 96, 6. *Brahmā devānām padaviḥ kavīnām ṛishir viprānām mahisho mṛigānām | śyeno grīdhrānām svadhītir vanānām somaḥ pavitram ati eti rebhan |*

"Soma, resounding, overflows the filter, he who is a *brāhmān* among the gods, a leader among poets, a *rishi* among the wise, a buffalo among wild beasts, a falcon among kites, an axe among the woods."

ix. 112, 1. *Nānānām vai u no dhiyo vi vratāni janānām | takshā rish-taṁ rutam bhishag brahmā sunvantam ichhati.*

"Various are the thoughts and endeavours of us different men. The carpenter seeks something broken, the doctor a patient, the *brāhmān* some one to offer libations."²⁴

²² Compare viii. 87, 9, *yunjanti harī ishīrasya gūthayā urau rathe uruyuge | Indra-vāhā vachoyujā*; i. 7, 2, *vachoyujā*; i. 14, 6, *manoyujā*; vi. 49, 5, *rutho . . . manasā yujānah*.

²³ Dr. Haug (Introd. to Ait. Br. p. 20) refers to Ait. Br. v. 34, as illustrating this reproach. See p. 376 of his translation. This verse clearly shows that the priests formed a professional body.

²⁴ This verse also distinctly proves that the priesthood already formed a profession. Verse 3 of the same hymn is as follows: "I am a poet, my father a physician, my

ix. 113, 6. *Yatra brahmā pavamāna chhandasyām vāchaṁ vadan | grāvṇā some mahīyate somena ānandaṁ janayann Indrāya Indo pari srava |*

“O pure Soma, in the place where the *brāhmān*, uttering a metrical hymn, is exalted at the soma sacrifice through (the sound of) the crushing-stone, producing pleasure with soma, o Indu (Soma) flow for Indra.”

x. 28, 11. *Tebhyo godhā ayathaṁ karshad etad ye brahmanaḥ pratipīyanti annaiḥ | sine ukshnaḥ avasriṣṭūn adanti svayam balāni tanvaḥ śrīnūnāḥ |* (The word *brahmanaḥ* occurs in this verse, but I am unable to offer any translation, as the sense is not clear.)

x. 71, 11. (See translation of this verse below, where the entire hymn is given.)

x. 85, 29. *Parā dehi śumulyam brahmabhyo vi bhaja vasu | . . . 35. Sūryāyāḥ paśya rūpāni tāni brahmā tu śundhati |*

“Put away that which requires expiation (?). Distribute money to the *brāhmāns*. . . . 35. Behold the forms of Sūryā. But the *brāhmān* purifies them.”

x. 141, 3. *Somaṁ rājānam avase Agniṁ gīrbhir havāmahe | Ādityān Viṣṇuṁ Sūryam brahmānaṁ cha Bṛihaspatim |*

“With hymns we invoke to our aid king Soma, Agni, the Adityas, Viṣṇu, Sūrya, and Bṛihaspati, the *brāhmān*.”

III. In the following passages the word *brāhmān* appears to designate the special class of priest so called, in contradistinction to *hotṛi*, *udgātṛi*, and *adhvaryu*.

ii. 1, 2 (= x. 91, 10). *Tava Agne hotraṁ tava potram ṛitviyāṁ tava neshṭraṁ tvam id agnid ṛitūyataḥ | tava praśūstraṁ tram adhvariyaṣi brahmā cha asi grīhapatiṣ cha no dame | 2. Tram Agne Indro vṛishabhaḥ satām asi tvam Viṣṇur urugāyo namasyaḥ | tram brahmā rayivid Brahmanaspate tvam vidharttaḥ sachase purandhyū |*

“Thine, Agni, is the office of *hotṛi*, thine the regulated function of *potṛi*, thine the office of *neshṭṛi*, thou art the *agnidh* of the pious man, thine is the function of *praśāstṛi*, thou actest as *adhvaryu*, thou art the *brāhmān*, and the lord of the house in our abode. 2. Thou, Agni, art Indra, the chief of the holy, thou art Viṣṇu, the wide-stepping, the

mother a grinder of oorn” (*kūrur ahaṁ tato bhishag upala-prakṣhiṇī nānā*). Unfortunately there is nothing further said which could throw light on the relations in which the different professions and classes of society stood to each other.

adorable, thou, o Brahmanaspati, art the *brāhmān*, the possessor of wealth, thou, o sustainer, art associated with the ceremonial."

iv. 9, 3. *Sa sadma pari nīyate hotā mandro divishṭishu | uta potā nī shīdati |* 4. *Uta gnā Agnir adhware uta grihapatir dame | uta brahmā nī shīdati |*

"He (Agni) is led round the house, a joyous *hotri* at the ceremonies, and sits a *potri*. 4. And Agni is a wife (i.e. a mistress of the house) at the sacrifice, and the master of the house in our abode, and he sits a *brāhmān*."

x. 52, 2. *Ahañ hotā nī asīdañ yaṇyān viśve devāḥ maruto mā junanti | ahar ahar Aśvinā ādhvaryavañ vām brahmā samid bhavati sā ahutir vām |*

(Agni says) "I have sat down an adorable *hotri*; all the gods, the Maruts, stimulate me. Day by day, ye Aśvins, I have acted as your *adhvaryu*; the *brāhmān* is he who kindles the fire: this is your invocation."

I shall now bring forward the whole of the texts in which the word *brāhmāna*, which, no doubt, originally meant a son, or descendant, of a *brāhmān*, occurs in the Rig-veda.²⁵ They are the following:

i. 164, 45. *Chatvāri vāk parimitā padāni tāni vidur brāhmanāḥ ye manīshināḥ | guhā trīni nihitā na ingayanti turīyam vācho manushyāḥ vadanti |*

"Speech consists of four defined grades. These are known by those *brāhman*s who are wise. They do not reveal the three which are esoteric. Men speak the fourth grade of speech."

This text is quoted and commented upon in Nirukta xiii. 9.

vi. 75, 10. *Brāhmanāsaḥ pitarāḥ somyāsaḥ śive no dyāvā-prithivī ane-
hasā | Pūshā naḥ pātu durityād ṛitāvridhaḥ . . . |*

"May the *brāhman* fathers, drinkers of soma, may the auspicious, the sinless, heaven and earth, may Pūshan, preserve us, who prosper by righteousness, from evil, etc."

²⁵ There are two more texts in which the word *brāhmana* is found, viz. i. 16, 5, and ii. 36, 5, on which see the following note. The word *brahmaputra* (compare Aśv. S'. 8. ii. 18, 13) "son of a brahman," is found in ii. 43, 2: *Udgātā iva śakune sūma gāyasi brāhmā-putraḥ iva savaneshu śaṁsasi |* "Thou, o bird, singest a sūma verse like an *udgātri*; thou singest praises like the son of a *brāhmān* at the libations." (Ind. Stud. ix. 342 ff.) *Vipra*, used in later Sanskrit as synonymous with *Brāhman*, has in the R.V. the sense of "wise," "sage" assigned by Nigh. 3, 16 (= *medhāvi-nāma*), and in Nir. 10, 19, = *medhāvinah*. It is often applied as an epithet to the gods.

. vii. 103, 1 (= Nirukta 9, 6). *Saṁvatsaraṁ śaśayānāḥ brāhmaṇāḥ vrata-chārīṇaḥ | vācham Parjanya-jinvitām pra maṇḍūkāḥ avādishuḥ |* 7. *Brāhmaṇāso atirātre na some saro na pūrṇam abhito vadan-taḥ | saṁvatsarasya tad ahaḥ pari śkṛta yad maṇḍūkāḥ prāvṛṣiṇam babhūva |* 8. *Brāhmaṇāsaḥ somino vācham akrata brahma kṛiṇvantaḥ parivatsarīṇam | adhvaryavo gharmināḥ sishvidānāḥ āvir bhavanti guhyā ke chit |*

‘After lying quiet for a year, those rite-fulfilling *brāhmaṇas*²⁶ the frogs have (now) uttered their voice, which has been inspired by Parjanya 7. Like *brāhmaṇas* at the Atirātra soma rite, like (those *brāhmaṇas*) speaking round about the full pond (or soma-bowl²⁷), you, frogs, surround (the pond) on this day of the year, which is that of the autumnal rains. 8. These soma-offering *brāhmaṇas* (the frogs) have uttered their voice, performing their annual devotion (*brahma*); these adhvaryu priests sweating with their boiled oblations (or in the hot season) come forth from their retreats like persons who have been concealed.”

x. 16, 6. *Yat te kṛiṣṇaḥ śakunaḥ ātutoda pipīlaḥ sarpaḥ uta vā śvā-vaḍaḥ | Agniḥ tad viśvād agadaṁ karotu Somaś cha yo brāhmaṇān āviveśa |*

“Whatever part of thee any black bird, or ant, or serpent, or wild beast has mutilated, may Agni cure thee of all that, and Soma who has entered into the *brāhmaṇas*.”²⁸

²⁶ In the Nighantus, iii. 13, these words *brāhmaṇāḥ vrata-chārīṇaḥ* are referred to as conveying the sense of a simile, though they are unaccompanied by a particle of similitude. In his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 126, Roth thus remarks on this passage: “This is the only place in the first nine mandalas of the R.V. in which the word *Brāhmaṇa* is found with its later sense, whilst the tenth mandala offers a number of instances. This is one of the proofs that many of the hymns in this book were composed considerably later (than the rest of the R.V.). The word *brāhmaṇa* has another signification in i. 15, 5; ii. 36, 5; and vi. 75, 10.” (In the first of these texts, Roth assigns to the word the sense of the *Brāhmaṇa*’s soma-vessel. See his Lexicon, s.v. It does not appear what meaning he would give to the word in vi. 75, 10. He has in this passage overlooked R.V. i. 164, 45, which, however, is duly adduced in his Lexicon). See Wilson’s translation of the hymn; as also Müller’s, in his *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 494 f.

²⁷ *Saras*. See R.V. viii. 66, 4, quoted in Nirukta, v. 11, where Yāska says, “The ritualists inform us that at the mid-day oblation there are thirty *ukṛta* platters destined for one deity, which are then drunk at one draught. These are here called *saras*.” (Compare Roth’s Illustrations on the passage. See also R.V. vi. 17, 11, and viii. 7, 10, with Śāyana’s explanations of all three passages).

²⁸ Compare A.V. vii. 115, 1 f.; xii. 5, 6.

x. 71, 1.²⁹ *Bṛihaspate prathamam vācho agraṃ yat prairata nāmadhe-
yaṃ dadhānūḥ | yad eshūṃ śreshṭhaṃ yad aripram asīt preṇū tad eshūṃ
nihitāṃ guhā āriḥ | 2. (= Nirukta iv. 10) Saktum iva titaiṇū punanto
yatra dhīrūḥ manasū vācham akrata | atra sakhāyaḥ sakhyaṇi jūnate
bhadrā eshūṃ lakshmīr nihitā adhi vāchi | 3. Yajnena vāchaḥ padarīyam
āyan tām anṛ arindann ṛishishu pravishṭām | tām ābhṛitya vi adadhūḥ
purutrā tām sapta rebhāḥ abhi saṃ navante | 4. (= Nir. i. 19) Uta
trah paśyan na dadarśa vācham uta trah śṛiṇvan na śṛinoti enām |
uto trasmai tanraṃ vi sasre jūyā iva patye usāti surāsūḥ | 5. (= Nir.
i. 20) Uta tvaṃ sakhye sthirapītam āhur na enaṃ hinvanty api vāji-
neshu | adhenvā charati māyayā esha vācham śūśruvān aphalām apush-
pām | 6. Yas tityāja sachi-vidāṃ sakhāyaṃ na tasya vāchi api bhūgo
asti | yad im śṛinoti alakaṃ śṛinoti na hi praveda sukṛitasya panthām |
7. Akshantantaḥ karnavantaḥ sakhāyo manojaveshu asamāḥ babhūruḥ |
ādaghnūsaḥ upakakshūsaḥ u tve hradāḥ iva snātvaḥ u tve dadṛiṣre |
8. (= Nir. xiii. 13) Hṛidū tashṭeshu manaso javeshu yad brāhmaṇūḥ
saṃyajante sakhāyaḥ | atra aha tvaṃ vi jahur vedyābhir ohabrahmaṇo
vi charanti u tve | 9. Ime ye na arvāṇ na parāś charanti na brāh-
maṇāso na sute-karūsaḥ | te ete vācham abhipadya pāpayā sirīs tantraṃ
tanvate aprajajnayaḥ | 10. Sarve nandanti yaśasū āgatena sabhā-sahena
sakhyaḥ sakhāyaḥ | kilbisha-sprīt pitu-shanir hi eshām araṃ hito bhavati
vājināya | 11. (= Nir. i. 8) Rīchām trah posham āste pupushvān gāya-
traṃ tvo gāyati śakvarīshu | brahmā tvo vadati jāta-vidyāṃ yajnasya mā-
trāṃ vi mimīte u trah |*

“When, o Bṛihaspati, men first sent forth the earliest utterance of speech, giving a name (to things), then all that was treasured within them, most excellent and pure, was disclosed through love. 2. Where-
ever the wise,—as if cleansing meal with a sieve,—have uttered speech
with intelligence, there friends recognize acts of friendliness; good
fortune dwells in their speech.” 3. Through sacrifice they came upon

²⁹ I cannot pretend that I am satisfied with some parts of the translation I have attempted of this very difficult hymn; but I give it such as it is, as the interpretation of the Vedic poems is still to a certain extent tentative. Verses 4 and 5 are explained in Sāyana's Introduction to the Rig-veda, pp. 30 f. of Müller's edition. I am indebted here, as elsewhere, to Prof. Aufrecht for his suggestions.

³⁰ I quote here, as somewhat akin to this hymn, another from the A.V. vi. 108, being a prayer for wisdom or intelligence: 1. *Tvaṃ no medhe prathamā gobhir aśvebhir ā gahi | tvaṃ sūryasya raśmibhis tvaṃ no asi yajniyā | 2. Medhām aham prathamām*

the track of speech, and found her entered into the rishis. Taking, they divided her into many parts; ⁸¹ the seven poets celebrate her in concert. 4. And one man, seeing, sees not speech, and another, hearing, hears her not; ⁸² while to a third she discloses her form, as a loving well-dressed wife does to her husband. 5. They say that one man has a sure defence in (her ⁸³) friendship; he is not overcome even in the conflicts (of discussion). But that person consorts with a barren delusion who has listened to speech without fruit or flower. 6. He who abandons a friend who appreciates friendship, has no portion whatever in speech. All that he hears, he hears in vain, for he knows not the path of righteousness. 7. Friends gifted both with eyes and ears have proved unequal in mental efforts. Some have been (as waters) reaching to the face or armpit, while others have been seen like ponds in which one might bathe. 8. When *brāhmans* who are friends strive (?) together in efforts of the mind produced by the heart, ⁸⁴ they leave one man behind through their acquirements, whilst others walk about boasting to be *brāhmāns*. (This is the sense Professor Aufrecht suggests for the word *ohabrahmānaḥ*. Professor Roth *s.v.* thinks it may mean "real priests." The author of Nirukta xiii. 13, explains it as meaning "reasoning priests," or "those of whom reasoning is the sacred science.") 9. The men who range neither near nor far, who are neither (reflecting) *brāhmans* nor yet pious worshippers at libations,—these, having acquired speech, frame their web imperfectly, (like) female

brahmanvatīm brahma-jūtām rishishṭutām | prapītām brahmachāribhir devānām avase huve | 3. *Yām medhūm Ribhavo vidur yām medhūm asurūḥ viduḥ | rishayo bhadram medhām yām vidus tām mayy ā vesayāmasi |* 4. *Yām rishayo bhūta-kṛito medhām medhāvino viduḥ | tayā mām adya medhayā Agne medhāvinām kṛiṇu |* 5. *Medhām sāyam medhūm prātermedhūmadhyandinām pari | medhām sūryasya rāsmibhir vacasā "veśa-yāmahe* 1. "Come to us, wisdom, the first, with cows and horses; (come) thou with the rays of the sun; thou art to us an object of worship. 2. To (obtain) the succour of the gods, I invoke wisdom the first, full of prayer, inspired by prayer, praised by rishis, imbibed by *Brahmachārins*. 3. We introduce within me that wisdom which *Ribhus* know, that wisdom which divine beings (*asurūḥ*) know, that excellent wisdom which rishis know. 4. Make me, o *Agni*, wise to-day with that wisdom which the wise rishis — the makers of things existing — know. 5. We introduce wisdom in the evening, wisdom in the morning, wisdom at noon, wisdom with the rays of the sun, and with speech" (*vachasā*). Regarding the *rishayo bhūtakṛitah* see above, p. 37, note.

⁸¹ Compare x. 125, 3; i. 164, 45; (x. 90, 11); and A.V. xii. 1, 45.

⁸² Compare Isaiah vi. 9, 10; and St. Matthew xiii. 14, 15.

⁸³ *Vāk-sakhye*, Yāska.

⁸⁴ Compare i. 171, 2; ii. 35, 2; vi. 16, 47.

weavers,³⁵ being destitute of skill. 10. All friends rejoice at the arrival of a renowned friend who rules the assembly; for such a one, repelling evil, and bestowing nourishment upon them, is thoroughly prepared for the conflict (of discussion). 11. One man possesses a store of verses (*richām*); a second sings a hymn (*gāyatra*) during (the chanting of) the *śakrarīs*; one who is a *brāhmān* declares the science of being (*jāta-vidyām*), whilst another prescribes the order of the ceremonial."³⁶

R.V. x. 88, 19 (= Nir. vii. 31). *Yāvan-mātram ushaso na pratikāṃ suparṇyo vasate Mātariśvaḥ | tūvad dadhāti upa yajnam āyan brāhmaṇo hotur avaro nishīdan |*

"As long as the fair-winged Dawns do not array themselves in light, o Mātariśvan, so long the *brāhmān* coming to the sacrifice, keeps (the fire), sitting below the hotṛi-priest."

(See Professor Roth's translation of this verse in his *Illustrations of the Nirukta*, p. 113).

x. 90, 11 (= A.V. xix. 5, 6; Vaj. S. xxxi.). See above, pp. 8-15.

x. 97, 22. *Oshadhayaḥ saṁvadante Somena saha rājñā | yasmai kṛiṇoti brāhmaṇas taṁ rājan parayāmasi |*

"The plants converse with king Soma,³⁷ (and say), for whomsoever a *brāhmān* acts (*kṛiṇoti*, officiates), him, o king, we deliver."

x. 109, 1. *Te 'evadan prathamāḥ brahma-kilbishe akūpāraḥ salilo Mātariśvā | vīḷuharās tapa ugro mayobhūr āpo devīr prathamajāḥ ṛitena | Soma rājā prathamō brahma-jyām punaḥ prāyachhad ahṛiṇīyamānaḥ | anvantitū Varuṇo Mitraḥ ūsīd Agnir hotū hastagrihya ninūya | 3. Hastena eva grāhyāḥ ādhir asyāḥ "brahma-jyā iyam" iti cha id avochan | na dūtāya prahye tasthe eskū tathā rūshṭraṁ gupitaṁ kshattriyasya | 4. Devūḥ etasyām avadanta pūrve sapta ṛishayas tapase ye nisheduḥ | bhīmā jyāu brāhmaṇasya upanītā durdhām dadhāti parama vyoman |*

³⁵ Such is the sense which Prof. Aufrecht thinks may, with probability, be assigned to *sirīs*, a word which occurs only here.

³⁶ According to Yaska (Nir. i. 8), these four persons are respectively the *hotṛi*, *udgātṛi*, *brāhmaṇ*, and *adhvaryu* priests. The *brāhmaṇ*, he says, being possessed of all science, ought to know everything; and gives utterance to his knowledge as occasion arises for it (*jāte jāte*). See Dr. Haug's remarks on this verse, *Ait. Br. Introd.* p. 20.

³⁷ Compare *oshadhīḥ Soma-rājñīḥ*, "the plants whose king is Soma," in verses 18 and 19 of this hymn.

5. *Brahmachārī charati vevishad vishah sa devānām bhavati ekam angam | tena jūyām anv avindad Bṛihaspatiḥ Somena nītām juhvañ na devūḥ |*

6. *Punar vai devūḥ adaduḥ punar manushyāḥ uta | rājānaḥ satyañ kṛiṇvānāḥ brahma-jūyām punar daduḥ |* 7. *Punardāya brahma-jūyām kṛitvī devair nikilbisham | ūrjam pṛithivyāḥ bhaktvāya urugāyam upāsate |*

"These (deities), the boundless, liquid Mātariśvan (Air), the fiercely-flaming, ardently burning, beneficent (Fire), and the divine primeval Waters, first through righteousness exclaimed against the outrage on a *brāhmān*. 2. King Soma,³⁸ unenvious, first gave back the *brāhmān*'s wife; Varuṇa and Mitra were the inviters; Agni, the invoker, brought her, taking her hand. 3. When restored, she had to be received back by the hand, and they then proclaimed aloud, 'This is the *brāhmān*'s wife;' she was not committed to a messenger to be sent:—in this way it is that the kingdom of a ruler (or Kshattriya) remains secured to him.³⁹ 4. Those ancient deities, the Rishis, who sat down to perform austerities, spoke thus of her, 'Terrible is the wife of the *brāhmān*; when approached, she plants confusion in the highest heaven.'⁴⁰ 5. The *Brahmachārin*⁴¹ (religious student) continues to perform observances. He becomes one member⁴² of the gods. Through him Bṛihaspati obtained his wife, as the gods obtained the ladle which was brought by Soma. 6. The gods gave her back, and men gave her back; kings, performing righteousness, gave back the *brāhmān*'s wife. 7. Giving back the *brāhmān*'s wife, delivering themselves from sin against the gods, (these kings) enjoy the abundance of the earth, and possess a free range of movement."

³⁸ Compare R.V. x. 85, 39 ff. (=A.V. xiv. 2, 2 ff.) *Punaḥ patnīm Agnir adād āyushū saha varchasū | dīrghāyur asyāḥ yaḥ patir jīvāti śaradaḥ satam |* 40. *Somāḥ prathamo vivide Gandharvo vivide uttarāḥ* (the A.V. reads: *Somasya jāyā prathamam Gandharvas te 'paraḥ patih*) | *tritiyo Agnish te patis turiyas te manushyajāḥ | Somo dadad Gandharvāya Gandharvo dadad Agnaye | rayīm cha putrāñ chādād Agnir mahyam atho inām |* "Agni gave back the wife with life and splendour: may he who is her husband live to an old age of 100 years! Soma was thy first, the Gandharva was thy second, Agni thy third, husband; thy fourth is one of human birth. Soma gave her to the Gandharva, the Gandharva to Agni, Agni gave me wealth and sons, and then this woman." The idea contained in this passage may possibly be referred to in the verse before us (x. 109, 2).

³⁹ I am indebted to Prof. Aufrecht for this explanation of the verse.

⁴⁰ See R.V. i. 164, 34, 35, above.

⁴¹ See my paper on the Progress of the Vedic Religion, in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 374 ff.

⁴² See A.V. x. 7, 1 ff.; 9, 26.

This hymn is repeated in the Atharva-veda with the addition of ten more verses which I shall quote in the next section.

I shall here state summarily the remarks suggested by a perusal of the texts which I have quoted, and the conclusions which they appear to authorize regarding the relation of the Vedic poets and priests to the other classes of the Indian community at the time when the earlier hymns of the Rig-veda were composed.

First: Except in the Purusha Sūkta (translated above in pp. 9 ff.) there is no distinct reference in the hymns to any recognised system of four castes.

Second: In one text (iii. 34, 9, see p. 176) where mention is made of the Āryan "colour," or "race," all the upper classes of the Indian community are comprehended under one designation, as the Kshatriyas and Vaiśyas as well as the Brāhmins were always in after-times regarded as Āryas (see above, p. 176.)

Third: The term *brāhmāṇa* occurs only in eight hymns of the Rig-veda, besides the Purusha Sūkta, whilst *brāhmān* occurs in forty-six. The former of these words could not therefore have been in common use at the time when the greater part of the hymns were composed. The term *rājanya* is found only in the Purusha Sūkta; and *kshattriya* in the sense of a person belonging to a royal family, a noble, occurs only in a few places, such as x. 109, 3.⁴⁸ The terms Vaiśya and Sūdra are only found in the Purusha Sūkta, although *viś*, from which the former is derived, is of frequent occurrence in the sense of "people" (see p. 14, above).

Fourth: The word *brāhmān*, as we have seen, appears to have had at first the sense of "sage," "poet;" next, that of "officiating priest;" and ultimately that of a "special description of priest."

Fifth: In some of the texts which have been quoted (particularly i. 108, 7; iv. 50, 8 f.; viii. 7, 20; viii. 45, 39; viii. 53, 7; viii. 81, 30; ix. 112, 1; x. 85, 29) *brāhmān* seems to designate a "priest by profession."

Sixth: In other places the word seems rather to imply something peculiar to the individual, and to denote a person distinguished for

⁴⁸ This text is quoted above. In vii. 104, 13, Kshattriya is perhaps a neuter substantive: *Na vai u Somo vṛjīnam hīnoti na kshattriyam mithuyā dhārayantam* | "Soma does not prosper the sinner, nor the man who wields royal power deceitfully."

genius or virtue (x. 107, 6), or elected by special divine favour to receive the gift of inspiration (x. 125, 5).

Seventh : *Brāhmāṇa* appears to be equivalent to *brāhmā-putra*, "the son of a *brāhmān*" (which, as we have seen, occurs in ii. 43, 2), and the employment of such a term seems necessarily to presuppose that, at the time when it began to become current, the function of a *brāhmān*, the priesthood, had already become a profession.

The Rig-veda Sanhitā contains a considerable number of texts in which the large gifts of different kinds bestowed by different princes on the authors of the hymns are specified, and these instances of bounty are eulogized.

Of these passages R.V. i. 125 ; i. 126 ; v. 27 ; v. 30, 12 ff. ; v. 61, 10 ; vi. 27, 8 ; vi. 45, 31 ff. ; vi. 47, 22 ff. may be consulted in Prof. Wilson's translation ; and a version of R.V. x. 107, which contains a general encomium on liberality will be found in the article entitled "Miscellaneous Hymns from the Rig- and Atharva-vedas," in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, p. 32 f. The following further texts, which describe the presents given by different princes to the rishis, viz. vii. 18, 22 ff. ; viii. 3, 21 ff. ; viii. 4, 19 ff. ; viii. 5, 37 ff. ; viii. 6, 46 ff. ; viii. 19, 36 f. ; viii. 21, 17 f. ; viii. 24, 29 f. ; viii. 46, 21 ff. ; viii. 54, 10 ff. ; viii. 57, 14 ff. ; x. 33, 4 ff. ; x. 62, 6 ff. ; x. 93, 14 f. are translated in the article "On the relations of the priests to the other classes of Indian Society in the Vedic age" in the same Journal for 1866, pp. 272 ff., to which I refer.

On the other hand the hymns of the Rig-veda contain numerous references to persons who, if not hostile, were at least indifferent and inattentive to the system of worship which the rishis professed and inculcated ; and niggardly in their offerings to the gods and their gifts to the priests. The article to which I have just referred contains (pp. 286 ff.) a long list of such passages, from which I extract the following :

i. 84, 7. *Yañ ekaḥ id vidayate vasu marttāya dāsushe | īśāno apratishkutaḥ Indro anga |* 8. *Kadū martyam arūḍhasam padā kshumpam iva sphurat | kadū naḥ śusruvad girāḥ Indro anga |*

"Indra, who alone distributes riches to the sacrificing mortal, is lord and irresistible. 8. When will Indra crush the illiberal man like a bush with his foot? when will he hear our hymns?"

i. 101, 4. . . . *vīṣoś chid Indro yo asunvato vadhaḥ . . .* |

“Indra, who is the slayer of him, however strong, who offers no libations.”

i. 122, 9. *Jano yo Mitrā-varuṇāv abhidhruḡ apo na vām sunoti akshṇa-yādhruk | svayaṁ sa yakshmaṁ hṛdaye ni dhatte āpa yad im hoṭrābhir ritārā* |

“The hostile man, the malicious enemy, who pours out no libations to you, o Mitra and Varuṇa, plants fever in his own heart, when the pious man has by his offerings obtained (your blessing).”

i. 125, 7. *Mā prīnanto duritam enaḥ ā aran mā jārishuḥ sūrayaḥ suvatāsaḥ | anyas teshām paridhir astu kaś chid aprīnantam abhi saṁ yantu śokāḥ* |

“Let not the liberal suffer evil or calamity; let not devout sages decay; let them have some further term; let griefs befall the illiberal (*aprīnantam*).”

i. 182, 3. *Kim atra dasrā kṛiṇuthaḥ kim āsāthe jano yaḥ kaśchid ahavir mahīyate | ati kramishṭam juratam paṇer asum jyotir viprāya kṛiṇutaṁ vachasyave* |

“What do ye here, o powerful (Aśvins)? why do ye sit (in the house of) a man who offers no oblation, and (yet) is honoured? Assail, wear away the breath of the niggard, and create light for the sage who desires to extol you.”

ii. 23, 4. *Sunitībhir nayasi trāyase janaṁ yas tubhyaṁ dāśad na tam aṁho āśnavat | brahma-dviṣas tapano manyumīr asi Bṛihaspate mahi tat te mahitvanam* |

“By thy wise leadings thou guidest and protectest the man who worships thee; no calamity can assail him. Thou art the vexer of him who hates devotion (*brahma-dviṣaḥ*), and the queller of his wrath: this, o Bṛihaspati, is thy great glory.”

iv. 25, 6. . . . *na asushver āpir na sakhā na jūmir dushprāryo avahantā id avāchaḥ* | 7. *Na revatā paṇinū sakhyam Indro asunvatā suta-pāḥ saṁ grīṇite | ā aya vedaḥ khidati hanti nagnaṁ vi sushraye paktāye kevalo 'bhūt* |

“Indra is not the relation or friend or kinsman of the man who offers no libations; he is the destroyer of the prostrate irreligious man. 7. Indra, the soma-drinker, accepts not friendship with the wealthy niggard who makes no soma-libations; but robs him of his riches, and

slays him when stripped bare, whilst he is the exclusive patron of the man who pours out soma and cooks oblations."

vi. 44, 11. . . . *jahi asushvīn pra vṛiḥa' aprīnataḥ* |

"Slay (o Indra) those who offer no libations; root out the illiberal."

viii. 53, 1. *Ut tvā mandantu stomāḥ kṛīṇushva rūdho adriṇaḥ* | *ava brahma-dvisho jahi* | *pādū pañīn arūdhaso nī badhasva mahān asi* | *na hi tvā kaśchana prati* |

"Let our hymns gladden thee; give us wealth, o thunderer. Slay the haters of devotion. 2. Crush with thy foot the niggards who bestow nothing. Thou art great; no one is comparable to thee."

It seems evident, then, from these texts (and there are many more of the same tenor), that the irreligious man, the *parcus deorum cultor et infrequens*, was by no means a rare character among the Āryas of the Vedic age, and that the priests often found no little difficulty in drawing forth the liberality of their contemporaries towards themselves and in enforcing a due regard to the ceremonials of devotion. And if we consider, on the other hand, that the encomiums on the liberality of different princes to the poets and priests which are contained in the passages to which I before adverted, are the production of the class whose pretensions they represent, and whose dignity they exalt, we shall, no doubt, see reason to conclude that the value of the presents bestowed has been enormously exaggerated, and make some deduction from the impression which these texts are calculated to convey of the estimation in which the priests were held at the time when they were composed. But after every allowance has been made for such considerations, and for the state of feeling indicated by the complaints of irreligion and illiberality of which I have cited specimens, it will remain certain that the *brāhmān*, whether we look upon him as a sage and poet, or as an officiating priest, or in both capacities, was regarded with respect and reverence, and even that his presence had begun to be considered as an important condition of the efficacy of the ceremonial. Thus, as we have already seen, in i. 164, 35, the *brāhmān* is described as the highest heaven of "speech;" in x. 107, 6, a liberal patron is called a *rishi* and a *brāhmān*, as epithets expressive of the most distinguished eulogy; in x. 125, 5, the goddess Vāch is said to make the man who is the object of her special affection a *brāhmān* and a *rishi*; in vi. 45 7; vii. 7, 5; viii. 16, 7; and ix. 96, 6, the term *brāhmān* is applied

honorifically to the gods Indra, Agni, and Soma; in iv. 50, 8, 9, great prosperity is declared to attend the prince by whom a *brāhman* is employed, honoured, and succoured; and in iii. 53, 9, 12; v. 2, 6; vii. 33, 2, 3, 5; and vii. 83, 4, the highest efficacy is ascribed to the intervention and intercession of this class of functionaries.

Again, whatever exaggeration we may suppose in the texts which eulogize the liberality of princely patrons, in regard to the value of the presents bestowed, there is no reason to doubt that the ministers of public worship, who possessed the gift of expression and of poetry, who were the depositaries of all sacred science, and who were regarded as the channels of access to the gods, would be largely rewarded and honoured.⁴⁴

⁴⁴ It is to be observed that, in these eulogies of liberality, mention is nowhere made of *Brāhman*s as the recipients of the gifts. In two places, viii. 4, 20, and x. 33, 4, a *rishi* is mentioned as the receiver. In later works, such as the *S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa*, on the contrary, the presents are distinctly connected with *Brāhman*s. Thus it is said in that work, ii. 2, 2, 6 : *Dvayāḥ vai devāḥ devāḥ aha eva devāḥ atha ye brāhmaṇāḥ śusruvāṃso 'nūchānūs te manushya-devāḥ | teshāṃ dvedhā vibhaktāḥ eva yajnaḥ āhutayaḥ eva devānām dakṣiṇāḥ manushya-devānām brāhmaṇānām śusruruśhām anūchānūnām | āhutibhir eva devān prīṇāti dakṣiṇibhir manushya-devān brāhmaṇān śusruvuśho 'nūchānūn | te enam ubhaye devāḥ prītāḥ sudhāyām dadhāti |* "Two kinds of gods are gods, viz. the gods (proper), whilst those *Brāhman*s who have the Vedic tradition, and are learned, are the human gods. The worship (*yajna*) of these is divided into two kinds. Oblations constitute the worship offered to the gods, and presents (*dakṣiṇā*) that, offered to the human gods, the *Brāhman*s, who possess the Vedic tradition and are learned. It is with oblations that a man gratifies the gods, and with presents that he gratifies the human gods, the *Brāhman*s, who possess the Vedic tradition, and are learned. Both these two kinds of gods, when gratified, place him in a state of happiness" (*sudhāyām*); (or "convey him to the heavenly world," as the expression is varied in the parallel passage of the same work, iv. 3, 4, 4). It is similarly said in the *Taitt. Sanh.* i. 7, 3, 1 : *Parokṣhāṃ vai anye devāḥ iṣyante pratyakṣham anye | yad yajate ye eva devāḥ parokṣham iṣyante tān eva tad yajati | yad anvāhāryam āharaty ete vai devāḥ pratyakṣham yad brāhmaṇān tān eva tena prīṇāti | atha dakṣiṇa eva anyā eśhā | atha yajnasya eva chhidram apidadhāti yad vai yajnasya kvūram yad viliṣṭam tad anvāhāryeṇa anvāharati | tad anvāhāryasya anvāhāryatvam | devadūtāḥ vai ete yad ritvijo yad anvāhāryam āharati devadūtān eva prīṇāti |* "Some gods are worshipped in their absence, and others in their presence. It is to those gods who are worshipped in their absence that the sacrificer offers the oblation which he presents. And it is these gods who are visible, i.e. the *Brāhman*s, whom he gratifies with the *anvāhārya* (present of cooked rice) which he afterwards brings. Now this *anvāhārya* is the present (*dakṣiṇā*) connected with it (the sacrifice). Then he covers over the faults of the sacrifice. Whatever in it is excessive or defective, that he removes by means of the *anvāhārya*. In this consists the nature of that offering. These officiating priests are the messengers of the gods; and it is the messengers of the gods whom the sacrificer gratifies with this *anvāhārya* gift which he presents."

It is further clear, from some of the texts quoted above (ii. 1, 2; iv. 9, 3; x. 52, 2), as well as i. 162, 5, and from the contents of hymns ii. 36; ii. 37; ii. 43; and x. 124, 1,⁴⁵ that in the later part of the Vedic era, to which these productions are probably to be assigned, the ceremonial of worship had become highly developed and complicated, and that different classes of priests were required for its proper celebration.⁴⁶ It is manifest that considerable skill must have been required for the due performance of these several functions; and as such skill could only be acquired by early instruction and by practice, there can be little doubt that the priesthood must at that period have become a regular profession.⁴⁷ The distinction of king or noble and priest appears to be recognized in i. 108, 7, as well as in iv. 50, 8, 9; whilst in v. 47, 7, 14, a similar distinction is made between king and rishi; and it is noticeable that the verse, in other respects nearly identical, with which the 36th and 37th hymns of the eight maṇḍala respectively conclude, ends in the one hymn with the words, "Thou alone, Indra, didst deliver Trasadasyu in the conflict of men, magnifying prayers" (*brahmāṇi vardhayan*); whilst in the other the last words are, "magnifying (royal) powers" (*kshattrāṇi vardhayan*), as if the former contained a reference to the functions of the priest, and the latter to those of the prince. (Compare viii. 35, 16, 17.)

While, however, there thus appears to be every reason for supposing that towards the close of the Vedic period the priesthood had become a profession, the texts which have been quoted, with the exception of the verse in the Purusha Sūkta (x. 90, 12), do not contain anything which necessarily implies that the priests formed an exclusive caste, or, at least, a caste separated from all others by insurmountable barriers, as in later times. There is a wide difference between a profession, or even a hereditary order, and a caste in the fully developed Brahmanical sense.

⁴⁵ See also i. 94, 6, where it is said: "Thou (Agni) art an *adhvaryu*, and the earliest *hotṛi*, a *prasūstṛi*, a *potṛi*, and by nature a *purohita*. Knowing all the priestly functions (*ārtiṣṭhā*) wise, thou nourishest us," etc. (*tram adhvaryur uta hotū 'si pūreyah prasūstū potū janushū purohitaḥ | visvā vidvān ārtiṣṭhā dhīra pushyasy Agne ity ādi*).

⁴⁶ See Prof. Müller's remarks on this subject, *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 485 ff.; and Dr. Haug's somewhat different view of the same matter in his *Introd. to Ait. Br.* pp. 11 ff.

⁴⁷ In regard to the great importance and influence of the priests, see Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 485 ff.

Even in countries where the dignity and exclusive prerogatives of the priesthood are most fully recognized (as in Roman Catholic Europe), the clergy form only a profession, and their ranks may be recruited from all sections of the community. So, too, is it in most countries, even with a hereditary nobility. Plebeians may be ennobled at the will of the sovereign. There is, therefore, no difficulty in supposing that in the Vedic era the Indian priesthood—even if we suppose its members to have been for the most part sprung from priestly families—may have often admitted aspirants to the sacerdotal character from other classes of their countrymen. Even the employment of the word *brāhmaṇa* in the Rig-veda does not disprove this. This term, derived from *brahman*, “priest,” need not, as already intimated, signify anything further than the son or descendant of a priest (the word *brahmaputra*, “son of a priest,” is, as we have seen, actually used in one text),—just as the *rājanya* means nothing more than the descendant of a king or chief (*rājan*), a member of the royal family, or of the nobility.

The paucity of the texts (and those, too, probably of a date comparatively recent) in which the word *brāhmaṇa* occurs, when contrasted with the large number of those in which *brāhmān* is found, seems, as I have already observed, to prove conclusively that the former word was but little employed in the earlier part of the Vedic era, and only came into common use towards its close. In some of these passages (as in vii. 103, 1, 7, 8; x. 88, 19) there is nothing to shew that the Brāhman is alluded to as anything more than a professional priest, and in vii. 103, the comparison of frogs to Brāhmanas may seem even to imply a want of respect for the latter and their office.⁴⁵ In other places (i. 164, 45, and x. 71, 8, 9) a distinction appears to be drawn between intelligent and unintelligent Brāhmanas, between such as were thoughtful and others who were mere mechanical instruments in carrying on the ceremonial of worship,⁴⁶ which, certainly points to the existence of a sacerdotal class. In another passage (x. 97, 22) the importance of a Brāhman to the proper performance of religious rites appears to be clearly expressed. In x. 109, where the words *brāhmān* (*passim*) and *brāh-*

⁴⁵ See Müller's remarks on this hymn in his *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 494.

⁴⁶ In R.V. viii. 50, 9, it is said: “Whether an unwise or a wise man, o Indra, has offered to thee a hymn, he has gladdened (thee) through his devotion to thee (*avipre vā yad avidhad vipre vā Indra te vachah | sa gra mamandat lōyā ūy ādi*).”

mana (in verse 4) seem to be used interchangeably—the inviolability of Brāhman's wives, the peril of interfering with them, and the blessing attendant on reparation for any outrage committed against them, are referred to in such a way as to shew at once the loftiness of the claim set up by the Brāhmins on their own behalf, and to prove that these pretensions were frequently disregarded by the nobles. In x. 16, 6, the Brāhmins are spoken of as inspired by Soma, and in vi. 75, 10, the manes of earlier Brāhmins are reckoned among those divine beings who have power to protect the suppliant. But in none of these texts is any clear reference made to the Brāhmins as constituting an exclusive caste or race, and nothing whatever is said about their being descended from an ancestor distinct from those of the other classes of their countrymen.

SECT. II.—*Quotations from the Rig-veda, the Nirukta, the Mahābhārata, and other works, to shew that according to ancient Indian tradition, persons not of priestly families were authors of Vedic hymns, and exercised priestly functions.*

But in addition to the negative evidence adduced in the preceding section, that during the age to which the greater part of the hymns of the Rig-veda are referable, the system of castes had, to say the least, not yet attained its full development, we find also a considerable amount of proof in the hymns themselves, or in later works, or from a comparison of both, that many of the hymns either were, or from a remote antiquity were believed to be, the productions of authors not of sacerdotal descent; and that some of these persons also acted as priests. The most signal instance of this kind is that of Viśvāmitra; but from the abundance of the materials which exist for its illustration I shall reserve it for the next chapter, where I shall treat of the contests between the Brāhmins and the Kshattriyas.

In later times, when none but Brāhman priests were known, it seemed to be an unaccountable, and—as contradicting the exclusive sacerdotal pretensions of the Brāhmins—an inconvenient circumstance, that priestly functions should have been recorded as exercised by persons whom tradition represented as Rājanyas; and it therefore became necessary to explain away the historical facts, by inventing miraculous legends to make it appear that these men of the royal order had been

in reality transformed into Brāhmanas, as the reward of their superhuman merits and austerities—an idea of which we shall meet with various illustrations in the sequel. The very existence, however, of such a word as *rājarshi*, or “royal rishi,” proves that Indian tradition recognized as rishis or authors of Vedic hymns persons who were considered to belong to Rājanya families. A number of such are named (though without the epithet of *rājarshi*) in the Anukramaṇikā or index to the Rīg-veda; but Sāyaṇa, who quotes that old document, gives them this title. Thus, in the introduction to hymn i. 100, he says: *Atra anukramyate “sa yo ṛishā ’ekonā Vārshāgirāḥ Rījrāśvāambarīsha-Sahadeva-Bhayamāna-Surādhasaḥ” iti | Ṽṛishāgiro mahārājasya putrabhūtāḥ Rījrāśvādayaḥ pancha rājarshayaḥ sadehaṁ sūktāṁ dadriṣuḥ | atas te asya sūktasya ṛishayaḥ | uktaṁ hy ārshūmnukramanyām “sūktāṁ sa yo ṛishety etat pancha Vārshāgirāḥ viduḥ | niyuktāḥ nāmadheyaiḥ svair api ‘chaitat tyad’ iti ṛichi” iti |* “It is said in the Anukramaṇikā, ‘Of this hymn (the rishis) are Rījrāśva, Ambarīsha, Sahadeva, Bhayamāna, and Surādhas, sons of Ṽṛishāgir.’ Rījrāśva and others, sons of King Ṽṛishāgir, in all five rājarshis, saw this hymn in a bodily form. Hence they are its rishis (or seers). For it is declared in the Ārsha Anukramaṇī: ‘The five sons of Ṽṛishāgir, who are mentioned by name in the verse beginning “this praise” (the 17th), know this hymn.’” The 17th verse is as follows: *Etat tyat te Indra ṛishne ukthaṁ Vārshāgirāḥ abhi grīṇanti rādhaḥ | Rījrāśvaḥ prashṭībhir Ambarīshaḥ Sahadevo Bhayamānaḥ Surādhaḥ |* “This hymn the Vārshāgiras, Rījrāśva, with his attendants, and Ambarīsha, Sahadeva, Bhayamāna, and Surādhas, utter to thee, the vigorous, o Indra, as their homage;” on which Sāyaṇa repeats the remark that these persons were rājarshis (*etat ukthaṁ stotraṁ rādhaḥ saṁrādhaḥ tvat-pṛiti-hetuṁ Vārshāgirāḥ Ṽṛishāgiro rājnaḥ putrāḥ Rījrāśvādayo ’bhi grīṇanti ābhimukhyena vadanti | . . . Rījrāśvaḥ etat-sanjño rājarshiḥ prashṭībhiḥ pārśva-sthair anyair ṛishibhiḥ saha Indram astaut | ke te pārśva-sthāḥ | Ambarīshādayaś chatvāro rājarshayaḥ*). Ambarīsha is also said to be the rishi of ix. 98. Again, “Trasadasyu, son of Purukutsa, a Rājarshi,” is said by Sāyaṇa on R. V. iv. 42, to be the rishi of that hymn (*Purukutsasya putras Trasadasyuḥ rājarshiḥ | . . . atrānukramaṇikā ‘mama dvitā’ daśa Trasadasyuḥ Paurukutsayaḥ*). In the 8th and 9th verses Trasadasyu is thus mentioned: *Asmākam atra pitaras te āsan sapta ṛishayo Daurgahe badhyamāne | te ā*

ayajanta Trasadasyum asyāḥ Indraṁ na vṛittraturam arddhadevam | 9. *Purukutsānī hi vām adūśad havyebhir Indrā-varuṇā namobhiḥ* | *atha rājānaṁ Trasadasyum asyāḥ vṛittrahanaṁ dadathur arddhadevam* | 8.

“These seven rishis were our fathers. When the son of Durgaha was bound they gained by sacrifice for her (Purukutsānī) a son Trasadasyu, a slayer of foes, like Indra, a demigod. 9. Purukutsānī worshipped you, o Indra and Varuṇa, with salutations and obeisances; then ye gave her king Trasadasyu, a slayer of enemies, a demigod.” I give Sāyaṇa’s note on these verses: “*Purukutsasya mahishī Daurgahe bandhana-sthite* | *patyāv arājakaṁ dṛishṭvā rāshṭram putrasya lipsayā* | *yadṛichhayā samāyātān saptarshīn paryapūjayat* | *te cha prītāḥ punaḥ prochur ‘yajendrā-varuṇau bhṛīsam’* | *sū chendra-varuṇāv ishṭvā Trasadasyum ajājanat* | *itihāsam imaṁ jānann rishir brūte rīchāv iha*” | *atha asmākam atra asminn arājake deśe asyām prithivyaṁ vā pitarāḥ pūlayitārāḥ utpādakās te āsann abhavan* | *ete saptarshayaḥ prasiddhāḥ Daurgahe Durgahasya putre Purukutse badhyamāne dṛidham pūśair yasmād asyāḥ asyai Purukutsānyai Trasadasyum āyajanta prādur Indrā-Varuṇayor anugrahāt* | “The queen of Purukutsa, when her husband, the son of Durgaha, was imprisoned, seeing the kingdom to be destitute of a ruler, and desirous of a son, of her own accord paid honour to the seven rishis who had arrived. And they, again, being pleased told her to sacrifice to Indra and Varuṇa. Having done so she bore Trasadasyu. Knowing this story, the rishi utters these two verses;” which Sāyaṇa then explains. Similarly Sāyaṇa says on v. 27: “Tryarūṇa son of Trivṛishṇa, Trasadasyu son of Purukutsa, and Āśvamedha son of Bharata, these three kings conjoined, are the rishis of this hymn; or Atri is the rishi” (*Atrānukramaṇikā* | “*Anasvantā shatṛ Trivṛishṇa-paurukutsyau drau Tryarūṇa-Transadasyū rājānau Bhārataś cha Āśvamedhaḥ* | . . . ‘na ātmā ātmane dadyād’ *iti sarvāśv Atriṁ kechit*” . . . *Trivṛishṇasya putras Tryarūṇaḥ Purukutsasya putras Trasadasyur Bharatasya putro’śvamedhaḥ ete trayo’pi rājānaḥ sambhūya asya sūktasya rishayaḥ* | *yadvā Atrir eva rīshīḥ*). The Anukramaṇikā, however, adds that according to some, as “no one would give gifts to himself, none of the princes mentioned as donors could be the author; but Atri must be the rishi.” As the hymn is spoken by a fourth person, in praise of the liberality of these kings, it is clear they cannot well be its authors. And a similar remark applies to iv. 42, 8 f. However, the Hindu tradition, being such as it is, is good proof that kings could, in

conformity with ancient opinion, be rishis. Trasadasyu and Trayaruṇa are also mentioned as the rishis of ix. 110.⁵⁰ The rishis of iv. 43 and iv. 44 are declared by Sāyaṇa, and by the Anukramaṇikā, to be Purumīḥa, and Ajamīḥa, sons or descendants of Suhotra (iv. 43, *Atrānukramaṇikā* 'kaḥ u śāśrat' *sapta Purumīḥajamīḥau Sauhotrau tv Āśvinañ hi* | iv. 44, *Purumīḥajamīḥāu eva rishī*). Though these persons are not said by either of these authorities to be kings, yet in the Viṣṇu and Bhāgavata Purāṇas the latter is mentioned as being of royal race, and a tribe of Brāhmanas is said to have been descended from him (see above p. 227). In the sixth verse of iv. 44, the descendants of Ajamīḥa are said to have come to the worship of the Āśvins (*naro yad vām Āśvinā stomam āvan sadhastutim Ajamīḥāso agman*). The following hymns, also, are said by tradition to have had the undermentioned kings for their rishis, viz.: vi. 15, Vītahavya (or Bharadvāja); x. 9, Sindhuvīpa, son of Ambarīsha (or Trīśiras, son of Tvasṭrī); x. 75, Sindhukshit, son of Priyamedha; x. 133, Sudās, son of Pijavana; x. 134, Māndhātṛi, son of Yuvanāśva (see above, p. 225); x. 179, Sibi, son of Uśnara, Pratardana, son of Divodāsa and king of Kāśī (see above, p. 229), and Vasumanas, son of Rohidaśva; and x. 148 is declared to have had Prithī Vainya⁵¹ as its rishi. In the fifth verse of that hymn it is said: *Srudhi havam Indra śūra Prithyāḥ uta starase Venyasya arkaiḥ* | "Hear, o heroic Indra, the invocation of Prithī; and thou art praised by the hymn of Venya." In viii. 9, 10, also, Prithī Vainya is mentioned at the same time with three rishis: *Yad vām Kakshīvān uta yad Vyaśvaḥ rishir yad vām Dīrghatamāḥ juhāva* | *Prithī yad vām Vainyaḥ sadaneshu eva id ato Āśvinā chetayethām* | "Whatever oblation (or invocation) Kakshīvat has made to you, or the rishi Vyaśva, or Dīrghatamas, or Prithī, son of Vena, in the places of

⁵⁰ In the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, as we have seen above, p. 237. Trayyaruṇa, Pushkarin, and Kapi are said to have been sons of Urukshaya, and all of them to have become Brāhmanas; and in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, Trayyarūṇi, Pushkarārūṇi, and Kapi are said to have all become Brāhmanas.

⁵¹ The S. P. Br. v. 3, 5, 4, refers to Prithī as "first of men who was installed as a king" (*Prithī ha vai Vainyo manushyūnām prathamō 'bhishishiche*). I extract from Dr. Hall's edition of Prof. Wilson's Viṣṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. the following verse, adduced by the editor from the Vāyu Purāṇa about royal rishis: *Mūnave Vainave (?) vamsē Aīḍe vāñśe cha ye nripāḥ* | *Aīḍā Aikshvākā Nūbhāgā jneyā rūjuraḥayasa tu te* | "Kings in the race of Manu, Vena (?), and Iḍa, the descendants of Iḍa, Ikshvāku, and Nabhāga are to be known as having been rājashis."

sacrifice, take notice of that, o Aśvins." Here Sāyaṇa refers to Prithi as "the royal rishi of that name."

From the details I have supplied it is clear that in many cases the evidence is against the supposition that the princes to whom the hymns are ascribed were in reality their authors. The only instances in which the authorship seems to be established by the tenor of the hymns themselves are those of the Vārshagiras, or, at all events, that of Prithi. But, as has been already remarked, the fact that ancient Hindu tradition recognizes royal rishis as the authors of hymns is sufficient to prove that such cases were not unknown. Even if we were to suppose that flattery had any share in the creation of these traditions, it no doubt proceeded upon the belief of those who put them into circulation, that in earlier times the distinction between the priests and other classes was not so sharply defined as in their own day.

I proceed, however, to the case of Devāpi, in which the materials for forming a judgment are more adequate and satisfactory, and prove that he was not merely a rishi but an officiating priest.

In the Anukramanikā, R.V. x. 98 is ascribed to him as its author; and Yāska states as follows in the Nirukta, ii. 10:

Tatra itihāsam ūchakshate | Devāpiś cha Ārṣṭiṣheṇaḥ S'antanuś cha Kauravyau bhrātaraū babhūratuḥ | sa S'antanuḥ kaṇīyān abhishechayānchakre | Devāpiś tapaḥ pratipede | tataḥ S'antanoh rājye dvādaśa varshāni devo na vavarsha | tam ūchur brāhmaṇāḥ "adharmas trayā charito jyeshṭham bhrātaram antariṭya abhishechitam | tasmāt te devo na varshati" iti | sa S'antanur Devāpiṁ śiśiksha rājyena | tam uvācha Devāpiḥ "purohitas te 'sāni yājayāni cha tvā" iti | tasya etad varsha-kāmasūktam | tasya eṣhā bhavati |

"Here they relate a story. Devāpi son of Rishṭiṣheṇa, and Santanu, belonged to the race of Kuru and were brothers. Santanu, who was the younger, caused himself to be installed as king, whilst Devāpi betook himself to austere fervour. Then the god did not rain for twelve years of Santanu's reign. The Brāhmaṇs said to him: 'Thou hast practised unrighteousness in that, passing by thy elder brother, thou hast caused thyself to be installed as king. It is for this reason that the god does not rain.' Santanu then sought to invest Devāpi with the sovereignty; but the latter said to him: 'Let me be th

purohita and perform sacrifice for thee.' This hymn, expressing a desire of rain, is his. The following verse is part of it."

Yāska then quotes a verse of R.V. x. 98, the whole of which is as follows :

Bṛihaspate prati me devatām ihi Mitro vā yad Varuno vā asi Pūshā | Ādityair vā yad Vasubhir Marutrān sa Parjanyaṁ S'antanave vṛishāya | 2. *Ā devo dūto ajirāś chikītvān trad Devāpe abhi mām āgachhat | prati-chīnaḥ prati mām ā varṣitsva dadhāmi te dyumatīm vācham āsan |* 3. *Asme dhehi dyumatīm vācham āsan Bṛihaspate anamīcām ishirām | yayā vṛishṭīm S'antanave vanūra divo drapso madhumān ā viveśa |* 4. *Ā no drapsāḥ madhumanto viśantu Indra dehi adhirathaṁ sahasram | ni shīda hotram⁵² ṛituthā yajasva devān Devāpe harishā saparya |* 5. *Ārsh-ṭisheno hotram ṛishir nishīdan Devāpir deva-sumatiṁ chikītvān | sa utta-rasmūd adharaṁ samudram apo divyaḥ asṛijad varshyāḥ abhi |* 6. *Asmin samudre adhi uttarasmin āpo devebhir nirṛitāḥ atishṭhan | tāḥ adravann Ārshṭishenena vṛishṭāḥ Devāpinā preshitāḥ mṛikshinīshu |* 7. *Yad Devā-piḥ S'antanave purohito hotrāya vṛitāḥ kṛipayann adidhet | deva-śrutaṁ vṛishṭi-vaniṁ rarāṇo Bṛihaspatir vācham asmai ayachhat |* 8. *Yam tvā Devāpiḥ śuśuchāno Agne Ārshṭisheno manushyaḥ samīdhe | viśvebhir devair anumadyamānaḥ pra Parjanyaṁ īraya vṛishṭimantam |* 9. *Tvām pūrve vṛishayo gīrbhir āyan tvām adhvareshu puruhūta viśve | sahasrāṇi adhirathāni asme ā no yajnaṁ rohidaśva upa yāhi |* 10. *Etāni Agni na-vatir nava tve āhutāni adhirathā sahasrā | tebhir vardhasva tanvaḥ sūra pūrvīr divo no vṛishṭim ishito rirīhi |* 11. *Etāni Agne navatiṁ sahasrā sam pra yachha vṛishne Indrāya bhāgam | vidvān pathaḥ ṛitūso devayā-nān apy aulānaṁ divi deveshu dhehi |* 12. *Agne bādhasva vi mṛidho vi durgahā apa amīvām apa rakshāṁsi sedha | asmāt samudrād bṛihato divo no apūm bhūmānam upa naḥ sṛija iha |*

"Approach, Bṛihaspati,⁵³ to my worship of the gods, whether thou art Mitra, Varuna, Pūshan, or art attended by the Ādityas, Vasus, or Maruts: cause Parjanya to rain for Santanu. 2. The god, a rapid messenger, has become aware, and has come from thee, o Devāpi, to me, (saying) 'approach towards me; I will place a brilliant hymn

⁵² Compare R.V. ii. 1, 2.

⁵³ It looks as if Agni were here to be understood by Bṛihaspati, see verses 9-12. In R.V. ii. 1, 4 ff. Agni is identified with Varuna, Mitra, Aryaman, Amśa, Tvashṭri, Rudra, Pūshan, Savitṛi, Bhaga.

in thy mouth.' 3. Place in our mouth, o Bṛihaspati, a brilliant hymn, powerful, and spirited, whereby we two may solicit rain for Santanu. The drop full of sweetness has descended on us from the sky. 4. May the drops full of sweetness come down upon us: give us, o Indra, a thousand waggon-loads (of them?). Perform the function of a hotṛi, sacrifice in due form, worship the gods with an oblation, o Devāpi. 5. The rishi Devāpi, son of Rishṭishēṇa, performing the function of a hotṛi, knowing (how to gain) the goodwill of the gods, has discharged from the upper to the lower ocean those waters of the sky which fall in rain. 6. The waters remained shut up by the gods in this upper ocean: they rushed forth when released by the son of Rishṭishēṇa, when discharged by Devāpi into the torrents.⁵⁴ 7. When Devāpi, placed in front of Santanu (as his purohita), chosen for the office of hotṛi, fulfilling his function, kindled (the fire),—then, granting the prayer for rain which was heard by the gods, Bṛihaspati gave him a hymn. 8. Do thou, o Agni, whom the man⁵⁵ Devāpi the son of Rishṭishēṇa has inflamed and kindled,—do thou, delighted, with all the the gods, send hither the rain-bearing Parjanya. 9. Former rishis have approached thee with their hymns; and all (approach) thee, o god, much-invoked, in their sacrifices: give us thousands of waggon-loads: come, thou who art borne by red horses,⁵⁶ to our sacrifice. 10. These ninety-nine thousands of waggon-loads (of wood and butter?) have been thrown into thee, o Agni, as oblations. Through them grow, hero, to (the bulk of) thy former bodies;⁵⁷ and stimulated, grant us rain from the sky. 11. (Of) these ninety thousands give, o Agni, a share to the vigorous Indra. Knowing the paths which rightly lead to the gods, convey the oblation(?) to the deities in the sky. 12. Overcome, o Agni, our enemies, our calamities; drive away sickness, and rakshases. From this great ocean of the sky discharge upon us an abundance of waters."

The fact of Devāpi being reputed as the author of this hymn, and as the purohita and hotṛi of his brother, seems to have led the legendary writers to invent the story of his becoming a Brāhman, which (as men-

⁵⁴ So the word *mṛikshinī* is explained in Böhrlingk and Roth's Lexicon,

⁵⁵ Or, "descendant of Manush" (*manushya*).

⁵⁶ This is a common epithet of Agni.

⁵⁷ This means, I suppose, "burst forth into vast flames."

tioned by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, i. p. 203) is recorded in the Sūrya-parvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 2281 ff. where he is there said to have attained this distinction at a certain place of pilgrimage called Prithūdaka; where Sindhudvīpa and Viśvāmitra also were received into the higher caste:

Tatrārṣtīṣheṇaḥ Kauravya brāhmaṇyaṁ saṁśita-vrataḥ | tapasā mahatā rājan prāptavān rīshi-sattamaḥ | Sindhudvīpaś cha rājarshir Devāpiś cha mahātāpāḥ | brāhmaṇyaṁ labdhavān yatra Viśvāmitras tathā munih | mahātāpasvī bhagavān ugra-tejūḥ mahātāpāḥ | 2287. Purā kṛita-yuge rajann Ārṣtīṣheṇo dvijottamaḥ | vasan guru-kule nityaṁ nityam adhyayane rataḥ | tasya rājan guru-kule vasato nityam eva cha | samūptiṁ nūgamad vidyā nāpi vedāḥ viśūmpate | sa nirvinṇas tato rājāns tapas tepe mahātāpāḥ | tato vai tapasā tena prāpya vedān anuttamanān | sa vidvān veda-yuktas cha siddhas chūpy rīshi-sattamaḥ | | eram siddhaḥ sa bhagavān Ārṣtīṣheṇaḥ pratāpavān | tasminn eva tadā tīrthe Sindhudvīpaḥ pratāpavān | Devāpiś cha mahārāja brāhmaṇyam prāpatur mahat |

2281. "There the most excellent rishi Ārṣtīṣheṇa, constant in his observances, obtained Brāhmanhood by great austere fervour; as did also the royal rishi Sindhudvīpa,⁵⁸ and Devāpi great in austere fervour, and the glorious muni Viśvāmitra, of great austere fervour and fiery vigour." Some other particulars of Ārṣtīṣheṇa are given further on: 2287. "Formerly in the Kṛita age the most excellent Brāhman Ārṣtīṣheṇa dwelt constantly in his preceptor's family, devoted to incessant study; but could not complete his mastery of science or of the vedas.⁵⁹ Being in consequence discouraged, he betook himself to intense austere fervour. By this means he acquired the incomparable Vedas, and became learned and perfect. . . . At the same place of pilgrimage the majestic Sindhudvīpa and Devāpi obtained the great distinction of Brāhmanhood."

It will be observed that here Ārṣtīṣheṇa is, in opposition to the authority of the Nirukta, made a distinct person from Devāpi.

⁵⁸ This prince also, as we have seen above, is mentioned among those Rājanyas who composed Vedic hymns.

⁵⁹ The Vedas are here spoken of in the plural, although Ārṣtīṣheṇa is said to have lived in the Kṛita age. But the M. Bh. itself says elsewhere (see above, p. 145) that there was then but one Veda.

In a note to his (French) translation of the Rig-veda, M. Langlois (vol. iv. 502) supposes that the hymn above translated (x. 98), like the Purusha Sūkta, is very much posterior in date to the other hymns in the collection. The names of Devāpi and Sāntanu indicate, he thinks, as the date of its composition, a period not far preceding that of the great war of the Mahābhārata. Professor Weber, on the other hand, considers (Indische Studien, i. 203) that the Sāntanu and Devāpi mentioned in that work (Ādi-parvan, 3750 f.) cannot be the same as the persons alluded to in the Rigveda, because their father was Pratīpa, not Rishṭishena; and because he thinks it doubtful whether a prince who preceded the Pāṇḍavas by only two generations could have been named in the Rig-veda, and appear there as an author of hymns.

The verses of the Ādi-parvan just referred to are as follows :

*Pratīpasya trayāḥ putrāḥ jajñire Bharatarshabha | Devāpiḥ S'āntanuś
chaiva Vāhlikāś mahārathāḥ | Devāpiś cha pravavrāja teshām dharmā-
hitepsayā | S'āntanuś cha mahīm lebhe Vāhlikāś cha mahārathāḥ |*

"Three sons were born to Pratīpa, viz. Devāpi, Sāntanu, and Vāhlika the charioteer. Of these Devāpi, desiring the benefits of religious excellence, became an ascetic; whilst Sāntanu and Vāhlika obtained (the rule of) the earth."

The Harivaṁśa gives a different story about the same Devāpi, verse 1819 :

*Pratīpo Bhīmasenāt tu Pratīpasya tu S'āntanuḥ | Devāpir Vāhlikāś
chaiva trayāḥ eva mahārathāḥ | 1822. Upādhyūyas tu devānām
Devāpir abhavad muniḥ | Chyavanasya kṛitāḥ putrāḥ ishṭāś chāsīd ma-
hātmanāḥ |*

"Pratīpa sprang from Bhīmasena; and Sāntanu, Devāpi, and Vāhlika were the three chariot-driving sons of Pratīpa. . . . 1822. Devāpi became a muni, and preceptor of the gods, being the adopted son of Chyavana, by whom he was beloved."

The Vishṇu Purāṇa (iv. 20, 7 ff.) concurs with the preceding authorities in making Devāpi and Sāntanu to be sons of Pratīpa, and descendants of Kuru, and his son Jahnu. It repeats the legend given in the Nirukta of the country of Sāntanu being visited by a drought of twelve years duration, in consequence of his having assumed the royal authority while his elder brother lived. And although, as will be seen, the sequel of the story is widely different from that recorded by the

Nirukta, the earlier incidents in the two narratives are so similar, that it would appear to have been the intention of the Puranic writer to identify the Devāpi and Sāntanu whose history he relates with the persons of the same names, although of different parentage, mentioned in Yaska's work. He may, however, possibly have transferred an older legend to more recent personages. The passage of the Vishṇu Purāṇa is as follows:

Rikshād Bhīmasenas tatas cha Dilīpaḥ | Dilīpāt Pratīpas tasyāpi Devāpi Sāntanu-Vāhlika-sanjñās trayāḥ putrāḥ bābhūruḥ | Devāpir bālā, era aranyaṁ viveśa | Sāntanūr avanīpatir abhavat | ayaṁ cha tasya ślokaḥ prithivyāṁ gīyate "yaṁ yaṁ karūbhyāṁ spṛīṣati jīrṇaṁ yau vanam eti saḥ | śāntiṁ chāpnoti yenāgryāṁ karmaṇā tena Sāntanuḥ" | *tasya Sāntanoḥ rāṣṭre drādaśa varshāni devo na vavarsha tatascha aśeṣa-rāṣṭra-vinūśam avekṣya asau rājā brāhmaṇān aprichha "bhoḥ kasmād asmin rāṣṭre devo na varshati | ko mama aparādhaḥ" iti | te tam ūchur "agrajasya te 'rḥā iyaṁ avanis trayā bhujyate parivettā tram" | ity uktaḥ sa punas tūn aprichhat "kim mayā vidheyam" iti | tena tam ūchur "yāvad Devāpir na patanādibhir doṣhair abhibhūyate tāvat tasya arhaṁ rājyam | tad alam etena tasmai diyatām" | ity ukte tasya mantri-pravareṇa Aśmasārīṇā tatra aranye tapasvino veda-vāda-virodha-vaktāraḥ prayojitūḥ | tair ati-rīju-mater mahīpati-putrasya buddhir veda-virodha-mārgānusārīṇy akriyata | rājā cha Sāntanur drīja vachanotpanna-parivedana-śokas tūn brāhmaṇān agranīkṛitya agraja-rājya-pradānāya aranyaṁ jagāma | tad-āsramam upagatūś cha tam avanīpati-putraṁ Devāpim upatasthūḥ | te brāhmaṇāḥ veda-vādānurviddhāni va chāṁsi "rājyam agrajena kartavyam" ity arthavanti tam ūchuḥ | asā api veda-vāda-virodha-yukti-dūṣhitam aneka-prakāram tūn āha | tatas t brāhmaṇāḥ Sāntanum ūchur "āgachha bho rājann alam atra ati-nirbandhena | praśāntaḥ eva asāv anāvṛiṣṭi-doṣhaḥ | patito 'yam anūdi kāla-mahita-veda-vachana-dūṣhanochehūrāṇūt | patite cha agraje naiv parivetryam; bhavati" | ity uktaḥ Sāntanuḥ sva-puram āgatya rājyaṁ akarot | veda-vāda-virodhi-vachanochehūrāṇa-dūṣhite cha jyeshṭhe 'smi bhrātari tiṣṭhaty api Devāpāv akhila-sasya-nishpattaye vavarsha bhaga vān Parjanyaḥ |*

"From Riksha sprang Bhīmasena; from him Dilīpa; from him Pratīpa, who again had three sons called Devāpi, Sāntanu, and Vāhlika; Devāpi while yet a boy retired to the forest; and Sāntanu becam

king. Regarding him this verse is current in the world: 'Every decrepit man whom he touches with his hands becomes young. He is called Sântanu from that work whereby he obtains supreme tranquility (*sânti*).⁶⁰ The god did not rain on the country of this Sântanu for twelve years. Beholding then the ruin of his entire realm, the king enquired of the Brâhmanas: 'Why does not the god rain on this country; what is my offence?' The Brâhmanas replied: 'This earth, which is the right of thy elder brother, is now enjoyed by thee; thou art a *parivettî* (one married before his elder brother).⁶⁰ Receiving this reply, he again asked them: 'What must I do?' They then answered: 'So long as Devâpi does not succumb to declension from orthodoxy and other offences, the royal authority is his by right; to him therefore let it be given without further question.' When they had so said, the king's principal minister Aśmasārīn employed certain ascetics propounding doctrines contrary to the declarations of the Vedas to proceed into the forest, by whom the understanding of the very simple-minded prince (Devâpi) was led to adopt a system at variance with those sacred books. King Sântanu being distressed for his offence in consequence of what the Brâhmanas had said to him, went, preceded by those Brâhmanas, to the forest in order to deliver over the kingdom to his elder brother. Arriving at the hermitage, they came to prince Devâpi. The Brâhmanas addressed to him statements founded on the declarations of the Veda, to the effect that the royal authority should be exercised by the elder brother. He, on his part, expressed to them many things that were vitiated by reasonings contrary to the tenor of the Veda. The Brâhmanas then said to Sântanu, 'Come hither, o king: there is no occasion for any excessive hesitation in this affair: the offence which led to the drought is now removed. Your brother has fallen by uttering a contradiction of the words of the Veda which

⁶⁰ This is illustrated by Manu iii, 171 f.: *Dārāgnihotra-saṃyogaṃ kurute yo 'greṣṭe sthite | parivettā sa vijneyaḥ parivittis tu pūrevajah |* 172. *Parivittih parivettā yayā cha parividyate | sarve te narakam gānti dātṛi-yājaka-panchamāḥ |* "171. He who, while his elder brother is unwedded, marries a wife with the nuptial fires, is to be known as a *parivettî*, and his elder brother as a *parivitti*. 172. The *parivitti*, the *parivettî*, the female by whom the offence is committed, he who gives her away, and fifthly the officiating priest, all go to hell." The Indian writers regard the relation of a king to his realm as analogous to that of a husband to his wife. The earth is the king's bride.

Nirukta, the earlier incidents in the two narratives are so similar, that it would appear to have been the intention of the Puranic writer to identify the Devāpi and Sāntanu whose history he relates with the persons of the same names, although of different parentage, mentioned in Yāska's work. He may, however, possibly have transferred an older legend to more recent personages. The passage of the Vishṇu Purāṇa is as follows :

Rikshād Bhīmasenas tatas cha Dilīpaḥ | Dilīpāt Pratīpas tasyūpi Devāpi Sāntanu- Vāhlika-sanjñās trayaḥ putrāḥ bābhūruḥ | Devāpir bālāḥ eva aranyaṁ vireśa | Sāntanūr avanīpatir abhavat | ayaṁ cha tasya ślokaḥ prithiryaṁ gīyate “yaṁ yaṁ karābhyāṁ spṛisati jīrṇaṁ yauvanam eti saḥ | śāntiṁ chūpnoti yenāgryāṁ karmaṇā tena Sāntanuḥ” | tasya Sāntanoḥ rūṣṭre drādaśa varshūni devo na vavarsha | tataścha aśeśa-rūṣṭra-vināśam avekshya asau rājā brāhmaṇān aprichhad “bhoḥ kasmād asmin rūṣṭre devo na varshati | ko mama aparādhaḥ” iti | te tam ūchur “agrajasya te 'rḥā iyaṁ avanis trayā bhujyate parivettā tvam” | ity uktaḥ sa punas tām aprichhat “kim mayā vidheyam” iti | tena tam ūchur “yārad Devāpir na putanādibhir doṣhair abhibhūyate tāvat tasya arhaṁ rājyam | tad alam etena tasmai diyatām” | ity ukte tasya mantri-pratarena Aśmasūrinū tatra aranye tapasvino veda-vāda-virodha-vaktāraḥ prayojitūḥ | tair ati-ṛiju-mater mahīpati-putrasya buddhir veda-virodha-mārgānusāriny akriyata | rājā cha Sāntanur drija-cachanoṭpanna-parivedana-śokas tām brāhmaṇān agranīkṛitya agraja-rājya-pradūnāya aranyaṁ jagāma | tad-āśramam upagatūś cha tam aranīpati-putraṁ Devāpim upatasthuḥ | te brāhmaṇāḥ veda-vādūnuriddhāni vacchāmsi “rājyam agrajena kartavyam” ity arthavanti tam ūchuḥ | asāv api veda-vāda-virodha-yukti-dūṣhitam aneka-prakāram tām ūha | tatas te brāhmaṇāḥ Sāntanum ūchur “āgachha bho rājann alam atra ati-nir-bandhena | praśūntaḥ eva asāv anūṛiṣṭi-doṣaḥ | patito 'yam anūdikāla-mahita-veda-vachana-dūṣhanoḥchāraṇāt | patite cha agraje naiva pūrivettryam bhavati” | ity uktaḥ Sāntanuḥ sa-puram āgatya rājyam akarot | veda-vāda-virodhi-vachanoḥchāraṇa-dūṣhite cha jyeshṭhe 'smin bhrātari tiṣṭhaty api Devāpāv akhila-sasya-niṣpattaye vavarsha bhagavān Parjanyaḥ |

“From Riksha sprang Bhīmasena; from him Dilīpa; from him Pratīpa, who again had three sons called Devāpi, Sāntanu, and Vāhlika. Devāpi while yet a boy retired to the forest; and Sāntanu became

king. Regarding him this verse is current in the world: 'Every decrepit man whom he touches with his hands becomes young. He is called Sāntanu from that work whereby he obtains supreme tranquility (*śānti*).' The god did not rain on the country of this Sāntanu for twelve years. Beholding then the ruin of his entire realm, the king enquired of the Brāhmins: 'Why does not the god rain on this country; what is my offence?' The Brāhmins replied: 'This earth, which is the right of thy elder brother, is now enjoyed by thee; thou art a *parivettṛi* (one married before his elder brother).'⁶⁰ Receiving this reply, he again asked them: 'What must I do?' They then answered: 'So long as Devāpi does not succumb to declension from orthodoxy and other offences, the royal authority is his by right; to him therefore let it be given without further question.' When they had so said, the king's principal minister Aśmasārīn employed certain ascetics propounding doctrines contrary to the declarations of the Vedas; to proceed into the forest, by whom the understanding of the very simple-minded prince (Devāpi) was led to adopt a system at variance with those sacred books. King Sāntanu being distressed for his offence in consequence of what the Brāhmins had said to him, went, preceded by those Brāhmins, to the forest in order to deliver over the kingdom to his elder brother. Arriving at the hermitage, they came to prince Devāpi. The Brāhmins addressed to him statements founded on the declarations of the Veda, to the effect that the royal authority should be exercised by the elder brother. He, on his part, expressed to them many things that were vitiated by reasonings contrary to the tenor of the Veda. The Brāhmins then said to Sāntanu, 'Come hither, o king: there is no occasion for any excessive hesitation in this affair: the offence which led to the drought is now removed. Your brother has fallen by uttering a contradiction of the words of the Veda which

⁶⁰ This is illustrated by Manu iii, 171 f.: *Dārāgnihotra-saṁyogaṁ kurute yo 'g athite | parivettā sa vijneyaḥ parivittis tu pūrvajāḥ |* 172. *Parivittih parivettā gayā cha parividyate | sarve te narakāṁ yūnti dātṛi-yājaka-panchamāḥ |* "171. He who, while his elder brother is unwedded, marries a wife with the nuptial fires, is to be known as a *parivettṛi*, and his elder brother as a *parivitti*. 172. The *parivitti*, the *parivettṛi*, the female by whom the offence is committed, he who gives her away, and fifthly the officiating priest, all go to hell." The Indian writers regard the relation of a king to his realm as analogous to that of a husband to his wife. The earth is his bride.

have been revered from time without beginning; and when the elder brother has fallen, the younger is no longer chargeable with the offence of *pārivettrya* (i.e. of marrying before his elder brother). When he had been so addressed, Sāntanu returned to his capital, and exercised the royal authority. And although his eldest brother Devāpi continued to be degraded by having uttered words opposed to the doctrines of the Veda, the god Parjanya rained in order to produce a harvest of all sorts of grain."

Can the compiler of the Purāṇa have deviated from the conclusion of this history as found in the Nirukta, and given it a new turn, in order to escape from the conclusion that a Rājanya could officiate as a purohita?

The same story is briefly told in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 22, 14-17.

In the Udyogaparvan of the Mahābhārata, on the other hand, Devāpi's virtues and orthodoxy are extolled in the highest terms, and his exclusion from the throne is ascribed solely to his being a leper, v. 5054 :

*Devāpis tu mahātejās tvag-doshī rāja-sattamaḥ | dhārmikāḥ satya-vādī
cha pituḥ śuśrūṣhaṇe rataḥ | paura-jānapadānām cha sammataḥ sādhu-
satkṛitaḥ | sarveśhām bāla-vṛiddhānām Devāpir hṛidayangamaḥ | radān-
yaḥ satyasandhaś cha sarva-bhūta-hite rataḥ | varttamānaḥ pituḥ śāstre
brāhmanānām tathaiva cha | | tam brāhmanūs cha vṛiddhāś cha
paura-jānapadaik saha | sarve nivārayāmāsur Devāper abhisechanam | sa
tach chhṛutvā tu nṛipatir abhisheka-nivāraṇam | āśru-kanṭho 'bhavad rājā
paryasōchata chātmajam | evaṁ vadānyo dharmajnaḥ satyasandhaś cha so
'bhavat | priyaḥ prajānām api sa tvag-doshena pradūṣitaḥ | "hinaṅgam
prithivīpālāṁ nābhinandanti devatāḥ" | iti kṛtvā nṛipa-śreṣṭham pra-
tyaśedhan dvijarshabhāḥ | | nivṛitaṁ nṛipaṁ dṛiṣṭvā Devāpiḥ
saṁśṛito vanam |*

"But the glorious Devāpi, a most excellent prince, righteous, veracious, and obedient to his father, was a leper. He was esteemed by the inhabitants both of town and country, honoured by the good, beloved by all, both young and old, eloquent, true to his engagements, devoted to the welfare of all creatures, and conformed to the commands of his father, and of the Brāhmanas." [The king his father grew old and was making preparations for the investiture of his successor; but public opinion was opposed to the devolution of the royal authority on

a leper, however virtuous]. "The Brahmins and aged men, together with the dwellers both in town and country, all restrained him from the investiture of Devāpi. The king, learning their opposition, was choked with tears, and bewailed his son's fate. Thus Devāpi was eloquent, acquainted with duty, true to his promise, and beloved by the people, but vitiated by leprosy. The Brāhmins forbade the king (to make Devāpi his successor), saying, 'the gods do not approve a king who labours under any corporeal defect.' . . . Perceiving that the king (his father) was hindered (from carrying out his wishes) Devāpi retired to the forest."

On the same subject, the Matsya Purāṇa, 49, v. 39 f., states as follows:

*Dilīpasya Pratīpastu tasya putrās trayāḥ smṛitāḥ | Devāpiḥ Śāntanuś
chaiva Bāhlikāś chaiva te trayāḥ | Bāhlikasya tu dāyādāḥ sapta Bāhliś-
varāḥ nṛipāḥ | Devāpis tu apadhvastaḥ prajābhir abhavad muniḥ |
ṛishayaḥ ūchhuḥ | prajābhis tu kimarthaṁ vai apadhvasto janeśvaraḥ |
ke doṣhāḥ rājaputrasya prajābhiḥ samudāhṛitāḥ | Sūta uvācha | kilāśid
rājaputras tu kuṣṭhī taṁ nābhyapūjayan | ko 'rthān vai atra (? vetty
atra) devānām kṣhatṛam prati dvijottamāḥ |*

"The son of Dilīpa was Pratīpa, of whom three sons are recorded, Devāpi, Śāntanu, and Bāhlika. The sons of the last were the seven Bāhliśvara kings. But the Muni Devāpi was rejected by the people. The rishis enquired: 'why was that prince rejected by the people? what faults were alleged against him?' Sūta replied: 'the prince was leprous, and they paid him no respect. Who knows the designs of the gods towards the Kshattriya race?'"

No more is said of Devāpi in this passage.⁶¹ The Viṣṇu Purāṇa has the following further curious particulars regarding him, iv. 24, 44 ff.:

*Devāpiḥ Pauravo rājā Maruś chekshvāku-vaṁśajaḥ | mahāyoga-balo-
petau Kalūpa-grāma-saṁśrayau | kṛite yuge ihāgatya kṣhatṛa-prācart-
takau hi tau | bhaviṣyato Manor vaṁśe vija-bhūtau vyavasthitau | etena
krama-yogena Manu-putir vasundharā | kṛita-tretādi-sanjñāni yugāni
trīṇi bhujyate | Kalau tu vija-bhūtās te kechit tishṭhanti bhūtale | yathaiva
Devāpi-Marū sāmprataṁ samavasthitau |*

"King Devāpi of the race of Puru,⁶² and Maru of the family of

⁶¹ See Prof. Wilson's note, 4to. ed. p. 458.

⁶² In the twentieth chapter, as we have seen, he is said to be of the race of Kuru.

Ikshvāku, filled with the power of intense contemplation (*mahāyoga*) are abiding in the village of Kalāpa, continuing to exist as seeds in the family of Manu; they shall come hither in the (next) Kṛita age, and re-establish the Kshattriya race. According to this order the earth is enjoyed by the sons of Manu throughout the three ages called Kṛita, Tretā, and Dvāpara. But during the Kali certain persons remain upon earth as seeds (of a future race), as Devāpi and Maru now exist."

According to the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 22, 17, it is the lunar race, which had perished in the Kali age, that Devāpi is to restore in the future Kṛita (*soma-rañśe kalau naśṭe kṛitāu sthāpayishyati*).

I shall quote here from the 132nd section of the Matsya Purāṇa, entitled *Manvantara-varṇanam* (a description of the Manvantaras) some of the particulars about the rishis with which it concludes :

98. *Bhṛiguḥ Kāśyaḥ Prachetās cha Dadhīcho hy Atmarān api* |
 99. *Aurvo 'tha Jamadagniś cha Kṛipaḥ Sāradvatas tathā* | *Ārṣṭiśeṇo*
Yudhājich cha Vīṭaharya-Surarchasau | 100. *Vainaḥ Prithur Divodāso*
Brahmāśvo Gṛitsa-Saunakau | *ekonaviṃśatir hy ete Bhṛigavo mantra-*
kṛittamāḥ | 101. *Angirāḥ Vedhasas chaiva Bharadvājo Bhalandanaḥ* |
Ritabādhas tato Gargaḥ Sītīḥ Sankṛitir eva cha | 102. *Gurudhīras cha*
Māndhātā Ambarīshas tathāiva cha | *Yuranāśraḥ Puruḥ Kutsaḥ Pra-*
dyumnaḥ Sravanasya cha | 103. *Ajamīdho 'tha Haryaśvas Takshapaḥ*
Kavir eva cha | *Prishadaśvo Virūpas cha Kanvas chaivātha Mudgalaḥ* |
 104. *Utathyas cha Saradvāmś cha tathā Vājaśravā iti* | *Apasyo 'tha*
Surittas cha Vāmaderas tathāiva cha | 105. *Ajito Bṛihadukthas cha*
ṛishir Dīrghatāmā api | *Kakshivāmś cha trayastriṃśat smṛitā hy Angiraso*
varāḥ | 106. *Ete mantra-kṛitaḥ sarve Kāśyapāmś tu nibodhata* | . . . |
 111. *Viśvāmitras cha Gādheyo Devarājas tathā Balah* | *tathā vidvān*
Madhuchhandūḥ Rishabhas chāghamarshanaḥ | 112. *Ashtako Lohitas*
chaiva Bhṛitakilas cha tāv ubhau | *Vedāśravāḥ Devarūtaḥ Purāṇāśvo*
Dhananjayaḥ | 113. *Mithilās cha mahātejūḥ Sālankāyana eva cha* | *tra-*
yodaśaite vijneyāḥ brahmishṭhāḥ Kauśikāḥ varāḥ | . . . | 115. *Manur*
Vaivasvatas chaiva Idō rājā Purūravāḥ | *Kshattriyāṇām varāḥ hy ete*
vijneyāḥ mantra-vādināḥ | 116. *Bhalandas chaiva Vandyaś cha San-*
kṛittiś² chaiva te trayāḥ | *ete mantra-kṛito jneyāḥ Vaiśyānām pravarāḥ*
sadā | 117. *Ity eka-navatiḥ proktāḥ mantrāḥ yaś cha bahiḥ kṛitaḥ* |

² Various readings—*Bhalandakūś cha Vāsīś cha Sankālascha*.

*brāhmaṇāḥ kṣhattriyaḥ vaiśyaḥ ṛishi-putrān nibodhata | 118. Ṛishikāṇām
sutāḥ hy ete rishi-putrāḥ śrutarshayaḥ |*⁶⁴

“98. Bhṛigu, Kāśya, Prachetas, Dadhicha, Ātmavat, (99) Aurva, Jamadagni, Kṛipa, S'āradvata, Ārṣṭishena, Yudhājiti, Vītahavya, Suvarchas, (100) Vaina, Prithu, Divodāsa, Brahmāśva, Gṛitsa, S'aunaka, these are the nineteen⁶⁵ Bhṛigus, composers of hymns. 101. Angiras, Vedhasa, Bharadvāja, Bhalandana,⁶⁶ Ṛitabādha, Garga, Siti, Sankṛiti, Gurudhira,⁶⁷ Māndhātṛi, Ambarīsha, Yuvanāśva, Purukutsa,⁶⁸ Pradyumna, Śravaṇasya,⁶⁹ Ajamīdha, Haryaśva, Takshapa, Kavi, Pṛishadaśva, Virūpa, Kaṇva, Mudgala, Utathya, S'aradvat, Vājaśravas, Apaśya, Suvitta, Vāmadeva, Ajita, Brihaduktha, Dīrghatamas, Kakshīvat, are recorded as the thirty-three eminent Angirases. These were all composers of hymns. Now learn the Kāśyapas. . . . 111. Viśvāmitra, son of Gādhi, Devarāja, Bala, the wise Madhuchhandas, Ṛishabha, Aghamarshaṇa, (112) Asṭaka, Lohita, Bhṛitakila, Vedaśravas, Devārāta, Purāṇāśva, Dhananjaya, the glorious (113) Mithila, Sālankayana, these are to be known as the thirteen devout and eminent Kuśikas.⁷⁰ 115. Manu Vaivasvata, Iḍa, king Purūravas, these are to be known as the eminent utterers of hymns among the Kshattriyaas. 116. Bhalanda, Vandya, and Sankīrtti,⁷¹ these are always to be known as the three eminent persons among the Vaiśyas who were composers of hymns. 117. Thus ninety-one⁷² persons have been declared, by whom hymns have been given forth, Brāhmanas, Kshattriyaas, and Vaiśyas. Learn the sons of the rishis. 118. These are the offspring of the ṛishikas, sons of rishis, secondary rishis (śrutarshis).”

The section ends here.

⁶⁴ I am indebted for an additional copy of this section of the Matsya Purāṇa (of which some account is given by Prof. Aufrecht in his Catalogue, p. 41), to the kindness of Mr. Griffith, Principal of Queen's College, Benares, who, at my request, has caused it to be collated with various other MSS. existing in Benares. I have not thought it necessary to exhibit all the various readings in the part I have quoted.

⁶⁵ The number of nineteen is only obtained by making Vaina and Prithu two persons.

⁶⁶ Instead of this word, one Benares MS. has Lakshmana.

⁶⁷ Two MSS. have Turavita.

⁶⁸ This word is divided into two in the MS.

⁶⁹ Two MSS. have, instead, Svasravas and Tamasyavat.

⁷⁰ Unless some of the words I have taken as names are really epithets, fifteen persons are enumerated here.

⁷¹ Some MSS. have Bhalandaka, Vandha or Vāsas, and Sankāla or Sankirna.

⁷² This is the total of several lists, some of which I have omitted.

It will be observed from a comparison of this extract with the details previously given, that some of the rājarshis, or rishis of royal blood, such as Ārṣṭishēṇa, Vitahavya, Pṛithu (the same as Pṛithī) are spoken of as belonging to the family of Bhṛigu, while others of the same class, such as Māndhātṛi, Ambarisha, Yuvanāśva, Purukutsa, are reckoned among the Angirases. Viśvāmitra and his descendants are merely designated as Kuśikas without any specific allusion to their Rājanya descent; but Manu, Iḍa, and Purūravas, are distinctly recognized as being as once authors of hymns and Kshattriyas; and, what is more remarkable, three Vaiśyas are also declared to have been sacred poets. These traditions of an earlier age, though scanty in amount, are yet sufficient to show that in the Vedic times the capacity for poetical composition, and the prerogative of officiating at the service of the gods, were not regarded as entirely confined to men of priestly families.

SECT. III.—*Texts from the Atharva-veda illustrating the progress of Brāhmanical pretensions.*

I have already quoted (in pp. 21 and 22) three short passages from the Atharva-veda regarding the origin of the Brāhman and Kshattriya castes. I shall now bring forward some other texts from the same collection which show a much greater development of the pretensions of the priests to a sacred and inviolable character than we meet in any part of the Rig-veda, if the 109th hymn of the tenth book (cited above) be excepted.

I shall first adduce the 17th hymn of the fifth book, to which I have already alluded, as an expansion of R.V. x. 109.

Atharva-veda v. 17. (Verses 1–3 correspond with little variation to verses 1–3 of R.V. x. 109). 4. *Yām āhus “tārakā eshū vikeśī” iti ducheḥhunām grāmam avapadyamānām | sū brahma-jāyā vi dunoti rāsh-ṭraṁ yatra prūpādi śasah ulkushimān |* (verses 5 and 6 = verses 5 and 4 of R.V. x. 109). 7. *Ye garbhāḥ avapadyante jagad yach chāpalupyate | virāḥ ye tṛihyante mitho brahma-jāyā hinasti tām |* 8. *Uta yat patayo daśa striyāḥ pūrve abrahmanāḥ | brahmā ched hastam agrahīt sa eva patir ekadhā |* 9. *Brāhmaṇaḥ eva patir na rājanyo na vaiśyaḥ | tat sūryaḥ prabruvann eti panchabhya mānavebhyaḥ |* (Verses 10 and 11 = verses 6 and 7 of R.V. x. 109). 12. *Nāsyā jāyā śatavāhi kalyāṇi talpam*

ā saye | yasmin rūṣtre nirudhyate brahma-jāyā achittyā | 13. Na vikārṇaḥ prithuśirās tasmin veśmani jāyate | yasminn ityādi | 14. Nāsyā kṣhattā nishka-grīvaḥ sūnānām eti agrataḥ | yasminn ityādi | 15. Nāsyā tvetaḥ kṛishṇa-karṇo dhuri yukto mahīyate | yasminn ityādi | 16. Nāsyā kehettre pushkaraṇī nāṇḍikaṁ jāyate visam | yasminn ityādi | 17. Nāsmāi prīṣṇīm vi duhanti ye 'syāḥ doham upāsate | yasminn ityādi | 18. Nāsyā dhenuḥ kalyāṇī nānāḍvān saḥate yugam | vijānir yatra brāhmaṇo rātriṁ vasati pāpayā |

“ 4. That calamity which falls upon the village, of which they say, ‘this is a star with dishevelled hair,’ is in truth the *brāhmān*’s wife, who ruins the kingdom; (and the same is the case) wherever (a country) is visited by a hare attended with meteors. 7. Whenever any miscarriages take place, or any moving things are destroyed, whenever men slay each other, it is the *brāhmān*’s wife who kills them. 8. And when a woman has had ten former husbands not *brāhmāns*, if a *brāhmān* take her hand (i.e. marry her), it is he alone who is her husband. 9. It is a *Brāhmaṇ* only that is a husband, and not a *Rājanya* or a *Vaiśya*. That (truth) the Sun goes forward proclaiming to the five classes of men (*pañchabhya mānarebhyah*), 12. His (the king’s) wife does not repose opulent (*śatavāhi*) and handsome upon her bed in that kingdom where a *brāhmān*’s wife is foolishly shut up. 13. A son with large ears (*vikārṇaḥ*) and broad head is not born in the house in that kingdom, etc. 14. A charioteer with golden neckchain does not march before the king’s hosts⁷³ in that kingdom, etc. 15. A white horse with black ears does not make a show yoked to his (the king’s) chariot in that kingdom, etc. 16. There is no pond with blossoming lotuses⁷⁴ in his (the king’s) grounds in that kingdom where, etc. 17. His (the king’s) brindled cow is not milked by his milkmen in that kingdom, etc. 18. His (the king’s) milch cow does not thrive, nor does his ox endure the yoke, in that country where a *Brāhmaṇ* passes the night wretchedly without his wife.”

This hymn appears to show that, however extravagant the pretensions of the *Brāhmāns* were in other respects, they had, even at the comparatively late period when it was composed, but little regard to

⁷³ The word here in the original is *sūnānām*, with which it is difficult to make any sense. Should we not read *senānām* ?

⁷⁴ Compare R.V. x. 107, 10.

the purity of the sacerdotal blood, as they not only intermarried with women of their own order, or even with women who had previously lived single, but were in the habit of forming unions with the widows of Rājanyas or Vaiśyas,⁷⁵ if they did not even take possession of the wives of such men while they were alive.⁷⁶ Even if we suppose these women to have belonged to priestly families, this would only show that it was no uncommon thing for females of that class to be married to Rājanyas or Vaiśyas—a fact which would, of course, imply that the caste system was either laxly observed, or only beginning to be introduced among the Indians of the earlier Vedic age. That, agreeably to ancient tradition, Brāhmins intermarried with Rājanya women at the period in question, is also distinctly shewn

⁷⁵ That the remarriage of women was customary among the Hindus of those days is also shewn by A.V. ix. 5, 27 f., quoted in my paper on Yama, Jour. R. A. S. for 1865, p. 299.

⁷⁶ This latter supposition derives a certain support from the emphasis with which the two verses in question (A. V. v. 17, 8, 9) assert that the Brāhman was the only true husband. Whence, it may be asked, the necessity for this strong and repeated asseveration, if the Rājanya and Vaiśya husbands were not still alive, and prepared to claim the restoration of their wives? The verses are, however, explicable without this supposition.

It is to be observed, however, that no mention is here made of S'ūdras as a class with which Brāhmins intermarried. S'ūdras were not Āryas, like the three upper classes. This distinction is recognised in the following verse of the A.V. xix. 62, 1: "Make me dear to gods, dear to princes, dear to every one who beholds me, both to S'ūdra and to Ārya." (Unless we are to suppose that both here and in xix. 32, 8, *ārya* = a Vaiśya, and not *ārya*, is the word). In S'atupatha Brāhmaṇa, Kāṇva Sākhā (Adhvara Kāṇḍa, i. 6), the same thing is clearly stated in these words (already partially quoted above, p. 176), for a copy of which I am indebted to Prof. Müller: *Tan na sarva eva prapadyeta na hi devāḥ sarveṇaiva sangachhante | ārya eva brāhmaṇo vā kshattriyo vā vaiśyo vā te hi yajniyāḥ | no eva sarveṇaiva samvadeta na hi devāḥ sarveṇaiva samvadante āryeṇaiva brāhmaṇena vā kshattriyena vā vaiśyena vā te hi yajniyāḥ | yady enam s'ūdreṇa samvādo vindet "ittham enam nichukshva" ity anyam brūyūd eshu dīkshitasyopachārah.* "Every one cannot obtain this (for the gods do not associate with every man), but only an Ārya, a Brāhman, or a Kshattriya, or a Vaiśya, for these can sacrifice. Nor should one talk with everybody (for the gods do not talk with every body), but only with an Ārya, a Brāhman, or a Kshattriya, or a Vaiśya, for these can sacrifice. If any one have occasion to speak to a S'ūdra, let him say to another person, 'Tell this man so and so.' This is the rule for an initiated man."

In the corresponding passage of the Mādhyandina Sākhā (p. 224 of Weber's edition) this passage is differently worded.

From Manu (ix. 149-157; x. 7 ff.) it is clear that Brāhmins intermarried with S'ūdra women, though the offspring of these marriages was degraded.

by the story of the rishi Chyavana and Sukanyā, daughter of king Saryāta, narrated in the Satapatha Brāhmana, and quoted in my paper entitled "Contributions to a Knowledge of Vedic Mythology," No. ii., in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, pp. 11 ff. See also the stories of the rishi Syāvāśva, who married the daughter of king Rathavīti, as told by the commentator on Rig-veda, v. 61, and given in Professor Wilson's translation, vol. iii. p. 344.

The next hymn, from the same work, sets forth with great liveliness and vigour the advantages accruing to princes from the employment of a domestic priest. *purohita*

Atharva-veda, iii. 19, 1. *Samśitam me idam brahma samśitam vīryam balam | samśitam kshattram ajaram astu jishnur (? jishnu) yeshām asmi purohitaḥ | 2. Sam aham eshām rūshṭraṁ syāmi sam ojo vīryam balam | vṛishchāmi śatrūnām bāhūn anena harishā aham | 3. Nichaiḥ padyantam adhare bhavantu ye naḥ sūrim magharānam prītanyān | kshināmi brahmaṇā 'mītrān unnayāmi svān aham | 4. Tīkshnīyāmsaḥ paraśor agnes tīkshnatarāḥ uta | Indrasya vajrāt tīkshnīyāmsō yeshām asmi purohitaḥ | 5. Eshām aham āyudhā saṁ syāmi eshām rūshṭraṁ suvīraṁ vardhayāmi | eshām kshattram ajaram astu jishnu eshām chittān visve arantu devāḥ | 6. Uddharshantām Maghavan vājināni ud vīrūnām jayatām etu ghoshāḥ | prīthagghoshāḥ ululayaḥ ketumantaḥ udiratām | devāḥ Indra-jyeshthāḥ Maruto yantu senayā | 7. Preta jayata naraḥ ugrāḥ raḥ santu bāhavaḥ | tīkshneshavo abala-dhanvāno hata ugrāyudhāḥ abalān ugra-bāhavaḥ | 8. Avasṛishṭā parā patu śararye brahma-samśite | jayāmītrān pra padyasva jahy eshām varaṁ-varam mā 'mīshām mochi kāschara |*

"1. May this prayer of mine be successful; may the vigour and strength be complete, may the power be perfect, undecaying, and victorious of those of whom I am the priest (*purohita*). 2. I fortify their kingdom, and augment their energy, valour, and force. I break the arms of their enemies with this oblation. 3. May all those who fight against our wise and prosperous (prince) sink downward, and be prostrated. With my prayer I destroy his enemies and raise up his friends. 4. May those of whom I am the priest be sharper than an axe, sharper than fire, sharper than Indra's thunderbolt. 5. I strengthen their weapons; I prosper their kingdom rich in heroes. May their power be undecaying and victorious. May all the gods foster their designs.

6. May their valorous deeds, o Maghavat, burst forth; may the noise of the conquering heroes arise; may their distinct shouts, their clear yells, go up; may the gods, the Maruts, with Indra as their chief, march forward with their host. 7. Go, conquer, ye warriors; may your arms be impetuous. Ye with the sharp arrows, smite those whose bows are powerless; ye whose weapons and arms are terrible (smite) the feeble. 8. When discharged, fly forth, o arrow, sped by prayer. Vanquish the foes, assail, slay all the choicest of them; let not one escape."

The two following hymns from the same collection declare the guilt, the peril, and disastrous consequences of oppressing Brāhmans, and robbing them of their property. The threats and imprecations of haughty sacerdotal insolence could scarcely be expressed more energetically.

Atharva-veda, v. 18. 1. *Naitām te devāḥ adadus tubhyaṁ nripate attave | mā brāhmaṇasya rājanya gām jighatso anūdyām* | 2. *Aksha-drugdho rājanyo pāpaḥ ātma-parājitaḥ | sa brāhmaṇasya gām adyād "adya jīvāni mā svāḥ"* | 3. *Ārishtitā agha-vishā prīdākūr iva charmanā | mā brāhmaṇasya rājanya trishtū eshū gaur anūdyā* | 4. *Nir vai kshattram nayati hanti varcho agnir ārabdho vi dūnoti sarvām | yo brāhmaṇam manyate annam eva sa vishasya pibati taimūtasya* | 5. *Yāḥ enaṁ hanti mṛidum manyamāno deva-pīyur dhana-kūmo na chittāt | saṁ tasya Indro hṛidaye agnim indhe ubhe enaṁ dvishṭo nabhasi charantaṁ* | 6. *Na brāhmaṇo hiṁsitaḥ agniḥ priyatanor iva | Somo hi asya dāyādaḥ Indro asyābhiśastipāḥ* | 7. *Sātāpāshīhām ni girati tām na śaknoti niḥkḥidam | annaṁ yo brāhmaṇam malvāḥ svādu admīti manyate* | 8. *Jihvā jyā bhavati kulmalāṁ vāṇ nāḍikāḥ dantās tapasā 'bhidadgdhāḥ | tebhīr brahmā vidhyati ūṣa-pīyūn hṛid-balair dhanurbhīr deva-jūtaiḥ* | 9. *Tikṣṇeshavo brāhmaṇāḥ hetimanto yām asyanti śaravyām na sū mṛishā | anuhūya tapasā manyunā cha uta dūrād ava bhindanti enam* | 10. *Ye sahasram arūjann āsan daśa-śatā uta | te brāhmaṇasya gām jagdhvā Vaitahavyūḥ parābhavan* | 11. *Gaur eva tām hanyamānā Vaitahavyān avātīrat | ye Kesaraprābandhāyās charamājām apeechiran* | 12. *Eka-śataṁ tūḥ janatāḥ yāḥ bhūmir vyadhūnuta | prajāṁ hiṁsitvā brāhmaṇim asam-bhavyam parābhavan* | 13. *Deva-pīyus charati marttyeshu gara-gīrṇo bhavati asthi-bhūyān | yo brāhmaṇaṁ deva-bandhuṁ hinasti na sa pitri-yānam apyeti lokam* | 14. *Agnir vai naḥ padavāyaḥ Somo dāyāda uchyate* |

hantābhiṣastā Indras tathā tad vedhaso viduḥ | 15. Ishur iva digdhā nṛipate pridākūr iva gopate | sū brāhmaṇasya ishur ghorā tayā vidhyati piyataḥ |

"1. King, the gods have not given thee this (cow) to eat. Do not, o Rājanya (man of royal descent), seek to devour the Brāhman's cow, which is not to be eaten. 2. The wretched Rājanya, unlucky in play, and self-destroyed, will eat the Brāhman's cow, saying, 'Let me live to-day, (if I can) not (live) to-morrow.' 3. This cow, clothed with a skin, contains deadly poison, like a snake. Beware, Rājanya, of this Brāhman's (cow); she is ill-flavoured, and must not be eaten. 4. She takes away his regal power, destroys his splendour, consumes him entire like a fire which has been kindled. The man who looks upon the Brāhman as mere food to be eaten up, drinks serpent's poison. 5. Indra kindles a fire in the heart of that contemner of the gods who smites the Brāhman, esteeming him to be inoffensive, and foolishly covets his property. Heaven and earth abhor the man who (so) acts. 6. A Brāhman is not to be wronged, as fire (must not be touched) by a man who cherishes his own body. Soma is his (the Brāhman's) kinsman, and Indra shields him from imprecations. 7. The wicked (?) man who thinks the priests' food is sweet while he is eating it, swallows (the cow) bristling with a hundred sharp points, but cannot digest her. 8. The priest's tongue is a bow-string, his voice is a barb, and his windpipe is arrow-points smeared with fire. With these god-directed, and heart-subduing bows, the priest pierces the scornors of the gods. 9. Brāhmans bearing sharp arrows, armed with missiles, never miss their mark when they discharge a shaft. Shooting with fiery energy and with anger, they pierce (the enemy) from afar. 10. The descendants of Vitahavya, who ruled over a thousand men, and were ten hundred in number, were overwhelmed after they had eaten a Brāhman's cow."⁷⁷ 11. The cow herself, when she was slaughtered, destroyed them,—those men who cooked the last she-goat of Kesaraprābandhā. 12. Those hundred persons whom the earth shook off, after they had wronged the priestly race, were overwhelmed in an inconceivable manner. 13. He lives among mortals a hater of the gods; infected with poison he becomes reduced to a skeleton; he who wrongs a Brāhman the kins-

⁷⁷ I am not aware whether any traces of this story are discoverable in the Purāṇas or Mahābhārata. See the first verse of the hymn next to be quoted.

man of the deities, fails to attain to the heaven of the Forefathers.

14. Agni is called our leader; Soma our kinsman. Indra neutralizes imprecations (directed against us); this the wise understand. 15. Like a poisoned arrow, o king, like a serpent, o lord of cows,—such is the dreadful shaft of the Brāhman, with which he pierces his enemies.”

Atharva-veda, v. 19, 1. *Atimātram avardhanta nod ira diram asprīṣan | Bhṛiguṁ hiṁsitvā Sṛinjayāḥ Vaitahavyāḥ parābharan |* 2. *Bṛihatsāmānam Āngirasam ārpayan brāhmaṇaṁ janāḥ | petras teshām ubhayādam avis tokūny ārayat |* 3. *Ye brāhmaṇam pratyashṭhīran ye rā 'smin śuklam īshire | asnas te madhye kulyāyāḥ keśān khādanta āsate |* 4. *Brahmagarī pachyamānā yūrat sā 'bhi vijangahe | tejo rāshṭrasya nirhanti na vīro jāyate vṛishā |* 5. *Krūram asyāḥ āśasanaṁ trishṭam piṣitam asyate | kshīrcāṁ yad asyāḥ pīyate tad vai pitṛishu kilbisham |* 6. *Ugro rājā manyamāno brāhmaṇaṁ yaj jighatsati | parā tat sichyate rāshṭram brāhmaṇo yatra jīyate |* 7. *Ashtāpadī chaturakṣī chatur-śrotrā chaturhanuḥ | devāsya drijihvā bhūtvā sā rāshṭram avadhūnute brahmajyasya |* 8. *Tad vai rāshṭram āravati nāvam bhinnām icodakam | brāhmāṇaṁ yatra hiṁsanti tad rāshṭraṁ hanti duchchhunā |* 9. *Taṁ vṛikshūḥ apaśchanti “chhāyām no mopa gūḥ” iti | yo brāhmaṇasya saddhanam abhi Nārada manyate |* 10. *Visham etad dera-kṛitaṁ rājā Varuṇo abravīt | na brāhmaṇasya gām jagdhvā rāshṭre jāgāra kaśchana |* 11. *Navaira tāḥ navatīyo yūḥ bhūmir vyadhūnuta | prajāṁ hiṁsitvā brāhmaṇīm asam-bhavyam parābharan |* 12. *Yam mṛitāyānubadhanti kūdyam pada-yopanīm | tad vai brahmajya te devāḥ upastaraṇam abruvan |* 13. *Āsrūṇi kṛipamānasya yāni jītasya vācṛituḥ | taṁ vai brahmajya te devāḥ apām bhūgam adhūrayan |* 14. *Yena mṛitaṁ snapayanti śmaśrūṇi yena undate | taṁ vai brahmajya te devāḥ apām bhūgam adhūrayan |* 15. *Na varshaṁ Maitrāvaruṇam brahmajyam abhi varshati | nāsmāi samitiḥ kalpate na mitraṁ nayate vāsam |*

“1. The Sṛinjayas, descendants of Vītahavya, waxed exceedingly; they almost touched the sky; but after they had injured Bhṛigu, they were overwhelmed. 2. When men pierced Bṛihatsāman, a Brāhman descended from Angiras, a ram with two rows of teeth swallowed their children. 3. Those who spit, or throw filth (?) upon a Brāhman, sit eating hair in the midst of a stream of blood. 4. So long as this Brāhman's cow is cut up (?) and cooked, she destroys the glory of the kingdom; no vigorous hero is born there. 5. It is cruel to

slaughter her; her ill-flavoured flesh is thrown away. When her milk is drunk, that is esteemed a sin among the Forefathers. 6. Whenever a king, fancying himself mighty, seeks to devour a Brāhman, that kingdom is broken up, in which a Brāhman is oppressed. Becoming eight-footed, four-eyed, four-eared, four-jawed, two-faced, two-tongued, she (the cow) shatters the kingdom of the oppressor of Brāhmans. 8. (Ruin) overflows that kingdom, as water swamps a leaky boat: calamity smites that country in which a priest is wronged. 9. Even trees, o Nārada, repel, and refuse their shade to, the man who claims a right to the property of a Brāhman. This (property), as king Varuṇa hath said, has been turned into a poison by the gods. No one who has eaten a Brāhman's cow continues to watch (i.e. to rule) over a country. 11. Those nine nineties (of persons) whom the earth shook off, when they had wronged the priestly race, were overwhelmed in an inconceivable manner (see verse 12 of the preceding hymn). 12. The gods have declared that the cloth wherewith a dead man's feet are bound shall be thy pall, thou oppressor of priests. 13. The tears which flow from a persecuted man as he laments,—such is the portion of water which the gods have assigned to thee, thou oppressor of priests. 14. The gods have allotted to thee that portion of water wherewith men wash the dead, and moisten beards. 15. The rain of Mitra and Varuṇa does not descend on the oppressor of priests. For him the battle has never a successful issue; nor does he bring his friend into subjection."

The attention of the reader is directed to the intensity of contempt and abhorrence which is sought to be conveyed by the coarse imagery contained in verses 3, and 12-14, of this last hymn.

There is another section of the same Veda, xii. 5, in which curse similar to those in the last two hymns are fulminated against the oppressors of Brāhmans. The following are specimens:

Atharva-veda, xii. 5, 4. *Brahma padarāyam brāhmaṇo 'dhipatiḥ*
 5. *Tūm ādadānasya brahma-gaviṃ jinato brāhmaṇān kṣhattriyaśya*
 6. *Apa krānati sūṇṛitā vīryam puṇyā lakṣmīḥ | 7. Ojaścha tejaś cha sahaś cha balaṃ cha vāk cha indriyaṃ cha śrīś cha dharmāś cha |*
 8. *Brahma cha kṣhattraṃ cha rāshṭraṃ cha viśaś cha tvishiś cha yaśaś cha varchaś cha draviṇaṃ cha | 9. Āyus cha rūpaṃ cha nāma cha kirttiś cha prūṇaś cha apānaś cha chakṣuś cha śrotraṃ cha | 10. Payaś cha rasaś*

*cha annaṁ cha annādyāṁ cha ṛitaṁ cha satyaṁ cha ishṭaṁ cha pūrttaṁ
cha prajā cha paśavaś cha* | 11. *Tāni sarvāṇi apa krāmanti brahma-garīm
ādadūnasya jinato brāhmaṇaṁ kshattriyasya* | 12. *Sā eṣhā bhīmā brahma-
gavī agha-rishā* | 13. *Sarvāṇy asyāṁ ghorāṇi sarve cha mṛitya-
vaḥ* | 14. *Sarvāṇy asyāṁ krūrāṇi sarve puruṣa-vadhāḥ* | 15. *Sā
brahma-jyāṁ deva-pīyūṁ brahmagavī ādiyamānā mṛityoḥ padbise ā
dyati* |

“4. Prayer (*brāhmān*) is the chief (thing); the Brāhman is the lord (*adhipati*). 5. From the Kshattriya who seizes the priest's cow, and oppresses the Brāhman, (6) there depart piety, valour, good fortune, (7) force, keenness, vigour, strength, speech, energy, prosperity, virtue, (8) prayer (*brāhmān*), royalty, kingdom, subjects, splendour, renown, lustre, wealth, (9) life, beauty, name, fame, inspiration and expiration, sight, hearing, (10) milk, sap, food, eating, righteousness, truth, oblation, sacrifice, offspring, and cattle;—(11) all these things depart from the Kshattriya who seizes the priest's cow. 12. Terrible is the Brāhman's cow, filled with deadly poison. . . . 13. In her reside all dreadful things, and all forms of death, (14) all cruel things, and all forms of homicide. 15. When seized, she binds in the fetters of death the oppressor of priests and despiser of the gods.”

A great deal more follows to the same effect, which it would be tiresome to quote.

I subjoin some further texts, in which reference is made to *brāhmāns*.

In xix. 22, 21 (= xix. 23, 30) it is said:

*Brahma-jyeshṭhā sambhṛitā vīryāṇi brahmāgre jyeshṭhaṁ divam ātatāna |
bhātūnām brahmā prathamo ha jajne tenūrhati brahmaṇā sparddhitūṁ
kaḥ* |

“Powers are collected, of which prayer (or sacred science, *brāhmān*) is the chief. Prayer, the chief, in the beginning stretched out the sky. The priest (*brāhmān*) was born the first of beings. Who, then, ought to vie with the *brāhmān*.”

A superhuman power appears to be ascribed to the *brāhmān* in the following passages,—unless by *brāhmān* we are to understand *Bṛihaspati*:—

xix. 9, 12. *Brahmā Prajāpatir Dhātū lokāḥ vedāḥ sapta-rishayo
'gnayaḥ | tair me kṛitaṁ svastyayanam Indro me śarma yachhatu brahmā
me śarma yachhatu* |

“May a prosperous journey be granted to me by prayer, Prajāpati, Dhātṛi, the worlds, the Vedas, the seven rishis, the fires; may Indra grant me felicity, may the *brāhmān* grant me felicity.”

xix. 43, 8. *Yatra brahma-vido yānti dīkshayā tapasā saha | brahmā mā tatra nayatu brahmā brahma dadhātu me | brahmane svāhā.*

“May the *brāhmān* conduct me to the place whither the knowers of prayer (or of sacred science) go by initiation with austerity. May the *brāhmān* impart to me sacred science. *Svāhā* to the *brāhmān*.”

The wonderful powers of the Brahmachārin, or student of sacred science, are described in a hymn (A.V. xi. 5), parts of which are translated in my paper on the progress of the Vedic Religion, pp. 374 ff.

And yet with all this sacredness of his character the priest must be devoted to destruction, if, in the interest of an enemy, he is seeking by his ceremonies to effect the ruin of the worshipper.

v. 8, 5. *Yam amī puro dadhire brahmānam apabhūtaye | Indra sa me adhaspadañ tam pratyasyāmi mṛityave |*

“May the *brāhmān* whom these men have placed in their front (as a *purohita*) for our injury, fall under my feet, o Indra; I hurl him away, to death (compare A.V. vii. 70, 1 ff.).

SECT. IV.—Opinions of Professor R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug regarding the origin of caste among the Hindus.

I shall in this section give some account of the speculations of Prof. R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug on the process by which they conceive the system of castes to have grown up among the Indians.

The remarks which I shall quote from Prof. Roth are partly drawn from his third “Dissertation on the Literature and History of the Veda,” p. 117, and partly from his paper on “Brahma and the Brāhmans,” in the first volume of the Journal of the German Oriental Society.⁷⁸ He says in the latter essay: “The religious development of India is attached through the course of three thousand years to the word *brāhmā*. This conception might be taken as the standard for estimating the progress of thought directed to divine things, as at every step taken by the latter, it has gained a new form, while at the same time

⁷⁸ The reader who is unacquainted with German will find a fuller account of this article in the Benares Magazine for October 1851, pp. 823 ff.

it has always embraced in itself the highest spiritual acquisition of the nation. . . . The original signification of the word *brāhmā*, as we easily discover it in the Vedic hymns, is that of prayer; not praise or thanksgiving, but that invocation which, with the force of the will directed to God, seeks to draw him to itself, and to receive satisfaction from him. . . . From this oldest sense and form of *brāhmā* (neuter) was formed the masculine noun *brahmā*, which was the designation of those who pronounced the prayers, or performed the sacred ceremonies; and in nearly all the passages of the Rig-veda in which it was thought that this word must refer to the Brahmanical caste, this more extended sense must be substituted for the other more limited one. . . . From this sense of the word *brahmā*, nothing was more natural than to convert this offerer of prayer into a particular description of sacrificial priest: so soon as the ritual began to be fixed, the functions which were before united in a single person, who both prayed to the gods and sacrificed to them, became separated, and a priesthood interposed itself between man and God.”⁷⁹

Then further on, after quoting R.V. iv. 50, 4 ff. (see above, p. 247), Prof. Roth continues: “In this manner here and in many places of the liturgical and legal books, the promise of every blessing is attached to the maintenance of a priest by the king. Inasmuch as he supports and honours the priest, the latter ensures to him the favour of the gods. So it was that the caste of the Brāhmins arose and attained to power and consideration: first, they were only the single domestic priests of the kings; then the dignity became hereditary in certain families; finally a union, occasioned by similarity of interests, of these families in one larger community was effected; and all this in reciprocal action with the progress made in other respects by theological doctrine and religious worship. Still the extension of the power which fell into the hands of this priestly caste would not be perfectly comprehensible

⁷⁹ In his third Dissertation on the Literature and History of the Veda, Prof. Roth remarks: “In the Vedic age, access to the gods by prayer and sacrifice was open to all classes of the community; and it was only the power of expressing devotion in a manner presumed to be acceptable to the deities, or a readiness in poetical diction, that distinguished any individual or family from the mass, and led to their being employed to conduct the worship of others. The name given to such persons was *purohita*, one ‘put forward;’ one through whose mediation the gods would receive the offering presented. But these priests had as yet no especial sanctity or exclusive prerogative which would render their employment imperative.”

from this explanation alone. The relation of spiritual superiority in which the priests came to stand to the kings was aided by other historical movements."

Professor Roth then proceeds: "When—at a period more recent than the majority of the hymns of the Rig-veda—the Vedic people, driven by some political shock, advanced from their abodes in the Punjab further and further to the south, drove the aborigines into the hills, and took possession of the broad tract of country lying between the Ganges, the Jumna, and the Vindhya range; the time had arrived when the distribution of power, the relation of king and priest, could become transformed in the most rapid and comprehensive manner. Principalities separated in such various ways, such a division into tribes as had existed in the Punjab, were no longer possible here, where nature had created a wide and continuous tract with scarcely any natural boundaries to dis sever one part from another. Most of those petty princes who had descended from the north with their tribes must here of necessity disappear, their tribes become dissolved, and contests arise for the supreme dominion. This era is perhaps portrayed to us in the principal subject of the Mahābhārata, the contest between the descendants of Pāṇḍu and Kuru. In this stage of disturbance and complication, power naturally fell into the hands of those who did not directly possess any authority, the priestly races and their leaders, who had hitherto stood rather in the position of followers of the kings, but now rose to a higher rank. It may easily be supposed that they and their families, already honoured as the confidential followers of the princes, would frequently be able to strike a decisive stroke to which the king would owe his success. If we take further into account the intellectual and moral influence which this class possessed in virtue of the prerogative conceded to, or usurped by, them, and the religious feeling of the people, it is not difficult to comprehend how in such a period of transition powerful communities should arise among the domestic priests of petty kings and their families, should attain to the highest importance in every department of life, and should grow into a caste which, like the ecclesiastical order in the middle ages of Christianity, began to look upon secular authority as an effluence from the fulness of their power, to be conferred at their will; and how, on the other hand, the numerous royal families should

sink down into a nobility which possessed, indeed, the sole right to the kingly dignity, but at the same time, when elected by the people, required inauguration in order to their recognition by the priesthood, and were enjoined above all things to employ only Brāhmanas as their counsellors."

In order to render the probability of this theory still more apparent, Professor Roth goes on to indicate the relations of the other castes to the Brāhmanas. The position which the three superior classes occupied in the developed Brahmanical system was one of gradation, as they differed only in the extent of their religious and civil prerogatives, the Kshattriya being in some respects less favoured than the Brāhman, and the Vaiśya than the Kshattriya. With the Sūdras, on the other hand, the case was quite different. They were not admitted to sacrifice, to the study of the Vedas, or to investiture with the sacred cord. From this Professor Roth concludes that the three highest castes stood in a closer connection with each other, whether of descent, or of culture, than any of them did to the fourth. The Indian body politic, moreover, was complete without the Sūdras. The Brāhman and Kshattriya were the rulers, while the Vaiśyas formed the mass of the people. The fact of the latter not being originally a separate community is confirmed by the employment assigned to them, as well as by their name Vaiśya, derived from the word *Viś*, a word which in the Veda designates the general community, especially considered as the possessor of the pure Aryan worship and culture, in contradistinction to all barbarian races. Out of this community the priesthood arose in the manner above described, while the Kshattriyas were the nobility, descended in the main from the kings of the earlier ages. The fourth caste, the Sūdras, consisted, according to Prof. Roth, of a race subdued by the Brahmanical conquerors, whether that race may have been a branch of the Arian stock which immigrated at an earlier period into India, or an autochthonous Indian tribe.

In his tract on the origin of Brāhmanism, from which I have already quoted (see above, pp. 11 and 14), Dr. Haug thus states his views on this question: "It has been of late asserted that the original parts of the Vedas do not know the system of caste. But this conclusion was prematurely arrived at without sufficiently weighing the evidence. It is true the caste system is not to be found in such a developed state;

the duties enjoined to the several castes are not so clearly defined as in the Law Books and Purāṇas. But nevertheless the system is already known in the earlier parts of the Vedas, or rather presupposed. The barriers only were not so insurmountable as in later times." (p. 6). This view he supports by a reference to the Zend Avesta, in which he finds evidence of a division of the followers of Ahura Mazda into the three classes of Atharvas, Rathæsthas, and Vāstrya fshuyans, which he regards as corresponding exactly to the Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas of India. The Atharvas, or priests, in particular formed a class or even a caste; they had secrets which they were prohibited from divulging; they were the spiritual guides of their nation, and none but the son of a priest could become a priest—a rule which the Parsis still maintain. From these facts, Dr. Haug deduces the conclusion that the nation of which both the Indo-Arians and the Perso-Arians originally formed a part had been divided into three classes even before the separation of the Indians from the Iranians; and he adds (p. 7): "From all we know, the real origin of caste appears to go back to a time anterior to the composition of the Vedic hymns, though its development into a regular system with insurmountable barriers can be referred only to the latest period of the Vedic times."

I shall furnish a short analysis of some other parts of Dr. Haug's interesting tract. He derives (p. 7) the word *brāhmaṇa* from *brāhmān* (neuter), which originally meant "a sacred song, prayer," as an effusion of devotional feeling. *Brāhmā* was the "sacred element" in the sacrifice, and signified "the soul of nature, the productive power." The Brahmanic sacrifices had production as their object, and embraced some rites which were intended to furnish the sacrificer with a new spiritual body wherewith he might ascend to heaven, and others calculated to provide him with cattle and offspring (p. 8). The symbol of this *brāhmā*, or productive power, which must always be present at the sacrifice, was a bunch of *kuśa* grass, generally called Veda (a word alternating with *brāhmā*), which, at the sacrifice, was passed from priest to another, and given to the sacrificer and his wife. The corresponding symbol of twigs used by the Parsis was called in Zend *bāresma*, which Dr. Haug considers to have been originally the same as *brāhmā* (p. 9). As it was essential to the success of these sacrifices

that every portion of the complicated ceremonial should be accurately performed, and as mistakes could not be avoided, it became necessary to obviate by an atonement (*prāyaścitti*) the mischief which would otherwise have ensued; and the priest appointed to guard against or expiate such mistakes, when committed by the other priests—the *hotri*, *adhvaryu*, and *udgātri*—was called, “from the most ancient times,” the *brāhmān* (masculine),¹ who was a functionary pre-eminently supplied with *brāhmā* (neuter) or sacred knowledge, and thereby connected “with the soul of nature, the cause of all growth, the last cause of all sacrificial rites” (p. 10). The office of *brāhmān* was not one to which mere birth gave a claim, but had to be attained by ability and study. The descendants of these *brāhmān* priests were the Brāhmans, and the speculations of the most eminent *brāhmān* priests on divine things, and especially on sacrificial rites, are contained in the works called *Brāhmaṇas* (p. 12). Dr. Haug considers that no such a class as that of the *brāhmān* priests existed at the early period when the ancestors of the Hindus separated from those of the Parsis in consequence of religious differences. The few rites preserved by the Parsis as relics of the remotest antiquity closely resemble those of the Brāhmans. Dr. Haug finds that in the Homa ritual of the former (corresponding to the Soma ceremony of the latter) only two priests, called *Zota* and *Raspi* or *Rathwi*, are required, whom he recognises as corresponding to the *Hotri* and *Adhvaryu* of the latter. So long as the rites were simple, no *brāhmān* priest was wanted; but when they became complicated and multiform, the necessity for such a functionary arose. And it was only then that the sons of the *brāhmāns*, i.e. the Brāhmans, could rise through the possession of sacred knowledge, derived from their fathers, to great power, and form themselves into a regular caste. The development of these ceremonies out of their primitive simplicity into the complexity and multiformity which they ultimately assumed must, Dr. Haug thinks, have been the work of many centuries. This transformation must have taken place in the region bordering on the *Sarasvatī*, where the expansion of the Brahmanical system, and the elevation of the Brāhmans to full spiritual supremacy, is to be sought, before the Indo-Arians advanced south-eastwards into Hindostan proper (p. 14). The ascendancy of the Brāhmans was not however attained without opposition on the part of the kings (p. 18). Dr. Haug concludes by relating the reception

of Viśvāmitra into the order of Brāhmans, and by giving some account of the rishis and the several classes into which they were divided.

As the question is generally stated by Dr. Haug in pages 6 and 12 ff., the difference between him and other European scholars is one of age and not of principle, for neither party admits any distinction of race or congenital diversity between the three superior castes or classes.

CHAPTER IV.

EARLY CONTESTS BETWEEN THE BRAHMANS AND KSHATTRIYAS.

I proceed to give some legendary illustrations of the struggle which no doubt occurred in the early ages of Hindu history between the Brāhmans and the Kshattriyas, after the former had begun to constitute a fraternity exercising the sacerdotal profession, but before the respective provinces of the two classes had been accurately defined by custom, and when the members of each were ready to encroach on the prerogatives claimed as their own exclusive birthright by the other.

SECT. I.—*Manu's Summary of refractory and submissive monarchs.*

I shall begin with the following passage, which we find in the Institutes of Manu, vii. 38 ff., regarding the impious resistance, as the lawgiver considered it, of certain monarchs to the legitimate claims of the priests, and the dutiful behaviour of others.

38. *Vṛiddhāṁś cha nityaṁ seveta viprān veda-vidāḥ śuchīn | vṛiddha-sevī hi satatāṁ rakshobhir api pūjyate |* 39. *Tebhyo 'dhigachhed vina-yaṁ vinitātmā 'pi nityasaḥ | vinitātmā hi nṛipatir na vinaśyati karchi-chit |* 40. *Bahavo 'vinayād nashṭūḥ rājānaḥ sa-parichhadūḥ | ranasthūḥ api rājyāni vinayāt pratipedire |* 41. *Veno vinashto 'vinayād Nahushaś chaiva pūrthiraḥ | Sudūḥ Paijavanaś⁸⁰ chaiva Sumukho Nimir eva cha |* 42. *Prithus tu vinayād rājyam prāptavān Manur eva cha | Kuveraś cha dhanaishvaryaṁ brāhmaṇyaṁ chaiva Gūdhijah |*

“Let the king constantly reverence ancient Brāhmans skilled in the Vedas, and pure in conduct; for he who always respects the aged is honoured even by the Rākshases. 39. Let him, even though humble-

⁸⁰ In support of this reading, see M. Loiseleur Deslongchamps's and Sir G. C. Haughton's notes on the passage.

mind, be continually learning submissiveness from them : for a submissive monarch never perishes. 40. Through want of this character many kings have been destroyed with all their possessions ; whilst by humility even hermits have obtained kingdoms. 41. Veṇa perished through want of submissiveness, and king Nahusha, and Sūdas the son of Pijavana, and Sumukha, and Nimi. 42. But through submissiveness Pṛithu and Manu attained kingly power, Kuvera the lordship of wealth, and the son of Gādhi (Viśvāmitra) Brāhmanhood."⁸¹

Veṇa is again referred to in Manu ix. 66 f. : *Ayaṁ dvijair hi vidvadbhiḥ paśudharmo nigarhitah | manushyānām api prokto Vene rājyaṁ praśāsati |* 67. *Sa mahīm akhilām bhunjan rājārshi-pravarah purā | varṇānām sankarām chakre kāmopahata-chetanaḥ |*

"This custom (of raising up seed to a deceased brother or kinsman by his widow) fit only for cattle, was declared to be (law) for men also, when Veṇa held sway. This eminent royal rishi, who in former times ruled over the whole earth, having his reason destroyed by lust, occasioned a confusion of castes."

The legendary history of nearly all the kings thus stigmatized or celebrated can be traced in the Purāṇas and other parts of Indian literature. I shall supply such particulars of the refractory monarchs as I can find.

It will be observed that Manu is spoken of as an ordinary prince ; and that even Kuvera, the god of wealth, is said to have attained his dignity by the same species of merit as the other persons whom the writer eulogizes. I am not aware whether any legends exist to the same effect. Something of a contrary tendency is found with regard to the deity in question in the passage of the Mahābhārata, of which an extract is given above, in p. 140, note 249.

⁸¹ Kullūka remarks on this passage : *Gādhi-putro Viśvāmitras' cha kshattriyaḥ saṁs tenaiva dehena brāhmaṇyaṁ prāptavān | rājya-lābhāvasare brāhmaṇya-prāptir aprastutī 'pi vinayotkarahārtham uktā |* *Idṛśo 'yaṁ sāstrānushṭhāna-nishiddha-varjuna-rūpa-vinayodayena kshattriyo 'pi durlabham brāhmaṇyaṁ lebbe |* "Viśvāmitra, the son of Gādhi, being a Kshattriya, obtained Brāhmanhood in the same body (i.e. without being again born in another body). The attainment of Brahmanhood by one who at the time held kingly authority, although an unusual occurrence, is mentioned to show the excellence of submissiveness. Through that quality, as exhibited in the observance of scriptural injunctions, and in abstinence from things forbidden, he, being a Kshattriya, obtained Brahmanhood, so difficult to acquire."

I have not met with any story of Sumukha's contest with the Brāhmans. Some MSS. read Suratha instead of Sumukha.

The name of Sudās, the son of Pijavana, occurs in several parts of the Rig-veda. I shall return to him in relating the contest between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra. I begin with the story of Veṇa.

SECT. II.—*Legend of Veṇa.*

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 13, Veṇa was the son of Anga, and the descendant in the ninth generation of the first Manu, Svāyambhuva; the line of ancestors from the latter downwards being as follows: Uttanapāda, Dhruva, Ślishti, Rīpu, Chākshusha, the sixth Manu called Chākshusha, Uru, Anga (see Wilson's Vishṇu P. vol. i.). Veṇa thus belongs to a mythical age preceding by an enormous interval that of the descendants of Manu Vaivasvata mentioned in the preceding chapter of this volume; five Manvantaras, or periods of 308,571 years each, having intervened in the present Kalpa between the close of the Svāyambhuva, and the beginning of the existing, or Vaivasvata, Manvantara.

Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 13, 7: *Parāśara uvācha | Sunīthā nāma yā kanyā Mrityoḥ prathama-jā 'bhavat | Angasya bhūryyā sa dattā tasyām Veṇas tv ajāyata* | 8. *Sa mātāmaha-doshena tena Mrityoḥ sutātmapajā | nisargād iva Maitreya duṣṭaḥ eva vyajāyata* | 9. *Abhishikto yadā rājye sa Veṇaḥ paramarśibhiḥ | ghoshayāmāsa sa tadā prithivyām prithivīpatiḥ* | “*na yashṭavyaṁ na dātavyaṁ hotavyaṁ na kadūchana | bhoktā yajnasya kas tv anyo hy ahaṁ yajna-patiḥ sadā*” | 10. *Tatas tam ṛishayaḥ sarve sampūjya prithivīpatim | ūchuḥ sāmakalaṁ saṁyaṁ Maitreya samupasthitūḥ | ṛishayaḥ ūchuḥ* | 11. “*Bho bho rājan śrinushva tvaṁ yad vadāmas tava prabho | rājya-dehopakāre yaḥ prajānūṁ cha hitam param*” | 12. *Dirgha-sattreṇa deveśaṁ sarva-yajneśvaraṁ Harim | pūjayishyāmo bhadraṁ te tatrūṁśas te bhaviṣyati* | 13. *Yajnena yajna-purusho Vishṇuḥ samprīṇito vībhūḥ | asmūbhir bhavataḥ kāmān sarvān eva pradāsyati | yajnair yajneśvaro yeshāṁ rāṣṭre sampūjyate Hariḥ | teshāṁ sarveṣitāvāptiṁ dadāti nṛpa bhūbhujam*” | *Veṇaḥ uvācha* | “*matlaḥ ko 'bhyadhiko 'nyo 'sti kaś chārādhyo mamāparaḥ | ko 'yaṁ Harir iti khyāto yo vo yajneś-caro mataḥ | Brahmā Janārdano Rudraḥ Indro Vāyur Yamo Raviḥ |*

Hutabhug Varuṇo Dhātū Pūshā Bhūmir Nisākaraḥ | ete chānyo cha ye devāḥ śāpānugraha-kāriṇaḥ | nṛipasya te śarīra-sthāḥ sarva-devamayo nripaḥ | etaj jñātvā mayā 'jnaptam yad yathā kriyatām tathā | na dātavyam na hotavyam na yashtavyam cha vo dvijāḥ | 14. Bharttuḥ śūśrūṣaṇam dharmo yathā strīṇam paro mataḥ | mamājñā-pālanaṁ dharmo bhavatām cha tathā dvijāḥ | rishayaḥ ūchuḥ | "dehy anujñam mahārāja mā dharmo yātu sankshayam | havishām pariṇāmo 'yaṁ yad etad akhilaṁ jagat | 15. Dharmo cha sankshayaṁ yāte kshiyate chākhilaṁ jagat" | Parāśaraḥ uvācha | iti vijnāpyamāno 'pi sa Venāḥ paramarśibhiḥ | yadā dadāti nānujñam proktaḥ proktaḥ punaḥ punaḥ | tatas te munayaḥ sarve kopāmarsha-samanvitāḥ | "hanyataṁ hanyatām pāpaḥ" ity ūchuḥ te parasparam | 16. "Yo yajna-purushaṁ devam anūdi-nidhanam prabhum | vinindaty adhamūchāro na sa yogyo bhuvāḥ patih" | ity uktvā mantra-pūtais te kuśair muni-gaṇāḥ nripam | nirjaghnur nihatam pūrvam bhagavan-nindanādīnā | tatas cha munayo reṇuṁ dadṛṣuḥ sarvato dvija | "kim etad" iti chāsannam paprachkṣuḥ te janaṁ tada | 17. Ākhyātāṁ cha janais teshāṁ "chaurībhūtair arājake | rūṣhṛe tu lokair ārabdham para-svādānaṁ āturaiḥ | 18. Teshāṁ udīrṇa-vegānāṁ chaurāṇāṁ muni-sattamāḥ | sumahān dṛśyate reṇuḥ para-vittūpahāriṇāṁ" | tataḥ sammantrya te sarve munayas tasya bhūbhṛitāḥ | mamanthur ūrum putrārtham anapatyasya yatnataḥ | mathyatas cha samuttasthau tasyoroḥ purushaḥ kila | dagdha-sthūnāpratikāśaḥ kharvāṭāsyō 'tihrasvakaḥ | 19. Kiṁ karomīti tān sarvān viprān āha sa chāturaḥ | nishīdeti tam ūchuḥ te nishādās tena so 'bhavat | 20. Tatas tat-sambhavāḥ jātāḥ Vindhya-saila-nivāsinaḥ | nishādāḥ muni-sūrdūla pāpa-karmopalakṣaṇāḥ | 21. Tena dvāreṇa nishkrāntam tat pāpaṁ tasya bhūpateḥ | nishādās te tathā jātāḥ Venā-kalmasha-sambhavāḥ | 22. Tato 'sya dakṣiṇāṁ hastam mamanthus te tadā dvijāḥ | mathyamāne cha tatrābhūt Prīthur Vainyaḥ pratūpavān | dīpyamāṇaḥ sva-vapushā sākṣhād Agnir ivojjvalan | 23. Ādyam ājagavaṁ nūma khāt papāta tato dhanuḥ | śarās cha divyāḥ nabhasaḥ kavachaṁ cha papāta ha | tasmin jāte tu bhūtāni samprahrīṣtāni sarvasaḥ | satputreṇa cha jātena Venō 'pi tridivāṁ yayau | pun-nāmno narakāt trātāḥ sa tena sumahātmanā |

"7. The maiden named Sunīthā, who was the first-born of Mṛityu (Death)⁸³ was given as wife to Anga; and of her Venā was born. 8. This son of Mṛityu's daughter, infected with the taint of his ma-

⁸³ See above, p. 124, and note 230.

ternal grandfather, was born corrupt, as if by nature. 9. When Vena was inaugurated as king by the eminent rishis, he caused this proclamation to be made on the earth: 'Men must not sacrifice, or give gifts, or present oblations. Who else but myself is the enjoyer of sacrifices? I am for ever the lord of offerings.' 10. Then all the rishis approaching the king with respectful salutations, said to him in a gentle and conciliatory tone: 11. 'Hear, o king, what we have to say: 12. We shall worship Hari, the monarch of the gods, and the lord of all sacrifices, with a *Dirghasattra* (prolonged sacrifice), from which the highest benefits will accrue to your kingdom, your person, and your subjects. May blessings rest upon you! You shall have a share in the ceremony. 13. Vishnu the lord, the sacrificial Male, being propitiated by us with this rite, will grant all the objects of your desire. Hari, the lord of sacrifices, bestows on those kings in whose country he is honoured with oblations, everything that they wish.' Vena replied: 'What other being is superior to me? who else but I should be adored? who is this person called Hari, whom you regard as the lord of sacrifice? *Brahmā, Janārdana, Rudra, Indra, Vāyu, Yama, Ravi* (the Sun), *Agni, Varuṇa, Dhātṛi, Pūshan, Earth, the Moon*,—these and the other gods who curse and bless are all present in a king's person: for he is composed of all the gods.⁸³ Knowing this, ye must

⁸³ The orthodox doctrine, as stated by Manu, vii. 3 ff., coincides very nearly with Vena's estimate of himself, although the legislator does not deduce from it the same conclusions: 3. *Rakshūrtham asya sarvasya rājñam asṛjāt prabhuh* | 4. *Indrñilayamūrknūm Agneś cha Varuṇasya cha* | *Chandra-Vittesajoyś chaira mātṛh nīrṛitya* | *tāsvatīh* | 5. *Yasmād eśhām surendrāṇām mātṛbhyo nirmīto nṛipah* | *tasmād abhūbhavaty eśha sarva-bhūtāni tejasū* | 6. *Tupaty āditya-vaeh chaitsha chakshūmshī cha manāmsi cha* | *na chainam bhuvī śaknoti kaschid apy abhuvikshītum* | 7. *So gnir bhavati Vāyuś cha so 'rkaś Somaś sa Dharmarāt* | *sa Kuveraś sa Varuṇaś sa Mahendraś prabhāvatah* | 8. *Būlo 'pi nāvamantaryo "manushyah" iti bhūmipah* | *nahatī devatū hy eśhū nara-rūpeṇa tishṭhati* | "3. The lord created the king for the preservation of this entire world, (4) extracting the eternal essential particles of Indra, Vāyu, Yama, Sūrya, Agni, Varuṇa, Chandra, and Kuvera. 5. Inasmuch as the king is formed of the particles of all these gods, he surpasses all beings in brilliancy. 6. Like the Sun, he distresses both men's eyes and minds; and no one on earth can ever gaze upon him. 7. He is Agni, Vāyu, Sūrya, Soma, Yama, Kuvera, Varuṇa, and Indra, in majesty. 8. Even when a child a king is not to be despised under the idea that he is a mere man; for he is a great deity in human form."

In another passage, ix. 303, this is qualified by saying that the king should imitate the functions of the different gods: *Indrasyaṛkasya Vūyoścha Yamasya Varuṇasya cha* | *Chandrasyāgneś Prithivyās cha tejo vṛittān nṛipas* | *chaṛat* | This expanded in the next verses.

act in conformity with my commands. Brāhmans, ye must neither give gifts, nor present oblations nor sacrifices. 14. As obedience to their husbands is esteemed the highest duty of women, so is the observance of my orders incumbent upon you.' The rishis answered: 'Give permission, great king: let not religion perish: this whole world is but a modified form of oblations. 15. When religion perishes the whole world is destroyed with it.' When Veṇa, although thus admonished and repeatedly addressed by the eminent rishis, did not give his permission, then all the munis, filled with wrath and indignation, cried out to one another, 'Slay, slay the sinner. 16. This man of degraded life, who blasphemes the sacrificial Male, the god, the lord without beginning or end, is not fit to be lord of the earth.' So saying the munis smote with blades of kuśa grass consecrated by texts this king who had been already smitten by his blasphemy of the divine Being and his other offences. The munis afterwards beheld dust all round, and asked the people who were standing near what that was. 17. They were informed: 'In this country which has no king, the people, being distressed, have become robbers, and have begun to seize the property of others. 18. It is from these robbers rushing impetuously, and plundering other men's goods, that this great dust is seen? Then all the munis, consulting together, rubbed with force the thigh of the king, who was childless, in order to produce a son. From his thigh when rubbed there was produced a man like a charred log, with flat face, and extremely short. 19. 'What shall I do?' cried the man, in distress, to the Brāhmans. They said to him, 'Sit down' (*nishīda*); and from this he became a Nishāda. 20. From him sprang the Nishādas dwelling in the Vindhya mountains, distinguished by their wicked deeds. 21. By this means the sin of the king departed out of him; and so were the Nishādas produced, the offspring of the wickedness of Veṇa. 22. The Brāhmans then rubbed his right hand; and from it, when rubbed, sprang the majestic Prithu, Veṇa's son, resplendent in body, glowing like the manifested Agni. 23. Then the primeval bow called Ājagava fell from the sky, with celestial arrows, and a coat of mail. At Prithu's birth all creatures rejoiced. And through the birth of this virtuous son, Veṇa, delivered from the hell called Put⁶⁴ by this eminent person, ascended to heaven."

⁶⁴ This alludes to the fanciful derivation of *putra*, "son," from *put* + *tra*.

The *Harivaṁśa* (sect. 5) relates the same story thus, with little variation from the *Vishṇu Purāṇa* :

*Vaisampāyanaḥ uvācha | Āsīd dharmasya goptā vai pūrvam Atri-samah
prabhuḥ | Atri-vaṁśa-samutpannas tv Anḡo nāma prajāpatiḥ | tasya
putro 'bharad Veno nātyarthaṁ dharma-kovidāḥ | jāto Mrityu-sutāyān
vai Sunīthāyām prajāpatiḥ | sa mātāmaha-doshena tena kālātmajātmajāḥ |
śra-dharmān prishṭhataḥ kṛtvā kāmāl lobheshv avarttata | maryādūn
sthāpayāmāsa dharmāpetān sa pāṛthivāḥ | veda-dharmān atikramya so
'dharma-nirato' bhavat | nīḥ-srūdhya-vashaṭkārās tasmin rājani śūsati |
prācarttan na papuḥ somaṁ hutaṁ yajñeshu devatūḥ | "na yashṭavyān
na hotavyān" iti tasya prajāpateḥ | āsīt pratijñā krūreyān vināśe
samupasthite | aham ijyāś cha yashṭā cha yajñāś cheti kurūdrāḥ |
"mayi yajñāḥ vidhātavyāḥ mayi hotavyam" ity api | tam atikrānta-
maryādām ādadānam asūmpratam | ūchur maharshayaḥ sarve Marīchi-
pramukhās tadā | "vayaṁ dīkṣhām pravekshyāmāḥ saṁvatsara-gaṇān
bahūn | adharmaṁ kuru mā Vena naiśa dharmāḥ sanātanaḥ | anāyā
'treḥ prasūtas tvam prajāpatir asaṁśayam | 'prajāś cha pūlayishye
'ham' iti te samayaḥ kṛitāḥ" | tāūś tathā bruvataḥ sarvān maharshīn
abravit tadā | Venāḥ prahasya durbuddhir imam artham anartha-vit |
Venāḥ uvācha | "śraṣṭū dharmasya kaś chānyaḥ śrotavyāṁ kasya vā
mayā | śruta-vīrya-tapaḥ-satyair mayā vā kaḥ samo bhuvī | prabharaṁ
sarva-bhūtānām dharmānām cha viśeshataḥ | sammūḍhāḥ na vidur nūnam
bhavanto mām achetasāḥ | ichhan daheyam prīthivīm plāvayeyān jalais
tathā | dyām bhuvāṁ chaiva rundheyān nātra kāryā vichārāṇā" | yadā
na śakyate mohād avalepāc cha pāṛthivāḥ | anunetum tadā Venas tataḥ
kruddhāḥ maharshayaḥ | nigrihya tam mahātmāno viśphurantam mahā-
balam | tato 'sya savyam ūrum te mamanthur jāta-manyavaḥ | tasmiṁś tu
mathyamāne vai rājñāḥ ūrau vijajñivān | hrasvo 'timūtraḥ puruṣaḥ
kṛishṇaś chāpi babbhūva ha | sa bhītaḥ prānjalis bhūtvā sthītavān Jana-
mejaya | tam Atrir viśvān drishṭvā nishīdety abravīt tadā | nishūda-
vaṁśa-karttā 'sau babbhūva vadatām vara | dhīrarān asṛijach chāpi Vena-
kalmasha-sambhavān | ye chānye Vindhya-nīlayās Tukhārās Tumburās
tathā | adharmā-ruchayas tāta viddhi tām Vena-sambhavān | tataḥ punar
mahātmānaḥ pāṇīm Venasya dakṣiṇam | arāṇīm iva saṁrabdhāḥ maman-
thur jāta-manyavaḥ | Prīthus tasmāt samuttasthau karāj jvalana-sannī-
bhaḥ | dipyamanaḥ śva-vapushā sākṣhād Agnir iva jvalan |*

"There was formerly a Prajāpati (lord of creatures), a protector of

righteousness, called Anga, of the race of Atri, and resembling him in power. His son was the Prajāpati Vena, who was but indifferently skilled in duty, and was born of Sunīthā, the daughter of Mrityu. This son of the daughter of Kāla (Death), owing to the taint derived from his maternal grandfather, threw his duties behind his back, and lived in covetousness under the influence of desire. This king established an irreligious system of conduct: transgressing the ordinances of the Veda, he was devoted to lawlessness. In his reign men lived without study of the sacred books and without the vashaṭkāra, and the gods had no Soma-libations to drink at sacrifices. 'No sacrifice or oblation shall be offered,'—such was the ruthless determination of that Prajāpati, as the time of his destruction approached. 'I,' he declared, 'am the object, and the performer of sacrifice, and the sacrifice itself: it is to me that sacrifice should be presented, and oblations offered.' This transgressor of the rules of duty, who arrogated to himself what was not his due, was then addressed by all the great rishis, headed by Marichi: 'We are about to consecrate ourselves for a ceremony which shall last for many years: practise not unrighteousness, o Vena: this is not the eternal rule of duty. Thou art in very deed a Prajāpati of Atri's race, and thou hast engaged to protect thy subjects.' The foolish Vena, ignorant of what was right, laughingly answered those great rishis who had so addressed him: 'Who but myself is the ordainer of duty? or whom ought I to obey? Who on earth equals me in sacred knowledge, in prowess, in austere fervour, in truth? Ye who are deluded and senseless know not that I am the source of all beings and duties. Hesitate not to believe that I, if I willed, could burn up the earth, or deluge it with water, or close up heaven and earth.' When owing to his delusion and arrogance Vena could not be governed, then the mighty rishis becoming incensed, seized the vigorous and struggling king, and rubbed his left thigh. From this thigh, so rubbed, was produced a black man, very short in stature, who, being alarmed, stood with joined hands. Seeing that he was agitated, Atri said to him 'Sit down' (*nishīda*). He became the founder of the race of the Nishādas, and also progenitor of the Dhīvaras (fishermen), who sprang from the corruption of Vena. So too were produced from him the other inhabitants of the Vindhya range, the Tukhāras, and Tumburas, who are prone to lawlessness. Then the mighty sages, excited and incensed, again rubbed

the right hand of Vena, as men do the *araṇi* wood, and from it arose Pṛithu, resplendent in body, glowing like the manifested Agni."

Although the Harivaṁśa declares Vena to be a descendant of Atri, yet as the Prajāpati Atri is said in a previous section to have adopted Uttānapāda, Vena's ancestor, for his son (Hariv. sect. 2, verse 60, *Uttānapādaṁ jagrāha putram Atriḥ prajāpatiḥ*) there is no contradiction between the genealogy given here and in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa.

The story of Vena is told in the same way, but more briefly, in the Mahābhārata, Śāntip. sect. 59. After narrating the birth of Pṛithu, the writer proceeds, verse 2221 :

Tatas tu prāṇjalir Vainyo maharshīṁs tān uvācha ha | "susūkṣmā me samutpannā buddhir dharmārtha-darśinī | anayā kim mayā kāryyaṁ tad me tattvena śaṁsata | yad mām bhavanto rakṣyanti kāryam artha-samanvitaṁ | tad ahaṁ vai karishyāmi nātra kāryā richāraṇā" | tam ūchus tattra devās te te chaiva paramarśayaḥ | "niyato yattra dharmo vai tram aśankaḥ samāchāra | priyūpriye parityajya samāḥ sarveshu jantushu | kāma-krodhau cha lobhaṁ cha mānaṁ chotsṛijya dūrataḥ | yas cha dharmāt parichaleḥ loke kāśchana mānavaḥ | nigrūhyās te sva-bāhubhyāṁ śāśvad dharmam arekshatā | pratijñāṁ chādhirohasva manasā karmaṇā girā | 'pūlayishyāmy aham bhaumam brahma' ity eva chāsakṛit | . . . adandyaḥ me devjās cheti pratijñāni he vibho | lokaṁ cha sankarāt kṛitsnaṁ trātūsmi parantapa" | Vainyas tatas tān uvācha devān rishi-purogamān | "brāhmaṇāḥ me mahābhūgūḥ namasyāḥ puruṣarṣhabhūḥ" | "evam astē" iti Vainyas tu tair ukto brahmarūḍibhiḥ | purodhās chābharatasya Sukro brahmanāyo nīdhiḥ | mantriṇo Bālakhilyās cha Sārāsvatyoganaḥ tathā | maharshir bhagavān Gargas tasya sāmṛatsaro 'bharat |

"The son of Vena (Pṛithu) then, with joined hands, addressed the great rishis: 'A very slender understanding for perceiving the principles of duty has been given to me by nature: tell me truly how I must employ it. Doubt not that I shall perform whatever you shall declare to me as my duty, and its object.' Then those gods and great rishis said to him: 'Whatever duty is enjoined perform it without hesitation, disregarding what thou mayest like or dislike, looking on all creatures with an equal eye, putting far from thee lust, anger, cupidity, and pride. Restrain by the strength of thine arm all those men who swerve from righteousness, having a constant regard to duty. And in thought, act, and word take upon thyself, and continually renew, the

engagement to protect the terrestrial Brāhmān (Veda, or Brāhmans?) And promise that thou wilt exempt the Brāhmans from punishment, and preserve society from the confusion of castes.' The son of Vena then replied to the gods, headed by the rishis: 'The great Brāhmans, the chief of men, shall be revered by me.' 'So be it,' rejoined those declarers of the Veda. Sukra, the depository of divine knowledge, became his purohita; the Bālakhilyas and Śārasvatyas his ministers; and the venerable Garga, the great rishi, his astrologer."

The character and conduct of Prithu, as portrayed in the last passage presents a strong, and when regarded from a Brahmanical point of view, an edifying, contrast to the contempt of priestly authority and disregard of Vedic observances which his predecessor had shewn.

In legends like that of Vena we see, I think, a reflection of the questions which were agitating the religious world of India at the period when the Purāṇas in which they appear were compiled, viz., those which were then at issue between the adherents of the Veda, and the various classes of their opponents, Bauddha, Jaina, Chārvāka, etc. These stories were no doubt written with a purpose. They were intended to deter the monarchs contemporary with the authors from tampering with those heresies which had gained, or were gaining, circulation and popularity, by the example of the punishment which, it was pretended, had overtaken the princes who had dared to deviate from orthodoxy in earlier times. Compare the account given of the rise of heretical doctrines in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (pp. 209 ff. vol. iii. of Dr. Hall's edition of Professor Wilson's translation), which the writer no doubt intended to have something more than a merely historical interest.

The legend of Vena is told at greater length, but with no material variation in substance, in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, iv. sections 13-15. See also Professor Wilson's note in his Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. in loco.

In ascribing to Vena an irreligious character and a contempt for the priests, the Purāṇas contradict a verse in the Rig-veda x. 93, 14, in which (unless we suppose a different individual to be there meant) Vena is celebrated along with Duḥsīma, Prithavāna, and Rāma for his conspicuous liberality to the author of the hymn (*pra tad Duḥsīmo Prithavāna Vene pra Rāme vocam asure maghavatsu | ye yuktvāya pancha śata asmayu pathā viśrāvi eśhūm*). The two other passages,

viii. 9, 10, and x. 148, 5, in which he is alluded to as the father of Prithu have been quoted above, p. 268.

I observe that a Vena, called Bhārgava (or a descendant of Bhṛigu), is mentioned in the list of traditional authors of hymns, given at the end of Professor Aufrecht's Rig-veda, vol. ii., as the rishi of R.V. ix. 85, and x. 123.

SECT. III.—*Legend of Purūravas.*

Purūravas has been already alluded to (in pp. 158, 221, 226, 268, and 279 f.) as the son of Iḍa (or Iḍā), and the grandson of Manu Vaivasvata; as the author of the triple division of the sacred fire; and as a royal rishi. We have also seen (p. 172) that in Rig-veda i. 31, 4, he is referred to as *sukṛite*, a "beneficent," or "pious," prince. Rig-veda x. 95 is considered to contain a dialogue between him and the Apsaras *Urvaśī* (see above, p. 226). In verse 7 of that hymn the gods are alluded to as having strengthened Purūravas for a great conflict for the slaughter of the Dasyus (*mahe yat tvā Purūraro raṇāya avarddhayan dasyu-hatyāya derāḥ*); and in the 18th verse he is thus addressed by his patronymic: *Iti tvā devāḥ ime āhur Aīla yathā im etad bhavasi mṛityubandhuḥ | prajā te devān havishā yajāti svarge u tvam api mādyaṃse* | "Thus say these gods to thee, o son of Iḍa, that thou art indeed nothing more than a kinsman of death: (yet) let thy offspring worship the gods with an oblation, and thou also shalt rejoice in heaven."

It thus appears that in the Vedic hymns and elsewhere Purūravas is regarded as a pious prince, and Manu does not include him in his list of those who resisted the Brāhmins. But the M. Bh., Ādiparvan 31-43 speaks of him as follows:

Purūravās tato vidvān Ilāyām samapadyata | sū vai tasyābhavad mātū pitā chaiveti naḥ śrutam | trayodaśa samudrasya dvīpān aśnan Purūravāḥ | amānushair vṛitaḥ sarvair mānushaḥ san mahāyāsūḥ | vipraiḥ sa vighrahaṃ chakre vīryyonmattaḥ Purūravāḥ | jāhāra cha sa viprāṇām ratnāny utkrośātām api | Sanatkumāras taṃ rājan Brahma-lokāḍ upetya ha | anudarsaṃ tataś chakre pratyagrīhṇād na chūpy asau | tato maharshibhiḥ kruddhaiḥ sadyaḥ śapto vyanaśyata | lobhānvito bala-madād nashṭa-sanjño narādhipaḥ | sa hi gandharva-loka-sthān Urvaśyā sahito virāḥ | ānināya kriyārthe 'gnin yathāvad vihitaṃs tridhū |

"Subsequently the wise Purūravas was born of Ilā, who, as we have heard, was both his father and his mother. Ruling over thirteen islands of the ocean, and surrounded by beings who were all superhuman, himself a man of great renown, Purūravas, intoxicated by his prowess, engaged in a conflict with the Brāhmans, and robbed them of their jewels, although they loudly remonstrated. Sanatkumāra came from Brahmā's heaven, and addressed to him an admonition, which, however, he did not regard. Being then straightway cursed by the incensed rishis, he perished, this covetous monarch, who, through pride of power, had lost his understanding. This glorious being (*virāj*), accompanied by Urvaśī, brought down for the performance of sacred rites the fires which existed in the heaven of the Gandharvas, properly distributed into three." (See Wilson's Vishnu Purāṇa, 4to. ed. pp. 350 and 394 ff. with note p. 397.)

I cite from the Harivaṃśa another passage regarding Purūravas, although no distinct mention is made in it of his contest with the Brāhmans:

Harivaṃśa 8811. *Pitā Budhasyottama-vīrya-karmā Purūravāḥ yasya suto nṛi-devaḥ | prānāgnir īdyo 'gniṃ ajījanad yo nashṭaṃ śamī-garbha-bhavam bhavātmā | tathaira paśchāc chakame mahātmā purorvaśim ap-sarasām varishṭhām | pītaḥ purā yo 'mṛita-sarva-deho muni-pravīrair vara-gātri-ghoraḥ | nṛipaḥ kuśāgraiḥ punar eva yaś cha dhīmān kṛīto 'gnir divi pūjyate cha*

"He (the Moon) was the father of Budha (Mercury), whose son was Purūravas, a god among men, of distinguished heroic deeds, the vital fire, worthy of adoration, the generator, who begot the lost fire which sprang from the heart of the śamī-wood, the great personage, who, placed to the west, loved Urvaśī, the paragon of Apsarases, who was placed to the east. This king with his entire immortal body was formerly swallowed up with the points of Kuśa grass by the munis terrible with their resplendent forms; but was again made wise, and is worshipped in heaven as fire."

SECT. IV.—*Story of Nahusha.*

The legend of Nahusha,⁵⁵ grandson of Purūravas (see above, p. 226),

⁵⁵ The name of Nahush occurs in the Rig-veda as that of the progenitor of a race.

the second prince described by Manu as having come into hostile collision with the Brāhmins is narrated with more or less detail in different parts of the Mahābhārata, as well as in the Purāṇas. The following passage is from the former work, Ādip. 3151 :

*Āyusho Nahushaḥ putro dhīmān satya-parākramaḥ | rājyaṁ śasāsa
sumahad dharmena prithivīpate | pitṛin devān rishin viprān gandharva-
raga-rūkshasān | Nahushaḥ pālayāmāsa brahma kshattram atho viśaḥ |
sa hatrā dasyu-sanghātān rishin karam adūpayat | paśurach chaira tūn
prishṭho vāhayāmāsa vīryavān | kārayāmāsa chendratvam abhibhūya
dīraukasaḥ | tejasū tapasū chaira vikramenaujasū tathā |*

“Nahusha the son of Āyus, wise, and of genuine prowess, ruled with justice a mighty empire. He protected the pitṛis, gods, rishis, wise men, gandharvas, serpents (*uraga*), and rūkshasas, as well as Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas. This energetic prince, after slaying the hosts of the Dasyus, compelled the rishis to pay tribute, and made them carry him like beasts upon their backs. After subduing the celestials he conquered for himself the rank of Indra, through his vigour, austere fervour, valour and fire.”

The story is thus introduced in another part of the same work, the Vanaparvan, section 180. Yudhishṭhira found his brother Bhīmasena seized by a serpent in a forest (see above, p. 133). This serpent, it appears, was no other than king Nahusha, who on being questioned thus relates his own history, 12460 :

*Nahusho nāma rājā 'ham āsam pūrvas tarūnagha | prathitaḥ panchamaḥ
Somād Āyoh putro narādhipa | kratubhis tapasū chaiva śrādhyāyena
damena cha | trailokyaiśvaryaṁ avyagram prāpto 'haṁ vikramaṇa cha |
tad aiśvaryaṁ samāsādya darpo mām agamat tadū | sahasraṁ hi drījā-
tīnām uvāha śivikām mama | aiśvarya-mada-matto 'ham avamanya tato
drījān | imām Agastyena daśām ānītaḥ prithivīpate | . . . ahaṁ hi
divi divyena vimānena charan purā | abhimānena mattaḥ san kanchid
nānyam achintayam | brahmarshi-deva-gandharva-yaksha-rūkshasa-pan-
nagūḥ | karān mama prayachhanti sarve trailokya-vāsinaḥ | chakshushā
yam prapaśyāmi prāṇinam prithivīpate | tasya tejo harāmy āsu tad hi
drīshṭer balam mama | maharshīnām sahasraṁ hi uvāha śivikām mama |*

See above, p. 165, note 7, and pp. 179 f. Nahusha Mānava is the traditional rishi of Rig-veda ix. 101, verses 7-9, and Yayāti Nāhusha of verses 4-6 of the same hymn. See list of rishis in Professor Aufrecht's Rig-veda ii. 464 ff.

*sa mām apanayo rājan bhraṁśayāmāsa vai śriyaḥ | tatra hy Agastyaḥ
pādena vahan sprishṭo mayā munīḥ | Agastyena tato 'smy ukto dhvāṁsa
sarpeti vai rushā | tatas tasmād vimānāgryāt prachyutaś chyuta-laksha-
naḥ | prapatan bubudhe 'tmānaṁ vyālibhūtam adhomukham | ayācham
tam ahaṁ vipraṁ "śāpasyānto bhaved" iti | "pramādāt sampramūḍha-
sya bhagavan kshantum arhasi" | tataḥ sa mām uvāchedam prapatantaṁ
kṛipānvitaḥ | "Yudhishṭhira dharma-rājaḥ śūpāt tvām mochayishyati" |
. . . . ity uktvā "jagaraṁ deham muktvā na Nahusho nṛipaḥ | divyaṁ
vapuh samāsthāya gatas tridivam eva cha |*

"I was a king called Nahusha, more ancient than thou, known as the son of Āyus, and fifth in descent from Soma. By my sacrifices, austere fervour, sacred study, self-restraint, and valour, I acquired the undisturbed sovereignty of the three worlds. When I had attained that dominion, pride took possession of my soul: a thousand Brāhmans bore my vehicle. Becoming intoxicated by the conceit of my lordly power, and contemning the Brāhmans, I was reduced to this condition by Agastya." The serpent then promises to let Bhīmasena go, if Yudhishṭhira will answer certain questions (above referred to in p. 133 ff.). Yudhishṭhira afterwards enquires how delusion had happened to take possession of so wise a person as their conversation shewed Nahusha to be. The latter replies that he had been perverted by the pride of power, and proceeds: "Formerly, as I moved through the sky on a celestial car, intoxicated with self-conceit, I regarded no one but myself. All the inhabitants of the three worlds, brāhmanical rishis, gods, gandharvas, yakshas, rākshasas, pannagas, paid me tribute. Such was the power of my gaze that on what creature soever I fixed my eyes, I straightway robbed him of his energy. A thousand of the great sages bore my vehicle. That misconduct it was, o king, which hurled me from my high estate. For I then touched with my foot the muni Agastya who was carrying me. Agastya in his wrath cried out to me 'Fall, thou serpent.' Hurlled therefore from that magnificent car, and fallen from my prosperity, as I descended headlong, I felt that I had become a serpent. I entreated the Brāhman (Agastya), 'Let there be a termination of the curse: thou, o reverend rishi, shouldest forgive one who has been deluded through his inconsideration.' He then compassionately replied to me as I fell, 'Yudhishṭhira, the king of righteousness, will free thee from the curse.'" And at the close of the

conversation between Yudhishṭhira and the serpent, we are told that “King Nahusha, throwing of his huge reptile form, became clothed in a celestial body, and ascended to heaven.”

The same story is related in greater detail in the Udyogaparvan, sections 10–16, as follows :

After his slaughter of the demon Vṛittra, Indra became alarmed at the idea of having taken the life of a Brāhman (for Vṛittra was regarded as such), and hid himself in the waters. In consequence of the disappearance of the king of the gods, all affairs, celestial as well as terrestrial, fell into confusion. The rishis and gods then applied to Nahusha to be their king. After at first excusing himself on the plea of want of power, Nahusha at length, in compliance with their solicitations, accepted the high function. Up to the period of his elevation he had led a virtuous life, but he now became addicted to amusement and sensual pleasure; and even aspired to the possession of Indrāṇī, Indra's wife, whom he had happened to see. The queen resorted to the Angiras Vṛihaspati, the preceptor of the gods, who engaged to protect her. Nahusha was greatly incensed on hearing of this interference; but the gods endeavoured to pacify him, and pointed out the immorality of appropriating another person's wife. Nahusha, however, would listen to no remonstrance, and insisted that in his adulterous designs he was no worse than Indra himself: 373. *Ahalyā dharshitā pūrvam ṛishi-patnī yaśasvinī | jīvato bharttur Indreṇa sa vaḥ kiṁ na nivāritaḥ |* 374. *Bahūni cha nṛiśaṁsāni kṛitānīndreṇa vai purā | vaidharmyāny upadās chaiva sa vaḥ kiṁ na nivāritaḥ |* “373. The renowned Ahalyā, a rishi's wife, was formerly corrupted by Indra in her husband's lifetime (see p. 121 f.): Why was he not prevented by you? 374. And many barbarous acts, and unrighteous deeds, and frauds, were perpetrated of old by Indra: Why was he not prevented by you?” The gods, urged by Nahusha, then went to bring Indrāṇī; but Vṛihaspati would not give her up. At his recommendation, however, she solicited Nahusha for some delay, till she should ascertain what had become of her husband. This request was granted. The gods next applied to Vishṇu on behalf of Indra; and Vishṇu promised that if Indra would sacrifice to him, he should be purged from his guilt, and recover his dominion, while Nahusha would be destroyed. Indra sacrificed accordingly; and the result is thus told: 419. *Vibhajya brahma-hatyām tu vriksheshu*

cha nadīshu cha | parvateshu prithivyām cha strīshu chaiva Yudhishthira | sa vibhajya cha bhūteshu visṛijya cha sureśvaraḥ | vijaro dhuta-pāpmā cha Vāsavo 'bhavad ātmavān | "Having divided the guilt of brahmanicide among trees, rivers, mountains, the earth, women, and the elements, Vāsava (Indra), lord of the gods, became freed from suffering and sin, and self-governed." Nahusha was by this means shaken from his place. But (unless this is said by way of prolepsis, or there is some confusion in the narrative) he must have speedily regained his position, as we are told that Indra was again ruined, and became invisible. Indrānī now went in search of her husband; and by the help of *Upasruti* (the goddess of night and revealer of secrets) discovered him existing in a very subtle form in the stem of a lotus⁴ growing in a lake situated in a continent within an ocean north of the Hīmalāya. She made known to him the wicked intentions of Nahusha, and entreated him to exert his power, rescue her from danger, and resume his dominion. Indra declined any immediate interposition on the plea of Nahusha's superior strength; but suggested to his wife a device by which the usurper might be hurled from his position. She was recommended to say to Nahusha that "if he would visit her on a celestial vehicle borne by rishis, she would with pleasure submit herself to him" (449. *Ṛishi-yānena diryena mām upaihi jagatpate | evaṁ tara raśe prītā bhaviṣyāmiti taṁ vada*). The queen of the gods accordingly went to Nahusha, by whom she was graciously received, and made this proposal: 457. *Icchāmy aham athāpūreṇ vāhanam te surādhipa | yad na Viṣṇor na Rudrasya nāsurāṇām na rākṣhāsām | vahantu tvām mahābhūgāḥ ṛishayaḥ sangatāḥ vibho | sarve śivikayā rājann etad hi mama rochate |* "I desire for thee, king of the gods, a vehicle hitherto unknown, such as neither Viṣṇu, nor Rudra, nor the asuras, nor the rakshases employ. Let the eminent rishis, all united, bear thee, lord, in a car: this idea pleases me." Nahusha receives favourably this appeal to his vanity, and in the course of his reply thus gives utterance to his self-congratulation: 463. *Na hy alpa-vīro bhavati yo vāhān kurute munīn | aham tapasvī balavān bhūta-bharya-bhavad-prabhuḥ | mayi kruddho jagad na syād mayi sarvam pratishṭhitam | . . . tasmāt te vachanān devi karishyāmi na saṁśayaḥ | saptarshayo mām vakshyanti sarve brahmarshayas tathā | paśya mātmyam asmākaṁ riddhiṁ cha varavarāṇini | . . .* 468. *Vimāne yojayitrā sa ṛishīn niyamam āsthitān | abrahmanyō*

balopeto matto mada-balena cha | kīma-rīttāḥ sa duṣhātma vāhayāmāsa
tūn rishin | "He is a personage of no mean prowess who makes the
munis his bearers. I am a fervid devotee of great might, lord of the
past, the future, and the present. If I were angry the world would
no longer stand; on me everything depends. . . . Wherefore, o
goddess, I shall, without doubt, carry out what you propose. The
seven rishis, and all the brāhman-rishis, shall carry me. Behold,
beautiful goddess, my majesty and my prosperity." The narrative
goes on: "Accordingly this wicked being, irreligious, violent, intoxi-
cated by the force of conceit, and arbitrary in his conduct, attached to
his car the rishis, who submitted to his commands, and compelled them
to bear him." Indrāṇī then again resorts to Vṛihaspati, who assures
her that vengeance will soon overtake Nahusha for his presumption;
and promises that he will himself perform a sacrifice with a view to
the destruction of the oppressor, and the discovery of Indra's lurking
place. Agni is then sent to discover and bring Indra to Vṛihaspati;
and the latter, on Indra's arrival, informs him of all that had occurred
during his absence. While Indra, with Kuvera, Yama, Soma, and
Varuṇa, was devising means for the destruction of Nahusha, the sage
Agastya came up, congratulated Indra on the fall of his rival, and pro-
ceeded to relate how it had occurred: 527. *Sramārttāścha vakantas*
tam Nahusham pūpakāriṇam | derarshayo mahābhūgas tathā brahmar-
shayo 'malūḥ | paprachhur Nahusham devam saṁśayaṁ jayatām vura |
ye ime brāhmanāḥ proktāḥ mantrāḥ vai prokṣane gavām | eto pramūṇam
bharataḥ utūho neti Vāsava | Nahusho neti tūn āha tamasā mūḍha-che-
tanah | rishayah ūchuḥ | adharme sampravṛittas tvam dharmam na prati-
padyase | pramūṇam etad asmākam pūrvam proktam maharshibhiḥ |
Agastyah uvācha | Tato vivadamūnah sa munibhiḥ saha Vāsava | atha
mūm aspriśad mūrdhni pād-nādharmā-yojitah | tenūbhūd hata-tejās cha
niḥśrikaś cha mahīpatiḥ | tatas taṁ sahasā vīgam avocham bhaya-pīḍi-
tam | "yasmāt pūrvaiḥ kṛitam brahma brahmarshibhir anuśṛīṭam |
aduṣhātmaṁ duṣhayasi vai yach cha mūrdhny aspriśaḥ padā | yach chāpi
tvam rishin mūḍha brahma-kalpān durāsādān | vāhān kṛitvā vāhayasi
tena evargūd hata-prabhaḥ | dhvāṁsa pūpa paribhrashtāḥ kṣhīna-puṇyo
mahīlalam | daśa-varṣa-sahasrūṇi śarpa-rūpa-dhara mahān | vichari-
shyasi pūrṇeshu punaḥ evargam avāpsyasi" | evam bhrashto durātmā sa
deva-rūpyād arindama | diṣṭyā varddhūmaḥ śakra hato brāhmaṇa-kaṇ-

śakāḥ | tripiṣṭapam prapadyasva pāhi lokān śachīpate | jetendriyo jīta-mitraḥ stūyamāno maharṣibhiḥ | “Wearied with carrying the sinner Nahusha, the eminent divine-rishis, and the spotless brāhman-rishis, asked that divine personage Nahusha [to solve] a difficulty: ‘Dost thou, o Vāsava, most excellent of conquerors, regard as authoritative or not those Brāhmaṇa texts which are recited at the immolation of kine?’ ‘No,’ replied Nahusha, whose understanding was enveloped in darkness. The rishis rejoined: ‘Engaged in unrighteousness, thou attainest not unto righteousness: these texts, which were formerly uttered by great rishis, are regarded by us as authoritative.’ Then (proceeds Agastya) disputing with the munis, Nahusha, impelled by unrighteousness, touched me on the head with his foot. In consequence of this the king’s glory was smitten and his prosperity departed. When he had instantly become agitated and oppressed with fear, I said to him, ‘Since thou, o fool, contemnest that sacred text, always held in honour, which has been composed by former sages, and employed by brāhman-rishis, and hast touched my head with thy foot, and employest the Brahmā-like and irresistible rishis as bearers to carry thee,—therefore, shorn of thy lustre, and all thy merit exhausted, sink down, sinner, degraded from heaven to earth. For ten thousand years thou shalt crawl in the form of a huge serpent. When that period is completed, thou shalt again ascend to heaven.’ So fell that wicked wretch from the sovereignty of the gods. Happily, o Indra, we shall now prosper, for the enemy of the Brāhmans has been smitten. Take possession of the three worlds, and protect their inhabitants, o husband of Sachi (Indrāṇī), subduing thy senses, overcoming thine enemies, and celebrated by the great rishis.”⁸⁶

Indra, as we have seen above, was noted for his dissolute character. The epithet “subduing thy senses,” assigned to him in the last sentence by Agastya, is at variance with this indifferent reputation. Is it to be regarded as a piece of flattery, or as a delicate hint that the god would do well to practise a purer morality in future?

This legend appears, like some others, to have been a favourite with the compilers of the Mahābhārata; for we find it once more related, though with some variety of detail, (which may justify its repetition in

⁸⁶ Further on, in verse 556, Nahusha is called “the depraved, the hater of brahman, the sinful-minded (*durāchāras cha Nahusho brahma-dvīḥ pūpachetanah*).

a condensed form), in the Anuśāsanaparvan, verses 4715-4810. We are there told that Nahusha, in recompense for his good deeds, was exalted to heaven; where he continued to perform all divine and human ceremonies, and to worship the gods as before. At length he became puffed up with pride at the idea that he was Indra, and all his good works in consequence were neutralized. For a great length of time he compelled the rishis to carry him about. At last it came to Agastya's turn to perform the servile office. Bhṛigu then came and said to Agastya, 'Why do we submit to the insults of this wicked king of the gods?' Agastya answered that none of the rishis had ventured to curse Nahusha, because he had obtained the power of subduing to his service everyone upon whom he fixed his eyes; and that he had *amṛita* (nectar) for his beverage. However, Agastya said he was prepared to do anything that Bhṛigu might suggest. Bhṛigu said he had been sent by Brahmā to take vengeance on Nahusha, who was that day about to attach Agastya to his car, and would spurn him with his foot; and that he himself (Bhṛigu), "incensed at this insult, would by a curse condemn the transgressor and hater of Brāhmins to become a serpent" (*cyutkrānta-dharmaṁ tam ahaṁ dharṣaṇūmarṣito bhṛīṣam | ahir bhavasreti ruṣhā śapsye pāpaṁ dvija-druham*). All this accordingly happened as follows :

Athāgastyam ṛishi-kṣeṣṭham vāhanāyūjukhāra ha | drutaṁ Sarasvatī-kūlāt smayann ira mahābalaḥ | tato Bhṛigur mahātejāḥ Maitrāvaruṇim abravīt | "nimilayasva nayane jaṭām yāvad viśāmi te" | sthāṇubhūtasya tasyātha jaṭām praviśad achyutaḥ | Bhṛiguḥ sa sumahātejāḥ pūtanāya nṛipasya cha | tataḥ sa deva-rāṭ prāptas tam ṛishiṁ vāhanāya vai | tato 'gastyah surapatiṁ vākyam āha viśūmpate | "yojayasreti mām kṣhipraṁ kaṁ cha deṣaṁ vāhaṁ te | yatra rakshyasi tatra tvām nayiṣhyāmi surādhipa" | ity ukto Nahushas tena yojayāmāsa tam munim | Bhṛigus tasya jaṭāntaḥ-stho babhūva hrīṣito bhṛīṣam | na chāpi darśanaṁ tasya chakāra sa Bhṛigus tadā | vara-dāna-prabhāra-jño Nahushasya mahātmanah | na chukopa tadā 'gastyo yukto 'pi Nahushaḥ vai | taṁ tu rāja pratodena chodayāmāsa Bhārata | na chukopa sa dharmātmā tataḥ pādena deva-rāṭ | Agastyasya tadā kruddho vāmenūbhyahanach chhiraḥ | tasmin śirasī abhihate sa jaṭāntargato Bhṛiguḥ | śasāpa balavat kruddho Nahusham pāpachetasam | "yasmāt padā 'hanaḥ krodhāt śirasīmam mahāmuniṁ | tasmād āsu mahīm gachha sarpo bhūtvā sudurmate" | ity uktaḥ sa tadā tena

*sarpo bhūtrā papāta ha | adṛishṭenātha Bhṛiguṇā bhūtale Bharatarsha-
bha | Lihṛiguṇ hi yadi so 'drakshyad Nahushaḥ pṛithivīpate | sa na śakto
'bhaviṣhyad vai pātane tasya tejasā |*

“The mighty Nahusha, as it were smiling, straightway summoned the eminent rishi Agastya from the banks of the Sarasvatī to carry him. The glorious Bhṛigu then said to Maitrāvaruṇi (Agastya), ‘Close thy eyes whilst I enter into the knot of thy hair.’ With the view of over-throwing the king, Bhṛigu then entered into the hair of Agastya who stood motionless as a stock. Nahusha then came to be carried by Agastya, who desired to be attached to the vehicle and agreed to carry the king of the gods whithersoever he pleased. Nahusha in consequence attached him. Bhṛigu, who was lodged in the knot of Agastya’s hair, was greatly delighted, but did not venture to look at Nahusha, as he knew the potency of the boon which had been accorded to him (of subduing to his will everyone on whom he fixed his eyes). Agastya did not lose his temper when attached to the vehicle, and even when urged by a goad the holy man remained unmoved. The king of the gods, incensed, next struck the rishi’s head with his left foot, when Bhṛigu, invisible within the knot of hair, became enraged, and violently cursed the wicked Nahusha: ‘Since, fool, thou hast in thine anger smitten this great muni on the head with thy foot, therefore become a serpent, and fall down swiftly to the earth.’ Being thus addressed, Nahusha became a serpent, and fell to the earth, through the agency of Bhṛigu, who remained invisible. For if he had been seen by Nahusha, the saint would have been unable, in consequence of the power possessed by the oppressor, to hurl him to the ground.”

Bhṛigu, on Nahusha’s solicitation, and the intercession of Agastya, placed a period to the effects of the curse, which, as in the other version of the legend, Yudhishṭhira was to be the instrument of terminating.

From several phrases which I have quoted from the version of this legend given in the Udyogaparvan, as well as the tenor of the whole, it appears to be the intention of the writers to hold up the case of Nahusha as an example of the nemesis awaiting not merely any gross display of presumption, but all resistance to the pretensions of the priesthood, and contempt of their persons or authority.

SECT. V.—*Story of Nimi.*

Nimi (one of Ikshvāku's sons) is another of the princes who are stigmatized by Manu, in the passage above quoted, for their want of deference to the Brāhmans. The Vishṇu P. (Wilson, 4to. ed. p. 388) relates the story as follows: Nimi had requested the Brāhman-rishi Vaśishṭha to officiate at a sacrifice, which was to last a thousand years. Vaśishṭha in reply pleaded a pre-engagement to Indra for five hundred years, but promised to return at the end of that period. The king made no remark, and Vaśishṭha went away, supposing that he had assented to this arrangement. On his return, however, the priest discovered that Nimi had retained Gāutama (who was, equally with Vaśishṭha, a Brāhman-rishi) and others to perform the sacrifice; and being incensed at the neglect to give him notice of what was intended, he cursed the king, who was then asleep, to lose his corporeal form. When Nimi awoke and learnt that he had been cursed without any previous warning, he retorted, by uttering a similar curse on Vaśishṭha, and then died. "In consequence of this curse" (proceeds the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 5, 6) "the vigour of Vaśishṭha entered into the vigour of Mitra and Varuṇa. Vaśishṭha, however, received from them another body when their seed had fallen from them at the sight of Urvaśī" (*tach-~~chh~~āpācha Mitrā-varuṇayos tejasi Vaśishṭha-tejah pravishṭam | Urvaśī-darśanād udbhūta-vīrya-prapātayoḥ sakāsūd Vaśishṭho deham aparaṁ lehe*).⁷ Nimi's body was embalmed. At the close of the sacrifice which he had begun, the gods were willing, on the intercession of the priests, to restore him to life, but he declined the offer; and was placed by the deities, according to his desire, in the eyes of all living creatures. It is in consequence of this that they are always opening and shutting (*nimisha* means "the twinkling of the eye").

The story is similarly related in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 13, 1-13. A portion of the passage is as follows:

3. *Nimiś chalam idaṁ vidvān satṭram ārabhatātmavān | rītvigbhir aparais tavad nāgamad yāvataḥ guruḥ | śishya-vyatikramaṁ vikshya nir-varṭṭya gurur āgataḥ | āsapat "patatād deho Nimeḥ paṇḍita-māninaḥ" | Nimiḥ pratidadau śūpaṁ guruve 'dharma-varṭṭine | "taṁpi patatād deho*

⁷ This story will be further illustrated in the next section.

lobhād dharmam ajānataḥ” | *ity utsasarjja svaṁ dehaṁ Nimir adhyātma-kovidāḥ* | *Mitrā-varuṇayor jajñe Urvaśyām prapitūmahāḥ* |

“Nimi, who was self-controlled, knowing the world to be fleeting, commenced the sacrifice with other priests until his own spiritual instructor should come back. The latter, on his return, discovering the transgression of his disciple, cursed him thus: ‘Let the body of Nimi, who fancies himself learned, fall from him.’ Nimi retorted the curse on his preceptor, who was acting unrighteously: ‘Let thy body also fall from thee, since thou, through covetousness, art ignorant of duty.’ Having so spoken, Nimi, who knew the supreme spirit, abandoned his body: and the patriarch (Vasishṭha) was born of Urvaśī to Mitra and Varuṇa.”⁸⁸

The offence of Nimi, as declared in these passages, is not that of contemning the sacerdotal order in general, or of usurping their functions; but merely of presuming to consult his own convenience by proceeding to celebrate a sacrifice with the assistance of another Brāhman (for Gautama also was a man of priestly descent) when his own spiritual preceptor was otherwise engaged, without giving the latter any notice of his intention. The Bhāgavata, as we have seen, awards blame impartially to both parties, and relates (as does also the Viṣṇu Purāṇa) that the king’s curse took effect on the Brāhman, as well as the Brāhman’s on the king.

SECT. VI.—*Vasishṭha*

One of the most remarkable and renowned of the struggles between Brāhmans and Kshattriyaḥ which occur in the legendary history of India is that which is said to have taken place between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra. I propose to furnish full details of this conflict with its fabulous accompaniments from the Rāmāyaṇa, which dwells upon it at considerable length, as well as from the Mahābhārata, where it is repeatedly

⁸⁸ On the last verse the commentator S’rīdhara has the following note: *Urvaśī-darśanāt skannaṁ retas tūbhyāṁ kumbhe nishikṭam* | *tasmāt prapitūmahō Vasishṭho jajñe* | *tathā cha śrutiḥ “kumbho retas sishichituḥ samānam” iti* | “Seed fell from them at the sight of Urvaśī and was shed into a jar: from it the patriarch, Vasishṭha, was born. And so says the śruti” (R.V. vii. 33, 13, which will be quoted in the next section)

introduced; but before doing so, I shall quote the passages of the Rig-veda which appear to throw a faint light on the real history of the two rivals. It is clear from what has been said in the Introduction to this volume, pp. 1-6, as well as from the remarks I have made in pp. 161 f., that the Vedic hymns, being far more ancient than the Epic and Puranic compilations, must be more trustworthy guides to a knowledge of the remotest Indian antiquity. While the Epic poems and Puranas no doubt embody numerous ancient traditions, yet these have been freely altered according to the caprice or dogmatic views of later writers, and have received many purely fictitious additions. The Vedic hymns, on the contrary, have been preserved unchanged from a very remote period, and exhibit a faithful reflection of the social, religious, and ecclesiastical condition of the age in which they were composed, and of the feelings which were awakened by contemporary occurrences. As yet there was no conscious perversion or colouring of facts for dogmatic or sectarian purposes; and much of the information which we derive from these naïve compositions is the more trustworthy that it is deduced from hints and allusions, and from the comparison of isolated particulars, and not from direct and connected statements or descriptions. It is here therefore, if anywhere, that we may look for some light on the real relations between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra. After quoting the hymns regarding these two personages, I shall adduce from the Brāhmaṇas, or other later works, any particulars regarding their birth and history which I have discovered. The conflict between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra has been already discussed at length in the third of Dr. Rudolf Roth's "Dissertations on the literature and history of the Veda,"⁸⁹ where the most important parts of the hymns bearing upon the subject are translated. The first hymn which I shall adduce is intended for the glorification of Vasishṭha and his family. The latter part relates the birth of the sage, while the earlier verses refer to his connection with king Sudās. Much of this hymn is very obscure.

R.V. vii. 33, 1. *Svityancho mā dakṣhiṇatas-kapardāḥ dhiyaṃjinvāso abhi hi pramanduḥ | uttishṭhan voce pari barhiṣho nṛin na me dūrād avitave Vasishṭhāḥ |* 2. *Dūrād Indram anayann ā sutena tiro vaiśantam ati pāntam ugram | Pāsadyumnasya Vāyatasya somāt sutād Indro avṛṇīta Vasishṭhān |* 3. *Eva in nu kaṁ sindhum ebhis tatāra eva in nu kam*

⁸⁹ Zur Litteratur und Geschichte des Weda. Stuttgart. 1846.

Bhedam ebhir jaghāna | eva in nu kaṁ dāsārājne Sudāsam prāvad Indro brahmanā vo Vasishthāḥ | 4. Jushṭi naro brahmanā vaḥ pitṛiṇām aksham aryayaṁ na kila rishātha | yat śakvarishu bṛihatā ravena Indre śushmam adadhāta Vasishthāḥ | 5. Uḍ dyām iva it tṛishṇajo nāthitāso adidhayur dāsārājne vṛitāsah | Vasishthasya stuvataḥ Indro āśrod uruṁ Tritsubhyo akṛiṇod u lokam | 6. Daṇḍā iva gojanāśah āsan parichhin-nāḥ Bharatāḥ arbhakāsah | abhavach cha pura-etā Vasishthāḥ ād it Tritsūnām viśo aprathanta | 7. Trayah kṛiṇvanti bhuvaneshu retas tisrah prajāḥ āryāḥ jyotir-agrāḥ | trayo gharmāsah ushasāṁ sachante sarrān it tān anu vidur Vasishthāḥ | 8. Sūryasya iva vakshatho jyotir eshām samudrasya iva mahimā gabhīrah | vātasya iva prajavo na anyena stomo Vasishthāḥ anu etave vaḥ | 9. Te in niṇyaṁ hṛidayasya praketaiḥ sahasra-valśam abhi saṁ charanti | yamena tatam paridhiṁ vayanto apsarasah upa sedur Vasishthāḥ | 10. Vidyuto jyotiḥ pari saṁ jihānam Mitrā-varuṇā yad apaśyatām tvā | tat te janma uta ekaṁ Vasishtha Agastyo yat tvā viśah ājabhāra | 11. Uta asi Maitrāvaruṇo Vasishtha Urvaśyāḥ brahman manaso 'dhi jātaḥ | drapsaṁ skannam brahmanā dairyaena viśte devāḥ pushkare tvā 'dadanta | 12. Sa praketaḥ ubhayasya pravidrān sahasradānaḥ uta vā sadānaḥ | yamena tatam paridhiṁ vayishyann apsarasah pari jāne Vasishthah | 13. Sattre ha jātāv ishitā namobhiḥ kumbhe retah sishichatuḥ samānam | tato ha Mānaḥ ud iyāya madhyāt tato jātām rishim āhur Vasishtham |

"1. The white-robed (priests) with hair-knots on the right, stimulating to devotion, have filled me with delight. Rising from the sacrificial grass, I call to the men, 'Let not the Vasishthas (stand too) far off to succour [or gladden] me.'⁹⁰ 2. By their libation they brought Indra hither from afar across the Vaisanta away from the powerful draught.⁹¹ Indra preferred the Vasishthas to the soma offered by Pāsadyumna,⁹² the son of Vayata. 3. So too with them he crossed the river; so too with them he slew Bheda; so too in the battle of the ten kings⁹³ Indra delivered Sudās through your prayer, o Vasishthas.

⁹⁰ Sūyana thinks that Vasishtha is the speaker, and refers here to his own sons. Professor Roth (under the word *av*) regards Indra as the speaker. May it not be Sudās?

⁹¹ This is the interpretation of this clause suggested by Professor Aufrecht, who thinks Vaisanta is probably the name of a river.

⁹² According to Sūyana, another king who was sacrificing at the same time as Sudās.

⁹³ See verses 6-8 of R.V. vii. 83, to be next quoted.

4. Through gratification caused by the prayer of your fathers, o men, ye do not obstruct the undecaying axle (?), since at (the recitation of the) Sakvarī verses⁹⁴ with a loud voice ye have infused energy into Indra, o Vasishṭhas. 5. Distressed, when surrounded in the fight of the ten kings, they looked up, like thirsty men, to the sky. Indra heard Vasishṭha when he uttered praise, and opened up a wide space for the Tritsus.⁹⁵ 6. Like staves for driving cattle, the contemptible Bharatas were lopped all round. Vasishṭha marched in front, and then the tribes of the Tritsus were deployed. 7. Three deities create a fertilizing fluid in the worlds. Three are the noble creatures, whom light precedes. Three fires attend the dawn.⁹⁶ All these the Vasishṭhas know. 8. Their lustre is like the full radiance of the sun; their greatness is like the depth of the ocean; like the swiftness of the wind, your hymn, o Vasishṭhas, can be followed by no one else. 9. By the intuitions of their heart they seek out the mystery with a thousand branches. Weaving the envelopment stretched out by Yama, the Vasishṭhas sat down by the Apsaras. 10. When Mitra and Varuṇa saw thee quitting the flame of the lightning, that was thy birth; and thou hadst one (other birth), o Vasishṭha, when Agastya brought thee to the people. 11. And thou art also a son of Mitra and Varuṇa, o Vasishṭha, born, o priest, from the soul of Urvaśī. All the gods placed thee—a drop which fell through divine contemplation—in the vessel. 12. He, the intelligent, knowing both (worlds?), with a thousand gifts, or with gifts—he who was to weave the envelopment stretched out by Yama—he, Vasishṭha, was born of the Apsaras. 13. They, two (Mitra and Varuṇa?), born at the sacrifice, and impelled by adorations, dropped into the jar the same amount of seed. From the

⁹⁴ See R.V. x. 71, 11, above, p. 256.

⁹⁵ This is evidently the name of the tribe which the Vasishṭhas favoured, and to which they themselves must have belonged. See vii. 83, 4. The Bharatas in the next verse appear to be the hostile tribe.

⁹⁶ In explanation of this Sāyaṇa quotes a passage from the S'tyāyana Brahmana, as follows: "*Trayaḥ kṛṇvanti bhuvanesu retāḥ*" ity Agniḥ prithivyāṁ retāḥ kṛṇoti Vāyur antarikshe Adityo divi | "*tisraḥ prajāḥ ūryyāḥ jyotir-agrāḥ*" iti Vasavo Rudrāḥ Adityāḥ tāsāṁ jyotir yad asūv Adityāḥ | "*trayo gharṇāsāḥ uśasāṁ saohante*" ity Agnir Uśasāṁ sachate Vāyur Uśasāṁ sachate Adityāḥ Uśasāṁ sachate | (1) "Agni produces a fertilizing fluid on the earth, Vāyu in the air, the Sun in the sky. (2) The 'three noble creatures' are the Vasu, Rudras, and Adityas. The Sun is their light. (3) Agni, Vāyu, and the Sun each attend the Dawn."

midst of that arose Māna (Agastya?); and from that they say that the rishi Vasishṭha sprang.”⁹⁷

There is another hymn (R.V. vii. 18) which relates to the connection between Vasishṭha and Sudās (verses 4, 5, 21–25) and the conflict between the latter and the Trītsus with their enemies (verses 6–18); but as it is long and obscure I shall content myself with quoting a few verses.⁹⁸

R.V. vii. 18, 4. *Dhenuṃ na tvā sugavase dudhuksann upa brahmāni sasrije Vasishṭhaḥ | tvām id me gopatiṃ viśvaḥ āha ā naḥ Indrah sumatiṃ gantu achha |* 5. *Arṇāmsi chit paprathānā Sudāse Indro gādhāni*

⁹⁷ Whatever may be the sense of verses 11 and 13, the Nirukta states plainly enough v. 13; *Tasyāḥ darśanād Mitrā-varuṇayoḥ retas' chaskanda | tad-abhivādiny eshū rig bhavati |* “On seeing her (Urvasī) the seed of Mitra and Varuṇa fell from them. To this the following verse (R.V. vii. 33, 11) refers.” And Sāyaṇa on the same verse quotes a passage from the Bṛihaddevatā: *Tayor ādityayoḥ sattre drishṭvā 'parasam Urvasīm | retas' chaskanda tat kumbhe nyopatat vāsativare | tenaiva tu muhūrttena vīryavantau tapasvinau | Agastyas' cha Vasishṭhas' cha tatararshī sambabhūvatuḥ | bahudhū patitāṃ retāḥ kalāse cha jale sthale | sthale Vasishṭhas tu muniḥ sambabhūvārshi-sattamaḥ | kumbhe tv Agastyas' sambhūto jale matsyo mahādīyutiḥ | udiyāya tato 'gastyo śamyū-mītro mahūtupāḥ | mūnena sammīto yasmāt tasmād Mūnyas' ihochyate | yadvā kumbhād rishir jātāḥ kumbhenūpi hi mīyate | kumbhaḥ ity abhidhānam cha parimāṇasya lakshyate | tato 'psu grihyamūnāsu Vasishṭhaḥ pushkare sthitāḥ | sarvataḥ pushkare tān hi viśve devāḥ adharayan |* “When these two Adityas (Mitra and Varuṇa) beheld the Apsaras Urvasī at a sacrifice their seed fell from them into the sacrificial jar called *vāsativara*. At that very moment the two energetic and austere rishis Agastya and Vasishṭha were produced there. The seed fell on many places, into the jar, into water, and on the ground. The muni Vasishṭha, most excellent of rishis, was produced on the ground; while Agastya was born in the jar, a fish of great lustre. The austere Agastya sprang thence of the size of a *śamyū* (i.e. the pin of a yoke; see Wilson, s.v., and Professor Roth, s.v. *māna*). Since he was measured by a certain standard (*māna*) he is called the ‘measurable’ (*mūnya*). Or, the rishi, having sprung from a jar (*kumbha*), is also measured by a jar, as the word *kumbha* is also designated as the name of a measure. Then when the waters were taken, Vasishṭha remained in the vessel (*pushkara*); for all the gods held him in it on all sides.” In his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 64, Prof. Roth speaks of the verses of the hymn which relate to Vasishṭha's origin as being a more modern addition to an older composition, and as describing the miraculous birth of the sage in the taste and style of the Epic mythology. Professor Max Müller (Oxford Essays for 1866, pp. 61 f.) says that Vasishṭha is a name of the Sun; and that the ancient poet is also “called the son of Mitra and Varuṇa, night and day, an expression which has a meaning only in regard to Vasishṭha, the sun; and as the sun is frequently called the offspring of the dawn, Vasishṭha, the poet, is said to owe his birth to Urvasī” (whom Müller identifies with Ushas). For M. Langlois's view of the passage, see his French version of the R.V. vol. iii. pp. 79 f. and his note, p. 234.

⁹⁸ See Roth's Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, pp. 87 ff. where it is translated into German.

akṛinot supūrū | 21. *Pra ye grihād amamadus tvāyā Parāśaraḥ Satayātur Vasishṭhaḥ* | *na te bhojasya sakhyam mṛishanta adha sūribhyaḥ sudinā vi uchhān* | 22. *Dve naptur Devavataḥ śate gor dvā rathā vadhūmantā Sudāsaḥ* | *arhann Agne Paijavanasya dānam hotera sadma pari emi rebhan* | 23. *Chatvāro mā Paijavanasya dānāḥ smad-dishṭayaḥ kṛīṣanino nireke* | *ṛijrāso mā pṛithivishṭhāḥ Sudāsas tokān tokāya śravase vahanti* | 24. *Yasya śravo rodasī antar urrī śirshne śirshne vibabhūja vibhaktā* | *sapta id Indraṁ na sravato grīnanti ni Yudhyāmadhim aśīśād abhike* | *imaṁ naro Marutaḥ saśchatānu Divo-dāsaṁ na pitaraṁ Sudāsaḥ* | *avishṭana Paijavanasya ketān dūnāsaṁ kshatram ajaraṁ duroyu* |

"4. Seeking to milk thee (Indra), like a cow in a rich meadow, Vasishṭha sent forth his prayers to thee; for every one tells me that thou art a lord of cows; may Indra come to our hymn. 5. However the waters swelled, Indra made them shallow and fordable to Sudās. 21. Parāśara,⁹⁹ Satayātu, and Vasishṭha, devoted to thee, who from indifference have left their home, have not forgotten the friendship of thee the bountiful;—therefore let prosperous days dawn for these sages. 22. Earning two hundred cows and two chariots with mares, the gift of Sudās the son of Pijavana, and grandson of Devavat,¹⁰⁰ I walk round the house, o Agni, uttering praises, like a hotṛi priest. 23. The four brown steeds, bestowed by Sudās the son of Pijavana, vigorous, decked with pearls, standing on the ground, carry me on securely to renown from generation to generation. 24. That donor, whose fame pervades both worlds, has distributed gifts to every person. They praise him as the seven rivers¹⁰¹ praise Indra; he has slain Yudhyāmadhi in battle. 25. Befriend him (Sudās), ye heroic Maruts, as

⁹⁹ *Parāśara* is said in Nir. vi. 30, which refers to this passage, to have been a son of Vasishṭha born in his old age (*Parāśaraḥ parūśirṇasya Vasishṭhasya sthuvirasya jajñe*); or he was a son of Śakti and grandson of Vasishṭha (Roth s.v.)

¹⁰⁰ *Devavat* is said by Sāyana to be a proper name. He may be the same as Divodāsa in verse 25. Or Divodāsa may be the father, and Pijavana and Devavat among the forefathers of Sudās. In the Viṣṇu Purāṇa Sarvakāma is said to have been the father and Rītuparna the grandfather of Sudāsa, Wilson's V.P. 4to. ed. p. 380. At p 454 f. a Sudāsa is mentioned who was son of Chyavana, grandson of Mitrayu and great-grandson of Divodāsa.

¹⁰¹ Professor Roth (Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 100) compares R.V. i. 102, 2, *asya śravo nadyaḥ sapta bibhrati*, "the seven rivers exalt his (Indra's) renown." These rivers are, as Roth explains, the streams freed by Indra from Vritra's power.

ye did Divodāsa the (fore)father of Sudās; fulfil the desire of the son of Pijavana (by granting him) imperishable, undecaying power, worthy of reverence (?)."

Although the Vasishthas are not named in the next hymn, it must refer to the same persons and circumstances as are alluded to in the first portion of R.V. vii. 33, quoted above.

R.V. vii. 83, 1. *Yuvām narā paśyamānāsaḥ āpyam prāchū gavyantaḥ prithu-parśavo yayuḥ | dāsā cha vṛittrā hatam āryāni cha Sudāsam Indrā-varuṇā 'vasā 'vatam |* 2. *Yatra naraḥ samayante kṛita-dhvaḥ yasminn ājā bhavati kinchana priyam | yatra bhayante bhuvanā svar-dṛṣṭas tatra naḥ Indrā-varuṇā 'dhi vohatam |* 3. *Sam bhūmyāḥ antāḥ dhvasirāḥ adṛikshata Indrā-varuṇā divi ghoshāḥ āruhat | asthur janānām upa mām arātayo arvāg avasā harana-śrutā āgatam |* 4. *Indrā-varuṇā vadhanūbhir aprati Bhedaṁ vancantū pra Sudāsam āvatam | brahmāni eshām śrinutaṁ havīmani satyā Tritsūnām abhavat purohitiḥ |* 5. *Indrā-varuṇāv abhi ā tapanti mā aghāni aryo vanushām arātayaḥ | yuvām hi vasvaḥ ubhayasya rājatho adha sma no avatam pārye divi |* 6. *Yuvām havante ubhayāsaḥ ājishu Indram cha vasvo Varuṇam cha sātaye | yatra rājabhir daśabhir nibādhitam pra Sudāsam āvataṁ Tritsubhiḥ saha |* 7. *Daśa rājūnaḥ samitāḥ ayajyavaḥ Sudāsam Indrā-varuṇā na yuyudhuḥ | satyā nṛiṇām adma-sadām upastutir devāḥ eshām abhavan deva-hūtishu |* 8. *Dāśarājne pariyattūya viśrataḥ Sudāse Indra-varuṇāv asikshatam | śvityancho yatra namasā kaparddino dhiyā dhivanto asapanta Tritsavaḥ |*

"Looking to you, o heroes, to your friendship, the men with broad axes advanced to fight. Slay our Dāsa and our Arya enemies, and deliver Sudās by your succour, o Indra and Varuṇa. 2. In the battle where men clash with elevated banners, where something which we desire¹⁰² is to be found, where all beings and creatures tremble, there, o Indra and Varuṇa, take our part. 3. The ends of the earth were seen to be darkened, o Indra and Varuṇa, a shout ascended to the sky; the foes of my warriors came close up to me; come hither with your help, ye hearers of our invocations. 4. Indra and Varuṇa, unequalled with your weapons, ye have slain Bheda, and delivered Sudās; ye heard the prayers of these men in their invocation; the priestly agency

¹⁰² Sūyana divides the *kinchana* of the Pada-text into *kincha na*, which gives the sense "where nothing is desired, but everything is difficult."

of the Tritsus¹⁰³ was efficacious. 5. O Indra and Varuṇa, the injurious acts of the enemy, the hostilities of the murderous, afflict me on every side. Ye are lords of the resources of both worlds: protect us therefore (where ye live) in the remotest heavens. 6. Both parties¹⁰⁴ invoke you, both Indra and Varuṇa, in the battles, in order that ye may bestow riches. (They did so in the fight) in which ye delivered Sudās—when harassed by the ten kings—together with the Tritsus. 7. The ten kings, who were no sacrificers, united, did not vanquish Sudās, o Indra and Varuṇa. The praises of the men who officiated at the sacrifice were effectual; the gods were present at their invocations. 8. Ye, o Indra and Varuṇa, granted succour to Sudās, hemmed in on every side in the battle of the ten kings,¹⁰⁵ where the white-robed Tritsus,¹⁰⁶ with hair-knots, reverentially praying, adored you with a hymn."

From these hymns it appears that Vasishṭha, or a Vasishṭha and his family were the priests of king Sudās (vii. 18, 4 f., 21 ff.; vii. 33, 3 f.); that, in their own opinion, these priests were the objects of Indra's preference (vii. 33, 2), and had by the efficacy of their intercessions been the instruments of the victory gained by Sudās over his enemies in the battle of the ten kings. It seems also to result from some of the verses (vii. 33, 6; vii. 83, 4, 6; and vii. 33, 1, compared with vii. 83, 8) that both the king and the priests belonged to the tribe of the Tritsus.¹⁰⁷ Professor Roth remarks that in none of the hymns which

¹⁰³ Compare verses 7 and 8. Sāyana, however, translates the clause differently: "The act of the Tritsus for whom I sacrificed, and who put me forward as their priest, was effectual: my priestly function on their behalf was successful" (*Tritsūnām etat-sañjñānām mama yūjyānām purohītān mama purodhānam satyū satya-phalam abhacat | teshu yad mama paurohityaṁ tat saphalam jitam* |

¹⁰⁴ According to Sāyana the two parties were Sudās and the Tritsus his allies (*ubhaya-vidhāḥ Sudāḥ-sañjño rājā tat-sahūya-bhūtās Tritsaras cha evaṁ devī-prakārūḥ janūḥ*). It might have been supposed that one of the parties meant was the hostile kings; but they are said in the next verse to be *ayajyarah*, "persons who did not sacrifice to the gods."

¹⁰⁵ *Dūśarūje*. This word is explained by Sāyana in his note on vii. 33, 3, *dada-bhī rūjabhiḥ saha yuddhe praeritte*, "battle having been joined with ten kings." In the verse before us he says "the lengthening of the first syllable is a Vedic peculiarity, and that the case-ending is altered, and that the word merely means 'by the ten kings'" (*dada-śabdasya chhūndaso dīrghaḥ | vibhakti-vyatyayah | dāśabhi rūjabhiḥ . . . pariveshītāya*).

¹⁰⁶ Here Sāyana says the Tritsus are "the priests so called who were Vasishṭha's disciples" (*Tritsavo Vasishṭha-śishyāḥ etat-sañjñāḥ ritvijāḥ*).

¹⁰⁷ See Roth, *Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda*, p. 120.

he quotes is any allusion made to the Vasishthas being members of any particular caste; but that their connection with Sudās is ascribed to their knowledge of the gods, and their unequalled power of invocation (vii. 33, 7 f.).

In the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, viii. 21, we have another testimony to the connection of Vasishtha with Sudās, as he is there stated to have "consecrated Sudās son of Pijavana by a great inauguration similar to Indra's";¹⁰⁸ in consequence of which Sudās went round the earth in every direction conquering, and performed an *aśvamedha* sacrifice" (*etena ha vai aindreṇa mahābhishekena Vasishthah Sudāsam Pijavanam abhishecha | tasmād u Sudāḥ Pijavanah samantaṁ survataḥ prithivīm jayan pariyāya āsvena cha medhyena ije*).

The following passages refer to Vasishtha having received a revelation from the god Varuṇa, or to his being the object of that god's special favour:

vii. 87, 4. *Uvācha me Varuṇo medhirāya triḥ sapta nāma aghnyā bibhartti | vidvān padasya guhyā na rochad yugāya vipraḥ uparaya śikshan |*

"Varuṇa has declared to me¹⁰⁹ who am intelligent, 'The Cow'¹¹⁰ possesses thrice seven names. The wise god, though he knows them, has not revealed the mysteries of (her) place, which he desires to grant to a future generation."

B.V. vii. 88, 3. *Ā yad ruhāva Varuṇas cha nāvam pra yat samudram irayāva madhyam | adhi yad apām snubhis charāva pra pra inkhe inkha-gyāvai śubhe kam | 4. Vasishtham ha Varuṇo nāvi ā adhūd ṛishiṁ chakāra svapāḥ mahobhiḥ | stotāraṁ vipraḥ sudinatve ahnām yād nu dyāvas tatanan yād ushasaḥ | 5. Kva tyāni nau sakhyā babbhūvūḥ sachāvahe yad*

¹⁰⁸ Colebrooke's Misc. Essays, i. 40.

¹⁰⁹ Vasishtha is not named in this hymn, but he is its traditional author.

¹¹⁰ Sāyana says that either (1) Vāch is here meant under the figure of a cow having the names of 21 metres, the Gūyatrī, etc., attached to her breast, throat, and head, or (2) that Vāch in the form of the Veda holds the names of 21 sacrifices; but that (3) another authority says the earth is meant, which (in the Nighaṇṭu, i. 1) has 21 names, *go*, *gmū*, *jmā*, etc. (*Vāg atra gaur uchyate | sū cha urasi kaṇṭhe śirasi cha baddhāni gūyātry-ādīni sapta chhandasām nāmāni bibhartti | yadvā vedātmikā vāg ekaviṁśati-sāṁsthānām yajñnām nāmāni bibhartti | dhārayati | aparāḥ āha "gaur prithivī | tasyās cha 'gaur gmū jmā' iti paṭhitāny ekaviṁśati-nāmāni" iti*). I have, in translating the second clause of the verse, followed for the most part a rendering suggested by Professor Aufrecht.

*acṛīkam purā chit | bṛīhantam mānam Varuṇa svadhārāḥ sahasra-dvārāṇ
jagama gṛīhāṇ te | 6. Yaḥ āpir nityo Varuṇa priyaḥ san trām āgūṃsi
krīṇavat sakḥā te | mā te enasvanto yakshin bhujema yandhi sma viprah
stuvate varūtham |*

“When Varuṇa and I embark on the boat, when we propel it into the midst of the ocean, when we advance over the surface of the waters, may we rock upon the undulating element till we become brilliant. 4. Varuṇa took Vasishṭha into the boat; by his mighty acts working skilfully he (Varuṇa) has made him a rishi; the wise (god has made) him an utterer of praises in an auspicious time, that his days and dawns may be prolonged.”¹¹¹ 5. Where are (now) our friendships, the tranquillity which we enjoyed of old? We have come, o self-sustaining Varuṇa, to thy vast abode, to thy house with a thousand gates. 6. Whatever friend of thine, being a kinsman constant and beloved, may commit offences against thee;—may we not, though sinful, suffer (punishment), o adorable being; do thou, o wise god, grant us protection.”

R.V. vii. 86 is a sort of penitential hymn in which Vasishṭha refers to the anger of Varuṇa against his old friend (verse 4) and entreats forgiveness of his offences. This hymn, which appears to be an earnest and genuine effusion of natural feeling, is translated in Professor Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 540.

The passage which follows is part of a long hymn, consisting chiefly of imprecations directed against Rākshāses and Yātudhānas, and said in the *Bṛihaddevatā* (as quoted by Sāyaṇa in his introductory remarks) to have “been ‘seen’ by the rishi (Vasishṭha) when he was overwhelmed with grief and anger for the loss of his hundred sons who had been slain by the sons of Sudās” (*rishir dadarśa raksho-ghnam puttra-śoka-pariplutāḥ | hate puttra-śate kruddhāḥ Saudāsair duḥkḥitas tadā*). I shall cite only the verses in which Vasishṭha repels the imputation (by whomsoever it may have been made) that he was a demon (Rakshas or Yātudhana).

R.V. vii. 104, 12. *Suvijnānaṁ ohikitushe janāya sach cha asach cha vachasī paspridhāte | taylor yat satyaṁ yatarad rījīyas tad it Somo arati hanti asat | 13. Na vai u Somo vṛjīnaṁ hinoti na kshattriyaṁ mithuyā*

¹¹¹ Professor Aufrecht renders the last clause, “As long as days and dawns shall continue.”

dhārayantam | hanti raksho hanti asad vadantam ubhāv Indrasya prasitau śayāte | 14. Yadi vā aham anṛita-devaḥ āsa moghaṁ vā devān api ūhe Agne | kim asmabhyāṁ Jātavedo hrīṇīshe droghavāchas te nīrṛitāṁ sachantām | 15. Adya murīya yadi yātudhāno asmi yadi vā āyus tatapa pūrushasya | adha sa vīrair daśabhir vi yuyāḥ yo mā moghaṁ "Yātudhāna" ity āha | 16. Yo mā ayātuṁ "yātudhāna" ity āha yo vā rakshāḥ "śuchir asmi" ity āha | Indras taṁ hantu mahatā vadhena viśvasya jantor adkamas padīṣṭa |

"The intelligent man is well able to discriminate (when) true and false words contend together. Soma favours that one of them which is true and right, and annihilates falsehood. 13. Soma does not prosper the wicked, nor the man who wields power unjustly. He slays the Rakshas; he slays the liar: they both lie (bound) in the fetters of Indra. 14. If I were either a follower of false gods, or if I erroneously conceived of the gods, o Agni:—Why, o Jātavedas, art thou incensed against us? Let injurious speakers fall into thy destruction. 15. May I die this very day, if I be a Yātudhāna, or if I have destroyed any man's life. May he be severed from his ten sons who falsely says to me, 'o Yātudhāna.' 16. He who says to me, who am no Yātu, 'o Yātudhāna,' or who (being himself) a Rakshas, says, 'I am pure,'—may Indra smite him with his great weapon; may he sink down the lowest of all creatures.

In elucidation of this passage Sāyaṇa quotes the following lines: *Hatvā puttra-śatam pūrvam Vasishṭhasya mahātmanaḥ | Vasishṭhaṁ "rākshaso 'si tvam" Vāsishṭhaṁ rūpam āsthitaḥ | "aham Vasishṭhaḥ" ity evaṁ jighāmsuḥ rākshaso 'bravīt | atrottarāḥ rīcho dṛishṭāḥ Vasishṭheneti naḥ śrutam |*

"Having slain the hundred sons of the great Vasishṭha, a murderous Rākshasa, assuming the form of that rishi, formerly said to him, 'Thou art a Rākshasa, and I am Vasishṭha.' In allusion to this the latter verses were seen by Vasishṭha, as we have heard."

We may, however, safely dismiss this explanation resting on fabulous grounds.

The verses may, as Professor Max Müller supposes,¹¹² have arisen out

¹¹² "Vasishṭha himself, the very type of the Arian Brahman, when in feud with Viśvāmitra, is called not only an enemy, but a 'Yātudhāna,' and other names which in common parlance are only bestowed on barbarian savages and evil spirits. We

of Vasishṭha's contest with Viśvāmitra, and it may have been the latter personage who brought these charges of heresy, and of murderous and demoniacal character against his rival.¹¹³

Allusion is made both in the Taittirīya Sanhitā and in the Kaushītakī Brāhmaṇa to the slaughter of a son of Vasishṭha by the sons or descendants of Sudās. The former work states, *Ashtaka vii.* (p. 47 of the India Office MS. No. 1702):

Vasishṭho hataputro 'kūmayata "vindeya prajāṃ abhi Saudāsān bhavedyam" iti | sa etam ekasmānnapanchāśam apaśyat tam āharat tenāyajata | tato vai so 'vindata prajāṃ abhi Saudāsān abhavat |

"Vasishṭha, when his son had been slain, desired, 'May I obtain offspring; may I overcome the Saudāsas.' He beheld this *ekasmānnapanchāśa* (?), he took it, and sacrificed with it. In consequence he obtained offspring, and overcame the Saudāsas." *See also p. 48*

The passage of the Kaushītakī Brāhmaṇa, 4th adhyāya, as quoted by Professor Weber (*Ind. St. ii.* 299) is very similar:

Vasishṭho 'kūmayata hata-putraḥ "prajāyeya prajāyā paśubhir abhi Saudāsān bhavedyam" iti | sa etam yajna-kratum apaśyad Vasishṭhaya-jnam tena ishṭvā abhi Saudāsān abhavat |

"Vasishṭha, when his son had been slain, desired, 'May I be fruitful in offspring and cattle, and overcome the Saudāsas.' He beheld this form of offering, the Vasishṭha-sacrifice; and having performed it, he overcame the Saudāsas."

In his introduction to Rig-veda, vii. 32, Sāyaṇa has the following notice from the Anukramanikā:

"Saudāsair agnau prakshipyamāṇaḥ Saktir antyam pragātham ālebhe so 'rdharche ukte 'dahyata | tam putroktāṃ Vasishṭhaḥ samāpayata" iti Sāṭyāyanakam | "Vasishṭhasya eva hata-putrasya ārsham" iti Tāṇḍakam |

"The Sāṭyayana Brāhmaṇa says that 'Sakti (son of Vasishṭha), when being thrown into the fire by the Saudāsas, received (by inspiration) the concluding pragātha of the hymn. He was burnt after he had spoken half a *ṛch*; and Vasishṭha completed what his son was

have still the very hymn in which Vasishṭha deprecates such charges with powerful indignation." Prof. Müller then quotes verses 14-16 of the hymn before us ("Last Results of the Turanian Researches," in Bunsen's "Outlines of the Philosophy of Univ. History," i. 344.

¹¹³ See my article "On the relations of the priests to the other classes of Indian society in the Vedic age," in the *Journal Roy. As. Soc.* for 1866, pp. 295 ff.

uttering. The Tāṇḍaka says that 'it was Vasishṭha himself who spoke the whole when his son was slain.'

The words supposed to have been spoken by Sakti, viz. "O Indra, grant to us strength as a father to his sons" (*Indra kratuṁ naḥ ā bhara pitā putrebhyo yathā*) do not seem to be appropriate to the situation in which he is said to have been placed; and nothing in the hymn appears to allude to any circumstances of the kind imagined in the two Brāhmaṇas.

Manu says of Vasishṭha (viii. 110): *Maharshibhiḥ cha devaiḥ cha karyyārthaṁ śapathāḥ kritāḥ | Vasishṭhaś cāpi śapathaṁ śepe Paiyavane nṛipe* | "Great rishis and gods too have taken oaths for particular objects. Vasishṭha also swore an oath to king Paiyavana." The occasion on which this was done is stated by the Commentator Kullūka: *Vasishṭho 'py anena puttra-śatam bhakshitam iti Viśvāmitreṇa ākrushṭo sva-pariśuddhaye Piyavanāpatye Sudāmnī rājani śapathaṁ chakāra* |

"Vasishṭha being angrily accused by Viśvāmitra of having eaten (his) hundred sons, took an oath before king Sudāman (Sudās, no doubt, is meant) the son of Piyavana in order to clear himself." This seems to refer to the same story which is alluded to in the passage quoted by the Commentator on Rig-veda vii. 104, 12, *śatāni bhakṣitāni* |

In the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 55, 5 f., a hundred sons of Viśvāmitra are said to have been burnt up by the blast of Vasishṭha's mouth when they rushed upon him armed with various weapons (*Viśvāmitra-sutānām tu śatāṁ nānā-vidhāyudham | abhyadhāvat susankruddhāṁ Vasishṭham japatām varam | hunkareṇaiva tū sarvān nirdadāha mahān ṛṣiḥ*).

Vasishṭha is also mentioned in Rig-veda, i. 112, 9, as having received succour from the Āśvins (—*Vasishṭhāṁ yābhīr ajarāv ajinvatam*).

Vasishṭha, or the Vasishṭhas, are also referred to by name in the following verses of the seventh Mandala of the Rig-veda: 7, 7; 9, 6; 12, 3; 23, 1, 6; 26, 5; 37, 4; 39, 7; 42, 6; 59, 3; 70, 6; 73, 3; 76, 6, 7; 77, 6; 80, 1; 90, 7; 95, 6; 96, 1, 3; but as no information is derivable from these texts, except that the persons alluded to were the authors or reciters of the hymns, it is needless to quote them.¹¹⁴

¹¹⁴ Another verse of a hymn in which the author is not referred to (vii. 72, 2) is as follows: *Ā no devebhīr upa yātām arvāk saṁjoshashā nūsatyā rathena | yuvor āi naḥ sakhyā pitryāni samāno bandhur uta tasya vittam* | "Come near to us, Āśvins, on the same car with the gods: for we have ancestral friendships with you, a common relation; do ye recognize it." Although this has probably no mythological

In the Atharva-veda, iv. 29, 3 and 5, Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra are mentioned among other personages, Angiras, Agasti, Jamadagni, Atri, Kaśyapa, Bharadvāja, Gavishṭhira, and Kutsa, as being succoured by Mitra and Varuṇa (. . . *yāv Angirasam avatho yāv Agastim Mitrā-Varuṇā Jamadagnim Atrim | yau Kaśyapam avatho yau Vasishṭham . . . yau Bharadvājam avatho yau Gavishṭhiraṁ Viśvāmitraṁ Varuṇa Mitra Kutsam*). And in the same Veda, xviii. 3, 15 f., they are invoked as deliverers: *Viśvāmitro 'yaṁ Jamadagnir Atrir avantu naḥ Kaśyapo Vāmaderah | Viśvāmitra Jamadagne Vasishṭha Bharadvāja Gotama Vāmadeva . . .* | "15. May this Viśvāmitra, may Jamadagni, Atri, Kaśyapa, Vāmadeva preserve us. 16. O Viśvāmitra, o Jamadagni, o Vasishṭha, o Bharadvāja, o Gotama, o Vāmadeva." The second passage at least must be a good deal more recent than the most of the hymns of the Rig-veda.

Sudās is mentioned in other parts of the Rig-veda without any reference either to Vasishṭha or to Viśvāmitra. In some cases his name is coupled with that of other kings or sages, which appears to shew that in some of these passages at least a person, and not a mere epithet, "the liberal man," is denoted by the word Sudās.

R.V. i. 47, 6. (The traditional rishi is Praskaṇva.) *Sudāse dasrā vasu bibhratū rathe priksho vahatam Aśvinā | rayiṁ samudrād uta vā divas pari asme dhattam puru-spriham |*

"O impetuous Aśvins, possessing wealth in your car, bring sustenance to Sudās. Send to us from the (aerial) ocean, or the sky, the riches which are much coveted."

Sāyana says the person here meant is "king Sudās, son of Pijavana" (*Sudāse . . . rājne Pijavana-puttrāya*).

i. 63, 7. (The rishi is Nodhas, of the family of Gotama.) *Traṁ ha tyad Indra sapta yudhyan puro vajrin Purukutsāya dardah | barhir na yat Sudāse vṛithā varḡ anho rājan varivaḥ Pūrave kaḥ |*

"Thou didst then, o thundering Indra, war against, and shatter, the seven cities for Purukutsa, when thou, o king, didst without effort hurl

reference, Sāyana explains it as follows: *Vivasvān Varuṇas cha ubhāv api Kaiśyapād Aditer jūtau | Vivasvān Aśvinor janako Varuṇo Vasishṭhasya ity evam samāna-bandhutvam* | "Vivasvat and Varuṇa were both sons of Kaśyapa and Aditi. Vivasvat was the father of the Aśvins and Varuṇa of Vasishṭha; such is the affinity." Sāyana then quotes the Bṛhaddevatā to prove the descent of the Aśvins from Vivasvat. Compare R.V. x. 17, 1, 2, and Nirukta, xii. 10, 11.

away distress from Sudās like a bunch of grass, and bestow wealth on Pūru.¹¹⁵

i. 112, 19. (The rishi is Kutsa.) . . . *yābhir Sudāse ūhathuḥ sude-
ryaṁ tābhir u shu ūtibhir Aśvinā gatam* |

"Come, o Aśvins, with those succours whereby ye brought glorious power to Sudās" ['son of Pijavana'—Sāyana].¹¹⁶

The further texts which follow are all from the seventh Mandala, of which the rishis, with scarcely any exception, are said to be Vasishṭha and his descendants:

vii. 19, 3. *Tvaṁ dhṛishṇo dhṛishatū vītahavyam prāto viśvābhir ūtibhiḥ
Sudāsam | pra Paurukutsiṁ Trasadasyum āvaḥ kshettrasātū vṛittrahat-
yeshu Pūrum* |

"Thou, o fierce Indra, hast impetuously protected Sudās, who offered oblations, with every kind of succour. Thou hast preserved Trasadasyu the son of Purukutsa, and Pūru in his conquest of land and in his slaughter of enemies."

vii. 20, 2. *Ḥantā Vṛittram Indrah śuśuvānaḥ prāvid nu viro jari-
tāram uti | karttā Sudāse aha vai u lokāṁ dātā vasu muhur u dāsushe bhūt* |

"Indra growing in force slays Vṛitra; the hero protects him who praises him; he makes room for Sudās [or the liberal sacrificer—*kal-yāna-dānāya yajamānāya*. Sāyana]; he gives riches repeatedly to his worshipper."

vii. 25, 3. *Sataṁ te śiprinn ūtayaḥ Sudāse sahasraṁ saṁsāḥ uta
rātir astu | jahi vadhar vanusho marttyasya asme dyumnam adhi ratnaṁ
cha dhehi* |

"Let a hundred succours come to Sudās, a thousand desirable (gifts) and prosperity. Destroy the weapon of the murderous. Confer renown and wealth on us."

(Sāyana takes *sudās* here and in all the following citations to signify a "liberal man.")

¹¹⁵ Professor Roth renders this passage differently in his *Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda*, p. 132; as does also Prof. Benfey, *Orient und Occident*, i. p. 590.

¹¹⁶ In R.V. i. 185, 9, we find the word *sudās* in the comparative degree *sudāstara*, where it must have the sense of "very liberal": *bhūri chid aryah sudāstarāya* | "(give the wealth) of my enemy, though it be abundant to (me who am) most liberal." In v. 53, 2, the term *sudās* appears to be an adjective: *ā etān ratheṣu tathushaḥ kaḥ śūrūva kathū yayuḥ | kasmai saśruḥ sudāse anu āpayah ilābhir vṛishṭayah saha* | "Who has heard them (the Maruts) mounted on their cars, how they have gone? To what liberal man have they resorted as friends, (in the form of) showers with

vii. 32. 10. *Nakiḥ Sudāso ratham pari āsa na rīramat | Indro yasy avitā yasya Maruto gamat sa gomati vraje |*

“No one can oppose or stop the chariot of Sudās. He whom Indra, whom the Maruts, protect, walks in a pasture filled with cattle.”

vii. 53, 3: *Uto hi vañ ratnadheyāni santi purūṇi dyāvā - prithivī Sudāse |*

“And ye, o Heaven and Earth, have many gifts of wealth for Sudā. [or the liberal man].”

vii. 60, 8. *Yad gopūvad Aditiḥ śarma bhādrām Mitro yachhanti Varuṇaḥ Sudāse | tasminn ā tokañ tanayañ dadhānāḥ mā karma deva-helānañ turāsaḥ | 9. . . . pari dvēshobhir Aryamā vṛṇaktu uruñ Sudāse vṛṣhanau u lokam |*

“Since Aditi, Mitra, and Varuṇa afford secure protection to Sūdā. (or the liberal man), bestowing on him offspring;—may we not, o mighty deities, commit any offence against the gods. 9. . . . May Aryaman rid us of our enemies. (Grant) ye vigorous gods, a wide space to Sudās.”

There is another passage, vii. 64, 3 (*bravād yathā naḥ ād ariḥ Sudāse*), to which I find it difficult to assign the proper sense.

Vasishṭha is referred to in the following passages of the Brāhmaṇas:

Kāthaka 37, 17.¹¹⁷ *Rishayo vai Indram pratyakshañ na apaśyañs tañ Vasishṭhaḥ eva pratyasham apaśyat | so 'bibhet "itarebhyo mā rishibhyaḥ pravakshyati" iti*¹¹⁸ | so 'bravīd “brāhmaṇaṁ te vakshyāmi yathā tvat-purohitāḥ prajāḥ prajanishyante | atha mā itarebhyah rishibhyo mā pravočaḥ” iti | tasmai etān stoma-bhāgān abravīt tato Vasishṭha-purohitāḥ prajāḥ prajāyanta |

“The rishis did not behold Indra face to face; it was only Vasishṭha who so beheld him. He (Indra) was afraid lest Vasishṭha should reveal him to the other rishis; and said to him, ‘I shall declare to thee a Brāhmaṇa in order that men may be born who shall take thee for their purohita. Do not reveal me to the other rishis.’ Accordingly he declared to

¹¹⁷ Quoted by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, iii. 478.

¹¹⁸ The words from *so 'bibhet* down to *iti* are omitted in the Taitt. Saṁhitā, iii. 5, 2, 2, where this passage is also found. Weber refers in *Ind. St.* ii. to another part of the Kāthaka, ii. 9, where Vasishṭha is alluded to as having “seen” a text beginning with the word *purovāta* during a time of drought (“*Purovāta*” *iti vṛishṭy-apeṣa bhūta-grāme Vasishṭho dadarśa*). .

him these parts of the hymn. In consequence men were born who took Vasishṭha for their purohita."

Professor Weber refers in the same place to a passage of the Sātapatha Brāhmaṇa relating to the former superiority of Vasishṭha's family in sacred knowledge and priestly functions :

xii. 6, 1, 38. *Vasishṭho ha virājam vidānchakāra tām ha Indro 'bhīda-dhyau | sa ha uvācha "ṛishe virājam ha vai vettha tām me brūhi" iti | sa ha uvācha "kim mama tataḥ syād" iti | "sarvasya cha te yajnasya prāyaścittim brūyāṁ rūpaṁ cha tvā darśayeya" iti | sa ha uvācha "yad nu me sarvasya yajnasya prāyaścittim brūyāḥ kim u sa syād yaṁ tvaṁ rūpaṁ darśayethāḥ" iti | jīva-svarga eva asmāl lokāt preyād" iti | tato ha etām ṛishir Indrāya virājam uvācha "iyaṁ vai virāḍ" iti | tasmād yo 'syai bhūyishṭhaṁ labhate sa eva śreshṭho bhavati | atha ha etām Indrah ṛishaye prāyaścittim uvācha agnihotrād agre ā mahataḥ ukthāt | tāḥ ha sma etāḥ purā ryāḥritīr Vasishṭhāḥ eva viduḥ | tasmād ha sma purā Vasishṭhāḥ eva brahmā bhavati |*

"Vasishṭha was acquainted with the Virāj (a particular Vedic metre). Indra desired it; and said, 'O rishi, thou knowest the Virāj: declare it to me.' Vasishṭha asked: 'What (advantage) will result to me from doing so?' (Indra replied) 'I shall both explain to thee the forms for rectifying anything amiss (*prāyaścitti*)¹¹⁹ in the entire sacrifice, and show thee its form.' Vasishṭha further enquired, 'If thou declarest to me the remedial rites for the entire sacrifice, what shall he become to whom thou wilt show the form?' (Indra answered) 'He shall ascend from this world to the heaven of life.' The rishi then declared this Virāj to Indra, saying, 'this is the Virāj.' Wherefore it is he who obtains the most of this (Virāj) that becomes the most eminent. Then Indra explained to the rishi this remedial formula, from the *agnihotra* to the great *uktha*. Formerly the Vasishṭhas alone knew these sacred syllables (*ryāḥriti*). Hence in former times a Vasishṭha only was a (priest of the kind called) *brāhmān*."

Professor Weber quotes also the following from the Kāṭhaka 32, 2. *Yām abrahmaṇaḥ prāśnāti sā skannā āhutis tasyā vai Vasishṭhaḥ eva prāyaścittim vidānchakāra |* "The oblation of which a person not a brāhmaṇa partakes is vitiated. Vasishṭha alone knew the remedial rite for such a case."

¹¹⁹ See above, p. 294.

In the *Shāḍvīmśa Brāhmaṇa* of the *Sāma-veda*, quoted by the same writer (*Ibid.* i. 39, and described p. 37, as possessing a distinctly formed Brahmanical character indicating a not very early date), we have the following passage :

i. 5. *Indro ha Viśvāmitrāya uktham urācha Vasishṭhāya brahma rāg uktham ity eva Viśvāmitrāya mano brahma Vasishṭhāya | tad vai etad Vāsishṭham brahma | api ha evaṁvidhaṁ vā Vāsishṭhaṁ vā brahmūṇāṁ kurvīta |*

"Indra declared the *uktha* (hymn) to Viśvāmitra, and the *brāhmān* (devotion) to Vasishṭha. The *uktha* is expression (*vāk*); that (he made known) to Viśvāmitra; and the *brāhmān* is the soul; that (he made known) to Vasishṭha. Hence this *brāhmān* (devotional power) belongs to the Vasishṭhas. Moreover, let either a person of this description, or a man of the family of Vasishṭha, be appointed a *brāhmān*-priest."

Here the superiority of Vasishṭha over Viśvāmitra is clearly asserted.¹²⁰

Vasishṭha is mentioned in the *Mahābhārata*, *Santip.* verses 11221 ff., as having communicated divine knowledge to king Janaka, and as referring (see verses 11232, 11347, 11409, 11418, 11461, etc.) to the *Sāṅkhya* and *Yoga* systems. The sage is thus characterized :

11221. *Vasishṭhaṁ śreshṭham āśīnam ṛishīṇām bhāskara-dyutim | pa-prachha Janako rājā jñānaṁ naiśśreyasam param | param adhyātma-kuśalam adhātma-gati-niśchayam | Maitrāvaruṇim āśīnam abhivādya kritānjaliḥ |*

"King Janaka with joined hands saluted Vasishṭha the son of Mitra and Varuṇa, the highest and most excellent of rishis, resplendent as the sun, who was acquainted with the Supreme Spirit, who had ascertained the means of attaining to the Supreme Spirit; and asked him after that highest knowledge which leads to final beatitude."

The doctrine which the saint imparts to the king he professes to have derived from the eternal *Hiranyagarbha*, i.e. *Brahmā* (*avāptam etad hi mayā sanātānād Hiranyagarbhād gadato narādhipa*).

I have already in former parts of this volume quoted passages from *Manu*, the *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, and the *Mahābhārata*, regarding the creation

¹²⁰ Professor Weber mentions (*Ind. St.* i. 53) that in the commentary of Rāmākrishṇa on the *Pāraskara Gṛhya Sūtras* allusion is made to the "Chbandogas who follow the *Sūtras* of the Vasishṭha family" *Vasishṭha-sūtrūnuchāriṇas' chbandogāḥ*).

of Vasishṭha. The first-named work (see above, p. 36) makes him one of ten Maharshis created by Manu Svāyambhuva in the first (or Svāyambhuva) Manvantara. The Vishṇu Purāṇa (p. 65) declares him to have been one of nine mind-born sons or Brahmās created by Brahmā in the Manvantara just mentioned. The same Purāṇa, however, iii. 1, 14, makes him also one of the seven rishis of the existing or Vaivasvata Manvantara, of which the son of Vivasvat, Srāddhadeva,¹²¹ is the Manu (*Vivasvataḥ suto vipra Srāddhadevo mahādyutiḥ | Manuḥ saṁvarttate dhīmān sāmprataṁ saptame 'ntare . . . Vasishṭhaḥ Kūśyapo 'thātrir Jamadagniḥ sa-Gautamaḥ | Viśvāmitra-Āharadvājau sapta saptarshayo 'bhavan*). The Mahābhārata (see p. 122) varies in its accounts, as in one place it does not include Vasishṭha among Brahmā's six mind-born sons, whilst in a second passage it adds him to the number which is there raised to seven,¹²² and in a third text describes him as one of twenty-one Prajāpatīs.

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 10, 10, "Vasishṭha had by his wife Ūrjā" (one of the daughters of Dakṣa, and an allegorical personage, see V. P. i. 7, 18), seven sons called Rajas, Gātra, Ūrddhva-bāhu, Savana, Anagha, Sutapas, and Sukra, who were all spotless rishis" (*Ūrjāyām cha Vasishṭhasya saptāyānta vai sutāḥ | Rajo-Gātrordhhrabāhuścha Savanaś chānaghas tathā | Sutapāḥ 'Sukraḥ ity ete sarve saptarshayo 'malāḥ*). This must be understood as referring to the Svāyambhuva Manvantara. The Commentator says these sons were the seven rishis in the third Manvantara (*saptarshayas tṛtīya-manvantare*). In the description of that period the V. P. merely says, without naming them (iii. 1, 9) that "the seven sons of Vasishṭha were the seven rishis" (*Vasishṭha-tanayās tatra sapta saptarshayo 'bhavan*).¹²³ The Bhāgavata Purāṇa (iv. 1, 40 f.) gives the names of Vasishṭha's sons differently; and also specifies Śaktṛi and others as the offspring of a different marriage. (Compare Professor Wilson's notes on these passages of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.)

¹²¹ See above p. 209, note 66, and pp. 188 ff.

¹²² In another verse also (Ādip. 6638, which will be quoted below in a future section) he is said to be a mind-born son of Brahmā.

¹²³ Ūrjā, who in the Vishṇu P. iii. 1, 6, is stated to be one of the rishis of the second or Svārochisha Manvantara, is said in the Vāyu P. to be a son of Vasishṭha. See Professor Wilson's note (vol. iii. p. 3) on Vishṇu P. iii. 1, 6. The Vāyu P. also declares that one of the rishis in each of the fourth and fifth Manvantaras was a son of Vasishṭha. (See Prof. Wilson's notes (vol. iii. pp. 8 and 11) on Vishṇu P. iii. 1.)

In Manu, ix. 22 f., it is said that "a wife acquires the qualities of the husband with whom she is duly united, as a river does when blended with the ocean. 23. Akshamālā, though of the lowest origin, became honourable through her union with Vasishṭha, as did also Sārangī through her marriage with Mandapāla" (*Yādrig-guṇena bhart-trā strī saṁyujyate yathāvidhi | tādrig-guṇā sā bhavati samudreṇa nim-nagā | 23. Akshamālā Vasishṭhena saṁyuktā dhama-yoni-jā | Sārangī Mandāpalena jagāmūbhyarhaṇīyatām*).

Vasishṭha's wife receives the same name (*Vasishṭhas chākshamālayā*) in a verse of the Mahābhārata (Udyogaparvan, v. 3970);¹²⁴ but in two other passages of the same work, which will be adduced further on, she is called Arundhatī.¹²⁵

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa (ii. 10, 8) Vasishṭha is one of the superintendents who in the month of Āshāḍha abide in the Sun's chariot, the others being Varuṇa, Rambhā, Sahajanyā, Huhu, Budha, and Rathachitra (*Vasishṭho Varuṇo Rambhā Sahajanyā Huhur Budhaḥ | Rathachitras tathā S'ukre vasanty Āshāḍha-sanjñite*); whilst in the month of Phalguna (ibid. v. 16) the rival sage Viśvāmitra exercises the same function along with Vishṇu, Aśvatara, Rambhā, Sūryavarchas, Satyajit, and the Rākshasa Yajñāpeta (*śrūyatām chāpare sūrye phāl-guṇe nivasanti ye | Vishṇur Aśvataro Rambhā Sūryavarchas cha Sat-yajit | Viśvāmitras tathā raksho Yajñāpeto mahātmanah*).

At the commencement of the Vāyu Purāṇa Vasishṭha is characterized as being the most excellent of the rishis (*riṣhīnām cha varish-thāya Vasishṭhāya mahātmane*).

It is stated in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iii. 3, 9, that the Vedas have been already divided twenty-eight times in the course of the present or Vaivasvata Manvantara; and that this division has always taken place in the Dvāpara age of each system of four yugas. In the first Dvāpara Brahmā Svayambhū himself divided them; in the sixth Mṛityu (Death, or Yama); whilst in the eighth Dvāpara it was Vasishṭha who was the Vyāsa or divider (*Aṣṭāvimsatikṛitvo vai vedāḥ vyastūḥ maharshibhiḥ | Vaivasvate 'ntare tasmin dvāpareshu punaḥ punaḥ | . . . 10. Dvāpare prathamē vyastūḥ svayam vedāḥ Svayambhuvā | . . . 11. . . . Mṛityuḥ shashṭhe smṛitah prabhuḥ | . . . Vasishṭhas chāshṭame smṛitah*).

¹²⁴ Two lines below Haimavatī is mentioned as the wife of Viśvāmitra (*Haimavatī cha Kausikah*).

¹²⁵ In the St. Petersburg Lexicon *akshamālā* is taken for an epithet of Arundhatī.

was, as we have seen above, the family-priest of son of Ikshvāku, who was the son of Manu Vaivasvata, and the first prince of the solar race of kings; and in a passage of the Mahābhārata, Ādip. (6643 f.), which will be quoted in a future section, he is stated to have been the purohita of all the kings of that family. He is accordingly mentioned in Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 3, 18, as the religious teacher of Sagara, the thirty-seventh in descent from Ikshvāku (*tat-kula-guruṁ Vasishṭham śaraṇaṁ jagmuḥ*); and as conducting a sacrifice for Saudāsa or Mitrāsaha, a descendant in the fiftieth generation of the same prince (Vishṇu P. iv. 4, 25, *Kālena gachhatā sa Saudāso yajnam ayaṅjat | parinishṭhita-yajne cha āchāryye Vasishṭhe nishkrānte ityādi*).

Vasishṭha is also spoken of in the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, 1 (see above, p. 115), and elsewhere (ii. 111, 1, etc.), as the priest of Rāma, who appears from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, (iv. 4, 40, and the preceding narrative), to have been a descendant of Ikshvāku in the sixty-first generation.¹²⁶

Vasishṭha, according to all these accounts, must have been possessed of a vitality altogether superhuman; for it does not appear that any of the accounts to which I have referred intend under the name of Vasishṭha to denote merely a person belonging to the family so called, but to represent the founder of the family himself as taking part in the transactions of many successive ages.

It is clear that Vasishṭha, although, as we shall see, he is frequently designated in post-vedic writings as a Brāhman, was, according to some other authorities I have quoted, not really such in any proper sense of the word, as in the accounts which are there given of his birth he is declared to have been either a mind-born son of Brahmā, or the son of Mitra, Varuṇa, and the Apsaras Urvaśī, or to have had some other supernatural origin.

SECT. VII.—*Viśvāmitra*.

Viśvāmitra is stated in the Anukramaṇikā, as quoted by Sāyaṇa at the commencement of the third Maṇḍala of the Rig-veda, to be the rishi, or "seer," of that book of the collection: *Aśya maṇḍala-draśṭā*

¹²⁶ Rāma's genealogy is also given in the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 70, and ii. 110, 6 ff., where, however, he is said to be only the thirty-third or thirty-fourth from Ikshvāku.

Viśvāmitraḥ rishiḥ | "The rishi of this (the first hymn) was Viśvāmitra, the 'seer' of the Maṇḍala." This, however, is to be understood with some exceptions, as other persons, almost exclusively his descendants, are said to be the rishis of some of the hymns.

I shall quote such passages as refer, or are traditionally declared to refer, to Viśvāmitra or his family.

In reference to the thirty-third hymn the Nirukta states as follows :

ii. 24. *Tatra itihāsam āchakshate* | *Viśvāmitraḥ rishiḥ Sudāsaḥ Pajjavanasya purohito babhūrā . . .* | *sa vittaṁ grihītvā Vipāt-chhutudryoḥ sambhedam āyayau* | *anuyayur itare* | *sa Viśvāmitro nadīs tushṭāva* "gādhaḥ bhavata" *iti* |

"They there relate a story. The rishi Viśvāmitra was the purohita of Sudās, the son of Pijavana. (Here the etymologies of the names Viśvāmitra, Sudās, and Pijavana are given.) Taking his property, he came to the confluence of the Vipās and Sutudrī (Sutlej); others followed. Viśvāmitra lauded the rivers (praying them to) become fordable." *etc.*

Sāyaṇa expands the legend a little as follows :

Purā kila Viśvāmitraḥ Pajjavanasya Sudāso rājnaḥ purohito babhūra | *sa cha paurohityena labdha-dhanaḥ sarvaṁ dhanam ādāya Vipāt-chhutudryoḥ sambhedam āyayau* | *anuyayur itare* | *athottitīrshur Viśvāmitro* 'gādha-jale te nadyau dṛishṭvā uttaraṇārtham ādyābhis tīrībhis tushṭāva |

"Formerly Viśvāmitra was the purohita of king Sudās, the son of Pijavana. He, having obtained wealth by means of his office as purohita, took the whole of it, and came to the confluence of the Vipās and the Sutudrī. Others followed. Being then desirous to cross, but perceiving that the waters of the rivers were not fordable, Viśvāmitra, with the view of getting across lauded them with the first three verses of the hymn."

The hymn makes no allusion whatever to Sudās, but mentions the son of Kuśika (Viśvāmitra) and the Bharatas. It is not devoid of poetical beauty, and is as follows :

R.V. iii. 33, 1 (= Nirukta, ix. 39). *Pra parvatūnām usatī upasthād asve iva vishite hāsamāne* | *gāveva śubhre mātaraḥ rihāne Vipāt Chhutudrī payasā javeto* | 2. *Indreshite prasavam bhikshamāne achha samudraṁ rathyā iva yāthaḥ* | *samārāne ūrmibhiḥ pinvamāne anyā vām anyām api eti śubhre* | 3. *Achha sindhum mātritamām ayāsam Vipāsam ūrviṁ*

subhagām aganma | vatsam iva mātārā saṁrihāne samānañ yonim anu sancharantī | 4. Enā vayam payasā pinvamānā anu yoniñ deva-kṛitāñ charantīh | na varttave prasavaḥ sarga-taktaḥ kiñyur vipro nadyo johaṛīti | 5 (= Nirukta, ii. 25). Ramadhvam me vachase somyāya pītūvarīr upa muhūrttam evaiḥ | pra sindhum achha bṛihatī manishū avasyur ahve Kuśikasya sūnuḥ | 6 (= Nir. ii. 26). Indro asmān aradat vajra-bāhur apāhan Vṛitṛam paridhiñ nadīnām | devo 'nayat Savitā supāñis tasya vayam prasave yāmaḥ ūrvīh | 7. Pravūchyañ śasvadhā vīryaṁ tad Indrasya karma yad Ahiñ vivriśchat | vi vajrena parishado jaghāna āyann āpo ayanam ichhamānāḥ | 8. Etad vacho jaritar mā 'pi mṛishṭāḥ ā yat te ghoshān uttarā yugāni | uktheshu kāro prati no jushasva mā no ni kaḥ purushatra namas te | 9. O su svasārah kāraca śṛinota yayau yo dūrād anasā rathena | ni su namadhvam bhavata supūrā adhoakshaḥ sindhavaḥ srotyābhiḥ | 10 (= Nir. ii. 27). Ā te kāro śṛināvāma vachāmśi yayātha dūrād anasā rathena | ni te naṁsai pīpyānū iva yoshā maryāya iva kanyā śasvachai te | 11. Yad anga tvā Bharatāḥ santareyur garyan grāmaḥ ishitaḥ Indra-jūtaḥ | arshūd aha prasavaḥ sarga-taktaḥ ā vo vṛiṇe sumatiñ yajniyānām | 12. Atārishur Bharatāḥ garyavaḥ sam abhakta vipraḥ sumatiñ nadīnām | pra pinvadhvam ishayantīḥ surādihūḥ ā vakshañāḥ pinvadhvañ yāta śībham |

"1. (Viśvāmitra speaks): Hastening eagerly from the heart of the mountains, contending like two mares let loose, like two bright mother-cows licking¹²⁷ (each her calf), the Vipās and Sūtudrī rush onward with their waters. 2. Impelled by Indra, seeking a rapid course, ye move towards the ocean, as if mounted on a car. Running together, as ye do, swelling with your waves, the one of you joins the other, ye bright streams. 3. I have come to the most motherly stream; we have arrived at the broad and beautiful Vipās; proceeding, both of them, like two mother(-cows) licking each her calf, to a common receptacle. 4. (The rivers reply): Here swelling with our waters we move forward to the receptacle fashioned by the gods (the ocean); our headlong course cannot be arrested. What does the sage desire that he invokes the rivers? 5. (Viśvāmitra says) Stay your course for a moment, ye pure streams, (yielding) to my pleasant words.¹²⁸ With a powerful prayer, I, the son

¹²⁷ Prof. Roth (Illustr. of Nirukta, p. 133) refers to vii. 2. 5 (*pūrvī śisūñ na mātārā rihāne*) as a parallel passage.

¹²⁸ Prof. Roth (Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 103) renders: "Listen joyfully for a

of Kusika,¹²⁹ desiring succour, invoke the river. 6. (The rivers answer): Indra, the wielder of the thunderbolt, has hollowed out our channels; he has smitten Abi who hemmed in the streams. Savitri the skilful-handed has led us hither; by his impulse we flow on in our breadth. 7. For ever to be celebrated is the heroic deed of Indra, that he has split Vrittra in sunder. He smote the obstructions with his thunderbolt; and the waters desiring an outlet went on their way. 8. Do not, o utterer of praises, forget this word, which future ages will re-echo to thee. In hymns, o bard, show us thy devotion; do not humble us before men; reverence be paid to thee. 9. (Viśvāmitra says): Listen, o sisters, to the bard who has come to you from afar with waggon and chariot. Sink down; become fordable; reach not up to our chariot-axes with your streams. 10. (The rivers answer): We shall listen to thy words, o bard; thou hast come from far with waggon and chariot. I will bow down to thee like a woman with full breast¹³⁰ (suckling her child); as a maid to a man will I throw myself open to thee. 11. (Viśvāmitra says): When the Bharatas,¹³¹ that war-loving tribe, sent forward, impelled by Indra, have crossed thee, then thy headlong current shall hold on its course. I seek the favour of you the adorable. 12. The war-loving Bharatas have crossed; the Sage has obtained the favour of the rivers. Swell on impetuous, and fertilizing; fill your channels; roll rapidly."

The next quotation is from the fifty-third hymn of the same third Maṇḍala, verses 6 ff. :

6. *Apūḥ somam astam Indra pra yāhi kalyāṇīr jāyā suraṇāṃ grihe*

moment to my amiable speech, ye streams rich in water; stay your progress;" and adds in a note: "I do not connect the particle *upa* with *ramadhvam*, as the Nirukta and Sāyaṇa do; the fact that *upa* stands in another Pāda (quarter of the verse) requires a different explanation. The most of those interpretations of the Commentator which destroy the sense have their ultimate ground in the circumstance that he combines the words of different divisions of the verse; and any one may easily convince himself that every Pāda has commonly a separate sense, and is far more independent of the others than is the case in the śloka of later times." In his Lexicon Roth renders *ritāvarī* in this passage by "regular," "equally flowing."

¹²⁹ "Kusika was a king" (*Kusiko rājā babhūva*. Nir. ii. 25). Sāyaṇa calls him a royal rishi.

¹³⁰ This is the sense assigned by Prof. Roth, *s.v.* *pī* to *pīpīyānā*. Sāyaṇa, following Yāska, ii. 27, gives the sense "suckling her child." Prof. Aufrecht considers that the word means "pregnant." In the next clause *śāśvachai* is rendered in the manner suggested by Prof. A., who compares R.V. x. 18, 11, 12.

¹³¹ "The men of the family of Bharata, my people" (*Bharata-kula-jāḥ madīyūḥ earve*." Sāyaṇa).

te | *yatra rathasya bṛihato nidhānaṁ vimochanaṁ vājino dakṣiṇāvat* | 7. *Ime bhojāḥ angiraso virūpāḥ divas putrāso asurasya virāḥ* | *Viśvāmitrāya dadato maghāni sahasra-sāve pratirante āyuh* | 8. *Rūpaṁ rūpam maghavā bobhavīti māyāḥ kṛiṇvānas tanvam pari svām* | *trir yad divaḥ pari muhūrttam āgāt svair mantrair anṛitupāḥ rītāvā* | 9. *Mahān ṛishir deva-jāḥ deva-jūto astabhnāt sindhum arṇavaṁ nṛichakṣhāḥ* | *Viśvāmitro yad avahat Sudāsam apriyāyata Kuśikebhir Indraḥ* | 10. *Haṁsāḥ iva kṛinutha ślokaṁ adribhir madanto gīrbhir adhware sute sachā* | *devebhir viprāḥ ṛishayo nṛichakṣhaso vi pibadhvaṁ Kuśikāḥ somyam madhu* | 11. *Upa preta Kuśikāś chetayadhvam āsvāṁ rāye pra munchata Sudāsah* | *rūjā vṛittraṁ janghanat prāg apāg udag atha yajāte vare ā pṛithivyāḥ* | 12. *Yah ime rodasī ubhe aham Indram atushṭavam* | *Viśvāmitrasya rakshati brahma idam Bhārataṁ janam* | 13. *Viśvāmitrāḥ arāsata brahma Indrāya vajrine* | *karad in naḥ surādhasah* | 14 (= Nir. vi. 32). *Kiṁ te kurvanti Kikāteshu gāvo nāsiraṁ duhre na tapanti ghar-mam* | *ā no bhara Pramagandasya vedo Naichūsakham maghavan randhaya naḥ* | 15. *Sasarparir amatim bādhamānā bṛihad mimāya Jamadagnidattā* | *ā Sūryasya duhitā tatāna śravo dereshu amṛitam ajuryam* | 16. *Sasarparir abharat tūyam ebhyo adhi śravaḥ panchajanyāsu kṛishṭishu* | *sā pakshyā navyam āyur dadhūnā yām me palasti-jamadagnayo daduh* | 21. *Indra ūtibhir bahuḷābhir no adya yāchchhreshṭhābhir maghavan śūra jinva* | *yo no dveshṭi adharah sas padishṭa yam u dviśmas tam u prāno jahātu* | 22. *paraśum chid vi tapati śimbalaṁ chid vi vṛish-chati* | *ukhā chid Indra yeshanti prayastā phenam asyati*. 23. *Na sāyaka-sya chikite janāso lodhaṁ nayanti paśu manyamānāḥ* | *nāvājinaṁ vājinaḥ hāsayanti na gardabham puro āsvān nayanti* | 24. *Ime Indra Bharatasya putrāḥ apapitvaṁ chikitur na prapitvam* | *hinvanti āsvam arānaṁ na nityaṁ jyāvūjam pari nayanti ājau* |

“6. Thou hast drunk soma; depart, Indra, to thy abode: thou hast a handsome wife and pleasure in thy house. In whatever place thy great chariot rests, it is proper that the steed should be unyoked. 7. These bountiful Virūpas of the race of Angiras,¹³³ heroic sons of the divine

¹³³ Sāyana says that the liberal men are the Kshattriyas, sons of Sudās, that *virūpāḥ* means their different priests of the race of Angiras, Medhātithi, and others, and that the sons of the sky are the Maruts, the sons of Rudra (*Ime yāgaṁ kurvānāḥ bhojāḥ Saudāsāḥ kshattriyāḥ teshāṁ yājakaḥ virūpāḥ nānārūpāḥ Medhātithi-prabhṛitayo 'ngirasaś cha divo 'surasya devebhyo 'pi balavato Rudrasya putrāso . . . Marutah*). The Virūpas are connected with Angiras in R.V. x. 62, 5; and a Virūpa is mentioned in i. 45, 3; and viii. 64, 6.

Dyaus (sky), bestowing wealth upon Viśvāmitra at the sacrifice with a thousand libations, prolong their lives. 8. The opulent god (Indra) constantly assumes various forms, exhibiting with his body illusive appearances; since he came from the sky thrice in a moment, drinking (soma) according to his own will, at other than the stated seasons, and yet observing the ceremonial. 9.¹³³ The great rishi, god-born, god-impelled, leader of men, stayed the watery current; when Viśvāmitra conducted Sudās, Indra was propitiated through the Kuśikas. 10. Like swans, ye make a sound with the (soma-crushing) stones, exulting with your hymns when the libation is poured forth; ye Kuśikas, sage rishis, leaders of men, drink the honied soma with the gods.¹³⁴ 11. Approach, ye Kuśikas, be alert; let loose the horse of Sudās to (conquer) riches; let the king smite strongly his enemy in the east, the west, and the north; and then let him sacrifice on the most excellent (spot) of the earth.¹³⁵ 12. I Viśvāmitra have caused both heaven and earth to sing the praises of Indra;¹³⁶ and my prayer protects the race of Bharata. 13. The Viśvāmitras have offered up prayer to Indra the thunderer. May he render us prosperous! 14. What are thy cows doing among the Kīkaṭas,¹³⁷ who neither draw from them the milk (which is to be mixed with soma), nor heat the sacrificial kettle. Bring to us the wealth of Pramaganda; subdue to us to the son of Nīchaśākha. 15. Moving swiftly, removing poverty, brought by the Jamadagnis, she has mightily uttered her voice: this daughter of the sun has conveyed (our) renown, eternal and undecaying, (even) to the gods. 16. Moving swiftly she has speedily brought down (our) renown from them to the five races of men; this winged¹³⁸ goddess whom the aged Jamadagnis brought to us, has conferred on us new life." Omitting verses

¹³³ Verses 9-13 are translated by Prof. Roth, *Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda*, p. 106 f.

¹³⁴ Comp. M. Bh. Adip. v. 6695. *Apibach cha tataḥ somam Indīṇa saha Kauśikāḥ* | "And then the Kauśika drank soma with Indra."

¹³⁵ Compare R.V. iii. 23, 4, which will be quoted below.

¹³⁶ Compare R.V. iv. 17, 1.

¹³⁷ *Kīkaṭāḥ nāma deśo 'nāryya-nivāsaḥ* | "Kīkaṭa is a country inhabited by people who are not Aryas." See the second vol. of this work, p. 362, and Journ. Royal As. Soc. for 1866, p. 340.

¹³⁸ *Pakṣhyā*. This word is rendered by Sāyana "the daughter of the sun who causes the light and dark periods of the moon, etc." (*Pakṣhasya pakṣhādī-nirvāha-kasya Sūryasya duhitā*). Prof. Roth *s.v.* thinks the word may mean "she who changes according to the (light and dark) fortnights."

17-20 we have the following: "21. Prosper us to-day, o opulent Indra, by numerous and most excellent succours. May he who hates us fall down low; and may breath abandon him whom we hate." This is succeeded by three obscure verses, of which a translation will be attempted further on.

Sāyana prefaces verses 15 and 16 by a quotation from Shadguru-sishya's Commentary on the Anukramaṇikā, which is given with an addition in Weber's Indische Studien i. 119 f. as follows: *Sasarpari-dv-riche prāhur itihāsam purāvidaḥ*, *Saudāsa-nripater yajne Vasishṭhāt-maja-Saktinā* | *Viśvāmitrasyābhībhūtam balaṁ vāk cha samantataḥ* | *Vasishṭhenābhībhūtaḥ sa hy avāsīdach cha Gādhi-jāḥ* | *tasmai Brāhmān tu Saurīm vā nāmnā vāchaṁ Sasarparīm* | *Sūrya-veśmana āhṛitya dadūr vai Jamadagnayah* | *Kuśikānām tataḥ sū vān manūk chintām athānudat* | *upapreteti Kuśikān Viśvāmitro 'nvachodayat* | *labdhvā vā-chaṁ cha hrishṭātmā Jamadagnīn apūjayat* | "Sasarparī" *iti dvābhyām ṛigbhyām Vācham stuvam svayam* | "Regarding the two verses beginning 'Sasarparīḥ' those acquainted with antiquity tell a story. At a sacrifice of king Saudāsa¹³⁰ the power and speech of Viśvāmitra were completely vanquished by Sakti, son of Vasishṭha; and the son of Gādhi (Viśvāmitra) being so overcome, became dejected. The Jamadagnis drew from the abode of the Sun a Voice called "Sasarparī," the daughter of Brāhmā, or of the Sun, and gave her to him. Then that voice somewhat dispelled the disquiet of the Jamadagnis [or, according to the reading of this line given by Sāyana (*Kuśikānām matiḥ sū vāg amatiṁ tām apānudat*) "that Voice, being intelligence, dispelled the unintelligence of the Kuśikas."]. Viśvāmitra then incited the Kuśikas with the words *upapreta* 'approach' (see verse 11). And being gladdened by receiving the Voice, he paid homage to the Jamadagnis, praising them with the two verses beginning 'Sasarparīḥ'.

In regard to the verses 21-24 Sāyana has the following remarks:

Indra utibhir ity ādyās chatasro Vasishṭha-dveshinyah | *purā khalu Viśvāmitra-sishyah Sudāḥ nāma rājarshir āsīt* | *sa cha kenachit karanena Vasishṭha-dveshyo 'bhūt* | *Viśvāmitras tu śishyasya rakshartham ābhir ṛigbhir Vasishṭham āsapat* | *imāḥ abhisāpa-rūpāḥ* | *tāḥ richo Vasishṭhāḥ na śrinṇvanti* | "The four verses beginning 'o Indra, with succours' express hatred to Vasishṭha. There was formerly a royal rishi called

¹³⁰ The Brihaddevatā, which has some lines nearly to the same effect as these I have quoted (see Ind. Stud. i. 119), gives Sudās instead of Saudāsa.

Sudās, a disciple of Viśvāmitra; who for some reason had incurred the ill-will of Vasishṭha. For his disciple's protection Viśvāmitra cursed Vasishṭha in these verses. They thus consist of curses, and the Vasishṭhas do not listen to them."

In reference to the same passage the Bṛihaddevatā iv. 23 f., as quoted in Indische Studien, i. 120, has the following lines: *Parāś chatasro yās tatra Vasishṭha-dveshinī viduḥ | Viśvāmitrena tāḥ proktāḥ abhiśūpāḥ iti smritāḥ | dvesha-dveshās tu tāḥ proktāḥ vidyāḥ chairābhichārikāḥ | Vasishṭhās tu na śṛiṇvanti tad āchūrryaka-sammataṁ | kīrttanāḥ chhavanād vā 'pi mahān doṣaḥ prajāyate | śatadhā bhidyate mūrdhā kīrtti-tena śrūtena vā | teshāṁ bālāḥ pramīyante tasmāt tās tu na kīrttayet |* "The other four verses of that hymn, which are regarded as expressing hatred to Vasishṭha, were uttered by Viśvāmitra, and are traditionally reported to contain imprecations. They are said to express hatred in return for (?) hatred, and should also be considered as incantations. The descendants of Vasishṭha do not listen to them, as this is the will of their preceptor. Great guilt is incurred by repeating or hearing them. The heads of those who do so are split into a hundred fragments; and their children die. Wherefore let no one recite them."

Durga, the commentator on the Nirukta,¹⁴⁰ in accordance with this injunction and warning, says in reference to verse 23: *Yasmin nigame esha śabdaḥ (lodhaḥ) sā Vasishṭha-dveshinī rik | ahaṁ cha Kāpishṭhala Vāsishṭhaḥ | atas tūṁ na nirbravīmi |* "The text in which this word (*lodha*) occurs is a verse expressing hatred of Vasishṭha. But I am a Kāpishṭhala of the family of Vasishṭha; and therefore do not interpret it."

The following text also may have reference to the personal history of Viśvāmitra: R. V. iii. 43, 4. *Ā cha tvām etā vṛiṣaṇā vahāto harī sukhāyā sudhurā svangā | dhānāvād Indrah savanaṁ jushānaḥ sakhā sakhyuḥ śṛiṇavad vandanāni |* 5. *Kuvid mā gopaṁ karase janasya kuvid rājānam maghavann ṛijishin | kuvid mā ṛishim papivāṁsaṁ sutasya kuvid me caso amṛitasya śikshāḥ |* "4. May these two vigorous brown steeds, friendly, well-yoked, stout-limbed, convey thee hither. May Indra gratified by our libation mingled with grain, hear (like) a friend, the praises of a friend. 5. Wilt thou make me a ruler of the people? wilt

¹⁴⁰ As quoted both by Prof. Roth, Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 108, note, and by Prof. Müller, Pref. to Rig-veda, vol. ii. p. lvi.

thou make me a king, o impetuous lord of riches? wilt thou make me a rishi a drinker of soma? wilt thou endow me with imperishable wealth?"

The next passage refers to Devaśravas and Devavāta, of the race of Bharata, who are called in the Anukramanikā, quoted by Sāyaṇa, "sons of Bharata" (*Bharatasya putrau*); but one of whom at least is elsewhere, as we shall see, said to be a son of Viśvāmitra: R.V. iii. 23, 2. *Amanthishṭām Bhāratā revad Agnim Devaśravāḥ Devavātaḥ sudaksham | Agne vi paśya bṛihatū 'bhi rāyā ishām no netā bhavatād anudyūn | 3. Daśa kshipaḥ pūrvaṃ sīm ajjjanan sujātam mātṛishu priyam | Agniṃ stuhi Daivavātām Devaśravo yo janānām asud vaśi | 4. Nītvā dadhe vare ā prithivyāḥ ilāyās pade sudinatṛe ahnām | Dṛishadvatyām mānusha Āpayāyām Sarasvatyām revad Agne didīhi |* "2. The two Bhāratas Devaśravas and Devavāta have brilliantly created by friction the powerful Agni. Look upon us, o Agni, manifesting thyself with much wealth; be a bringer of nourishment to us every day. 3. The ten fingers (of Devavāta) have generated the ancient god, happily born and dear to his mothers. Praise, o Devaśravas, Agni, the offspring of Devavāta, who has become the lord of men. 4. I placed (or he placed) thee on the most excellent spot of earth on the place of worship,¹⁴ at an auspicious time. Shine, o Agni, brilliantly on the (banks of the) Dṛishadvatī, on (a site) auspicious for men, on (the banks of) the Āpayā, of the Sarasvatī."

Viśvāmitra is mentioned along with Jamadagni in the fourth verse of the 167th hymn of the tenth Maṇḍala, which is ascribed to these two sages as its authors: *Prasūto bhaksham akaram charāv api stomam che-nam prathamāḥ sūrir un mṛije | sute sātena yadi āgamaṃ vām prati Viśvāmitra-Jamadagnī dame |* "Impelled, I have quaffed this draught of soma when the oblation of boiled rice was presented; and I, the first bard, prepare this hymn, whilst I have come to you, o Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni in the house, with that which has been offered as a libation."

The family of the Viśvāmitras has, as we have seen, been already mentioned in R.V. iii. 53, 13. They are also named in the following passages:

iii. 1, 21. *Janman janman nihito Jātavedaḥ Viśvāmitrebhir idhyate ajasraḥ |*

¹⁴ Compare R.V. iii. 29, 3, 4.

"The undecaying Jātavedas (Agni) placed (on the hearth) is in every generation kindled by the Viśvāmitras."

iii. 18, 4. *Uch chhochishā sahasas putraḥ stuto bṛihad vayaḥ śaśamā-
neshu dhehi | rovad Agne Viśvāmitreshu śaṁ yor marmṛijma te tanvam
bhūri kṛitvaḥ |*

"Son of strength, when lauded, do thou with thy upward flame inspire vigorous life into thy worshippers; (grant) o Agni, brilliant good fortune and prosperity to the Viśvāmitras; many a time have we given lustre to thy body."

x. 89, 17. *Eca te vayam Indra bhunjatīnām vidyāma sumatinām navā-
nām | vidyāma rastor arasā grīnanto Viśvāmitrāḥ uta te Indra nūnam |*

"Thus may we obtain from thee new favours to delight us: and may we, Viśvāmitras, who praise thee, now obtain riches through thy help, o Indra."

This hymn is ascribed in the Anukramaṇī to Reṇu, the son or descendant of Viśvāmitra; and the 18th verse is identical with the 22nd of the 30th hymn of the third Maṇḍala, which is said to be Viśvāmitra's production.

In a verse already quoted (R.V. iii. 33, 11) Viśvāmitra is spoken of as the son of Kuśika; at least the Nirukta regards that passage as referring to him; and the Kuśikas, who no doubt belonged to the same family as Viśvāmitra, are mentioned in another hymn which I have cited (iii. 53, 9, 10). They are also alluded to in the following texts:

R.V. iii. 26, 1. *Vaiśvānaram manasā 'gniṁ nichāyya harishmanto anu-
shatyaṁ svarvidam | sudānuṁ devāṁ rathirām vasūyavo gīrbhiḥ ranvaṁ
Kuśikāso havāmahe | 3. Aśvo na krandan janibhiḥ sam idhyate
Vaiśvānaraḥ Kuśikebhir yuge yuge | sa no Agniḥ svīryaṁ svasvyaṁ du-
dhātu ratnam amṛiteshu jāgriviḥ |*

"We, the Kuśikas, presenting oblations, and desiring riches, revering in our souls, as is meet,¹⁴² the divine Agni Vaiśvānara, the heavenly, the bountiful, the charioteer, the pleasant, invoke him with hymns. . . . 3. Vaiśvanara, who (crackles) like a neighing horse, is kindled by the Kuśikas with the mothers (i.e. their fingers) in every age. May

¹⁴² This is the sense of *anushatyaṁ* according to Prof. Aufrecht. Sāyana makes it one of the epithets of Agni "he who is true to his promise in granting rewards according to works" (*satyenānuyatām karmānurūpa-phala-pradāne satya-pratījanam*).

this Agni, who is ever alive among the immortals, bestow on us wealth, with vigour and with horses."

iii. 29, 15. *Amitrāyudho Marutām iva prayāḥ prathamajūḥ brahmaṇo viśvam id viduḥ | dyumnavad brahma Kuśikūsaḥ ā irire ekaḥ eko dame Agniṁ sam idhire |*

"Combating their enemies like the hosts of the Maruts, (the sages) the first-born of prayer¹⁴³ know everything; the Kuśikas have sent forth an enthusiastic prayer; they have kindled Agni, each in his own house."

iii. 30, 20. *Imaṁ kāmam mandaya gobhir āsvaiś chandrāvatā rādhasā paprathas cha | svaryavo matibhis tubhyam viprāḥ Indrāya vāhaḥ Kuśi-kūso akran |*

"Gratify this (our) desire with kine and horses; and prosper us with brilliant wealth. The wise Kuśikas, desiring heaven, have with their minds composed for thee a hymn."

iii. 42, 9. *Tvāṁ sutasya pītaye pratnam Indra havāmahe | Kuśikāso avasyavaḥ |*

"We, the Kuśikas, desiring succour, summon thee the ancient Indra to drink the soma libation."

It will be seen from these passages that the Viśvāmitras and the Kuśikas assert themselves to have been ancient worshippers of Agni, and to be the composers of hymns, and the possessors of all divine knowledge.

In the eleventh verse of the tenth hymn of the first Maṇḍala of the R.V., of which the traditional author is Madhuchhandas of the family of Viśvāmitra, the epithet *Kauśika* is applied to Indra: *Ā tu naḥ Indra Kauśika mandasānaḥ sutam piba | naryam āyuḥ pra sutira kridhi sahasra-sām ṛishim |* "Come, Indra, Kauśika, drink our oblation with delight. Grant me new and prolonged life; make the rishi the possessor of a thousand boons."

Sāyana explains the epithet in question as follows: *Kauśika Kuśikasya putra . . . yadyapi Viśvāmitro Kuśikasya putras tathāpi tad-rūpeṇa Indrasya eva utpannatvāt Kuśika-putratvam aviruddham | ayaṁ 'nukramaṇikāyām uktaḥ |* "Kuśikas tv *Aishīrathir Indra-*

¹⁴³ Compare with this the epithet of *devajūḥ*, "god-born," applied in iii. 53, 9 (above p. 342); and the claim of knowledge made for the Vasishṭhas in vii. 33, 7 (above p. 320).

*tulyam putram ichhan brahmacharyaṁ chachāra | tasya Indrah eva Gāthi
putro jajne*” *iti* | “Kauśika means the son of Kuśika . . . Although Viśvāmitra was the son of Kuśika, yet, as it was Indra who was born in his form, there is nothing to hinder Indra being the son of Kuśika. This story is thus told in the Anukramaṇikā: ‘Kuśika, the son of Ishīratha desiring a son like Indra, lived in the state of a Brahmachārin. It was Indra who was born to him as his son Gāthin.’” To this the Anukramaṇī (as quoted by Prof. Müller, Rig-veda, vol. ii. pref. p. xl.) adds the words: *Gāthino Viśvāmitrah | sa tṛtīyam maṇḍalam apaśyat* | “The son of Gāthin was Viśvāmitra, who saw the third Maṇḍala.” In quoting this passage Professor Müller remarks: “According to Shaḍ-guruśishya this preamble was meant to vindicate the Rishitva of the family of Viśvāmitra: ¹⁴⁴ *Saty apavāde svayam rishitvam anubhavato Viśvāmitra-gotrasya rivakshayaḥ itihāsaṁ āha*” | “Wishing to declare the rishihood of the family of Viśvāmitra which was controverted, although they were themselves aware of it, he tells a story.”

Professor Roth in his Lexicon (*s.v.* *Kauśika*) thinks that this term as originally applied to Indra meant merely that the god “belonged, was devoted to,” the Kuśikas; and Professor Benfey, in a note to his translation of R.V. i. 10, 11,¹⁴⁵ remarks that “by this family-name Indra is designated as the sole or principal god of this tribe.”

¹⁴⁴ Prof. Müller states that “Sāyaṇa passes over what Kātyāyana (the author of the Anukramaṇī) says about the race of Viśvāmitra;” and adds “This (the fact of the preamble being ‘meant to vindicate the Rishitva of the family of Viśvāmitra’) was probably the reason why Sāyaṇa left it out.” It is true that Sāyaṇa does not quote the words of the Anukramaṇī in his introductory remarks to the third Maṇḍala; but as we have seen he had previously adduced the greater part of them in his note on i. 10, 11.

¹⁴⁵ Orient und Occident, vol. i. p. 18, note 50. We have seen above, p. 345, that in R.V. iii. 23, 3, another god, Agni, is called *Daivavāta*, after the rishi Devavāta, by whom he had been kindled. Compare also the expression *Divodāso Agniḥ* in R.V. viii. 92, 2, which Sāyaṇa explains as = *Divodāsa āhūyamūno'gniḥ*, “Agni invoked by Divodāsa;” while Prof. Roth *s.v.* understands it to mean “Agni who stands in relation to Divodāsa.” In R.V. vi. 16, 19, Agni is called *Divodāsaśya satpatiḥ*, “the good lord of Divodāsa.” Agni is also called Bhārata in R.V. ii. 7, 1, 5; iv. 25, 4; vi. 16, 19. On the first text (ii. 7, 1) Sāyaṇa says *Bharatāḥ ṛtvijaḥ | teshāṁ sambandhi Bhārataḥ*, “Bharatas are priests. Bhārata is he who is connected with them.” On ii. 7, 5 he explains the word by *ṛtvijūṁ putra-sthāniya*, “Thou who art in the place of a son to the priests.” On the second text (iv. 25, 4) *tasmai Agnir Bhārataḥ śarma yaṁsat*, “may Agni Bhārata give him protection”) Sāyaṇa takes Bhārata to mean “the bearer of the oblation” (*haviṣho dharttū*); but also refers to the S’P.Br. i. 4, 2, 2, where it is said, “or Agni is called ‘Bhārata,’ because, becoming breath, he sustains all creatures”

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa (pp. 398–400, Wilson, 4to. ed.) Viśvāmitra was the twelfth in descent from Purūravas, the persons intermediate being (1) Amāvasu, (2) Bhīma, (3) Kāñchana, (4) Suhotra, (5) Jahnu, (6) Sumantu, (7) Ajaka, (8) Valākāśva, (9) Kuśa, (10) Kuśāmba, and (11) Gādhi. The birth of Viśvāmitra's father is thus described, V.P. iv. 7, 4: *Teshāṃ Kuśāmbaḥ "śakra-tulyo me putro bhaved" iti tapas chachāra | taṃ cha ugra-tapasam avalokya "mā bhavato anyo 'smat-tulya-vīryyaḥ" ity ātmanā eva asya Indrah putratvam agachhat | Gādhir nāma sa Kauśiko 'bhavat |* "Kuśāmba (one of Kuśa's four sons) practised austere fervour with the view of obtaining a son equal to Indra. Perceiving him to be very ardent in his austere fervour, Indra, fearing lest another person should be born his own equal in vigour, became himself the son of Kuśāmba, with the name of Gādhi the Kauśika." Regarding the birth of Viśvāmitra himself, the Vishṇu Purāṇa relates the following story: Gādhi's daughter Satyavatī had been given in marriage to an old Brāhman called Rīchika, of the family of Bhṛigu. In order that his wife might bear a son with the qualities of a Brāhman, Rīchika had prepared for her a dish of charu (rice, barley, and pulse, with butter and milk) for her to eat; and a similar mess for her mother, calculated to make her conceive a son with the character of a warrior. Satyavatī's mother, however, persuaded her to exchange messes. She was blamed by her husband on her return home for what she had done. I quote the words of the original:

V.P. iv. 7, 14. "*Ati pāpe kim idam akūryyam bhavatyaḥ kṛitam | atiraudraṃ te vapur ālakshyate | nūnaṃ tvayā tvan-mātri-satkṛitaś charur upayuktaḥ (? upabhuktaḥ) | na yuktam etat |* 15. *Mayā hi tatitra charau sakalā eva śauryya-vīryya-bala-sampad āropitā tradiye charāv apy akhila-śānti-jnāna-titikshādikā brāhmaṇa-sampat | etach cha vipa-*

(*csha u vai imūḥ prajāḥ prūṇo bhūtvā bibharti tasmād vā iva āha "Bhārata" iti*). Another explanation had previously been given that the word *Bhārata* means "he who bears oblations to the gods." On the third text (vi. 16, 19) Sāyaṇa interprets the term in the same way. Roth, *s.v.*, thinks it may mean "warlike." In R.V. vii. 8, 4, (V.S. 12, 34) we find the words *pra pra ayam Agnir Bharatasya śrinve*, "this Agni (the son?) of Bharata has been greatly renowned." Sāyaṇa makes *bharatasya* = *yajamānasya*, "the worshipper," and *pra pra śrinve* = *prathito bhavati*, "is renowned." The Comm. on the Vāj. S. translates "Agni hears the invocation of the worshipper" (*śrinve śrinute āhvānam*). The S. P. Br. vi. 8, 1, 14, quotes the verse, and explains *Bharata* as meaning "Prajāpati, the supporter of the universe" (*Prajāpatir vai Bharataḥ sa hi idam sarvam bibharti*).

rītaṁ kurratyās tava atiraudrāstra-dhārana-mārana-nishṭha-kshattri-yāchāraḥ puttro bhaviṣyaty asyās cha upāsama-ruchir brāhmaṇā-chāraḥ” | *ity ākārṇya eva sū tasya pādaḥ jagrāha pranipatya cha enam āha* “*bhagavan mayā etad ajnānād anushṭhitam | prasādam me kuru | mā evaṁridaḥ putro bharatu | kāmam evaṁridaḥ pautro bharatu*” | *ity ukto munir apy āha* “*evam astu*” iti | 16. *Anantaraṁ cha sū Jamad-agnim ajñjanat tan-mātā cha Viśvāmitraṁ janayāmāsa | Satyavatī cha Kauśikī nāma nady abhavat | Jamadagnir Ikshvāku-vaṁśodbhavasya Renu-tanayām Renukām upayame tasyām cha aśeṣa-kshattri-vaṁśa-hantūram Paraśurāma-sanjnam bhagavataḥ sakala-loka-guror Nārāyaṇasya aṁśaṁ Jamadagnir ajñjanat | Viśvāmitra-putras tu Bhārgavaḥ eva Śunaḥśepo nāma devair dattaḥ | tataś cha Devarāta-nāmā ’bhavat | tataś cha anye Madhuchhanda-Jayakṛita-Devadera-Ashṭaka-Kachhapa-IIūrītakākhyāḥ Viśvāmitra-putrāḥ babhūvuh | 17. Teshām cha bahūni Kauśika-gotrāṇi rishyantareshu vaivāhyāni bhavanti |*

“ ‘Sinful woman, what improper deed is this that thou hast done? I behold thy body of a very terrible appearance. Thou hast certainly eaten the charu prepared for thy mother. This was wrong. For into that charu I had infused all the endowments of heroism, vigour, and force, whilst into thine I had introduced all those qualities of quietude, knowledge, and patience which constitute the perfection of a Brāhman. Since thou hast acted in contravention of my design a son shall be born to thee who shall live the dreadful, martial, and murderous life of a Kshattriya; and thy mother’s offspring shall exhibit the peaceful disposition and conduct of a Brāhman.’ As soon as she had heard this, Satyavatī fell down and seized her husband’s feet, and said, ‘My lord, I have acted from ignorance; show kindness to me; let me not have a son of the sort thou hast described; if thou pleasest, let me have a grandson of that description.’ Hearing this the muni replied, ‘Be it so.’ Subsequently she bore Jamadagni, and her mother gave birth to Viśvāmitra. Satyavatī became the river called Kauśikī. Jamadagni wedded Renukā, the daughter of Renu, of the family of Ikshvāku; and on her he begot a son called Paraśurāma, the slayer of the entire race of Kshattriyas, who was a portion of the divine Nārāyaṇa, the lord of the universe.¹⁴⁶ To Viśvāmitra a son called Śunaśśepa, of the race of

¹⁴⁶ According to the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, i. 3, 20, Paraśurāma was the sixteenth incarnation of Viṣṇu: *Avatāre shoḍaśame paśyan brahma-druho nṛipān | trissapta-*

Bhṛigu, was given by the gods, who in consequence received the name of Devarāta ("god-given"). And then other sons, Madhuchhandas, Jayakṛita, Devadeva, Aṣṭaka, Kachhapa, Hāritaka, etc., were born to Viśvāmitra. From them sprang many families of Kauśikas, which intermarried with those of other rishis."

The Harivaṁśa, verses 1425 ff., gives a similar account, but makes Kuśika, not Kuśāmba, the grandfather of Viśvāmitra :

Kuśa-putrūḥ babbhūvur hi chatvāro deva-varchasaḥ | Kuśikaḥ Kuśanābhaś cha Kuśāmba Mūrtimāns tathā | Pahlavaiḥ saha saṁvṛiddho rājā vana-charais tadā | Kuśikas tu tapas tepe puttram Indra-samāṁ vibhuh | labhcyam iti tāṁ Sakras trāsūd abhyetya jajnivān | pūrṇe varsha-sahasre vai tāṁ tu S'akro hy apaśyata | aty ugra-tapasaṁ dṛishṭvā sahasrākshaḥ purandaraḥ | samarthaḥ putra-janane svam evāṁśam arūsayat | putratve kalpayāmāsa sa derendraḥ surottamaḥ | sa Gādhir abhavad rājā Maghavān Kauśikaḥ svayam | Paurukutsy abhavad bhāryyā Gādhiḥ tasyām ajāyata |

"Kuśa had four sons, equal in lustre to the gods, Kuśika, Kuśanābha, Kuśāmba, and Mūrtimat. Growing up among the Pahlavas, who dwelt in the woods, the glorious king Kuśika practised austere fervour, with the view of obtaining a son equal to Indra ; and Indra from apprehension came and was born. When a thousand years had elapsed Sakra (Indra) beheld him. Perceiving the intensity of his austere fervour, the thousand-eyed, city-destroying, god of gods, highest of the deities, powerful to procreate offspring, introduced a portion of himself, and caused it to take the form of a son ; and thus Maghavat himself became Gādhi, the son of Kuśika. Paurukutsī was the wife (of the latter), and of her Gādhi was born."

The Harivaṁśa then relates a story similar to that just extracted from the Vishṇu Purāṇa regarding the births of Jamadagni and Viśvāmitra, and then proceeds, verse 1456 :

Aurvasyaivam Richikasya Satyavatīyām mahāyaśāḥ | Jamadagnis tapo-vīryyāj jājne brahma-vidūṁ varaḥ | madhyamaś cha S'unāśsephaḥ S'unāḥ-puchhaḥ kanishṭhakaḥ | Viśvāmitraṁ tu dāyādām Gādhiḥ Kuśika-nandanaḥ | janayāmāsa putraṁ tu tapo-vidyā-samātmakam | prāpya brah-

kṛitvaḥ kupito nīkshattrām akarod mahīm | "In his sixteenth incarnation, perceiving that kings were oppressors of Brāhmans, he, incensed, made the earth destitute of Kshattriyas one and twenty times."

*marshi-samatām yo 'yam saptarshitām gataḥ | Viśvāmitras tu dharmātma
nāmnā Viśvarathaḥ smṛitaḥ | jajne Bhṛigu-prasādēna Kauśikād vaṁsa-
varadhdhanāḥ | Viśvāmitrasya cha sutāḥ Devarātūdayaḥ smṛitāḥ | vikhyātās
triṣṭu lokeshu teshām nāmāni vai śṛiṇu | Devaśravāḥ Katīś chaiva yasmāt
Kātyāyanāḥ smṛitāḥ | Sālāvatyām Hiranyāksho Renor jajne 'tha Renu-
mān | Sāṅkṛitir Gālavaś chaiva Mudgalaś cheti viśrutāḥ | Madhuchhanda
Jayaś chaiva Devalaś cha tathā 'shṭakaḥ | Kachhapo Hāritaś chaiva Viśvā-
mitrasya te sutāḥ | teshām khyātāni gotrāṇi Kauśikānām mahātmanām |
Pūṇino Babhravaś chaiva Dhyānajapyās tathaiva cha | Pārthivāḥ Deva-
rātūś cha Sālankāyana-Vāskalāḥ | Lohitāḥ Yāmadūtāś cha tathā Kūri-
shayaḥ smṛitāḥ | Sauśrutāḥ Kauśikāḥ rājāṁś tathā 'nye Saindhavāya-
nāḥ | Devalāḥ Rēnavaś chaiva Yājñavalkyāghamarshaṇāḥ | Audumbarāḥ
hy Abhishūātās Tārakāyana-chunchulāḥ | Sālāvatyāḥ Hiranyākshāḥ
Sāṅkṛityāḥ Gālavaś tathā | Nārāyaṇir Naraś chānyo Viśvāmitrasya
dhīmataḥ | ṛishy-antara-vivāhyās cha Kauśikāḥ bahavaḥ smṛitāḥ | Pau-
ravasya mahārāja brahmarshaḥ Kauśikasya cha | sambandho 'py asya
vaṁśe 'smin brahma-kshatrasya viśrutāḥ |*

“Thus was the renowned Jamadagni, the most excellent of those possessed of sacred knowledge, born by the power of austere fervour to Richika, the son of Ūrva, by Satyavatī. Their second son was Sunaśépha¹⁴⁷ and the youngest Sunahpuchha. And Gādhi, son of Kuśika, begot as his son and inheritor Viśvāmitra, distinguished for austere fervour, science, and quietude; who attained an equality with Brahman-rishis, and became one of the seven rishis. The righteous Viśvāmitra, who was known by name as Viśvaratha,¹⁴⁸ was by the favour of a Bhṛigu born to the son of Kuśika, an augments (of the glory) of his race. The sons of Viśvāmitra are related to have been Devarāta and the rest, renowned in the three worlds. Hear their names: Devaśravas, Kati (from whom the Kātyāyanas had their name); Hiranyāksha, born of Sālāvati, and Renumat of Renu; Sāṅkṛiti, Gālava, Mudgala, Mudhuchhanda, Jaya, Devala, Ashṭaka, Kachhapa, Hārita — these were the

¹⁴⁷ The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, as we shall shortly see, makes ‘Sunaśépha’ a son of Ajigarta. The Mahābhārata Anuśāsanap. verse 186, coincides with the Harivaṁśa.

¹⁴⁸ In another passage of the Harivaṁśa (verses 1764 ff.), which repeats the particulars given in this passage, it appears to be differently stated, verse 1766, that besides a daughter Satyavatī, and his son Viśvāmitra, Gādhi had three other sons Viśvaratha, Viśvakṛit, and Viśvajit (*Viśvāmitras tu Gādheyo rājā Viśvarathas tadā Viśvakṛid Viśvajit chaiva tathā Satyavatī nrīpa*).

sons of Viśvāmitra. From them the families of the great Kauśikas are said to have sprung: the Pāṇins, Babhrus, Dhānājapyas, Pārthivas, Devarātas, Śālankāyanas, Vāskalas, Lohitas, Yāmadūtas, Kārishis, Sauśrutas, Kauśikas, Saindhavāyanas, Devalas, Reṇus, Yājñavalkyas, Aghamarshaṇas, Audumbaras, Abhishnātas, Tārakāyanas, Chunchulas, Śālāvatyas, Hiranyākshas, Sāṅkrityas, and Gālavas.¹⁴⁹ Nārāyaṇi and Nara were also (descendants) of the wise Viśvāmitra. Many Kauśikas are recorded who intermarried with the families of other rishis. In this race of the Paurava and Kauśika Brahman-rishi, there is well known to have been a connection of the Brāhmans and Kshattriya. Sunaśsep̄ha, who was a descendant of Bhṛigu, and obtained the position of a Kauśika, is recorded to have been the eldest of Viśvāmitra's sons."

It will be observed that in this passage, Devaśravas is given as one of Viśvāmitra's sons. A Devaśravas, as we have already seen, is mentioned in R.V. iii. 23, 2, as a Bhārata, along with Devavāta. Here however in the Harivaṁśa we have no Devavāta, but a Devarāta, who is identified with Sunaśsep̄ha. This, as we shall find, is also the case in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa.

In the genealogy given in both of the preceding passages, from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, and the 27th chapter of the Harivaṁśa respectively, Viśvāmitra is declared to be the descendant of Amāvasu the third son of Purūravas. In the 32nd chapter of the Harivaṁśa, however, we find a different account. Viśvāmitra's lineage is there traced up to a Jahnu, as in the former case; but Jahnu is no longer represented as a descendant of Amāvasu, the third son of Purūravas; but (as appears from the preceding narrative) of Āyus, the eldest son of that prince, and of Puru, the great-grandson of Āyus. Professor Wilson (Viṣṇu Purāṇa, 4to. ed. p. 451, note 23) is of opinion that this confusion originated in the recurrence of the name of Suhotra in different genealogical lists, and in the ascription to one king of this name of descendants who were

¹⁴⁹ Professor Wilson (V.P. 4to. ed. p. 405, note) gives these names, and remarks that the authorities add "an infinity of others, multiplied by intermarriages with other tribes, and who, according to the Vāyu, were originally of the regal caste like Viśvāmitra; but like him obtained Brahmanhood through devotion. Now these gotras, or some of them at least, no doubt existed, partaking more of the character of schools of doctrine, but in which teachers and scholars were very likely to have become of one family by intermarrying; and the whole, as well as their original founder, imply the interference of the Kshattriya caste with the Brahmanical monopoly of religious instruction and composition."

really sprung from another. It is not, however, clear that the genealogy of Viśvāmitra given in the Vishṇu Purāṇa is the right one. For in the Rig-veda, as we have seen, he is connected with the Bharatas, and in the passage about to be quoted from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, he is called a Bharata and his sons Kuśikas; and Bharata is said both in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (Wilson's V.P. 4to. ed. p. 449) and in the Harivaṃśa (sect. 32, v. 1723, and preceding narrative) to be a descendant of Āyus and of Puru. Accordingly we have seen that the Harivaṃśa styles Viśvāmitra at once a Paurava and a Kauśika.

A similar genealogy to that in the 32nd section of the Harivaṃśa is given in the Mahābhārata, Anuśāsanaparvan, verses 201 ff., where it is said that in the line of Bharata there was a king called Ajamīḍha who was also a priest (*Bharatasyānvaye chaivajamīḍho nāma pāṛthuraḥ | babhūva Bharata-śreṣṭha yajvā dharmā-bhṛitām varāḥ*), from whom Viśvāmitra was descended through (1) Jahnu, (2) Sindhudvīpa, (3) Balākaśva, (4) Kuśika, (5) Gādhi.

One of the names applied to Viśvāmitra and his race, as I have just noticed, is Bharata.¹⁵⁰ The last of the four verses at the close of the 53rd hymn of the third Maṇḍala of the Rig-veda, which are supposed to contain a malediction directed by Viśvāmitra against Vasishṭha (see above) is as follows : iii. 53, 24. *Ime Indra Bharatasya putrāḥ apapitvān chikitur na prapitvam* | "These sons of Bharata, o Indra, desire to avoid (the Vasishṭhas), not to approach them." These words are thus explained by Sāyaṇa : *Bharatasya putrāḥ Bharata-vaṃśyāḥ ime Viśvāmitrāḥ apapitvam apagamanaṃ Vasishṭhebhyaś chikitur na prapitvam* | [*Va*] *śiṣṭaiḥ saha teshūṃ sangatir nāsti | brāhmaṇāḥ eva ity arthaḥ* | "These sons of Bharata, persons of his race, know departure from, and not approach to, the Vasishṭhas. They do not associate with the Vasishṭhas. This means they are Brāhmans."

The persons who accompanied Viśvāmitra when he wished to cross the Vipās and the S'utudrī are, as we have seen above, called Bhārātas; and Devaśravas and Devavāta are designated in R.V. iii. 23, 2, as Bhārātas. On the other hand in one of the hymns ascribed to Vasishṭha (R.V. vii. 33, 6) the Bhārātas are alluded to as a tribe hostile to the Tritsus, the race to which Vasishṭha belonged.

¹⁵⁰ See Roth's Lexicon, s.v. *Bharata*, (?) "the name of a hero, the forefather of a tribe. His sons are called Viśvāmitras and the members of his family Bharatas."

In the legend of Sunaśśepa, told in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, vii. 13-18,¹⁵¹ Viśvāmitra is alluded to as being the hotṛi-priest of king Hariśchandra, and as belonging to the tribe of the Bharatas. He is also addressed as *rājaputra*, and his sons are called Kuśikas. The outlines of the story are as follows: King Hariśchandra of the family of Ikshvāku having no son, promised to Varuṇa, by the advice of Nārada, that if a son should be born to him he would sacrifice him to that god. A son was accordingly born to the king, who received the name of Rohita; but Hariśchandra, though called upon by Varuṇa, put off from time to time, on various pleas, the fulfilment of his promise. When the father at length consented, the youth himself refused to be sacrificed and went into the forest. After passing six years there he met a poor Brāhman rishi called Ajigartta who had three sons, the second of whom, Sunaśśepa, he sold for a hundred cows to Rohita, who brought the young Brāhman to be sacrificed instead of himself. Varuṇa accepted the vicarious victim, and arrangements were made accordingly, "Viśvāmitra being the hotṛi-priest, Jamadagni the adhvaryu, Vasishṭha the brāhmān, and Ayāsyā the udgātrī (*tasya ha Viśvāmitro hotā āsīj Jamadagnir adhvaryur Vasishṭho brahmā Ayāsyāḥ udgātā*)." The sacrifice was not, however, completed, although the father received a hundred more cows for binding his son to the sacrificial post, and a third hundred for agreeing to slaughter him. By reciting verses in honour of different deities in succession Sunaśśepa was delivered; and at the request of the priests took part in the ceremonial of the day. I shall quote the remainder of the story at length:

17. *Atha ha Sunaśśepo Viśvāmitrasyāṅkam āsasāda | sa ha uvācha Ajigarttaḥ Sauyavasir "ṛishe punar me puttraṁ dehi" iti | "Na" iti ha uvācha Viśvāmitro "devāḥ vai imam mahyam arāsata" iti | sa ha Devarāto Vaiśvāmitraḥ āsa | tasya ete Kāpileya-Būbhṛavāḥ | sa ha uvācha Ajigarttaḥ Sauyavasir "traṁ vehi vihvayāvaha" iti | sa ha uvācha Ajigarttaḥ Sauyavasir "Āngiraso janmanā 'sy Ajigarttiḥ śrutatḥ kavīḥ | ṛishe paitāmahāt tantor mā 'pagāḥ punar ehi mām" iti | sa*

¹⁵¹ This legend is translated into German by Prof. Roth in Weber's Ind. Stud. i. 457 ff., into English by Prof. Wilson, Journ. Roy. As. Soc. vol. xiii. for 1851, pp. 96 ff., by Dr. Haug in his Ait. Brāhmaṇa, vol. ii. 460 ff., by Prof. Müller in his Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 408 ff., and into Latin by Dr. Streiter in his "Diss. de Sunaśśepo."

ha uvācha Sunaḥśepaḥ “adarsus tvā sūsa-hastaṁ na yach chhūdreshv alapsata | gavāṁ trīṇi śatāni tvam avṛṇīthāḥ mad Angiraḥ” iti | sa ha uvācha Ajigarttaḥ Sauyavasis “tad vai mā tāta tapati pūpaṁ karma mayā kṛitam | tad ahaṁ nīnave tubhyam pratiyantu śatā garāṁ” iti | sa ha uvācha Sunaḥśepaḥ “yaḥ sakṛit pūpakaṁ kuryāt kuryād enat tato 'param | nāpāgāḥ śaudrānyāyād asandheyaṁ tvayā kṛitam” iti | “asandheyaṁ” iti ha Viśvāmitraḥ upapapāda | sa ha uvācha Viśvāmitraḥ “Bhīmaḥ eva Sauyavasiḥ śāsena viśīśūsishuḥ | asthād maitasya putro bhūr mamairopehi putratām” iti | sa ha uvācha Sunaḥśepaḥ “sa vai yathā no jñāpyā rājaputra tathā vada | yathaivāṅgirasasḥ sam upeyāṁ tara putratām” iti | sa ha uvācha Viśvāmitro “Jyeshtho me tvam putrā-ṇāṁ syās tara śreshtḥ prajā syāt | upeyāḥ daivam me dūyāṁ tena vai tropamantraye” iti | sa ha uvācha Sunaḥśepaḥ “sanjñānāneshu vai brūyāt sauhārdyāya me śriyai | yathā 'ham Bharata-ṛishabha upeyāṁ tara putratām” iti | atha ha Viśvāmitraḥ putrān āmantrayāmāsa “Madhuchhandāḥ śṛiṇotana Rishabho Reṇur Aṣṭakāḥ | ye ke cha bhrātaraḥ sthana asmai jyaishṭhyāya kalpadhram” iti | 18. Tasya ha Viśvāmitrasya eka-śatam putrāḥ āsuh panchūśad eva jyāyūṁso Madhuchhandasah panchūśat kanīyāṁsah | tad ye jyāyūṁso na te kuśalam menire | tūn anuryājahāra “antūn vaḥ prajā bhakshīṣṭa” iti | te ete 'ndhrāḥ Puṇḍrāḥ S'abarāḥ Pulindāḥ Mūtibāḥ ity udantyāḥ bahavo bhavanti | Vaiśvāmitrāḥ Dasyūnām bhūyishṭhāḥ | sa ha uvācha Madhuchhandāḥ panchūśatā sardham “yad naḥ pitā sanjñānte tasmīṁs tishṭhāmahe vayam | puras tvā sarve kurmahe tvām anvancho vayāṁ smasi” iti | atha ha Viśvāmitraḥ pratītaḥ putrāṁs tushṭāva “te vai putrāḥ paśumanto vīravanto bhaviṣhyatha | ye mānam me 'nugṛihṇanto vīravantam akartta mā | pura-etrā vīravanto Devarātena Gāthīnāḥ | sarve rādhyāḥ stha putrāḥ esha vaḥ sadvivāchanam | esha vaḥ Kuśikāḥ vīro Devarātas tam anvita | yushmāṁs dūyam me upetā vidyāṁ yām u cha vidmasi | te samyancho Vaiśvāmitrāḥ sarve sūkāṁ sarātayaḥ | Devarātāya tasthire dhṛityai śraishṭhyāya Gāthīnāḥ | adhiyata Devarāto rikthayor ubhayor ṛishīḥ | Jahnūnām chādhipatyē daive vede cha Gāthīnām |

“Sunaśśepa came to the side of Viśvāmitra. Ajigartta, the son of Suyavasa, said, ‘Rishi, give me back my son.’ ‘No,’ said Viśvāmitra, ‘the gods have given him to me’ (*devāḥ arāṣata*); hence he became Devarāta the son of Viśvāmitra. The Kāpileyas and Bābhravas are his descendants. Ajigartta said to Viśvāmitra, ‘Come; let us both call

(him) to us.'¹⁵² He (again) said (to his son), 'Thou art an Āṅgīrasa, the son of Ajigartta, reputed a sage; do not, o rishi, depart from the line of thy ancestors; come back to me.' Sunaśśepa replied, 'They have seen thee with the sacrificial knife in thy hand—a thing which men have not found even among the Sūdras; thou didst prefer three hundred cows to me, o Angiras.' Ajigartta rejoined, 'That sinful deed which I have done distresses me, my son; I abjure it to thee. Let the [three] hundreds of cows revert (to him who gave them).'¹⁵³ Sunaśśepa answered, 'He who once does a sinful deed, will add to it another; thou hast not freed thyself from that iniquity, fit only for a Sūdra. Thou hast done what cannot be rectified.' 'What cannot be rectified,' interposed Viśvāmītra; who continued, 'Terrible was the son of Suyavasa as he stood about to immolate (thee) with the knife: continue not to be his son; become mine.' Sunaśśepa replied, 'Speak, o king's son (*rājaputra*), whatever thou hast to explain to us, in order that I, though an Āṅgīrasa, may become thy son.' Viśvāmītra rejoined, 'Thou shalt be the eldest of my sons, and thy offspring shall be the most eminent. Thou shalt receive my divine inheritance; with this (invitation) I address thee.' Sunaśśepa answered, 'If (thy sons) agree, then for my welfare enjoin on them to be friendly, that so, o chief of the Bharatas, I may enter on thy sonship.' Viśvāmītra then addressed his sons, 'Do ye, Madhuchhandas, Rishabha, Renu, Aṣṭaka, and all ye who are brothers, listen to me, and concede to him the seniority.' 18. Now Viśvāmītra had a hundred sons, fifty of whom were older than Madhuchhandas and fifty younger. Then those who were older did not approve (their father's proposal). Against them he pronounced (this

¹⁵² I follow here the tenor of the interpretation (which is that of the Commentator on the S'ūnikhāyana Brāhmaṇa) given by Prof. Weber in his review of Dr. Haug's Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, in Indische Studien, ix. 316. Prof. Weber remarks that in the Brāhmaṇas the root *hu + vi* is employed to denote the opposing invitations of two persons who are seeking to bring over a third person to their own side; in proof of which he quotes Taitt. S. 6, 1, 6, 6, and S. P. Br. 3, 2, 4, 4, and 22. Profs. Roth, Wilson, and Müller, as well as Dr. Haug, understand the words to be addressed to S'unasśepa by his father, and to signify "we, too (I and thy mother), call, or will call (thee to return to us)." But it does not appear that S'unasśepa's mother was present. And it is to be observed that the next words uttered by Ajigartta, which are addressed to S'unasśepa, are preceded by the usual formula *sa ha uvācha Ajigarttaḥ Sauyavasiḥ*, "Ajigartta the son of S. said," which perhaps would not have been the case if both sentences had been addressed to the same person.

¹⁵³ Here too I follow Weber, Ind. St. ix. p. 317.

doom), 'Let your progeny possess the furthest ends (of the country).' These are the numerous border-tribes, the Andhras, Puṇḍras, Śābaras, Pulindas, Mūtibas. Most of the Dasyus are sprung from Viśvāmitra.¹⁵⁴ Madhuchhandas with the (other) fifty said, 'Whatever our father determines, by that we abide. We all place thee in our front, and follow after thee.' Then Viśvāmitra was pleased, and said to his sons, 'Ye, my children who, shewing deference to me, have conferred upon me a (new) son, shall abound in cattle and in sons. Ye, my sons, the offspring of Gāthīn, who possess in Devarāta a man who shall go before you, are all destined to be prosperous; he is your wise instructor. This Devarāta, o Kuśikas, is your chief; follow him. He will receive you as my inheritance, and obtain all the knowledge which we possess.' All these sons of Viśvāmitra, descendants of Gāthīn, submitted together in harmony and with good will to Devarāta's control and superiority. The rishi Devarāta was invested with both possessions, with the lordly authority of the Jahnu, and with the divine Veda of the Gāthins."¹⁵⁵

On this legend Professor Müller (Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 415 f.) remarks, amongst other things, as follows: "So revolting, indeed, is the descrip-

¹⁵⁴ See Weber, Ind. St. ix. p. 317 f., and Roth in his Lexicon, s.vv. *anta* and *udantya*.

¹⁵⁵ This legend is perhaps alluded to in the Kāthaka Brāhmaṇa, 19, 11, quoted by Prof. Weber, Ind. St. iii. 478: *S'unas'ēpo vai etām Ajīgarttir Varuṇa-grīhito'paśyat | tayā sa vai Varuṇa-pūśād amuchyata* | "S'unas'ēpa the son of Ajīgarta, when seized by Varuṇa, saw this (verse); and by it he was released from the bonds of Varuṇa." Manu also mentions the story, x. 105: *Ajīgartaḥ sutaṁ hantum upāsarpad bubhukshitāḥ | na chālipyata pūpena khut-pratikāram ācharan* | "Ajīgarta, when famished, approached to slay his son; and (by so doing) was not contaminated by sin, as he was seeking the means of escape from hunger." On this Kullūka annotates: *Rishir Ajīgarttākhyo bubhukshitāḥ san putraṁ S'unas'ēpha-nūmānāṁ svayāṁ vikṛitavān yajne go-śata-lābhya yajna-yūpe baddhva viśasitā bhūtū hantum prachakrame* | *na cha khut-pratikārthaṁ tathā kurvan pūpena liptāḥ | etach cha Bahvṛichar brāhmaṇe S'unas'ēphākhyāṇeshu vyuktam uktam* | "A rishi called Ajīgarta, having, when famished, himself sold his son called S'unas'ēpha, in order to obtain a hundred cows at a sacrifice, bound him to the sacrificial stake, and in the capacity of immolator was about to slay him. By doing so, as a means of escape from hunger, he did not incur sin. This is distinctly recorded in the Bahvṛicha (Aitareya) Brāhmaṇa in the legend of S'unas'ēpa." The speakers in the Brāhmaṇa, however, do not take by any means so lenient a view of Ajīgarta's conduct as Manu. (See Müller's Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 416.) The compiler of the latter work lived in an age when it was perhaps thought that a rishi could do no wrong. The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. sect. 7, and sect. 16, verses 30-37 follows the Ait. Br. in the version it gives of the story; but, as we shall see in a subsequent section, the Rāmāyaṇa relates some of the circumstances quite differently.

tion given of Ajigartta's behaviour in the Brāhmaṇa, that we should rather recognize in him a specimen of the un-Āryan population of India. Such a supposition, however, would be in contradiction with several of the most essential points of the legend, particularly in what regards the adoption of Sunaḥśepa by Viśvāmitra. Viśvāmitra, though arrived at the dignity of a Brāhman, clearly considers the adoption of Sunaḥśepa Devarāta, of the famous Brahmanic family of the Āngirasas, as an advantage for himself and his descendants; and the Deva-rātas are indeed mentioned as a famous branch of the Viśvāmitras (V.P. p. 405, 23). Sunaḥśepa is made his eldest son, and the leader of his brothers, evidently as the defender and voucher of their Brahmanhood, which must have been then of very recent date, because Viśvāmitra himself is still addressed by Sunaḥśepa as *Rāja-putra* and *Bharata-rishabha*." It must, however, be recollected that the story, as told in the Brāhmaṇa, can scarcely be regarded as historical, and that it is not unreasonable to suppose that the incidents related, even if founded on fact, may have been coloured by the Brahmanical prepossessions of the narrator. But if so, the legend can give us no true idea of the light in which Viśvāmitra's exercise of priestly functions was looked upon either by himself or by his contemporaries.

In Indische Studien, ii. 112-123, this story forms the subject of an interesting dissertation by Professor Roth, who arrives at the following conclusions :

"(i.) The oldest legend about Sunaḥśepa (alluded to in R.V. i. 24, 11-13,¹⁵⁶ and R.V. v. 2, 7) knows only of his miraculous deliverance by divine help from the peril of death.

"(ii.) This story becomes expanded in the sequel into a narrative of Sunaḥśepa's threatened slaughter as a sacrificial victim, and of his deliverance through Viśvāmitra.

"(iii.) This immolation-legend becomes severed into two essentially distinct versions, the oldest forms of which are respectively represented by the stories in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and the Rāmāyaṇa.

"(iv.) The latter becomes eventually the predominant one; but its proper central-point is no longer the deliverance from immolation, but

¹⁵⁶ Compare also Rosen's remarks on the hymns ascribed to Sunaḥśepa; Rig-veda Sanhita, Annotationes, p. lv. He thinks they contain nothing which would lead to the belief that they have any connection with the legend in the Rāmāyaṇa and Ait. Br.

the incorporation of Sunahśepa, or (with a change of persons) of Richika, into the family of the Kuśikas. It thus becomes in the end a family-legend of the race of Viśvāmītra.

"There is thus no historical, perhaps not even a genealogical, result to be gained here. On the other hand the story obtains an important place in the circle of those narratives in which the sacerdotal literature expressed its views regarding the character and agency of Viśvāmītra."

In a passage of the Mahābhārata, Ādip. verses 3694 ff.,¹⁵⁷ where the descendants of Pūru are recorded, we find among them Bharata the son of Dushyanta (verse 3709) from whom (1) Bhumanyu, (2) Suhotra, (3) Ajamīḍha, and (4) Jahnu are said to have sprung in succession (verses 3712-3722); and the last-named king and his brothers Vrajana and Rūpin are said to have been the ancestors of the Kuśikas (verse 3723: *anvayāḥ Kuśikāḥ rājan Jahnor amita-tejasaḥ | Vrajana-Rūpinoh*), who were therefore, according to this passage also, descended from Bharata (see above, p. 354). The Mahābhārata then goes on to relate that during the reign of Samvarana, son of Jahnu's eldest brother Riksha, the country over which he ruled was desolated by various calamities (verses 3725 f.). The narrative proceeds, verse 3727:

*Abhyaghnān Bhāratāṁś chaiva sapatnūnām balāni cha | chālayan
rasudhāṁ chemām balena chaturangiṇā | abhyayāt taṁ cha Pāṇchālyo
vijitya tarasā mahīm | akshauhinībhir daśabhiḥ sa enaṁ samare 'jayat |
tataḥ sa-dāraḥ sāmātyaḥ sa-puttraḥ sa-suhṛijjanah | rājā Samvaranaḥ
tasmāt palāyata mahābhayāt | 3730. Sindhor nadasya mahato nikunje
nyavasat tadā | nadī-rishaya-paryyante parvatasya samīpataḥ | tattrū-
casan bahūn kālān Bhāratāḥ durgam āsritāḥ | teshūṁ nivasatām tattra
sahasram parivatsarān | athābhyagachhad Bhāratan Vāsishṭho bhagavān
rishiḥ | tam āgatam prayatnena pratyudgamyābhivādya cha | arghyam
abhyāharaṁś tasmai te sarve Bhāratās tadā | nivedya sarvam rishaye
satkūreṇa svavarchchase | tam āsane chopavisṭāṁ rājā vavre svayāṁ tadā |
"purohito bhavān no 'stu rājyāyā prayatemahi" | 3735. "Om" ity
evāṁ Vāsishṭho 'pi Bhāratān pratyapadyata | athābhyasinchat sāmrajye
sarva-kshatrasya Pauravam | vishūṇa-bhūtaṁ sarvasyām prithivyām iti
naḥ śrutam | Bharatādhyushitam pūrvaṁ so 'dhyatishṭhat purottamam |
punar balibhṛitāś chaiva chakre sarva-mahīkshitāḥ |*

¹⁵⁷ Referred to by Roth, Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, pp. 142 ff., and Wilson, Rigveda, iii. p. 86.

"3727. And the hosts of their enemies also smote the Bhāratas. Shaking the earth with an army of four kinds of forces, the Pāṇchālya chief assailed him, having rapidly conquered the earth, and vanquished him with ten complete hosts. Then king Samvaraṇa with his wives, ministers, sons, and friends, fled from that great cause of alarm; (3730) and dwelt in the thickets of the great river Sindhu (Indus), in the country bordering on the stream, and near a mountain. There the Bhāratas abode for a long time, taking refuge in a fortress. As they were dwelling there, for a thousand years, the venerable rishi Vasishṭha came to them. Going out to meet him on his arrival, and making obeisance, the Bhāratas all presented him with the *arghya* offering, shewing every honour to the glorious rishi. When he was seated the king himself solicited him, 'Be thou our priest; let us strive to regain my kingdom.' 3735. Vasishṭha consented to attach himself to the Bhāratas, and, as we have heard, invested the descendant of Pūru with the sovereignty of the entire Kshatriya race, to be a horn (to have mastery) over the whole earth. He occupied the splendid city formerly inhabited by Bhārata, and made all kings again tributary to himself."

It is remarkable that in this passage the Bhāratas, who, as we have seen, are elsewhere represented as being so closely connected with Viśvāmitra, and are in one text of the Rig-veda (vii. 33, 6) alluded to as the enemies of Vasishṭha's friends, should be here declared to have adopted the latter rishi as their priest. The account, however, need not be received as historical, or even based on any ancient tradition; and the part referring to Vasishṭha in particular may have been invented for the glorification of that rishi, or for the honour of the Bhāratas.

The 11th and 12th khandas of the second adhyāya of the Sarvasāra Upanishad (as we learn from Professor Weber's analysis in Ind. St. i. 390) relate that Viśvāmitra was instructed on the identity of breath (*prāṇa*) with Indra, by the god himself, who had been celebrated by the sage on the occasion of a sacrifice, at which he officiated as hotri-priest, in a thousand Bṛihatī verses, and was in consequence favourably disposed towards him.

It is abundantly clear, from the details supplied in this section, that Viśvāmitra, who was a rājanya of the Bhārata and Kuśika families (Ait. Br. vii. 17 and 18), is represented by ancient Indian tradition as

the author of numerous Vedic hymns, as the domestic priest (*purohita*) of king Sudās (Nir. ii. 24), and as officiating as a *hotṛi* at a sacrifice of king Hariśchandra (Ait. Br. vii. 16). The Rāmāyaṇa also, as we shall see in a future section, connects him with Trisāṅku, the father of Hariśchandra, and makes him also contemporary with Ambarisha; and in the first book of the same poem he is said to have visited king Daśaratha, the father of Rāma (Bālakanda, i. 20, 1 ff.). As these kings were separated from each other by very long intervals, Trisāṅku being a descendant of Ikshvāku in the 28th, Ambarisha in the 44th,¹⁵⁸ Sudās in the 49th, and Daśaratha in the 60th generation (see Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. pp. 284, 303, 304, 313), it is manifest that the authors of these legends either intentionally or through oversight represented Viśvāmitra, like Vasishṭha (see above), as a personage of miraculous longevity; and on either supposition a great deal that is related of him must be purely fabulous. All the authorities describe him as the son of Gāthīn or Gādhi, the Anukramaṇī, the Vishṇu Purāṇa, and the Harivaṃśa declaring also that Gāthīn was an incarnation of Indra, and thus asserting Viśvāmitra to be of divine descent. It is not clear whether this fable is referred to in R.V. iii. 53, 9, where Viśvāmitra is styled *deva-jāḥ*, "born of a god," or whether this verse may not have led to the invention of the story. In either case the verse can scarcely have emanated from the rishi himself; but it is more likely to be the production of one of his descendants.¹⁵⁹

¹⁵⁸ According to the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 70, 41; ii. 110, 32, Ambarisha was only 28th from Ikshvāku. Compare Prof. Wilson's note on these genealogies, V.P. iii. 313 ff.

¹⁵⁹ The word *devajāḥ*, which, following Roth, s.v., I have translated "god-born," is taken by Sāyaṇa as = *dyotamūnānām tejasūṃ janayitā*, "generator of shining lights," and appears to be regarded by him as referring to the creation of constellations by Viśvāmitra, mentioned in the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 60, 21. Prof. Wilson renders the phrase by "generator of the gods;" and remarks that "the compound is not *devajā*, 'god-born,' nor was Viśvāmitra of divine parentage" (R.V. iii. p. 85, note 4). This last remark overlooks the fact above alluded to of his father Gādhi being represented as an incarnation of Indra, and the circumstance that Prof. Wilson himself (following Sāyaṇa) had shortly before translated the words *prathama-jāḥ brahmanajāḥ* in R.V. iii. 29, 15, as applied to the Kuśikas, by "the first-born of Brahmā," although from the accent *brahman* here must be neuter, and the phrase seems to mean, as I have rendered above, "the first-born of prayer." The word *jā* is given in the Nighaṇṭu as one of the synonyms of *apatya*, "offspring;" and in R.V. i. 164, 15, where it is coupled with *riṣayah*, the compound *devajāḥ* is explained by Sāyaṇa as "born of the god," i.e. the sun, and by Prof. Wilson as "born of the gods." See

This verse (R.V. iii. 53, 9) which claims a superhuman origin for Viśvāmitra, and the following verses 11-13 of the same hymn, which assert the efficacy of his prayers, form a sort of parallel to the contents of R.V. vii. 33, where the supernatural birth of Vasishṭha (vv. 10 ff.), the potency of his intercession (vv. 2-5), and the sacred knowledge of his descendants (vv. 7 and 8), are celebrated.

As the hymns of Viśvāmitra and his descendants occupy so prominent a place in the Rīg-veda Sanhitā, and as he is the alleged author of the text reputed the holiest in the entire Veda (iii. 62, 10), the *Gāyatrī par excellence*, there is no reason to doubt that, although he was a *rājanya*, he was unreservedly acknowledged by his contemporaries to be both a rishi and a priest. Nothing less than the uniform recognition and employment of the hymns handed down under his name as the productions of a genuine "seer," could have sufficed to gain for them a place in the sacred canon.¹⁶⁰ It is true we possess little authentic information regarding the process by which the hymns of different families were admitted to this honour; but at least there is no tradition, so far as I am aware, that those of Viśvāmitra and his family were ever treated as *antilegomena*. And if we find that later works consider it necessary to represent his priestly character as a purely exceptional one, explicable only on the ground of supernatural merit acquired by ardent devotion, we must recollect that the course of ages had brought about a most material change in Indian society, that the sacerdotal function had at length become confined to the members of an exclusive caste, and that the exercise of such an office in ancient times by persons of the regal or mercantile classes had ceased to be intelligible, except upon the supposition of such extraordinary sanctity as was alleged in the case of Viśvāmitra.

It is worthy of remark that although the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (see above) declares that Sunaśśepa, as belonging to a priestly family, was called on to exercise the sacerdotal office immediately after his release, yet the anterior possession of divine knowledge is also ascribed to Viśvāmitra and the Gāthins, and that Sunaśśepa is represented as such also R.V. ix. 93, 1 = S.V. i. 538. (Compare Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, for 1866, p. 387 ff.)

¹⁶⁰ That many at least of these compositions were really the work of Viśvāmitra, or his descendants, is proved, as we have seen, by the fact that their names are mentioned in them.

ceeding to this sacred lore, as well as to the regal dignity of the race on which he became engrafted.

The fact of Viśvāmitra having been both a rishi and an officiating priest, is thus, as we have seen, and if ancient tradition is to be believed, undoubted. In fact, if we look to the number of Vedic hymns ascribed to him and to his family, to the long devotion to sacerdotal functions which this fact implies, and to the apparent improbability that a person who had himself stood in the position of a king should afterwards have become a professional priest, we may find it difficult to believe that although (as he certainly was) a scion of a royal stock, he had ever himself exercised regal functions. Professor Roth remarks (Litt. u. Gesch. p. 125) that there is nothing either in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, or in the hymns of the Rig-veda to shew that he had ever been a king.¹⁶¹ But on the other hand, as the same writer observes (p. 126), and as we shall hereafter see, there are numerous passages in the later authorities in which the fact of his being a king is distinctly, but perhaps untruly, recorded.

It is so well known, that I need scarcely adduce any proof of the fact, that in later ages Rājanyas and Vaiśyas, though entitled to sacrifice and to study the Vedas, were no longer considered to have any right to officiate as priests on behalf of others. I may, however, cite a few texts on this subject. Manu says, i. 88 :

Adhyāpanam adhyayanam yājānam yājānam tathā | dānam pratigrahaṁ chaiva Brāhmaṇānām akalpayat | 89. *Prajānām rakṣaṇam dānam ijjā'dhyayanam eva cha | viśhayeshv aprasaktim cha kṣhattriyasya samāsataḥ |* 90. *Paśūnām rakṣaṇam dānam ijjā'dhyayanam eva cha | vanikpatham kuśidam cha Vaiśyasya kṛṣim eva cha |* 91. *Ekan eva tu Sūdrasya prabhuḥ karma samādiśat | eteshām eva varṇānām śuśrūṣhām anasūyayā |* 88. He (Brahmā) ordained teaching, study, sacrificing officiating for others at sacrifices, and the giving and receiving of gifts to be the functions of Brāhmans. 89. Protection of the people, the giving of gifts, sacrifice, study, and non-addiction to objects of sense, assigned as the duties of the Kshattriya. 90. The tending of cattle, giving of gifts, sacrifice, study, commerce, the taking of usury, and agriculture he appointed to be the occupations of the Vaiśya. 91. But the

¹⁶¹ May not R.V. iii. 43, 5 (quoted above), however, be understood to point something of this kind?

THE BRAHMANS AND KSHATTRIYAS.

lord assigned only one duty to the Sūdra, that of serving these other three classes without grudging." ८५५

Similarly it is said in the second of the Yajna-paribhāṣhā Sūtras, translated by Professor M. Müller (at the end of the ninth volume of the Journal of the German Oriental Society, p. xliii.), "that sacrifice is proper to the three classes, the Brāhman, Rājanya, and also the Vaisya." 162 Prof. Müller also refers to Kātyāyana's Śrauta Sūtras, of which i. 1, 5 and 6 are as follows:

5. *Angahīnāśrotriya - śhaṇḍa - śūdra - varjam* | 6. *Brāhmaṇa-rājanya-vaiśyānām śruteḥ* | "Men, 163 with the exception of those whose members

162 Prof. Müller does not give the original text.

163 In one of these Sūtras of Kātyāyana (i. 1, 4) and its commentary a curious question (one of those which the Indian authors often think it necessary to raise and to settle, in order that their treatment of a subject may be complete and exhaustive) is argued, viz. whether the lower animals and the gods have any share in the practice of Vedic observances; or whether it is confined to men. The conclusion is that the gods cannot practise these rites, as they are themselves the objects of them, and as they have already obtained heaven and the other objects of desire with a view to which they are practised (*tatra devūnām devatāntarābhāvād anadhikārah | na hy ātmānam uddīśya tyāgaḥ sambhavati | kincha | devās cha prāpta-svargādi-kāmāḥ | na cha teshūm kinchid avāptavyam asti yad-arthaṁ karmāni kurvate* |). As regards the right of the lower animals to sacrifice, although the point is decided against them on the ground of their only "looking to what is near at hand, and not to the rewards of a future world" (*te hy āsannam eva chetayante na pāralaukikam phalam*); still it is considered necessary seriously to obviate a presumption in their favour that they seek to enjoy pleasure and avoid pain, and even appear to indicate their desire for the happiness of another world by seeming to observe some of the Vedic prescriptions: "*Na nu uktaṁ śinaś' chaturdaśyām upavāsa-darśanāt śyenasya cha aṣṭamyām upavāsa-darśanāch cha te 'pi pāralaukikāṁ jñānti*" *iti* | *tat katham avagamyate* " *te dharmārtham upavasanti*" *iti* | *ye hi veda-smṛiti-purāṇādikam paṭhanti te eva jñānti yad* " *anena karmaṇā idam phalam amutra prāpsyate*" *iti* | *na cha ete vedādikam paṭhanti nīpy anyebhyaḥ āgamaṃ jñānti* " *tena śāstrārtham avivāṇśaḥ phalam āmushmikam akūmayantaḥ katham tat-sūdhanaṁ karma kuryuḥ* | *tasmād na dharmārtham upavasanti* *iti* | *kimartham tarhy eteshūm upavāsaḥ | uchyaते | rogād aruchir eshūm | tarhi niyata-kāle katham rogaḥ | uchyaते | niyata-kālāḥ api rogāḥ bhavanti yathā tṛtīyaka-chā-turthikādi-jvarāḥ | adhanās cha ete* | " But do not some say that 'from a dog having been noticed to fast on the fourteenth day of the month, and a hawk on the eighth, they also have a knowledge of matters connected with a future life?' But how is it known that these dogs and hawks fast from religious motives? For it is only those who read the Vedas, Śāritis, Purāṇas, etc., who are aware that by means of such and such observances, such and such rewards will be obtained in another world. But these animals neither read the sacred books for themselves, nor ascertain their contents from others. How then, ignorant as they are of the contents of the scriptures, and devoid of any desire for future rewards, can they perform those rites which are the means of attaining them? It is therefore to be concluded that they do not fast from religious motives. But why, then, do they fast? We reply, because from sickness they have a disinclination

are defective, those who have not read the Veda, eunuchs, and Sūdras have a right to sacrifice. 6. It is Brāhmanas, Rājanyas, and Vaiśya. (only who) according to the Veda (possess this privilege)."

ation for food. But how do they happen to be sick on certain fixed days? We answer there are also certain diseases which occur on fixed days, as tertian and quartan agues. Another reason why the lower animals cannot sacrifice is that they are destitute of wealth (and so unable to provide the necessary materials)."

¹⁶⁴ "And yet," Prof. Müller remarks (ibid), "concessions were made (to other and lower classes) at an early period. One of the best known cases is that of the Rathakāra. Then the Nishādasthapati, though a Nishāda chief and not belonging to the three highest classes was admitted to great sacrifices, e.g. to the gāvedhukacharu." The S'atap. Br. i. 1, 4, 12, has the following words: *Tāni vai etāni chatvāri vācha | "ehi" iti brāhmaṇasya "āgahi" "ādrava" vaiśyasya cha rājanyabandhoḥ cha "ādḥāva" iti sūdrasya* | "[In the formula, *harishkrid ehi*, 'come, o oblation-maker,' referred to in the previous paragraph, and its modifications] these four (different) words are employed to express 'come:' *ehi*, 'come,' in the case of a Brāhman; *āgahi*, 'come hither,' in the case of a Vaiśya; *ādrava*, 'hasten hither,' in the case of a Rājanyabandhu, and *ādḥāva*, 'run hither,' in the case of a S'ūdra." On this Prof. Weber remarks, in a note on his translation of the first adhyāya of the first book of the S' P. Br. (Journ. Germ. Or. Soc. iv. p. 301): "The entire passage is of great importance, as it shews (in opposition to what Roth says in the first vol. of this Journal p. 83) that the S'ūdras were then admitted to the holy sacrifices of the Arians, and understood their speech, even if they did not speak it. The latter point cannot certainly be assumed as a necessary consequence, but it is highly probable; and I consequently incline to the view of those who regard the S'ūdras as an Arian tribe which immigrated into India before the others." See above, p. 141, note 251, and Ind. Stud. ii. 194, note, where Prof. Weber refers to the Mahābhārata, S'antip. verse 2304 ff. which are as follows: *Svāhākāra-vashaṭkūrau mantrah sūdre na vidyate | tasmāch chhūdraḥ pākayajñair yojetūvratavūn svayam | pūrṇapātramayīm āhuḥ pākayajñasya dakṣiṇām | sūdraḥ Pajjavano nūna sahasrañām sataṁ dadau | Aindrāgnyena vidhānena dakṣiṇām iti naḥ śrutam* | "The svāhākāra, and the vashaṭkāra, and the mantras do not belong to a S'ūdra. Wherefore let a man of this class sacrifice with pākayajñas, being incapacitated for (Vedic) rites (*śrauta-vratopāya-kīnaḥ* Comm.). They say that the gift (*dakṣiṇā*) proper for a pākayajna consists of a full dish (*pūrṇapātramayī*). A S'ūdra called Pajjavana gave as a present a hundred thousand (of these pūrṇapātras) after the Aindrāgny rule." Here, says Prof. Weber, "the remarkable tradition is recorded that Pajjavana, i.e. Sudās, who was so famous for his sacrifices, and who is celebrated in the Rig-veda as the patron of Viśvāmitra and enemy of Vasishṭha, was a S'ūdra." In the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, vii. 11, 24, the duties of a S'ūdra are described to be "submissiveness, purity, honest service to his master, sacrifice without mantras, abstinence from theft, truth, and the protection of cows and Brāhmanas" (*sūdrasya sannatiḥ sūchānāṁ sevā svāmīny amāyayā | amantrayajno hy asteyaṁ saḥyāṁ go-vipra-rakṣaṇam* |). The Commentator defines *amantrayajnaḥ* thus: *namaskāreṇaiva pancha-yajñānuśṭhānam*, "the practice of the five sacrifices with obsequence," and quotes Yajñavalkya. See also Wilson's Vishnu Purāṇa, vol. iii. p. 87, and notes; Müller's Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 208; the same author's Essay, at the end of the ninth vol. of the Journ. Germ. Or. Soc. p. lxxii.; and Bohtlingk and Roth's Lexicon. s.v. *vōkauna*.

According to the Ait. Br. vii. 19, "the Brāhman alone of the four castes has the right of consuming things offered in sacrifice" (*etāḥ vai prajāḥ hutādo yad brāhmaṇāḥ | atha etāḥ ahutādo yad rājanyo vaiśyaḥ śūdraḥ*). And yet, as Prof. Müller observes, it is said in the Satap. Br. v. 5, 4, 9: *Chatvāro vai varṇāḥ brāhmaṇo rājanyo vaiśyaḥ śūdro na ha eteshām ekaśchana bhavati yaḥ somaṁ vamati | sa yad ha eteshām ekaśchit syāt syād ha eva prāyaśchittiḥ* | "There are four classes, the Brāhman, Rājanya, Vaiśya, and Śūdra. There is no one of these who omits (i.e., I suppose, dislikes) the soma. If anyone of them however should do so, let there be an atonement."

Professor Weber, by whom also these words are quoted (Ind. St. x. 12), remarks that "they leave open the possibility of Rājanyas, Vaiśyas, and even Śūdras partaking of the soma, the only consequence being that they must as an expiation perform the *Sautrāmaṇī* rite."

In the twenty-first of the Yajna-paribhāṣhā Sūtras, translated by Müller, p. xlvii., it is declared that the priestly dignity belongs to the Brāhmans; and it is laid down by the Indian authorities that even when the sacrifice is of a kind intended exclusively for Kshattriyas, the priest must still be a Brāhman and not a Kshattriya, the reason being that men of the former class only can eat the remains of the sacrifice (see Kātyāyana's Sr. Sūtras, i. 2, 8): *Brāhmaṇāḥ ṛitviḥ bhaksha-pratishedhāḥ*, *Ġtarayoh*, "the Brāhmans only are priests, because the other two castes are forbidden to eat (the remains of the sacrifice)". See also Weber, Ind. St. x. pp. 17 and 31, and the passages of the Ait. Br. viii. 24 and 27, referred to in pages 30 and 31: 24. *Na ha vai apurohitasya rājno devāḥ annam adanti | tasmād rājā 'yakshamāno brāhmaṇam puro dadhita* | The gods do not eat the food offered by a king who has no purohita. Wherefore (even) when not about to sacrifice, the king should put forward a Brāhman (as his domestic priest)." 27. *Yo ha vai trīṇ purohitāṁs trīṇ purodhātṛin veda sa brāhmaṇaḥ purohitaḥ | sa vadeta purodhāyai | Agnir vāva purohitaḥ prithivī purodhātā vāyur vāva purohito 'ntariksham purodhātā ādityo vāva purohito dyauh purodhātā | esha ha vai purohito yaḥ evaṁ veda atha sa tirohito yaḥ evaṁ na veda | tasya rājā mitraṁ bhavati dvishantam apabādhati | yasyaivaṁ vidvān brāhmaṇo rāṣṭra-gopaḥ purohitaḥ | kshattreṇa kshattriṁ jayati balena balaṁ āsnute | yasyaivaṁ vidvān brāhmaṇo rāṣṭra-gopaḥ purohitaḥ | tasmai*

rāshtra-gopaḥ purohitaḥ | "The Brāhman who knows the three purohitas, and their three appointers, is a (proper) purohita, and should be nominated to this office. Agni is one purohita, and the earth appoints him; Vāyu another, and the air appoints him; the Sun is a third, and the sky appoints him. He who knows this is a (proper) purohita; and he who does not know this is to be rejected. (Another) king becomes the friend of the prince who has a Brāhman possessing such knowledge for his purohita and the protector of his realm; and he vanquishes his enemy. He who has a Brāhman possessing etc. (as above) conquers (another's) regal power by (his own) regal power, and acquires another's force by (his own) force. With him who has a Brāhman etc. (as above) the people are openly united and in harmony."

I add another passage from the same Brāhmaṇa, which might also have been properly introduced in an earlier chapter of this work (chapt. i. sect. iii.) as it relates to the creation of the four castes :

Ait. Br. vii. 19. *Prajāpatir yajnam asṛijata | yajnaṁ sṛiṣṭam anu brahma-kshattre asṛijyetām | brahma-kshattre anu drayyah prajāḥ asṛijyanta hutādaś cha ahutādaś cha brahma eva anu hutāduḥ kshattram anu ahutādaḥ | etāḥ vai prajāḥ hutādo yad brāhmaṇāḥ | atha etāḥ ahutādo yad rājanyo vaiśyaḥ śūdraḥ | tūbhyo yajnaḥ udakrāmat | tam brahma-kshattre anvaitām yāny eva brahmaṇāḥ āyudhāni tair brahma anvait yāni kshattrasya taṁ (? taiḥ) kshattram | etāni vai brahmaṇāḥ āyudhāni yad yajnāyudhāni | atha etāni kshattrasya āyudhani yad āśva-rathaḥ karachaḥ ishū-dhanva | taṁ kshattram ananvāpya nyavarttata | āyudhebh्यो ha sma asya vijamānaḥ parāṇ eva eti | atha enam brahma anvait | tam āpnot | tam āptvā parastād nirudhya atishṭhat | sa āptaḥ parastād niruddhas tishṭhan jñātvā svāny āyudhāni brahma upāvarttata | tasmād ha apy etarhi yajno brahmaṇy eva brāhmaṇeṣhu pratishṭhitāḥ | atha enat kshattram anvāgachhat tad abravīt "upa mū asmin yajne hvasva" iti | tat "tathā" ity abravīt "tad vai nidhūya svāny āyudhāni brahmaṇāḥ eva āyudhair brahmaṇo rūpeṇa brahma bhūtvā yajnam upavarttāsva" iti | "tathā" iti tat kshattram nidhūya svāny āyudhāni brahmaṇāḥ eva āyudhair brahmaṇo rūpeṇa brahma bhūtvā yajnam upavarttata | tasmād ha apy etarhi kshattriyo yajamāno nidhūya eva svāny āyudhāni brahmaṇāḥ eva āyudhair brahmaṇo rūpeṇa brahma bhūtvā yajnam upavarttata |*

"Prajāpati created sacrifice. After sacrifice, Brāhmān (sacred know-

ledge) and Kshättra (regal power)¹⁶⁵ were created. After these, two kinds of creatures were formed, viz. those who eat, and those who do not eat, oblations. After Brāhmān came the eaters of oblations, and after Kshättra those who do not eat them. These are the eaters of oblations, viz. the Brāhman. Those who do not eat them are the Rājanya, the Vaiśya, and the Sūdra. From these creatures sacrifice departed. Brāhmān and Kshättra followed it, Brāhmān with the implements proper to itself, and Kshättra with those which are proper to itself. The implements of Brāhmān are the same as those of sacrifice, while those of Kshättra are a horse-chariot,¹⁶⁶ armour, and a bow and arrows. Kshättra turned back, not having found the sacrifice; which turns aside afraid of the implements of Kshättra. Brāhmān followed after it, and reached it; and having done so, stood beyond, and intercepting it. Being thus found and intercepted, sacrifice, standing still and recognizing its own implements, approached to Brāhmān. Wherefore now also sacrifice depends upon Brāhmān, upon the Brāhman. Kshättra then followed Brāhmān, and said, 'invite me' (too to participate) in this sacrifice.' Brāhmān replied, 'so be it: then laying aside thy own implements, approach the sacrifice with the implements of Brāhmān, in the form of Brāhmān, and having become Brāhmān.

¹⁶⁵ The two principles or functions represented by the Brāhman and Kshattriya respectively.

¹⁶⁶ See Weber, Indische Studien, ix. p. 318.

¹⁶⁷ See Weber, in the same page as last quoted.

¹⁶⁸ This idea may be further illustrated by a reference to several passages adduced by Professor Weber, Ind. St. x. 17, who remarks: "Hence every Rājanya and Vaiśya becomes through the consecration for sacrifice (*dīkshā*) a Brāhman during its continuance, and is to be addressed as such in the formula employed," and cites S. P. Br. iii. 2, 1, 39 f., part of which has been already quoted above, in p. 136, note; and also Ait. Br. vii. 23: *Sa ha dīkshamāṇaḥ eva brāhmaṇatām abhyupasti* | "He a king, when consecrated, enters into the condition of a Brāhman." See the rest of the section and sections 24, 25, and 31 in Dr. Haug's translation. The S. P. Br. xiii. 4, 1, 3, says, in opposition to the opinion of some, that an *as'vamedha*, which is a sacrifice proper to Rājanyas, should be begun in summer, which is their season: *tad vai vasante eva abhyūrabheta* | *vasanto vai brāhmaṇasya rituḥ* | *yaj u vai kaś cha yajate brāhmaṇībhūya iva eva yajate* | "Let him commence in spring, which is the Brāhman's season. Whosoever sacrifices does so after having as it were become a Brāhman." So too Kūtyāyana says in his S'rāuta Sūtras vii. 4, 12: "*Brāhmaṇa*" *ity eva vaiśya-rājanyayor api* | "The word Brāhmaṇa is to be addressed to a Vaiśya and a Rājanya also." On which the Commentator annotates: *Vaiśya-rājanyayor api yajne "dīkshito 'yam brāhmaṇaḥ" ity eva vaktavyam* | *na "dīkshito 'yam kshattriyo vaiśyo vā" iti* | "The formula 'This Brāhman has been consecrated' is to be used at the sacrifice of a Vaiśya

Kshättra rejoined, 'Be it so,' and, laying aside its own implements, approached the sacrifice with those of Brāhmān, in the form of Brāhmān, and having become Brāhmān. Wherefore now also a Kshattriya when sacrificing, laying aside his own implements, approaches the sacrifice with those of Brāhmān, in the form of Brāhmān, and having become Brāhmān."

The Mahābhārata, Sāntip. verses 2280 f. distinctly defines the duty of a Kshattriya in reference to sacrifice and sacred study: *Kshattriya-syāpi yo dharmas taṁ te vakshyāmi Bhārata | dadyād rājan na gūcheta yajeta na cha yājayet | nādhyāpayed adhyāta prajāś cha paripālayet* | "I will tell thee also the duties of a Kshattriya. Let him give, and not ask (gifts); let him sacrifice, but not officiate for others at sacrifices; let him not teach, but study; and let him protect the people."

It is clear that these passages which restrict the right of officiating ministerially at sacrifices to the members of the Brahmanical order,¹⁶⁹ represent a very different state of opinion and practice from that which prevailed in the earlier Vedic age, when Viśvāmitra, a Rājanya, and his relatives, were highly esteemed as the authors of sacred poetry, and were considered as perfectly authorized to exercise sacerdotal functions.

The result of the conflict between the opposing interests represented by Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra respectively, is thus described by Professor

and a Rājanya also; and not the words 'this Rājanya, or this Vaisya, has been consecrated.'"

¹⁶⁹ It appears from Arrian that the Greeks were correctly informed of this prerogative of the Brāhmans. He says, Indica, ch. xi. : *Kal ὅστις δὲ ἰδίᾳ θύει, ἐξηγητὴς αὐτῇ τῆς θυσιῆς τῶν τις σοφιστῶν τούτων γίνεται, ὡς οὐκ ἂν ἄλλως κεχαρισμένα τοῖς θεοῖς θύσαντας.* "And whosoever sacrifices in private has one of these sophists" (so the highest of the classes, here said to be seven in number, is designated) "as director of the ceremony, since sacrifice could not otherwise be offered acceptably to the gods." Arrian makes another assertion (ibid. xii.) which, if applied to the time when he wrote (in the second Christian century), is not equally correct. After observing that the several classes were not allowed to intermarry, nor to practice two professions, nor to pass from one class into another, he adds: *Μοῦνον σφίσιν ἀνέται σοφιστὴν ἐκ παντὸς γένεος γενέσθαι ὅτι οὐ μαλθακὰ τοῖσι σοφιστῆσιν εἰσὶ τὰ πρήγματα, ἀλλὰ πάντων ταλαιπωρότατα.* "Only it is permitted to a person of any class among them to become a sophist; for the life of that class is not luxurious, but the most toilsome of all." However indubitably true the first part of this sentence may have been in the age of Viśvāmitra, it cannot be correctly predicated of the age of Arrian, or even of the period when India was invaded by Alexander the Great. The mistake may have arisen from confounding the Buddhists with the Brāhmans, or from supposing that all the Brahmanical Indians, who adopted an ascetic life, were regarded as "sophists."

Roth at the close of his work on the literature and history of the Veda, which has been so often quoted, p. 141 : "Vasishṭha, in whom the future position of the Brahmans is principally foreshadowed, occupies also a far higher place in the recollections of the succeeding centuries than his martial rival; and the latter succumbs in the conflict out of which the holy race of Brahmāvarṭta was to emerge. Vasishṭha is the sacerdotal hero of the new order of things. In Viśvāmitra the ancient condition of military shepherd-life in the Punjab is thrown back for ever into the distance. This is the general historical signification of the contest between the two Vedic families, of which the literature of all the succeeding periods has preserved the recollection."

SECT. VIIa—*Do the details in the last two sections enable us to decide in what relation Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra stood to each other as priests of Sudās?*

It appears from the data supplied in the two preceding sections that both Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra are represented as priests of a king called Sudās. This is shewn, as regards the former rishi (see pp. 319 ff., above), by R.V. vii. 18, 4, 5, and 21–25; and vii. 33, 1–6, where he is said to have interceded with Indra for Sudās, who, as appears from verse 25 of the second of these hymns, was the son of Pijavana. A similar relation is shewn by R V. iii. 53, 9–13 to have subsisted between Viśvāmitra and Sudās (see above, p. 342); and although Sudās is not in that passage identified with the king who was Vasishṭha's patron, by the addition of his patronymic, we are told in the Nirukta, ii. 24, that he was the same person, the son of Pijavana. There is therefore no doubt that, according to ancient tradition, the two rishis were both priests of the same prince. It further appears that the Bharatas, with whom, as we have seen, Viśvāmitra was connected, are in R.V. vii. 33, 6 referred to as in hostility with Sudās and his priest. Are we then to conclude that the one set of facts excludes the other—that the two rishis could not both have been the family-priests of Sudās?

There is no reason to arrive at such an inference. Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra could not, indeed, have been the domestic priests of Sudās at one and the same period. But they may have been so at different

times; and the one may have supplanted the other. It is, however, very difficult to derive from the imperfect materials supplied in the passages to which I have referred any clear conception of the shape and course which the contest between these two rivals took, or to fix the periods at which they respectively enjoyed their patron's favour. Prof. Roth thinks¹⁷⁰ that some light is thrown on this obscure subject by the different parts of the 53rd hymn of the third mandala of the Rig-veda. This composition, as it stands, contains, as he considers, fragments of hymns by Viśvāmītra or his descendants, of different dates; and the verses (9-13), in which that rishi represents himself and the Kausīkas as being the priests of Sudās, are, in his opinion, earlier than the concluding verses (21-24),¹⁷¹ which consist of imprecations directed against Vasishṭha. These last verses, he remarks, contain an expression of wounded pride, and threaten vengeance against an enemy who had come into possession of some power or dignity which Viśvāmītra himself had previously enjoyed. And as we find from one of his hymns (the 53rd) that he and his adherents had at one time led Sudās to victory, and enjoyed a corresponding consideration;—while from Vasishṭha's hymns it is clear that he and his family had also been elevated in consequence of similar claims to a like position;—it would seem to result that Viśvāmītra had cursed Vasishṭha for this very reason that he had been supplanted by him. The former with his Kuśikas had through the growing influence of his rival been driven away by Sudās to the Bharatas the enemies of that prince and of the Tritsus; and then

¹⁷⁰ See Litt. und Gesch. des Weda, pp. 121 ff.

¹⁷¹ I have (above, p. 343) characterized these verses as obscure and have left them untranslated. The portions of the following version which are printed in italics are doubtful: verse 22. "He (or, it) vexes (*turns the edge of*) even an axe; and breaks even a sword. A seething cauldron, even, o Indra, when *over-heated*, casts out foam. 23. O men, no notice is taken of the arrow. They lead away the *intelligent* (*lodha*) looking upon him as a beast. Men do not, however, pit a *hack* to run against a racer; they do not lead an ass before horses. 24. These sons of Bharata, o Indra, desire separation, not vicinity. They constantly urge the horse *as if to a distance*; they carry about the *bow* in the battle." The reader may consult Prof. Wilson's translation R.V. vol. iii. p. 89 f., as well as Roth's Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 109 f. In his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 42, Roth conjectures that both *lodha* and *paśu*, in verse 23, may denote animals of different natures, and that the clause may mean something to the same effect as "they look on the wolf as if it were a hare." In his Lexicon, s.v. *paśu*, he takes that word to denote a head of cattle (ein Stück Vieh) as a term of contempt. He takes *vyāvāja*, in verse 24, to mean "having the impulsive force (?) (*Schnell-Kraft*) of a bow-string."

vowed vengeance against their enemies. Roth remarks that if this conjecture appears too bold, which he does not allow, there is no alternative but to regard verses 9–11 of R.V. iii. 53, as interpolated, and to hold that Viśvāmitra had always been allied with the Bharatas. But, as he urges, in a period such as that which the hymns of the Veda represent to us—a time of feud and foray among the small neighbouring tribes, when the power of the leaders of families and petty chiefs was unlimited, when we observe that the ten kings were allied against Sudās—in a period of subdivided dominion like this it would be far more surprising to find a family so favoured by the gods as that of Viśvāmitra or Vasishṭha in continued and undisturbed possession of influence over any one of these chieftains, than to see mutual aggression, hostility, and vindictiveness, prevailing even among families and clans united to one another by community of language and manners. It is further evident from later tradition, as Roth remarks, that Vasishṭha and his family had not always been the objects of Sudās's favour; but had, on the contrary, been at some time or other sufferers from his enmity or that of his house; and in proof of this he refers to the passage which has been cited above (p. 328) from Sāyaṇa's note on R.V. vii. 32, and the *Sātyāyana* and *Tāṇḍya Brāhmaṇas*, as there quoted; and also to the 176th adhyāya of the *Ādiparvan* of the *Mahābhārata*, verses 6696 ff., which will be adduced in a future section.

According to Roth's view (p. 124) the alienation between Sudās and Vasishṭha fomented by Viśvāmitra was only of temporary duration, and we must, therefore, understand that according to his view, the former rishi and his family remained eventually victors in the contest for influence between themselves and their rivals.

Professor Weber, in a note appended to an article by Dr. A. Kuhn in page 120 of the first volume of his *Indische Studien*, expresses a different opinion. "The testimonies," he says, "adduced by Roth, pp. 122 ff., according to which Sudās appears in the Epic age as hostile to Brahmanical interests, stand in opposition to his assertion that Vasishṭha's family finally banished Viśvāmitra and the Kuśikas from the court of that prince. The enmity between the latter and Vasishṭha, the prototype of Brahmanhood, is thus by no means of temporary duration (Roth, p. 124), but the very contrary." The passages cited by Roth, which Weber here claims as supporting his

own view, are Manu, vii. 41 (see above, p. 296), the Anukramaṇī with the Sātyāyana and Tāṇḍya Brāhmaṇas quoted in p. 328, and the 126th and following sections of the Ādip. of the M. Bh. which will be adduced hereafter. To these may be added the text from the Kaushitakī Brāhmaṇa, cited in p. 328. If Sudās became ultimately reconciled to Vasishṭha, and re-instated him and his relatives in their position of court priests, to the exclusion of the rival family of Viśvāmitra, it seems hard to understand, according to Professor Weber's argument, how that prince's name should have been handed down by tradition as one of the most prominent examples of impiety displayed in resistance to Brahmanical pretensions. It is, however, to be observed that, except in the text of Manu, it is the descendants of Sudās, and not the king himself, who are charged with the outrages committed against Vasishṭha's family; and that in the passage of the M. Bh. above referred to (Ādip. vv. 7669 ff.) the son of Sudās is represented as becoming ultimately reconciled to Vasishṭha.¹⁷² And if the passages, which have been cited above from the Rig-veda (pp. 330 f.) in allusion to Sudās's deliverance by the gods, refer to a real person, and to the

¹⁷² It is also worthy of remark that the Anusūsanap. of the M. Bh. contains a conversation between Vasishṭha and Saudāsa (the son, or one of the descendants of, Sudās) about the pre-eminent purity and excellence of cows, verse 3732: *Etasminn eva kūle tu Vasishṭham ṛishi-sattamam | Ikshvāku-vamsājo rājā Saudāso vadatām varah | sarva-loka-charaṇāṁ siddham brahma-koṣaṁ sanātanam | purohitam abhipraṣṭum abhividyopachakrame | Saudāsa uvācha | trailokyē bhagavan kimsrit paritraṁ kathyate 'nagha | yat kīrttayan sadā marttyaḥ prāpnuyāt puṇyam uttamam |* "At this time the eloquent king Saudāsa, sprung from the race of Ikshvāku, proceeded, after salutation, to make an enquiry of his family-priest Vasishṭha, the eternal saint, the most excellent of rishis, who was able to traverse all the world, and was a treasure of sacred knowledge: 'What, o venerable and sinless man, is declared to be the purest thing in the three worlds, by constantly celebrating which one may acquire the highest merit?' Vasishṭha in reply expatiates at great length on the merit resulting from bestowing cows, and ascribes to these animals some wonderful properties, as that they are the "support of all beings" (*pratishṭhā bhūtānām*, verse 3736), "the present and the future" (*gīvo bhūtāṁ cha bhavyāṁ cha*, 3737), and describes the cow as "pervading the universe, mother of the past and future" (*gayā sarvam idaṁ vyūptam jagat sthūvara-jangamam | tām dhenuṁ śirasā vande bhūta-bhavyanya mātaram*, 3799). The sequel is thus told in verse 3801: *Varam idaṁ iti bhūmido (bhūmipo?) vichintya pravaram ṛisher vachanaṁ tato mahātma | vyasṛjata niyatūtmavān dvijebhyo subahu cha go-dhanam ūptavāns lokān |* "The great, self-subduing king, considering that these words of the rishi were most excellent, lavished on the Brāhmins very great wealth in the shape of cows, and obtained the worlds."—So here we find the son of Saudāsa extolled as a saint.

same individual with whom we are at present concerned, they are difficult to reconcile with these traditions in the Brāhmaṇas, Mahābhārata, and Purāṇas; inasmuch as they are not said to be the productions of Viśvāmitra or his descendants, and as they necessarily imply that Sudās was a pious prince who worshipped the popular deities in the way prescribed by the rishis by whom he was commemorated, since the latter would not otherwise have celebrated him in their hymns as a conspicuous object of divine favour. Tradition, too, as we have seen (p. 268) represents Sudās to have been the author of a Vedic hymn. The verses of the 104th hymn of the seventh book which I have quoted (above, p. 327) do not appear to contribute any further aid towards the solution of the question under consideration. Assuming that they contain a curse aimed at Viśvāmitra we have no means of ascertaining when they were uttered; whether the charge preferred against Vasishṭha preceded or followed the ascendancy of his rival.

We seem, therefore, to possess no sufficient data for settling the question of the relations in which Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra respectively stood to king Sudās, further than that they both appear, from the hymns of the Rīg-veda, to have been, at one period or another, his family priests; but which of the two was the first, and which the last, to enjoy the king's favour, must, according to all appearance, remain a mystery.

SECT. VIII.—*Story of Triśanku.*

I shall now proceed to adduce the different legends in the Purāṇas, the Rāmāyaṇa, and the Mahābhārata, in which Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra are represented as coming into conflict.

In the third chapter of the fourth book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa (Wilson, vol. iii. pp. 284 ff.) we find a story about a king Satyavrata, called also Triśanku, the 26th in descent from Ikshvāku, who had become degraded to the condition of a Chāṇḍāla, about whom it is briefly related, iv. 3, 13 : *Drūdaśa-vārshikyām anāvṛishṭyām Viśvāmitra - kalatrāpatya - poshaṇārthaṁ chāṇḍāla - pratigraha - pariharanāya cha Jāhnavī - tira - nyagrodhe mṛiga-māṁsam anudinam babandha* | 14. *Paritūṣṭeṇa cha Viśvāmitreṇa sa-sārtraḥ svargam āropitaḥ* | “During a twelve years' drought he daily suspended deer's flesh for the support of Viśvāmitra's wife and children

on a nyagrodha-tree on the banks of the Ganges, intending by this means to spare them the (humiliation of) receiving a gift from a Chañḍāla; and was in consequence raised bodily to heaven by Viśvāmitra, who was gratified (with his conduct).¹⁷³ ॐ ॥

This story is told at greater length in the *Harivaṃśa* (sections 12 and 13) where *Vasishṭha* also is introduced. I have already (p. 337) remarked on the super-human longevity ascribed to this sage, who is represented as contemporary both with *Ikshvāku*, and with his descendants down to the sixty-first generation. But Indian mythology, with its boundless resources in supernatural machinery, and in the doctrine of transmigration, can reconcile all discrepancies, and explain away all anachronisms, making any sage re-appear at any juncture when his presence may be required, another and yet the same.

The *Harivaṃśa* states that *Satyavrata* (*Triśanku*) had been expelled from his home by his father for the offence of carrying off the young wife of one of the citizens under the influence of a criminal passion (verse 718. *Yena bhāryyū hṛitā pūrvān kṛitodrahā parasya vai* | 720. *Jahāra kāmāt kanyūn sa kasyachit puravāsinaḥ*); and that *Vasishṭha* did not interfere to prevent his banishment. His father retired to the woods to live as a hermit. In consequence of the wickedness which had been committed, *Indra* did not rain for a period of twelve years. At that time *Viśvāmitra* had left his wife and children and gone to practice austerities on the sea-shore. His wife, driven to extremity by want, was on the point of selling her second son for a hundred cows, in order to support the others; but this arrangement was stopped by the intervention of *Satyavrata*, who liberated the son when bound,¹⁷⁴ and

¹⁷³ In the *Mahābh.* *S'āntip.* verses 5330 ff. (referred to by Weber, *Ind. St.* i. 475, note) there is a story of *Viśvāmitra* determining to eat dog's flesh in a period of famine between the end of the *Tretā*-age and the beginning of the *Dvāpara*; and holding a conversation on this subject with a *Chañḍāla*. The circumstance is referred to in *Manu*, x. 108: *Keshudhārttaś chātum abhyāgūd Viśvāmitraḥ śva-jāghanīm | chañḍāla-hastād ādāya dharmādharma-vichakṣhaṇaḥ* | "And *Viśvāmitra*, who knew right and wrong, resolved to eat a dog's thigh, taking it from the hand of a *Chañḍāla*."

¹⁷⁴ See in *Ind. Stud.* ii. 121 ff. Professor Roth's remarks on the peculiar relation in which he regards this story as standing to that of *S'unasēpa*, as given in the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*. The various incidents in the one present in many respects a curious parallel to those of the other, which he considers can hardly be accidental; and he thinks this version of the legend of *Triśanku* may have arisen out of a transformation and distortion of that of *S'unasēpa*.

maintained the family by providing them with the flesh of wild animals: and according to his father's injunction, consecrated himself for the performance of a silent penance for twelve years (verse 732. *Upāṁśa-vratam āsthāya dīkṣhām dvādaśa-vārshikīm | pitur niyogād avahat tasmin vana-gate nripe*). The story proceeds thus :

Verse 733. *Ayodhyām chaiva rāshṭraṁ cha tathāivāntahpuram muniḥ | yājñyopādhyāya-sambandhād Vaśiṣṭhaḥ paryarakṣhata | Satyavrataḥ tu bālyād vai bhāvino 'rthasya vā balāt | Vaśiṣṭhe 'bhyadhikam manyuṁ dhūrayāmāsa nityadā | 735. Pitrā hi tam tadā rājyāt tyajyamānaṁ svam ātmajam | na vārayāmāsa munir Vaśiṣṭhaḥ kṛāṇena ha | pāṇi-grahana-mantrāṇām niṣṭhā syāt saptame pade | na cha Satyavrataḥ tas-mād dhṛitavān saptame pade | jūnaṁ dharmān Vaśiṣṭhaḥ tu na mām trūṭiti Bhārata | Satyavrataḥ tadā roṣhaṁ Vaśiṣṭhe manasā 'karot | guṇa-buddhyā tu bhagavān Vaśiṣṭhaḥ kṛitavāns tadā | na cha Satyavrataḥ tasya tam upāṁśum abudhyata | . . . 740. Tena tv idānīm vahatā dīkṣhām tām durrahāṁ bhuvī | "kulasya niṣkṛitis tāta kṛitā sāvai bhaved" iti | na tam Vaśiṣṭho bhagavān pitrā tyaktam nyavārayat | abhīṣhekṣhyāmy aham putram asyety evam matir muneḥ | sa tu dvādaśa-vārshikīm tām dīkṣhām udvahan bālī | avidyamāne māmse tu Vaśiṣṭhasya mahātmanah | sarva-kāma-dughām dogdhrīm dadarśa sa nṛipātmanah | tām vai krodhāt cha mohāt cha śramāt chaiva kṣudhārditah | daśa-dharma-gato rājā jaghāna Janamejaya | . . . 745. Tach cha mām-sam svayam chaiva Viśvāmitrasya chātmanā | bhojayāmāsa tach chkrutvā Vaśiṣṭho 'py asya chukrudhe | . . . 750. Viśvāmitras tu dārāṇām āgato bharāṇe kṛite | sa tu tasmai varam prādād muniḥ prītas Triśankave | chhandyamāno varenūtha varam vavre nṛipātmanah | saśarīro vraje svargam ity evam yāchito varah | anāvṛiṣṭi-bhaye tasmin gate dvādaśa-vārshike | pitrye 'bhīṣhichya rājye tu yājñyamāsa tam muniḥ | miśhatām devatānām cha Vaśiṣṭhasya cha Kauśikah | saśarīraṁ tadā tam tu divam āropayat prabhuḥ |*

733. "Meanwhile Vaśiṣṭha, from the relation subsisting between the king (Satyavrata's father) and himself, as disciple¹⁷⁵ and spiritual preceptor, governed the city of Ayodhyā, the country, and the interior apartments of the royal palace. But Satyavrata, whether through folly or the force of destiny, cherished constantly an increased indignation-against Vaśiṣṭha, who for a (proper) reason had not interposed to pre-

¹⁷⁵ Literally "the person in whose behalf sacrifice was to be performed."

vent his exclusion from the royal power by his father. 'The formulas of the marriage ceremonial are only binding,' said Satyavrata, 'when the seventh step has been taken,'¹⁷⁶ and this had not been done when I seized the damsel: still Vaśishṭha, who knows the precepts of the law, does not come to my aid.' Thus Satyavrata was incensed in his mind against Vaśishṭha, who, however, had acted from a sense of what was right. Nor did Satyavrata understand (the propriety of) that silent penance imposed upon him by his father. . . . 740. When he had supported this arduous rite, (he supposed that) he had redeemed his family position. The venerable muni Vaśishṭha did not, however, (as has been said) prevent his father from setting him aside, but resolved to install his son as king. When the powerful prince Satyavrata had endured the penance for twelve years, he beheld, when he was without flesh to eat, the milch cow of Vaśishṭha which yielded all objects of desire; and under the influence of anger, delusion, and exhaustion, distressed by hunger, and failing in the ten duties [the opposites of which are then enumerated] he slew her . . . (745) and both partook of her flesh himself, and gave it to Viśvāmitra's sons to eat. Vaśishṭha hearing of this, became incensed against him," and imposed on him the name of Triśanku as he had committed three sins (verses 747-749). "750. On his return home, Viśvāmitra was gratified by the support which his wife had received, and offered Triśanku the choice of a boon. When this proposal was made, Triśanku chose the boon of ascending bodily to heaven. All apprehension from the twelve years' drought being now at an end, the muni (Viśvāmitra) installed Triśanku in his father's kingdom, and offered sacrifice on his behalf. The mighty Kauśika then, in spite of the resistance of the gods and of Vaśishṭha, exalted the king alive to heaven."

The legend of Triśanku is also related, though differently, in the Bālakāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa; but as it is there introduced as a portion of the history of Viśvāmitra's various contests with Vaśishṭha recorded in the 51st to 65th sections of that book, I shall reserve it till I take up that narrative.

¹⁷⁶ "The next ceremony is the bride's stepping seven steps. It is the most material of all the nuptial rites; for the marriage is complete and irrevocable so soon as she has taken the seventh step, and no sooner." Colebrooke's Misc. Ess. i. 218, where further details will be found.

SECT. IX.—*Legend of Hariśchandra.*

The son of Trisanku, the subject of the preceding story, was Hariśchandra, whose name is mentioned in the Vishnu P., but without any allusion to the events of his life. According to the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa,¹⁷⁷ however, he gave up his whole country, and sold his wife and son, and finally himself, in satisfaction of Viśvāmītra's demands for money. The following is a summary of the story as there told, book i. sections 7-9. We may perhaps regard it as having in part a polemical import, and as intended to represent Viśvāmītra, the Kshattriya rival of the Brāhmins, in the most unfavourable colours. The sufferings of Hariśchandra, his wife, and son, are very pathetically depicted, and the effect of the various incidents is heightened with great artistic skill. The story, in fact, appears to me one of the most touching to be found in Indian literature. Hariśchandra, the Purāṇa tells us, was a royal rishi (*rājarshi*) who lived in the Tretā age, and was renowned for his virtues, and the universal prosperity, moral and physical, which prevailed during his reign. On one occasion, when hunting, the king heard a sound of female lamentation which proceeded, it appears, from the Sciences who were becoming mastered by the austere-fervid sage Viśvāmītra, in a way they had never been before by anyone else; and were consequently crying out in alarm at his superiority. In fulfilment of his duty as a Kshattriya to defend the weak, and inspired by the god Ganeśa, who had entered into him, Hariśchandra exclaimed (i. 7, 12) " 'What sinner is this who is binding fire in the hem of his garment, while I, his lord, am present, resplendent with force and fiery vigour?' He shall to-day enter on his long sleep, pierced in all his limbs by arrows, which, by their discharge from my bow, illuminate all the quarters of the firmament" (12. *Ko'yam badhnāti vastrānte pāvakaṃ pāpa-krin naraḥ | baloṣṭha-tejasā dīpte mayi patyāv upasthite |* 13. *So'dya mat-kārmukā-kṣhepa - vidīpita - digantaraiḥ | śarair vibhinna - sarvāṅgo dīrghanidrām pravekshyati |*). Viśvāmītra was provoked by this address. In consequence of his wrath the Sciences instantly perished, and Hariśchandra, trembling like the leaf of an aśvattha tree, submissively represented that

¹⁷⁷ The same story is told in the Padma Purāṇa also. See Wilson's V.P. vol. iii. p. 287, and note. The glory of Hariśchandra is described in the M.Bh. Sabhāp. verses 489 ff.

he had merely done his duty as a king, which he defined as consisting in the bestowal of gifts on eminent Brāhmins and other persons of slender means, the protection of the timid, and war against enemies. Viśvāmitra hereupon demands a gift as a Brāhman intent upon receiving one. The king offers him whatever he may ask : Gold, his own son, wife, body, life, kingdom, good fortune (*hiranyaṁ vā suvarṇaṁ vā putraḥ patnī kalevaram | prānāḥ rājyam puraṁ lakṣmīṁ yad abhipretam ātmanaḥ* |). The saint first requires the present for the Rājasūya sacrifice. On this being promised, and still more offered, he asks for the empire of the whole earth, including everything but Hariśchandra himself, his wife and son, and his virtue which follows its possessor wherever he goes ¹⁷⁸ (i. 7, 28. *Vinā bhāryāṁ cha putraṁ cha śarīraṁ cha tavānagha | 29. Dharmāṁ cha sarva-dharma-jña yo yāntam anugachhati*). Hariśchandra joyfully agrees. Viśvāmitra then requires him to strip off all his ornaments, to clothe himself in the bark of trees, and to quit the kingdom with his wife Śaivya and his son. When he is departing the sage stops him and demands payment of his yet unpaid sacrificial fee. The king replies that he has only the persons of his wife, his son, and himself left. Viśvāmitra insists that he must nevertheless pay ; and that “unfulfilled promises of gifts to Brāhmins bring destruction” (i. 7. 35. *Viśeshato brāhmaṇānāṁ hantya adattam pratiṣṭutam*). The unfortunate prince, after being threatened with a curse, engages to make the payment in a month ; and commences his journey with a wife unused to such fatigues, amid the universal lamentations of his subjects. While he lingers, listening to their affectionate remonstrances against his desertion of his kingdom, Viśvāmitra comes up, and being

¹⁷⁸ Compare Manu's very striking verses, viii. 17, and iv. 239 ff., which may be freely rendered as follows :

“ Our virtue is the only friend that follows us in death ;
 All other ties and friendships end with our departing breath.
 Nor father, mother, wife, nor son beside us then can stay,
 Nor kinsfolk :—virtue is the one companion of our way.
 Alone each creature sees the light, alone the world he leaves ;
 Alone of actions, wrong or right, the recompence receives.
 Like log or clod, beneath the sod their lifeless kinsman laid,
 His friends turn round and quit the ground ; but virtue tends the dead.
 Be then a hoard of virtue stored, to help in day of doom ;
 By virtue led, we cross the dread, immeasurable gloom.”

See the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. xix. for 1862, p. 303 f.

incensed at the delay and the king's apparent hesitation, strikes the queen with his staff, as she is dragged on by her husband. All this Hariśchandra endures with patience, uttering no complaint. Then the five Viśvedevas, merciful gods, exclaimed, " 'To what worlds shall this sinner Viśvāmitra go, who has thrust down this most excellent of sacri- ficers from the royal dignity? Whose faith shall now sanctify the soma-juice poured out with recitation of texts at the great sacrifice, that we may drink it, and become exhilarated' " (i. 7, 62. *Atha viśve tadā devāḥ pancha prāhuḥ kṛipālavah | Viśvāmitraḥ supāpo 'yaṁ lokān kām samavāpsyati |* 63. *Yenāyaṁ yajvanām śreṣṭhaḥ sva-rājyād avaro-pitaḥ | kasya vā śraddhayā pūtaṁ sutaṁ somam mahādhware | pitrā cayam prayāsyāmo mudam mantra-purassaram |*). Viśvāmitra heard what they said, and by a curse doomed them to become men; he relented, however, so far as to exempt them from having offspring, and from other family ties and human weaknesses, and promised that they should eventually be restored to their pristine position as gods. They in consequence became partially incarnate as the five Pāṇḍus, the sons of Draupadī. Resuming the story of Hariśchandra, the writer tells us that he then proceeded with his wife and little son to Benares, imagining that this divine city, as the special property of Śiva, could not be possessed by any mortal. Here he found the relentless Viśvāmitra waiting for him, and ready to press his demand for the payment of his sacrificial gift, even before the expiration of the full period of grace. In this extremity Śaivyā the queen suggests with a sobbing voice that her husband should sell her. On hearing this proposal Hariśchandra swoons, then recovers, utters lamentations, and swoons again, and his wife, seeing his sad condition, swoons also. While they are in a state of unconsciousness, their famished child exclaims in distress, "O father, father, give me bread; O mother, mother, give me food: hunger overpowers me; and my tongue is parched" (i. 8, 35. *Tāta tāta dadasvānam ambāmba bhojanaṁ dada | kṣud me balavati jātū jihvāgraṁ śuśhyate tathā*). At this moment Viśvāmitra returns, and after recalling Hariśchandra to consciousness by sprinkling water over him, again urges payment of the present. The king again swoons, and is again restored. The sage threatens to curse him if his engagement is not fulfilled by sunset. Being now pressed by his wife, the king agrees to sell her, adding, however, "If my voice can utter such a wicked word, I do

what the most inhuman wretches cannot perpetrate" (i. 8, 48 f. *Āpī-śāmsair api yat karttūṃ na śakyaṃ tat karomy aham | yadi me śakyate vāṇī vaktum idṛik sudurvachah*). He then goes into the city, and in self-accusing language offers his queen for sale as a slave. A rich old Brāhman offers to buy her at a price corresponding to her value, to do his household work. Hariśchandra's heart was torn, and he could make no reply. The Brāhman paid down the money, and was dragging away the queen by the hair of her head, when her little son Rohitāśva, seeing his mother about to be taken away from him, began to cry, and laid hold of her skirts. The mother then exclaims: i. 8, 59, "*Munchāryya muncha mām tārād yāvāt pāśyāmy ahaṃ śīsum | durlabhaṃ darśanaṃ tāta punar asya bhavishyati | 60. Pāśyaihi vatsa mām evam mātaraṃ dāsyatām gatām | mām mā sprākṣiḥ rāja-puttra aspriśyā 'haṃ tavā-dhunā*" | 61. *Tataḥ sa bālāḥ sahasā dṛiṣṭvā kṛiṣṭām tu mātaram | samabhyadhārad ambetī rudan sāsṛāvilekṣaṇaḥ | 62. Tam āgataṃ dvijaḥ kretā bālam abhyāhanat padā | vadaṃs tathāpi so 'mbetī naivāmunchata mātaram | 63. Rājapatny uvācha | "prasādaṃ kuru me nūtha krīṇīshre-maṃ cha bālakam | kritā 'pi nāham bhavato vinaināṃ kāryya-sādhikā | 64. Ittham mamālpa-bhāgyāyāḥ prasāda-sumukho bhava | mām saṃyojaya bālena vatsenera payasvinīm"* | 65. *Brāhmaṇaḥ uvācha | "grihyatām vittam etat te dīyatām bālako mama"* | "'Let me go, let me go, venerable sir, till I look upon my son. I shall hardly ever behold him again. Come, my darling, see thy mother now become a slave. Touch me not, young prince; I may no longer be handled by thee.' Seeing his mother dragged away, the child ran after her, his eyes dimmed with tears, and crying 'mother.' The Brāhman purchaser kicked him when he came up; but he would not let his mother go, and continued crying 'mother, mother.' The queen then said to the Brāhman, 'Be so kind, my master, as to buy also this child, as without him I shall prove to thee but a useless purchase. 64. Be thus merciful to me in my wretchedness; unite me with my son, like a cow to her calf.'¹⁷⁹ The Brāhman agrees: 'Take this money and give me the boy.'" When his wife and son were being carried away, Hariśchandra broke out into lamentations: i. 8, 68. *Yāṃ na vāyur na chādityo nendur na cha pri-thag-janaḥ | dṛiṣṭavantaḥ purā patnīm seyaṃ dāsītvam āgatā | 69. Sūrya-vamśa-prasūto 'yaṃ sukumāra-karāṅguliḥ | samprāpto vikrayam*

¹⁷⁹ The whole of this reads like a scene from "Uncle Tom's Cabin."

bālo dhiñ mām astu sudurmatim | “‘She, my spouse, whom neither air, nor sun, nor moon, nor stranger had beheld, is now gone into slavery. This my son, a scion of the solar race, with his delicate hands and fingers, has been sold. Woe to me, wicked wretch that I am.’” After the Brāhman had gone out of sight with his purchases, Viśvāmitra again appeared and renewed his demands; and when the afflicted Hariśchandra offered him the small sum he had obtained by the sale of his wife and son, he angrily replied, i. 8, 74: *Kshattrabandho mame-mām trañ sadṛśiñ yajna-dakṣiṇām* | *manyase yadi tat kshipram paśya tram me balam param* | 75. *Tapaso ’ttra sutaptasya brāhmanyasyāmala-sya cha* | *mat-prabhāvasya chograsya śuddhasyādhyayanasya cha* | “‘If, miserable Kshattriya, thou thinkest this a sacrificial gift befitting my deserts, thou shalt soon behold the transcendent power of my ardent austere-fervour, of my spotless Brāhmanhood, of my terrible majesty, and of my holy study.’” Hariśchandra promises an additional gift, and Viśvāmitra allows him the remaining quarter of the day for its liquidation. On the terrified and afflicted prince offering himself for sale, in order to gain the means of meeting this cruel demand, Dharma (Righteousness) appears in the form of a hideous and offensive Chanḍāla, and agrees to buy him at his own price, large or small. Hariśchandra declines such a degrading servitude, and declares that he would rather be consumed by the fire of his persecutor’s curse than submit to such a fate. Viśvāmitra however again comes on the scene, asks why he does not accept the large sum offered by the Chanḍāla; and, when he pleads in excuse his descent from the solar race, threatens to fulminate a curse against him if he does not accept that method of meeting his liability. Hariśchandra implores that he may be spared this extreme of degradation, and offers to become Viśvāmitra’s slave in payment of the residue of his debt; whereupon the sage rejoins, “If thou art my slave, then I sell thee as such to the Chanḍāla for a hundred millions of money” (i. 8, 95. *Yadi preshyo mama bhavān chaṇḍālāya tato mayā* | *dāsa-bhāvam anuprāpto datto vittūrbudena vai* |). The Chanḍāla, delighted, pays down the money, and carries off Hariśchandra, bound, beaten, confused, and afflicted, to his own place of abode. Morning, noon, and evening the unfortunate prince repeats these words: i. 8, 99. *Bālā dīna-mukhī dṛishṭvā bālāñ dīna-mukham puraḥ* | *mām smaraty asukhāvishṭā* “*mochayishyati nau nṛipaḥ* | 100. *Upātta-vitto*

viṣṇā dattā vittam ato 'dhikam" | *na sū mām mṛiga-sāvākṣī vetti pṛpataram kṛitam* | 101. *Rājya-nāsaḥ suhṛit-tyāgo bhāryyā-tanaya-vik-
rayaḥ* | *prāptā chaṇḍalātā cheyam aho duḥkha-paramparā* | "My tender
wife, dejected, looking upon my dejected boy, calls me to mind while
she says, 'The king will ransom us (100) after he has gained money,
and paid the Brāhman a larger sum than he gave for us.' But my
fawn-eyed spouse is ignorant that I have become yet more wretched
than before. 101. Loss of my kingdom, abandonment of friends, sale
of my wife and son, and this fall into the condition of a Chaṇḍāla,—
what a succession of miseries!' Hariśchandra is sent by the Chaṇḍāla
to steal grave-clothes in a cemetery (which is described at tedious length,
with all its horrors and repulsive features), and is told that he will
receive two-sixths of the value for his hire; three-sixths going to his
master, and one-sixth to the king. In this horrid spot, and in this
degrading occupation, he spent, in great misery, twelve months, which
seemed to him like a hundred years (i. 8, 127. *Evaṁ dvādaśa-māsas tu
nītūḥ śata-samopamāḥ*). He then falls asleep and has a series of dreams
suggested by the life he had been leading (*śmaśānābhyāsa-yogena*, verse
129). After he awoke, his wife came to the cemetery to perform the
obsequies of their son, who had died from the bite of a serpent (verses
171 ff.). At first the husband and wife did not recognize each other,
from the change in appearance which had been wrought upon them
both by their miseries. Hariśchandra, however, soon discovers from
the tenor of her lamentations that it is his wife, and falls into a swoon;
as the queen does also when she recognizes her husband. When con-
sciousness returns, they both break out into lamentations, the father
bemoaning in a touching strain the loss of his son, and the wife the de-
gradation of the king. She then falls on his neck, embraces him, and
asks "whether all this is a dream, or a reality, as she is utterly be-
wilderer;" and adds, that "if it be a reality, then righteousness is un-
availing to those who practise it" (verse 210. *Rājan swapno 'tha tathyaṁ
vā yad etad manyate bhavān* | *tat kathyatūm mahābhūga mano vai muh-
yate mama* | 211. *Yady etad evaṁ dharmajña nāsti dharme saḥyātā* |).
After hesitating to devote himself to death on his son's funeral pyre
without receiving his master's leave, (as such an act of insubordination
might send him to hell) (verses 215 ff.), Hariśchandra resolves to do so,
braving all the consequences, and consoling himself with the hopeful

anticipation: verse 224. *Yadi dattaṃ yadi hutam guravo yadi tśhitāḥ | paratra sangamo bhūyāt puttrena saha cha tvayā |* "If I have given gifts, and offered sacrifices, and gratified my religious teachers, then may I be reunited with my son and with thee (my wife) in another world."¹⁸⁰ The queen determines to die in the same manner. When Hariśchandra, after placing his son's body on the funeral pile, is meditating on the lord Hari Nārāyaṇa Kṛishṇa, the supreme spirit, all the gods arrive, headed by Dharma (Righteousness), and accompanied by Viśvāmitra.¹⁸¹ Dharma entreats the king to desist from his rash in-

¹⁸⁰ In the following verses of the Atharva-veda a hope is expressed that families may be re-united in the next world: vi. 120, 3. *Yattra suhūrddah suhr̥do madanti vihūya rogaṃ tanvāḥ svāyāḥ | aślonūḥ angair ahrutāḥ sarge tatra paśyema pitarau cha putrān |* "In heaven, where our friends, and intimates live in blessedness, having left behind them the infirmities of their bodies, free from lameness or distortion of limb,—may we behold our parents and our children." ix. 5, 27. *Yā pūrvam patiṃ vitvā athūnyaṃ vindate 'param | panchaudanaṃ cha tāv ajaṃ dadūto na vi yoshataḥ |* 28. *Samānaloko bhavati punarbhuṃvā 'paraḥ patiḥ | yo 'jam panchaudanaṃ dakṣiṇā-jyotisham dadāti |* "When a woman has had one husband before, and takes another, if they present the aja panchaudana offering they shall not be separated. 28. A second husband dwells in the same (future) world with his re-wedded wife, if he offers the aja panchaudana, illuminated by presents." xii, 3, 17. *Svargaṃ lokam abhi no nayāsi saṃ jayayā saha puttraiḥ syāma |* "Mayest thou conduct us to heaven; may we be with our wives and children." xviii. 3, 23. *Svān gachhātu te mano adha pitṛin upa drava |* "May thy soul go to its own (its kindred) and hasten to the fathers." From the texts cited by Mr. Colebrooke "on the duties of a faithful Hindu widow," (Misc. Ess. 115 ff.) it appears that the widow who becomes a sati (i.e. burns herself with her husband's corpse, or, in certain cases, afterwards) has the promise of rejoining her lord in another life, and enjoying celestial felicity in his society. In order to ensure such a result in all cases it was necessary either that both husband and wife should have by their lives merited equal rewards in another existence, or that the heroism of the wife, in sacrificing herself on her husband's funeral-pile should have the vicarious effect of expiating his offences, and raising him to the same heavenly region with herself. And it is indeed the doctrine of the authorities cited by Mr. Colebrooke that the self-immolation of the wife had this atoning effect. But in other cases where the different members of a family had by their actions during life merited different kinds of retribution, they might, according to the doctrine of the transmigration of souls current in later ages, be re-born in the shape of different animals, and so rendered incapable of any mutual communication after death. In regard to the absence of any traces of the tenet of metempsychosis from the earliest Indian writings, see Professor Weber's remarks in the Journ. of the Germ. Or. Soc. ix. 327 ff. and the abstract of them given in Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1865, pp. 305 ff.

¹⁸¹ An attempt is here made, verses 234 f., to give the etymology of Viśvāmitra: *Viśva-trayena yo mitram karitum na śakitāḥ purā | Viśvāmitras tu te mātṛīm iśhaṭam chāhartum ichhati |* "That Viśvāmitra, whom the three Viśvas formerly could not induce to be their friend, wishes to offer thee his friendship, and whatsoever thou desirest."

tention; and Indra announces to him that he, his wife, and son have conquered heaven by their good works. Ambrosia, the antidote of death, and flowers, are rained by the god from the sky; and the king's son is restored to life and the bloom of youth. The king, adorned with celestial clothing and garlands, and the queen, embrace their son. Harischandra, however, declares that he cannot go to heaven till he has received his master the Chanḍāla's permission, and has paid him a ransom. Dharma then reveals to the king that it was he himself who had miraculously assumed the form of a Chanḍāla. The king next objects that he cannot depart unless his faithful subjects, who are sharers in his merits, are allowed to accompany him to heaven, at least for one day. This request is granted by Indra; and after Viśvāmitra has inaugurated Rohitāśva the king's son to be his successor, Hariśchandra, his friends and followers, all ascend in company to heaven. Even after this great consummation, however, Vaśishṭha, the family-priest of Harischandra, hearing, at the end of a twelve years' abode in the waters of the Ganges, an account of all that has occurred, becomes vehemently incensed at the humiliation inflicted on the excellent monarch, whose virtues and devotion to the gods and Brāhmins he celebrates, declares that his indignation had not been so greatly roused even when his own hundred sons had been slain by Viśvāmitra, and in the following words dooms the latter to be transformed into a crane: i. 9, 9. *Tasmād durātmā brahma-dviṣṭ prājñānām avaropitaḥ | mach-chhāpopahato mūḍhaḥ sa vakatvam avāpsyati* | "Wherefore that wicked man, enemy of the Brāhmins, smitten by my curse, shall be expelled from the society of intelligent beings, and losing his understanding shall be transformed into a Vaka."¹⁸² Viśvāmitra reciprocates the curse, and changes Vaśishṭha into a bird of the species called Āṛi. In their new shapes the two have a furious fight,¹⁸³ the Āṛi being of the portentous height of two thousand yojanas (= 18000 miles), and the Vaka of 3090 yojanas. They first assail each other with their wings; then the Vaka smites his antagonist in the same manner, while the Āṛi strikes with his talons. Falling mountains, overturned by the blasts of wind raised by the

¹⁸² On the subject of this fight the Bhāgavata Purāna has the following verse: ix. 7, 6. *Trāisankavo Hariśchandro Viśvāmitra-Vaśishṭhayoḥ | yan-nimittam abhūd yuddham pakṣiṇor bahu-vārahikam* | "The son of Trāisanku was Hariśchandra, on whose account Viśvāmitra and Vaśishṭha in the form of birds had a battle of many

flapping of their wings, shake the whole earth, the waters of the ocean overflow, the earth itself, thrown off its perpendicular, slopes downwards towards Pātāla, the lower regions. Many creatures perish by these various convulsions. Attracted by the dire disorder, Brahmā arrives, attended by all the gods, on the spot, and commands the combatants to desist from their fray. They were too fiercely infuriated to regard this injunction: but Brahmā put an end to the conflict by restoring them to their natural forms, and counselling them to be reconciled: i. 9, 28. *Na chāpi Kauśika-śreshṭhas tasya rājno 'parādhyate | svarga-prāptikaro brahmann upakāra-pade sthitah |* 29. *Tapo-vighnasya karttārau kāma-krodha-vaśaṁ gatau | parityajata bhadrāṁ no brahma hi prachuram balam |* 'The son of Kuśika has not inflicted any wrong on Hariśchandra: inasmuch as he has caused the king's elevation to heaven he stands in the position of a benefactor. 29. Since ye have yielded to the influence of desire and anger ye have obstructed your austere fervour; leave off, bless you; the Brahmanical power is transcendent.' The sages were accordingly pacified, and embraced each other."

This interesting legend may be held to have had a double object, viz. first to portray in lively colours the heroic fortitude and sense of duty exhibited by Hariśchandra and his wife in enduring the long series of severe trials to which they were subjected; and secondly, to represent Viśvāmitra in an unamiable light, as an oppressive assertor of those sacerdotal prerogatives, which he had conquered for himself by his austerities,¹⁸³ to place him in striking contrast with the genuine Brāhman Vasishṭha who expresses strong indignation at the harsh procedure of his rival, and to recall the memory of those conflicts between

years duration." On this the Commentator remarks: *Viśvāmitro rājasūya-dakṣiṇā-chhalena Hariśchandrasya sarva-svam apahrītya yūṭayāmāsa | tach chhurutvā kupīto Vasishṭho 'pi Viśvāmitraṁ "tvam āṛi bhava" iti śaśāpa | so 'pi "tvam vako bhava" iti Vasishṭham śaśāpa | tayoḥ cha yuddham abhūd iti prasīddam |* "Viśvāmitra under pretence of taking a present for a rajasūya sacrifice, stripped Hariśchandra of all his property, and afflicted him. Vasishṭha hearing of this, became incensed, and by an imprecation turned him into an Āṛi. Viśvāmitra retorted the curse and changed Vasishṭha into a Vāka. And then a battle took place between them, as is well known." Here it will be seen that the Commentator changes the birds into which the rishis were transformed, making Viśvāmitra the Āṛi and Vasishṭha the Vāka.

¹⁸³ It is true that the Brāhman rishi Durvāsas also is represented as a very irascible personage. See vol. iv. of this work, pp. 165, 169, 208, 407; and Weber's Ind. St. iii. 398.

the Brāhmuns and Kshattriyas, which were exemplified in the persons of these two sages, of whom the one is said to have been made the "lord of Brāhmans" (*Vasishtham īśaṁ viprāṇām*, M.Bh. Śāntip. v. 4499), and the other is declared in the story before us to have been the "enemy of the priests."

SECT. X.—*Contest of Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra according to the Mahābhārata.*

In the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 6638 ff., we find another legend, in the Brahmanical interest, regarding the same two great personages, which begins with a panegyric on Vasishṭha, at the expense of the rival rishi :

6638. *Brahmaṇo mānasah putro Vasishṭho 'rundhatī-patiḥ | tūpasā nirjītau śasvad ajeyāv amarair api | kāma-krodhāv ubhau yasya charaṇau saṁvavāhatuḥ | yas tu nochchedanaṁ chakre Kuśikānām udāra-dhīḥ | Viśvāmitrāparādhena dhārayan manyum uttamam |* 6640. *Putra-vyasana-santaptaḥ śaktimān apy aśakta-vat | Viśvāmitra-vinūśāya na chakre karma dāruṇam | mṛitāṁś cha punar āharttum yaḥ sa putrān Yama-kshayāt | kṛitāntaṁ nātichakrāma velām iva mahodadhiḥ | yam prāpya vijitātmaṇam mahātmaṇaṁ narādhipāḥ | Ikshvākavo mahīpālūḥ lebhīre prithivīm imām | purohitam imam prāpya Vasishṭham ṛishi-sattamam | ijire kratubhīś chaiva nṛipās te Kuru-nandana | sa hi tān yājayāmāsa sarvān nṛipati-sattamān | brahmarshiḥ Pāṇḍava-śreshṭha Vṛihaspatir ivāmarān |* 6645. *Tasmād dharma-pradhānātmā veda-dharma-vid īpsitaḥ | brāhmaṇo guṇavān kaśchit purodhāḥ paridṛśyatām | kshattriyeṇābhijātena prithivīm jetum ichhatā | pūrvam purohitaḥ kāryyaḥ pūrtha rājyābhisiddhaye | mahīm jigīshatā rājñā brahma kāryam purassaram | . . .* 6666. *Kshattriyo 'ham bhavān vipras tapaḥ-svādhyāya-sūdhanaḥ | brāhmaneshu kuto vīryyam praśānteshu dhṛitātmasu | arbudena gavām yas tvaṁ na dadāsi mamapsitam | eva-dharmaṁ na prahāsyāmi neshyāmi cha balena gām | . . .* 6679. *"Sthiyatām" iti tach chhṛutvā Vasishṭhasya payasvinī | ūrdhvaṅchīta-śiro-grīvā prababhau raudra-darśanā |* 6680. *Krodha-raktekshaṇā sā gaur hambhā-rava-ghana-śvanā | Viśvāmitrasya tat sainyaṁ vyadrāvayata sarvaśaḥ | kaśūgra-daṇḍābhīhatā kālyamānā tatastataḥ | krodha-raktekshaṇā krodham bhūya eva samādadhe | āditya iva mudhyāhne krodha-dīpta-vapur babhau | angāra-varaṣam munchantī muhur śāladhito*

*mahat | asrijat Pahlavān puchhāt prasravād Drāviḍān Sakān | yonī-
deśūch cha Yavanān śakṛitaḥ Śavarān bahūn | . . . 6691. Drishṭvā tad
mahad āścharyam brahma-tejo-bhavam tadā | Viśvāmitraḥ kshattra-bhāvād
nirvinno vākyaṁ abravīt | “dhig balaṁ kshattriya-balam brahma-tejo-
balam balam | balūbalaṁ viniśchitya tpaḥ eva param balaṁ” | sa rājyaṁ
sphīlām uterijya tūn cha diptāṁ nrīpa-śriyam | bhogāṁś cha prishṭhataḥ
kṛtvā tapasy eva mano dadhe | sa gatvā tapasā siddhim lokān viśṭabhya
tejasū | 6695. Tatāpa sarvān diptauijāḥ brāhmanatvam avāptavān | api-
bach cha tataḥ somam Indreṇa saha Kauśikāḥ |*

6638. “Vasishṭha,” a Gandharva informs Arjuna, “was the mind-born son of Brahmā and husband of Arundhatī.¹⁸⁴ By his austere fervour, lust and anger, invincible even by the immortals, were constantly vanquished and embraced his feet. Restraining his indignation at the wrong done by Viśvāmitra, he magnanimously abstained from exterminating the Kuśikas.¹⁸⁵ 6640. Distressed by the loss of his sons, he acted, although powerful, like one who was powerless, and took no

¹⁸⁴ Arundhatī is again mentioned as the wife of Vasishṭha, in the following lines of the M. Bh. Ādip. 7351 f. addressed to Draupadī: *Yathendrāṇī Harihaye Svāhā chaiva Vibhūvasau | Rohiṇī cha yathā Some Damayantī yathā Nale | yathā Vaiśravaṇa Bhadrā Vasishṭhe chāpy Arundhatī | yathā Nārāyaṇe Lakshmiḥ tathā tvam bhava bhārtṛishu* | “What Indrāṇī is to Indra, Svāhā to the Sun, Rohiṇī to the Moon, Damayantī to Nala, Bhadrā to Kuvera, Arundhatī to Vasishṭha, and Lakshmi to Nārāyaṇa, that be thou to thy husbands.” She is again noticed in verses 8455 ff.: *Suvratā chāpi kalyāṇī sarva-bhūteshu viśrutā | Arundhatī mahātmanāṁ Vasishṭham paryasankata | viśuddha-bhāvam atyantāṁ sadā priya-hite ratam | saptarshi-madhyagaṁ vīram avamene cha tam munim | apādhyānena sū tena dhūmaruṇa-sama-prabhā | lakshyā’lakshyā nābhīrūpā nimittam iva paśyati* | “The faithful and beautiful Arundhatī, renowned among all creatures, was suspicious about the great Vasishṭha, whose nature was eminently pure, who was devoted to the welfare of those he loved, who was one of the seven rishis, and heroic; and she despised the muni. In consequence of these evil surmises, becoming of the dusky colour of smoke, both to be seen and not to be seen, devoid of beauty, she looks like a (bad) omen.” This version of the last line is suggested by Prof. Aufrecht. The Commentator explains it thus: “*Nimittam*” *bharttur lakshmanam “iva paśyati” kapaṭena | ataḥ eva “nābhīrūpā prachhanna-
veshā | tena hetunā “lakshyā’lakshyā cha”* | “She regards as it were” i.e. by guile ‘the omen’ afforded by her husband’s (bodily) marks, hence she assumed a disguise, and was ‘both to be seen and not to be seen.’”

¹⁸⁵ As regards the magnanimous character here assigned to Vasishṭha, I quote a passage from the Vishnu Purāṇa, i. 9, 15 ff., where the irascible Duvāsas (to whom I lately referred, and who is said, in verse 2, to be a partial incarnation of Śiva, *S’ankarasyāṁśah*), addressing Indra, who, he conceived, had insulted him, thus speaks of that sage’s amiable temper, as contrasted with his own fierce and revengeful disposition: 15. *Nāhaṁ kṛpālu-hṛidayo na cha mām bhujate kshamā | anye te mun-*

dreadful measures for the destruction of Viśvāmitra. To recover those sons from the abode of Yama, he would not overstep fate, as the ocean respects its shores. Having gained this great self-mastering personage, the kings of Ikshvāku's race acquired (the dominion of) this earth. Obtaining this most excellent of rishis for their family-priest, they offered sacrifices. This Brāhman-rishi officiated as priest for all those monarchs, as Vṛihaspati does for the gods. 6645. Wherefore let some desirable, virtuous Brāhman, with whom righteousness is the chief thing, and skilled in Vedic observances, be selected for this office. Let a well-born Kshattriya, who wishes to subdue the earth, first of all appoint a family-priest in order that he may augment his dominion. Let a king, who desires to conquer the earth, give precedence to the Brahmanical power." The Gandharva then, at Arjuna's request, goes on (verses 6650 ff.) to relate the "ancient story of Vaśishṭha" (*vāśishṭham ākhyānam purāṇam*) and to describe the cause of enmity between that rishi and Viśvāmitra. It happened that the latter, who was son of Gādhi, king of Kānyakubja (Kanouj), and grandson of Kuśika, when out hunting, came to the hermitage of Vaśishṭha, where he was received with all honour, entertained together with his attendants with delicious food and drink, and presented with precious jewels and dresses obtained by the sage from his wonder-working cow, the fulfiller of all his desires. The cupidity of Viśvāmitra is aroused by the sight of this beautiful animal (all of whose fine points are enumerated in the legend), and he offers Vaśishṭha a hundred million cows, or his kingdom, in exchange for her. Vaśishṭha, however, replies that he is unable to part with her even in return for the kingdom. Viśvāmitra then tells him that he will enforce the law of the stronger: 6665. "I am a Kshattriya, thou art a Brāhman, whose functions are austere fervour, and sacred study. How can there be any vigour in Brāhmans who are calm and self-restrained? Since thou doest not give up to me, in exchange for a

ayaḥ Śakra Durvāsasam avehi mām | Gautamādibhir anyais tvaṁ garvam ūpādito mudhā | akṣhānti-sūra-sarvasaṁ Durvāsasam avehi mām | 17. *Vaśishṭhādyaṁ dayā-sūraiḥ stotraṁ kurvadbhir uchchakāḥ | garvaṁ gato'si yenaivam mām athādya-manyase |* 15. "I am not tender-hearted: patience lodges not in me. Those munis are different: know me to be Durvāsas. 16. In vain hast thou been rendered proud by Gautama and others: know me to be Durvāsas, whose nature and whose entire substance is irascibility. 17. Thou hast become proud through the loud praises of Vaśishṭha and other merciful saints, since thou thus contemnest me to-day."

hundred million of cows, that which I desire, I shall not abandon my own class-characteristic; I will carry away the cow by force." Vāśishṭha, confident, no doubt, of his own superior power, tells him to do as he proposes without loss of time. Viśvāmitra accordingly seizes the wonder-working cow; but she will not move from the hermitage, though beaten with whip and stick, and pushed hither and thither. Witnessing this, Vāśishṭha asks her what he, a patient Brāhman, can do? She demands of him why he overlooks the violence to which she is subjected. Vāśishṭha replies: "Force is the strength of Kshattriyas, patience that of Brāhmanas. As patience possesses me, go, if thou pleasest" (6676. *Kshattriyānām balaṁ tejo brāhmaṇānām kṣamā balaṁ | kṣamā mām bhajate yasmāt gamyatām yadi rochate*). The cow enquires if he means to abandon her; as, unless he forsakes her, she can never be carried off by force. She is assured by Vāśishṭha that he does not forsake her, and that she should remain if she could. "Hearing these words of her master, the cow tosses her head aloft, assumes a terrific aspect, (6680) her eyes become red with rage, she utters a deep bellowing sound, and puts to flight the entire army of Viśvāmitra. Being (again) beaten with whip and stick, and pushed hither and thither, she becomes more incensed, her eyes are red with anger, her whole body, kindled by her indignation, glows like the noonday sun, she discharges showers of fire-brands from her tail, creates Pahlavas from the same member, Drāviḍas and Śukas, Yavanas, Śabarās," Kānchis, Śarabhas, Paundras, Kīrātas, Sinhalas, Vāsas, and other tribes of armed warriors from her sweat, urine, excrement, etc., who assail Viśvāmitra's army, and put it to a complete rout. 6692. "Beholding this great miracle, the product of Brahmanical might, Viśvāmitra was humbled at (the impotence of) a Kshattriya's nature, and exclaimed, 'Shame on a Kshattriya's force; it is the force of a Brāhman's might that is force indeed.' Examining what was and was not force, and (ascertaining) that austere fervour is the supreme force, he abandoned his prosperous kingdom and all its brilliant regal splendour; and casting all enjoyments behind its back, he devoted himself to austerity. Having by this means attained perfection, and Brāhmanhood, he arrested the worlds by his fiery vigour, and disturbed them all by the blaze of his glory; and at length the ~~Kaṁśika drank~~ soma with Indra." 186

186 See above, p. 342, and note 134.

The same legend is repeated in the Śalyaparvan, verses 2295 ff. :

*Tathā cha Kauśikas tāta tapo-nityo jitendriyaḥ | tapusū vai sutaptena
brāhmaṇatvam avāptavān | Gādhir nāma mahān āsit kṣhattriyaḥ prathito
bhūvi | tasya puttro 'bhavad rājan Viśvāmitraḥ pratāpavān | sa rājā
Kauśikas tāta mahāyogy abhavat kila | sa puttram abhishichyātha Viśvā-
mitram mahātapaḥ | deha-nyāse manas chakre tam ūchuḥ pranatāḥ pra-
jāḥ | "na gantavyam mahāprājña trāhi chāsmān mahābhayāt" | evam
uktaḥ pratyuvācha tato Gādhiḥ prajāś tataḥ | "viśvasya jagato goptā
bhaviṣyati suto mama" | 2300. Ity uktvā tu tato Gādhir Viśvāmitraṁ
niveśya cha | jagāma tridivāṁ rājan Viśvāmitro 'bhavad nṛipaḥ | na sa
śaknoti prithivīm yatnavān api rakshitum | tataḥ śūsrūva rājū sa rāksha-
sebhya mahābhayam | niryayau nagarācchāpi chatur-anga-bālāmṛitaḥ |
sa yātvā dūram adhvānam Viśiṣṭhāśramam abhyagāt | tasya te sainikāḥ
rājāṁś chakrus tattrālayān bahūn | tatas tu bhagarān vipro Viśiṣṭho
Brahmaṇaḥ sutaḥ | dadṛṣe 'tha tataḥ sarvam bhajyamānam mahāraṇam |
tasya kruddho mahārāja Viśiṣṭho muni-sattamaḥ | 2305. "Śṛījasva Śa-
varān ghorān" iti svām gūṁ uvācha ha | tathoktū sā 'śṛījad dhenuḥ pu-
rushān ghora-darśanān | te cha tad balam āśūdyā babhanjuḥ sarvato
diśam | tach chhṛutvā vidrutaṁ sainyaṁ Viśvāmitras tu Gādhijaḥ | tapaḥ
param manyamānas tapasy eva mano dadhe | so 'smiṁś tīrtha-vare rājan
Sarasvatyāḥ samāhitaḥ | niyamaiś chopavāsaiś cha karṣhayan deham ūt-
manaḥ | jalāhāro vāyubhakṣaḥ parṇāhāras cha so 'bhavat | tathā sthaṇ-
ḍila-sāyī cha ye chānye niyamāḥ prīthak | asakṛit tasya devās tu vrata-
vighnam prachakrire | 2310. Na chāsya niyamād buddhir apayāti mahāt-
manaḥ | tataḥ pareṇa yatnena taptvā bahu-vidhāṁ tapaḥ | tejasū bhūṣka-
rākāro Gādhijaḥ samapadyata | tapasā tu tathā yuktaṁ Viśvāmitram
Pitūmahāḥ | amanyata mahātejūḥ vara-do varam asya tat | sa tu vatre
varāṁ rājan "syām aham brāhmaṇas tv" iti | tatheti chābravīd Brahmā
sarva-loka-pitūmahāḥ | sa labdhvā tapasogreṇa brāhmaṇatvam mahāyāsāḥ |
vichachāra mahīm kṛitsnām kṛitakāmāḥ suropamaḥ |*

"2295. So too the Kauśika, constant in austerities, and subduing his senses, acquired Brāhmaṇhood by the severity of his exercises. There was a great Kṣhattriya named Gādhi, renowned in the world, whose son was the powerful Viśvāmitra. This Kauśika prince (Gādhi) was greatly addicted to contemplation (*mahāyogi*): and after having installed his son as king, he resolved to abandon his corporeal existence. His subjects, however, submissively said to him, 'Do not go, o great sage, but deliver

us from our great alarm.' He replied, 'My son shall become the protector of the whole world.' 2300. Having accordingly installed Viśvāmitra, Gādhi went to heaven, and his son became king. Viśvāmitra, however, though energetic, was unable to protect the earth. He then heard that there was great cause of apprehension from the Rākshasas, and issued forth from the city, with an army consisting of four kinds of forces. Having performed a long journey, he arrived at the hermitage of Vaśishṭha. There his soldiers constructed many dwellings. In consequence the divine Brāhman Vaśishṭha, son of Brahmā, beheld the whole forest being cut up; and becoming enraged, he said to his cow, (2305) 'Create terrible Savaras.' The cow, so addressed, created men of dreadful aspect, who broke and scattered in all directions the army of Viśvāmitra. Hearing of this rout of his army, the son of Gādhi devoted himself to austerities, which he regarded as the highest (resource). In this sacred spot on the Sarasvatī he macerated his body with acts of self-restraint and fastings, absorbed in contemplation, and living on water, air, and leaves, sleeping on the sacrificial ground, and practising all the other rites. Several times the gods threw impediments in his way; (2310) but his attention was never distracted from his observances. Having thus with strenuous effort undergone manifold austerities, the son of Gādhi became luminous as the sun; and Brahmā regarded his achievements as most eminent. The boon which Viśvāmitra chose was to become a Brāhman; and Brahmā replied, 'So be it.' Having attained Brāhmanhood, the object of his desire, by his severe austerities, the renowned sage traversed the whole earth, like a god."

We have already seen how the power of austere fervour (*tapas*) is exemplified in the legend of Nahusha (above, pp. 308 ff.). In regard to the sense of this word *tapas*, and the potency of the exercise which it denotes, I may refer to my articles in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, p. 348 f., and for 1864, p. 63, as well as to the fourth volume of this work, pp. 20 ff. and 288; and to pp. 23 and 28 of the present volume. In further illustration of the same subject I quote the following panegyric upon *tapas* from Manu, xi. 234 ff. where, however, the word cannot have the same sense in all the verses:

*Tapo-mūlam idaṁ sarvaṁ daiva-mānushakam sukham | tapo-madhyam
budhaiḥ proktaṁ tapo 'ntaṁ veda-darsibhiḥ | 235. Brāhmaṇasya tapo jñā-
naṁ tapaḥ kshatrasya rakshaṇam | vaiśyasya tu tapo vārttā tapaḥ śūdra-*

sa secanam | 236. *Rishayaḥ saṁyatātmānaḥ phala-mūlānilūśanāḥ* | *tapasaiva prapaśyanti trailokyaṁ sa-charūcharam* | 237. *Aushadhāny agado vidyā daivī cha vividhā sthitiḥ* | *tapasaiva prasiddhyanti tapas teshūṁ hi sūdhanam* | 238. *Yad dustaraṁ yad durūpaṁ yad durgaṁ yach cha duṣkaram* | *sarvaṁ tu tapasū sādhyāṁ tapo hi duratikramam* | 239. *Mahāpātakinaś chaiva śeṣhāś chākāryya-kāriṇaḥ* | *tapasaiva sutaptena muchyante kilbiṣhāt tataḥ* | 240. *Kṛtāś chāhi-patangāś cha paśavaś cha vayūṁsi cha* | *sthāvarāṇi cha bhūtāni divaṁ yānti tapo-balāt* | 241. *Yat kinchid enaḥ kurvanti mano-vān-mūrttibhir janāḥ* | *tat sarvaṁ nirdahanty āsu tapasaiva tapodhanāḥ* | 242. *Tapasaiva viśuddhasya brāhmaṇasya divaukasaḥ* | *ijyāś cha pratigrihṇanti kāmān saṁvarddhayanti cha* | 243. *Prajāpatir idaṁ sūtraṁ tapasaivāsrījat prabhuḥ* | *tathaiva vedān ṛishayas tapasā pratipedire* | 244. *Ity etat tapaso devāḥ mahābhāgyam prachakshate* | *sarvasyūśya prapaśyantas tapasaḥ punyam uttamam* |

“234. All the enjoyment, whether of gods or men, has its root, its centre, and its end in *tapas*; so it is declared by the wise who have studied the Veda. 235. Knowledge is a Brāhman's *tapas*; protection that of a Kshattriya; traffic that of Vaiśya; and service that of a Sūdra. 236. It is by *tapas* that rishis of subdued souls, subsisting on fruits, roots, and air obtain a vision of the three worlds with all things moving and stationary. 237. Medicines, health, science, and the various divine conditions are attained by *tapas* alone as their instrument of acquisition. 238. Whatever is hard to be traversed, or obtained, or reached, or effected, is all to be accomplished through *tapas*, of which the potency is irresistible. 239. Both those who are guilty of the great sins, and all other transgressors, are freed from sin by fervid *tapas*. 240. Worms, serpents, insects, beasts, birds, and beings without motion attain to heaven through the force of *tapas*. 241. Whatever sin men commit by thought, word, or bodily acts, by *tapas* they speedily consume it all, when they become rich in devotion. 242. The gods both accept the sacrifices and augment the enjoyments of the Brāhman who has been purified by *tapas*. 243. It was by *tapas* that Prajāpati the lord created this scripture; and through it that the rishis obtained the Vedas. 244. Such is the great dignity which the gods ascribe to *tapas*, beholding its transcendent merit.”

I return for a moment to the story of Vasishṭha and his cow.

Lassen remarks (Ind. Alt. 2nd ed. i. 631, note) that Atharvan is given

in the Lexicons as a name of Vasishṭha (see Wilson's Dictionary, *s.v.*). Weber (Ind. St. i. 289) quotes from Mallinātha's Commentary on the Kirātārjuniya the following words: *Atharvaṇas tu mantrodhāro Vasiṣṭhena kritāḥ ity āgamaḥ* | "There is a passage of scripture to the effect that the mantras of the Atharvan were selected by Vasishṭha." In Böhtlingk and Roth's Lexicon, *s.v.* Atharvan, it is noticed that the eleventh hymn of the fifth book of the Atharva-veda contains a conversation between Atharvan and Varuṇa about the possession of a wonderful cow bestowed by the latter on the former; and it is remarked that this circumstance may explain the subsequent identification of Atharvan with Vasishṭha. Prof. Roth, however (Diss. on the A.V., Tübingen, 1865, p. 9), thinks the two sages are distinct. The cow is spoken of in A.V. vii. 104, as the "brindled cow given by Varuṇa to Atharvan which never lacked a calf" (*prīṣniṁ dhenuṁ Varuṇena dattām Atharvane nitya-vatsām*). The following is the curious hymn referred to :

A.V. v. 11, 1. *Katham mahe asurāya abravīr iha katham pitre haraye tvesha-nṛimrah* | *prīṣniṁ Varuṇa dakṣhiṇāṁ dadūvān punarmaghatvam*¹⁸⁷ *manasā 'chikitsīḥ* | 2. *Na kāmēna punarmagho bhavāmi saṁ chakṣhe kam prīṣniṁ etām upāje* | *kena nu tvam Atharvan kāryena kena jātēna asi jāta-vedūḥ* | 3. *Satyam ahaṁ gabhīrah kāryena satyaṁ jātēna asmi jāta-vedūḥ* | *na me dāso na āryyo makitvā vratam mīmāya yad ahaṁ dharishye* | 4. *Na tvad anyah kavitaro na medhayā dhīrataro Varuṇa svadhāvan* | *tvāṁ tā viśvā bhuvanāni vettha sa chid nu tvaj jano māyī bibhāya* | 5. *Tvaṁ hi anga Varuṇa svadhāvan viśvā vettha janimā supranīte* | *kiṁ rajasah enā paro anyad asti enā kim pareṇa avaram amūra* | 6. *Ekaṁ rajasah enā paro anyad asti enā parah ekena durṇasaṁ chid arvāk* | *tat te vidvān Varuṇa pra bravīmi adhovarchasah paṇayo bhavantu* | *nīchair dāsūḥ upa sarpantu bhūmim* | 7. *Tvaṁ hi anga Varuṇa bravīshi punarmaghesu avadyāni bhūri* | *mo shu paṇir abhi etāvato bhūr mā tvā vohann arādhasaṁ janāsaḥ* | 8. *Mā mā vohann arādhasaṁ janāsaḥ punas te prīṣniṁ jarītar dadāmi* | *stotram me viśvam ā yāhi śachābhīr antar viśvāsu mānushīṣhu vikshu* | 9. *Ā te stotrāni udyatāni yantu antar viśvāsu mānushīṣhu vikshu* | *dehi nu me yad me ādatto asi yujyo me sapta-padaḥ sakhā 'si* | 10. *Samāno bandhur Varuṇa samā jā vedūhaṁ tad yad nāv eshā samā jā* | *dadāmi tad yat te ādatto asmi yujyas*

¹⁸⁷ This is the reading proposed by Professor Aufrecht instead of *punarmagha tvam*, which is found in Roth and Whitney's edition of the A.V.

*te sapta-padaḥ sakhā 'smi | 11. Devo devāya grīnate vayoḍāḥ vipro viprāya
stuvate sumedhāḥ | ajījano hi Varuṇa svadhāvann Atharvānam pitarāṁ
deva-bandhum | tasmai u rādhaḥ kṛīṇuḥi suprasastaṁ sakhā no asi para-
maś cha bandhuh |*

1. (Atharvan speaks) "How hast thou, who art mighty in energy, declared before the great deity, how before the shining father (that the cow was mine)?¹⁸⁸ Having bestowed a brindled cow (on me) as a sacrificial gift, thou hast resolved in thy mind to take her back. 2. (Varuṇa replies) It is not through desire that I revoke the gift; I drive hither this brindled cow that I may contemplate her. But by what wisdom, o Atharvan, in virtue of what nature, doest thou know the nature of beings? 3. (Atharvan answers) In truth I am profound in wisdom; in truth by my nature I know the nature of beings. Neither Dāsa nor Āryya can hinder the design which I shall undertake. 4. There is none other wiser or sager in understanding than thou, o self-dependent Varuṇa. Thou knowest all creatures; even the man of deep devices is afraid of thee. 5. Thou, o self-dependent Varuṇa, o wise director, knowest all creatures. What other thing is beyond this atmosphere? and what is nearer than that remotest thing, o thou unerring? 6. (Varuṇa replies) There is one thing beyond this atmosphere; and on this side of that one there is that which is near though inaccessible. Knowing that thing I declare it to thee. Let the glory of the niggards be cast down; let the Dāsas sink downward into the earth. 7. (Atharvan rejoins) Thou, o Varuṇa, sayest many evil things of those who revoke their gifts. Be not thou numbered among so many niggards; let not men call thee illiberal. 8. (Varuṇa replies) Let not men call me illiberal; I restore to thee, o worshipper, the brindled cow. Attend with all thy powers at every hymn in my honour among all the tribes of men. 9. (Atharvan answers) Let hymns ascend to thee among all the tribes of men. Give me that which thou hast taken from me; thou art to me an intimate friend of seven-fold value. 10. We two have a common bond, o Varuṇa, a common descent. I know what this common descent of ours is. (Varuṇa answers) I give thee that which I

¹⁸⁸ Professor Aufrecht thinks that *Dyaus*, 'the Heaven,' is denoted by *mahe asu-rāya*, and that *pitre haraye*, if the correct reading, can only mean the Sun, the word *hari* being several times applied to that great luminary. I am otherwise indebted to Prof. A. for the correct sense of this line, and for other suggestions.

have taken from thee. I am thy intimate friend of seven-fold value, who, myself a god, confer life on thee a god [or priest, *devāya*] who praisest me, an intelligent sage on thee a sage. (The poet says) Thou, o self-dependent Varuṇa, hast begotten our father Atharvan, a kinsman of the gods. Grant to him most excellent wealth; thou art our friend and most eminent kinsman."

SECT. XI.—*The same, and other legends, according to the Rāmāyaṇa.*

The story told in the preceding section is related at greater length in chapters 51–65¹⁸⁹ of the Bālakāṇḍa, or first book, of the Rāmāyaṇa, of which I shall furnish an outline, noting any important variations from, or additions to, the account in the Mahābhārata, and at the same time giving an abstract of the other legends which are interwoven with the narrative. There was formerly, we are told, a king called Kuśa, son of Prajāpati, who had a son called Kuśanābha, who was father of Gādhī, the father of Viśvāmītra. The latter ruled the earth for many thousand years. On one occasion, when he was making a circuit of the earth, he came to Vaśiṣṭha's hermitage, the pleasant abode of many saints, sages, and holy devotees (chapter 51, verses 11–29), where, after at first declining, he allowed himself to be hospitably entertained with his followers by the son of Brahmā (ch. 52). Viśvāmītra (ch. 53), however, coveting the wondrous cow, which had supplied all the dainties of the feast, first of all asked that she should be given to him in exchange for a hundred thousand common cows, adding that "she was a gem, that gems were the property of the king, and that, therefore, the cow was his by right" (53, 9. *Ratnaṁ hi bhagavann etad ratna-hārī cha pārthivah* | 10. *Tasmād me śabalāṁ dehi mamaishā dharmato dvija*). On this price being refused, the king advances immensely in his offers, but all without effect. He then proceeds (ch. 54)—very ungratefully and tyrannically, it must be allowed—to have the cow removed by force, but she breaks away from his attendants, and rushes back to her master, complaining that he was deserting her. He replies that he was not deserting her, but that the king was

¹⁸⁹ These are the sections of Schlegel's and the Bombay editions, which correspond to sections 52–67 of Gorresio's edition.

much more powerful than he. She answers, 54, 14 : *Na balam kshattriyasyāhur brāhmaṇāḥ balavattarāḥ | brahman brahma-balaṁ divyaṁ kshātrūch cha balabattaram | aprameyam balaṁ tubhyaṁ na trayā balavattarah | Viśvāmitro mahāśtryo tejas tara durāśadam | niyunkshva mām mahātejas tvam brahma-bala-sambhṛitū | tasya darpam balam yatnaṁ nāśayāmi durātmanah |* "Men do not ascribe strength to a Kshattriya : the Brāhmanas are stronger. The strength of Brāhmanas is divine, and superior to that of Kshattriyas. 15. Thy strength is immeasurable. Viśvāmitra, though of great vigour, is not more powerful than thou. Thy energy is invincible. Commission me, who have been acquired by thy Brahmanical power, and I will destroy the pride, and force, and attempt of this wicked prince."¹⁹⁰ She accordingly by her bellowing creates hundreds of Pahlavas, who destroy the entire host (*nāśayanti balaṁ sarvam*, verse 19) of Viśvāmitra, but are slain by him in their turn. Sakas and Yavanas, of great power and valour, and well armed, were then produced, who consumed the king's soldiers,¹⁹¹ but were routed by him. The cow then (ch. 55) calls into existence by her bellowing, and from different parts of her body, other warriors of various tribes, who again destroyed Viśvāmitra's entire army, foot soldiers, elephants, horses, chariots, and all. A hundred of the monarch's sons, armed with various weapons, then rushed in great fury on Vaśishṭha, but were all reduced to ashes in a moment by the blast of that sage's mouth.¹⁹² Viśvāmitra, being thus utterly vanquished and humbled, appointed one of his sons to be regent, and travelled to the Himālaya, where he betook himself to austerities, and thereby obtained a vision of Mahādeva, who at his desire revealed to him the science of arms in all its branches, and gave him celestial weapons with which, elated and full of pride, he consumed the hermitage of Vaśishṭha, and put its inhabitants to flight. Vaśishṭha then threatens Viśvāmitra and

¹⁹⁰ Compare Manu, xi. 32 : *Sva-vīryād rūja-vīryāch cha sva-vīryam balavattaram | tasmāt svenaiva vīryeṇa nigrihṇīyād arin dvijaḥ |* "Of the two, his own, and a king's might, let a Brāhman know that his own is superior. By his own might alone, therefore, let him restrain his enemies."

¹⁹¹ We had been before told that they had been killed, so that this looks like a slaying of the slain, as no resuscitation of the army is alluded to.

¹⁹² On this the Commentator remarks that "though these princes were Kshattriyas, they were not actual kings, and had acted tyrannically ; so that a very slight expiation was required for killing them" (*kshattriyatve 'pi prithivī-patīvūbhāvāt tad-badhe alpa-prāyascittam ātatāyivāch cha |*).

uplifts his Brahmanical mace. Viśvāmitra, too, raises his fiery weapon and calls out to his adversary to stand. Vasiṣṭha bids him to show his strength, and boasts that he will soon humble his pride. He asks: (56, 4) *Kva cha te kshattriya-balam kva cha brahma-balam mahat | pasya brahma-balaṁ divyam mama kshattriya-pāṁśana | tasyāstram Gādhiputrasya ghoram āgneyam udyatam | brahma-daṇḍena tach chhāntam agner vegah ivāmbhasā* | “What comparison is there between a Kshattriya’s might, and the great might of a Brāhman? Behold, thou contemptible Kshattriya, my divine Brahmanical power.’ The dreadful fiery weapon uplifted by the son of Gādhi was then quenched by the rod of the Brāhman, as fire is by water.” Many and various other celestial missiles, as the nooses of Brahmā, Kāla (Time), and Varuṇa, the discus of Viṣṇu, and the trident of Śiva, were hurled by Viśvāmitra at his antagonist, but the son of Brahmā swallowed them up in his all-devouring mace. Finally, to the intense consternation of all the gods, the warrior shot off the terrific weapon of Brāhmā (*brāhmāstra*); but this was equally ineffectual against the Brahmanical sage. Vasiṣṭha had now assumed a direful appearance: (56, 18) *Roma-kūpeshu sarveshu Vasiṣṭhasya mahātmanah | marīchyah ivā nishpetur agner dhūmakulārchishah | prajāvalat brahma-daṇḍas cha Vasiṣṭhasya karodyatah | vidhūmah ivā kālāgnir Yama-daṇḍah ivāparaḥ* | “Jets of fire mingled with smoke darted from the pores of his body; (19) the Brahmanical mace blazed in his hand like a smokeless¹⁹³ mundane conflagration, or a second sceptre of Yāma.” Being appeased, however, by the munis, who proclaimed his superiority to his rival, the sage stayed his vengeance; and Viśvāmitra exclaimed with a groan: (56, 23) *Dhiḥ balam kshattriya-balam brahma-tejo-balam balam | ekena brahma-daṇḍena sarvāstrāṇi hatūni me* | “Shame on a Kshattriya’s strength: the strength of a Brahman’s might alone is strength: by the single Brahmanical mace all my weapons have been destroyed.” No alternative now remains to the humiliated monarch, but either to acquiesce in this helpless inferiority, or to work out his own elevation to the Brahmanical order. He embraces the latter alternative: (56, 24) *Tad etat prasamīkshyāham prasannendriya-mānasaḥ | tapo mahat samāsthāsyē yad vai brahmatva-kāraṇam* | “Having pondered well this defeat, I shall betake myself, with composed senses and mind,

¹⁹³ The Bombay edition has *vidhūmah*. Schlegel’s and Gorresio’s editions have *śaḍhūmah*, “enveloped in smoke.”

to strenuous austere fervour, which shall exalt me to the rank of a Brāhman." Intensely vexed and mortified, groaning and full of hatred against his enemy, he travelled with his queen to the south, and carried his resolution into effect; (ch. 57) and we are first of all told that three sons Havishyanda, Madhusyanda, and Dṛiḍhanetra were born to him. At the end of a thousand years Brahmā appeared, and announced that he had conquered the heaven of royal sages (*rājārshis*); and, in consequence of his austere fervour, he was recognised as having attained that rank. Viśvāmītra, however, was ashamed, grieved, and incensed at the offer of so very inadequate a reward, and exclaimed: "I have practised intense austerity, and the gods and ṛishis regard me only as a rājarshi!"¹⁹⁴ Austerities, it appears, are altogether fruitless" (57, 5. *Jitāḥ rājarshi-lokās te tapasā Kuśikātmaja* | 6. *Anena tapasā tvam hi rājarshir iti vidmahe* | . . . 7. *Viśvāmītro 'pi tach chhṛutvā kriyā kinchid avān-mukhaḥ | duḥkhena mahatā 'vishṭaḥ samanyur idam abravīt | tapas cha sumahat taptam rājarshir iti mām viduḥ | devāḥ sarshi-guṇāḥ sarve nāsti manye tapaḥ-phalam* |). Notwithstanding

¹⁹⁴ The Vishṇu Purāṇa, iii. 6, 21, says: "There are three kinds of rishis: Brāhmārshis, after them Dēvarshis, and after them Rājarshis" (*jneyāḥ brahmarshayaḥ pūrvaṁ tebhyo devarshayaḥ punaḥ | rājarshayaḥ punas tebhyāḥ ṛishi-prakṛitayas trayāḥ* |). Böhlingk and Roth, *s.v. ṛishi*, mention also (on the authority of the vocabulary called Trikaṇḍaśeṣha) the words *māharshi* (great rishi), *pārāmarshi* (most eminent rishi), *śrutarshi* (secondary rishi), and *kūṇḍarshi*, who is explained *s.v.* to be a teacher of a particular portion (*kūṇḍa*) of the Veda. *Devarshis* are explained by Professor Wilson (V.P. iii. p. 68, paraphrasing the text of the Vishṇu Purāṇa), to be "sages who are demi-gods also;" *Brāhmārshis* to be "sages who are sons of Brahmā or Brahmans;" and *Rājarshis* to be "princes who have adopted a life of devotion." In a note he adds: "A similar enumeration is given in the Vāyu, with some additions: Rishi is derived from *ṛish*, 'to go to,' or 'approach;' the Brahmarshis, it is said, are descendants of the five patriarchs, who were the founders of races or gotras of Brahmans, or Kaśyapa, Vaśiṣṭha, Angiras, Atri, and Bhṛigu; the Devarshis are Nara and Nārāyaṇa, the sons of Dharma; the Bālakhilyas, who sprang from Kratu; Kardama, the son of Pulaha; Kuvēra, the son of Pulastya; Achala, the son of Pratyūsha; Nārada and Parvata, the sons of Kaśyapa. Rājarshis are Ikshvāku and other princes. The Brahmarshis dwell in the sphere of Brahmā; the Devarshis in the region of the gods; and the Rājarshis in the heaven of Indra." Brahmarshis are evidently rishis who were priests; and Rājarshis, rishis of kingly extraction. If so, a Devarshi, having a divine character, should be something higher than either. Professor Roth, following apparently the Trikaṇḍaśeṣha, defines them as "rishis dwelling among the gods." I am not aware how far back this classification of rishis goes in Indian literature. Roth, *s.vv. ṛishi, brahmarshi* and *devarshi* does not give any references to these words as occurring in the Brāhmaṇas; and they are not found in the hymns of the R.V. where, however, the "seven rishis" are mentioned. Regarding *rājarshis* see pp. 266 ff. above.

this disappointment, he had ascended one grade, and forthwith recommenced his work of mortification.

At this point of time his austerities were interrupted by the following occurrences: King Trisāṅku, one of Ikshvāku's descendants, had conceived the design of celebrating a sacrifice by virtue of which he should ascend bodily to heaven. As Vaśishṭha, on being summoned, declared that the thing was impossible (*aśakyam*), Trisāṅku travelled to the south, where the sage's hundred sons were engaged in austerities, and applied to them to do what their father had declined. Though he addressed them with the greatest reverence and humility, and added that "the Ikshvākus regarded their family-priests as their highest resource in difficulties, and that, after their father, he himself looked to them as his tutelary deities" (57, 22. *Ikshvākūnām hi sarveshām purodhaḥ paramā gatiḥ | tasmād anantaram sarve bhavanto daivatam mama*), he received from the haughty priests the following rebuke for his presumption: (58, 2) *Pratyākhyāto 'si durbuddhe guruṇā satyavādinā | taṁ kathaṁ samatikramya śākhāntaram upeyivān | 3. Ikshvākūnām hi sarveshām purodhāḥ paramā gatiḥ | na chātikramitūṁ śakyāṁ vachanaṁ satyavādināḥ | 4. "Aśakyam" iti chovācha Vaśishṭho bhagavān ṛishiḥ | taṁ vayaṁ vai samāharttum kratuṁ śaktāḥ kathaṁ tara | 5. Bālīśas tvaṁ nara-śreshṭha gamyatāṁ sva-puram punaḥ | yājane bhagavān śaktas trailokyasyāpi pārthiva | avamūnāṁ kathaṁ kartuṁ tasya śakshyāmahe vayam |* "Fool, thou hast been refused by thy truth-speaking preceptor. How is it that, disregarding his authority, thou hast resorted to another school (*śākhā*)?"¹⁹⁵ 3. The family-priest is the highest oracle of all the Ikshvākus; and the command of that veracious personage cannot be transgressed. 4. Vaśishṭha, the divine rishi, has declared that 'the thing cannot be;' and how can we undertake thy sacrifice? 5. Thou art foolish, king; return to thy capital. The divine (Vaśishṭha) is competent to

¹⁹⁵ It does not appear how Trisāṅku, in asking the aid of Vaśishṭha's sons after applying in vain to their father, could be charged with resorting to another *śākhā* (school), in the ordinary sense of that word: as it is not conceivable that the sons should have been of another *S'ākhā* from the father, whose cause they espouse with so much warmth. The Commentator in the Bombay edition explains the word *śākhāntaram* as = *yājānādinā rakshakāntaram*, "one who by sacrificing for thee, etc., will be another protector." Gorresio's Gauda text, which may often be used as a commentary on the older one, has the following paraphrase of the words in question, ch. 60, 3: *Mūlam utsrjya kasmāt tvaṁ śākhāṁ ichhasi jāmbitum |* "Why, forsaking the root, dost thou desire to hang upon the branches."

act as priest of the three worlds; how can we shew him disrespect?" Trisanku then gave them to understand, that as his preceptor and "his preceptor's sons had declined compliance with his requests, he should think of some other expedient." In consequence of his venturing to express this presumptuous intention, they condemned him by their imprecation to become a Chanḍāla (58, 7. "*Pratyākhyāto bhagavatā guru-putrais tathaiva cha | anyām gatim gamishyāmi svasti vo 'stu tapodhanāḥ*" | *ṛishi-putrās tu tach chhrtvā vākyam ghorābhisāṃhitam | śeṣaḥ parama-sankruddhās "chāṇḍālatvaṃ gamishyasi"* |). As this curse soon took effect, and the unhappy king's form was changed into that of a degraded outcast, he resorted to Viśvāmitra (who, as we have seen, was also dwelling at this period in the south), enlarging on his own virtues and piety, and bewailing his fate. Viśvāmitra commiserated his condition (ch. 59), and promised to sacrifice on his behalf, and exalt him to heaven in the same Chanḍāla-form to which he had been condemned by his preceptors' curse. "Heaven is now as good as in thy possession, since thou hast resorted to the son of Kuśika" (59, 4. *Guru-śāpa-kṛitāṃ rūpaṃ yad idaṃ tvayi varttate | anena saha rūpeṇa saśārīro gamishyasi | hasta-prāptam aham manye svargaṃ tava narādhipa | yas traṃ Kauśikam āgamyā śaranyāḥ śaranaṃ gataḥ* |). He then directed that preparations should be made for the sacrifice, and that all the rishis, including the family of Vaśishṭha, should be invited to the ceremony. The disciples of Viśvāmitra, who had conveyed his message, reported the result on their return in these words: (59, 11) *Srutvā te vachanaṃ sarve samāyānti dvijātayaḥ | sarva-deśeshu chāgachhan varjayitvā Mahodayam | Vāśishṭhaṃ tach chhataṃ sarvaṃ krodha-paryākulūksharam | yad uvācha vacho ghoraṃ śṛiṇu tvam muni-pungava | "kshattriyo yājako yasya chāṇḍālasya viśeshataḥ | kathaṃ sadasi bhoktāro havis tasya surarshayaḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ vā mahātmāno bhuktvā chāṇḍāla-bhojanam | kathaṃ svargaṃ gamishyanti Viśvāmitreṇa pālītāḥ"* | *etad vachana-naishṭhuryyam ūchuḥ saṃrakta-lochanāḥ | Vāśishṭhāḥ muni-śārdūla sarve saha-mahodayāḥ* | "Having heard your message, all the Brāhmans are assembling in all the countries, and have arrived, excepting Mahodaya (Vaśishṭha?). Hear what dreadful words those hundred Vaśishṭhas, their voices quivering with rage, have uttered: 'How can the gods and rishis¹⁹⁸ con-

¹⁹⁸ The rishis as priests (*ṛitvik*) would be entitled to eat the remains of the sacrifice, according to the Commentator.

sume the oblation at the sacrifice of that man, especially if he be a Chāṇḍāla, for whom a Kshattriya is officiating-priest? How can illustrious Brāhmans ascend to heaven, after eating the food of a Chāṇḍāla, and being entertained by Viśvāmitra?' These ruthless words all the Vaśiṣṭhas, together with Mahodaya, uttered, their eyes inflamed with anger." Viśvāmitra, who was greatly incensed on receiving this message, by a curse doomed the sons of Vaśiṣṭha to be reduced to ashes, and reborn as degraded outcasts (*mṛitapāḥ*) for seven hundred births, and Mahodaya to become a Nishāda. Knowing that this curse had taken effect (ch. 60), Viśvāmitra then, after eulogizing Trisanku, proposed to the assembled rishis that the sacrifice should be celebrated. To this they assented, being actuated by fear of the terrible sage's wrath. Viśvāmitra himself officiated at the sacrifice as *yājaka*; ¹⁹⁷ and the other rishis as priests (*ritvijah*) (with other functions) performed all the ceremonies. Viśvāmitra next invited the gods to partake of the oblations: (60, 11) *Nābhyagaman yadā tatra bhāgārthaṁ sarva-devatāḥ | tataḥ kopa-samāviṣṭo Viśvāmitro mahāmuniḥ | sruvam uḍyanīya sakro-dhas Trisankum idam abravīt | "paśya me tapaso vīryaṁ svārjitasya nareśvara | esha tvām svaśārireṇa nayāmi svargam ojaś | duṣṭprāpyaṁ svaśārireṇa svargaṁ gachchha nareśvara | svārjitaṁ kinchid apy asti mayā hi tapasaḥ phalam |* "When, however, the deities did not come to receive their portions, Viśvāmitra became full of wrath, and raising aloft the sacrificial ladle, thus addressed Trisanku: 'Behold, o monarch, the power of austere fervour acquired by my own efforts. I myself, by my own energy, will conduct thee to heaven. Ascend to that celestial region which is so arduous to attain in an earthly body. I have surely earned some reward of my austerity.'" Trisanku ascended instantly to heaven in the sight of the munis. Indra, however, ordered him to be gone, as a person who, having incurred the curse of his spiritual preceptors, was unfit for the abode of the celestials;—and to fall down headlong to earth (60, 17. *Trisanko gachchha bhūyas tvaṁ nāsi svargakṛitālayaḥ | guru-śūpa-hato mūḍha pata bhūmim avāk-śirāḥ |*). He accordingly began to descend, invoking loudly, as he fell, the help of his spiritual patron. Viśvāmitra, greatly incensed, called out to him to stop: (60, 20) *Tato brahma-tapo-yogāt Prajāpatir ivāparaḥ | sasarija dakṣiṇe bhāge saptarśhin aparāṇ punaḥ | dakṣinām diśam āsthāya*

¹⁹⁷ This means as *adhvaryu* according to the Commentator.

rishi-madhye mahāyasaḥ | nakshattra-mūlām aparām asṛijāt krodha-mūrçchitaḥ | anyam Indraṁ karishyāmi loko vā syād anindrakaḥ | daiva-tāny api sa krodhāt sraśṭuṁ samupachakrame |¹⁹⁸ "Then by the power of his divine knowledge and austere fervour he created, like another Prajāpati, other Seven Rishis (a constellation so called) in the southern part of the sky. Having proceeded to this quarter of the heavens, the renowned sage, in the midst of the rishis, formed another garland of stars, being overcome with fury. Exclaiming, 'I will create another Indra, or the world shall have no Indra at all,' he began, in his rage, to call gods also into being." The rishis, gods (Suras), and Asuras now became seriously alarmed and said to Viśvāmitra, in a conciliatory tone, that Trisāṅku, "as he had been cursed by his preceptors, should not be admitted bodily into heaven, until he had undergone some lustration" (60, 24. *Ayam rūjā mahābhūga guru-śūpa-parikshataḥ | saśarīro divaṁ yātuṁ nārhaty akṛita-pāvanaḥ* |).¹⁹⁹ The sage replied that he had given a promise to Trisāṅku, and appealed to the gods to permit his protégé to remain bodily in heaven, and the newly created stars to retain their places in perpetuity. The gods agreed that "these numerous stars should remain, but beyond the sun's path, and that Trisāṅku, like an immortal, with his head downwards, should shine among them, and be followed by them," adding "that his object would be thus attained, and his renown secured, and he would be like a dweller in heaven" (60, 29. *Evam bhavatu, bhadram te tiśṭhantv etāni sarvaśaḥ | gagane tāny anekāni vaiśvānara-pathād vahiḥ | nakshattrāṇi muni-śreṣṭha teshu jyotishshu jūjvalan | avāk-śirās Trisāṅkuś cha tiśṭhatv amara-sannibhaḥ | anuyāsyanti chaitāni jyotiṁśki nṛipa-sattamam | kṛitārthaṁ kīrtimantaṁ cha svarga-loka-gataṁ yathā* |). Thus was this great dispute adjusted by a compromise, which Viśvāmitra accepted.

This story of Trisāṅku, it will have been observed, differs materially from the one quoted above (p. 375 ff.) from the Harivaṁśa; but brings out more distinctly the character of the conflict between Vaiśiṣṭha and Viśvāmitra.

When all the gods and rishis had departed at the conclusion of the

¹⁹⁸ I follow Schlegel's text, which differs verbally, though not in substance, both from the Bombay edition and from Gorresio's.

¹⁹⁹ The last compound word *akṛitapāvanaḥ*, "without lustration," is given by Schlegel and Gorresio. The Bombay edition has instead of it *eva tapodhana*, "o sage rich in austerity."

sacrifice, Viśvāmitra said to his attendant devotees : (61, 2) *Mahāvighnaḥ pravṛitto 'yaṁ dakṣiṇām āsthito diśam | diśam anyām prapatsyāmas tattra tapsyāmahe tapaḥ* | “This has been a great interruption [to our austerities] which has occurred in the southern region : we must proceed in another direction to continue our penances.” He accordingly went to a forest in the west, and began his austerities anew. Here the narrative is again interrupted by the introduction of another story, that of king Ambārisha, king of Ayodhyā, who was, according to the Rāmāyaṇa, the twenty-eighth in descent from Ikshvāku, and the twenty-second from Trisanku. (Compare the genealogy in the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 70, and ii. 110, 6 ff., with that in Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. pp. 260 ff. 280, 284 ff. and 303 ; which is different.) Viśvāmitra is nevertheless represented as flourishing contemporaneously with both of these princes. The story relates that Ambarisha was engaged in performing a sacrifice, when Indra carried away the victim. The priest said that this ill-omened event had occurred owing to the king's bad administration ; and would call for a great expiation, unless a human victim could be produced (61, 8. *Prāyaścittam mahad hy etad naraṁ vā puruṣaḥ śabha | ānayasva pāśūṁ śighraṁ yāvat karma pravarttate*). After a long search the royal-rishi (Ambarisha) came upon the Brāhmaṇa-rishi Richika, a descendant of Bhṛigu, and asked him to sell one of his sons for a victim, at the price of a hundred thousand cows. Richika answered that he would not sell his eldest son ; and his wife added that she would not sell the youngest : “eldest sons,” she observed, “being generally the favourites of their fathers, and youngest sons of their mothers” (61, 18. *Prāyeṇa hi nara-śreṣṭha jyeshṭhāḥ pitrīṣu vallaḥ | mātṛiṇām cha kaṇīyāṁsas tasmād rakṣhe kaṇīyasam*). The second son, S'unaśśepa, then said that in that case he regarded himself as the one who was to be sold, and desired the king to remove him. The hundred thousand cows, with ten millions of gold-pieces and heaps of jewels, were paid down, and S'unaśśepa carried away. As they were passing through Pushkara (ch. 62) S'unaśśepa beheld his maternal uncle Viśvāmitra (see Rāmāyaṇa, i. 34, 7,²⁰⁰ and p. 352 above) who was engaged in austerities there with other rishis, threw himself into his arms,

²⁰⁰ *Pūrvajā bhaginī chāpi mama Rāghava suvatā | nāmnā Satyavatī nāma Richika pratipādītā* | “And I have a religious sister older than myself called Satyavatī, who was given in marriage to Richika.”

and implored his assistance, urging his orphan, friendless, and helpless state, as claims on the sage's benevolence (62, 4. *Na me 'sti mātā na pitā jnātayo bāndhavāḥ kutaḥ | trātum arhasi mām saumya dharmena muni-pungava | . . . 7. Na me nātho hy anāthasya bhava bharyena chetasā |*). Viśvāmitra soothed him; and pressed his own sons to offer themselves as victims in the room of Sunaśśepa. This proposition met with no favour from Madhushyanda²⁰¹ and the other sons of the royal hermit, who answered with haughtiness and derision: (62, 14) *Kathaṁ ātma-sutān hitvā trāyase 'nya-sutān cibho | akāryyam iva paśyūmaḥ samānsam iva bhojane |* "How is it that thou sacrificest thine own sons, and seekest to rescue those of others? We look upon this as wrong, and like the eating of one's own flesh."²⁰² The sage was exceedingly wroth at this disregard of his injunction, and doomed his sons to be born in the most degraded classes, like Vasiṣṭha's sons, and to eat dog's flesh,²⁰³ for a thousand years. He then said to Sunaśśepa: (62, 19) *Paritra-pāsair ābaddho rakta-mālyānulepanaḥ | Vaiṣṇavaṁ yūpam āśūḍya rūgbhir Agniṁ udāhara | ime cha gāthe dve divye gūyethāḥ muni-puttraka | Ambarīṣasya yajne 'smiṁs tataḥ siddhim avāpsyasi |* "When thou art bound with hallowed cords, decked with a red garland, and anointed with unguents, and fastened to the sacrificial post of Viṣṇu, then address thyself to Agni, and sing these two divine verses (*gāthās*), at the sacrifice of Ambarīṣa; then shalt thou attain the fulfilment [of thy desire]." Being furnished with the two *gāthās*, Sunaśśepa proposed at once to king Ambarīṣa that they should set out for their destination. When bound at the stake to be immolated, dressed in a red garment, "he celebrated the two gods, Indra and his younger brother (Viṣṇu), with the excellent verses. The Thousand-eyed (Indra) was pleased with the secret hymn, and bestowed long life on Sunaśśepa" (62, 25. *Sa baddho rūgbhir agryābhir abhituṣṭāva vai surau | Indram Indrānujaṁ chaiva yathāvad muni-puttrakaḥ | tasmai prītaḥ sahasrākṣo*

²⁰¹ The word is written thus in Schlegel's and Gorresio's editions. The Bombay edition reads Madhuchhanda.

²⁰² Schlegel and Gorresio read *svamānsam*, "one's own flesh," which seems much more appropriate than *iva-mānsam*, "dog's flesh," the reading of the Bombay edition.

²⁰³ Gorresio's edition alone reads *sva-mānsa-vṛttayaḥ*, "subsisting on your own flesh," and makes this to be allusion to what the sons had just said and a punishment for their impertinence (64, 16. *Yasmāt sva-mānsam uddiṣṭvā yushmābhir avamunya*

rahasya-stuti-toshitaḥ | dirgham āyus tadā prādāc Chhunassēphāya Vā-savaḥ |).²⁰⁴ King Ambarīsha also received great benefits from this sacrifice. Viśvāmitra meanwhile proceeded with his austerities, which he prolonged for a thousand years.

At the end of this time (ch. 63) the gods came to allot his reward; and Brahmā announced that he had attained the rank of a rishi, thus apparently advancing an additional step. Dissatisfied, as it would seem, with this, the sage commenced his task of penance anew. After a length of time he beheld the nymph (Apsāras) Menākā, who had come to bathe in the lake of Pushkara. She flashed on his view, unequalled in her radiant beauty, like lightning in a cloud (63, 5. *Rūpeṇāprati-mām tatra vidyutāṁ jalade yathā*). He was smitten by her charms, invited her to be his companion in his hermitage, and for ten years remained a slave to her witchery, to the great prejudice of his austerities.²⁰⁵ At length he became ashamed of this ignoble subjection, and full of indignation at what he believed to be a device of the gods to disturb his devotion; and, dismissing the nymph with gentle accents, he departed for the northern mountains, where he practised severe austerities for a thousand years on the banks of the Kauśikī river. The gods became alarmed at the progress he was making, and decided that he should be dignified with the appellation of great rishi (*māhār-shi*); and Brahmā, giving effect to the general opinion of the deities, announced that he had conferred that rank upon him. Joining his hands and bowing his head, Viśvāmitra replied that he should consider himself to have indeed completely subdued his senses, if the incomparable title of Brāhman-rishi were conferred upon him (63, 31. *Brah-marshi-śabdām atulaṁ svārjitaiḥ karmabhiḥ śubhaiḥ | yadi me bhagavān āha tato 'haṁ vijitendriyaḥ |*). Brahmā informed him in answer, that he had not yet acquired the power of perfectly controlling his senses; but should make further efforts with that view. The sage then began to put himself through a yet more rigorous course of austerities, standing with his arms erect, without support, feeding on air, in summer exposed to five fires (i.e. one on each of four sides, and the sun overhead), in the rainy season remaining unsheltered from the wet, and in

²⁰⁴ I have alluded above, p. 358, note, to the differences which exist between this legend of S'unasēpa and the older one in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa.

²⁰⁵ Compare Mr. Leckie's History of Rationalism, vol. i. p. 86.

winter lying on a watery couch night and day. This he continued for a thousand years. At last Indra and the other deities became greatly distressed at the idea of the merit he was storing up, and the power which he was thereby acquiring; and the chief of the celestials desired (ch. 64) the nymph Rāmbhā to go and bewitch him by her blandishments. She expressed great reluctance to expose herself to the wrath of the formidable muni, but obeyed the repeated injunction of Indra, who promised that he and Kandarpa (the god of love) should stand by her, and assumed her most attractive aspect with the view of overcoming the sage's impassibility. He, however, suspected this design, and becoming greatly incensed, he doomed the nymph by a curse to be turned into stone and to continue in that state for a thousand years.²⁰⁶ The curse took effect, and Kandarpa and Indra slunk away. In this way, though he resisted the allurements of sensual love,²⁰⁷ he lost the whole fruit of his austerities by yielding to anger; and had to begin his work over again. He resolved to check his irascibility, to remain silent, not even to breathe for hundreds of years; to dry up his body; and to fast and stop his breath till he had obtained the coveted character of a Brāhman. He then (ch. 65) left the Himālaya and travelled to the east, where he underwent a dreadful exercise, unequalled in the whole history of austerities, maintaining silence, according to a vow, for a thousand years. At the end of this time he had attained to perfection, and although thwarted by many obstacles, he remained unmoved by anger. On the expiration of this course of austerity, he prepared some food to eat; which Indra, coming in the form of a Brāhman, begged that he would give him. Viśvāmitra did so, and though he had none left for himself, and was obliged to remain fasting, he said nothing to the Brāhman, on account of his vow of silence. 65, 8. *Tasyānuchchhvasamūnasya mūrdhni dhūmo vyajāyata* | 9. *Trailokyaṃ yena sambhrāntam ātāpitam ivābhavat* | . . . 11. "*Bahubhiḥ kārāṇair deva Viśvāmitro mahāmuniḥ | lobhitaḥ krodhitaḥ chaiva tapasā chābhivardhate* | . . . 12. *Na dīyate yadi tv aśya manasā yad abhīpsitam* | 13. *Vināśayati trailokyaṃ tapasā sa-charāccharam | vyākulāś*

²⁰⁶ On this the Commentator remarks that this incident shews that anger is more difficult to conquer than even lust (*etena kāmāḍ api krodho durjayaḥ iti sūchitam*).

²⁰⁷ The Commentator, however, suggests that the sudden sight of Rāmbhā may at first have excited in him some feelings of this kind (*āpūta Rāmbhā-darśana-pravṛtityā kāmēnāpi tapaḥ-kṣayaḥ*).

cha diśaḥ sarvāḥ na cha kinchit prakāśate | 14. *Sūgarah kshubhitāḥ sarve viśīryante cha parvatāḥ* | *prakampate cha vasudhā vāyur vātīha sankulaḥ* | 15. *Brahman na pratijānīmo nāstiko jūyate janaḥ* | 16. *Buddhiṁ na kurute yāvad nāśe deva mahāmuniḥ* | 17. *Tāvat prasādyo bhagavān agnirūpo mahādyutiḥ* | 19. *Brahmarshe svāgataṁ te 'stu tapasā smaḥ sutoshitāḥ* | 20. *Brāhmaṇyaṁ tapasogreṇa prāptavān asi Kauśika* | *dirgham āyus che te brahman dadāmi sa-marud-gaṇaḥ* | 21. *svasti prāpnuhi bhadraṁ te gachha saumya yathāsukham* | . . . 22. . . . *brāhmaṇyaṁ yadi me prāptaṁ dirgham āyus tathaiva cha* | 23. *Omākāro 'tha vashatkāro vedās cha varayantu mām* | *kshattrā-veda-vidūṁ śreshtho brahma-veda-vidūṁ api* | 24. *Brahma-putro Vasiṣṭho mām evaṁ vadatu devatāḥ* | 25. *Tataḥ prasūdito devair Vasiṣṭho japatāṁ varaḥ* | *sakhyāṁ chakūra brahmarshir "evam astv" iti chābravīt* | 26. "*Brahmarshitvāṁ na sandehaḥ sarvam sampadyate tava*" | 27. *Viśvāmitro 'pi dharmātmā labdhvā brāhmaṇyam uttamam* | *pūjayāmāsa brahmarshiṁ Vasiṣṭhaṁ japatāṁ varam* | "As he continued to suspend his breath, (smoke issued from his head, to the great consternation and distress of the three worlds." The gods, rishis, etc., then addressed Brahmā: "The great muni Viśvāmitra has been allured and provoked in various ways, but still advances in his sanctity. If his wish is not conceded, he will destroy the three worlds by the force of his austerity. All the regions of the universe are confounded, no light anywhere shines; all the oceans are tossed, and the mountains crumble, the earth quakes, and the wind blows confusedly. 15. We cannot, o Brahmā, guarantee that mankind shall not become atheistic. . . . 16. Before the great and glorious sage of fiery form resolves to destroy (everything) let him be propitiated." The gods, headed by Brahmā, then addressed Viśvāmitra: "Hail Brāhmaṇ rishi, we are gratified by thy austerities; o Kauśika, thou hast, through their intensity, attained to Brāhmaṇhood. I, o Brāhmaṇ, associated with the Maruts, confer on thee long life. May every blessing attend thee; depart wherever thou wilt.' The sage, delighted, made his obeisance to the gods, and said: 'If I have obtained Brāhmaṇhood, and long life, then let the mystic monosyllable (*omākāra*) and the sacrificial formula (*vashatkāra*) and the Vedas recognise me in that capacity. And let Vasiṣṭha, the son of Brahmā, the most eminent of those who are skilled in the Kshattrā-veda, and the Brāhma-veda (the knowledge of the Kshattriya and the Brahmanical disciplines), address me simi-

Early.' Accordingly Vasiṣṭha, being propitiated by the gods, became reconciled to Viśvāmitra, and recognised his claim to all the prerogatives of a Brāhman rishi. . . . Viśvāmitra, too, having attained the Brahmanical rank, paid all honour to Vasiṣṭha." Such was the grand result achieved by Viśvāmitra, at the cost of many thousand years of intense mortification of the body, and discipline of the soul. During the course of the struggle he had manifested, as the story tells us, a power little, if at all, inferior to that of Indra, the king of the gods; and as in a former legend we have seen King Nahusha actually occupying the throne of that deity, we cannot doubt that—according to the recognised principles of Indian mythology—Viśvāmitra had only to recommence his career of self-mortification in order to raise himself yet higher than he had yet risen, to the rank of a devarshi, or divine rishi (if this be, indeed, a superior grade to that of brahmarshi), or to any other elevation he might desire. But, as far as the account in the Rāmāyaṇa informs us, he was content with his success. He stood on a footing of perfect equality with his rival Vasiṣṭha, and became indifferent to further honours. In fact, it was not necessary for the purpose of the inventors of the legend to carry him any higher. They only wished to account for his exercising the prerogatives of a Brāhman; and this had been already accomplished to their satisfaction.

In the story of Śakuntalā, however, as narrated in the Mahābhārata, Ādiparvan, sixty-ninth and following sections, we are informed that, to the great alarm of Indra, Viśvāmitra renewed his austerities, even long after he had attained the position of a Brāhman, verse 2914 : *Tapyamānaḥ kila purā Viśvāmitro mahat tapaḥ | subhriṣaṁ tāpayāmāsa Sakraṁ sura-gaṇeśvaram | tapasū dīpta-vīryyo'yaṁ sthānād mām chyāyayed iti* | "Formerly Viśvāmitra, who was practising intense austere fervour, occasioned great distress to Śakra (Indra), the lord of the deities, lest by the fiery energy so acquired by the saint he himself should be cast down from his place." Indra accordingly resorted to the usual device of sending one of the Apsarases, Menakā, to seduce the sage by the display of her charms, and the exercise of all her allurements, "by beauty, youth, sweetness, gestures, smiles, and words" (verse 2920, *Rāpa-yauvana-mādhuryya-cheshṭita-smita-bhāshitaiḥ*), into the indulgence of sensual love; and thus put an end to his efforts after increased sanctity. Menakā urges the dangers of the mission arising from the great power

and irascibility of the sage, of whom, she remarked, even Indra himself was afraid, as a reason for excusing her from undertaking it; and refers to some incidents in Viśvāmitra's history, verse 2923: *Mahābhāgam Vasishṭhaṁ yaḥ putrair iṣṭair vyayojayat | kshattra-jātaś cha yaḥ pūrvam abhavad brāhmaṇo balāt | śauchārthaṁ yo nadīm chakre durgamām bahubhir jalaiḥ | yām tām punyatamām loke Kauśikī vidur janāḥ |* 2925. *Babhāra yatrāsyā purā kāle durge mahātmanaḥ | dārūn Matango dharmātmā rājarshir vyādhatām gataḥ | atīta-kāle durbhikṣhe abhyetya punar āśramam | munīḥ Pāreti nadyāḥ vai nāma chakre tadā prabhuḥ | Matangam yūjayānchakre yatra prīta-manāḥ svayam | tvaṁ cha somam bhayād yasya gataḥ pātuṁ sureśvara | chakūrānyaṁ cha lokam vai krudho nakshattra-sampadā | pratiśravaṇa-pūrvāṇi nakshattrāṇi chakūra yaḥ | guru-śūpa-hatasyāpi Triśankoḥ śaraṇaṁ dadau |* "2923. He deprived the great Vaśiṣṭha of his beloved sons; and though born a Kshatriya, he formerly became a Brāhmaṇ by force. For the purpose of purification he rendered the holy river, known in the world as the Kauśikī, unfordable from the mass of water. 2925. His wife was once maintained there in a time of distress by the righteous rājarshi Matanga, who had become a huntsman; and when the famine was past, the muni returned to his hermitage, gave to the river the name of Pārā, and being gratified, sacrificed for Matanga on its banks; and then thou thyself, Indra, from fear of him wentest to drink his soma. He created, too, when incensed, another world, with a garland of stars, formed agreeably to his promise, and gave his protection to Triśanku, even when smitten by his preceptor's curse." Menakā, however, ends by saying that she cannot decline the commission which has been imposed upon her; but begs that she may receive such succours as may ensure her success. She accordingly shows herself in the neighbourhood of Viśvāmitra's hermitage. The saint yields to the influence of love, invites her to become his companion, and as a result of their intercourse Sakuntalā is born. The Apsaras then returns to Indra's paradise.

SECT. XII.—*Other accounts, from the Mahābhārata, of the way in which Viśvāmitra became a Brāhmaṇ.*

In the Udyogaparvan of the Mahābhārata, sections 105–118, a story is told regarding Viśvāmitra and his pupil Gālava, in which a different

account is given of the manner in which Viśvāmitra attained the rank of a Brāhman; viz. by the gift of Dharma, or Righteousness, appearing in the form of his rival. M. Bh. Udyogap. 3721: *Viśvāmitraṁ tapyantam Dharmo jijnāsaya purā | abhyūgachhat swayam bhūtvā Vāsishṭho bhagavān ṛishiḥ | . . . 3728. Atha varsha-śate pārṇe Dharmah punar upāgamat | Vāsishṭhaṁ veśam āsthāya Kauśikam bhojanepsayā | sa dṛishṭvā śirasā bhaktaṁ dhriyamāṇam maharshiṇā | tiṣṭhatā vāyubhaksheṇa Viśvāmitreṇa dhīmata | pratigrihya tato Dharmas tathairōshnam tathā namam | bhuktvā "prito 'smi riprarshe" tam ukṛvā sa munir gataḥ | kshattrā-bhāvād apagato brāhmaṇatvam upāgataḥ | Dharmasya vachanāt prito Viśvāmitras tathā 'bhavat |* "Dharma, assuming the personality of the sage Vāsishṭha, once came to prove Viśvāmitra, when he was living a life of austerity;" and after consuming some food, given him by other devotees, desired Viśvāmitra, who brought him some freshly cooked *charu*, quite hot, to stand still for the present. Viśvāmitra accordingly stood still, nourished only by air, with the boiled rice on his head. "The same personage, Dharma, in the same disguise, reappeared after a hundred years, desiring food, and consumed the rice (still quite hot and fresh), which he saw supported upon the hermit's head, while he himself remained motionless, feeding on air. Dharma then said to him, 'I am pleased with thee, o Brāhman rishi;' and went away. Viśvāmitra, having become thus transformed from a Kshattriya into a Brāhman by the word of Dharma, was delighted."

In the Anuśāsanaparvan of the Mahābhārata, we have another reference to the story of Viśvāmitra. King Yudhishṭhira enquires of Bhīshma (verse 181) how, if Brāhmanhood is so difficult to be attained by men of the other three castes, it happened that the great Kshattriya acquired that dignity. The prince then recapitulates the chief exploits of Viśvāmitra: 183. *Tena hy amita-vīryeṇa Vāsishṭhasya mahātmanaḥ | hatam putra-śataṁ sadyas tapasā 'pi pitāmaha | yātudhānās cha bahavo rūkshasās tigma-tejasah | manyunā "vishṭa-dehena śriṣṭāḥ kālāntakopamāḥ |* 185. *Mahān Kuśika-vaṁśas cha brahmarshi-śata-sankulāḥ | sthāpito nara-loke 'smin vidvān brāhmaṇa-saṁyutaḥ | Richikasyātma-jaḥ chaiva Sunaḥśepho mahātapaḥ | vimokshito mahāsattrāt paśutām apy upāgataḥ | Hariśchandra-kṛatau devāṁs toshayitvā "tma-tejasū | putratām anusamprāpto Viśvāmitrasya dhīmataḥ | nābhivādayato jyeshṭhaṁ Devarātaṁ narā-*

dhīpa | puttrāḥ panchāśad evāpi saptāḥ śvapachatām gatāḥ | Trisankur bandhubhir muktaḥ Aikshvākuḥ prīti-pūrvakam | avāk-śirāḥ divaṁ nīto dakṣiṇām āśrito diśam | . . . tato vighnakarī chaiva Panchachūdā su-sammataḥ | Rambhā nāmāpsarāḥ śūpād yasya śailatvam āgatā | tathaiṅva bhayād baddhvā Vaśiṣṭhaḥ salile purā | ātmānam majjayan śrīmān vipūṣaḥ punar utthitah | "For he destroyed Vaśiṣṭha's hundred sons by the power of austere-fervour; when possessed by anger, he created many demons, fierce and destructive as death; he (185) established the great and wise family of the Kuśikas, which was full of Brāhman and hundreds of Brāhman rishis; he delivered Sunaśsepha, son of Richika, who was on the point of being slaughtered as a victim, and who became his son, after he had, at Hariśchandra's sacrifice, through his own power, propitiated the gods; he cursed his fifty sons who would not do homage to Devarāta, (adopted as) the eldest, so that they became outcastes; through affection he elevated Trisanku, when forsaken by his relations, to heaven, where he remained fixed with his head downwards in the southern heavens; (191) . . . he changed the troublesome nymph Rambhā, known as Panchachūdā, by his curse into a form of stone; he occasioned Vaśiṣṭha through fear to bind and throw himself into the river, though he emerged thence unbound;" and performed other deeds calculated to excite astonishment. Yudhisṭhira ends by enquiring, "how this Kshattriya became a Brāhman without transmigrating into another body" (197. *Dehāntaram anūsādyā katham sa brāhmaṇo 'bhavat* |). In answer to this question, Bhīṣma (verses 200 ff.) deduces the descent of Viśvāmitra from Ajāmīḍha, of the race of Bharata, who was a pious priest, or sacrificer (*yajvā dharma-bhritām varaḥ*), the father of Jahnu, who again was the progenitor of Kuśika, the father of Gādhi; and narrates the same legend of the birth of Viśvāmitra, which has been already extracted from the Vishṇu Purāṇa (see above, pp. 349 f.). The conclusion of the story as here given is, that the wife of Richika bore Jamadagni, while "the wife of Gādhi, by the grace of the rishi, gave birth to Viśvāmitra, who was a Brāhman rishi, and an utterer of the Veda; who, though a Kshattriya, attained to Brāhmanhood, and became afterwards also the founder of a Brāhman race" (246. *Viśvāmitraṁ chājanayad Gādhi-bhāryyā yāśasvinī | rīṣheḥ prasādād rājendra brahmarshim brahmavādinam | tato brāhmaṇatām yāto Viśvāmitro mahātapaḥ | kshattriyaḥ so 'py atha tathā brahma-vaṁśasya kārakaḥ* |).

of which the members are detailed,²⁰⁸ including the great rishi Kapila. In regard to the mode in which Viśvāmitra was transformed from a Kshattriya into a Brāhman, we are only told that he belonged to the former class, and that "Richika infused into him this exalted Brāhmanhood" (259. *Tathaiṣa kshattriyo rājan Viśvāmitro mahātapāḥ | Richikenāhitam brahma param etad Yudhishṭhira* |).

This version of the story is different from all those preceding ones which enter into any detail, as it makes no mention of Viśvāmitra having extorted the Brahmanical rank from the gods by force of his austerities; and ascribes his transformation to a virtue communicated by the sage Richika.

I have above (p. 296 f.) quoted a passage from Manu on the subject of submissive and refractory monarchs, in which reference is made to Viśvāmitra's elevation to the Brahmanical order. Nothing is there said of his conflict with Vaśishṭha, or of his arduous penances, endured with the view of conquering for himself an equality with his rival. On the contrary, it is to his submissiveness, *i.e.* to his dutiful recognition of the superiority of the Brāhmins, that his admission into their class is ascribed. Kullūka, indeed, explains the word submissiveness (*vināya*) to mean virtue in general; but the contrast which is drawn between Prithu, Manu, and Viśvāmitra, on the one hand, and Veṇa, Nahusha, Sudās, and Nimi, the resisters of Brāhmanical prerogatives (as all the legends declare them to have been), on the other, makes it tolerably evident that the merit which Manu means to ascribe to Viśvāmitra is that of implicit submission to the spiritual authority of the Brāhmins.

SECT. XIII.—*Legend of Saudāsa.*

In the reign of Mitrasaha, also called Saudāsa, and Kalmāshapāda, the son of Sudāsa, and the descendant of Trisanku in the twenty-second generation (see p. 337, above), we still find Vaśishṭha figuring in the legend, as the priest of that monarch, and causing him, by an imprecation, to become a cannibal, because he had, under the influence of a delusion, offered the priest human flesh to eat. I shall not extract the

²⁰⁸ The names in this list differ considerably from those given above, p. 352, from the

version of the story given in the Vishṇu Purāṇa in detail (Wilson, V.P. vol. iii. pp. 304 ff.), as it does not in any way illustrate the rivalry of Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra.

The Mahābhārata gives the following variation of the history (Ādi-parvan, sect. 176): "Kalmāshapāda was a king of the race of Ikshvāku. Viśvāmitra wished to be employed by him as his officiating priest; but the king preferred Vaśishṭha" (verse 6699. *Akāmayaṭ taṁ yājyārthe Viśvāmitraḥ pratāpavān | sa tu rājā mahātmānaṁ Vaśishṭham ṛishi-sat-tamam* |). It happened, however, that the king went out to hunt, and after having killed a large quantity of game, he became very much fatigued, as well as hungry and thirsty. Meeting Saktri, the eldest of Vaśishṭha's hundred sons, on the road, he ordered him to get out of his way. The priest civilly replied (verse 6703): *Mama panthāḥ mahārāja dharmāḥ eṣa sanātanaḥ | rājñā sarveṣu dharmeshu deyaḥ panthāḥ dvijā-taye* | "The path is mine, o king; this is the immemorial law; in all observances the king must cede the way to the Brāhman." Neither party would yield, and the dispute waxing warmer, the king struck the muni with his whip. The muni, resorting to the usual expedient of offended sages, by a curse doomed the king to become a man-eater. "It happened that at that time enmity existed between Viśvāmitra and Vaśishṭha on account of their respective claims to be priest to Kalmāshapāda" (verse 6710. *Tato yājya-nimittaṁ tu Viśvāmitra-Vaśishṭhayoḥ | rairam āsīt tadā taṁ tu Viśvāmitro'nvapadyata* |). Viśvāmitra had followed the king; and approached while he was disputing with Saktri. Perceiving, however, the son of his rival Vaśishṭha, Viśvāmitra made himself invisible, and passed them, watching his opportunity. The king began to implore Saktri's clemency: but Viśvāmitra wishing to prevent their reconciliation, commanded a Rākshasa (a man-devouring demon) to enter into the king. Owing to the conjoint influence of the Brāhman-rishi's curse, and Viśvāmitra's command, the demon obeyed the injunction. Perceiving that his object was gained, Viśvāmitra left things to take their course, and absented himself from the country. The king having happened to meet a hungry Brāhman, and sent him, by the hand of his cook (who could procure nothing else), some human flesh to eat, was cursed by him also to the same effect as by Saktri. The curse, being now augmented in force, took effect, and Saktri himself was the first victim, being eaten up by the king. The same fate

befell all the other sons of Vasiṣṭha at the instigation of Viśvāmitra :
 6736. *Saktrim taṁ tu mṛitaṁ dṛiṣṭvā Viśvāmitraḥ punaḥ punaḥ | Vasiṣṭhasyaiva putreshu tad rakṣaḥ sandideśa ha | sa tūn Saktry-avarān putrān Vasiṣṭhasya mahātmanah | bhakṣhayāmāsa sankruddhaḥ sīṁhaḥ kṣudramṛigūn ira | Vasiṣṭho ghātitaṁ śrutvā Viśvāmitrena tān sūtān | dhārayāmāsa taṁ śokam mahādrir ira medinīm | chakre chātma-vināśāya buddhiṁ sa muni-sattamaḥ | na tv eva Kauṣikochhedam mene matimatāṁ varaḥ |* 6740. *Sa Meru-kūṭād ātmānam mumocha bhagavān ṛishiḥ | gires tasya śilāyām tu tūla-rāsūv irāpatat | na mamūra cha pātena sa yadā tena Pāṇḍara | tadā 'gnim iddham bhagavān saṁvireśa mahārane | taṁ tadā susamiddho 'pi na dadūha hutūśanaḥ | dīpyamāno 'py amitra-ghna śīto 'gnir abharat tataḥ | sa samudram abhiprekṣya śokāviṣṭo mahāmuniḥ | baddhvā kaṇṭhe śilūṁ gurvīm nipapāta tadā 'mbhasi | sa samudror-mi-regena sthale nyasto mahāmuniḥ | jagāma sa tataḥ khinnah punar evāśramam prati |* 6745. *Tato dṛiṣṭvā 'śrama-padaṁ rahitaṁ taiḥ sutair muniḥ | nirjagāma suduḥkḥarttaḥ punar apy āśramāt tataḥ | so 'paśyat saritaṁ pūrṇam prāvṛit-kāle navāmbhasā | vṛikṣhān bahuridhān pārtha harantiṁ tira-jān bahūn | atha chintāṁ sanūpede punaḥ kaurara-nandana | "ambhasy asyām nimajjeyam" iti duḥkha-samanvitaḥ | tataḥ pūśais tadā 'tmānam gūḍham baddhvā mahāmuniḥ | tasyāḥ jale mahānadyāḥ nimamajja suduḥkḥitaḥ | atha chhittvā nadī pūśāṁs tasyāri-bala-sūdana | sthala-sthaṁ tam ṛishim kṛitvā vipūśaṁ samavāṣṛijāt |* 6750. *Uttatāra tataḥ pūśair vimuktaḥ sa mahān ṛishiḥ | Vipūśeti cha nāmāsyāḥ nadyāś chakre mahān ṛishiḥ | . . . 6752. Dṛiṣṭvā sa punar evaṣhir nadīm haimavatīm tadā | chandragrāhvatīm bhīmām tasyāḥ srotasy apātayat | sū tam agni-samāṁ vipram anuchintya sarid varā | śatadhā vidrutā yas-māch śatadrur iti viśrutā | . . . 6774. Saudāso 'ham mahābhūga yājñas te muni-sattama | asmin kāle yad iṣṭaṁ te brūhi kiṁ karavāṇi te | Vasiṣṭha uvācha | vṛittam etad yathā-kālāṁ gachha rājyam praśūdhī vai | brāhmaṇāṁs tu manushyendra mā 'vamaṁsthāḥ kadāchana | rājā uvācha | nūvamaṁsyē mahābhūga kadāchid brāhmaṇarṣhabhūn | tvan-nideśe sthitaḥ samyak pūjayiṣhyāmy ahaṁ dvijān | Ikṣvākūṇāṁ cha yenāham anṛiṇaḥ syām dvijottama | tat tvattaḥ prāptum icchāmi sarva-veda-vidāṁ vara | apatyam īpsitam mahyāṁ dātum arhasi sattama | "Perceiving Suktri to be dead, Viśvāmitra again and again incited the Rākṣhasa against the sons of Vasiṣṭha; and accordingly the furious demon devoured those of his sons who were younger than Suktri, as a lion eats up the small*

beasts of the forest.²⁰⁹ On hearing of the destruction of his sons by Viśvāmitra, Vaśiṣṭha supported his affliction, as the great mountain sustains the earth. He meditated his own destruction, but never thought of exterminating the Kauśikas. 6740. This divine sage hurled himself from the summit of Meru, but fell upon the rocks as if on a heap of cotton. Escaping alive from his fall, he entered a glowing fire in the forest; but the fire, though fiercely blazing, not only failed to burn him, but seemed perfectly cool. He next threw himself into the sea with a heavy stone attached to his neck; but was cast up by the waves on the dry land. He then went home to his hermitage; (6745) but seeing it empty and desolate, he was again overcome by grief and went out; and seeing the river Vipāśā which was swollen by the recent rains, and sweeping along many trees torn from its banks, he conceived the design of drowning himself into its waters: he accordingly tied himself firmly with cords, and threw himself in; but the river severing his bonds, deposited him unbound (*vipāśa*) on dry land; whence the name of the stream, as imposed by the sage.²¹⁰ 6752. He afterwards saw and threw himself into the dreadful Satadru (Sutlej), which was full of alligators, etc., and derived its name from rushing away in a hundred directions on seeing the Brāhman brilliant as fire. In consequence of this he was once more stranded; and seeing he could not kill himself, he went back to his hermitage. After roaming about over many mountains and countries, he was followed home by his daughter-in-law Adṛiśyāntī, Saktri's widow, from whose womb he heard a sound of the recitation of the Vedas, as she was pregnant with a child, which, when born, received the name of Parāśara, verse 6794. Learning from her that there was

²⁰⁹ See above (pp. 327 ff.), the passages quoted from the Brāhmaṇas, about the slaughter of Vaśiṣṭha's sons. In the Panchaviṃśa Br. (cited by Prof. Weber, Ind St. i. 32) Vaśiṣṭha is spoken of as *putra-hataḥ*.

²¹⁰ The Nirukta, ix. 26, after giving other etymologies of the word *Vipāś*, adds a verse: *Pāśāḥ asyām vyapāśyanta Vasishṭhasya mumūrshataḥ | tasmād Vipāś uchyate pūrvam āsīd Uruñjirā* | "In it the bonds of Vaśiṣṭha were loosed, when he was on the point of death: hence it is called *Vipāś*. It formerly bore the name of *Uruñjirā*." It does not appear whether or not this verse is older than the Mahābhārata. On this text of the Nirukta, Durga (as quoted by Prof. Müller, Rig-veda, ii. Pref. p. liv.) annotates: *Vasishṭhaḥ kila nimamajja asyām mumūrshuḥ putra-marṇa-śokārttaḥ pāśair ātmānam baddhvā | tasya kila te pāśāḥ asyām vyapāśyanta vyamuchyanta udakena* | "Vaśiṣṭha plunged into it, after binding himself with bonds, wishing to die when grieved at the death of his sons. In it (the river) his bonds were loosed by the water."

thus a hope of his line being continued, he abstained from further attempts on his own life. King Kalmāshapāda, however, whom they encountered in the forest, was about to devour them both, when Vasiṣṭha stopped him by a blast from his mouth; and sprinkling him with water consecrated by a holy text, he delivered him from the curse by which he had been affected for twelve years. The king then addressed Vasiṣṭha thus: "Most excellent sage, I am Saudāsa, whose priest thou art: what can I do that would be pleasing to thee?" Vasiṣṭha answered: 'This which has happened has been owing to the force of destiny: go, and rule thy kingdom; but, o monarch, never contemn the Brāhmanas.' The king replied: 'Never shall I despise the most excellent Brāhmanas; but submitting to thy commands I shall pay them all honour. And I must obtain from thee the means of discharging my debt to the Ikshvākus. Thou must give me the offspring which I desire.' Vasiṣṭha promised to comply with his request. They then returned to Ayodhyā. And Vasiṣṭha having been solicited by the king to beget an heir to the throne²¹¹ (verse 6787. *Rājnas tasyājñayā devī Vasiṣṭham upachakrame | maharshiḥ sañvidāṁ kṛtvā sambabhūva tayā saha | devyā divyena vidhinā Vasiṣṭho bhagavān ṛishiḥ*), the queen became pregnant by him, and brought forth a son at the end of twelve years. This extraordinary proceeding, so contrary to all the recognized rules of morality, is afterwards (verses 6888-6912) explained to have been necessitated by the curse of a Brāhmaṇi, whose husband Kalmāshapāda had devoured when in the forest, and who had doomed him to die if he should attempt to become a father, and had foretold that Vasiṣṭha should be the instrument of propagating his race (verse 6906: *Patnīm ṛitāv anuprāpya sadyas tyakshyasi jīvitam | yasya charsher Vasiṣṭhasya tvayā putrāḥ vināśitūḥ | tena sangamya te bhūryyā tanayam janayishyati*).²¹²

²¹¹ The same story is told in the Vishṇu Pur. iv., 4, 38 (Wilson, vol. 3, p. 310).

²¹² This incident is alluded to in the Ādiṇ., section 122. It is there stated that in the olden time women were subject to no restraint, and incurred no blame for abandoning their husbands and cohabiting with anyone they pleased (verse 4719. *Anāvṛitāḥ kila purā striyaḥ āsan varānane | kūma-chāra-vihārīṇyaḥ svatantrāḥ chāru-hāsini | tāsāṁ vyuchcharamāṇānāṁ kaumārāt subhage patīm | nādharmo 'bhūd varārohe sa hi dharmāḥ purā 'bhavat*, compare verse 4729). A stop was, however, put to this practice by Uddālaka Śvetaketu, whose indignation was on one occasion aroused by a Brāhmaṇ taking his mother by the hand, and inviting her to go away with him, although his father, in whose presence this occurred, informed him that

The Mahābhārata has a further legend, regarding Viśvāmītra's jealousy of Vasiṣṭha, which again exhibits the former in a very odious light, and as destitute of the moral dispositions befitting a saint, while Vasiṣṭha is represented as manifesting a noble spirit of disinterestedness and generosity.

Sūlyap. 2360. *Viśvāmītrasya viprarsher Vasiṣṭhasya cha Bhārata | bhṛīsaṁ vairam abhūd rājaṁ tapaḥ-sparddhā-kṛitam mahat | āsramo vai Vasiṣṭhasya sthānu-tīrthe 'bhavad mahān | pūrvataḥ pārśvataḥ chāsīd Viśvāmītrasya dhīmataḥ |* 2366. *Viśvāmītra-Vasiṣṭhau tāv ahany ahani Bhārata | sparddhūṁ tapaḥ-kṛitām tīvrām cakratus tau tapo-dhanau | tattrūpy adhika-santapto Viśvāmītro mahāmuniḥ | dṛishṭvā tejo Vasiṣṭhasya chintām ati jagāma ha | tasya buddhir iyaṁ hy āsīd dharma-nityasya Bhārata | iyaṁ Sarasvatī tūrṇam mat-samīpaṁ tapo-dhanam | ānayishyati vegena Vasiṣṭhaṁ japatām varam | ihāgataṁ dvija-śreṣṭhaṁ hanishyāmi na saṁśayaḥ |* 2370. *Evaṁ niśchitya bhagavān Viśvāmītro mahāmuniḥ | sasmāra saritaṁ śreṣṭhaṁ krodha-saṁrakta-lochanaḥ | sā dhyātū muninā tena vyūkulatvaṁ jagāma ha | jajne chainam mahāvīryyam mahākopaṁ cha bhāvinī | tataḥ enaṁ repa-mānū vivarnā prāñjalis tadā | upatasthe muni-varaṁ Viśvāmītraṁ Sarasvatī | hata-vīrā yathā nārī sū 'bhavad duḥkhitā bhṛīsaṁ | brūhi kīṁ karavānīti provācha muni-sattamam | tām uvācha muniḥ kruddho "Vasiṣṭhaṁ śīghram ānaya | yāvad enaṁ nihanmy adya" tach chhṛutvā vyathitā nadī |* 2375. *Prāñjaliṁ tu tataḥ kṛitvā puṇḍarīka-nibhekṣaṇā |*

there was no reason for his displeasure, as the custom was one which had prevailed from time immemorial (verse 4726. *S'vetaketoh kila purā samakṣham mātaram pituḥ | jagrūha brāhmaṇaḥ pūṇau "gachhāva" iti chābravīt | ṛishis-puttras tataḥ kopaṁ chakūrāmarsha-choditāḥ | mātaraṁ tām tathā dṛishṭvā nīyamānūm balād iva | kruddhāṁ taṁ tu pitū dṛishṭvā S'vetaketuṁ uvācha ha | "mā tāta kopaṁ kārṣhīḥ tvam esha dharmāḥ sanātanaḥ |* "). But S'vetaketu could not tolerate the practice, and introduced the existing rule (verse 4730. *Ṛishi-puttro 'tha tāṁ dharmāṁ S'vetaketuṁ na chakṣhame | chakūra chaiva maryādūm imāṁ strī-puṁsayoḥ bhuvi |*). A wife and a husband indulging in promiscuous intercourse were therefore thenceforward guilty of sin. But a wife, when appointed by her husband to raise up seed to him (by having intercourse with another man), is in like manner guilty if she refuse (4734. *Patyā niyuktā yā chava patnī puttrārtham eva cha | na karishyati tasyās cha bhavishyati tad eva hi | iti tena purā bhīru maryādā sthūpita balāt |*). Pūṇḍu, the speaker, then proceeds to give an instance of the latter procedure in the case of Madayanti, the wife of Saudāsa, who, by her husband's command, visited Vasiṣṭha for the purpose in question (4736. *Saudāsaṇa cha ramdhoru niyuktā putra-janmani | Madayanti jagāmarāṣhīṁ Vasiṣṭhaṁ iti naḥ śrutam |*). Compare what is said above, p. 224, of Angiras, and in pp. 232 and 233 of Dirghatamas or Dirghatapās; and see p. 423, below.

prākampata bhrīṣam bhītā vāyunerāhatā latā | . . . 2377. Sā tasya vachanaṁ śrutvā jñātvā pāpa-chikīrṣhitam | Vāsishṭhasya prabhūvaṁ cha jānanty apratinam bhuvi | sū'dhigamya Vāsishṭhaṁ cha imam artham achodayat | yad uktā saritām śreshṭhā Viśvāmitrena dhīmatā | ubhayoḥ śūpayor bhītā vepamānū punaḥ punaḥ | . . . 2380. Tām kṛīṣāṁ cha vivarṇāṁ cha dṛishṭvā chintā-samanvitām | uvācha rājan dharmātmā Vāsishṭho dvīpadām varaḥ | Vāsishṭhaḥ uvācha | "pāhy ātmānaṁ sarich-chhreshṭhe vaha māṁ śighra-gāmini | Viśvāmitraḥ śaped hi tvām mā kṛithās tvaṁ vichāraṇam" | tasya tad vachanaṁ śrutvā kṛipā-śīlasya sū sarit | chintayāmāsa Kauravya kiṁ kṛitvā sukrītam bhavet | tasyās chintā samutpannā "Vāsishṭho mayy atīva hi | kṛitavūn hi dayām nityam tasya kṛyyaṁ hitam mayā" | atha kūle svake rājan japantam ṛishi-sattamam | juhvānaṁ Kauśikam prekshya sarasvaty abhyachintayat | 2385. "Idam antaram" ity eva tataḥ sū saritām varā | kulāpahāram akarot svena vegena sū sarit | tena kulāpahārena Maitrāvaruṇir auhyata | ūhyamānaḥ sa tushṭāva tadā rājan Sarasvatīm | Pitamahasya sarasaḥ pravṛittā 'si Sarasvati | vyūptāṁ chedaṁ jagat sarvaṁ tavaivambhobhir uttamaiḥ | tvam evākūśa-gū devi megheshṭṛijase payaḥ | sarvās chāpas tram eveti tratto vayam adhī-mahi | pushtir dyutis tathā kīrttiḥ siddhir buddhir umā tathā | tram eva vānī svāhā tvaṁ tavāyattam idaṁ jagat | 2390. Tram eva sarva-bhūteshu vasasīha chaturvidhā | 2392. Tam ānītaṁ Sarasvatyā dṛishṭvā kopa-samanvitāḥ | athānveshat praharaṇaṁ Vāsishṭhānta-karaṁ tadā | taṁ tu kruddham abhiprekshya brahma-badhya-bhayād nadī | apovāha Vāsishṭhaṁ tu prāchīṁ diśam atandritā | ubhayoḥ kurratī vākyāṁ vanchayitvā cha Gādhijam tato 'pavāhitaṁ dṛishṭvā Vāsishṭham ṛishi-sattamam | 2395. Abraṇīd duḥkha-sankruddho Viśvāmitro hy amarshaṇaḥ | "yasmād māṁ tvaṁ sarich-chhreshṭhe vanchayitvā punargatā | soṇitaṁ vaha kalyāṇi rakṣo-'gra-maṇi-sammataṁ" | tataḥ Sarasvatī śaptā Viśvāmitrena dhīmatā | avahach chhōṇitonmiśraṁ toyāṁ saṁvat-sāraṁ tadā | 2401. Athājagmus tato rājan rūkṣhasās tattrā Bhārata | tattrā te soṇitaṁ sarve pivantaḥ sukhāṁ āsate | 2402. Nṛityantaś cha hasantaś cha yathā svarga-jitas tathā | 2407. tām dṛishṭvā rūkṣhasūn rājan munayaḥ saṁśīta-vratāḥ | paritrāṇe Sarasvatyāḥ paraṁ yatnam prachakrire |

"2360. There existed a great enmity, arising from rivalry in their austerities, between Viśvāmitra and the Brāhman rishi Vāsishṭha. Vāsishṭha had an extensive hermitage in Sthānuputrītha, to the east of

which was Viśvāmītra's 2366. These two great ascetics were every day exhibiting intense emulation in regard to their respective austerities. But Viśvāmītra, beholding the might of Vaśishṭha, was the most chagrined; and fell into deep thought. The idea of this sage, constant in duty (!), was the following: 'This river Sarasvatī will speedily bring to me on her current the austere Vaśishṭha, the most eminent of all mutterers of prayers. When that most excellent Brāhman has come, I shall most assuredly kill him.' 2370. Having thus determined, the divine sage Viśvāmītra, his eyes reddened by anger, called to mind the chief of rivers. She being thus the subject of his thoughts, became very anxious, as she knew him to be very powerful and very irascible. Then trembling, pallid, and with joined hands, the Sarasvatī stood before the chief of munis. Like a woman whose husband has been slain, she was greatly distressed; and said to him, 'What shall I do?' The incensed muni replied, 'Bring Vaśishṭha hither speedily, that I may slay him.' 2375. The lotus-eyed goddess, joining her hands, trembled in great fear, like a creeping plant agitated by the wind." Viśvāmītra, however, although he saw her condition, repeated his command. 2377. "The Sarasvatī, who knew how sinful was his design, and that the might of Vaśishṭha was unequalled, went trembling, and in great dread of being cursed by both the sages, to Vaśishṭha, and told him what his rival had said. 2380. Vaśishṭha seeing her emaciated, pale, and anxious, spoke thus: 'Deliver thyself, o chief of rivers; carry me unhesitatingly to Viśvāmītra, lest he curse thee.' Hearing these words of the merciful sage, the Sarasvatī considered how she could act most wisely. She reflected, 'Vaśishṭha has always shown me great kindness; I must seek his welfare.' Then observing the Kauśika sage [so in the text, but does not the sense require Vaśishṭha?] praying and sacrificing on her brink, she regarded (2385) that as a good opportunity, and swept away the bank by the force of her current. In this way the son of Mitra and Varuṇa (Vaśishṭha)²¹³ was carried down; and while he was being borne along, he thus celebrated the river: 'Thou, o Sarasvatī, issuest from the lake of Brahmā, and pervadest the whole world with thy excellent streams. Residing in the sky, thou dischargest water into the clouds. Thou alone art all waters. By thee we study.' [Here the river Sarasvatī is identified with Saras-

²¹³ See above, pp. 316 and 320.

vati the goddess of speech.] ²¹⁴ 'Thou art nourishment, radiance, fame, perfection, intellect, light. Thou art speech; thou art Svāhā; this world is subject to thee. 2390. Thou, in fourfold form, dwellest in all creatures.' . . . 2392. Beholding Vaśishṭha brought near by the Sarasvatī, Viśvāmitra searched for a weapon with which to make an end of him. Perceiving his anger, and dreading lest Brahmanicide should ensue, the river promptly carried away Vaśishṭha in an easterly direction; thus fulfilling the commands of both sages, but eluding Viśvāmitra. Seeing Vaśishṭha so carried away, (2395) Viśvāmitra, impatient, and enraged by vexation, said to her: 'Since thou, o chief of rivers, hast eluded me, and hast receded, roll in waves of blood acceptable to the chief of demons,' [which are fabled to gloat on blood]. "The Sarasvatī, being thus cursed, flowed for a year in a stream mingled with blood. . . . 2401. Rākshasas came to the place of pilgrimage, where Vaśishṭha had been swept away, and revelled in drinking to satiety the bloody stream in security, dancing and laughing, as if they had conquered heaven." Some rishis who arrived at the spot some time after were horrified to see the blood-stained water, and the Rākshasas quaffing it, and (2407) "made the most strenuous efforts to rescue the Sarasvatī." After learning from her the cause of the pollution of her waters, they propitiated Mahādeva by the most various austerities, and thus obtained the restoration of the river to her pristine purity (2413 ff.).

We have another reference to the connection of the families of Sudās and Vaśishṭha in the legend of Paraśurāma,²¹⁵ the destroyer of the Kshatriyas, in the 49th section of the Śāntiparvan of the Mahābhārata. Sarvakarman, a descendant of Sudās, is there mentioned as one of those

²¹⁴ See the remarks on Sarasvatī in my "Contributions to a knowledge of the Vedic Theogony and Mythology No. II.," in the Journ. R. A. S., for 1866 pp. 18 ff.

²¹⁵ Paraśurāma was the son of Jamadagnī, regarding whose birth, as well as that of Viśvāmitra and the incarnation of Indra in the person of his father Gādhi, the same legend as has been already given above, p. 349 ff, is repeated at the commencement of the story referred to in the text. In discoursing with his wife Satyawatī about the exchange of her own and her mother's messes, Rīchika tells her, verse 1741: *Brahmabhūtam hi sakalam pitus tava kulam bhavet* | "All the family of thy father (Gādhi) shall be Brahmanical;" and Vāsudeva, the narrator of the the legend, says, verse 1746: *Viśvāmitram cha dūyādām Gādhiḥ Kuśikanandanaḥ* | *yam prūpa brahmasammitam viśvair brahmaguṇair gutam* | "And Gādhi begot a son, Viśvāmitra, whom he obtained equal to a Brāhman, and possessed of all Brahmanical qualities."

Kshatriyas who had been preserved from the general massacre by Parāśara, grandson of Vasiṣṭha : verse 1792. *Tathā 'nukampamānena yajvanā 'mita-tejasū | Parāśareṇa dāyādaḥ Saudāsayābhīrakṣitaḥ | sarva-karmāṇi kurute śūdra-vat tasya vai dvijaḥ | Sarvakarmety abhikhyātaḥ sa mām rakṣatu pāṛthivaḥ |* "Sarvakarman, the son of Saudāsa, was preserved by the tender-hearted priest Parāśara, who performed, though a Brāhman, all menial offices for him, like a Śūdra ; whence the prince's name ;—may this king protect me (the earth)." The same book of the Mahābhārata, when recording a number of good deeds done to Brāhmans, has also the following allusion to Mitrasaha and Vasiṣṭha : verse 8604. *Rājā Mitrasahaś chāpi Vasiṣṭhāya mahātmane | Damayantīm priyām dattvā tayā saha divaṁ gataḥ |* "King Mitrasaha, having bestowed his dear Damayanti on Vasiṣṭha, ascended to heaven along with her."²¹⁶

The same passage has two further allusions to Vasiṣṭha, which, though unconnected with our present subject, may be introduced here. In verse 8591 it is said : *Rantidevaś cha Sankṛityo Vasiṣṭhāya mahātmane | apaḥ pradūya śītoshnāḥ nāka-prīṣṭhe mahīyate |* "Rantideva, son of Sankṛiti, who gave Vasiṣṭha tepid water, is exalted to the heavenly regions." (See the Bhāg. Pur. ix. 21, 2–18, where the various acts of self-sacrifice practised by this prince are celebrated.) It is said of Vasiṣṭha in verse 8601 : *Avarshati cha Parjanya sarva-bhūtāni bhūta-kṛit | Vasiṣṭho jīvayāmāsa prajāpatir ivāparaḥ |* "When Parjanya failed to send rain, the creative Vasiṣṭha, like Brahmā, gave life to all beings."

Vasiṣṭha, in short, is continually reappearing in the Mahābhārata. I will here adduce but one other passage. In the Śāntiparvan, verses 10, 118 ff., it is said : *Tasya Vṛittrārdḍitasayātha mohaḥ āsich chhatakratoḥ | rathantareṇa taṁ tatra Vasiṣṭhaḥ samabodhayat | Vasiṣṭhaḥ uvācha | deva-śreṣṭho 'si devendra daityāsura-nibārhaṇa | trailokya-bala-*

²¹⁶ This appears to refer to the story told above, p. 418 ff., of Kalmūshapāda (who was the same as Mitrasaha), allowing Vasiṣṭha to be the agent in propagating the royal race ; for both there (v. 6910) and in the Vishṇu Pur. (Wilson, vol. iii., pp. 308 and 310), the name of the queen is said to have been Madayanti, which is probably the right reading here also, the first two letters only having been transposed. If so, however, it is to be observed that a quite different turn is given to the story here, where it is represented as a meritorious act on the king's part, and as a favour to Vasiṣṭha, that the queen was given up to him ; whilst, according to the other account, the king's sole object in what he did was to get progeny.

saṁyuktaḥ kasmāch chhakra nishidasi | esha Brahmā cha Viṣṇuḥ cha S'ivaś chaiva jagat-patiḥ | Somaś cha bhagavān devaḥ sarve cha paramarshayaḥ | mā kārshih kasmalaṁ Śakra kaśchid evetaro yathā | āryyām yuddhe matiṁ kṛtvā jahi śatrūn surādhipa | "By reciting the Rathantāra, Vaśishṭha encouraged Indra, when he had become bewildered and distressed in his conflict with Vritra, saying to him, 'Thou art the chief of the gods, o slayer of the Daityas and Asuras, possessing all the strength of the three worlds: wherefore, Indra, dost thou despond? There are here present Brahmā, Viṣṇu, S'iva, the divine Soma, and all the chief rishis. Faint not, o Indra, like an ordinary being. Assume a heroic spirit for the fight, and slay thine enemies, etc.'" Strength was thus infused into Indra.

In a later work, the Rāja Taranginī, Book IV. verses 619-655 (pp. 188 ff. and note, pp. 521 and 522, of Troyer's edition, vol. i. and vol. ii. 189, 469, note), a curious echo of these old legends is found still reverberating. A story is there told of a king Jayāpīḍa who oppressed his people, and persecuted the Brāhmins, and was eventually destroyed by them in a miraculous manner. He is compared to Saudāsa in verse 625: *Sa Saudāsaḥ ivāṅka-loka-prūṇūpahārakṛit | astutya-kṛitya-sauhitṛyām evapne 'pi na samāyayau |* "Like Saudāsa, depriving many persons of their lives, he was not satiated with wicked deeds even in his dreams." One of the Brāhmins stood up on behalf of the rest to remonstrate: *Āha sma "Viśvāmitro vā Vaśishṭho vā taponidhiḥ | tvam Agastyo 'thavā kiṁ stha" iti darpeṇa taṁ nṛipaḥ | . . . bhavān yatra Hariśchandras Triśankur Nahusho 'pi vā | Viśvāmitra-mukhebhyaḥ haṁ tatraiko bhavitūṁ kshamaḥ | vihasyovācha taṁ rājā "Viśvāmitrādīkopataḥ | Hariśchandrāyo nashṭās tvayi kruddhe tu kim bhavet" | pūṇinā tūḍayann ūrviṁ tataḥ kruddho 'bhyadhād dvijaḥ | "mayi kruddhe kshaṇād eva brahma-daṇḍaḥ pated na kim" | tach chhṛutvā vihasan rājā kopād brāhmaṇam abravīt | "patatu brahma-daṇḍo 'sau kim adyāpi vilambate" | nann ayam patito jālmety atha vipreṇa bhūshite | rājnaḥ kanaka-daṇḍo 'nge vitāna-akhalito 'patat |* "The king haughtily asked him: 'Art thou Viśvāmitra, or Vaśishṭha, so rich in devotion? or Agastya? or what art thou?' . . . The Brāhman answered, swelling with indignation: 'Just as thou art a Hariśchandra, a Triśanku, or a Nahusha, so too have I power to be a Viśvāmitra, or one of those other rishis.' The king answered with a smile of contempt: 'Hariśchandra

and the rest perished by the wrath of Viśvāmitra and the other sages : but what will come of thy wrath ?' The Brāhman angrily replied, smiting the ground with his hand, ' When I am incensed, shall not the Brahmanical bolt instantly descend ?' The king retorted with an angry laugh : ' Let it descend ; why does it not come down at once ?' ' Has it not fallen, tyrant ?' said the Brāhman ; and he had no sooner spoken, than a golden beam fell from the canopy and smote the king," so that he became tortured by worms, and shortly after died ; and went, as the story concludes, to hell.

Professor Lassen, who quotes the stories regarding Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra (Ind. Alt. 2nd ed. i. 718 f.), makes the following remarks on their import :

"The legend of the struggle between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra embraces two distinct points : one is the contest between the priests and warriors for the highest rank ; the other is the temporary alienation of the Ikshvākus from their family priests. Vasishṭha is represented as the exemplar of such a priest ; and the story of Kalmāshapāda is related for the express purpose of showing by an example that the Ikshvākus, after they had retained him, were victorious, and fulfilled perfectly the duties of sacrifice (see above, p. 390) : in his capacity of priest he continues to live on, and is the representative of his whole race. We may conclude from the legend that his descendants had acquired the position of family priests to the Ikshvākus, though neither he himself nor his son Śaktri belonged to their number. Triśanku is the first prince who forsook them, and had recourse to Viśvāmitra. His successor Amba-risha received support from that personage, as well as from Richika, one of the Bhrigus ;—a family whose connection with the Kuśikas appears also in the story of Paraśurāma. The hostility between the Ikshvākus and the family of Vasishṭha continued down to Kalmāshapāda. Viśvāmitra is represented as having intentionally fostered the alienation ; while Vasishṭha is described as forbearing (though he had the power) to annihilate his rival.

"The conflict between the two rivals with its motives and machinery is described in the forms peculiar to the fully developed epos. To this style of poetry is to be referred the wonder-working cow, which supplies all objects of desire. There is no ground for believing in any actual war with weapons between the contending parties, or in

any participation of degraded Kshatriyas, or aboriginal tribes, in the contest; for all these things are mere poetical creations. Besides, the proper victory of Vasiṣṭha was not gained by arms, but by his rod. The legend represents the superiority of the Brāhmanas as complete, since Viśvāmitra is forced to acknowledge the insufficiency of a warrior's power; and acquires his position as a Brāhman by purely Brahmanical methods.

"From Viśvāmitra are derived many of the sacerdotal families, which bear the common name of Kauśika, and to which many rishis famous in tradition belong. As there were also kings in this family, we have here an example of the fact that one of the old Vedic races became divided, and in later times belonged to both of the two higher castes. It appears impossible that any of the aboriginal tribes should have been among the descendants of Viśvāmitra's sons, as the legend represents; and the meaning of this account may therefore be that some of his sons and their descendants accepted the position of priests among these tribes, and are in consequence described as accursed."²¹⁷

SECT. XIV.—*Story from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa about king Janaka becoming a Brāhman.*

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa has the following account of a discussion between Janaka, king of Vidya, and some Brāhmanas:²¹⁸

xi. 6, 2, 1. *Janako ha vai Vaidheho brāhmaṇair dhāvayādbhīr samājagāma Svetaaketunā Āruṇeyena Somaśuśhmeṇa Sātyayajniṇā Yājñavalkyena | tūn ha uvācha "katham katham agnihotram juhutha" iti | 2. Sa ha uvācha Svetaaketur Āruṇeyo "gharmāv eva samrūd aham aśvrau yaśasā viśyandamanāv anyo 'nyasmin juhomi" iti | "katham tad" iti | ādityo vai gharmaś tam sūyam agnau juhomi agnir vai gharmaś tam pratar āditye juhomi" iti | "kiṁ sa bhavati yaḥ evaṁ juhoti" | "aśvrau eva śrīyā yaśasā bhavaty etayoś cha devatayoḥ sūnyajam salokatām jayati" iti | 3. Atha ha uvācha Somaśuśhmaḥ Sātyayajniḥ "tejaḥ eva samrūd aham tejasi juhomi" iti | "katham tad" iti | "Ādityo vai tejaś tam sūyam agnau juhomi | agnir vai tejaś tam pratar āditye juhomi"*

²¹⁷ See also Prof. Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.*, pp. 80 f., 383 f., 408, 413 ff., 485 f.

²¹⁸ This passage is referred to and translated by Prof. Müller, *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 421 ff.

iti | "kiṁ sa bhavati yaḥ evaṁ juhotsi" iti | "tejasvi yaśasvy annādo bhavaty etayos chaiva devatayoḥ sāyujyaṁ salokatāṁ jayati" iti | 4. Atha ha uvācha Yājñavalkyaḥ "yad aham agnim uddharāmy agnihotram eva tad udyaoḥhāmi | ādityaṁ vai astaṁ yantam sarve devāḥ anuyanti | te me etam agnim uddhṛitaṁ dṛishṭvā upāvarttante atha aham pātrāṇi nir-nijya upavāpya āgnihotrīm dohayitvā paśyan paśyatas tarpayāmi" iti | tvaṁ nedishṭhāṁ yājñavalkya agnihotrasya amīmāṁsishṭhāḥ | dhenu-śataṁ dadāmi" iti ha uvācha "na tv eva enayos tvam utkrāntiṁ na gatiṁ na pratishṭhāṁ na triptiṁ na punarāvṛittiṁ na lokaṁ pratyuthāyinam" | ity uktvā ratham āsthāya pradhāvayān chakāra | 5. Te ha ūchur "ati vai no 'yaṁ rājanyabandhur avādīd hanta enam brahmodyam āhvayāmahai" iti | sa ha uvācha Yājñavalkyo "brāhmaṇāḥ vai vayaṁ smo rājanyabandhur asau yady amuṁ vayaṁ jayema kam ajaishma iti brūyāma atha yady asāv asmān jayed brāhmaṇān rājanyabandhur ajaishīd iti no brūyuh | mā idam ādrīdhvam" iti | tad ha asya jajnuḥ | atha ha Yājñavalkyo ratham āsthāya pradhāvayānchakāra taṁ ha anvājagāma | sa ha uvācha "agnihotraṁ Yājñavalkya veditum" iti | "agnihotraṁ samrūḍ" iti | 6. "Te vai ete āhuti hute utkrāmatas te antariksham āviśatas te antariksham eva āhavanīyaṁ kurvāte vāyuṁ samidham marīchīr eva śukrām āhutiṁ te antariksham tarpayatas te tataḥ utkrāmataḥ | 7. Te divam āviśatas te divam eva āhavanīyaṁ kurvāte ādityaṁ samidham chandramasam eva śukrām āhutiṁ te divam tarpayatas te tataḥ āvarttete | 8. Te imām āviśatas te imām eva āhavanīyaṁ kurvāte agniṁ samidham ośadhīr eva śukrām āhutiṁ te imām tarpayatas te tataḥ utkrāmataḥ | 9. Te puruṣam āviśatas tasya mukham eva āhavanīyaṁ kurvāte jihvām samidham annam eva śukrām āhutiṁ te puruṣam tarpayataḥ | sa yaḥ evaṁ vidvān āsnāty agnihotram eva asya hutam bhavati | te tataḥ utkrāmataḥ | 10. Te striyam āviśatas tasyaḥ upastham eva āhavanīyaṁ kurvāte dhārakām samidham (dhārakā ha vai nāma eshā | etayā ha vai Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ dhārāyānchakāra) retaḥ eva śukrām āhutiṁ te striyaṁ tarpayataḥ | sa yaḥ evaṁ vidvān mithunam upaity agnihotram eva asya hutam bhavati yas tataḥ putro jūyate sa lokaḥ pratyutthāy | etad agnihotraṁ Yājñavalkya na ataḥ param asti" iti ha uvācha | tasmai Yājñavalkyo varam dadau | sa ha uvācha "kāmaprasnāḥ eva me tvayi Yājñavalkya asad" iti | tato brahmā Janakāḥ āsa |

"Janaka of Videha met with some travelling Brāhmins, Svetaketu

Aruneya, Somaśushma Sātyayajni, and Yājñavalkya, and said to them, 'How do ye respectively offer the agnihotra oblation?' 2. Svetaketu replied, 'I, o monarch, in sacrificing, throw the one of the two eternal heats which pervade the world with their splendour into the other.' 'How is that done,' asked the king. (S. replied), 'Āditya (the sun) is one heat; in the evening I throw him into Agni (Fire). Agni is the other heat; in the morning I throw him into Āditya.' 'What' (enquired the king) 'does he become who thus sacrifices?' 'He acquires' (replied S.) 'perpetual prosperity and renown; conquers for himself an union with these two deities, and dwells in the same region as they.' 3. Then Somaśushma answered, 'I, o monarch, in sacrificing, throw light into light.' 'How is that done,' asked the king. 'The Sun' (answered S.) 'is light; in the evening I throw him into Fire: and Fire is light; in the morning I throw him into the Sun.' 'What' (enquired the king) 'does he become who thus sacrifices?' 'He becomes' (rejoined S.) 'luminous, and renowned, an eater of food, and conquers for himself an union with these two deities, and dwells in the same region as they.' 4. Then Yājñavalkya said, 'When I take up the fire I lift the agnihotra. All the gods follow the Sun when he sets; and when they see me take up the Fire, they come back to me. Then, after washing and putting down the vessels, and having the Agnihotra Cow milked, beholding them as they behold me, I satisfy them (with sacrificial food).' The king answered, 'Thou hast approached very close to a solution of the Agnihotra, o Yājñavalkya; I give thee a hundred milch-cows: but thou hast not discovered the ascent of these two (oblations), nor the course, nor the resting-place, nor the satisfaction, nor the return, nor the world where they reappear(?)' Having so spoken, Janaka mounted his car and drove away. 5. The Brāhmins then said amongst themselves, 'This Rājanya has surpassed us in speaking; come, let us invite him to a theological discussion.' Yājñavalkya, however, interposed, 'We are Brāhmins, and he a Rājanya; if we overcome him, we shall ask ourselves, whom have we overcome? but if he overcome us, men will say to us, a Rājanya has overcome Brāhmins. Do not follow this course.' They assented to his advice. Then Yājñavalkya mounted his car, and drove after the king; and came up to him. Janaka asked, 'is it to learn the agnihotra (that thou hast come), Yājñavalkya?' 'The agnihotra, o

monarch,' said Y. 6. The king rejoined, 'These two oblations, when offered, ascend; they enter the air, they make the air their āhavanīya fire, the wind their fuel, the rays their bright oblation, they satisfy the air, and thence ascend. 7. They enter the sky, they make the sky their āhavanīya fire, the sun their fuel, the moon their bright oblation; they satisfy the sky, they return thence. 8. They enter this earth, they make this earth their āhavanīya fire, Agni their fuel, the plants their bright oblation; they satisfy the earth, they ascend thence. They enter man, they make his mouth their āhavanīya fire, his tongue their fuel, food their bright oblation; they satisfy man. (He who, thus knowing, eats, truly offers the agnihotra). 9. They ascend from him, they enter into woman [the details which follow are better left untranslated], they satisfy her. The man who, thus knowing, approaches his wife, truly offers the agnihotra. The son who is then born is the world of re-appearance. This is the agnihotra, o Yājñavalkya; there is nothing beyond this.' Y. offered the king the choice of a boon. He replied, 'Let me enquire of thee whatever I desire, o Yājñavalkya.' Henceforward Janaka was a Brāhmān."²¹⁹

By Brāhmān in the last sentence we have, I presume, to understand a Brāhman. Even if it were taken to dignify a priest of the kind called Brāhmān, the conclusion would be the same; as at the time when the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa was written, none but Brāhmans could officiate as priests.²²⁰

Janaka's name occurs frequently in the Mahābhārata. In the Vana-parvan of that poem (8089) he is called a rājarshi. In the Sānti-parvan, verse 6640, it is said: *Atrāpy udāharantīmam itihāsam purātanam | gītāṁ Videha-rājena Janakena praśāmyatā | "anantaṁ vata me vittaṁ yasya me nāsti kinchana | Mithilāyām pradīptāyām na me dahyati kinchana"* | "They here relate an ancient story,—the words recited by Janaka the tranquil-minded king of Videha:

• Though worldly pelf I own no more,
Of wealth I have a boundless store:
While Mithilā the flames devour,
My goods can all defy their power.' "

²¹⁹ The Commentator explains *brahmā* by *brahmishṭhaḥ*, "Most full of divine knowledge."

²²⁰ Prof. Müller remarks in his article on Caste (Chips from a German Workshop, ii. 338): "That king Janaka of Videha possessed superior knowledge is acknowledged by one of the most learned among the Brahmans, by Yājñavalkya himself; and in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, which is believed to have been the work of Yājñavalkya,

The same sentiment is ascribed to the same royal rishi in verse 7891 : *Api cha bhavati Maithilena gītaṁ nagaram upāhitam agninaḥ bhivikshya |* “*na khalu mama hi dahyate 'ttra kinchit*” *evayam idam āha sma bhūmi-pālaḥ |* “And these words were repeated by the king of Mithilā when he beheld the city enveloped in fire, ‘nothing of mine is burnt here ;’ —so said the king himself.”

Another “ancient story” of Janaka is related in verses 7882–7983 of the same book. It is there stated that this king was constantly engaged in thinking on matters connected with a future life ; and that he had a hundred religious teachers to instruct him on different points of duty (verse 7884). He was, however, visited by the rishi Panchaśikha²²¹ (verses 7886, 7888), a pupil of Āsuri (verse 7890), who so confounded the king’s hundred instructors by his reasoning, that they were abandoned by their pupil, who followed this new teacher (7898. *Upetya śatam āchāryān mohayāmāsa hetubhiḥ |* 7899. *Janakas tv abhisamraktuḥ Kāpileyānudarśanāt | utsrijiya śatam āchāryān prishṭhato ’nujagāmatam*). Panchaśikha appears also, at verse 11839, as his instructor. At verse 10699 Janaka is again brought forward as receiving religious information from Parāśara ; in verses 11545–11836 as being taught by the rishi Yājñavalkya the principles of the Yoga and Sāṅkhya philosophies ; and in verses 11854–12043 as holding a conversation with a travelling female mendicant (*bhikṣukī*), named Sulabhā, who sought to prove him, and to whom he declares himself to be a pupil of Panchaśikha (here said to belong to the family of Parāśara, verse 11875), and an adept in the systems just mentioned ; and from whom, in answer to some reproaches he had addressed to her regarding her procedure, he learns that she belongs to the Rājanya class, like himself, of the family of the rājarshi Pradhāna, that she had obtained no suitable husband, and wandered about, following an ascetic life, and seeking final emancipation (verses 12033 ff.).

A further story in illustration of Janaka’s indifference to worldly objects is told in the Āśvamedhikaparvan, verses 887 ff.

²²¹ See Prof. Wilson’s *Sāṅkhya-kārikā*, p. 190 ; and Dr. Hall’s Preface to his edition of the *Sāṅkhya-pravachana-bhāṣya*, pp. 9 ff.

SECT. XV.—*Other instances in which Brāhmanas are said to have been instructed in divine knowledge by Kshattriyaas.*

Two other cases in which Brāhmanas are recorded to have received instruction from Kshattriyaas are thus stated by Professor Müller :²²³

“For a Kshattriya to teach the law was a crime (*sva-dharmātikrama*), and it is only by a most artificial line of argument that the dogmatic philosophers of the Mīmāṃsā school tried to explain this away. The Brāhmanas seem to have forgotten that, according to their own Upanishads, Ajātaśatru, the king of Kāśī, possessed more knowledge than Gārgya, the son of Bālāka, who was renowned as a reader of the Veda, and that Gārgya desired to become his pupil, though it was not right, as the king himself remarked, that a Kshattriya should initiate a Brāhman. They must have forgotten that Pravāhaṇa Jaivali, king of the Panchālas, silenced Svetaketu Āruṇeya and his father, and then communicated to them doctrines which Kshattriyaas only, but no Brāhmanas, had ever known before.” I subjoin two separate versions of each of these stories. The first is that of Ajātaśatru :

Kaushītaki Brāhmaṇa Upanishad, iv. 1. *Atha ha vai Gārgyo Bālākir anūchānaḥ saṁspashṭaḥ āsa | so 'vasad Uśinareshu savasan Matsyeshu Kuru-panchāleshu Kāśi-videheshv iti | sa ha Ajātaśatruṁ Kāśyam ārrajya uvācha “brahma te bravūṇi” iti | taṁ ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ “sahasraṁ dadmaḥ” iti “etasyāṁ vāchi | ‘Janako Janakaḥ’ iti vai u janāḥ dhāvanti” iti | . . . 19. Tataḥ u ha Bālākiś tūshnīm āsa | taṁ ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ “etāvad nu Bālāke” iti | “etāvad” iti ha uvācha Bālākiḥ | tam ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ “mṛishā vai khalu mā saṁvādayishṭhāḥ “brahma te bravūṇi” iti | yo vai Bālāke eteshāṁ puru-
shāṇāṁ karttā yasya vai tat karma sa vai veditavyaḥ” iti | tataḥ u ha Bālākiḥ samit-pāṇiḥ pratichakrame “upāyāni” iti | taṁ ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ “pratiloma-rūpam eva tad manye yat kshattriyo brāhmaṇam upanayeta ehi vy eva tvā jnapayishyāmi” iti | taṁ ha pūṇāv abhipādyā pravavrāja |*

“Now Gārgya Bālāki was renowned as a man well read in the Veda. He dwelt among the Uśīnaras, Matsyas, Kurus, Panchālas, Kāśis, and Videhas, travelling from place to place. He came to

Ajātasatru, the Kāśya, and said, 'Let me declare to thee divine knowledge.' Ajātasatru said, 'We bestow on thee a thousand (cows) for this word.' Men run to us crying, 'Janaka, Janaka.'" The learned man accordingly addresses Ajātasatru in a series of statements regarding the object of his own worship, but is silenced by the king's display of superior knowledge on every topic.²² The story ends thus: 19. "Then the son of Balāka remained silent. Ajātasatru said to him, 'Dost (thou know only) so much, o Bālāki.' 'Only so much,' he answered. The king rejoined, 'Thou hast vainly proposed to me, let me teach thee divine knowledge.' He, son of Balāka, who is the maker of these souls, whose work that is, — he is the object of knowledge.' Then the son of Balāka approached the king with fuel in his hand, and said, 'Let me attend thee (as thy pupil).' The king replied, 'I regard it as an inversion of the proper rule that a Kshatriya should initiate a Brāhman. (But) come, I will instruct thee. Then, having taken him by the hand, he departed."

Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiv. 5, 1, 1 (= Brihadāranyaka Upanishad, ii. 1, 1, p. 334 of Cal. edit.). *Driptaḥbālākir ha anūchāno Gārgyaḥ āsa | sa ha uvācha Ajātasatruṃ Kāśyam "brahma te bravāṇi" iti | sa uvācha Ajātasatruḥ "sahasram etasyām vāchi dadmaḥ 'Janako Janakaḥ' iti vai 'anāḥ dhāvanti" iti | . . . 12. Sa ha tūshṇim āsa Gārgyaḥ | 13. Sa ha uvācha Ajātasatruḥ "etavad nu" iti | "etavad hi" iti | "na etarātā viditaṃ bhavati" iti | sa ha uvācha Gārgyaḥ "upa tvā ayāni" iti | 14. Sa ha uvācha Ajātasatruḥ "pratilomaṃ vai tad yad brāhmaṇaḥ kshattriyam upeyād 'brahma me vakshyati' iti | vy eva tvā jñāpayishyāmi" iti | tam pāṇāv ādāya uttasthau |*

"Driptaḥbālāki Gārgya was well read in the Veda. He said to Ajātasatru, the Kāśya, 'Let me declare to thee divine knowledge.' Ajātasatru replied, 'We give thee a thousand (cows) for this word.' Men run to me calling out, 'Janaka, Janaka.'" At the end of their conversation we are told: 12. "Gārgya remained silent. 13. Then Ajātasatru asked him, '(Dost thou know) so much only?' 'Only so much,' he replied. 'But this,' rejoined Ajātasatru, 'does not comprehend the whole of knowledge.' Then said Gārgya, 'Let me come to thee (as thy disciple).' Ajātasatru answered, 'This is an inversion of the proper rule, that a Brāhman should attend a Kshatriya with the view

of being instructed in divine knowledge. (But) I will teach thee.' He took him by the hand, and rose."

The second story is that of Pravāhaṇa Jaivali:

Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiv. 9, 1, 1 (= Bṛihadāranyaka Upanishad, vi. 2, 1, p. 1030 of Cal. edit.). *Svetaketur ha vai Āruneyah Panchālānām parishadam ājagāma | sa ājagāma Pravāhaṇam Jaivalim parichārayamānam | tam udīkshya abhyuvāda "kumāra" iti | sa "bhoḥ" iti pratiśuśrāva | "anūśiṣṭo nv asi pitrā" | "om" iti ha uvācha | 2. "Vettha yathā imaḥ prajāḥ prayatyo vipratipadyante" iti | "na" iti ha uvācha | "vettha yāthā imaṁ lokam punar āpadyante" iti | "na" iti ha eva uvācha | "vettha yathā 'sau lokaḥ evam bahubhiḥ punaḥ punaḥ prayadbhir na sampūryyate" iti | "na" iti ha eva uvācha | 3. "Vettha yatitṛyām āhutyām hutūyām āpaḥ puruṣa-vācho bhūtvā samutthāya radanti" iti | "na" iti ha eva uvācha | "vettha u dayānasya vā pathaḥ pratipadam pitriyūnasya vā yat kṛtvā dayānām vā panthānam pratipadyate pitriyūnām vā | 4. Api hi naḥ ṛisher vacaḥ śrutam (R.V. x. 88, 15=Vāj. S. 19, 47) 'dve spṛitī aśṛīnavam pitṛīnām ahaṁ devūnām uta marttyūnām | tūbhyām idaṁ viśram ejat sameti yad antarā pitaram mātaram cha'" iti | "na aham ataḥ ekanchana veda" iti ha uvācha | 5. Atha ha enaṁ vasatyā upamantrayānchakre | anūdṛitya vasatiṁ kumāraḥ pradadrāva | su ājagāma pitaram | taṁ ha uvācha "iti vāra kila no bhavān purā 'nūśiṣṭān avochaḥ'" ²²⁴ iti | "kathaṁ sumedhaḥ" iti | "pancha mā praśnān rājanyabandhur aprākṣhit tato na ekanchana veda" iti ha uvācha | "katame te" iti | "ime" iti ha pratikāny udājāhara | 6. Sa ha uvācha | "tathā nas tvam tāta jānīthāḥ yathā yad ahaṁ kincha veda sarvam ahaṁ tat tubhyam avocham | prehi tu tatra pratitya brahmacharyyaṁ vatsyāva" iti | bhavān eva gachhatu" iti | 7. Sa ājagāma Gautamo yatra Pravāhaṇasya Jaivaler āsa | tasmai āsanam āhāryya ²²⁵ udakam āhārayānchakāra | atha ha asmaḥ arghaṁ ²²⁶ chākara | 8. Sa ha uvācha "varam bhavate Gautamāya dadmaḥ" iti | sa ha uvācha "pratijñāto me esha varaḥ | yāṁ tu kumārasya ante vācam abhūshathās tām me brūhi" iti | 9. Sa ha uvācha "daiveshu vai Gautama tad vareshu | māmushānām brūhi" iti | 10. Sa ha uvācha "vijñāyate ha asti hiranyasya apāttaṁ go-āśvānām dāstīnām pravarānām paridhānānām | mā no bhavān bahor anuntasya*

²²⁴ The text of the Bṛihadāranyaka Up. reads *avochat*.

²²⁵ The Bṛih. Ār. reads *āhṛitya*.

²²⁶ The Bṛih. Ār. reads *arghyam*.

*aparyantaśya abhy aradāyo bhād" iti | "sa vai Gautama tīrthēna
ichhāsai" iti | "upainy aham bhavanam" iti "rāchā ha sma era
pūrre upayanti" | 11. Sa ha upāyena-kīrtitā²²¹ urācha | "tathā na
trañ Gautama mā'parādhās tara cha pitāmahāḥ yathā | iyañ vidyā
itah pūrām na kasmimīchana brāhmaṇe urāsa | tām te ahañ tubhyañ
rakshyāmi | ko hi trā eam brucantam arhati pratyākhyātum" iti |*

"Svetaketu Āruneya came to the assembly of the Panchālas. He came to Pravāhana Jaivali, who was receiving service from his attendants. Seeing Svetaketu, the king said, 'o youth.' 'Sire,' he answered. (King) 'Hast thou been instructed by thy father?' (Svetaketu) 'I have.' 2. (K.) 'Dost thou know how these creatures, when departing, proceed in different directions?' (S.) 'No.' (K.) 'Dost thou know how they return to this world?' (S.) 'No.' (K.) 'Dost thou know how it is that the other world is not filled with those numerous beings who are thus constantly departing?' (S.) 'No.' 3. (K.) 'Dost thou know after the offering of what oblation the waters, acquiring human voices, rise and speak?' (S.) 'No.' (K.) 'Dost thou know the means of attaining the path which leads to the gods, or that which leads to the Pitris; by what act the one or the other is gained?' 4. And we have heard the words of the rishi: (R.V. x. 88, 15 = Vaj. S. 19, 47) "I have heard of two paths for mortals, one to the pitris, another to the gods. By these proceeds every moving thing that exists between the father and the mother (i.e. between Dyaus and Prithivī, heaven and earth)." 'I know none of all these things,' answered Svetaketu. 5. The king then invited him to stay. The youth, however, did not accept this invitation, but hastened away, and came to his father, to whom he said, 'Thou didst formerly declare me to be instructed.' 'How now (my) intelligent (son)?' asked his father. 'The Rājanya,' replied the son, 'asked me five questions, of which I know not even one.' 'What were the questions?' 'They were these,' and he told him the initial words of each of them. 6. The father then said, 'Be assured, my son, that I told thee all that I myself know. But come, let us proceed thither, and become (his) pupils. 'Do thou thyself go,' rejoined the son. 7. Gantama accordingly arrived (at the abode) of Pravāhana Jaivali, who caused a seat to be brought, and water and the madhuparka mess to be

²²¹ The text of the Bṛih. Ār. Up. reads *kīrtitā urāsa*.

presented: 8. and said, 'We offer thee a boon, Gautama.' Gautama replied, 'Thou hast promised me this boon: explain to me the questions which thou hast proposed to the youth.' 9. The king replied, 'That is one of the divine boons; ask one of those that are human.' 10. Gautama rejoined, 'Thou knowest that I have received gold, cows, horses, female slaves, attendants, raiment; be not illiberal towards us in respect to that which is immense, infinite, boundless.' 'This, o Gautama,' said the king, 'thou rightly desirest.' 'I approach thee (as thy) disciple,' answered Gautama. The men of old used to approach (their teachers) with words (merely). He (accordingly) attended him by merely intimating his intention to do so.²²⁸ 'Do not,' then said the king, 'attach any blame to me, as your ancestors (did not). This knowledge has never heretofore dwelt in any Brāhman; but I shall declare it to thee. For who should refuse thee when thou so speakest?' "

Chhāndogya Upanishad, v. 3, 1. *Sretaketur ha Āruneyaḥ Panchālānām samitim eyāya | taṁ ha Pravāhaṇo Jaivalir uvācha "kumāra anu tvā 'śishat pitā" iti | "anu hi bhagavaḥ" iti | 2. "Vettha yad ito 'dhi prajāḥ prayanti" iti | "na bhagavaḥ" iti | "vettha yathā punar āvartante" iti | "na bhagavaḥ" iti | "vettha pathor deva-yānasya pitri-yānasya cha vyāvarttane" iti | "na bhagavaḥ" iti | 3. "Vettha yathā 'sau loko na sampūryyate" | "na bhagavaḥ" iti | "vettha yathā panchamyām āhutāv āpaḥ puruṣha-rachaso bhavanti" iti | "naiva bhagavaḥ" iti | 4. "Atha nu kim anuśishṭo 'vokathāḥ | yo hi imāni na vidyāt kathāṁ so 'nuśishṭo bravīta" iti | sa ha āyastāḥ pitur arddham eyāya | taṁ ha uvācha "ananuśishya vāva kila mā bhagavān abravīd 'anu tvā 'śisham" iti | 5. "Pancha mā rājanyabandhuḥ prāśnān aprākṣhīṭ teshūṁ na ekanachana aśakaṁ vivaktum" iti | sa ha uvācha "yathā mā traṁ tadā etān avado yathā 'ham eshūṁ na ekanachana veda yady aham imān avedishyaṁ kathāṁ te na avalakṣhyam" iti | 6. Sa ha Gautamo rājno 'rddham eyāya | tasmai ha prāptāya arhāṁ chakāra | sa ha prātaḥ sabhūgaḥ udeyāya | taṁ ha uvācha "mānushasya bhagavan Gautama vītasya varaṁ vṛnīthāḥ" iti | sa ha uvācha "tava eva rājan mānushaṁ vīttam | yām eva kumārasya ante vācham abhāshathās tām eva me brūhi" iti | 7. Sa ha kriṣṇhrī babhūva | taṁ ha "chiraṁ vasa" ity ājnāpayān-*

²²⁸ Or, "by merely intimating, not performing, the respectful mode of approach by touching his feet," according to the Commentator.

*chakāra | taṁ ha urācha "yathā mā tvam Gaulama arado yathā iyaṁ
na prāk tvattatṣ purā brāhmaṇān gachhati tasmād u sarceṣhu lokeshu
kṣhatrasya eva prasūsanam abhūd" iti | tasmai ha urācha |*

"1. Svetaketu Āruṇeya came to the assembly of the Panchūlas. Pravāhaṇa Jaivali asked him, 'Young man, has thy father instructed thee?' 'He has, sire,' replied Svetaketu. 2. 'Dost thou know,' asked the king, 'whither living creatures proceed when they go hence?' (S.) 'No, sire.' (King) 'Dost thou know how they return?' (S.) 'No, sire.' (K.) 'Dost thou know the divergences of the two paths whereof one leads to the gods, and the other to the pitris?' (S.) 'No, sire.' 3. (K.) 'Dost thou know how it is that the other world is not filled?' (S.) 'No, sire.' (K.) 'Dost thou know how at the fifth oblation the waters acquire human voices?' (S.) 'I do not, sire.' 4. (K.) 'And hast thou then said "I have been instructed?" for how can he who does not know these things allege that he has been so?' The young man, mortified, went to his father, and said, 'Thou didst tell me, I have instructed thee, when thou hadst not done so. 5. That Rājanya proposed to me five questions, of which I could not solve even one.' The father replied, 'As thou didst then say to me regarding these five questions, I know not one of them,—(so I ask thee whether) if I had known them, I would not have told them to thee?' 6. Gautama went to the king, who received him with honour. In the morning, having received his share (of attention), he presented himself before the king, who said to him, 'Ask, o reverend Gautama, a present of human riches.' He replied, 'To thee, o king, belongs wealth of that description. Declare to me the questions which thou proposedst to the youth.' 7. The king was perplexed and desired him to make a long stay: and said to him, 'As thou hast declared to me, o Gautama, that this knowledge has not formerly reached the Brāhmans (who lived) before thee, it has therefore been among all peoples a discipline inculcated by the Kṣhattriya class alone.' He then declared it to him.

SECT. XVI.—*Story of King Viśvantara and the S'yāparṇa Brāhmans.*

Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, vii. 27. *Viśvantaro ha Saushadmanaḥ S'yāparṇān
parichakṣhāno viśyāparṇaṁ yajnam ājahre | tad ha anubudhya S'yāparṇās
taṁ yajnam ājagmuḥ | te ha tad-antarvedy āsūnachakrīre | tān ha āśiṣṭva*

uvācha “pāpasya vai ime karmaṇaḥ karttāraḥ āsate apūtāyāi vācho vaditāro yach chhyāparṇāḥ imān utthāpayata ime me 'ntarvedim āsi-shata” iti | “tathā” iti tān utthāpayāṇchakruḥ | te ha utthāpyamānāḥ ruruvire “ye tebhyo Bhūtavirebhyāḥ Asitamṛigāḥ Kātyapānām soma-pītham abhijigyuh Pārikshitasya Janamejayasya vikaśyape yajne tais te tatra viravantāḥ āsuh | kaḥ svit so 'smāka asti vīro yaḥ imaṁ somapītham abhijeshyati” iti | “ayam aham asmi vo vīraḥ” iti ha uvācha Rāmo Mārgaveyaḥ | Rāmo ha āsa Mārgaveyo 'nūchānaḥ Syāparṇīyaḥ | teshām ha uttishṭhatām uvācha “api nu rājann itthaṁvidāṁ veder utthāpayanti” iti | “yas tvaṁ katham vettha brahmabandho” iti | 28. “Yatra Indrāṁ devatāḥ paryavṛinjan Viśvarūpaṁ Tvāshṭram abhyamaṁsta Vṛittram aśrita yatīn sūlūṛikebhyāḥ prādūd Arurmaghān avadhīd Bṛihaspateḥ pratyavadhīd” iti | “tatra Indrāḥ somapīthena vyūrdhyata | Indrasya anu vyūrdhiṁ kshattram somapīthena vyūrdhyata | api Indrāḥ somapīthe 'bhavat Tvāshṭur āmushya somam | tad vyūrdham eva adyāpi kshattram somapīthena | sa yas tam bhakshaṁ vidyād yaḥ kshattrasya somapīthena vyūrdhasya yena kshattram samṛidhyate katham taṁ veder utthāpayanti” iti | “vettha brāhmaṇa tvaṁ tam bhaksham” | “veda hi” iti | “taṁ vai no brāhmaṇa brūhi” iti | “tasmai vai te rājann” iti ha uvācha | 29. Trayāṇām bhakshūṇām ekam āharishyanti somaṁ vā dadhi vā apo vā | sa yadi somam brāhmaṇānām sa bhakshaḥ | brāhmaṇāṁs tena bhakshena jinvishyasi | brāhmaṇa-kalpas te prajāyām ājanishyate ādāyī āpāyī āva-sūyī yathā-kāma-prayāpyaḥ | yadā vai kshattriyāya pāpam bhavati brāhmaṇa-kalpo 'sya prajāyām ājāyate īśvaro ha asmād dvitīyo vā tṛitīyo vā brāhmaṇatām abhyupaitoḥ sa brahmabandhavena jījyūshataḥ | atha yadi dadhi vaiśyānām sa bhakshaḥ | vaiśyāṁs tena bhakshena jinvishyasi | vaiśya-kalpas te prajāyām ājanishyate 'nyasya bali-kṛīd anyasya ādya yathā-kāma-jyeyaḥ | yadā vai kshattriyāya pāpam bhavati vaiśya-kalpo 'sya prajāyām ājāyate īśvaro ha asmād dvitīyo vā tṛitīyo vā vaiśyatām abhyupaitoḥ sa vaiśyatayā jījyūshitaḥ | atha yady apāḥ sūdrānām sa bhakshaḥ | sūdrāṁs tena bhakshena jinvishyasi | sūdra-kalpas te prajā-yām ājanishyate 'nyasya preshyaḥ kāmōthhāpyo yathākāma-vadhyāḥ | yadā vai kshattriyāya pāpam bhavati sūdra-kalpo 'sya prajāyām ājāyate | īśvaro ha asmād dvitīyo vā tṛitīyo vā sūdratām abhyupaitoḥ | sa sūdra-tayā jījyūshitaḥ | 30. Ele vai te trayo bhakshāḥ rājann” iti ha uvācha “yeshām āsūṁ na iyāt kshattrīyo yajamānāḥ atha asya esha svo 'kshaḥ” ityādi |

"Viśvantara, the son of Sushadman, setting aside the Śyāparṇas, was performing a sacrifice without their aid. Hearing of this the Śyāparṇas came to the ceremony, and sat down within the sacrificial enclosure. Observing them, the king said, 'Remove these Śyāparṇas, doers of evil deeds, and speakers of impure language,²²⁹ who have sat down within my sacrificial enclosure.' Saying, 'So be it,' they removed them. When they were being removed, they exclaimed, 'The Kaśyapas found champions in the Asitamṛigas who conquered for them from the Bhūtavīras the soma-draught at the sacrifice which Janamejaya, the son of Parikshit, was performing without their (the Kaśyapas') aid. Who is the champion who will conquer for us this soma-draught?' 'I am your champion,' cried Rāma Mārgaveya. This Rāma was a learned man, belonging to the Śyāparṇa race. When the Śyāparṇas were moving away, he said, 'Do they, o king, remove from the sacrificial enclosure a man who possesses such knowledge [as I]?' 'How dost thou possess it, Brāhman?' asked the king. 28. (Rāma answered) "When the deities rejected Indra, who had killed Tvāṣṭra,²³⁰ prostrated Vṛittra, given over the Yatis to the wolves, slain the Arurmāghas, and contradicted Bṛihaspati, then he (Indra) forfeited the soma-draught. In consequence of his forfeiture, the Kshāttṛa (Kshattriya) class lost it

²²⁹ Prof. Weber (Ind. St. i., 215) thinks the words "doers of evil deeds" appear to refer to some variety of ceremonial peculiar to the Śyāparṇas, and the words "speakers of impure language" to a difference in their dialect; and he is inclined to derive the patronymic of Rāma, Mārgavēya, from the impure caste of Mārgavas mentioned in Manu, x. 34; by which supposition, he thinks, a ground would be discovered for the reproaches which Viśvantara addresses to the Śyāparṇa family. In reference to the story of Janamejaya, alluded to in this passage, Weber remarks (Ind. Stud. i. 204): "The same work (the Aitareya Brahmana, vii., 27) makes mention of a dispute which this king had with the sacerdotal family of the Bhūtavīras, a branch of the Kaśyapas; and which was adjusted by the intervention of the Asitamṛigas, who belonged to the same race." A Śyāparṇa is alluded to in S' P. Br. x., 4, 1, 10 (quoted by Prof. Weber, Ind. St. i., 215): *Etad ha sma vai tad vidvān Śyāparṇaḥ Śyākūyanaḥ āha "yad vai me idaṁ karma samūpsyata mama eva prajā Salvānaṁ rājāno 'bhaviṣhyan mama brāhmaṇūḥ mama vaiśyāḥ | yat tu me etāvat karmaṇaḥ samūpi tena me ubhayathā Salvūn prajā 'tīrekshyate" iti* | "Knowing this Śyākūyana, the Śyāparṇa, said, 'If this my rite had been completed, my offspring would have become the kings of the Salvās, mine their Brāhmanas, mine their Vaiśyas. But as (only) so much of the rite has been completed, my offspring shall, in both respects, excel the Salvās.'" See also Ind. St. x. 18.

²³⁰ See Dr. Haug's note, p. 487, where he states why he cannot follow Śāyaṇa in rendering *abhyamaṇata* by "killed." Prof. Weber (Ind. St. ix. 326) defends Śāyaṇa's interpretation.

also. (But Indra recovered a share in the soma-draught, having stolen Tvashtri's soma.) Hence at present also the Kshatriyas are excluded from the soma-draught. Why do they remove from the sacrificial enclosure a man who knows that (other) draught which (properly belongs) to the Kshatriyas who are excluded from the soma-draught, and by which they are rendered prosperous? 'Dost thou, o Brāhman, know that draught?' asked the king. 'I know it,' answered Rāma. 'Declare it then to us,' rejoined the prince. 'I declare it to thee, o king,' said the other. 29. 'Of the three draughts they shall bring one, either soma, or curds, or water. If he (the priest, bring) the soma, that is the draught of the Brāhmans, and with it thou shalt satisfy the Brāhmans. One like a Brāhman shall be born in thy line, a receiver of gifts, a drinker (of soma), a seeker of food,²³¹ a rover at will.' Whenever the offence (of drinking the Brāhman's draught)²³² is chargeable to a Kshatriya, one like a Brāhman is born in his line, who in the second or third generation from him has the power of becoming a Brāhman, and likes to live as a Brāhman. Next, if (the priest bring) curds, that is the Vaiśya's draught; with it thou shalt satisfy the Vaiśyas. One like a Vaiśya shall be born in thy line, one who is tributary to another, who is to be used (*lit.* eaten) by another, and who may be oppressed at will. Whenever the offence (of consuming the Vaiśya's portion) is chargeable to a Kshatriya, one like a Vaiśya is born in his line, who in the second or third generation from him has the power of becoming a Vaiśya, and is desirous of living as a Vaiśya. Next, if (the priest bring) water, that is the Sūdra's draught; with it thou shalt satisfy the Sūdras. One like a Sūdra shall be born in thy line, the servant of another, who may be expelled and slain at pleasure. When the offence (of drinking the Sūdra's draught) is chargeable against a Kshatriya, one like a Sūdra is born in his line, who in the second or third generation from him has the power of becoming a Sūdra, and desires to live like a Sūdra. 30. 'These, o king, are the three draughts, which the Kshatriya when sacrificing should not desire. His own proper draught is as follows: Let him squeeze the descending branches

²³¹ Prof. Weber (Ind. Stud. ix. 326) would prefer to translate *āvāsyā* (überall-) wohnend, "dwelling everywhere."

²³² Dr. Haug translates "when there is any fault on the Kshatriya (who, when sacrificing, eats the Brāhmana portion)," etc. See the beginning of par. 30 below.

of the nyagrodha (Indian fig) tree, with the fruits of the udumbara, the aśvattha, and the plaksha trees, and drink these juices. This is his own proper draught.

The continuation may be read in Dr. Haug's translation, pp. 486 ff. After the priest has given the king a deal of further information the result is told in par. 34, as follows:

Tam eram etam bhaksham prōvācha Rāmo Mārgaveya Viśvantarāya Saushadmanāya | tasmin ha uvācha prokte "sahasram u ha brāhmaṇa tubhyaṁ dadmaḥ | saśyāparṇaḥ u me yajnaḥ" iti |

"This draught did Rāma Mārgaveya declare to Viśvantara the son of Sushadman. When it had been declared the king said, 'Brāhman, we give thee a thousand (cows): and my sacrifice (shall be performed) with (the aid of the) Śyāparṇas.'"

SECT. XVII.—*Story of Matanga who tried in vain to raise himself to the position of a Brāhman.*

The legend of Matanga, which is narrated in the Anuśāsana-parvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 1872 ff., is introduced by a question which Yudhishtira addresses to Bhishma, verse 1867: *Kshattriyo yadi vā vaiśyaḥ śūdro vā rājasattama | brāhmaṇyam prāpnuyād yena tad me vyākhyātum arhasi | tapasū vā sumahatū karmanū vā śrutena vā | brāhmaṇyaṁ atha ched ichhet tad me brūhi samāsataḥ | Bhīshmaḥ uvācha |* 1870. *Brāhmaṇyaṁ tāta dushprūpyaṁ varṇaiḥ kshattrādibhis tṛibhiḥ | paraṁ hi sarva-bhūtānāṁ sthānam etad Yudhishtira | bahviḥ tu saṁsaran yonīr jāyamānaḥ punaḥ punaḥ | paryāye tāta kasmīṁśchid brāhmaṇo nāma jāyate |* "Explain to me the means—whether it be intense austere-fervour, or ceremonies, or Vedic learning—whereby a Kshatriya, a Vaiśya, or a Śūdra, if he desire it, can attain to the state of a Brāhman. Bhishma replies (1870), The state of a Brāhman is hard to be acquired by men of the other three classes, the Kshatriyas, etc.; for this Brāhmanhood is the highest rank among all living creatures. It is only after passing through numerous wombs, and being born again and again, that such a man, in some revolution of being, becomes a Brāhman." Bhishma proceeds to illustrate this principle by the case of Matanga, who was apparently the son of a Brāhman, was distinguished for his good qualities, and was esteemed to be himself of the same class as his

father (verse 1873 : *dvijāteḥ kasyachit tātā tulya-varṇaḥ sutas tv abhūt | Matango nāma nāmnā vai sarvāḥ samudito guṇaiḥ* |) He was, however, discovered to be of spurious birth in the following manner: He happened to be sent somewhere by his father to perform sacrifice, and was travelling in a car drawn by asses. On his way he repeatedly pierced on its nose with the goad the colt which was conveying him along with its mother. Feeling for the wound thus inflicted on her offspring, the she-ass said: "Be not distressed, my son, it is a Chanḍāla who is on the car. There is nothing dreadful in a Brāhman; he is declared to be kindly, a teacher who instructs all creatures: how then can he smite any one? This man of wicked disposition shows no pity to a tender colt, and thereby indicates his origin; for it is birth which determines the character" (verse 1876. *Uvācha mā śucaḥ puttra chaṇḍālas tv adhitishṭhati | brāhmaṇe dārunaṁ nāsti maitro brāhmaṇa uchyate | āchāryaḥ sarva-bhūtānāṁ śāstā kim praharishyati | ayaṁ tu pāpa-prakṛitir bāle na kurute dayāṁ | sva-yonim mānayat y eṣa bhāvo bhāvaṁ niyachhati* |). Overhearing this colloquy, Matanga instantly got down from the car and besought the she-ass, whom he honoured with the epithet of "most intelligent," to tell him how she knew him to be a Chanḍāla and how his mother had been corrupted. The she-ass informs him that his mother when intoxicated had received the embraces of a low-born barber, and that he was the offspring of this connection and consequently no Brāhman (verse 1882. *Brāhmanyāṁ vṛishalena tvam mat-tūyāṁ nūpitenā ha | jātāḥ tvam asi chaṇḍālo brāhmanyāṁ tena te 'naśat* |). On receiving this unwelcome revelation, Matanga returned home, and being questioned by his reputed father about the cause of his speedy reappearance, he told him what he had heard; and expressed his determination to enter on a course of austerities. He does so accordingly with such effect that he alarms the gods, and receives the offer of a boon from Indra. He asks for Brāhmanhood; but Indra tells him that he must perish if he continues to make that request, as the high position he seeks cannot be obtained by one born as a Chanḍāla (verse 1895). Matanga, however, continues his exercises for a hundred years, when Indra repeats his former determination, and supports it by reasons, explaining (1901 ff.) that a Chanḍāla can only become a Sūdra in a thousand births, a Sūdra a Vaiśya after a period thirty times as long, a Vaiśya a Rājanya after a period sixty times the length, a

janya a Brāhman after a period of sixty times the duration, and so on, a Brāhman only becoming a Kāṇḍapriṣṭha, a Kāṇḍapriṣṭha a Japa, a Japa a Srotriya, after immense intervals. Indra therefore advises Matanga to choose some other boon. But the devotee is still dissatisfied with the god's decision, and renews his austerities for a thousand years. At the end of that period he receives still the same answer, and the same advice. But though distressed he did not yet despair; but proceeded to balance himself on his great toe; which, although reduced to skin and bone, he succeeded in doing for a hundred years without falling. At length, when he was on the point of tumbling, Indra ran up and supported him; but continued inexorably to refuse his request; and though further importuned, would only consent to give him the power of moving about like a bird, and changing his shape at will, and of being honoured and renowned (verses 1934 ff.).

The assertion here made of the impossibility of a Kshattriya becoming a Brāhman until he has passed through a long series of births is of course in flagrant contradiction with the stories of Viśvāmitra, Vītahavya, and others.

Matanga (or a Matanga) is mentioned in a passage already quoted in p. 411 as a rājarshi who supported Viśvāmitra's family and for whom that sage sacrificed. He is also named in the Sabhā-parvan, verse 340, as sitting in Yama's assembly along with Agastya, Kāla, and Mṛityu, etc., etc.; in the Vana-parvan, 8079, as a great rishi (*maharshi*); and in the Sānti-parvan, 10875, as one of certain sages who had acquired their position by austerities (see above, p. 132). His disciples, he himself, and his forest are mentioned in the Rāmāyaṇa, iii. 73, 23, 29, 30.

SECT. XVIII.—*Legend of the Brāhman Paraśurāma, the exterminator of the Kshattriyas.*

As Paraśurāma belonged to the race of the Bhṛigus, it may be advisable to premise some particulars regarding that family.

In his Lexicon, *s.v.*, Professor Roth tells us that the Bhṛigus were a class of mythical beings, who, according to the Nirukta, xi. 19, belonged to the middle or aërial class of gods ("*mādhyamiko deva-gaṇaḥ*" *iti Nairuktāḥ*). They were the discoverers of fire and brought it to men,

(R.V. x. 46, 2, etc.)²³³ He adds, however, that this race has also a connection with history, as one of the chief Brahmanical families bears this name, and allusions are made to this fact even in the hymns of the Rig-veda (vii. 18, 6; viii. 3, 9, 16; viii. 6, 18; viii. 91, 4). Bhṛigu is also, as Prof. Roth observes, the name of a rishi representing a family, who is mentioned in Atharva-veda, v. 19, 1, as suffering injury at the hands of the Sṛinjayas (see above, p. 286). As regards his birth, it is said in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 34, that first the Sun, and then Bhṛigu arose out of the seed which had issued from Prajāpati,²³⁴ that Bhṛigu was adopted by Varuṇa, and was consequently called Vāruṇi, etc. (*Tasya yad retasaḥ prathamam udadīpyata tad asāv ādityo 'bhavat | yad dvitīyam āsīt tad Bhṛigur abhavat | taṁ Varuṇo nyagrihṇīta | tasmāt sa Bhṛigur Vāruṇiḥ*). He is accordingly called by this name in the S. P. Br. xi. 6, 1, 1, where he is said to have conceived himself to be superior in knowledge to his father Varuṇa (*Bhṛigur ha vai Vāruṇir Varuṇam pitaram vidyayā 'timene*); and also in the Taittiriya Upaniṣad (Bibl. Ind. p. 123: *Bhṛigur vai Vāruṇir Varuṇaṁ pitaram upasāsāra*).²³⁵ The preceding story of Bhṛigu's birth is developed and modified in the Anuśāsana-parvan of the Mahābhārata, verse 4104 ff.: *Vaśiṣṭhaḥ uvācha | api chedam purā Rāma śrutam me Brahma-darśanam | Pitāmahasya yad vṛttam Brahmanāḥ paramātmanāḥ | devasya mahatas tāta Vāruṇim bibhratas tanum | aiśvarye vāruṇe Rāma Rudrasyeśasya vai prabhokḥ |* "Vaśiṣṭha said, 4104: I have also heard, o Rāma (*i.e.* Paraśurāma), of this vision of Brahmā, of that which occurred regarding Pitāmaha, Brahma, the supreme spirit, the great god (*i.e.* Mahādeva), Rudra, Īśa, the lord, assuming the body of Varuṇa, and invested with the dominion of Varuṇa." After this singular description of Mahādeva as identified with Brahmā, Brahma the supreme spirit, and Varuṇa, the speaker goes on to tell us that the munis, the gods headed by Agni, the embodied portions of the sacrifice, and the Vedas, etc., assembled on the occasion referred to, and then proceeds, verse 4112: *Esha Brahmā Sivo Rudro Varuṇo 'gniḥ Prajāpatiḥ | kirttyate bhagavān devaḥ sarva-bhūta-patiḥ śivaḥ | tasya yajnaḥ*

²³³ See my article on "Manu, the progenitor of the Āryyan Indians" in Journ. R. A. S. for 1863, p. 415 f.; and above, pp. 168 and 170.

²³⁴ The commencement of the story, of which this is part of the sequel, is given above, p. 107 f.

²³⁵ See Ind. Stud. ii. 231, and Journ. of the German Or. Soc. ix. 240.

*Paśupates tapaḥ kratava eva cha | dīkṣā dīpta-vratā devī diśaś cha sa-
 digīśvarāḥ | deva-patnyāś cha kanyāś cha devānām chaiva mātaraḥ |
 ājagmuḥ sahitās tatra tadā Bhṛigu-kulodvaha | 4115. Yajnam Paśu-
 pateḥ prītāḥ Varuṇasya mahātmanah | Śrayambhuras tu tāḥ dṛishtrā
 retāḥ samapatad bhuvi | tasya śukrasya eisyandāt pūmśūn saṅgrihya
 bhūmitaḥ | prāsyat Pūshā karābhyām vai tasminn eva hutāsane | tatas
 tasmin sampravrīte sattre jvalita-pūvake | Brahmano juhvas tatra
 prādurbhūro babhūva ha | skanna-mātraṁ cha tach chhukram śrueṇa
 parigrihya saḥ | ājya-rad mantrataś chāpi so 'juhod Bhṛigu-nandana |
 tatas tu janayāmāsa bhūta-grāmaṁ cha vīryavān | . . . 4121. Sukre
 hute 'gnau tasmiṁs tu prādūrāsaṁs trayāḥ prabho | puruṣāḥ vapuṣhā
 yuktāḥ svaiḥ svaiḥ prasava-jair-gunaiḥ | "bhṛig" ity eva Bhṛiguḥ pūr-
 vam angūrebhyo 'ngirā 'bhavat | angūra-saṁśrayāch chaivo Kāvīr ity
 aparo 'bhavat | saha jvālābhir utpanno Bhṛigus tasmād Bhṛiguḥ smṛitāḥ |
 . . . 4140. "Varuṇaś cheśvaro dero labhatām kūmam īpsitam" | nisar-
 gād Brahmanāś chāpi Varuṇo yūdasāmpatiḥ | jagrāha vai Bhṛigum pūr-
 vam apatyāṁ sūrya-varchasam | Īśvaro 'ngirasaṁ chāgner apatyārtham
 akalpayat | Pitūmahas tv apatyāṁ vai Kaviṁ jagrāha tattva-vit | tadā
 sa Vāruṇaḥ khyāto Bhṛiguḥ prasava-karma-kṛit | Āgneyas tv Angirāḥ
 śrīmān Kavīr Brāhmo mahāyasaḥ | Bhārgavāṅgirasau loke loka-san-
 tāna-lakṣhaṇau | ete hi prasavāḥ sarve prajānām patayas trayāḥ |
 sarvam santānam eteshām idam ity upadhāraya | Bhṛigos tu puttrāḥ
 saptaśan sarve tulyāḥ Bhṛigor gunaiḥ | Chyavano Vajrasīrshaś cha
 Śuchīr Aurvas tathaiva cha | Śukro Varenīyāś cha Vibhuḥ Savanaś
 cheti sapta te | Bhārgavāḥ Vāruṇāḥ sarve yeshām vaṁśo bhavān api |
 "4112. This adorable and gracious god, lord of all creatures, is known
 as Brahmā, Śiva, Rudra, Varuṇa, Agni, Prajāpati. This Paśupati (had)
 a sacrifice.²²⁶ Austere-fervour, Oblations, Consecration, (Dīkṣā) that
 goddess with brilliant rites, the Points of the compass, their regents,
 the wives, daughters and mothers of the gods came all together with
 joy (4115) to this sacrifice of Paśupati the great Varuṇa. When Sva-
 yambhū (Brahmā) saw these goddesses his seed fell to the ground.
 Pūshan in consequence collected the particles of dust which were thus
 moistened, and threw them into the fire. When the sacrifice with its
 blazing fires had begun, there was seen an apparition of Brahmā offering
 an oblation. Collecting with the sacrificial ladle that which had fallen,*

²²⁶ Such seems to be the construction of this line.

he cast it, like butter, with sacred texts, into the fire. And thence the powerful god generated all beings. . . . 4121. When the seed had been cast into the fire, there arose three men endowed with bodies, and with their own respective qualities derived from their generation. Bhṛigu sprang first from *bhrik* (the blazing of the fire), Angiras from the cinders, and Kavi²³⁷ from a heap of cinders. Bhṛigu was so named because he was produced together with flames." The god, called Mahādeva, Varuṇa, and Pavana, claimed these three men as his own, and the fruit of his sacrifice (verse 4133 f.). Agni and Brahmā also claimed them (4135 f.). The other gods, however, entreated Brahmā to accede to the wishes of Agni and Varuṇa: "4140. 'And let Varuṇa, the lord, the god, also receive the object of his desire.' By the gift of Brahmā, Varuṇa, lord of sea-monsters, first received for his offspring Bhṛigu brilliant as the sun. And Īśvara (Mahādeva) appointed Angiras to be Agni's son. And Pitāmaha, who knows the reality of things took Kavi as his offspring. Then Bhṛigu, the progenitor of creatures, was named the son of Varuṇa, Angiras the son of Agni, and the glorious Kavi the son of Brahmā. The Bhārgava and the Āngirasa are distinguished in the world as the propagators of mankind. For all these three lords of creatures were propagators. Know the whole of this world to be their offspring. Bhṛigu had seven sons, all equal to their father in good qualities, Chyavana, Vajraśirsha, Suchi, Aurva, Sukra, Varen̄ya, Vibhu, and Savana. These were all Bhārgavas, and Vāruṇas, to whose race you (Paraśurāma) yourself also belong."

In another passage of the M. Bh. Ādip. 869, it is similarly said. *Bhṛigur maharshir bhagavān Brahmaṇā vai Svayambhuvā | Varuṇasya kratau jātaḥ pāvakaḥ iti naḥ śrutam* | "We have heard that the great and venerable rishi Bhṛigu was produced by Brahmā from fire at the sacrifice of Varuṇa."

The Nirukta, iii. 17, has the following etymology of Bhṛigu: *Archishī Bhṛiguḥ sambabhūva | Bhṛigur bhṛijyamāno na dehe* | "Bhṛigu was produced in the flame; though roasted, he was not consumed."

The Taitt. Br. Ī. 8, 2, 5, has a different account: *Indrasya sushuvānasya tredhā indryam vīryam parūpatat | Bhṛigus tṛitīyam abhavat*

²³⁷ In the M. Bh. Ādip. v. 2606, Kavi is said to be Bhṛigu's son (*Bhṛigoh puttra. Kavir vidvān Sukrah*). On the other hand he, or another person of the same name is said in the Anuśāsana-p. 4150, to be, along with Kavi, a son of Kavi.

"While Indra was continuing to pour out Soma, his manly vigour fell in three portions. The third became Bhṛigu." *Indra's Soma*

Bhṛigu is declared in the Vishṇu P. (see above, p. 65) to have been one of the nine Brāhmās, mental sons of Brāhmā. The Bhāg. P. iii. 12, 23, says he sprang from the skin of the creator (*Bhṛigus tvachi*). The M. Bh. Ādip. 2605, on the contrary declares: *Brahmaṇo hṛidayam bhit-trā nissṛito bhagavān Bhṛiguḥ* | "The venerable Bhṛigu, having split Brāhmā's heart, issued forth" (Weber, Ind. St. ii. 231). So, too, the Vāyu P. i. 9, 100: *Bhṛigus tu hṛidayaj jāne rishih Salilajanmanah* | "Bhṛigu was produced from the heart of the Water-born (Brāhmā);" and adds, verse 103: *Ity ete mānasāḥ puttrāḥ vijneyāḥ Brahmanah sutāḥ* | *Bhṛigu-ūdayas tu ye śriṣṭāḥ navaite brahma-rādinah* | 104. *Grihamedhinah purāṇas dharmaṣ taiḥ prāk pravarttitaḥ* | "These were the mind-born sons of Brāhmā. Bhṛigu, and the others, nine in all, who were created, were declarers of sacred knowledge and ancient householders; by them was duty of old established." Manu mentions Bhṛigu (i. 35, see above, p. 36) as one of his own ten sons. He also speaks of him (i. 59, 60, above, p. 38) as commissioned by himself (Manu) to promulgate his code. In Manu, v. 1. however, the sage is said to have sprung from fire (*idam ūchur mahātmānam anala-prabhavam Bhṛigum*). As, however, he had been previously declared to be one of Manu's ten sons, and is so called also in the third verse of book v. and the second of book vii., where he is styled *Mānava Bhṛiguḥ*, Kullūka thinks it necessary to explain this other alleged descent from fire by saying that that had been the sage's origin in a previous mundane era (*Kalpa*): *Yadyapi prathamādhyāye daśa-prajāpati-madhye "Bhṛiguṁ Nāradam eva cha" iti Bhṛigu-śriṣṭir api Manuḥ eva uktā tathāpi kalpa-bhedena agni-prabhavatvam uchyate* | *tathā cha śrutiḥ "tasya yad retasaḥ prathamam dedīpyate tad asāv ādityo 'bhavat* | *yad dvitīyam āsīt Bhṛigur*" iti | *ataḥ eva bhrashtād retasaḥ utpannatvād Bhṛiguḥ* | "Though the creation of Bhṛigu, as one of the ten Prājāpātis, is declared, in the 35th verse of the first book, to have proceeded from Manu, still he is here said to have been produced from fire, from the difference in the manner of his birth in the different Kalpas. And so the Veda says (in the passage quoted above from the Ait. Br.). Hence he is called Bhṛigu, because he sprang from the seed which fell (*bhrashtāt*).²³⁸

²³⁸ See Prof. Wilson's note, Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. p. 100 ff., in the course of

Professor Roth (Lit. and History of the Veda, p. 135) says: "The Bhṛigus are one of the most important Vedic families, to which Jamadagni, Chyavana, Aurva, Apnavāna, and other rishis are assigned. Many conjectures might be formed in connection with the part which these several Bhṛigus play in the later legends; but it seems to me unsafe to draw any conclusions till we are in possession of the intermediate links, and especially till we have learnt more precisely from the Vedic hymns themselves the relations of these families to each other. Nevertheless I will remark that Sunahśepha, the adopted son of Viśvāmītra, is, according to the Purāṇas, a Bhṛigu; and consequently the Bhṛigus appear in intimate connection with the enemy of Vasishṭha; and further, that Sagara, who was reared by the Bhṛigu Aurva, is restrained by Vasishṭha in his war of extermination against the Śakas and other barbarous tribes. His enemies, when hard pressed, had resorted to Vasishṭha as an intercessor." (See above, p. 337, and Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. p. 291.)

The story of Paraśurāma and the Kshattriyas is briefly mentioned in the second section of the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata (verses 272–280), where the events referred to are said to have occurred in the interval between the Tretā and Dvāpara ages (*Tretā-dvāparayoḥ sandhau Rāmaḥ śastra-bhritām varaḥ | asakṛt pāṛthivāṁ kshattriṁ jaghānāmarsha-choditaḥ | sa sarvaṁ kshattram utsādyā sva-vīryyēnānala-dyutiḥ* |). The history is more fully told in other parts of the Mahābhārata. In the 178th–180th sections of the Ādiparvan there is a legend in which no mention is made of Paraśurāma, or the slaughter of the Kshattriyas; but in which we have the following particulars: Parāśara was son of Śaktri, and grandson of Vaśishṭha, as we have seen above, p. 417. When he heard of the way in which his father had met his death, he determined to execute a general slaughter of all creatures (v. 6800);²³⁹ but his grandfather restrained him by narrating the history of the

which he says, "The Vāyu has also another account of their (the Prajāpatīs) origin, and states them to have sprung from the fires of a sacrifice offered by Brahmā; an allegorical mode of expressing their probable original—considering them to be in some degree real persons—from the Brahmanical ritual, of which they were the first institutors and observers."

²³⁹ Reference is made in the commencement of the Vishṇu Purāṇa to the same circumstance (Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. pp. 7 ff.) Parāśara is the narrator of the Vishṇu Purāṇa (ibid. p. 11).

Bhṛigus and Kshattriyas, as follows: There was a king named Kṛita-vīrya, by whose liberality the Bhṛigus, learned in the Vedas, who officiated as his priests, had been greatly enriched with corn and money (verse 6802. *Yājño veda-vidān loke Bhṛigūnām pārthivarsha-bhaḥ | sa tūn agra-bhujas tāta dhūnyena cha dhanena cha | somānte tarpayāmāsa vipulena viśāmpate* 1). After he had gone to heaven, his descendants were in want of money, and came to beg for a supply from the Bhṛigus, of whose wealth they were aware. Some of the latter hid their money under ground, others bestowed it on Brāhmans, being afraid of the Kshattriyas, while others again gave these last what they wanted. It happened, however, that a Kshattriya, while digging the ground, discovered some money buried in the house of a Bhṛigu. The Kshattriyas then assembled and saw this treasure, and, being incensed, slew in consequence all the Bhṛigus, whom they regarded with contempt, down to the children in the womb (verse 6809. *Avamānya tataḥ krodhād Bhṛigūns tūn śaraṇāgatūn | nijaghnūḥ parameshvāsūḥ sarvāms tūn nīśitaiḥ śaraiḥ | ā-garbhād avakṛintantaś cheruḥ sarvām vasundhārām* 2). The widows, however, fled to the Himālaya mountains. One of them concealed her unborn child in her thigh. The Kshattriyas, hearing of its existence from a Brāhmaṇī informant, sought to kill it; but it issued forth from its mother's thigh with lustre, and blinded the persecutors. After wandering about bewildered among the mountains for a time, they humbly supplicated the mother of the child for the restoration of their sight; but she referred them to her wonderful infant Aurva into whom the whole Veda, with its six Vedāṅgas, had entered (verse 6823. *Shaḍ-angas chākhilo vedaḥ imaṁ garbhastham eva ha | viveśa Bhṛigu-vaṁśasya bhūyaḥ priya-chikirshayā* 3), as the person who (in retaliation of the slaughter of his relatives) had robbed them of their eyesight, and who alone could restore it. They accordingly had recourse to him, and their eyesight was restored. Aurva, however, meditated the destruction of all living creatures, in revenge for the slaughter of the Bhṛigus, and entered on a course of austerities which alarmed both gods, asuras, and men; but his progenitors (Pitṛis) themselves appeared, and sought to turn him from his purpose by saying that they had no desire to be revenged on the Kshattriyas: 6834. *Nā-nīśair hi tadā tāta Bhṛigubhir bhāvitātmanabhiḥ | badho hy upekṣitāḥ sarvaiḥ kshattriyāṇām vihiṁsatām | āyushā viprakṛiṣṭena yadā naḥ*

*kheda āviśat | tadā 'smābhir badhas tāta kshattriyaair īpsitaḥ svayam |
nikhātāṃ yach cha vai vittaṃ kenachid Bhṛigu-veśmani | vairāyaiva tadā
nyastaṃ kshattriyaṃ kopayishṇubhiḥ | kiṃ hi vittena naḥ kāryaṃ svar-
gepsūnāṃ dvijottama | . . . 6841. Mā badhiḥ kshattriyaṃs tāta na
lokān sapta puttraka | dūshayantaṃ tapas-tejaḥ krodham utpatitaṃ jahi |*
“6834. It was not from weakness that the devout Bhṛigus overlooked
the massacre perpetrated by the murderous Kshattriya. When we
became distressed by old age, we ourselves desired to be slaughtered by
them. The money which was buried by some one in a Bhṛigu's house
was placed there for the purpose of exciting hatred, by those who
wished to provoke the Kshattriya. For what had we, who were
desiring heaven, to do with money?” They add that they hit upon
this device because they did not wish to be guilty of suicide, and con-
cluded by calling upon Aurva to restrain his wrath; and abstain from
the sin he was meditating, verse 6841: “Destroy not the Kshattriya,
o son, nor the seven worlds. Suppress thy kindled anger which nullifies
the power of austere-fervour.” Aurva, however, replies that he cannot
allow his threat to remain unexecuted. His anger, unless wreaked
upon some other object, will, he says, consume himself. And he argues
on grounds of justice, expediency, and duty, against the clemency which
his progenitors recommend. He is, however, persuaded by the Pitṛis
to throw the fire of his anger into the sea, where they say it will find
exercise in assailing the watery element, and in this way his threat
will be fulfilled. “It accordingly became the great Hayaśiras, known
to those who are acquainted with the Veda, which vomits forth that
fire and drinks up the waters” (*Mahad Hayaśiro bhūtā yat tad veda-
vido viduḥ | tam agnim udgirad vaktrāt pibaty āpo mahodadhau*). It is
worthy of remark that in a legend, one object of which, at least, would
seem to be to hold up to abhorrence the impiety of the Kshattriya in
oppressing the Brāhmins, we should thus find a palliation of the con-
duct of the oppressors, coming from the other world. But here the
principle of the nothingness of mundane existence asserts itself; and
the final superiority of the Brāhmins is vindicated, while their magna-
nimity is exemplified.

The next version of this legend, which I shall quote, is that given
in the 115th-117th sections of the Vanaparvan. Arjuna, son of Kṛiṣṇa-
vīrya, and king of the Haihāyas, had, we are told, a thousand arms.

He obtained from Dattātreyā an aerial car of gold, the march of which was irresistible. He thus trod down gods, Yākshas, rishis, and oppressed all creatures (10137. *Avyāhata-gatis chaiva rathas tasya mahātmanah | rathena tena tu tadā vara-dūnena vīryavān | mamardda devān yakshūns cha rishīns chaiva samantataḥ | bhūtāns chaiva sa sarvūns tu pīdayāmāsa sarvataḥ |*). The gods and rishis applied to Viṣṇu, and he along with Indra, who had been insulted by Arjuna, devised the means of destroying the latter. At this time, the story goes on, there lived a king of Kānyakubja, called Gādhi, who had a daughter named Satyavatī. The marriage of this princess to the rishi Rīchika, and the birth of Jamadagni, are then told in nearly the same way as above narrated in page 350. Jamadagni and Satyavatī had five sons, the youngest of whom was the redoubtable Paraśurāma. By his father's command he kills his mother (who, by the indulgence of impure desire, had fallen from her previous sanctity), after the four elder sons had refused this matricidal office, and had in consequence been deprived of reason by their father's curse. At Paraśurama's desire, however, his mother is restored by his father to life, and his brothers to reason; and he himself is absolved from all the guilt of murder; and obtains the boon of invincibility and long life from his father. His history now begins to be connected with that of king Arjuna (or Kārtavīrya). The latter had come to Jamadagni's hermitage, and had been respectfully received by his wife; but he had requited this honour by carrying away by force the calf of the sage's sacrificial cow, and breaking down his lofty trees. On being informed of this violence, Paraśurāma was filled with indignation, attacked Arjuna, cut off his thousand arms, and slew him. Arjuna's sons, in return, slew the peaceful sage Jamadagni, in the absence of Paraśurāma. The narrative thus proceeds :

10201. *Dadāha pitarām chāgnau Rāmaḥ para-puranjayaḥ | pratijāno badham chāpi sarva-kshattrasya Bhārata | sa kruddho 'libalāḥ sankhyo śāstraṁ ādya vīryavān | jaghnivān Kārttavīryasya sūtān eko 'ntakopamaḥ | Teshām chānugatāḥ yo cha kshattriyāḥ kshattriyarshabha | tāmś cha sarvān avūmṛidhnūd Rāmaḥ praharatām varaḥ | trissapta-kṛitvāḥ pṛithivīm kṛitvā nīkshattriyām prabhūḥ | samantapanchaka pancha chakāra raudhirān hrādān |* 10205. *Sa teshu tarpayāmāsa Bhṛīgūn Bhṛigu-kulodvahaḥ | sākshād dadarta charchikāṁ sa cha Rāmaḥ*

*nyavedayat | tato yajnena mahatā Jāmadagnyaḥ pratāpavān | tarpayā-
māsa devendram ṛitvighnyaḥ pradadau mahīm | vedīm chāpy adadād hai-
mīm Kaśyapāya mahātmane | dāsa-vyāmāyatām kṛtvā navotsedhām
viśampate | tām Kaśyapasyānumater brāhmanāḥ khaṇḍaśas tadā | vya-
bhajaṁs te tadā rājan prakhyātāḥ Khāṇḍavāyanāḥ | sa pradāya mahīm
tasmai Kaśyapāya mahātmane | asmin mahendre śailendre vasaty amita-
vikramaḥ | evaṁ vairam abhūt tasya kshattriyaḥ loka-vāsibhiḥ | prithivī
chāpi vijitā Rāmeṇāmīta-tejasā |*

“Rāma, after performing, on his return, his father's funeral obsequies, vowed to destroy the whole Kshattriya race; and executed his threat by killing first Arjuna's sons and their followers. Twenty-one times did he sweep away all the Kshattriyas from the earth, and formed five lakes of blood in Samantapanchaka; (10,205) in which he satiated the manes of the Bhṛigus, and beheld face to face (his grand-father) Rīchīka, who addressed himself to Rāma. The latter gratified Indra by offering to him a grand sacrifice, and gave the earth to the officiating priests. He bestowed also a golden altar, ten fathoms long and nine high, on the mighty Kaśyapa. This, by his permission, the Brāhmans divided among themselves, deriving thence the name of Khāṇḍavāyanas. Having given away the earth to Kaśyapa, Paraśu-rāma himself dwells on the mountain Mahendra. Thus did enmity arise between him and the Kshattriyas, and thus was the earth conquered by Rāma of boundless might.”

The means by which the Kshattriya race was restored are described in the following passage from the Ādiparvan, verses 2459 ff. :

*Trissapta-kṛitvaḥ prithivīm kṛtvā nihkshattriyaṁ purā | Jāmad-
agnyaḥ tapas tepe Mahendre parvatottame | 2460. Tadā nihkshattriyo
loke Bhārgavena kṛite sati | brāhmaṇān kshattriyaḥ rājan sūtārthīnyo
'bhichakramuḥ | tābhiḥ saha samāpetur brāhmaṇāḥ śamsita-vratāḥ | ṛitāv
ṛitau nara-vyāghra na kāmūd nūṇitau tathā | tebhyaḥ cha lebhīre garb-
haṁ kshattriyaḥ taḥ sahasraśaḥ | tataḥ sushuvire rājan kshattriyaṁ
vīryavattarān | kumārāṁś cha kumārīś cha punaḥ kshattrābhivrid-
dhyaye | evaṁ tad brāhmaṇaiḥ kshattram kshattriyaṁsu tapasvibhiḥ |
jātān vṛiddhān cha dharmena sudīrghenāyushān vitam | chatvāro 'pi tato
varṇāḥ babhūvur brāhmaṇottarāḥ |*

“2459. Having one and twenty times swept away all the Kshattriyas from the earth, the son of Jamadagni engaged in austerities on

Mahendra the most excellent of mountains. 2460. After he had cleared the world of Kshatriyas, their widows came to the Brāhmins, praying for offspring. The religious Brāhmins, free from any impulse of lust, cohabited at the proper seasons with these women, who in consequence became pregnant, and brought forth valiant Kshatriya boys and girls, to continue the Kshatriya stock. Thus was the Kshatriya race virtuously begotten by Brāhmins on Kshatriya women, and became multiplied and long-lived. Thence there arose four castes inferior to the Brāhmins."

This restoration of the Kshatriyas and their rule is said to have been followed by a state of great virtue, happiness, and prosperity. As one exemplification of the religious perfection which prevailed, it is said that "the Brāhmins did not sell their sacred lore, nor recite the Vedas in the vicinity of Sūdras" (verse 2474. *Na cha vikrīṇate brahma brāhmaṇās cha tadā nṛipa | na cha śūdra-samābhyāse vedān uchchārayanty uta* {}).

Another version of this legend is given in the Śāntiparvan, section 49. The birth of Jamadagni as the son of Richika and Satyavatī is related very much as in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (see above, p. 349 f.); but Richika tells his wife that the whole of her father's race shall become Brāhmanical (verse 1741. *Brahma-bhūtaṁ ki sakalam pitus tava kulam bhavet*); and of Viśvāmitra, the son of Gādhi, we are told that he "had the character of a Brāhman, and was possessed of all Brahmanical qualities" (1745. *Viśvāmitraṁ cha dāyādāṁ Gādhiḥ Kuśika-nandanah | yam prāpa brahma-samitaṁ viśvair brahma-guṇair yutam* {}). Jamadagni was father of the dreadful Paraśurāma, "who became perfect in science, thoroughly versed in archery, and the slayer of the Kshatriyas, himself violent as flaming fire. By propitiating Mahādeva he obtained, among other weapons, the irresistible axe (*paraśu*)" (1747. *Sarva-vidyānta-gaṁ śreṣṭhaṁ dhanur-vedasya pāragam | Rāmaṁ kshatriya-hantāram pradīptam iva pāvakam | toshayitvā Mahādevam parvate Gandhamādane | astrāṅi varayāmāsa paraśum chātitejasam* {}), from which his name is derived. Arjuna, son of Kṛitavīrya, king of the Haihayas, is here also represented as having a thousand arms, but in opposition to the previous account he is described as a "pious and religious monarch, who at an *āśvamedha* (horse-sacrifice) beset the Brāhmins the earth with its seven continents and mountains, which he had conquered by his

arms and weapons" (verse 1751. *Chakravartī mahātejā viprāṇām āsvamedhike | dadau sa prithivīm sarvām sapta-dvīpām sa-parvatām | svabāhv-āstra-balenājau jītvā parama-dharma-vit |*). He had, however, at the solicitation of Agni permitted that voracious deity to consume his towns, villages, forests, etc.; and as the hermitage of Āpava (Vasiṣṭha) had been destroyed in the conflagration, Arjuna was doomed by the sage's curse to have his arms cut off by Paraśurāma. The story proceeds:

Verse 1769. *Arjunaś tu mahātejā balī nityaṁ samātmekah | brahmanyas cha śaranyas datā śūras cha Bhārata |* 1760. *Nāchintayat tadā śūpam tena dattam mahātmanā | tasya putrās tu balinaḥ śūpenāsura pitur badhe | nimittād avaliptāḥ vai nṛśaṁsās chaiva sarvadā | Jāmadagni-dhenvās te vatsam āninyur Bharatarshabha | ajnātām Kārttavīryeṇa Haihayendrena dhīmatū | tannimittam abhūd yuddham Jāmadagner mahātmanah | tato 'rjunasya bāhuṁś tām chhittvā Rāmo ruṣhā 'nvitah |* . . . 1766. *Tataḥ pītṛi-badhāmarśhād Rāmaḥ parama-manyumān | nihkshattriyaṁ pratiśrutya mahīm śāstram agrihnata | tataḥ sa Bhṛiguśārdūlah Kārttavīryasya vīryavān | vikrāmya vijaghānāśu puttrān pautrāṁś cha sarvaśah | sa Haihaya-sahasrāṇi hatvā parama-manyumān | chakāra Bhārgavo rājan mahīm śonita-kardamām | sa tathā "śu mahātejāḥ kṛtvā nihkshattriyaṁ mahīm |* 1770. *Kṛipayā parayā "viśṭo vanam eva jagāma ha | tato varsha-sahasreshu samatīteshu keshuchit | kshepam samprūptavāṁś tatra prakṛityā kopanaḥ prabhuḥ | Viśvāmitrasya pauttras tu Raibhya-puttro mahātapāḥ | Parāvasur mahārāja kshiptāha (kshiptvā "ha?) jana-saṁsadi | "ye te Yayāti-patane yajne santaḥ samāgatāḥ | Pratarddana-prabhṛitayo Rāma kiṁ kshattriyaḥ na te | mithyā-pratiṇo Rāma tvaṁ katthase jana-saṁsadi | bhayāt kshattriya-vīrāṇām parvatām samupśṛitah | sū punaḥ kshattriya-śataiḥ prithivī sarvatas tṛitā" |* 1775. *Parāvasor vachāḥ śrutvā śāstram jagrūha Bhārgavaḥ | tato ye Kshattriyaḥ rājan sataśas tena varjītāḥ | te vivṛiddhāḥ mahāvīryyāḥ prithivī-patayo 'bhavan | sa punas tām jaghānāśu bālān api narādhipa | garbhathais tu mahi vyāptā punar evābhavat tadā | jātām jātām sa garbham tu punar eva jaghāna ha | arakshaṁś tu sūtān kūṁśchit tadā kshattriya-yoshitah | trissapta-kṛitvaḥ prithivīm kṛitvā nihkshattriyaṁ prabhuḥ | dakṣiṇām āsvamedhānte Kāśyapāyādādāt tadā | sa kshattriyaṇām śeshārtham karenoddiśya Kāśyapaḥ |* 1780. *Sruk-pragrahavatā rājāṁś tato vākyam athābravīt | "gachha tīraṁ samudrasya dakṣiṇasya mahāmune | na te mad-vishaye Rāma vastavyam iha karhichit" | tataḥ*

*S'urpārakaṁ deśaṁ sāgaras tasya nirmame | sahasā Jāmadagnyasya so
'parānta-mahātalam | Kāsyapas tām mahārāja pratigrihya vasundharām |
kritvā brāhmaṇa-saṁsthām vai pravishṭaḥ sumahāvanam | tataḥ śūdrās
cha vaiśyās cha yathā - svaira - prachārīṇaḥ | avarṭanta dvijāgryānām
dāreṣu Bharatarshabha | arājake jīva-loke durbalāḥ balavattaraiḥ |
1785. Pīḍyante na hi viteshu prabhutvaṁ kasyachit tadā | tataḥ kālena
prithivī pīḍyamānā durātmabhiḥ | viparyayena tenāśu praviveśa rasāta-
lam | arakshyamānā vidhivat kshattriyair dharma-rakshibhiḥ | tām
dṛishṭvā dravatiṁ tatra santrāsāt sa mahāmanūḥ | ūruṇā dhārāyāmāsa
Kāsyapaḥ prithivīm tataḥ | dhṛitā tenoruna yena tenorvīti mahī smṛitā |
rakshaṇārthaṁ samuddiśya yayāche prithivī tadā | prasādy Kāsyapaṁ
devī varayāmāsa bhūmipam | prithivy uvācha | 1790. "Santi brahman
mayā guptāḥ strīṣu kshattriya-pungavāḥ | Haihayānām kule jātās te
saṁrakshantu mām mune | asti Paurava-dāyādo Vidūratha-sutaḥ prabho |
ṛikshaiḥ saṁvardhito vipra ṛikshavaty atha parvate | tathā 'nukampa-
mūnena yajvanā 'py amitaujasā | Parāśareṇa dāyādāḥ Saudāsasyā-
bhīrakṣitāḥ | sarva-karmāṇi kurute śūdra-vat tasya sa dvijaḥ | Sarva-
karmety abhikhyātāḥ sa mām rakshatu pārthivaḥ | . . . 1799. Ete
kshattriya-dāyādās tatra tatra parīśritāḥ | dyokāra-hema-kūrādi-jātiṁ
nityaṁ samūśritāḥ | 1800. Yadi mām abhirakshanti tadā sthāsyāmi
niśchalā | eteshām pītaras chaiva tathaiva cha pītūmahāḥ | mad-arthaṁ
nihatāḥ yuddhe Rāmenāklīṣṭa-karmaṇā | teshām apachitīḥ chaiva mayā
kāryyā mahāmune | na hy ahaṁ kāmāye nityam atikrāntena rakṣaṇam |
varttamūnena vartteyaṁ tat kshipraṁ saṁvidhīyatām" | tataḥ prithivyā
nirdiśṭūṁs tān samānīya Kāsyapaḥ | abhyashinchad mahīpālūn kshat-
triyān vīrya-sammatān |*

"Being of a meek, pious, kind, and charitable turn of mind, the valiant Arjuna thought nothing of the curse; but his sons, who were of an arrogant and barbarous disposition, became the cause of its resulting in his death. Without their father's knowledge they took away Jamadagni's calf; and in consequence Paraśurāma attacked Arjuna and cut off his arms." His sons retaliated by killing Jama-dagni. 1766. Paraśurāma incensed at the slaughter of his father, having vowed in consequence to sweep away all Kshattriyas from the earth, seized his weapons; and slaying all the sons and grandsons of Arjuna, with thousands of the Haihayas, he turned the earth into a mass of ensanguined mud. 1770. Having thus cleared the earth of

Kshattriyas, he became penetrated by deep compassion and retired to the forest. After some thousands of years had elapsed, the hero, naturally irascible, was taunted by Parāvasu, the son of Raibhya and grandson of Viśvāmītra, in a public assembly in these words: 'Are not these virtuous men, Pratardana and the others, who are assembled at the sacrifice in the city of Yayāti,—are they not Kshattriyas? Thou hast failed to execute thy threat, and vainly boastest in the assembly. Thou hast withdrawn to the mountain from fear of those valiant Kshattriyas, while the earth has again become overrun by hundreds of their race.' Hearing these words, Rāma seized his weapons. The hundreds of Kshattriyas who had before been spared had now grown powerful kings. These, however, Paraśurāma now slew with their children, and all the numerous infants then unborn as they came into the world. Some, however, were preserved by their mothers. Having twenty-one times cleared the earth of Kshattriyas, Rāma gave her as a sacrificial fee to Kaśyapa at the conclusion of an aśvamedha. 1780. Making a signal with his hand, in which he held the sacrificial ladle, Kaśyapa, in order that the remaining Kshattriyas should be spared, said to Paraśurāma, 'Go, great muni, to the shore of the southern ocean. Thou must not dwell in my territory.' Sāgara (the ocean) created for him a country called Sūrpāraka on the remotest verge of the earth. Having received dominion over the earth, Kaśyapa made it an abode of Brāhmanas, and himself withdrew to the forest. Sūdras and Vaiśyas then began to act lawlessly towards the wives of the Brāhmanas; and, in consequence of there being no government, the weak (1785) were oppressed by the strong, and no one was master of any property. The Earth, being distressed by the wicked, in consequence of that disorder, and unprotected according to rule by the Kshattriyas, the guardians of justice, descended to the lower regions. Perceiving her moving from place to place in terror, Kaśyapa upheld her with his thigh (*ūru*). From this circumstance she derives her name of *urvī*.²⁴⁰ The goddess Earth then propitiated Kaśyapa, and supplicated him for protection, and for a king. 'I have,' she said, 'preserved among females many Kshattriyas who have been born in the race of the Haihayas; let them be my protectors. There is the heir of the Pauravas, the son of Vidūratha, who has been brought up by bears

²⁴⁰ *Urvī* really means "the broad," signifying the same as *pṛithivī*.

on the mountain Rikshavat: let him protect me. So, too, the heir of Saudāsa has been preserved by the tender-hearted and glorious priest, Parāśara, who has performed, though a Brāhman, all menial offices (*sarvakarmāṇi*) for him, like a Sūdra;—whence the prince's name Sarvakarman." After enumerating other kings who had been rescued, the Earth proceeds: "All these Kshatriyas' descendants have been preserved in different places, abiding continually among the classes of dyokāras and goldsmiths. If they protect me, I shall continue unshaken. Their fathers and grandfathers were slain on my account by Rāma, energetic in action. It is incumbent on me to avenge their cause. For I do not desire to be always protected by an extraordinary person [such as Kaśyapa]; but I will be content with an ordinary ruler. Let this be speedily fulfilled.' Kaśyapa then sent for these Kshatriyas who had been pointed out by the Earth, and installed them in the kingly office."

This reference to the bestowal of the Earth upon Kaśyapa is founded on an older story which occurs both in the Aitareya and the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇas. The passage in the first-named work is as follows, viii. 21. *Etena ha vai Aindreṇa mahābhishekeṇa Kaśyapo Viśvakarmānam Bhauvanam abhishishecha | tasmād u Viśvakarmā Bhauvanah samantaṁ sarvataḥ prithivīm jayan parīyāya āsvena cha medhyena ije | bhūmir ha jagāv ity udāharanti* "na mā marttyaḥ kaśchana dātum arhati Viśvakarman Bhauvana mām didūsiṭha | nimankshye 'haṁ salilasya madhye moghas te esha Kaśyapūyāsa sangaraḥ" *iti* | "With this great inauguration like that of Indra did Kaśyapa consecrate Viśvakarman Bhauvana, who in consequence went round the Earth in all directions, conquering it; and offered an āsvamedha sacrifice. They relate that the Earth then recited this verse:

"Me may no mortal give away; but thou, oh king, dost so essay;
Deep will I plunge beneath the main; thy pledge to Kaśyapa is vain."

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiii. 7, 1. 15, says: *Taṁ ha Kaśyapo yā-jayānchakāra | tad api bhūmiḥ slokaṁ jagau* "na mā marttyaḥ kaśchana dātum arhati Viśvakarman Bhauvana mandah āsiṭha | upamankshyati syā salilasya madhye mṛishaisha te sangaraḥ Kaśyapūya" *iti* | "Kaśyapa officiated for him at this sacrifice. Wherefore also the Earth recited this verse: 'No mortal may give me away. Viśvakarman, son of

Bhauvana, thou wast foolish (in offering to do so). She will sink into the midst of the waters. Thy promise to Kaśyapa is vain.' ”²⁴¹

The story is also related in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa in a similar way. I note the chief points and variations. When Gādhi's daughter was demanded in marriage by the rishi Richika, the king considered that the suitor was not a fit husband for a daughter of his noble race; and said, “Give me a thousand horses white as the moon, each with one black ear, as a marriage gift for the maiden; for we are Kuśikas” (ix. 15, 5. *Varaṁ visadrīṣam matvā Gādhir Bhārgavam abravīt | 6. Ekataḥ śyāma-karṇā-nām hayānām chandra-varchasām | sahasraṁ diyatām śulkaṁ kanyāyāḥ Kuśikāḥ vayam* |). The youngest offspring of their union was, we are told, “Paraśurāma, who is declared to have been a portion of Vāsudeva (Viṣṇu in the form of Kriṣṇa),²⁴² and who exterminated the Haihaya race. Thrice seven times he swept away from this earth all the Kshatriyas, that depraved and impious race, full of passion and darkness, with which she was burthened. He destroyed them, though the offence which they had committed was but insignificant (v. 14. *Yam āhur Vāsudevāmśaṁ Haihayānaṁ kulāntakam | trissaptakṛito yaḥ imām cakre niḥkshattriyaṁ mahīm | duṣṭaṁ kshattram bhuvo bhāram abrahmanyam anīnaśat | rajas-tamo-vṛitam ahan phalguny api kṛite 'mhasi* |). King Arjuna, who had been endowed with miraculous powers, took Rāvana prisoner, then released him, and afterwards carried away by force Jamadagni's cow and calf. Paraśurāma, in revenge, after a terrible battle, and the defeat of the king's army, cut off Arjuna's arms and head, and recovered the cow and calf. When his father was informed of the king's death, he said to Paraśurāma: “Rāma, Rāma, thou hast committed sin, in that thou hast causelessly slain the lord of men, who is composed of all the deities.²⁴³ It is by longsuffering that we, the Brāhmanas, have acquired respect; the same means whereby the deity, the instructor of all worlds, attained the highest rank of godhead. By

²⁴¹ It will be observed that there are some varieties of reading in the verse, as given in the two Brāhmaṇas. *Manda āsitha* in the S'. P. Br. looks like a corruption of the *mām dīdāsitha* of the Aitareya. The story of Arjuna, Paraśurāma, and the Kshatriyas is briefly told again in the Āśvamedhika-parvan, but without any new circumstances of particular interest.

²⁴² See above, p. 350, and note 146. None of the passages I have quoted from the Mahābhārata allude to Paraśurāma being an incarnation of Viṣṇu.

²⁴³ Compare the passages quoted above in p. 300 from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, and from Manu.

patience the fortune of Brahmā shines like the splendour of the Sun. Hari, the lord, is speedily pleased with those who are patient. The murder of a king who has been formally inaugurated is worse than that of a Brāhman. Go and expiate thy sin by visiting holy places, with thy mind intent upon Achyuta (Vishṇu)" (ix. 15, 38. *Rāma Rāma mahābhāga bhavān pāpam akārashīt*²⁴¹ | *abadhīd nara-devaṁ yat sarva-devamayaṁ vṛithā* | *vayaṁ hi brāhmaṇās tāta kshamayā 'rhanatām gatāḥ* | *yayā loka-gurur devaḥ pārameshṭhyam ayāt padam* | *kshamayā rochate lakṣmīr Brāhmī saurī yathā prabhā* | *kshaminām āśu bhagavāms tushyate Harir īśvaraḥ* | *rājno mūrdhābhishiktasya badho brahma-badhād guruḥ* | *tīrtha-saṁsevayā chāmho jahy angūchyuta-chetanaḥ* |). On his return from this pilgrimage Rāma was desired by his father to kill his mother (on grounds similar to those stated in the account quoted above, p. 450, from the Mahābhārata), as well as his brothers, and executed the order; but at his intercession they were all restored to life. During his absence in the forest, his father Jamadagni was slain, and his head cut off, notwithstanding the entreaties of his wife, by the sons of Arjuna, in revenge for the loss of their own father. Paraśurāma, hearing his mother's outcries, hastened back to the hermitage, and laying hold of his axe, proceeded to avenge this outrage: ix. 16, 17. *gatvā Māhishmatīm Rāmo brahma-ghna-vihata-śriyam* | *teshām sa śīrshabhiḥ rājan madhye chakre mahūgirim* | 18. *Tad-raktena nadīm ghorām abrahmanya-bhayāvaham* | *hetuṁ kṛtvā pitṛi-badhaṁ kshattre 'mangala-kūrīṇi* | . . . 20. *Pituh kāyena sandhūya śīraḥ ādāya barhishi* | *sarva-devamayaṁ devam ātmānam ayajad makhaiḥ* | 21. *Dadau prūchīm diśāṁ hotre brahmaṇe dakṣiṇām diśam* | *adhvaryave pratichīm vai udgātre uttarām diśam* | 22. *Anyebhyo 'vāntara-diśaḥ Kāśyapāya cha madhyataḥ* | *āryāvarttam upadrashṭre sadasyebhyas tataḥ param* | 23. *Tataś chāvabhṛitha-snāna-vidhūtāsēsha-kilviśaḥ* | *Sarasvatyām brahma-nadyām reje vyabhraḥ ivāṁsumān* | . . . 26. *Āste 'dyūpi Mahendrādrau nyastadandāḥ prasūntadhīḥ* | *upagīyamāna-charitāḥ siddha-gandharva-chāranaiḥ* | 27. *Evam Bhṛiguśhu viśvātmā bhagavān Harir īśvaraḥ* | *avatīrya param bhāraṁ bhuvo 'han bahuśo nripān* | " 17. He went to the city of Māhishmatī, which had been robbed of its glory by those Brāhman-slayers, and raised in the midst of it a great mountain composed of their heads. With their blood he formed a dreadful river, which struck

²⁴¹ So in the Bombay edition. Burnouf's text has the usual form *akurashīt*.

fear into the impious; justifying his action against the oppressive Kshatriyas by their murder of his father. . . . 20. He then united his father's head to his body, laying it on the sacred grass; and offered a sacrifice to the divine Spirit, who is formed of all the deities. On this occasion he gave the eastern region of the earth to the hotri priest, the south to the brahman, the west to the adhvaryu, and the north to the udgātri. To others he gave the intermediate regions (south-east, south-west, etc.), to Kaśyapa the central; on the upadrashṭri he bestowed Āryāvartta, and on the Sadasyas what was beyond. Having then cleansed all his impurity by the avabhṛitha ablution in the Sarasvatī, the river of Brahmā, he shone like the sun unobscured by clouds. . . . 26. Having laid aside his weapons, he sits to this day in tranquillity of mind on the mountain Mahendra, whilst his exploits are celebrated by the Siddhas, Gandharvas, and Chāranas. Thus did the universal Spirit, the divine lord, Hari, become incarnate in the Bhṛigus, and destroy numerous kings who were a burden to the earth." It is singular that sin requiring expiation should be, as it is in this narrative, imputed to Paraśurāma, while he is at the same time declared to have been a portion of Viṣṇu, the supreme Spirit.

The story of Paraśurāma is also told in the Droṇaparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 2427 ff., after those of many other kings and warriors, to illustrate the truth that death must sooner or later overtake even the most pious and distinguished personages. The earlier incidents are briefly narrated; but some of the details, as the slaughter of the Kshatriyas, are dwelt on at greater length than in the other accounts. Some of the victims of the hero's vengeance are described as "haters of Brāhmanas" (*brahma-dvishām*, verse 2431). The Kshatriyas who were slain are described as of various provinces, viz. Kāśmīras, Daradas, Kuntis, Kshudrakas, Mālavas, Angas, Vangas, Kalingas, Videhas, Tāmraliptakas, Rakshovāhas, Vitihotras, Trigarttas, Mārttikāvatas, Śivis, and other Rājanyas (*Śivīm anyāṃś cha rājanyān*, verse 2437). At verse 2443 the narrative proceeds: *Nirdasyum prithivīm kṛtvā śiṣṭeṣṭa-jana-sankulām | Kaśyapāya dadau Rāmo haya-medhe mahāmakhe | trisapta-vārān prithivīm kṛtvā niṣṭkshatṛiyām prabhukḥ | iṣṭvā kratu-satair viro brāhmaṇebhyo hy amanyata | sapta-dvīpām vasumatīm Mūrīcho 'grihṇata dvijāḥ | Rāmam prociha "nirgachha vasudhūto mamājñayā | sa Kaśyapasya*

*vachanāt protsārya saritūmpatim | ishupātair yudhāñ śreshṭhaḥ kurvan
brāhmaṇa-sūsanam | adhyāvasad giri-śreshṭham Mahendram parvato-
ttamam |* “2443. Having freed the earth from Dasyus (or robbers), and filled her with respectable and desirable inhabitants, he gave her to Kaśyapa at an aśamedha. Having twenty-one times cleared the earth of Kshattriyas, and offered hundreds of sacrifices, he destined the earth for the Brāhmans. The Brāhman, the son of Marīchi (i.e. Kaśyapa), received the earth, and then said to Rāma, ‘Depart out of her by my command.’ Having repelled the ocean by his arrows, and established the rule of the Brāhmans, Rāma dwelt on the mountain Mahendra.”

The Anuśāsanaparvan of the same poem has another “ancient story” about Paraśurāma, which, like the preceding passage from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, adverts to the pollution incurred by that warrior from his numerous deeds of blood. It begins as follows: verse 3960. *Jāmad-
agnyena Rāmeṇa tīvra-roshānvitena vai | trissapta-kṛitvaḥ prithivī kṛitā
nīḥkshattriyā purā | tato jītvā mahīm kṛitsnām Rāmo rājīva-lochanah |
ājāhāra kratuñ vīro brahma-kshattreṇa pūjitam | vāji-medham mahārāja
sarva-kāma-samanvitam | pāvanam sarva-bhūtānām tejo-dyuti-vivarddha-
nam | vipāpmā sa cha tejasvī tena kratu-phalena cha | naivātmano 'tha
laghutām Jāmadagnyo 'dhyagacchata | sa tu kratu-vareṇeshṭvā mahātmā
dakṣiṇāvata |* 3965. *Paprachhāgama - sampannān ṛishīn devāñś cha
Bhārgavaḥ | “pāvanam yat param nṛīṇam ugre karmanī varttatām |
tad uchyatām mahābhāgūḥ” iti jāta-ghrīṇo 'bravit | ity uktāḥ veda-
sāstra-jñās tam ūchus te maharshayaḥ | “Rāma viprah satkriyāntām
veda-prāmāṇya-darśanāt | bhūyaścha viprarshi-gaṇāḥ prasṭavyāḥ pāva-
nam prati | te yad brūyur mahāprājñās tach chaiva samudāchara |*
“3960. Rāma, son of Jamadagni, having thrice seven times cleared the world of Kshattriyas, and conquered the whole earth, performed the horse-sacrifice, venerated by Brāhmans and Kshattriyas, which confers all objects of desire, which cleanses all creatures, and augments power and lustre; and became thereby sinless and glorious. He did not, however, feel relieved in his mind, but after offering the most excellent of sacrifices, at which presents were bestowed, he (3965) enquired of the rishis skilled in the scriptures, and of the gods, what was that which most perfectly cleansed those men who had committed deeds of violence; for he felt compunction for what he had done. The rishis skilled in the Vedas and Śāstras replied, ‘Let the Brāhmans be

the objects of your liberality, as the authority of the Vedas requires; let the Brāhman-rishis be further consulted in regard to the means of lustration; and do whatever these wise men may enjoin.” Paraśurāma accordingly consulted Vaśishṭha, Agastya, and Kaśyapa. They replied that a sinner was cleansed by bestowing cows, land, and other property, and especially gold, the purifying power of which was very great. “Those who bestow it, bestow the gods,” a proposition which is thus compendiously proved: “for Agni comprehends all the gods; and gold is of the essence of Agni” (verse 3987. *Devatās te prayachhanti ye suvarṇam dadaty atha | Agnir hi devatāḥ sarvāḥ suvarṇam cha tadātmacam*). In regard to the origin of this precious metal, Vaśishṭha tells a very long story, which he had heard Prajāpati relate, how it was born by the goddess Gangā to Agni, by whom she had been impregnated, and was thus the son of that god. “Thus was gold born the offspring of Jātavedas (Agni). That which is produced in Jambūnada is the best, and a fit ornament even for the gods. It is called the chief of gems and of ornaments, the most pure of all pure things, the most auspicious of all auspicious objects; and one with the divine Agni, the lord Prajāpati” (verse 4099. *Evaṁ suvarṇam utpannam apatyaṁ Jātavedasaḥ | tatra Jambūnadaṁ śreṣṭhaṁ devānām api bhūṣaṇam | 4001. Ratnānām uttamaṁ ratnam bhūṣaṇānām tathottamaṁ | pavitraṁ cha pavitrānām mangalānām cha mangalam | yat suvarṇam sa bhagavān Agnir īśaḥ prajāpatiḥ |*). It must be highly consolatory for those who are disposed to be liberal to the Brāhman, to be assured that the gold which they bestow has such a high mystical, as well as current, exchangeable value. “Paraśurāma,” the story concludes, “after being thus addressed by Vaśishṭha, gave gold to the Brāhmans, and was freed from sin” (verse 4183. *Ity uktaḥ sa Vaśishṭhena Jāmadagnyaḥ pratāpavān | dadau suvarṇam viprebhyaḥ vyamuchyata cha kilviśāt*).

It is interesting to remark how the different distinctive principles of Indian religion and sentiment severally assert themselves in turn, and thus, occasionally, come into conflict with each other, as in the story of Paraśurāma. The primary object of this legend is no doubt to illustrate the vengeance which inevitably overtakes all those who violate the sacredness of the Brāhmanical prerogative, and the meritorious character of those who act as its defenders. No sooner, however, is this end ac-

complished, and the impious foes of the priesthood swept away again and again from the face of the earth, than a revulsion of feeling takes place, and the higher principles of the sacredness of life, and of the blessedness of mercy, come forward to claim recognition; and a deep sense of the pollution of bloodshed calls aloud for atonement. In the Bhāgavata, as we have seen, Jamadagni imputes it as a crime to the avenger of the Brāhmins that he had slain a king; and even goes the length of declaring that in doing so he had incurred greater guilt than if he had murdered a Brāhman.

In the same book of the Mahābhārata, verses 7163 ff., an extravagant description is given of the prerogatives and powers of the Brāhmins; and Arjuna is again brought forward, in verses 7187 ff., as at first scouting their pretensions, but as ultimately conceding their unapproachable superiority: "The magnificent and mighty Kārtavīrya (Arjuna), possessing a thousand arms, was lord of this whole world, living in Māhishmatī. This Haihaya of unquestioned valour ruled over the whole sea-girt earth, with its oceans and continents" (verse 7187. *Sahasra-bhūja-bhṛit śrīmān Kārttavīryo 'bhavat prabhuḥ | asya lokasya sarvasya Māhishmatyām mahābalaḥ | sa tu ratnākaravatīm sadvipām sāgarāmbarām | śaśūsa pṛithivīm sarvām Haihayaḥ satya-vikramah*). He obtained boons from the muni Dattātreyā, a thousand arms whenever he should go into battle, power to make the conquest of the whole earth, a disposition to rule it with justice, and the promise of instruction from the virtuous in the event of his going astray. 7196. *Tataḥ sa ratham āsthāya jvalanārka-samyutim | abravīd vīryyasammohāt "ko nv asti sadṛīṣo mama | dhairyye vīryye yaśaḥ-śauryye vikramenaujasū 'pi vū" | tad-vākyānte 'ntarīkṣhe vai vāg uvāchāśarīrīnī | "na tvam mūḍha vijānīṣhe brāhmaṇāṃ kṣhattriyaḥ varam | sahito brāhmaṇeneha kṣhattriyaḥ śūsti vai prajāḥ" | Arjuna uvācha | kuryām bhūtāni tushṭo 'haṃ kruddho nūśaṃ tathā nayo | karmaṇā manasā vāchā na matto 'sti varo dvijaḥ | 7200. Pūrvo brahmottaro vādo dvitīyaḥ kṣhattriyaḥ | tvayoktau hetuyuktau tau viśeṣaḥ tatra dṛīṣyate | brāhmaṇāḥ saṃśritāḥ kṣhattraṃ na kṣhattraṃ brāhmaṇāśritam | śritāḥ brahmopadhāḥ viprāḥ khādanti kṣhattriyaṇ bhuvi | kṣhattriyeṣu āśrito dharmāḥ prajānāṃ paripālanaṃ | kṣhattrād vṛttir brāhmaṇānāṃ taiḥ katham brāhmaṇo varaḥ | sarva-bhūgradhānāṃ tān bhakṣha-vṛttin ahaṃ sadā | ātma-sambhavitān vipraṇ*

sthāpayāmy ātmano vaśe | kathitaṁ hy anayā satyam gāyatrī kanyayā divi | vijeshyāmy avasān sarvān brāhmaṇāṁś charma-vāsasah | 7205. Na cha mām chāvayed rāshṭrāt trishu lokeshu kaśchana | devo vā mānusho vā 'pi tasmāj jyeshṭho dvijūd aham | atha brahmottaraṁ lokaṁ karishye kshattriyottaram | na hi me saṁyuge kaśchit soḍhum utsahate balam | Arjunasya vachah śrutvā vitrastā 'bhūd nīśāchari | athainam antarikshasṭhas tato Vāyur abhāshata | "tyajainaṁ kaluṣhaṁ bhāvam brāhmaṇebhyo namaskuru | eteshāṁ kurvataḥ pāpāṁ rāshṭra-kshobho bhaviṣhyati | atha vā tvām mahipāla śamayishyanti vai dvijūḥ | nirasishyanti te rāshṭrād hatotsāham mahābalāḥ" | 7210. Taṁ rājā "kas tvam" ity āha tatas tam prāha Mārutah | "Vāyur vai deva-dūto 'smi hitaṁ tvām prabravīmy aham" | Arjunaḥ uvācha | "aho tvayā 'dya vipreshu bhaktirūgaḥ pradarśitaḥ | yādṛīṣam prithirī-bhūtaṁ tādṛīṣam brūhi vai dvijam | vāyor vā sadṛīṣam kinchid brūhi tvam brāhmaṇottamam | apāṁ vai sadṛīṣo vahnīḥ sūryasya nabhaso 'pi vā |

"Then ascending his chariot glorious as the resplendent sun, he exclaimed in the intoxication of his prowess, 'Who is like me in fortitude, courage, fame, heroism, energy, and vigour?' At the end of this speech a bodiless voice in the sky addressed him: 'Thou knowest not, o fool, that a Brāhman is better than a Kshattriya. It is with the help of the Brāhman that the Kshattriya rules his subjects.' Arjuna answers: 'If I am pleased, I can create, or, if displeased, annihilate, living beings; and no Brāhman is superior to me in act, thought, or word. The first proposition is that the Brāhmans are superior; the second that the Kshattriyas are superior; both of these thou hast stated with their grounds, but there is a difference between them (in point of force). The Brāhmans are dependant on the Kshattriyas, and not the Kshattriyas on the Brāhmans; and the Kshattriyas are eaten up by the Brāhmans, who wait upon them, and only make the Vedas a pretence. Justice, the protection of the people, has its seat in the Kshattriyas. From them the Brāhmans derive their livelihood: how then can the latter be superior? I always keep in subjection to myself those Brāhmans, the chief of all beings, who subsist on alms, and who have a high opinion of themselves. For truth was spoken by that female the Gāyatrī in the sky. I shall subdue all those unruly Brāhmans clad in hides. 7200. No one in the three worlds, god or man, can hurl me from my royal authority; wherefore I am

superior to any Brāhman. Now shall I turn the world in which Brāhman have the upper hand into a place where Kshattriyas shall have the upper hand: for no one dares to encounter my force in battle.' Hearing this speech of Arjuna, the female roving in the night became alarmed. Then Vāyu, hovering in the air, said to Arjuna: 'Abandon this sinful disposition, and do obeisance to the Brāhman. If thou shalt do them wrong, thy kingdom shall be convulsed. They will subdue thee: those powerful men will humble thee, and expel thee from thy country.' The king asks him, 'Who art thou?' Vāyu replies, 'I am Vāyu, the messenger of the gods, and tell thee what is for thy benefit.' Arjuna rejoins, 'Oh, thou displayest to-day a great warmth of devotion to the Brāhman. But say that a Brāhman is like (any other) earth-born creature. Or say that this most excellent Brāhman is something like the wind. But fire is like the waters, or the sun, or the sky.'"²⁴⁵ Vāyu, however, goes on to answer this spirited banter by adducing various instances in which the superiority or terrible power of the Brāhman had been manifested: 7124. *Tyaktvā mahītram bhūmīs tu sparddhayā'nga-nripasya ha | nāsāṁ jagāma tām vipro vyashṭambhayata Kāśyapaḥ |* "The earth, being offended with king Anga, had abandoned her form and become destroyed: but the Brāhman Kāśyapa supported her." This is afterwards told more at length, verse 7232: *Imām bhūmīm dvijātibhyo ditsur vai dakṣiṇām purā | Ango nāma nripo rājāṁs tatas chintām mahī yayau |* "dhūraṇīm sarva-bhūtānām ayam prāpya varo nripaḥ | katham ichhati mām dātum dvijebhyo Brahmanāḥ sutām | sū'haṁ tyaktvā gamishyāmi bhūmitram Brahmanāḥ padam | ayaṁ sa-rūṣṭro nripatir mā bhūd" *iti tato 'gamat |* 7235. *Tatas tām Kāśyapo dṛiṣṭvā vrajantīm prithivīm tadā | praviveśa mahīm sadyo muktvā 'tmānaṁ samāhitaḥ | ṛiddhā sū sarvato jagne trīṇaushadhi-samanvitā | . . .* 7238. *Athāgamyā mahārāja namaskṛitya cha Kāśyapam | prithivī Kāśyapī jagne sutā tasya mahātmanāḥ | eṣha rājann īdriśo vai brāhmanāḥ Kāśyapo 'bhavat | anyam prabrūhi vā tvam cha Kāśyapūt kshattriyaṁ varam |* "King Anga wished to bestow this earth on the Brāhman as a sacrificial fee. The earth then reflected, 'How does this excellent king, after having obtained me, the daughter of Brahmā, and the supporter of all creatures, desire to give

²⁴⁵ The drift of the last line is not very clear, unless it be a reply by anticipation to line 225, which will be found a little further on.

me to the Brāhmans? I shall abandon my earthly form, and depart to the world of Brahmā. Let this king be without any realm.' Accordingly she departed. 7235. Beholding her going away, Kaśyapa, sunk in contemplation, entered into her, leaving his own body. She then became replenished, and covered with grass and plants, etc., etc. . . . 7238. She afterwards came and did obeisance to Kaśyapa, and became his daughter. Such was the Brāhman Kaśyapa: Declare, on your part, any Kshattriya who has been superior to him."

Further illustrations of the tremendous power of the Brāhmans are the following:

7215. *Apibat tejasā hy āpaḥ svayam evāngirāḥ purā | sa tāḥ pīban kshīram iva nāṭripyata mahāmanūḥ | apūrayad mahaughena mahīm sarvām cha pārthiva | tasminn ahaṁ cha kruddhe vai jagat tyaktvā tato gataḥ | vyatishṭham agnihotre cha chiram Angiraso bhayāt | atha śaptaś cha bhagavān Gautamena Purandaraḥ | Ahalyām kāmāyāno vai dharmaṁrthaṁ cha na hiṁsitaḥ | yathā samudro nripate pūrṇo mṛishṭas cha vāriṇā | brāhmaṇair abhiśaptaḥ san babhūva lavanodakāḥ | . . . 7223. Dandakānām mahad rājyam brāhmaṇena vināsitam | Tūlajangham mahākshattram Aurvenaikena nāsitam | . . . 7225. Agniṁ tvaṁ yajase nityaṁ kasmād brāhmaṇam Arjuna | sa hi sarvasya lokasya havya-vūṭ kiṁ na vetsyi tam | . . . 7241. Bhadrā Somasya duhitā rūpeṇa paramā matā | yasyās tulyam patiṁ Somaḥ Utathyāṁ samapaśyata | sā cha tīvraṁ tapaḥ tepe mahābhāgā yaśasvinī | Utathyārthe tu chārvāngī paramā niyamam āsthitā | tataḥ āhūya sotathyāṁ dadāv Atrir yaśasvinīm | bhāryyārthe sa tu jagrāha vidhivad bhūri-dakshinaḥ | tāṁ tv akāmayata śrīmān Varuṇaḥ pūrvam eva ha | sa chāgamyā vanaprasthāṁ Yamunāyām jahāra tām | 7245. Jaleśvaras tu hṛitvā tām anayat svapuram prati | paramādbhuta-sankāśam shat-sahasra-śataṁ hradam | na hi ramyatarāṁ kinchit tasmād anyat purottamam | prāsūdair apsarobhiś cha divyair kāmair cha śobhitam | tatra devas tayā sārddhāṁ reme rājan jaleśvaraḥ | athākhyātam Utathyāya tataḥ patny-avamarddanam | tach chhṛutvā Nāradaḥ sarvam Utathyo Nāradaṁ tadā | provācha "gachha brūhi tvaṁ Varuṇam parushaṁ vachaḥ | madvākyaḥ muncha me bhāryyām kasmāt tāṁ hṛitavān asi | lokapālo 'si lokānām na lokasya vilumpakaḥ | Somena dattā me bhāryyā tvayā chāpahṛitā 'dya vai" | . . . 7251. Iti śrūtvā vachas tasya tatas taṁ Varuṇo 'bravīt | "mamaishā supriyā bhīrur nainām utsraśṭum utsahe" | ity ukto Varuṇenātha Nū-*

*radah prāpya vai munim | Utathyam abravīd vākyaṁ nātihṛishṭa-manāḥ
iva | “gale grihitvā kshipto ’smi Varuṇena mahāmune | na prayachchati
te bhāryāṁ yat te kāryāṁ kurushva tat” | Nāradasya vacaḥ śrutvā
kruddhaḥ prājvalad Angirāḥ | 7255. Apibat tejasā vāri viṣṭabhya sa
mahātapāḥ | pīyamāne tu sarvasmiṁs toye vai salileśvaraḥ | suhṛidbhiḥ
kshobhyamāno vai naivāmunchata tām tadā | tataḥ kruddho ’bravīd bhū-
mim Utathyo brāhmaṇottamāḥ | darśayasva chhālam bhadre śaṭ-sahasra-
śataṁ hradam | tatas tad īriṇaṁ jātaṁ samudraś chāvasarpitaḥ | tasmād
deśān nadīm chāiva provāchāsau dvijottamāḥ | “adṛīṣyā gachha bhīru-
tvaṁ Sarasvatī marūn prati | apunyaḥ esha bhavatu deśas tyaktas tvayā
śubhe” | tasmin saṁśoshite deśe Bhadrām ādāya vāripaḥ | 7260. Adadāt
śaraṇaṁ gatvā bhāryāṁ Angirasāya vai | pratigrihya tu tām bhāryāṁ
Utathyāḥ sumanā ’bhavat | mumocha cha jagad duḥkḥād Varuṇaṁ chāiva
Haihaya | 7262. Mamaishā tapasā prāptā krośatas te jalādhipa |
7263. esha rājann īdṛīṣo vai Utathyo brāhmaṇottamāḥ | bravīmy
aham brūhi vā tvam Utathyāt kshattriyam varam |*

“Angiras, too, himself formerly drank up the waters by his own²⁴⁶ night. Drinking them up like milk he was not satisfied: and filled the whole earth with a great flood. When he was thus wroth, I abandoned the world and departed, and dwelt for a long time in the agnihotra. The divine Purandara (Indra), who had a passion for Ahalyā, was cursed by (her husband) Gautama; but, from motives of religion, he was not injured.²⁴⁶ The sea, which is filled and purified by water, being cursed by the Brāhmans, became salt.” 7223. The great king-

²⁴⁶ See above pp. 121 and 310; and also pp. 107-113. In this same Anuśāsana Parva, verses 2262 ff., there is found another story (told to illustrate the frailty of the female sex) of Indra being enamoured of Ruchi, the wife of the rishi Devaśarman, and of the method which that sage's disciple, Vipula, (to whose care his preceptor's wife had been entrusted during her husband's absence,) devised to preserve his charge from being corrupted by the licentious immortal who was in the habit of assuming manifold Protean disguises in order to carry out his unworthy designs, and to save the female from being “licked up by the king of the gods, as a mischievous dog licks up the butter deposited at the sacrifice” (*Yathā Ruchiṁ nāvālihed devendro Bhṛigu-sattama | kratūḥ upahite nyastaṁ haviḥ śveva durātmanvān*), a respectful comparison, truly, to be applied to the chief of the Indian pantheon! The plan which Vipula adopted to save the virtue of his master's wife against her will was to take possession of her body with his own spirit, and to restrain her movements by the force of Yoga, and compel her to say the contrary of what she desired. The story ends by his re-entering his own body, reproaching Indra with his disgraceful behaviour, and compelling him to retire abashed.

dom of the Dandakas was overthrown by a Brāhman; and the great Kshattriya family of the Tālajanghas was destroyed by Aurva alone. 7225. And why dost thou, o Arjuna, worship Agni (who is) a Brāhman? for knowest thou not that he bears the oblations of the whole world?" The story of Utathya, of the race of Angiras, is afterwards told: "7241. Bhadrā was the daughter of Soma, and considered to be a person of great beauty. Soma regarded Utathya as a fitting husband for her. She practised severe austerities in order to gain him. Atri (the father of Soma, according to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, Wilson, 1st ed. p. 392) then sent for Utathya, and gave her to him, and he married her in due form, presenting large gifts. 7245. The god Varuṇa, however, who had formerly been enamoured of her, came and carried her off from the abode of the hermit, who was living on the banks of the Yamunā, and took her to his own city, to a very wonderful lake of six hundred thousand (yojanas). No city was more delightful than that, adorned as it was by palaces and apsaras, and rich in celestial objects of enjoyment. There the god enjoyed her society. His wife's dishonour being made known to Utathya by Nārada, he requested the latter to go and deliver a severe message to Varuṇa: 'I command thee to let my wife go, who was given to me by Soma; wherefore hast thou carried her away? Thou art a guardian of the world, not a robber.' . . . 7251. Varuṇa answered, 'She is my beloved; I cannot bear to give her up.' Nārada, in no very gratified humour, reported this answer to Utathya, and said, 'Varuṇa took me by the throat, and cast me out. He will not give up thy wife. Take whatever measures thou esteemest proper.' Utathya was greatly incensed (7255), and stopped up and drank all the sea. Still Varuṇa, though urged by his friends, would not give up the female. Utathya then desired the earth to try some other stratagem; and the lake above described was turned into a salt wilderness, and the ocean swept away. The saint then addressed himself to the countries and to the river: 'Sarasvatī, disappear into the deserts; and let this land, deserted by thee, become impure.' After the country had become dried up, Varuṇa submitted himself to Utathya, and brought back Bhadrā. The sage was pleased to get his wife, and released both the world and Varuṇa from their sufferings. . . . He said to the latter (7262) 'This, my wife, was gained by my austerities in spite of thy remonstrances.' 7263. . . . 'Such, o king, I say, was

the Brāhman Utathya; tell me of any Kshattriya superior to him.”

A story is next told (verses 7265 ff.) of the gods being conquered by the Asuras or Dānavas, deprived of all oblations, and stripped of their dignity, and of their coming to earth, where they saw the sage Agastya, and applied to him for protection. The succour they implored was granted to them by the sage, who scorched the Dānavas, expelled them from heaven and earth, and made them fly to the south. Thus were the gods reinstated in their dominion.

We have then, verses 7280–7290, the following legend of Vasishṭha: The Ādityas were performing a sacrifice, bearing Vasishṭha in their remembrance, when they were attacked by the Dānavas, called Khalins, who came in tens of thousands to slay them:

Verse 7284. *Tatas tair ardditāḥ devāḥ śaraṇaṁ Vāsavaṁ yayuḥ | sa cha tair vyathitaḥ Sakro Vasishṭhaṁ śaraṇaṁ yayau | tato 'bhayaṁ dadau tebhyo Vasishṭho bhagavān ṛishiḥ | tadā tūn duḥkhitān jñtvā ānṛisāṁsya-paro muniḥ | ayatnenādahat sarvān Khalinaḥ svena tejasā |* 7289. *Evam sendrāḥ Vasishṭhena rakshitās tridivaukasah | Brahma-datta-varās chaiva hatāḥ daityāḥ mahātmanā | etat karma Vasishṭhasya kathitaṁ hi mayā 'nagha | bravīmy aham brūhi vā tvam Vasishṭhāt kshattriyaṁ varam |*

“The gods being distressed by them, resorted to Indra; and he too, being harassed by them, went to Vasishṭha for help. This reverend and benevolent sage gave them all his protection; and being aware of their distress, without any exertion, burnt up all the Dānavas 7289. Thus were the gods, including Indra, preserved by Vasishṭha, and the Daityas, even although they had obtained a boon from Brahmā, were slain. Such was the exploit of Vasishṭha: can you tell me of any Kshattriya who was superior to him?”

A further tale is told of the prowess of the sage Atri, who interposed to deliver the gods and restore light to the celestial luminaries:

Verse 7292. *Ghore tamasy ayudhyanta sahitaḥ deva-dānavāḥ | avidhyata śarais tatra Svarbhānuḥ Soma-bhāskarau | atha te tamasā grastāḥ viha-nyante sma dānavaiḥ | devāḥ nṛipati-śārdūla sahaiva Balibhis tadā | asurair badhyamānās te kṣhīṇa-prāṇāḥ divaukasah | apśyanta tapasyan-tam Atriṁ vipraṁ tapodhanam |* 7297. *Te 'bruvāṁs “chandramāḥ bhava | timira-ghnās cha savitā dasyu-hantā cha no bhava” | evam uktas tadā 'trir vai tamo-nud abhavat śaśi | apśyat saumya-bhāvāch cha soma-*

*vat-priya-darśanaḥ | dṛiṣṭvā nātiprabhaṁ somaṁ tathā sūryaṁ cha pār-
thiva | prakāśam akarod Atris tapasā svena saṁyuge | 7300. Jagad
vitimiraṁ chāpi prakāśam akarot tadā | vyajayat śatru-saṁghāṁś cha
devānāṁ svena tejasā | . . . 7303. Dvījenāgni-dvīṭiyena japatā charma-
vāsasā | phala-bhakṣheṇa rājarshe paśya karmātrīṇā kṛitam | . . .
7304. . . . brūhi vā tvam Atritaḥ kshattriyaṁ varam |*

“The gods and Dānavas fought together in dreadful darkness; when Svarbhānu pierced with his arrows the sun and moon. Enveloped in gloom the gods were slaughtered by the Dānavas, together with the Balis. Being thus slain and exhausted, the celestials beheld the Brāhman Atri employed in austerities;” and invoked his aid in their extremity. He asked what he should do. They reply, verse 2297: “‘Become the moon, and the gloom-dispelling sun, the slayer of the Dasyus.’ Atri then became the gloom-dispelling moon, and in his character as such looked beautiful as Soma. Perceiving the sun and moon to be shorn of their brightness, Atri threw light upon the conflict, (7300) freed the world from darkness, by the power of his austere-fervour, and vanquished the enemies of the gods. . . . 7303. Behold the deed done by Atri, the Brāhman, attended by Agni, the mutterer of prayers, clad in a skin, and living upon fruits. . . . 7304. ‘Tell me of any Kshattriya superior to Atri.’”

This story is founded on some verses of the Rig-veda, v. 40, 5 :

*Yat tvā sūryya Svarbhānus tamasā ’vidhyad āsuraḥ | akṣetra-vid yathā
mudgho bhuvanāni adīdhayuh | 6. Svarbhānor adha yad Indra māyāḥ avo
divo varttamānāḥ avāhan | gūlhaṁ sūryyaṁ tamasā ’pavratena turīyena
brahmaṇā ’vindad Atriḥ | 8. Grāvno brahmā yujujānaḥ saparyyan kirīṇā
devān namasopasikshan | Atriḥ sūryasya divi chakṣhur ādhāt Svarbhānor
apa māyāḥ aghukṣhat | 9. Yam vai sūryyaṁ Svarbhānus tamasā ’vidhyad
āsuraḥ | Atrayas tam anv avindan nahi anye āsaknuvan |*

“When Svarbhānu of the Asura race pierced thee, o Sun, with darkness, all worlds appeared like a man who is bewildered in a region which he does not know. 6. When, Indra, thou didst sweep away the magical arts of Svarbhānu, which were operating beneath the sky, Atri discovered by the fourth text the Sun, which had been hidden by the hostile darkness. 8. Applying the (soma-crushing) stones, performing worship, serving the gods with reverence and praise, the priest Atri placed the eye of the Sun in the sky, and dispelled the illusions of

Svarbhānu. 9. The Atris discovered the Sun which Svarbhānu had pierced with darkness. No others could."

We have next a curious legend about the sage Chyavana, of the race of Bhṛigu :

7306. *Āsvinoḥ pratisaṁśrutya Chyavanaḥ Pākaśāsanam | provācha sahito devaiḥ "somapāva Āsvinau kuru" | Indraḥ uvācha | "asmābhir ninditāv etau bharetām somapau katham | devair na sammitāv etau tasmād mairam vadasva naḥ | Āsvibhyām saha nekhāmaḥ somam pātum mahāvrata | yad anyad vakshyase vipra tat karishyāma te vacchaḥ" | Chyavanaḥ uvācha | "pibetām Āsvinau somam bhavadbhiḥ sahitāv ubhau | ubhāv etāv api surau sūryya-puttrau sureśvara | 7310. Kriyatām mad-vacho devūḥ yathā vai samudāhṛitam | etad vaḥ kurvatām śreyo bhaved naitad akurvatām" | Indraḥ uvācha | "Āsvibhyām saha somaṁ vai na pāsyāmi dvijottama | pibantv anye yathākāmaṁ nāham pātum ihotsahe" | Chyavanaḥ uvācha | "na chet karishyasi vacho mayoktam balu-sūdana | mayā pramathitāḥ sadyaḥ somam pāsyasi vai makhe" | tataḥ karma samārabdham hitāya sahasā 'śvinoḥ | Chyavanena tato mantrair abhībhūtāḥ surā bhavan | tat tu karma samārabdham drishṭvendraḥ krodha-mūrclhitāḥ | udyamya vipulaṁ śailaṁ Chyavanam samupādravat | 7315. Tathā rajreṇa bhagavān amarśhākula-lochanāḥ | tam ūpatantaṁ drishṭvaira Chyavanasya tapasā 'nritaḥ | adbhīḥ siktvā 'stambhayat taṁ sa-rajraṁ saha-parvatam | athendrasya mahāghoraṁ so 'sṛjāt śatrum eva hi | Mayāṁ nāmāhuti-mayaṁ vyādītāsyam mahāmuniḥ | . . . 7319. Jihvā-mūlāsthitās tasya sarve devūḥ sa-rāsavāḥ | tiner āsyam anupraptāḥ yathā matsyāḥ mahūrṇave | te sammantrya tato deva Mudasyāsyā samīpagāḥ | abruvan sahitāḥ Sakram prañamāsmāi dvijūṭaye | Āsvibhyām saha somaṁ cha pibāma vigata-jvarāḥ | tataḥ sa prañataḥ Śukraś chakūra Chyavanasya tat | Chyavanaḥ kṛitavān etāv Āsvinau soma-pūyinau | tataḥ pratyūharat karma Madam cha vyabhajad muniḥ |*

"Having given a promise to that effect, Chyavana applied, along with the other gods, to Indra, to allow the Āsvins to partake in the soma juice. Indra answered, 'How can they become drinkers of the soma, seeing they are reviled by us, and are not on an equality with the gods? We do not wish to drink soma in their company; but we shall accede to your wishes in any other respect.' Chyavana repeats his request, and urges that the Āsvins also are gods, and the offspring of the Sun. 7310. He adds that it will be well for the gods if they accede to this

demand, and ill if they do not. Indra rejoins that the other gods may drink with the *Āśvins* if they please, but he cannot bring himself to do it. Chyavana retorts that if he does not, he shall be chastised by the sage, and made to drink soma (with them) at the sacrifice. A ceremony was then instantly begun by Chyavana for the benefit of the *Āśvins*; and the gods were vanquished by sacred texts. Indra, seeing this rite commenced, became incensed, uplifted a vast mountain (7315), and rushed with his thunderbolt, and with angry eyes, on Chyavana. The sage, however, sprinkling him with water, arrested him with his mountain and thunderbolt. Chyavana then created a fearful open-mouthed monster, called Mada, formed of the substance of the oblation," who is further described as having teeth and grinders of portentous length, and jaws, one of which enclosed the earth and the other the sky: and the gods, including Indra, are said (7319), "to have been at the root of his tongue [ready to be devoured] like fishes in the mouth of a sea monster. Finding themselves in his predicament, the gods took counsel and said to Indra, 'Make salutation to Chyavana, and let us drink soma along with the *Āśvins*, and so escape from our sufferings.' Indra then, making obeisance, granted the demand of Chyavana, who was thus the cause of the *Āśvins* becoming drinkers of the soma. He then performed the ceremony, and clove Mada to pieces."

Does this legend mean that this rishi of the Bhṛigu family was the first to introduce the *Āśvins* within the circle of the Arian worship?

Compare the passages from the *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa* iv. 1, 5, 1 ff., and from the *Vanaparvan* of the *M. Bh.* verses 10316 ff. quoted in my "Contributions to a knowledge of the Vedic theogony and mythology," No. II., in the *Journ. R. A. S.*, for 1866, pp 11 ff.; *Ind. St.* i. 188, and the *Āśvamedhika-parvan* of the *M. Bh.*, verses 249 ff., there referred to. The *Āśvins* are, in different passages of the *Rig-veda*, as iii. 58, 7, 9; viii. 8, 5; viii. 35, 7-10, invited to drink the soma-juice.

Vāyu relates to Arjuna yet one more instance of the irresistible power of the Brāhmans:

7327. *Madasyāsyam anuprāptāḥ yadā sendrūḥ divaukasaḥ | tadaiva Chyavaneneha hṛitā teshāṃ vasundharā | ubhau lokau hṛitau matvā te devāḥ duḥkhitāḥ bhrīṣam | śokārttās cha mahātmāno Brahmāṇaṃ śaraṇaṃ yayuh | devāḥ ūchuḥ | Madasya-vyatisiktānāṃ asmākaṃ loka-pūjita | Chyavanena hṛitā bhūmiḥ Kapaiś chaiva divam prabho | Brahmā vācha |*

7330. *Gachhadhvaṁ saraṇaṁ viprān āsu sendrāḥ divaukasaḥ | prasādyā tāt ubhau lokāu avāpsyatha yathā purā | te yayuḥ saraṇaṁ viprān ūchus te “kān jayāmahe” | ity uktās te dvijān prāhur “jayateha Kapān” iti | “bhūgatān hi vijetāro vayam” ity abruvan “dvijāḥ” | tataḥ karma samārabdhām brāhmaṇaiḥ Kapa-nāsanam | tat śrutvā preshito dūto brāhmaṇebhyo Dhanī Kapaiḥ | bhū-gatān brāhmaṇān āha Dhanī Kapa-vacho yathā | “bhavadbhiḥ sadṛśiṣāḥ sarve Kapāḥ kim iha varttate | sarve veda-vidāḥ prājñāḥ sarve cha kratu-yājinaḥ |* 7335. *Sarve satyavratās chaiva sarve tulyāḥ maharshibhiḥ | śrīś chaiva ramataiteshu dhūrayanti śriyaṁ cha te | . . .* 7339. *Etaiś chūnyaiś cha bahubhir guṇair yuktān kathāṁ Kapān |* 7340. *Vijeshyatha nivarttadhvaṁ nirvṛttānāṁ śubhaṁ hi vaḥ” | Brāhmaṇāḥ ūchuḥ | Kapān vayaṁ vijeshyāmo ye devās te vayaṁ smṛitāḥ | tasmād badhyāḥ Kapā ’smākam Dhanin yāhi yathāgatam | Dhanī gatvā Kapān āha “na no viprāḥ priyankarāḥ | gṛhītvā ’strāṇy atho viprān Kapāḥ sarve samādravan | samudagra-dhvajān dṛśiṣṭvā Kapān sarve dvijātayaḥ | vyasrijan jvalitān agnīn Kapānām prāṇa-nāsanān | brahma-sṛiṣṭvāḥ havyabhujāḥ Kapān hatvā sanātanaḥ | nabhasīva yathā ’bhrāṇi vyarājanta narādhipa |* *Īatvā vai dānavān devāḥ sarve sambhūya saṁyuge | tenābhyajānan hi tadā brāhmaṇair nihatān Kapān | athāgamyā mahātejūḥ Nārado ’kathayad vibho | yathā hatāḥ mahābhūgaiś tejasā brāhmaṇaiḥ Kapāḥ | Nāradasya vacchaḥ śrutvā prītāḥ sarve divaukasaḥ | prasāsaṁsuḥ dvijāṁś chāpi brāhmaṇāṁś cha yāsasvināḥ |*

“When the gods, including Indra, were enclosed within the mouth of Mada, the earth was taken from them by Chyavana. The gods then considering that they had lost both worlds, in their distress resorted to Brahmā, and said, ‘Since we have been swallowed up in the mouth of Mada, the earth has been taken from us by Chyavana, and the heaven by the Kapas.’ Brahmā answered, ‘Go speedily, ye gods, with Indra, to the Brāhmans for help. After propitiating them ye shall regain both worlds.’ They did so, and the Brāhmans, after ascertaining that the gods would themselves deal with those of their enemies who were on earth, began a ceremony for the destruction of the Kapas. The Kapas upon this sent a messenger to the Brāhmans, to say that they themselves were all, like them, skilled in the Vedas, learned, and offerers of sacrifice, all pure in their observances, and all resembling great rishis, etc., etc. How then should the Brāhmans be able to conquer them? It would be more for their interest to desist from the attempt. The Brāhmans,

however, would not be persuaded; and when, in consequence, the Kapas assailed them, they hurled forth fires by which the Kapas were destroyed. The gods themselves conquered the Dānavas, and learning from Nārada what the illustrious Brāhmins had effected, they sang their praises."²⁴⁷

Hearing of all these testimonies to the terrible might of the Brāhmins, Arjuna at length gives in, saying :

7350. *Jivāmy aham brāhmaṇūrthaṁ sarvathā satatam prabho | brahmanyō brāhmaṇebhyaś cha praṇamāmi cha nityaśaḥ | Dattātreya-prasādaś cha mayā prāptam idam balam | loka cha paramā kirttir dharmas cha charito mahān | aho brāhmaṇa-karmāṇi mayā Māruta tattvataḥ | tvayā proktāni kārtsnyena śrutāni prayatena cha | Vāyur uvācha | brāhmaṇān kshātra-dharmena pālayasvendriyāni cha | Bhṛigubhyas te bhayaṁ ghoraṁ tat tu kālād bhaviṣyati |*

"I live altogether and always for the sake of the Brāhmins. I am devoted to the Brāhmins, and do obeisance to them continually. And it is through the favour of Dattātreya (a Brāhman) that I have obtained all this power and high renown, and that I have practised righteousness. Thou hast declared to me truly all the acts of the Brāhmins, and I have listened intently." Vāyu then says to him : "Protect the Brāhmins, fulfilling a Kshattriya's function ; and restrain your senses. A dreadful cause of apprehension impends over you from the Bhṛigus, but it will only take effect after some time." This last remark may have been introduced to bring this story into harmony with the other legend about the destruction of Arjuna and the Kshattriyas.

The narrative, which has just been quoted, is, as I have already stated, preceded by a panegyric of some length pronounced by Bhīṣma on the Brāhmins (verses 7163-7184), of which the following are specimens :

7163. *Brāhmaṇānāṁ paribhavaḥ śādayeḍ api devatāḥ |* 7164. *Te hi lokān imān sarvān dhārayanti manishināḥ |* 7175. *Chandane mala-panke cha bhojane 'bhojane samūḥ | vāso yeshāṁ dukūlaṁ cha śāna-kshaumājīnāni cha |* 7177. *Adaiṣāṁ daivataṁ kuryur daivataṁ vā 'py adaiṣatam | lokān anyān sṛjeyus te lokapālāṁś cha kopitāḥ |* 7179. *Devānāṁ api ye devāḥ kārāṇāṁ kārāṇasya cha |* 7181. *Avidvān brāhmaṇo devaḥ . . . | vidvān bhūyas tato devaḥ pūrṇa-sāgara-sannibhaḥ |*

"The prowess of the Brāhmins can destroy even the gods. 7164.

²⁴⁷ This translation is a good deal condensed.

Those wise beings uphold all these worlds. 7175. To them it is indifferent whether they are perfumed with sandal wood or deformed with mire, whether they eat or fast, whether they are clad in silk, or in sackcloth or skins. 7177. They can turn what is not divine into what is divine, and the converse; and can in their anger create other worlds with their guardians. 7179. They are the gods of the gods; and the cause of the cause. 7181. An ignorant Brāhman is a god, whilst a learned Brāhman is yet more a god, like the full ocean." (Compare the similar eulogies in p. 130, above.)

In the Anuśāsanaparvan, sections 52 ff., we have the story of Paraśurāma, in connection with that of Viśvāmitra, yet once more handled. Yudhishtira says he is very curious to know something more about these two personages :

2718. *Katham esha samutpanno Rāmaḥ satya-parākramaḥ | katham brahmarshi-vaṁśo 'yaṁ kshattrā-dharmā vyajyāta | tad asya sambhavaṁ rājan nikhilenānukirttaya | Kauśikāc cha katham vaṁśāt kshattrād vai brāhmaṇo 'bhavat | aho prabhāvaḥ sumahān āsīd vai sumahātmanaḥ | Rāmasya cha nara-vyūghra Viśvāmitrasya chaiva hi | katham putirān atikramya teshāṁ napṛishv athābhavat | esha doshaḥ sūtān hitvā tat tvaṁ vyākhyātum arhasi |*

"How was this valiant Rāma, descended from the family of a Brāhman-rishi, born with the qualities of a Kshattriya? Tell me the whole story : and how did a Brāhman spring from the Kshattriya race of Kuśika? Great was the might of Rāma, and of Viśvāmitra. How did it happen that, passing over the sons [of Richika and Kuśika], this defect showed itself in their grandsons?"

Then there follows a long dialogue related by Bhīshma as having taken place between king Kuśika and the sage Chyavana. The latter, it seems, "foreseeing that this disgrace was about to befall his race [from connection with the Kuśikas], and entertaining, in consequence, after he had weighed all the good and evil, and the strength and weakness (on either side), the desire of burning up that whole family" (verse 2723. *Etāṁ dosham purā drishṭvā Bhārgavaḥ Chyavanas tadā | āgāminam mahābuddhiḥ sva-vaṁśe muni-sattamaḥ | nischitya manasā sarvaṁ guṇa-dosham balābalaṁ | dagdhu-kāmaḥ kulaṁ sarvaṁ Kuśikānāṁ tapodhanaḥ |*), came to Kuśika. Chyavana is welcomed and treated with great attention, and receives from Kuśika the offer of all his king-

dom, etc. The saint, however, does not requite this honour with corresponding kindness, but makes the king and his wife perform many menial offices, rub his feet, attend while he sleeps, bring him food, and draw him in a chariot, while he lacerates their backs with a goad. All this is submitted to so patiently, that the sage is propitiated, addresses them in kindly tones, and touches their wounded bodies with his godlike hands. After creating a magical golden palace, with all the accompaniments of pleasure (2826 ff.), in order to give them a conception of heaven, (2892 ff.) the sage offers to bestow any boon the king may choose; and to solve any of his doubts. Kuśika asks the reason of the sage's unaccountable procedure. Chyavana answers that he had heard from Brahmā that there would be "a confusion of families in consequence of the hostility of Brāhmans and Kshattriyas, and that a grandson of great glory and heroism would be born to Kuśika" (verse 2878. *Brahma-kshattra-virodhena bhavitā kula-sankarah | pautras te bhavitā rājāns tejo-vīrya-samanvitah* |); that he had intended in consequence to burn up the race of the Kuśikas, but that the king had come so well out of the severe ordeal to which he had been subjected, that the sage had become thoroughly pacified, and would grant the boon which Kuśika desired :

2897. *Bhavishyaty esha te kāmas Kauśikāt Kauśiko dvijah | tritīyam puruṣaṁ tubhyam brāhmaṇatvaṁ gamishyati | vaṁśas te pāṛthiva-śreṣṭha Bhṛigūnām eva tejasā | pautras te bhavitā vipras tapasvī pāvana-dyutiḥ | yaḥ sa-deva-manushyūnām bhayam utpādayishyati* |

"This thy desire shall be fulfilled; from a Kauśika a Kauśika Brāhman shall arise: in the third generation thy race shall attain to Brāhmanhood by the might of the Bhṛigus. Thy son's son shall become a Brāhman, a devotee, splendid as fire, who shall alarm both gods and men." Kuśika being anxious to know how all this was to be brought to pass, Chyavana informs him :

2995. *Bhṛigūnām kshattriyāḥ yājyāḥ nityam etaj janādhipa | te cha bhedaṁ gamishyanti daiva-yuktena hetunā | kshattriyās cha Bhṛigūn sarvān badhishyanti narādhipa | āgarbhād anukṛintanto daiva-danda nīḍitāḥ | tataḥ utpatsyate 'smākaṁ kula-gotra-vivardhanaḥ | Ūro nāma mahāteja jvalanūrka-sama-dyutiḥ | sa trailokya-vināśāya kopāgniṁ janayishyati | mahīm sa-parvata-vanām yaḥ karishyati bhasmasūt | kancit kālān tu vahnīm cha sa eva śamayishyati | samudre vaḍavā-vaktre prak-*

shipya muni-sattamaḥ | 2910. Puttraṁ tasya mahārāja Rīchīkam Bhṛigu-nandanam | śākshāt kriteno dhanur-vedaḥ samupasthāsyate 'nagha | kshattriyānām abhāvāya daiva-yuktena hetunā | sa tu tam pratigrihyaiva puttraṁ sankrāmayishyati | Jamadagnau mahābhūge tapasā bhāvitātmani | sa chāpi Bhṛigu-sārdūlas taṁ vedaṁ dhārayishyati | kulāt tu tava dharmātman kanyām so 'dhigamishyati | udbhāvanārtham bhavato vaṁśasya Bharatarshabha | Gādher duhitaram prūpya pautrīm tava mahātapāḥ | brāhmaṇāṁ kshattriā-dharmūnam puttram utpādayishyati | 2915. Kshattriyaṁ vipra-karmānam Vṛihaspatim icaujasā | Viśvāmitraṁ tava kule Gādheḥ puttraṁ sudhārmikam | tapasā mahatā yuktam pradāsyati mahādyaute | striyau tu kārāṇaṁ tattra parivartte bhavishyataḥ | Pītū-maha-niyogād vai nānyathaitad bhavishyati | tṛtīye puruṣe tubhyam brāhmaṇatram upaishyati | bhavitā traṁ cha sambandhī Bhṛigūnām bhāvitātmanām | 2923. Etat te kathitaṁ sarvaṁ āśeṣeṇa mayā nṛipa | Bhṛigūnām Kuśikānām cha abhisambandha-kārāṇam | yathoktam rishinā chāpi tadā tad abhavad nṛipa | janma Rāmasya cha muner Viśvāmitrasya chaiva hi |

"The Bhṛigus have always been the priests of the Kshattriyas; but these will become hostile to each other for a fated reason. The Kshattriyas shall slay all the Bhṛigus, even to children in the womb, being oppressed by a divine nemesis. Then shall arise the glorious Ūrva,²⁴⁸ like the sun in splendour, who shall augment the glory of our race. He shall create a fire of wrath for the destruction of the three worlds, which shall reduce the earth with its mountains and forests to ashes. After a time he will extinguish the fire, throwing it into the ocean into the mouth of Vaḍavā (the submarine fire). Into his son Rīchīka shall

²⁴⁸ Ūrva is here said (verse 2907) to belong to the race of Chyavana, but whether as a near or remote descendant is not stated. In verse 2910 Rīchīka is said to be the son of Ūrva. In the *Ādiparvan*, verses 2610 ff., the matter is somewhat differently stated: *Ārushī tu Manoh kanyā tasya patnī yaśasvinī | Aurvas tasyūṁ samabhavad ūrum bhitvā mahāyaśūḥ | mahātejāḥ mahāvīryyo bālaḥ eva guṇair yutaḥ | Rīchīkas tasya puttras tu Jamadagnis tato 'bhavat |* "Ārushī, the daughter of Manu, was the wife of the sage (Chyavana); of her was the illustrious Aurva born, having split his mother's thigh. He was great in glory and might, and from his childhood endowed with eminent qualities. Rīchīka was his son, and Rīchīka's was Jamadagni." Here Aurva is said to derive his name from having divided his mother's thigh (*ūru*); and no allusion is made to Ūrva, though the same person appears to be meant. In the passage of the *Anuśāsana-parvan*, however, we have an Ūrva, the father of Rīchīka, whose patronymic will thus be Aurva; as it is, in fact, in the *Vishnu Purāṇa*, as quoted above in p. 352.

enter the entire embodied Dhanur-veda (science of archery), for the destined destruction of the Kshattriyas. This science he shall transmit to his great son Jamadagni, whose mind shall be spiritualized by devotion, and who shall possess that Veda. He (R̥ichika) shall obtain [for his wife] a maiden of thy family, to prolong thy race. This great devotee, wedding thy grand-daughter, the daughter of Gādhi, shall beget a Brāhman (i.e. Paraśurāma), fulfilling the functions of a Kshattriya; (2915) and shall bestow on thy family a Kshattriya who shall perform the functions of a Brāhman, Viśvāmitra, the son of Gādhi, an austere devotee, and glorious as Vṛihaspati. The two wives shall be the cause of this interchange of characters. According to the decree of Brahmā all this shall so happen. Brāhmanhood shall come to thee in the third generation, and thou shalt become connected with the spiritual-minded Bhṛigus." 2923. "Thus (concludes Bhīshma) have I told thee at length the cause of the connection between the Bhṛigus and the Kuśikas. All this was accordingly fulfilled in the births of Paraśurāma and Viśvāmitra."

Is this legend intended to account for a real fact? Was Paraśurāma of a sacerdotal tribe, and yet by profession a warrior, just as Viśvāmitra was conversely of royal extraction, and yet a priest by profession?

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 11, 3 (Wilson, 4to. ed. pp. 416, 417), Arjuna was of the race of Yadu, and the ninth in descent from Haihaya, the great-grandson of that prince. It is there said of him:

Kṛitavīryyād Arjunaḥ sapta-dvīpapatir bāhu-sahasrī jajne yo 'sau bhagavad-aṁsam Atri-kula-prasūtaṁ Dattātreyaḥ khyam ārādhya bāhu-sahasram adharmā-sevā-nivāraṇaṁ dharmena prithivījayaṁ dharmatāś chānupūlanam arātibhyo 'parājayaṁ akhila-jagat-prakhyāta-purushāc cha mṛityum ity etān varān abhilashitavān lebhe cha | tena iyam aśeshā-dvīpavatī prithivī samyak paripālītā | daśa-yajna-sahasraṇy asāv ayajat | tasya cha śloko 'dyūpi gīyate "na nūnaṁ kṛttavīryasya gatiṁ yāsyanti pārthivāḥ | yajnair dānair tapobhir vā praśrayeṇa damena cha" | anashṭa-dravyatū tasya rājye 'bhavat | 4. Evam panchāṣṭi-sahasraṇy abdhūn avyāhatārogya-śrī-bala-parākramo rājyam akarot | Mūhishmatyām dig-vijayā-bhyāgato Narmadā-jalāvagāhana-kṛdā-nipāna-madākulena nyatnenaiva tena aśeṣa-deva-daitya-gandharveṣa-jayodbhūta-madāvalepo 'pi Rāvaṇaḥ paśur iva baddhaḥ svanagaraikānte sthāpitaḥ | 5. Yaḥ panchāṣṭi-varsha-sahasropalakṣaṇa-kālāsane bhagavan-nārāyaṇāṁśena Paraśurāmeṇa

“From Kṛitavīrya sprang Arjuna, who was lord of the seven dvīpas [circular and concentric continents of which the earth is composed], and had a thousand arms. Having worshipped a portion of the divine Being, called Dattātreya, sprung from the race of Atri, he sought and obtained these boons, viz. a thousand arms, the power of restraining wrong by justice, the conquest of the earth, and the disposition to rule it righteously, invincibility by enemies, and death at the hands of a man renowned over the whole world. By him this earth, with all its dvīpas, was perfectly governed. He offered ten thousand sacrifices. To this day this verse is repeated respecting him: ‘No other king shall ever equal Kārtavīrya in regard to sacrifices, liberality, austerities, courtesy, and self-restraint.’ In his reign no property was ever lost. 4. Thus he ruled for eighty-five thousand years with unbroken health, prosperity, strength, and valour. When he was excited by sporting in the Narmadā and by drinking wine, he had no difficulty in binding like a beast Rāvaṇa, who had arrived in Māhishmatī in his career of conquest, and who was filled with arrogance, arising from the pride of victory over all the gods, daityas, and gandharva chiefs, and imprisoning him in a secret place in his capital. At the end of his reign of eighty five thousand years Arjuna was destroyed, by Paraśurāma, who was a portion of the divine Nārāyaṇa.”

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 23, 20-27, assigns to him the same descent, and relates of him nearly the same particulars. Verse 23 says: *Arjunaḥ Kṛitavīryasya sapta-dvīpeśvaro 'bhavat | Dattātreyaṁ Harer aṁśāt prāpta-yoga-mahāguṇaḥ |* “Arjuna was the son of Kṛitavīrya, and ruler of the seven dvīpas. He obtained the great attribute of *Yoga* (supernatural powers arising from devotion) from Dattātreya, who was a portion of Hari,” etc.

The legend of Paraśurāma, as related, is of course fabulous. Not to speak of the miraculous powers which are ascribed to this hero, and the incredible number of the exterminations which he is said to have executed, we cannot even suppose it probable that the Brāhmins should in general have been sufficiently powerful and warlike to overcome the Kshattriyas by force of arms. But the legend may have had some small foundation in fact. Before the provinces of the sacerdotal and military classes were accurately defined, there may have been cases in which ambitious men of the former successfully

aspired to kingly dominion, just as scions of royal races became distinguished as priests and sages. But even without this assumption, the existence of such legends is sufficiently explained by the position which the Brāhmans eventually occupied. With the view of maintaining their own ascendancy over the minds of the chiefs on whose good will they were dependent, and of securing for themselves honour and profit, they would have an interest in working upon the superstitious feelings of their contemporaries by fabricating stories of supernatural punishments inflicted by their own forefathers on their royal oppressors, as well as by painting in lively colours the prosperity of those princes who were submissive to the spiritual order.

CHAPTER V.

RELATION OF THE BRAHMANICAL INDIANS TO THE NEIGHBOURING TRIBES, ACCORDING TO MANU AND THE PURANAS.

I now propose to enquire what account the Indian writers give of the origin of those tribes which were not comprehended in their own polity, but with which, as dwelling within, or adjacent to, the boundaries of Hindustan, their countrymen were, in ancient times, brought into continual and familiar contact.

It appears to have been the opinion of Manu, the great authority in all matters regarding the Hindu religion and institutions in their full development, that there was no original race of men except the four castes of Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras; and that all other nations were derived from these. His own words (x. 4) are these: *Brāhmaṇaḥ kshattriyo vaiśyas trayo varṇāḥ dvijātayaḥ | chaturthaḥ ekajātis tu śūdro nāsti tu pañchamaḥ* | “Three castes, the Brāhman, the Kshattriya, and the Vaiśya, are twice-born; the fourth, the Sūdra, is once-born; and there is no fifth.” On the last clause of this verse Kullūka Bhaṭṭa annotates thus: *Pañchamaḥ punar varṇo nāsti sankirṇa-jātinām tv aśvatara-vad mātā-pitṛi-jāti-vyatirikta-jāty-antaravād na varnatvam | ayaṁ cha jāty-antaropadeśaḥ śāstre saṁvyavaharaṇārthaḥ* | “There is no fifth caste; for caste cannot be predicated of the mixed tribes, from the fact that, like mules, they belong to another species, distinct from that of their father and mother. And this reference, which is made in the Śāstras to castes other than the four, is merely for the sake of convenience and conformity to common usage.”

Accordingly, in the following description which Manu gives in the same chapter of the rise of the inferior castes, they are all, even the

very lowest, such as Nishādas and Chāṇḍālas, derived from the mixture the four so-called original castes. Thus, in verse 8 : *Brāhmaṇād vaiśya-kanyāyām ambashṭha nāma jāyate | nishādaḥ śūdra-kanyāyām yaḥ parāśava uchhyate* | "From a Brāhman father and a Vaiśya mother springs an Ambashṭha : from a Brāhman father and a Śūdra mother is born a Nishāda, called also Parāśava."¹ Again, in verse 12 . *Śūdrād āyogavaḥ kshattū chāṇḍālaś chādhamo nṛiṇām | vaiśya-rājanya-viprāsu jāyante varṇa-sankarāḥ* | "From a Śūdra, by women of the Vaiśya, Kshattriya, and Brāhman castes are born those mixed classes, the Āyogava, the Kshattṛi, and the Chāṇḍāla, lowest of men." Again, in verse 20 : *Dvijātayaḥ savarṇāsu janayanty avratāṁs tu yān | tān sāvitṛi-paribhrashtān vrātyāḥ iti vinirdiśet* | "Persons whom the twice-born beget on women of their own classes, but who omit the prescribed rites, and have abandoned the gāyatrī, are to be designated as Vrātyas."² In the next three verses the inferior tribes, which spring from the Brāhman Vrātya, the Kshattriya Vrātya, and the Vaiśya Vrātya respectively, are enumerated.

In verses 43 and 44 it is stated : *Sanaḥkais tu kriyā-lopād imāḥ*

¹ It does not appear how the account of the origin of the Nishāda race from king Vena, given above in pp. 301 and 303, can be reconciled with this theory of Manu ; unless recourse be had to the explanation that that story relates to the Svāyambhuva Manvantara. But Manu's narrative seems to refer to the same period. See above, p. 39. If the Vedic expressions *panchajanāḥ* and the other corresponding phrases signifying "the five tribes" be rightly interpreted of the "four castes, and the Nishādas," we might understand this as intimating that the Nishādas had at one time been regarded as a distinct race. But the phrase is variously understood by the old Vedic commentators ; as has been shewn above, p. 177.

² Manu says, ii. 38 f. : *Ā-shodasād brāhmaṇasya sāvitṛi-nātivarttate | ā-dvāviṁśat kshattrabhandhor ā-chaturviṁśater viśaḥ | atah ūrdhham trayo'py ete yathā-kālam asaṁskṛitāḥ | sāvitṛi-patitāḥ vrātyāḥ bhavanty āryya-nigarhitāḥ* | "The gāyatrī should not, in the case of a Brāhman, be deferred beyond the sixteenth year ; nor in the case of a Kshattriya beyond the twenty-second ; nor in that of a Vaiśya beyond the twenty-fourth. After these periods youths of the three classes, who have not been invested, become fallen from the gāyatrī, Vrātyas, condemned by respectable men (Āryyas)." In the following verse of the Mahābhārata, Anuśāsanaparvan, line 2621, a different origin is ascribed to the Vrātyas : *Chāṇḍālo vrātya-vaidyau cha brāhmaṇyām kshattriyāsu cha | vaiśyāyām chaiva śūdrasya lakshyante⁶ pasādīs trayah* | "The three outcaste classes are the Chāṇḍāla, the Vrātya, and the Vaidya, begotten by a Śūdra on females of the Brāhman, Kshattriya, and Vaiśya castes respectively." A Vrātya, therefore, according to this account, is the son of a Śūdra man and Kshattriya woman. On the Vrātyas, see Weber's Indische Studien, i. 33, 52, 138, 139, 445, 446, etc.

kshattriya-jātayaḥ | vṛishalatvaṁ gatūḥ loke brāhmanādarśanena cha | Paundrakās choḍra-draviḍāḥ Kāmbojāḥ Yavanāḥ Sakāḥ | Pāradaḥ Pahlavās Chināḥ Kirātāḥ Daradāḥ Khasāḥ | “The following tribes of Kshattriyas have gradually sunk into the state of Vṛishalas (outcasts), from the extinction of sacred rites, and from having no communication with Brāhmins; viz. Paundrakas, Oḍras, Draviḍas, Kāmbojas, Yavanas, Sakas, Pāradas, Pahlavas, Chinas, Kirātas, Daradas, and Khasās.”

The same thing is affirmed in the Mahābhārata, Anuśāsanaparvan, verses 2103 f.: *Sakāḥ Yavana-kāmbojās tās tāḥ kshattriya-jātayaḥ | vṛishalatvam parigatūḥ brāhmanānām adarśanāt | Draviḍās cha Kalindās cha Pulindās chāpy Uśīnarāḥ | Kolisarpāḥ Māhishakās tās tāḥ kshattriya-jātayaḥ ityādi* | “These tribes of Kshattriyas, viz. Sakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Drāviḍas, Kalindas, Pulindas, Uśīnaras, Kolisarpas, and Māhishakas, have become Vṛishalas from seeing no Brāhmins.” This is repeated in verses 2158–9, where the following additional tribes are named: Mekalas, Lāṭas, Konvaśiras, Śaundīkas, Darvas, Chauras, Śavaras, Barbaras, and Kirātas, and the cause of degradation is, as in verse 2103, restricted to the absence of Brāhmins. (Then follow the lines (2160 ff.) in glorification of the Brāhmins, already quoted in p. 130.)

The Yavanas are said in the Mahābhārata, Ādiparvan, section 85, verse 3533, “to be descended from Turvasu, the Vaibhojas from Druhyu, and the Mlechha tribes from Anu” (*Yados tu Yādarāḥ jātās Turvasor Yavanāḥ smṛitāḥ | Druhyoḥ sutās tu Vaibhojāḥ Anos tu mlechha-jātayaḥ* |). Is it meant by this that the Yavanas are not to be reckoned among the Mlechhas? Their descent from Turvasu is not however, necessarily in conflict with the assertion of the authorities above quoted, that they are degraded Kshattriyas.

I shall not attempt to determine who the Yavanas, and other tribes mentioned in the text, were.

The verse which succeeds that last quoted from Manu is the following: 45. *Mukha-bāhūru-paj-jānām yāḥ loke jātayo vahiḥ | mlechha-vāchaś chāryya-vāchaś sarve te dasyavaḥ smṛitāḥ* | “Those tribes which are outside of the classes produced from the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet, [of Brāhmā, i.e. Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras,] whether they speak the language of the Mlechhas or of the Āryas, are called Dasyus.” The interpretation to be given to this verse turns

upon the sense which we assign to "outside" (*vāhiḥ*). Does it mean that the Dasyus were of a stock originally distinct from that of the four primeval castes, and therefore altogether separate from those tribes which sprang from the intermixture of those four castes, or which, by the neglect of sacred rites, apostatized from their communion? Or does it merely mean that the Dasyus became eventually excluded from the fellowship of the four castes? If the latter sense be adopted, then Dasyu will be little else than a general term embracing all the tribes enumerated in verses 43 and 44. The commentator Kullūka understands the word in the latter sense. His words are: *Brāhmaṇa-kshattriya-vaiśya-sūdrāṇāṃ kṛiyā-lopādīnā yāḥ jātayo vāhyāḥ jātāḥ mlechha-bhūshā-yuktāḥ āryya-bhūshopetāḥ vā te dasyavaḥ sarve smṛitāḥ* | "All the tribes, which by loss of sacred rites, and so forth, have become outcasts from the pale of the four castes, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras; whether they speak the language of the Mlechhas or of the Āryas, are called Dasyus." His view is confirmed by a short passage in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, quoted above (p. 358), where Viśvāmitra, speaking to his sons, says: "Let your descendants possess the furthest ends (of the country)," and the author of the Brāhmaṇa adds: "These are the numerous border-tribes, the Andhras, Puṇḍras, Sabaras, Pulindas, Mūtibas. Most of the Dasyus are sprung from Viśvāmitra." Here the writer of this ancient Brāhmaṇa connects together certain tribes named either in Manu, or in the Mahābhārata, as degraded Kshattriyas, with the appellation Dasyu, thus intimating that the latter was a general name embracing all the former. This view is further confirmed by the following lines of the Mahābhārata, book ii. verses 1031-2: *Daradān saha Kāmbojair ajayat Pākāśāsaniḥ | prāgut-tarāṇ dīśāṇ ye cha vasanty āsṛitya Dasyavaḥ* | "The son of Indra conquered the Daradas with the Kāmbojas, and the Dasyus who dwell in the north-east region;" and still more by the annexed verses from the Droṇaparvan, of the same epic poem, 4747: *Kāmbojānām sahasraiścha Sakānām cha viśūmpate | S'avarānām Kirātānām Varvarānām tathaiiva cha | agamya-rūpām prithivīm māmśa-śoṇita-karddamām | kṛitavāṁś tattra S'aineyaḥ kshapayaṁś tāvakam balam | Dasyūnām sa-śīrastrāṇaiḥ śrobhir lūna-mūrdhajāiḥ | dirgha-kūrchair mahī kīrṇā vivarhair aṇḍajair iva* | "Saineya, destroying thy host, converted the beautiful earth into a mass of mud with the flesh and blood of thousands of Kāmbojas,

Sakas, Sabaras, Kirātas, and Varvaras. The ground was covered with the shorn and hairless but long-bearded heads of the Dasyus, and their helmets, as if with birds bereft of their plumes." Here the word Dasyu is evidently a general term for the tribes named just before. Some of these same tribes had previously been called Mlechhas in verses 4716, 4723, and 4745. See also Sabhāp. 1198 f.

There is a passage in the Sāntiparvan, section 65, lines 2429 ff, which is worth quoting, as it shows that the Brāhmins of that age regarded the Dasyus as owing allegiance to Brahmanical institutions. King Māndhātṛi had performed a sacrifice in the hope of obtaining a vision of Viṣṇu; who accordingly appeared to him in the form of Indra (verse 2399). The following is a part of their conversation. Māndhātṛi asks :

2429. *Yavanāḥ Kirātāḥ Gāndhārās Chīnāḥ Savara-varvarāḥ | Śakās
Tushārāḥ Kankās cha Pahlavās chāndhra-madrakāḥ | 2430. Pauṇḍrāḥ
Pulindāḥ Ramaṭhāḥ Kāmbojās chaiva sarvaśaḥ | brahma-kshattrā-prasū-
tās cha vaiśyāḥ śūdrās cha mānavāḥ | kathāṁ dharmāṁś charishyanti
sarve vishaya-vāsinaḥ | mad-vidhais cha kathāṁ sthāpyāḥ sarve vai dasyu-
jīvinaḥ | etad ichhāmy ahaṁ śrotum bhagavaṁś tad bravīhi me | tvam ban-
dhu-bhūto hy asmākaṁ kshattriyānāṁ sureśvara | Indrāḥ uvācha | mātū-
pitror hi śuśrūṣhū karttavyā sarva-dasyubhiḥ | āchāryya-guru-śuśrūṣhū
tathaitvāśrama-vāsinām | bhūmipānām cha śuśrūṣhū karttavyā sarva-dasyu-
bhiḥ | veda-dharma-kriyās chaiva teshāṁ dharmo vidhiyate | 2435. Pitrī-
yajñās tathā kūpāḥ prapās cha śayanāni cha | dānāni cha yathā-kālāṁ
devejebhyo viśṛjjet sadā | ahimsā satyam akrodho vṛtti-dāyānupālanaṁ |
bharanam puttra-dūrānām śaucham adroha eva cha | dakṣiṇā sarva-
yajñānām dātavyā bhūtim ichhatā | pākayajñāḥ mahārhas cha dātavyāḥ
sarva-dasyubhiḥ | etāny evamprakārāṇi vihītāni purā 'nagha | sarva-
lokasya karmāni karttavyāniha pūrthiva | Mandhātā uvācha | dṛśiyante
mānushaḥ loka sarva-varṇeṣhu Dasyavaḥ | lingūntare varttamānāḥ āśra-
meṣhu chatursho api | Indrāḥ uvācha | 2440. Vinashṭvāyāṁ danḍa-nītyāṁ
rāja-dharme nirākṛite | sampramuhyanti bhūtāni rāja-daurātmyato 'na-
gha | asankhyātāḥ bhaviṣhyanti bhikṣhavo linginas tathā | āśramānāṁ
vikalpās cha nirṛite'smin kṛite yuge | aśṛṇvantāḥ purāṇānāṁ dharmā-
nām paramāḥ gatīḥ | utpatham pratipatsyante kāma-manyu-samīritāḥ |*

“The Yavanas, Kirātas, Gāndhāras, Chīnas, Suvaras, Varvaras, Sakas, Tushāras, Kanḡkas, Pahlavas, Andhras, Madras, Pauṇḍras, Pu-

lindas, Ramathas, Kāmbojas, men sprung from Brāhmanas, and from Kshattriyas, persons of the Vaiśya and Sūdra castes—how shall all these people of different countries practise duty, and what rules shall kings like me prescribe for those who are living as Dasyus? Instruct me on these points; for thou art the friend of our Kshattriya race.’ Indra answers: ‘All the Dasyus should obey their parents, their spiritual directors, persons practising the rules of the four orders, and kings. It is also their duty to perform the ceremonies ordained in the Vedas. They should sacrifice to the Pitṛis, construct wells, buildings for the distribution of water, and resting places for travellers, and should on proper occasions bestow gifts on the Brāhmanas. They should practise innocence, veracity, meekness, purity, and inoffensiveness; should maintain their wives and families; and make a just division of their property. Gifts should be distributed at all sacrifices by those who desire to prosper. All the Dasyus should offer costly pāka oblations. Such duties as these, which have been ordained of old, ought to be observed by all people.’ Māndhātṛi observes: ‘In this world of men, Dasyus are to be seen in all castes, living, under other garbs, even among men of the four orders (*āśramas*).’ Indra replies: ‘When criminal justice has perished, and the duties of government are disregarded, mankind become bewildered through the wickedness of their kings. When this Kṛita age has come to a close, innumerable mendicants and hypocrites shall arise, and the four orders become disorganized. Disregarding the excellent paths of ancient duty, and impelled by passion and by anger, men shall fall into wickedness,’ etc. In these last lines it is implied that the Brahmanical polity of castes and orders was fully developed in the Kṛita [or golden] age. This idea, however, is opposed to the representations which we find in some though not in all other passages. See above, the various texts adduced in the first chapter.

In the Vishṇu Purāṇa, Bhāratavarsha (India) is said to “have its eastern border occupied by the Kirātas; and the western by the Yavanas; while the middle is inhabited by Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, engaged in their several fixed occupations of sacrifice, war, trade, etc.” (Vishṇu Purāṇa, ii. 3, 7. *Pūrve Kirātāḥ yasyānte paśchime Yavanāḥ sthitāḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ madhye sūdrāḥ cha bhāgaśaḥ | ijjā-yuddha-vanijyādyair varttayanto vyavasthithāḥ* |).

Manu's account of the origin of the Yavanas, Sakas, Kāmbojas, etc., corresponds with the tenor of the following story, which we find in the fourth book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, sect. 3. Bāhu, the seventh king in descent from Hariśchandra (see above, p. 379) was overcome by the Haihāyas and Tāla-janghas,³ and compelled to fly with his queens to the forests, where he died. After his death one of his wives gave birth to a son, who received the name of Sagara. When he had grown up, the youth learnt from his mother all that had befallen his father.

Para. 18. *Tataḥ pitṛi-rājya-haraṇāmarśhito Haihaya-Tāla-janghādī-badhāya pratijñam akarot prāyaśaścha Haihayān jaghāna | S'aka-Yavana-Kāmboja-Pārada-Pahlavāḥ hanyamānās tat-kula-gurum Vaśiṣṭham śaraṇam yauḥ |* 19. *Atha etān Vaśiṣṭho jīvan-mṛitakān kṛtvā Sagaram āha "vatsa vatsa alam ebhir ati-jīvan-mṛitakair anusritaiḥ |* 20. *Ete cha mayā eva tvat-pratijñā-paripūlanūya nija-dharma-dvi-ja-sanga-parityāgam kṛitāḥ |* 21. *Sa "tathā" iti tad guru-vachanam abhinandya teshāṃ veshānyatvam akārayat | Yavanān apamunḍita-śiraśo 'rddhamunḍān Sakān pralamba-keśān Pārādān Pahlavāṃś cha śmaśru-dharān niḥ-svādhyāya-vāśhaṭkārān etān anyāṃś cha kṣhattriyaṇ chakāra | te cha nija-dharma-parityāgād brāhmaṇaiś parityaktāḥ mlechhatām yauḥ |*

"Being vexed at the loss of his paternal kingdom, he vowed to exterminate the Haihāyas and other enemies who had conquered it. Accordingly he destroyed nearly all the Haihāyas. When the Sakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas, and Pahlavas were about to undergo a similar fate, they had recourse to Vaśiṣṭha, the king's family-priest, who interposed in their behalf in these words addressed to Sagara, representing them as virtually dead: 'You have done enough, my son, in the way of pursuing these men, who are as good as dead. In order that your vow might be fulfilled, I have compelled them to abandon the duties of their caste, and all association with the twice-born.' Agreeing to his spiritual guide's proposal, Sagara compelled these tribes to alter their costume. He made the Yavanas shave their heads, the Sakas shave half their heads, the Pāradas wear long hair, and the Pahlavas beards. These and other Kshatriyas he deprived of the

³ See Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, 4to. edit., p. 416 and 418 note. In the note to p. 418 the Āvantyas are mentioned, on the authority of the Vāyu Purāṇa, as being a branch of the Haihāyas. In Manu, x. 21, the Āvantyas are said to be descended from Brāhmaṇa Vrūtyas.

study of the Vedas, and the vashatkāra. In consequence of their abandonment of their proper duties, and of their desertion by the Brāhmins, they became Mlechhas."

This story is also related in the Harivaṃśa, from which I extract the concluding part of the narrative :

773. *Aurvas tu jātakarmādi tasya kṛtvā mahātmanah | adhyāpya vedān akhilān tato 'stram pratyapūdayat | āgneyam tu mahābāhur amarair api dussaham | sa tenāstra-balenājau balena cha samanvitaḥ | Haihayān nijaghānāsu kruddho Rudraḥ paśūn iwa | ājahāra cha lokeshu kīrtīm kīrtimatām varaḥ | tataḥ Sakān sa-yavanān Kāmbojān Pāradāms tathā | Pahlavāms chaiva niśśeshān karttū vyavasitaḥ kila | te badhyamānāḥ vireṇa Sagareṇa mahātmanā | Vasiṣṭhām śaraṇam gatvā pranipetur manīṣinam | Vasiṣṭhas tv atha tām dṛṣṭvā samayena mahādutyaiḥ | Sagaram vṛayāmāsa teshām dattvā 'bhyam tadā | Sagaraḥ svām pratijnām cha guror vākyam niśāmya cha | dharmam jaghāna teshām vai veśānyatvam chakāra ha | arddham Sakānām śirasō mundayitvā vyasarjayat | Yavanānām śiraḥ sarvaṁ Kāmbojānām tathaiva cha | Pāradāḥ mukta-keśāscha Pahlavāḥ śmaśru-dhārīṇaḥ | niśvādhyāya-vashatkārāḥ kṛtās tena mahātmanā | Sakāḥ Yavana-kāmbojāḥ Pāradāḥ Pahlavās tathā | Koli-sarpāḥ sa-Mahishāḥ Dārvas Cholāḥ sa-Keralāḥ | sarve te kṣattriyās tāṇi teshām dharmo nirākṛitaḥ | Vasiṣṭha-vachanād rājan Sagareṇa mahātmanā |*

"Aurva having performed Sagara's natal and other rites, and taught him all the Vedas, then provided him with a fiery missile, such as even the gods could not withstand. By the power of this weapon, and accompanied by an army, Sagara, incensed, speedily slew the Haihayas, as Rudra slaughters beasts; and acquired great renown throughout the world. He then set himself to exterminate the Sakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas, and Pahlavas. But they, when on the point of being slaughtered by Sagara, had recourse to the sage Vasiṣṭha, and fell down before him. Vasiṣṭha beholding them, by a sign restrained Sagara, giving them assurance of protection. Sagara, after considering his own vow, and listening to what his teacher had to say, destroyed their caste (dharma), and made them change their costumes. He released the Sakas, after causing the half of their heads to be shaven;—and the Yavanas and Kāmbojas, after having had their heads entirely shaved. The Pāradas were made to wear

long hair, and the Pahlavas to wear beards. They were all excluded from the study of the Vedas, and from the vashatkāra. The Śakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas, Pahlavas, Kolisarpas, Mahishas, Dārvas, Gholas, and Keralas had all been Kshattriyas; but were deprived of their social and religious position by the great Sagara, according to the advice of Vaśiṣṭha." Other tribes are mentioned in the following line who seem to have undergone the same treatment.

It would appear from this legend, as well as from the quotations which preceded it, that the Epic and Puranic writers believed all the surrounding tribes to belong to the same original stock with themselves; though they, at the same time, erroneously imagined that these tribes had fallen away from the Brahmanical institutions; thus assigning to their own polity an antiquity to which it could in reality lay no claim. Any further explanations on these points, however, must be sought in the second volume of this work.

In the passages quoted above, pp. 391, 393, and 398 from the Mahābhārata and Rāmāyaṇa, it is stated that Śakas, Yavanas, Pahlavas, etc., were created by Vaśiṣṭha's wonder-working cow, in order to repel the aggression of Viśvāmitra. It does not, however, appear that it is the object of that legend to represent this miraculous creation as the origin of those tribes. The narrators, if they had any distinct meaning, may not have intended anything more than that the cow called into existence large armies, of the same stock with particular tribes previously existing.

It is not very easy to say whether it is only the inhabitants of Bhāratavarsha (viz. that portion of Jambudvīpa which answers to India) whom the Puranic writers intend to represent as deriving their origin from the four primeval Indian castes. Perhaps the writers themselves had no very clear ideas. At all events the conditions of life are different in the two cases. The accounts which these writers give us of the other divisions of Jambudvīpa, and of the other Dvīpas, or continents, of which they imagined the earth to be composed, and their respective inhabitants, will be considered in the next chapter.

CHAPTER VI.

PURANIC ACCOUNTS OF THE PARTS OF THE EARTH
EXTERIOR TO BHĀRATAVARSHA, OR INDIA.

It will clearly appear from the contents of the present chapter that the authors or compilers of the Purāṇas in reality knew nothing of any part of the world except that immediately around them. Whenever they wander away beyond their own neighbourhood, they at once lose themselves in a misty region of fiction, and give the most unbridled scope to their fantastic imaginations.

The following is the account given in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa regarding the divisions of the earth, and their inhabitants. Priyavrata, son of Śvāyambhuva, or the first Manu (see above, pp. 65 and 72) who is separated from the present time by an enormous interval (see pp. 43 ff. and 298, above), "distributed the seven dvīpas,¹ of which the earth is composed, among seven of his sons" (ii. 1, 7. *Priyavrato dadau teshām saptānām muni-sattama | vibhajya sapta dvīpāni Maitreya sumahāt-manām*).

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa gives us the following account, v. 1. 30. *Tad anabhinandan sama-javena rathena jyotirmayena rajanīm api dinām kari-shyāmi iti saptakṛitvas taranīm anuparyyagrāmad dvitīyaḥ iva patan-gaḥ | [evaṁ kurvāṇam Priyavratam āgatya Chaturānanas "tavādhikāro 'yaṁ na bhavati" iti nivārayāmāsa]* (The words in brackets are not in the Bombay edition, but are taken from Burnouf's.) 31. *Ye vai u ha tad-ratha-charaṇa-nemi-kṛita-parikhātās te sapta sindhavaḥ āsan yataḥ eva kṛitāḥ sapta bhūvo dvīpāḥ* |² "Priyavrata, being dissatisfied that only

¹ The original division of the earth into seven continents is assigned to Nārāyaṇa in the form of Brahmā; see above, pp. 51 and 76.

² In this passage we find the particles *vai*, *u*, *ha*, occurring all together as they do in the Vedic hymns and Brāhmaṇas. This circumstance might seem to suggest the

half the earth was illuminated at one time by the solar rays, "followed the sun seven times round the earth in his own flaming car of equal velocity, like another celestial orb, resolved to turn night into day. [Brahmā, however, came and stopped him, saying this was not his province.] The ruts which were formed by the motion of his chariot wheels were the seven oceans. In this way the seven continents of the earth were made."

The same circumstance is alluded to at the commencement of the 16th section of the same book, where the king says to the rishi: verse 2. *Tattrāpi Priyavṛata-ratha-charaṇa-parikkhātāḥ saptabhiḥ sapta-sindhavaḥ upakṛiptāḥ | yataḥ etasyāḥ sapta-dvīpa-viśeṣa-vikalpas trayā bhagavan khalu sūchitāḥ |* "The seven oceans were formed by the seven ruts of the wheels of Priyavṛata's chariot; hence, as you have indicated, the earth has become divided into seven different continents."

It is clear that this account given by the Bhāgavata Purāṇa of the manner in which the seven oceans and continents were formed does not agree with the description in the Vishṇu Purāṇa as quoted above in p. 51.

These seven continents are called "Jāmbū dvīpa, Plakṣha dvīpa, Sāl-possibility of the passage, or its substance, being derived from some of the Brāhmanas (to which, as we have seen, p. 155 note, the compiler of this Purāṇa was in the habit of resorting for his materials); but the style has otherwise nothing of an archaic caste, and I am not aware that the dvīpas are mentioned in any of the Brāhmanas. It is also remarkable that the words sapta sindhavaḥ are here used for "seven oceans." This phrase occurs several times in the Vedas. For instance, it is to be found in the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā (of the Yajur-veda), 38, 26, *yāvati dyāvā-prithivī yāvach cha sapta sindhavo vitasthīre |* "As wide as are the earth and sky, and as far as the seven oceans extend." The commentator Mahādhara understands the latter in the Puranic sense, as the oceans of milk, etc. (*sapta sindhavaḥ sapta samudrāḥ kṣhīrādīyāḥ*). The hemistich I have quoted from the Vāj. Sanhitā occurs somewhat modified, and in a different connexion, in the Atharva-veda, iv. 6, 2. The same phrase, sapta sindhavaḥ, is to be found also in several places in the first Book of the Rīg-veda. (See Benfey's Glossary to Sāma-veda, sub voce *saptan*.) In Rīg-veda i. 32, 12, it is said to Indra *avāṣṛjāḥ saritave sapta sindhūn |* "Thou hast let loose the seven rivers to flow." Sāyaṇa understands this of the Ganges and other rivers, seven in number, mentioned in the Rīg Veda, x. 75, 5: *imam me Gange Yamune Sarasvatī S'atudrī stomañ sachatū Parushṇya |* "Receive this my hymn with favour, o Gāṅgā, Yamunā, Sarasvatī, S'atudrī, with the Parushṇī, etc.;" but in this distich ten rivers in all are mentioned. (See Wilson's note to Rīg-veda, i. 32, 12, vol. i. p. 88, of his translation). See also hymns 34, 8; 35, 8; 71, 7; and 102, 2, of the first, and 58, 12, and 85, 1, of the eighth Books of the Rīg-veda. The "seven rivers" of the Veda are, according to Professor Müller (Chips from a German Workshop, vol. i. p. 63), "the Indus, the five rivers of the Punjab and the Sarasvatī."

17 The seven supposed continents, or rather secretions here? nali dvīpa, Kusa dvīpa, Krauncha dvīpa, Sāka dvīpa, and Pushkara dvīpa. They are surrounded severally by seven great seas, of salt water, sugar-cane juice, wine, clarified butter, curds, milk, and fresh water" (V.P. ii. 2, *Jambū-plakshāhvayau dvīpau S'ālmaliś chāparo dvīja | Kusāḥ Kraunchas tathā S'ākāḥ Pushkaras chaiva saptamah | 5. Ete dvīpāḥ samudrais u sapta saptabhir āvritāḥ | lavanekshu-surā-sarpir-dadhi-dugdha-jalaih samam |*). Jambu dvīpa is in the centre of all these continents (Wilson, vol. ii. p. 110). It fell to the lot of Agnīdhra, son of Priyavrata, who again divided it among his nine sons (Wilson, ii. 101). In the centre of Jambu dvīpa is the golden mountain Meru, 84,000 yojanas high, and crowned by the great city of Brāhmā (ibid. p. 118). There are in this continent six cross-ranges of boundary-mountains, those of Himavat = Himādri, or Himālaya), Hemakūṭa, and Nishadha lying south of Meru; and those of Nīla, Śveta, and Śringin, situated to the northward. Of these, Nishadha and Nīla are the nearest to Meru, while Himavat and Śringin are at the south and north extremities. The nine Varshas or divisions of Jambu dvīpa, separated by these and other ranges, are Bhārata (India), south of the Himavat mountains, and the southernmost of all; then (2) Kimpurusha, (3) Harivarsha, (4) Ilāvṛita, (5) Rāmyaka, (6) Hiraṇmaya, and (7) Uttara Kuru, each to the north of the last; while (8) Bhadrāsya and (9) Ketumāla lie respectively to the east and west of Ilāvṛita, the central region. Bhārata Varsha, and Uttara Kuru, as well as Bhadrāsya and Ketumāla,³ are situated on the exterior of the mountain ranges. (Wilson, ii. pp. 114-116, and 123.) The eight Varshas to the north of Bhārata Varsha (or India) are thus described :

V.P. ii. 1, 11. *Yāni Kimpurushādīni varshāṇy ashtau mahāmuno | teshāṃ svābhāviki siddhiḥ sukha-prāyā hy ayatnataḥ | 12. Viparyyayo*

* The Mahābhārata tells us, Bhīshmaparvan, verses 227-8, in regard to the Varsha of Ketumāla : *āyur daśa sahasrāṇi varshānāṃ tatra Bhārata | suvarṇa-varṇas chā narāḥ striyaś chāpsarasopamāḥ | anāmayaḥ vīta-śokāḥ nityam mudita-mānasāḥ | āyante minavās tatra nishṭapta-kanaka-prabhāḥ |* "The people there live ten thousand years. The men are of the colour of gold, and the women fair as celestial nymphs. Men are born there of the colour of burnished gold, live free from sickness and sorrow, and enjoy perpetual happiness." The men by the side of the mountain Bandhamādāna, west of Meru, are said (v. 231) "to be black, of great strength and vigour, while the women are of the colour of blue lotuses, and very beautiful" (*tatra rishabhāḥ narāḥ rājās tejo-yuktāḥ mahābalāḥ | striyaś chotpala-varṇābhāḥ sarvā yunim-advayāḥ*).

*na tattrāsti jarā-mṛityu-bhayaṁ na cha | dharmādharmau na teshv āstām
nottamādhama-madhyamāḥ | na teshv asti yugācāsthā kṣettreshv aśṭāsu
sarcadā |*

"In the eight Varshas, called Kimpurusha and the rest (i.e. in all except Bhārata Varsha) the inhabitants enjoy a natural perfection attended with complete happiness obtained without exertion. There is there no vicissitude, nor decrepitude, nor death, nor fear; no distinction of virtue and vice, none of the inequalities denoted by the words best, worst, and intermediate, nor any change resulting from the succession of the four yugas." And again :

ii. 2, 35. *Yāni Kimpurushādyaṇi varshāṇy aśṭau mahāmuno | na
teshu śoko nāyāso nodvega-kṣud-bhayādikam | sūsthāḥ prajāḥ nirātankāḥ
sarva-duḥkha-vivarjitāḥ |* 36. *Dāśa-dvādaśa-varshāṇāṁ sahasrāṇi sthīrā-
yushaḥ | na teshu varshate devo bhaumyaṇy ambhām̐si teshu vai |* 37. *Kṛita-tretādikā naiva teshu sthāneshu kalpanā |*

"In those eight Varshas there is neither grief, nor weariness, nor anxiety, nor hunger, nor fear. The people live in perfect health, free from every suffering, for ten or twelve thousand years. Indra does not rain on those Varshas, for they have abundance of springs. There is there no division of time into the Kṛita, Tretā, and other ages."

The Uttara Kurus, it should be remarked, may have been a real people, as they are mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, viii. 14 :⁴

*Atha enam udīchyām diśi viśve devāḥ śaḍbhiś chaiva panchaviṁśair
ahobhir abhyashinchann etena cha trichena etena cha yajushā etābhiś cha
vyāhṛitibhir vairājyāya | tasmād etasyām udīchyām diśi ye ke cha pareṇa
Himavantaṁ janapadāḥ "Uttara-Kuravaḥ Uttara-Madrāḥ" iti vairā-
jyāya eva te 'bhishichyante*

"Then in the northern region during six days on which the Pancha-
viṁśa stoma was recited, the Viśve-devas inaugurated him (Indra) for
glorious dominion with these three ṛik-verses, this yajush-verse, and
these mystic monosyllables. Wherefore the several nations who dwell
in this northern quarter, beyond the Himavat, the Uttara Kurus and
the Uttara Madras, are consecrated to glorious dominion (*vairājya*), and
people term them the glorious (*virāj*)."⁵ See Colebrooke's Misc. Essays,
i. 38-43; Dr. Haug's translation of the Ait. Brāhmaṇa; and Prof.
Weber's review of this translation in Ind. Studien, ix. pp. 341 f.

⁴ Quoted by Weber in Ind. St. i. 218.

In another passage of the same work,⁶ however, the Uttara Kurus are treated as belonging to the domain of mythology :

Ait. Br. viii. 23. *Etañ ha vai aindram mahābhishekam Vāsishṭhaḥ Sātahavyo'tyarātaye Jānantapaye provācha | tasmād u Atyarātir Jānantapir arājā san vidyayā samantañ sarvataḥ prithivīm jayan pariyūya | sa ha uvācha Vāsishṭhaḥ Sātyahavyaḥ "ajaishār vai samantañ sarvataḥ prithivīm mahad mā gamaya" iti | sa ha uvācha Atyarātir Jānantapir "yadā brāhmaṇa uttara-kurūn jayeyāñ tvam u ha eva prithivyaī rājā syāḥ senāpatir eva te 'hañ syām" iti | sa ha uvācha Vāsishṭhaḥ Sātyahavyo "deva-kshettrañ vai tad na vai tad marttyo jetum arhaty adruksho me ā'taḥ idaṃ dade" iti | tato ha Atyarātim Jānantapim ātta-vīryam niśśukram amitra-tapanāḥ Sushmināḥ S'aivyo rājā jaghāna | tasmād evaṃ-vidushe brāhmaṇīya evaṃ-chakrushe kshattriyo na druhyed na id rāshṭrād avapadyeyad (?) na id vāma-prāno jahad itḥ |*

"Sātyahavya of the family of Vāsishṭha declared this great inauguration similar to Indra's to Atyarāti, son of Jānantapa; and in consequence Atyarāti, though not a king, by his knowledge, went round the earth on every side to its ends, reducing it to subjection. Sātyahavya then said to him, 'Thou hast subdued the earth in all directions to its limits; exalt me now to greatness.' Atyarāti replied, 'When, o Brāhmaṇ, I conquer the Uttara Kurus, thou shalt be king of the earth, and I will be only thy general.' Sātyahavya rejoined, 'That is the realm of the gods; no mortal may make the conquest of it: Thou hast wronged me; therefore I take all this away from thee.' In consequence Sushmina, king of the Śivis, vexed of his foes, slew Atyarāti son of Jānantapa who had been bereft of his valour and energy. Wherefore let no Kshattriya wrong a Brāhmaṇ who possesses such knowledge and has so acted, lest he should be expelled from his kingdom, be short-lived, and perish."

The Uttara Kurus are also mentioned in the description of the northern region in the Kishkindhā Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, 43, 38, *Uttarāḥ Kuravas tatra kṛita-punya-pratiśrāyaḥ |* "There are the Uttara Kurus, the abodes of those who have performed works of merit," *as* In v. 57 it is said: *na kathanchana gantavyāṃ kurūnām uttareṇa vaḥ | anyeshām api bhūtūnām nānukrāmati vai gatiḥ |* "You must not go to the north of the Kurus: other beings also may not proceed further."

⁶ See Colebrooke's Essays, i. 43; Dr. Haug's translation; and Ind. Stud. ix. 346.

In the same way when Arjuna, in his career of conquest, arrives at the country of the Uttara Kurus in Harivarsha, he is thus addressed by the guards at the gate of the city, M. Bh. Sabhāparvan, 1045 :

Pārtha nedaṁ tvayā śakyam puraṁ jetuṁ kathanchana | upāvarttasva kalyāṇa paryāptam idam Achyuta | idam puram yaḥ praviśed dhruvaṁ na sa bhaved naraḥ | . . . na chāttra kinchij jetavyam Arjunāttra pradrīśyate | Uttarāḥ Kuravo hy ete nāttra yuddham pravarttate | pravīṣṭo 'pi hi Kaunteya neha drakshyasi kinchana | na hi mānusha-dehena śakyam attrābhivīkshitum |

"Thou canst not, son of Prithā, subdue this city. Refrain, fortunate man, for it is completely secure. He who shall enter this city must be certainly more than man. . . . Nor is there anything to be seen here which thou canst conquer. Here are the Uttara Kurus, whom no one attempts to assail. And even if thou shouldst enter, thou couldst behold nothing. For no one can perceive anything here with human senses."⁶

In the Anuśāsanaparvan, line 2841, Kuśika says, on seeing a magic palace formed by Chyavana (see above, p. 475):

Aho saha śarīreṇa prāpto 'smi paramām gatim | Uttarān vā Kurūn punyān athavā 'py Amarāvatim |

"I have attained, even in my embodied condition, to the heavenly state; or to the holy Northern Kurus, or to Amarāvati [the city of Indra]!"

"The country to the north of the ocean, and to the south of the Himādri (or snowy range), is Bhārata Varsha, where the descendants of Bharata dwell" (V.P. ii. 3, 1. *Uttaram yad samudrasya Himādreśhaiva dakṣiṇam | varṣam tad Bhārataṁ nāma Bhārati yatra santatiḥ*). It is divided into nine parts (*bhedāḥ*), Indradvīpa, Kāśerumat, Tāmra-varṇa, Gābhāstimāt, Nāgadvīpa, Saumya, Gāndharva, Vārūṇa; and 'this ninth dvīpa,' which is not named, is said to be "surrounded by the ocean" *ayaṁ tu navamas teshām dvīpaḥ sāgara-saṁvṛtitaḥ*), and to be a thousand yojanas long from north to south. "On the east side of it are the Kirātas, on the west the Yavanas, and in the centre are the Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, following their respective occupations of sacrifice, arms, trade, etc." (The text of this passage, V.P. ii. 3, 7, has been already quoted in p. 485).

⁶ See the second vol. of this work, pp. 332-337, and vol. iv., p. 376.

The Vishṇu Purāṇa contains a very short list of the tribes inhabiting Bhārata Varsha. (See Wilson, vol. ii. pp. 132 f.) It specifies, as the principal, only the Kurus, Pāṇchālas, the people of Kāmarūpa, the Puṇḍras, Kalingas, Magadhas, Saurāshṭras, Sūras, Bhīras, Arbudas, Kārūshas, Mālavas, Sauvīras, Saindhavas, Hūnas, Śālvas, Śākalas, Madras, Rāmas, Ambashṭhas, and Pārasīkas.⁷ These tribes seem to be all confined to India and its vicinity.

The praises of Bhārata Varsha are celebrated as follows:

V.P. ii. 3, 11. *Chatvāri Bhārata varshe yugāny atra mahāmune | kṛitāṁ tretā dvāparaś cha kaliś chānyatra na kvachit | 12. Tapas tapyanti yatayo juhvate chāttra yajvinah | dānāni chāttra dīyante paralokārtham ādarāt | purushair yajna-purusho Jambu-dvīpe sadejyate | yajnair yajna-mayo Viṣṇur anyā-dvīpeṣhu chānyathā | 13. Attrāpi Bhārataṁ śreshṭhaṁ Jambu-dvīpe mahāmune | yato hi karma-bhūr eṣhā ato 'nyāḥ bhoga-bhūmayah | atra janma-sahasrāṇāṁ sahasrair api sattamam | kadachil labhate jantur mānushyam punya-sanchayam | gāyanti devāḥ kila gītakāni "dhan-yās tu ye Bhārata-bhūmi-bhūge | svargūpavargasya dahe tu bhūte bhavanti bhūyah purushāḥ suratvāt | 14. Karmāny asankalpita-tat-phalāni sanniyasya Viṣṇau paramātma-rūpe | avāpya tāṁ karma-mahīm anante tasmin layaṁ ye tv amalāḥ prayānti | 15. Jānīma naitat kva vayaṁ vilīne svarga-prade karmani deha-bandham | prāpsyūma dhanyāḥ khalu te manushyāḥ ye Bhārata nandriya-viprahīnāḥ"* |

"In Bhārata Varsha⁸ and nowhere else, do the four Yugas, Kṛita, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali exist. 12. Here devotees perform austerities, and priests sacrifice; here gifts are bestowed, to testify honour, for the sake of the future world. In Jambudvīpa Viṣṇu, the sacrificial Man, whose essence is sacrifice, is continually worshipped by men with sacrifices; and in other ways in the other dvīpas.⁸ 13. In this respect Bhārata is the most excellent division of Jambudvīpa; for this is the land of works, while the others are places of enjoyment. Perhaps in a thousand thousand births, a living being obtains here that most excellent condition, humanity, the receptacle of virtue. The gods sing, 'Happy are those beings, who, when the rewards of their merits have

⁷ The list in the Mahābhārata (Bhīṣmaparvan, 346 ff.) is much longer. See Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. ii. pp. 132 f., and 156 ff.

⁸ "In other ways,' i.e. in the form of Soma, Vāyu, Śrīya, etc." (*Anyatā Soma-vāyu-sūryyādi-rūpaḥ* |). Commentator.

been exhausted in heaven, are, after being gods, again born as men in Bhārata Varsha; (14) who, when born in that land of works, resign to the supreme and eternal Vishṇu their works, without regard to their fruits, and attain by purity to absorption in him. 15. We know not where we shall next attain a corporeal condition, when the merit of our works shall have become exhausted; but happy are those men who exist in Bhārata Varsha with perfect senses.' ”

To the same effect the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, v. 17, 11 :

Tattrāpi Bhāratam eva varshaṁ karma-kṣhetram anyāny aṣṭa-var-shāni svarginām punya-śeshopabhoga-sthānāni bhaumāni svarga-padāni vyapadiśanti | 12. Eṣu puruṣhāṇām ayuta-puruṣhāyur-varshāṇām deva-kalpānām nūgāyuta-prānūnām vajra-saṁhanana-vayo-moda-pramudita-mahāśaurata-mithuna-vyacāyūparvarga-varsha-dhṛitaika-garbhā-kalatrāṇām tretā-yuga-samāḥ kālo varttate |

“Of these, Bhāratavarsha alone is the land of works: the other eight Varshas are places where the celestials enjoy the remaining rewards of their works; they are called terrestrial paradises. 12. In them men pass an existence equal to that of the Tretā age, living for the space of ten thousand ordinary lives, on an equality with gods, having the vitality of ten thousand elephants, and possessed of wives who bear one child after a year's conception following upon sexual intercourse attended by all the gratification arising from adamantine bodies and from vigorous youth.”

The commentator remarks on verse 11 : *Dirya-bhauma-bila-bhedāt trividhaḥ svargaḥ | tatra bhauma-svargasya padāni sthānāni vyapadiśanti |* “Heaven is of three kinds, in the sky, on earth, and in the abyss. Here the other Varshas are called terrestrial heavens.”

It is curious to remark that in the panegyric on Bhārata Varsha it is mentioned as one of the distinguishing advantages of that division of Jambudvīpa that sacrifice is performed there, though, a little further on, it is said to be practised in Sūlmali dvīpa also.

It would at first sight appear from the preceding passage (ii. 3, 11) of the Vishṇu Purāṇa (as well as from others which we shall encounter below), to be the intention of the writer to represent the inhabitants of Bhārata Varsha as a different race, or, at least as living under quite different conditions, from the inhabitants of the other dvīpas, and even of the other divisions (*varshas*) of Jambu dvīpa itself. From the use

of the word *mānushya* (humanity) here applied to the inhabitants of Bhārata Varsha, viewed in reference to the context, it would seem to be a natural inference that all the people exterior to it were beings of a different race. Yet in the descriptions of Kuśa dvīpa and Pushkara dvīpa (see below) the words *manujāḥ* and *mānavāḥ* "descendants of Manu," or "men," are applied to the dwellers in those continents. In the passage of the Jātimālā, moreover, translated by Mr. Colebrooke (Misc. Essays, ii. 179), we are told that "a chief of the twice-born tribe was brought by Vishṇu's eagle from Sāka dvīpa; thus have Sāka dvīpa Brāhmans become known in Jambu dvīpa." According to this verse, too, there should be an affinity of race between the people of these two dvīpas. It is also to be noted that the descendants of Priyavrata became kings of all the dvīpas, as well as of all the varshas of Jambu dvīpa (see above, pp. 489, 491). And in the passage quoted above, p. 478, from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 11, 3, it is said of Arjuna, son of Kṛitavīrya, that he was "lord of the seven dvīpas," "that he ruled over the earth with all its dvīpas." If, however, the kings were of the human race, it is natural to infer the same of the people.

But, in a subject of this sort, where the writers were following the suggestions of imagination only, it is to be expected that we should find inconsistencies.

Jambu dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of salt water (Wilson, V.P. ii. 109); and that sea again is bounded on its outer side by the dvīpa or continent of Plaksha running all round it. (V.P. ii. 4, 1. *Kṣhārodena yathā dvīpo Jambu-sanjño 'bhiveshṭitaḥ | sañveshṭya kṣhāram udadhim Plaksha-dvīpas tathā sthitaḥ*). According to this scheme the several continents and seas form concentric circles, Jambu dvīpa being a circular island occupying the centre of the system.

Plaksha dvīpa is of twice the extent of Jambu dvīpa. The character and condition of its inhabitants are described as follows:

V. P. ii. 4, 5. *Nā chaivāsti yugāvasthā teshu sthāneshu saptaṣu | 6. Tretā-yuga-samāḥ kālāḥ sarvadaiva mahāmato | Plaksha-dvīpādīshu brahman S'ākadvīpāntākesu vai | 7. Pancha-varsha-sahasrāṇi janāḥ jīvantya anāmayaḥ | dharmāḥ pañchāsu athaiteshu varnāśrama-vibhāga-jāḥ |*

* Purāṇas is said to have possessed *thirteen* islands (dvīpas) of the ocean (above p. 307).

*varṇās tattrāpi chatvāras tām nibodha gadāmi te | Āryyakāḥ Kuravaś
chaiva Tivāsāḥ Bhūvināś cha ye | vipra-kshattriya-vaiśyās te śūdrās cha
muni-sattama |*

“In those seven provinces [which compose *Plaksha dvīpa*] the division of time into Yugas does not exist: but the character of existence is always that of the *Tretā* age. In the [five] *dvīpas*, beginning with *Plaksha* and ending with *Sāka*, the people live 5000 years, free from sickness. In those five *dvīpas* duties arise from the divisions of castes and orders. There are there also four castes, *Āryyakas*, *Kurus*, *Vivāsas*, and *Bhāvins*, who are the *Brāhmins*, *Kshattriyas*, *Vaiśyas*, and *Sūdras*,” and whose worship is thus described :

9. *Ijyate tatra bhagavāns tair varṇair Āryyakādibhiḥ | soma-rūpī
jagat-sraśtā sarvaḥ sarveśvaro Hariḥ |* “*Hari* who is All, and the lord of all, and the creator of the world, is adored in the form of *Soma* by these classes, the *Āryyakas*, etc.”

The inhabitants of this *dvīpa* receive different names in the *Bhāga-vata Purāṇa*, being there called (v. 20, 4) “*Hansas*, *Patangas*, *Ūrdhvāyanas*, and *Satyāngas*, four castes, who, purified from passion and darkness by the touch of the waters of these rivers, live a thousand years, resemble the gods in their appearance and in their manner of procreation, and worship with the triple *Veda* the divine Soul, the Sun, who is the gate of heaven, and who is co-essential with the *Vedas*” (*Yāsūṁ jalopasparśana-vidhūta-rajasa-tamaso Hamsa-patangorddhvāyana-satyānga-sanjñās chatvāra varṇāḥ sahasrāyusho vibudhopama-sandarśana-prajananāḥ svarga-dvāraṁ trayyū vidyayā bhagavantaṁ trayīmayaṁ sūryam ātmānaṁ yajante*).

In regard to *Plaksha* and the other four following *dvīpas*, the *Bhāga-vata Purāṇa* says, *ibid.* para. 6, that “their men are all alike in respect of natural perfection as shewn in length of life, senses, vigour, force, strength, intelligence, and courage” (*Plakshādishu panchasu puruṣhāṇām āyur intriyam ojaḥ saho balam buddhir vikramaḥ iti cha sarveśhām outpattikī siddhir aviśeshena varttate |*).

Plaksha dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of sugar-cane juice of the same compass as itself. ii. 4, 9, *Plaksha - dvīpa - pramāṇena Plaksha - dvīpaḥ samāvṛitaḥ | tathāivekshu-rasodena pariveśānukārīṇā |* Round the outer margin of this sea, and twice as extensive, runs *Sālmala dvīpa* (verse 11. *S'ūmalena samudro 'sau dvīpenekshu-rasodakaḥ | vistara-*

dviguṇenātha sarvataḥ saṁvṛitaḥ sthitaḥ |). It is divided into seven Varshas, or divisions. Of their inhabitants it is said :

V. P. ii. 4, 12. *Saptaitāni tu varshāni chāturvarnya-yutāni cha | Sālmale ye tu varṇās cha vasanti te mahāmune | kapilās chāruṇāḥ pītūḥ kṛishṇās chaiva prithak prithak | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrās chaiva yajanti te | bhagavantaṁ samastasya Viṣṇum ātmānam avyayam | Vāyubhūtam makha-śreṣṭhāir yajvino yajna-saṁsthitam | 13. Devānām atra sānnidhyam atīva sumanoharam |*

“These seven Varshas have a system of four castes. The castes which dwell there are severally the Kapilas, Aruṇas, Pitas, and Kṛishṇas (or the Tawny, the Purple, the Yellow, and the Black). These, the Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras, worship with excellent sacrifices Viṣṇu, the divine and imperishable Soul of all things, in the form of Vāyu, and abiding in sacrifice. Here the vicinity of the gods is very delightful to the soul.”

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa says of this dvīpa, v. 20, 11 : *Tad-varsha-purushāḥ Srutadhara-vīryadhara-vasundhareṣhundhara-saṁjñāḥ bhagavantaṁ vedamayaṁ somam ātmānaṁ vedena yajante |* “The men of the different divisions of this dvīpa, called Srutadharas, Vīryadharas, Vasundharas, and Ishundharas, worship with the Veda the divine Soul Soma, who is co-essential with the Veda.”

This dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of wine of the same compass as itself (v. 13. *Esha dvīpaḥ samudrena surodena saṁvṛitaḥ | vistārāc chhālmalasyaiva samena tu samantataḥ*). The exterior shore of this sea is encompassed by Kuśa dvīpa, which is twice as extensive as Sālmala dvīpa (v. 13. *Surodakaḥ parivṛitaḥ Kuśadvīpena sarvataḥ | Sālmalasya tu vistārād dviguṇena samantataḥ*). The inhabitants of Kuśa dvīpa are thus described, V.P. ii 4, 14 :

Tasyāṁ vasanti manuḥjāḥ saha Daiteya-dānavaiḥ | tathāiva deva-gandharva - yaksha - kimpurushādayaḥ | varṇās tattrāpi chatvāro nījānushṭhāna-tatparāḥ | Dāmīnāḥ S'ushmīnāḥ Snehāḥ Mandehās cha mahāmune | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrās chānukramoditāḥ | 15. Yathokta-karma-kartṛitvāt svādhikāra-kṣayāya te | tatra te tu Kuśa-dvīpe Brahma-rūpaṁ Janārddanam | yajantaḥ kṣapayanty ugram adhikāram phala-pradam |

“In this set of Varshas (of Kuśa dvīpa) dwell men with Daityas, Dānavas, Devas, Gandharvas, Yakshas, Kimpurushas, and other beings.

There, too, there are four castes, pursuing their proper observances, Damins, Sushmins, Snehas, and Mandhas, who in the order specified are Brāhmins, Kshatriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras. In order to destroy their right [to reward] derived from the performance of these works, they worship Janārdana in the form of Brahma, and so neutralize this direful merit which brings rewards."

Of Kuśa dvīpa the Mahābhārata tells us, Bhīṣmaparvan, verses 455-7: *Eteshu deva-gandharvāḥ prajāścha jagatīśvara | viharante ramante cha na teshu mriyate janaḥ | na teshu dasyarah santi mlechha-jātyo 'pi vā nṛipa | gaura-prāyo janaḥ sarrah sukumāras cha pārthiva* | "In these (Varshas of Kuśa dvīpa), gods, Gandharvas, and living creatures, amuse and enjoy themselves. No one dies there. There are no Dasyus or Mlechhas there. The people are fair, and of very delicate forms." The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, v. 20, 16, says, "The people of this dvīpa are called Kuśalas, Kovidas, Abhiyuktas, and Kulakas" (*Kuśa-dvīpaukasāḥ Kuśala-kovidābhiyukta-kulaka-sanjñāḥ* |).

Kuśa dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of clarified butter, of the same circumference as itself.

Around this sea runs Krauncha dvīpa which is twice as large as Kuśa dvīpa. The V. P. says, ii. 4, 19: *Sarveshu eteshu ramyeshu varsha-saila-vareshu cha | nivasanti nirātankūḥ saha deva-gaṇaiḥ prajāḥ | Pushkarāḥ Pushkalāḥ Dhanyās Tishmās chāttra mahāmune | brāhmaṇāḥ kshatriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ sūdrās chānukramoditāḥ* | "In all these pleasant division-mountains of this dvīpa the people dwell, free from fear, in the society of the gods. [These people are] the Pushkaras, Pushkulas, Dhanyas, and Tishmas, who, as enumerated in order, are the Brāhmins, Kshatriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras." The inhabitants of this dvīpa are called in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, v. 20, 22, " . . . Purushas, Rishabhas, Dravinas, and Devakas" (*Purusharshabha-dravina-devaka-sanjñāḥ*). This dvīpa is encompassed by the sea of curds, which is of the same circumference as itself. The sea again, on its exterior edge, is surrounded by Sāka dvīpa,¹⁰ a continent twice the size of Krauncha dvīpa.

Of Sāka dvīpa it is said in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, ii. 4, 23 ff.:

Tattra punyāḥ janapadās chāturvarṇya-samanvitāḥ | nadyas chāttra mahāpunyāḥ sarva-pāpa-bhayāpahāḥ | . . . tāḥ pibanti mudā yuktāḥ Jaladūdishu ye sthitāḥ | varsheshu te janapadāḥ svargād abhyetya me-

¹⁰ In the M. Dh. (Bhīṣmap. v. 408 ff.) Sākadvīpa comes next after Jambudvīpa.

dinim | 24. *Dharma-hānir na teshv asti na sangharshaḥ parasparam* | *maryādā-vyutkramo nāpi teshu deśeshu saptaśu* | 25. *Magās cha Māga-dhās chaiva Mānasāḥ Mandagās tathā* | *Magāḥ brāhmaṇa-bhūyishṭhāḥ Māgadhāḥ kshattriyās tu te* | *Vaiśyās tu Mānasāḥ jneyāḥ śūdrās teshāṃ tu Mandagāḥ* | 26. *Sākadvīpe tu tair Viśṇuḥ sūrya-rūpa-dharo mune* | *yathoktair iḡyate samyak karmabhir niyatātmbhiḥ* |

“There there are holy countries, peopled by persons belonging to the four castes; and holy rivers which remove all sin and fear. . . . The people who dwell in these divisions, Jalada, etc. [of Sāka dvīpa], drink these rivers with pleasure, even when they have come to earth from Svarga. There is among them no defect of virtue; nor any mutual rivalry; nor any transgression of rectitude in those seven countries. [There dwell] Magas, Māgadhas, Mānasas, and Mandagas, of whom the first are principally Brāhmans; the second are Kshattriyas; the third are Vaiśyas, and the fourth are Śūdras. By them Viśṇu, in the form of the Sun, is worshipped with the prescribed ceremonies, and with intent minds.” ॐ, ॐ, ॐ, ॐ, ॐ, ॐ, ॐ

Of this dvīpa the Mahābhārata tells us, Bhīṣmaparvan, verse 410, that the “people there are holy, and no one dies” (*tattra punyāḥ janapadāḥ na tattra mriyate naraḥ*). One of the mountains there is called Śyāma (black), “whence men have got this black colour” (verse 420. *Tataḥ śyāmatvam āpannāḥ janāḥ janapadeśvara*). Dhṛitarāshṭra then says to his informant Sanjaya that he has great doubts as to “how living creatures have become black.” Sanjaya promises in the following lines, the sense of which is not very clear, to explain the mystery: 422. *Sarveshṇo eva mahārāja dvīpeṣhu Kuru-nandana* | *gaurāḥ kṛiṣṇāḥ cha pātango yato varṇāntare dvijāḥ* | *śyāmo yasmāt pravṛitto vai tat te vakshyāmi Bhārata* | But as he proceeds no further, we lose the benefit of his solution of this interesting physiological problem. The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, v. 20, 28, gives the four classes of men in this dvīpa the names of Rītavratas, Satyavratas, Dānavratas, and Anuvratas (*tad-varsha-purushāḥ Rītavrata-Satyavrata-Dānavratānuvrata-nāmānaḥ*).

This Sāka dvīpa is surrounded by the ocean of milk as by an armlet. This ocean again is encompassed on its outer side by Pushkara dvīpa, which is twice as extensive as Sāka dvīpa.

Of Pushkara dvīpa it is said, Viśṇu Purāṇa, ii. 4, 28 ff. :

Dāsa-varsha-sahasrāṇi tattra jivanti mānavāḥ | *nirāmayāḥ viśokāścha*

rāga-dresha-rivarijjitūḥ | adhamottamau na teshv āstūm na badhya-badhakau dvīpa | nershyā 'sūyā bhayaṁ rosho dosho lobhādiko na cha |
 29. *Satyānrite na tattrāstūm dvīpe Pushkara-sanjñite |* 30.
Tulya-reśāś tu manujāḥ devais tattraika-rūpināḥ | 31. Varnāśramāchārā-
hīnam dharmācharaṇa - varjītam | trayī - vārttā - danḍanīti - śuśrūṣhū-
rahitaṁ cha yat | 32. Varsha-drayaṁ tu maittreya bhauma-svargo 'yam
uttamaḥ | sarcasya sukha-daḥ kālo jarū-roḡādi-varjītaḥ |

"In this dvīpa men live ten thousand years, free from sickness and sorrow, from affection and hatred. There is no distinction among them of highest and lowest, of killer and slain; there is no envy, nor ill-will, nor fear, nor anger, nor defect, nor covetousness, nor other fault; there is there neither truth nor falsehood. Men there are all of the same appearance, of one form with the gods. The two divisions of this dvīpa have no rules of caste or orders, nor any observances of duty; the three Vedas, the Purāṇas (or, trade), the rules of criminal law and service do not exist. This [dvīpa] is a most excellent terrestrial heaven; where time brings happiness to all, and is exempt from decay, sickness, and all other evils." ¹¹

Of all the dvīpas together, the Mahābhārata says, Bhīṣmaparvan, verses 468 ff. :

Etāṁ dvīpeshu sarveshu prajānām Kuru-nandana | brahmacharyyeṇa
satyena prajānām hi damena cha | ārogyāyuhpramāṇābhyām dviguṇām
dviguṇām tataḥ | eko janapado rājan dvīpeshv eteshu Bhārata | uktāḥ

¹¹ In the same way as Pushkara, the remotest dvīpa, is here described to be the scene of the greatest perfection, we find Homer placing the Elysian plains on the furthest verge of the earth :

ἀλλὰ σ' ἐς Ἑλύσιον πεδῖον καὶ πείρατα γαίης
 ἄθάνατοι πέμψουσιν, ὅθι ξανθὸς Ῥαδάμανθυς,
 τῇ περ ῥηίστη βιοτῇ πέλει ἀνθρώποισιν.
 οὐ νιφετὸς, οὐτ' ἔρ χειμῶν πολὺς οὔτε ποτ' ὕμβρος,
 ἀλλ' αἰεὶ Ζεφύροιο λιγὺ πνέοντασ ἀήτας
 Ὠκεανὸς ἀνίησιν ἀναψύχειν ἀνθρώπους. *Odyssey Δ. 563-568.*

"Thee, favoured man, to earth's remotest end,
 The Elysian plain, the immortal gods shall send,—
 That realm which fair-haired Rhadamanthys sways,
 Where, free from toil, men pass their tranquil days.
 No tempests vex that land, no rain, nor snow;
 But ceaseless Zephyrs from the ocean blow,
 Which sweetly breathe and gently stir the air,
 And to the dwellers grateful coolness bear."

*janapadāḥ yeshu karma chaikam pradṛśyate | īśvaro daṇḍam udyamya
svayam eva Prajāpatiḥ | dvīpānāṃ tu mahārāja rakshaṃs tishṭhati nit-
yadā | sa rājā sa śivo rājan sa pitā prapitāmahaḥ | gopāyati nara-
śreṣṭha prajāḥ sa-jada-panḍitāḥ | bhojanaṃ chāttra Kauravya prajāḥ
svayam upasthitam | siddham eva mahābāho tad hi bhunjanti nityadā |*

“Thus in all these dvīpas each country doubly exceeds the former one in the abstinence, veracity, and self-restraint, in the health and the length of life of its inhabitants. In these dvīpas the people is one, and one sort of action is perceivable. Prajāpati, the lord, wielding his sceptre, himself governs these dvīpas. He, the king, the auspicious one (*śīva*), the father, along with the patriarchs, protects all creatures, ignorant as well as learned.” (So there are differences of intellectual condition in these dvīpas after all!) “All these people eat prepared food, which comes to them of itself.”

Pushkara is surrounded by a sea of fresh water equal to itself in compass. What is beyond is afterwards described :

V.P. ii. 4, 37. *Svādūdakasya parato dṛśyate loka-saṁsthitih | dvigunā,
kāncanā bhūmih sarva-jantu-vivarjitā | 38. Lokāloka tataḥ śailo yoja-
nāyuta-vistṛitah | uchchhrāyeṇāpi tāvanti sahasrāny achalo hi sah | tatas
tamaḥ samāvṛitya taṃ sailaṃ sarvataḥ sthitam | tamaḥ chāṇḍa-kaṭāhena
samantāt parisveshitam |*

“On the other side of the sea is beheld a golden land of twice its extent, but without inhabitants. Beyond that is the Lokāloka mountain, which is ten thousand yojanas in breadth, and as many thousands in height. It is on all sides invested with darkness. This darkness is encompassed by the shell of the mundane egg.”¹²

In a following chapter, however, (the seventh) of this same book, the

¹² See Manu, i. verses 9 and 12, quoted above, p. 35. The thirteenth verse is as follows : *Tūbhyāṃ sa śakātūbhyāṃ cha divam bhūmim cha nirname | madhye vyoma
dīśaś chūṣhṭāv apāṃ sthānaṃ cha śīvatam |* “From these two halves of the shell he fashioned the heaven and the earth, and in the middle (he formed) the sky, and the eight quarters, and the eternal abode of the waters.” In regard to the darkness (*tamas*) with which the mountain Lokāloka is said to be enveloped, compare Manu iv. 242, where the spirits of the departed are said to pass by their righteousness through the darkness which is hard to be traversed (*dharmaṇa hi sahāyena tamasa tarati dustaram*); and Atharva-veda, ix. 5, 1, “Crossing the darkness, in many directions immense, let the unborn ascend to the third heaven” (*tīrtvā tamāṃsi bahudhā mahānti ajo nākam ā kramatām tṛtīyam*). See Journal Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 298, note 2, and p. 304.

shell of the mundane egg is said to be outside of the seven spheres of which this system is composed :

V.P. ii. 7, 19: *Eto sapta mayā lokāḥ Maitreya kathitās tava | pātālāni cha saptaiva brahmāṇḍasyaiśha vistaraḥ | etad aṇḍa-kaṭāhena tiryak chorddhvam adhas tathā | kapitthasya yathā vijam sarvato vai samāvṛitam |*

“These seven spheres have been described by me; and there are also seven Pātālas: this is the extent of Brahmā’s egg. The whole is surrounded by the shell of the egg at the sides, above, and below, just as the seed of the wood-apple (is covered by the rind).”

This system, however, it appears, is but a very small part of the whole of the universe:

Ibid. verse 24. *Aṇḍānām tu sahasrāṇām sahasrāṇy ayutāni cha | īdṛśānām tathā tatra koṭi-koṭi-śatāni cha |*

“There are thousands and ten thousands of thousands of such mundane eggs; nay hundreds of millions of millions.”

Indian mythology, when striving after sublimity, and seeking to excite astonishment, often displays an extravagant and puerile facility in the fabrication of large numbers. But, in the sentence last quoted, its conjectures are substantially in unison with the discoveries of modern astronomy; or rather, they are inadequate representations of the simple truth, as no figures can express the contents of infinite space.

APPENDIX.

Page 6, line 24.

Professor Wilson's analyses of the Agni, Brahma-vaivartta, Vishnu and Vāyu Purāṇas, were originally published, not in the "Gleanings in Science," but in the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, vol. i.; and are reprinted in the 3rd vol. of Wilson's Collected Works, edited by Dr. R. Rost.

Page 37, line 1.

"Abodes of gods." Böhtlingk and Roth in their Sanskrit Lexicon, s.v. *nikūya*, shew that in other passages, if not here also, the compound word *deva-nikūya* should be rendered "classes, or assemblages, of gods."

Page 50, line 25.

Compare the passage, quoted below, in the note on p. 115, from the Sāntiparvan of the M. Bh., verses 6130 ff.

Pages 90 ff.

The representations of the Kṛita yuga are not always consistent. In the Dronaparvan, verses 2023 ff. a story is told of King Akampana, who lived in that age, and who was yet so far from enjoying the tranquillity generally predicated of that happy time that he was overcome by his enemies in a battle, in which he lost his son, and suffered in consequence severe affliction.

Page 97, note 190.

It is similarly said in the Dronaparvan, verse 2395 : *Kshatād naś trāyate sarvān ity evaṃ kshattriyo 'bhavat* | "He (Prithu) became a Kshattriya by delivering us all from injuries." See also Sāntiparvan, verse 1031.

Page 115, line 13.

The Śāntiparvan of the M. Bh., verses 6130 ff., gives a similar description of the original state of all things, and of the birth of Brahmā. Bhishma is the speaker : *Salilaikārnavaṁ tūta purā sarvaṁ abhūd idam | nishprakampam anūkāśam anirdeśya-mahītalām | tamasā vṛitam asparśam api gambhīra-darśanam | niśabdam vā 'prameyaṁ cha tatra jajne Pitā-mahaḥ | so 'sṛjad vātam agniṁ cha bhāskaraṁ chāpi vīryavān | ākāśam asṛjadh choddhvaṁ adho bhūmiṁ cha nairṛitīm | nabhaḥ sa-chandra-tāraṁ cha nakshatrāṇi grahāṁś tathā | saṁvatsarān ṛitūn māsān pak-shūn atha lavān kṣaṇān | tataḥ śarīraṁ loka-sthāṁ sthāpayitvā Pitā-mahaḥ | janayāmāsa bhagavān puttrān uttama-tejasaḥ |* 6135. *Marīchīm ṛishim Attriṁ cha Pulastyam Pulahaṁ Kratum | Vāsishṭhāngirasau cho-bhau Rudraṁ cha prabhum īśvaram | Prachetasas tathā Dakṣaḥ kanyāḥ shashṭīm aṣṭjanat | tūḥ vai brahmarshayaḥ sarvāḥ prajāṛtham prati-pedire | tābhyo viśvāni bhūtāni devāḥ pitṛi-gaṇāś tathā | gandharvāp-sarasāś chaiva rakṣhāṁsi vividhāni cha | . . .* 6149. *Jajne tūta jagat sarvaṁ tathā sthāvara-jangamam |* 6150. *Bhūta-sargam imaṁ kṛtvā sarva-loka-pitā-mahaḥ | śūśvataṁ veda-pāṭhitaṁ dharmam prayuyuje tataḥ | tasmin dharme sthitāḥ devāḥ sahāchūryya-purohitāḥ | ādityāḥ vasavo rudrāḥ sa-sādhyāḥ marud-āśvinaḥ |* "This entire universe was formerly one expanse of water, motionless, without æther, without any distinguishable earth, enveloped in darkness, imperceptible to touch, with an appearance of (vast) depth, silent, and measureless. There Pitāmaha (Brahmā) was born. That mighty god created wind, fire, and the sun, the æther¹ above, and under it the earth belonging to Nirṛiti, the sky, with the moon, stars, constellations, and planets, the years, seasons, months, half-months, and the minute sub-divisions of time. Having established the frame of the universe, the divine Pitāmaha begot sons of eminent splendour, (6135) Marīchi, the rishi Attri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Vāsishṭha, Angiras, and the mighty lord • Rudra. Daksha, the son of Prachetas, also begot sixty daughters, all of whom were taken by the Brahmarshis² for the purpose of propagating offspring. From these females, all beings, gods, pitṛis, gandharvas, apsarasas, and various kinds of rākshasas, . . . (6149) this

¹ And yet it is elsewhere said (Anuśāsanap. 2161, quoted above in p. 130) that the æther (*ākāśa*) cannot be created.

² Here this word must mean "rishis, sons of Brahmā."

entire world, moving and stationary, was produced. 6150. Having formed this creation of living beings, the parent of all worlds established the eternal rule of duty as read in the Veda. To this rule of duty the gods, with their teachers and domestic priests, the Ādityas, Vasus, Rudras, Sādhyas, Maruts, and Ásvins conformed."

Another account of the creation is given in the same book of the M. Bh., verses 7518 ff., where it is ascribed to Vishṇu in the form of Govinda, or Keśava (Kṛishṇa), who is identified with the supreme and universal Purusha. Resting on the waters (7527) he created by his thought Sankarshana, the first-born of all beings. Then (7529) a lotus sprang from his (either Sankarshana's or Vishṇu's) navel, from which again (7530) Brahmā was produced. Brahmā afterwards created his seven mind-born sons, Marīchi, Attri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Daksha (7534).

Compare Bhīshmaparvan, verses 3017 ff.

Page 122, note 223.

Compare the passage quoted in the last note from the Śāntiparvan, verse 6135.

Page 128, line 20.

The Śāntiparvan, verses 7548 ff. ascribes the creation of the four castes to Kṛishṇa: *Tataḥ Kṛishṇo mahābhāgaḥ punar eva Yudhishṭhira | brāhmaṇānām śataṁ śreṣṭham mukhād evāsrijat prabhuḥ | bāhubhyām kshattriya-śataṁ vaiśyānām ūrutāḥ śataṁ | padbhyām śūdra-śataṁ chaiva Keśavo Bharatarshabha |* "Then again the great Kṛishṇa created a hundred Brāhmans, the most excellent (class), from his mouth, a hundred Kshattriyas from his arms, a hundred Vaiśyas from his thighs, and a hundred Śūdras from his feet."

Compare Bhīshmaparvan, verse 3029.

Page 128, note 238.

In another place also, verses 6208 f., the Anuśāsanaparvan ranks purohitas with Śūdras: *Sūdra-karma tu yaḥ kuryād avahāya śva-karma cha | sa vijñeyo yathā śūdro na cha bhojyaḥ kathanchana | chikitsakaḥ kāṇḍapriṣṭhaḥ purādhyaḥkṣaḥ purohitaḥ | sāmvaṭsaro vṛithādhyāyī sarve te śūdra-sammitāḥ |* "He, who, abandoning his own work, does the work of a Śūdra, is to be regarded as a Śūdra, and not to be invited to a feast. A physician, a kāṇḍapriṣṭha (see above, p. 442), a

city governor, a purohita, an astrologer, one who studies to no purpose, —all these are on a level with Sūdras.”

Pages 144 ff.

See above, note on pp. 90 ff.

Page 150, line 4.

Compare Dronaparvan, verse 2397.

Page 220, line 14.

I am indebted to Professor Max Müller for pointing out to me two passages in Indian commentators in which Manu is spoken of as a Kshattriya. The first is from Madhusūdana Sarasvatī's Commentary on the Bhagavad-gītā, iv. 1. The words of the text are these: *S'rī-Bhagavān uvācha | imāṃ Vivasvate yogam proktavān aham aryaṃ | Vivasvān Manave prāha Manur Ikshvākave 'bravīt | evaṃ paramparā-prāptam imāṃ rājārshayo viduḥ | sa kāleneha mahatā yogo naśṭhaḥ parantapa | sa evāyam mayā te 'dya yogam proktaḥ purātanaḥ | bhakto 'si me sakhā cheti rahasyam etad uttamam* | “The divine Being (Kṛishṇa) said: I declared to Vivasvat (the Sun) this imperishable Yoga-doctrine. Vivasvat told it to (his son) Manu; and Manu to (his son) Ikshvāku. Thus do royal rishis know it as handed down by tradition. Through lapse of time however it was lost. I have to day therefore revealed to thee (anew) this ancient system, this most excellent mystery; for thou art devoted to me and my friend.”

On this Madhusūdana remarks: “*Vivasvate*” *sarva-kshattriya-vamśa-vija-bhūtāya Ādityāya proktavān* | “‘I declared it to Vivasvat’ i.e. to Āditya (the Sun) who was the source of the whole Kshattriya race.”

The second passage is from Someśvara's ṭīkā on Kumārila Bhaṭṭa's Mimāṃsa-vārttika. I must, however, first adduce a portion of the text of the latter work which forms the subject of Someśvara's annotation. For a copy of this passage, which is otherwise of interest, I am indebted to Professor Goldstücker, who has been kind enough to copy it for me.² The first extract refers to Jaimini's Sūtra, i. 3, 3; where the question under discussion is, in what circumstances authority can be assigned to

² See Professor Müller's Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 79 f. where this passage is partly extracted and translated. See also the same author's *Chips* from a German Workshop, vol. ii. pp. 338 ff.

the Smṛiti when the Śruti, or Veda, is silent. After some other remarks Kumāṛila proceeds: *S'ākyādi-vachanāni tu katipaya-dama-dānādi vachana-varjjaṁ sarvāṇy eva samasta-chaturdaśa-vidyā-sthāna-viruddhāni trayī-mārga-vyutthita-viruddhāccharaṇaiś cha Buddhādidhiḥ praṇītāni trāyī-bāhyebhyaś chaturtha-varṇa-niravasita-prāyebhyo vyāmūḍhebhyaḥ samarthitāni iti na veda-mūlatvena sambhāvyanṭe | svadharmātikramena cha yena kshattriyena satā pravakṛitva-pratigrahaḥ pratipannau sa dharmam ariplutam upadekshyati iti kaḥ samāśvāsaḥ | uktaṁ cha "para-loka-viruddhāni kurvāṇaṁ dūratas tyajet | ātmānaṁ yo viśamdhatte so 'nyasmai syāt kathaṁ hitaḥ" iti | Buddhādeḥ punar ayam evātikramo 'lan-kāra-buddhaḥ sthito yena evam āha "kali-kalusha-kṛitāni yāni loke mayi nipatantu | vimuchyatām tu lokāḥ" iti | sa kila loka-hitārtha-kshattriya-dharmam atikramya brāhmaṇa-vṛttim pravakṛitvam pratipadya prati-shedhātikramāsamarthair brāhmaṇair ananūśiṣṭaṁ dharmam bāhya-jaṇān anuśāsad dharma-piḍām apy ātmano 'ngikṛitya parānugrahaṁ kṛitavān ity evaṁvidhair eva guṇaiḥ stūyate | tad-anuśiṣṭānusāriṇaś cha sarve eva śruti-smṛiti-vihita-dharmātikramena vyavaharanto viruddhāccharatvena jñāyante | tena pratyakṣayā śrūtyā virodhe grantha-kārinām grahātrācharitṛinām grantha-prāmāṇya-bādhanaṁ | na hy eṣhām pūrvoktena nyāyena śruti-pratibaddhānām sva-mūla-śruty-anumāna-samarthyam asti |* "But the precepts of Śākya and others, with the exception of a few enjoining dispassion, liberality, etc., are all contrary to the fourteen classes of scientific treatises, and composed by Buddha and others whose practice was opposed to the law of the three Vedas, as well as calculated for men belonging mostly to the fourth caste who are excluded from the Vedas, debarred from pure observances, and deluded:—consequently, they cannot be presumed to be founded on the Veda. And what confidence can we have that one (i.e. Buddha) who being a Kshattriya,³ transgressed the obligations of his own order, and assumed the function of teaching and the right to receive presents, would inculcate a pure system of duty? For it has been said: 'Let everyone avoid a man who practises acts destructive to future happiness.' How can he who ruins himself be of any benefit to others? And yet this very transgression of Buddha and his followers is conceived as being a feather in his cap; since he spoke thus, 'Let all the evils resulting from the sin of the Kali age fall upon me; and let the world be redeemed.' Thus, abandoning the

³ Compare Colebrooke's Misc. Essays, i. 312

duties of a Kshattriya, which are beneficial to the world, assuming the function of a teacher which belongs only to the Brāhmana, and instructing men who were out of the pale in duty which was not taught by the Brāhmana who could not transgress the prohibition (to give such instruction), he sought to do a kindness to others, while consenting to violate his own obligations; and for such merits as these he is praised! And all who follow his instructions, acting in contravention of the prescriptions of the Sruti and Smṛiti, are notorious for their erroneous practices. Hence from the opposition in which the authors of these books, as well as those who receive and act according to them, stand to manifest injunctions of the Veda, the authority of these works is destroyed.⁴ For since they are by the above reasoning opposed by the Veda, the inference that they rest upon independent Vedic authority of their own possesses no force."

➤ The next passage is from Kumārila's Vārttika on Jaimini's Sūtra, i. 3, 7: *Vedenai vābhyānujñātā yeshāṃ eva pravaktrītā | nityānām abhidheyānām manvantara-yugādishu | teshāṃ riparivartteshu kurratōṃ dharmā-saṃhitāḥ | vachanāni pramāṇāni nānyeshāṃ iti niśchayaḥ | tathā cha Manur ṛichāḥ sāmīdhenyo bhavanti ity asya vidher vākya-śeṣe śrūyate "Manur vai yat kinchid avadat tad bheshajam bheshajatāyai"*⁵ *iti prāyaścittādy-upadeśa-vachanam pāpa-vyādher bheshajam* | "It is certain that the precepts of those persons only whose right to expound the eternal meanings of scripture in the different manvantaras and yugas has been recognized by the Veda, are to be regarded as authoritative, when in the revolutions (of those great mundane periods) they compose codes of law. Accordingly by way of complement to the Vedic passage containing the precept (*vidhi*) beginning 'there are these sāmīdheni verses of Manu' it is declared, 'whatever Manu said is a healing remedy;' i.e. his prescriptions in regard to expiatory rites, etc., are remedies for the malady of sin."

⁴ The Nyāya-mūla-vistara, i. 3, 4, quotes Kumārila as raising the question whether the practice of innocence, which S'ūkyā (Buddha) inculcated, was, or was not, a duty from its conformity to the Veda, and as solving it in the negative, since cow's milk put into a dogskin cannot be pure (*S'ūkyoktāhimsanām dharmo na vā dharmāḥ śrutavataḥ | na dharmo na hi pūtam syād go-khīraṃ iva-dṛitau dhṛitam*).

⁵ These words are quoted by Böhlingk and Roth, s.v. *bheshajātā*, as taken from the Panchaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa, 23, 16, 7. A similar passage occurs in the Taitt. Saṃh.

From Someśvara's elaborate comment on the former of these two passages I need only extract the following sentences: *Etad abhiyuktavachanena draḍhayati "uktaṁ cha" | Manos tu kshattriyasyāpi prava-kṛitvam "yad vai kinchid Manur avadat tad bheshajam" iti vedānujñāta-tvād aviruddham ity āsayah* | "This he confirms by the words of a learned man which he introduces by the phrase 'for it has been said.' But although Manu was a Kshattriya, his assumption of the office of teacher was not opposed to the Veda, because it is sanctioned by the Vedic text 'whatever Manu said was a remedy:' Such is the purport."

Page 254, line 12. 516

Yas tityāja sachi-vidam, etc. This verse is quoted in the Taittiriya Āraṇyaka (pp. 159 f. of Cal. edit.), which, however, reads *sakhi-vidam* instead of *sachi-vidam*. An explanation of the passage is there given by the Commentator.

Page 264, line 14.

Professor Weber considers (Indische Studien, i. 52) that "the yaudhāḥ and the arhantah were the forerunners of the Rājanyas and the Brāhmans." See the whole passage below in the note on p. 366.

Page 268, note 51.

Compare Āśvalāyana's Śrauta-Sūtras, i. 3, 3 and 4, and commentary (p. 22 of Cal. edit.). Prithī Vainya is, as I find from Bühtlingk and Roth's Lexicon, s.v., referred to also in the Atharva-veda, viii. 10, 24 The words are these: *Sū udakrāmat sū manushyān āgachhat | tām manushyāḥ upāhvayanta "irāvaty ehi" iti | tasyāḥ Manur Vaivasvato vatsaḥ āsit prithivī pātram | tām Prithī Vainyo 'dhok tām kṛishīm cha sasyaṁ cha adhok | te kṛishīm cha sasyaṁ cha manushyāḥ upajīvanti ityādi* | "She (i.e. Virāj) ascended: she came to men. Men called her to them, saying, 'Come, Irāvati.' Manu Vaivasvata was her calf, and the earth her vessel. Prithī Vainya milked her; he milked from her agriculture and grain. Men subsist on agriculture and grain."

See Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. pp. 183 ff., where Prithu's (this is the Puranic form of the word) reign is described. It is there stated that this king, "taking the lord Manu Svāyambhuva for his calf, milked from the earth into his own hand all kinds of grain from a desire to benefit his subjects" (V.P. i. 13, 54. *Sa kalpayitvā vatsaṁ tu*

Manuñ Scāyambhuvam prabhum | sve pānau prīthivī-nātho dudoha prīthivīm Prīthuḥ | 55. Sasya-jātāni sarvāni prajānām hita-kāmyayā). See also the passage quoted from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa by the editor Dr. Hall in pp. 189 ff. The original germ of these accounts is evidently to be found in the passage of the Atharva-veda, from which the short text I have cited is taken.

Prīthu's reign is also described in the Dronaparvan, 2394 ff., and Sāntīparvan, 1030 ff.

Page 286, line 8 from the foot.

The Sṛinjayas are mentioned in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xii. 9, 3, 1 ff. and 13 (see Weber's Indische Studien, i. 207), as opposing without effect the celebration of a sacrifice which was proposed to be offered for the restoration of Duṣṭarītu Paunsāyana to his ancestral kingdom.

Page 345, line 24.

Professor Aufrecht has pointed out to me a short passage in the Taittirīya Sanhitā, iii. 1, 7, 2, in which Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni are mentioned together as contending with Vasishṭha: *Viśvāmitra-Jamadagnī Vasishṭhena asparddhetām | sa etaj Jamadagnir vihayam apaśyat | tena vai sa Vasishṭhasya indriyaṁ vīryam avṛinkta | yad vihayam śasyate indriyam eva tad vīryam yajamāno bhrātrīryasya vṛinkte | yasya bhūyāmso yajna-krataḥ ity āhuḥ sa devatāḥ vṛinkte |* "Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni were contending with Vasishṭha. Jamadagni beheld this vihayya text, and with it he destroyed the vigour and energy of Vasishṭha. When the vihayya is recited, then the sacrificer destroys the vigour and energy of his enemy. He whose oblations and all attendant ceremonies are superior destroys the gods (of his opponent)."

Page 366, note 164.

In a notice of Lāṭyāyana's Sūtras, in Indische Studien, i. 50, Professor Weber observes: "At the same time I remark here that the presence of Sūdras at the ceremonies, although on the outside of the sacrificial ground, was permitted—a point which results from the fact that during the dīkshā they were not to be addressed (iii. 3). Here and there a Sūdra appears as acting, although in a degraded position. Compare iv. 3, 5: *āryo* (i.e. *vaiśyaḥ*, according to the commentator Agnisvāmin) *antarvedi . . . bahirvedi śūdraḥ | āryābhāve yaḥ kaś*

oḥa āryyo varṇaḥ (*brāhmaṇo vā kṣhattriyo vā*, Agnisvāmin). Thus their position, like that of the Nishādas, was not so wretched as it became afterwards. Toleration was still necessary; indeed the strict Brahmanical principle was not yet generally recognized among the nearest Arian races. This is shown by the following fact. Before entering on the Vrātya-stomas, Lāṭyāyana treats, viii. 5, of an imprecatory rite called Syena (the falcon), which is not taught in the Panchaviṃśa, but in the Shaḍviṃśa (iv. 2). The tribes mentioned by Pāṇini, v. 3, 112 ff., are there described: *Vrātīnānām⁶ yaudhānām puttrān anūchānān ṛitviḥ vṛiṇṭa śyenasya* | “*arhatām eva*” *iti S’āṇḍilyaḥ*⁷ | (“Let the learned sons of warriors, who live by the profession of Vrātas, be chosen as priests for the Syena. ‘The sons of arhats only’ [should be chosen] says S’āṇḍilya”). “Whilst,” proceeds Prof. W., “in the beginning of the Sūtra nine things are required for a ṛitvij (priest), viz. that he should be (1) ārsheyaḥ (*ā dasamāt purushād aṇyavachhinnam ārsheyaḥ*, ‘able to trace his unbroken descent for ten generations in the family of a rishi’); (2) anūchānaḥ (*śishyebhyo vidyā-sampradānaḥ yaḥ kṛitavān*, “one who has imparted knowledge to pupils’); (3) sādhu-charaṇaḥ (*shaṭsu brāhmaṇa-karmasv avasthitaḥ praśasta-karmā*, ‘one who has practised the six duties of a Brāhmaṇa, a man of approved conduct’); (4) vāgmī (eloquent); (5) anyūnāngaḥ (without deficiency in his members); (6) anātikāṅgaḥ (without superfluous members); (7) dvēsataḥ (equal in length above and below the navel); (8) anātikṛishṇaḥ; (9) anātiśvetaḥ (*na atibālo na atividdhaḥ*, ‘neither too young nor too old’),—Lāṭyāyana here contents himself with putting forward one only of these requirements, the second (i.e. that the priest should be ‘learned’), as essential. The title Arhat for teacher, which was at a later period used exclusively by the Buddhists, is found in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, (iii. 4, 3, 6) and the Taittirīya Aranyaka,⁸ and

⁶ *Nanā-jātīyāḥ aniyata-vṛittayaḥ utsedha-jīvināḥ sanghāḥ vrātāḥ* | (Pāṇjali, quoted by Weber) “Vrātas are the various classes of people who have no fixed profession, and live by violence.” *Vrātena śarīrāyāsena jīvati vrātīnaḥ* (Comm. on Pāṇini, v. 2, 21) “He who lives by bodily labour is a vrātīna.” The word means “he who lives by the labour usual among Vrātas,” according to another comment cited by Weber.

⁷ *Arhatām eva varaṇam kartavyam iti S’āṇḍilyaḥ* | “Arhats only are to be chosen, says S’āṇḍilya” (Agnisvāmin, quoted by Weber).

⁸ It also occurs in Ait. Br. i. 15 (see Būthlingk and Roth, s.v.). To his translation of this passage Dr. Haug appends the following note: “The term is *arhat*, a word

is known in the *Gaṇa Brāhmaṇa* (Pāṇini, v. 1, 124). The *Yaudhāḥ* and *Arhantaḥ* are the forerunners of the *Rājanyas* and the *Brāhmins*. According to Professor Weber, Ind. St. i. 207, note, a *Sthapati* "means, according to *Kātyāyana's Srauta Sūtras*, xxii. 11, 11, a *Vaiśya*, or any other person (according to *Kātyāyana*, i. 1, 12, he may even be a *Nishāda*) who has celebrated the *Gosava* sacrifice, after being chosen by his subjects to be their ruler."

Page 378, lines 1-3.

Compare *Dronaparvan*, verse 2149 : *nanv eśhām niśchitā nishthā nishthā saptapadī smṛitā* |

Page 400, line 9 from bottom.

If further proof of this sense of *brahmarshi* be wanted, it may be found in the words *viprarshi* and *dvijarshi*, which must be regarded as its synonymes, and which can only mean "Brāhman-rishi."

Page 423, line 12, and foot-note.

The same verse with some variations is repeated in the *Anuśāsana-parvan*, verse 6262 : *Rājā Mitrasahaś chaiva Vaśishthāya mahātmane | Madayantīm priyām bhāryyām datvā cha tridivān gataḥ* | "And king *Mitrasaha*, having bestowed his dear wife *Madayanti* on the great *Vaśishtha*, went to heaven." Here, it will be observed, the name *Madayanti* is correctly given.

Page 423, line 17.

This stanza is repeated in *Anuśāsana-parvan*, verse 6250, with the following variation in the second line : *arghyam pradāya vidhivā lebhe lokān anuttamān* |

Page 436, line 5 from the foot.

I find that two other instances of *Brāhmins* receiving instruction from *Rājanyas* are alluded to by Professor Weber, Ind. Stud. x. 117.

well known, chiefly to the students of Buddhism. *Sūyana* explains it by "a great Brāhman, or a Brāhman (in general)." In reference to another part of the sentence in which this word occurs, Dr. Haug adds : "That cows were killed at the time of receiving a most distinguished guest is stated in the *Smṛitis*. But as *Sūyana* observes (which entirely agrees with opinions held now-a-days), this custom belongs to former *yugas* (periods of the world). Thence the word *goghna*, i.e. 'cowkiller,' means in the more ancient Sanskrit books 'a guest' (see the commentators on Pāṇini, 3, 4, 73) for the reception of a high guest was the death of the cow of the house."

The first is recorded in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, x. 6, 1, 2 ff.; where it is stated that six Brāhmins, who were at issue with one another regarding Vaiśvānara (Agni), and were aware that king Aśvapati the Kaikeya was well informed on the subject, repaired to him for instruction and requested that he would treat them as his pupils. He first asked them 'if they were not themselves learned in the Veda as well as the sons of learned men, and how they could in that case come to consult him' ("Yan nu bhagavanto'nūchānāḥ anūchāna-putrāḥ | kim idam" iti). They, however, persisted in their request, when he asked them severally what they considered Vaiśvānara to be, expressed his concurrence in their replies, though all different, as partial solutions of the question, and ended by giving them some further insight into the subject of their enquiry. The second instance is taken from the Chhāndogya Upanishad, i. 8, 1, which commences thus: *Trayo ha udgīthe kuśalāḥ bābhūvaḥ S'ilakaḥ S'ālāvatyas Chaikitāyano Dālbyaḥ Pravāhaṇo Jaivalir iti | te ha ūchur "udgīthe kathām vadāma" iti | 2. "Tathā" iti ha samupavivīṣuḥ | sa ha Pravāhaṇo Jaivalir uvācha "bhagavantāḥ agre vadatām | brāhmaṇayor vadator vāchaṁ śroshyāmi" iti |* "Three men were skilled in the Udgītha, S'ilaka Sālāvatyā, Chaikitāyana Dālbya, and Pravāhaṇa Jaivali. They said, 'We are skilled in the Udgītha; come let us discuss it.' (Saying) 'so be it,' they sat down. Pravāhaṇa Jaivali said, 'Let your reverences speak first; I will listen to the discourse of Brāhmins discussing the question.'" S'ilaka Sālāvatyā then asked Chaikitāyana Dālbya a series of questions; but was dissatisfied with his final reply. Being interrogated in his turn by Chaikitāyana, S'ilaka answered; but his answer was disapproved by Pravāhaṇa Jaivali, who finally proceeded to supply the proper solution.

In two other passages the same Upanishad, as quoted above in p. 195, and explained by the commentator, recognizes the fact of sacred science being possessed, and handed down, by Kshattriyas. See also the note on p. 220, above, p. 508. The doctrines held by Rājanyas are not, however, always treated with such respect. In the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, viii. 1, 4, 10, an opinion in regard to breath (*prāṇa*) is attributed to Svārijit Nāgnajita, or Nagnajit the Gāndhāra, of which the writer contemptuously remarks that "he said this like a Rājanya" (*Yat sa tad uvācha rājanyabandhur iva tv eva tad uvācha*); and he then proceeds to refute it (see Weber's Indische Studien, i. 218). It appears that the Smṛiti

recognizes the possibility of a Brāhman becoming in certain circumstances the pupil of a Rājanya or a Vaiśya. Thus Manu says, ii. 241 : *Abrahmanād adhyayanam āpat-kāle vidhīyate | anuvrajyā cha śūśrūṣhā yāvād adhyayanam guroḥ |* 242. *Nābrāhmaṇe gurau śiṣhyo vāsam ātyantikaṁ vaset | brāhmaṇe chānanūchāne kāṅkṣan gatim anuttamām |* 241. "In a time of calamity it is permitted to receive instruction from one who is not a Brāhman; and to wait upon and obey such a teacher during the period of study. 242. But let not a pupil, who aims at the highest future destiny, reside for an excessive period with such a teacher who is not a Brāhman, or with a Brāhman who is not learned in the Veda." Kullūka explains this to mean that when a Brāhman instructor cannot be had a Kshattriya may be resorted to, and in the absence of a Kshattriya, a Vaiśya.

Page 457, note 241.

When I wrote this note, I did not advert to the difficulty presented by the word *didāsithā*, which has at once the form of a desiderative verb, and of the second person of the perfect tense. Bühtlingk and Roth, *s.v. dā*, on a comparison of the two parallel passages, suppose that the present reading of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa is corrupt as regards this word, which, as they quote it, is *didāsithā*. May not the correct reading be *dādāsithā* from the root *dās*?

Page 461, line 14.

The Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, ii. 2, 4, 4 f., says of Prajāpati : *So 'surān asṛijata | tad asya apriyam āsīt |* 5. *Tad durvarṇaṁ hiraṇyam abhavat | tad durvarṇasya hiraṇyasya janma | . . . sa devān asṛijata tad asya priyam āsīt | tad suvarṇasya hiraṇyasya janma |* "He created Asuras. That was displeasing to him. 5. That became the precious metal with the bad colour (silver). This was the origin of silver. . . . He created gods. That was pleasing to him. That became the precious metal with the good colour (gold). That was the origin of gold."

INDEX OF PRINCIPAL NAMES AND MATTERS.

A

- Abhimāna, 201
 Abhishnūtas, 353
 Abhiyuktas, 500
 Achala, 400
 Achhāvāka, 155
 Adhipurusha, 111
 Adharma, 124
 Adhvaryu, 41, 155, 251,
 263, 294, 459
 Aditi, 18, 26, 72, 116, 122,
 221
 Ādityas, 19 f., 26, 52, 117,
 126, 157, 270
 Adrisyanti, 417
 Agastya, or Agasti, 309 ff.,
 321, 330, 442, 461
 Aghamarshaṇa, 279
 Aghamarshaṇas, 353
 Agni, 10, 16, 20 f., 33, 52,
 71, 75, 165, 177 f., 180,
 270
 — one of the triad of
 deities, 75
 Agnidh, 251
 Agnidhra, 155
 Agnidhra (king), 491
 Agnihotra, 21, 428
 Agni Purāṇa, 210
 Agnisvāmin, 512
 Agnivesya, 223
 Agnivesyāyana, 223
 Ahalyā, 235, 310, 466
 — the first woman, 121
 Ahankāra, 201
 Ahavanīya fire, 428
 Ahi, 250, 340
 Ahura Mazda, 293
 Āindra - bārhaspatya obla-
 tion, 22
- Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, 5
 quoted—
 ii. 33,—180
 — 34,—166
 iii. 31,—177
 — 34,—143
 v. 14,—191
 vii. 15,—48
 — 17,—355
 — 19,—367 f.
 — 27,—436
 viii. 14,—492
 — 21,—325, 456
 — 23,—369, 493
 — 24, 27,—367
 — 33,—107
 Ājagava, 301
 Ajaka, 349
 Ajamiḍha, 234, 267, 279,
 360, 413
 Ajūtasatru, 431
 Ajigartta, 355 ff., 360
 Ajita, 279
 Akampana, 505
 Ākāśa, 115, 130, 506
 Akriya, 232
 Akshamālā, 336
 Akuli, 159
 Akūti, 65, 73
 Alarka, 232
 Amarāvati, 494
 Amāvasu, 349
 Ambarisha, 224, 266, 279,
 362, 405
 Ambushtha, 481, 495
 Ambhūmī, 23, 58, 79, 80
 Āmśa, 27
 Anagha, 335
 Anālū, 116
 Ananta, 207
 Anantū, 114
 Anavadyā, 116
- Andhras, 358, 483 f.
 Anenas, 226
 Anga, 232, 298, 464
 Angas, 459
 Angiras, 36, 65, 116, 122 f.,
 151, 168, 172, 184, 224 f.,
 226, 279, 286, 330, 341,
 445, 466
 Angirases, 192, 194, 224
 Anila, 234
 Anu, 232, 482
 Anus, 179
 Anugraha-sarga, 58
 Anukramanikā, 228, 266,
 328, 348
 Anūpā, 116
 Anushtubh, 16
 Anuvratas, 500
 Apaśya, 279
 Āpastamba, 2
 Āpava, 453
 Āpayā, 345
 Apnavāna, 447
 Apratiratha, 234
 Āpsarases, 33, 37, 177, 320,
 419, etc.
 Āraṇyakas, 2, 5, 32
 Arhat, 511, 513
 Arishtaṇemi, 116, 125
 Arjuna, 449 ff., 497
 Arjuna (the Pāṇḍu), 494
 Arka, 241
 Arrian, quoted, 370
 Arishtishēṇa, 272, 279
 Ārtavas, 18
 Aruṇas, 32, 449
 Arundhatī, 336, 389
 Arurmaghas, 438
 Arushī, 124, 476
 Ārvāksrotas, 57, 61, 65,
 157

Ārya, 18
 Āryaman, 27, 158
 Āryyas, 174 ff., 396, 481
 — their language, 141, 482
 Āryakas, 498
 Asat, 46
 Asitamrigas, 438
 Ashtaka, 279, 352, 357
 Asmasārin, 276
 Āsramas, 98
 Asurā, 116
 Asuras, 23, 24, 29, 33, 37, 58, 79, 130, 139, 177, 187, 228, 469, etc., etc.
 — their priests, 189 f.
 Āsuri, 430
 Āśvalāyanas's S'rauta Sūtras, 137, 511
 Āśvamedha (proper name), 267
 Āśvatara, 336
 Āsvins, 166, 470, etc.
 Atharvan (the sage), 162, 169
 — his cow, 395
 Atharvas, 293
 Atharva-veda, 2
 quoted—
 iii. 19, 1,—283
 — 24, 2,—179
 iv. 6, 1,—21
 — 6, 2,—490
 — 14, 4,—179
 — 29, 3, 5,—330
 v. 8, 5,—289
 — 11, 1-11,—395
 — 17, 1-18,—280
 — 18, 1-16,—284
 — 19, 1-15,—286
 vi. 120, 3,—385
 — 123, 3 f.—137
 vii. 104,—395
 viii. 2, 21,—46
 — 10, 24,—217, 511
 — 108, 1-5,—254
 ix. 5, 1,—503
 — 5, 27,—282, 385
 x. 8, 7,—9
 xi. 10, 2,—32
 xii. 1, 15,—163
 — 3, 17,—385
 — 5, 4-15,—287
 xiii. 3, 14,—171
 — 4, 29,—9
 xv. 8, 1,—22
 — 9, 1,—22

Atharva-veda *continued*—
 xviii. 3, 15,—330
 — 3, 23,—385
 — 3, 34,—179
 xix. 6, 1 ff.—8, 9
 — 6, 6,—10
 — 9, 12,—288
 — 22, 21,—288
 — 23, 30,—288
 — 43, 8,—289
 — 62, 1,—282
 Atibalā, 116
 Ātmavat, 279
 Atri, 36, 61, 116, 122 f., 171 f., 178, 225, 242, 248, 267, 303, 330, 468
 Atyarāti, 493
 Audumbaras, 353
 Aufrecht, Professor, his Catalogue of Bodleian Sanskrit MSS. referred to, 203
 — information or suggestions from him, 14, 19, 20, 29, 93, 137, 163 f., 210, 247 f., 254 ff., 319, 325 f., 340, 346, 389, 395, 512
 Augha, 217
 Aupamanyava, 177
 Aurva, 279, 445, 447, 448 f., 476
 — Āvantyas, 486
 Avyakta, 41
 Ayūśva, 355
 Ayodhyā, 115
 Ayu, 170, 171 f., 174, 180
 Ayus, 170
 Āyus (king), 226, 308, 353

B

Bābhravas, 356
 Bābhrus, 353
 Badarī, 199
 Bāhu, 486
 Bahuputra, 116
 Bahvasva, 235
 Bala, 279
 Balā, 116
 Balāhaka, 207
 Balākūśva, 353
 Bālakhilyas, 32, 305, 400
 Bāleya, 232
 Bali, 232
 Balis, 469

Banerjee, Rev. Prof., his Dialogues on Hindu Philosophy referred to, 120
 — his edition of the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa referred to, 223
 Banga, 232
 Barbaras, 482
 Baresma, 293
 Bauddhas, 305
 Benfey, Prof., his translation of the Sāma-veda quoted, 164
 — his glossary to ditto, 490
 — his translation of the Rig-veda quoted or referred to, 167, 180, 247, 331, 348
 Bhagavadgītā quoted, 508
 Bhadrā, 389, 467
 Bhadrās'va (a division of Jambudvīpa), 491
 Bhaga, 27
 Bhāgavata Purāṇa—
 i. 3, 15,—213
 — 3, 20,—350
 ii. 1, 37,—156
 — 5, 34,—155
 iii. 6, 29,—156
 — 12, 20,—108
 — 20, 25,—157
 — 22, 2,—156
 iv. 1, 40,—335
 v. 1, 30,—489
 — 16, 2,—490
 — 17, 11,—496
 — 20, 4, 6,—498
 — 20, 11,—499
 — 20, 16, 22,—500
 — 20, 28,—501
 vi. 6, 40,—158
 vii. 11, 24,—366
 viii. 5, 41,—157
 — 24, 7,—208
 ix. 2, 16,—222
 — 2, 17,—223
 — 2, 21,—223
 — 2, 23 ff.—222
 — 6, 2,—224
 — 7,—358
 — 7, 6,—386
 — 13, 3,—316
 — 14, 48,—158
 — 15, 5,—457
 — 16, 17,—458
 — 16, 30,—368

**Bhāgavata Purāṇa con-
tinued—**

- ix. 17, 2,—227
— 17, 10,—232
— 20, 1,—234
— 21, 19,—237
— 21, 21,—235
— 21, 33,—235
— 22, 14,—275
x. 33, 27,—113
Bhalandana, and Bhalanda
a Vais'ya mantra-kṛit,
279
Bhayamāna, 266
Bharadvāja, 141, 279, 330
Bharata, 168, 234, 242,
354, 360, 413
Bhārata, 187, 348
Bharatas, 320, 338, 340,
354
Bhāratas, 344
Bhāratavarsha, 491, 494 ff.
Bhārati, 112
Bhārga, or Bhārga, 231
Bhārgabhūmi, 231
Bhārgava, 228
Bharmyaśva, 235
Bhāsi, 116
Bhāvins, 498
Bheda, 319, 323
Bhīma, 133, 142, 308, 349
Bhīmaśūda, 207
Bhīmasena, 273
Bhīras, 495
Bhīshma, 127
Bhṛigu, 36, 65, 67, 122,
139, 151, 168, 228 f.,
279, 286, 314, 443 ff.
Bhṛigu Vārūṇi, 443
Bhṛigubhūmi, 231
Bhṛigus, 169 f., 228, 442 ff.
Bhṛitakīla, 279
Bhumanyu, 360
Bhūrloka, 51, 209, 211
Bhūtakṛitas, 37, 42, 255
Bhūtānāmpati, 16
Bhūtāpati, 108
Bhūtas, 59
Bhūtāvīras, 438
Boar incarnation, 51 ff.,
54, 76
Böhtlingk and Roth's Lexi-
con referred to, 47, 108,
144, 178, 180, 184, 253,
340, 348, 395, 400, 442,
505, 511
Brahma S'vavasyava, 30
Brahmachārin, 289

- Brāhmān (*masculine, a
priest*), 155, 242 ff., 459
Brāhmān (*masculine, the
god*), 35, 36, 75, etc.
— his passion for his
daughter, 107
Brāhmān (*neuter, prayer*,
241
Brahman (*neuter, the uni-
versal soul*), 20
Brāhmaṇa, son of a Brāh-
mān, 252, 264
Brāhmaṇūchhāmsin, 155
Brāhmaṇas (the theologi-
cal works), 2, 4 f.
Brahmaṇaspati, 16
Brāhmāṇi, 110
Brāhmans, 7, and *passim*
— origin of the word,
252, 259, 264
— their intermarriage
with women of other
castes, 282, 481
— their prerogatives
and powers, 128, 130, etc.
Brahmaṇya, 155
Brahmaputra, 252, 259,
264
Brahmarshi, or Brāhman
rishi, 400, 407, 410
Brahmās, the nine, 65, 445
Brahmāśva, 279
Brahmaudana, 26, 27
Brahma-yuga, 152
Bréal, M. Michel, his Her-
cule et Cacus, 246
Bride's seven steps, 378,
514
Bṛihaddevatū, 321, 326,
344
Bṛihadishu, 234
Bṛihaduktha, 279
Bṛihaspati, 16, 22, 163,
167, 226, 270, 438
Bṛihat, 16
Bṛihat-sūman, 286
Buddha, 509
Buddhists, 513
Budha, 221, 226, 307, 336
Bunsen, Baron, his Philo-
sophy of Universal His-
tory referred to, 8
Burnouf, M. Eugène, his
Bhāgavata Purāṇa re-
ferred to, 8, 155, 211,
489, etc.
— his views about the
Deluge, 215

O

- Chākshusha, 298
Chākshusha Manvantara,
207, 213
Chanda, 207
Chandāla, 402, 481
Caste, mythical accounts
of its origin, 7 ff.
— Variety and incon-
sistency of these ac-
counts, 34, 66, 102, 159
Castes, their future abodes,
63, 98
— their respective co-
lours, 140, 151, 153
— no natural distinction
between, 140
— manner of their rise
according to Prof. Roth,
289
— time of their rise ac-
cording to Dr. Haug, 292
Chāturvārnya, 135
Charshaṇis, 158
Chauras, 482
Chārvaṅkas, 305
Chhandas, 4
Chhandogas, 334
Chhāndogya Brāhmaṇa, 5
— Upanishad, iii. 11,
4,—195, 514
— iv. 1, 4,—49
— v. 3, 1,—435
— vii. 15, 1,—195
Chīnas, 482, 484
Chīriṇi, a river, 199
Cholas, 488
Chunchulus, 353
Chyavana, 124, 273, 283,
445, 470, 474
Colebrooke's Miscellaneous
Essays quoted or referred
to, 8, 13 f., 25, 52, 325,
378, 385, 492, 497
Cowell's, Professor E. B.,
translation of Kaushī-
takī Brāhmaṇa Upani-
shad, 10, 432
— Preface to, quoted, 32
Creation of man, mythical
accounts of, 7 ff.
— their mutual incon-
sistency, 34, 65, 102
— how explained by
Indian commentators, 66
Creations, similarity of suc-
cessive, 60, 89

D

Dadhīcha, 279
 Dadhyanch, 162, 169, 172
 Daityas, 41, 139, 499
 Daivavāta, 348
 Daivodāsa, 348
 Dakṣha, 9, 65, 72, 116,
 122, 124 ff., 153, 221,
 335
 Dakṣhāyaṇī, Aditi, 126
 Dama, 222
 Damayantī, 389
 Damayantī, see Madayantī
 Damins, 500
 Dānavas, 139, 144, 209,
 468 f., 499
 Dānavratas, 501
 Danūyū, 123
 Daṇḍakas, 467
 Danu, 116, 123
 Daradas, 459, 482
 Darvas, or Dārvas, 482, 488
 Dāsa, 174, 323, 396
 Dasahotri, 29
 Dasaratha, 362
 Daśārṇa, 222
 Dasyus, 174 ff., 358, 460,
 469, 482, 500
 Dattātreyā, 450, 473, 478
 Day of Brahmā, 43, 48,
 213
 — gods, 43
 Deities, triad of, produced
 from the three Guṇas, 75
 Deluge, legend of, 183, 199,
 203, 209, 211
 — was the tradition of
 it indigenous or not, 215
 — comparison of differ-
 ent Indian accounts of,
 216
 Devadeva, 351
 Devakas, 500
 Devala, 352
 Devalas, 353
 Devāpi, 269
 Devarāja, 279
 Devarāta, 279, 351 f., 356,
 413
 Devarātas, 353
 Devarshi, 400
 Devas, 79, 499
 Devasarman, 466
 Devasravas, 344, 352 f.
 Devavat, 322
 Devavāta, 344
 Dhānājapya, 363

Dhānanjaya, 279
 Dhanur-veda, 477
 Dhanvantari, 226
 Dhanyas, 500
 Dharma, 20, 122, 124, 385,
 400, 412
 Dhūrshṭakas, 223
 Dhāttri, 18, 27, 124
 Dhī, 241
 Dhṛishṇu, 126
 Dhṛishṭa, 221, 223
 Dhṛitarāshtri, 117
 Dhruva, 234, 298
 Dīrghatamas, 226, 232,
 247, 268, 279
 Dīrghatapās, 233
 Dīrghasattra, 300
 Dishṭa, 222
 Diti, 116, 123
 Divodāsa, 229 f., 235, 268,
 279, 322, 348
 Dogs, whether they fast
 from religious motives,
 365
 Draupadī, 381, 389
 Dravida, 209
 Dravidas, or Drāviḍas, 482
 Draviṇas, 500
 Dṛidhanetra, 400
 Dṛiptabālāki Gārgya, 432
 Dṛishadvati, 344
 Drona, 207
 Druhyu, 232, 482
 Druhyus, 179
 Duḥśima, 305
 Durga, commentator on
 the Nirukta, quoted,
 344, 417
 Durgaha, 267
 Duritakshaya, 237
 Durvāsas, 387, 389
 Dushyanta, 234, 360
 Dvāpara, 39, 43 ff., 119,
 146, 149 f., 447
 Dvīpas, 51, 489 ff.
 Dwarf incarnation, 52, 54,
 233
 Dyaus (the sky), *feminine*,
 108
 — *masculine*, 163, 396,
 434

E

Earth, the goddess, 51, 163
 Earth fashioned, 51 ff., 76
 — milked, 96

Egg, the mundane, 35, 74,
 156, 503
 Ekadāsinī, 69
 Ekavimsa, 16
 Elysian fields, 502
 Emūsha, 53

F

Families, hope of their re-
 union in a future life,
 385
 Fathers, see Pitrīs
 Fish incarnation, 50, 54,
 111, 183, 199, 205, 209,
 211
 Flood, see Deluge

G

Gabhastimat, 494
 Gabhīra, 232
 Gādhi, 343, 349, and *passim*
 Gālava, 232, 352, 411
 Gālavas, 353
 Gandhamādana, 491
 Gāndhāras, 484
 Gāndharva, 494
 Gandharvas, 33, 37, 59,
 139, 144, 177, 250, 257,
 499
 — their heaven, 63, 98,
 307
 Gangā, 130, 199, 206, 461,
 490
 Garga, 227, 236, 279, 305
 Gārgya Bālāki, 431
 Gārgyas, 236
 Gārhapatya-fire, 186
 Gāthin, 348, 358
 Gāthins, 358, 363
 Gātra, 335
 Gautama, 121, 235, 316,
 434, 466
 Gavishthira, 330
 Gaya, 227
 Gayatri, 16, 110, 114, 137
 Genesis, i. 2, — 52
 Gifts to priests, 259
 Gir, 241
 Gods, intercourse of men
 with, in early ages, 147
 — whether they can
 practise Vedic rites, 365
 Goldstücker, Professor, aid
 received from, 508

Gopatha Brāhmaṇa, 5
 Gorresio, his edition of the
 Rāmāyana referred to,
 397, 399, etc.
 Gotama, 330
 Grāvan, 165
 Griffith, Principal, MS. ob-
 tained through him, 279
 Grihya Sūtras, 5
 Gritsa, 279
 Gritsamada, 226
 Gritsamati, 227
 Gubernatis, Signor A. de,
 quoted, xii.
 Guṇas, 66, 75, 145
 Gurudhira, 279

H

Haihaya, 477
 Haihayas, 449, 486
 Haimavati, 336
 Hala, 121
 Hall's, Dr. Fitzedward,
 edition of Wilson's
 Vishnu Purāṇa, 24,
 268, 512 and *passim*
 — information given
 by, 155
 — Preface to his edition
 of the Sāṅkhya-prava-
 chana-bhāṣya referred
 to, 430
 Hansa, 158
 Hansas, 498
 Hanūmat, 143
 Hari, 51, 62
 Harita, 224
 Harita, 352
 Haritas, 225
 Hārītaka, 351
 Hariśchandra, 355, 379 ff.,
 413, 486
 Harivaṁśa quoted—
 292,—302
 652,—223
 659,—221
 718,—376
 773,—487
 789,—230
 1425,—351
 1456,—351
 1520,—227
 1596,—231
 1682,—233
 1732,—227
 1752,—231
 1766,—352

Harivaṁśa continued—

1781,—236
 1819,—273
 8811,—307
 11355,—154
 11802,—153
 11808,—152
 Harivarsha, 491, 494
 Harsha, 124
 Haryasva, 279
 Haug's, Dr. Martin, Aita-
 reya Brāhmaṇa quoted
 or referred to, 4, 5, 48,
 107, 137, 177, 180, 192,
 246, 250, 256, 263, 355,
 369, 438 f., 492 f., 513
 — Origin of Brāhma-
 nism quoted, 11, 14, 292
 Haughton, Sir G. C., his
 note on Manu, vii. 41,—
 296
 Hayagrīva, 207, 212
 Havishyanda, 400
 Hayasiras, 449
 Hema, 232
 Hemakūṭa, 491
 Himavat, or Himālaya,
 130, 183, 200, 229, 311,
 491
 Hiraṇmaya, 491
 Hiranyagarbha, 195, 220
 Hiranyāksha, 352
 Hiranyākshas, 353
 Homer's Odyssey quoted,
 502
 Hostility to Vedic wor-
 ship, 259
 Hotri, 155, 251, 263, 271,
 294, 459
 Houses, origin of, 93
 Irishīkeśa, 206
 Huhu, 336
 Human sacrifices, 11 f.
 Hūṇas, 495
 Hymns of the Rig-veda, 4,
 318
 — whether they allude
 to castes as already
 existing, 161 ff.
 I
 Idā, 268, 279, 306
 Idā, daughter of Manu,
 184 ff. see Ilā
 Ikshvāku, 115, 126, 177,
 195, 221, 224, 268, 327,
 355, 362, 401, 405, 508

Ikshvāku, 401, 418
 Ilā, 126, 221, 306, see Idā
 Ilāvrita, 491
 Indra, 3, 10, 18, 20, 33,
 44, 163, 168, 171, 191,
 438
 Indra's heaven, 63, 98
 — wife, 341
 — his adulteries, 121,
 310, 466
 Indra-dvīpa, 494
 Indrāṇī, 310, 389
 Indu (Soma), 124
 Instrumental cause, 51
 Isaiah vi. 9, 10,—255
 Īśūna, 20
 Ishiratha, 348
 Ishundharas, 499
 Īśvara, 75, 221
 Itihāsas, 3, 5, 215

J

Jābāli, 115
 Jahnu, 273, 349, 353, 360,
 413
 Jahnu, 358
 Jaimini's Sūtras, 508
 Jainas, 305
 Jamadagni, 279, 330, 345,
 350, 355, 413, 422, 447,
 450 ff.
 Jamadagnis, 342
 Jambudvīpa, 488, 490 ff.
 Jambūnada, 461
 Janaka, 130, 334, 426 ff.
 Janaloka, 44, 51, 88, 95,
 99
 Janamejaya, 152, 438
 Janantapa, 493
 Janārdana, 206
 Japa, 442
 Jātayus, 116
 Jātimālā, 497
 Jātukarṇya, 223
 Jaya, 352
 Jayakṛita, 351
 Jayapīḍa, 424
 Journal of the Royal Asia-
 tic Society quoted, 3, 6,
 and *passim*
 Jyotsnā, 59

K

Ka, 125
 Kachhapa, 351 f.

Kadrū, 123
 Kakshivat, 268, 279
 Kāla, 62
 Kālā, 123
 Kālākā, 116
 Kalāpa, 277
 Kālī, 39, 43 ff., 120, 146, 150, 495
 Kalindas, 482
 Kalinga, 232
 Kalingas, 459, 495
 Kalmashapāda, 414, 423
 Kalpas, 43 ff.
 Kāma, 112, 124
 Kāmarūpa, 495
 Kāmbojas, 482f., 435 ff.
 Kānchana, 349
 Kānchis, 391
 Kāṇḍapriṣṭha, 442, 507
 Kāṇḍarpa, 408
 Kāṇḍarshi, 400
 Kānīna, 223
 Kankas, 484
 Kānyakubja, 390
 Kanva, 166, 170, 172, 234, 279
 Kāṇvāyana, 234
 Kapas, 472
 Kapi, 237
 Kapila, 227, 414
 Kapilā, 123
 Kapilas, 499
 Kāpileyas, 356
 Kapishthala, 344
 Kārdama, 116, 123, 400
 Kārishis, 353
 Karmadevas, 46
 Kārtavīrya, 450, 478
 Kārūsha, 221 f.
 Kārūsha, 126
 Kārūshas, 495
 Kāsa, or Kāsaka, 226 f.
 Kās'erumat, 494
 Kāsīrāja, 226
 Kāsīs, 431
 Kāsmīras, 459
 Kāśya, 227, 279
 Kāśyapa, 37, 54, 115 f., 123 f., 126, 195, 230, 400, 451, 455 f., 459
 Kāśyapas, 438
 Kāthaka Brāhmaṇa quoted, 140, 186, 189, 332 f., 358
 Kati, 352
 Kātyāyanas, 352
 Kātyāyana's S'ranta Sūtras, 19, 136, 365 ff., 369, 514

Kaumūra-sarga, 58
 Kaushitakī Brāhmaṇa quoted, 328
 — Upanishad, 10, 431
 Kausika, 342, 349
 Kausika (epithet of Indra), 347
 Kausikas, 353, etc.
 Kaus'iki, 350, 411
 Kavi, 243, 279, 445
 Keralas, 488
 Kesara-prābandhā, 285
 Ketumāla, 491
 Ketus, 32
 Khalins, 468
 Khandapāṇi, 235
 Khāṇḍavāyanas, 451
 Khasas, 482
 Khyāti, 67
 Kīkatas, 342
 Kilāta, 189
 Kimpurusha, 491 f.
 Kimpurushas, 499
 Kināsa, 97
 Kinnaras, 37
 Kins'uka, 229
 Kīratas, 391, 482, 484 f.
 Kolisarpas, 482, 488
 Konvasiras, 482
 Kovidas, 500
 Kratu, 36, 65, 116, 122 f., 400
 Krauncha-dvīpa, 491, 500
 Kraunchī, 117
 Kripa, 279
 Kṛishna, 113
 Kṛishnas, 499
 Kṛishṭī, 178
 Kṛita, 39, 43 ff., 88, 90 ff., 119, 144, 148 f., 158, 492, 495, 505
 Kṛitamālā, 209, 212
 Kṛitavīrya, 449 ff., 478
 Krodha, 123
 Krodhavasā, 116
 Kshattravṛiddha, 226
 Kshattrī, 481
 Kshattrīyas, 7, and *passim*
 — etymology of the word, 97, 504
 — how their race was restored, 452
 Kshemaka, 235
 Kshudrakas, 459
 Kuhn, Dr. A., quoted, 179
 Kulakas, 500
 Kullūka quoted, 36, 47, 129, 279, 480, 483

Kumārila Bhaṭṭa referred to or quoted, 122, 509
 Kuntis, 459
 Kūrma avatāra, see Tortoise incarnation
 Kurus, 5, 269, 431, 495
 Kurus, 498
 Kuśa, 227, 349, 351, 397
 Kuśa-dvīpa, 491, 497, 499
 Kuśalas, 500
 Kuśāmba, 349, 351
 Kuśanūbha, 351, 397
 Kuśika, 338, 340, 346, 400, 474
 Kusikas, 342 f., 346, 355, etc.
 Kusumāyudha (a name of Kāma), 112
 Kutsa, 330 f.
 Kuvera, 140, 279, 400

L

Lakshmī, 124
 Lalita-vistara, 32
 Langlois, M., translator of the Harivaṁśa, 151
 — of the Rig-veda, 273, 321
 Lassen's Indian Antiquities quoted, 394, 425
 Lātas, 482
 Lātyāyana's Sūtras, 512
 Lecky, Mr., his History of Rationalism, 407
 Les'a, 226
 Life of Brahmā, 49
 Liṅga Purāṇa quoted, 225
 Lohita, 279
 Lohitas, 353
 Loiseleur Deslongchamps, M., his note on Manu, vii. 41,—296
 Lokūloka mountain, 503
 Lunar race, 220, 225

M

Mada, 471 f.
 Madayanti, 419, 514
 Madhuchhandas, or Madhusyanda, 279, 347, 351 f., 357, 400, 406
 Madhusūdana Sarasvati, his Commentary on the Bhagavad Gītā quoted, 508

Madras, 484, 495

Magadhas, 495

Magadhas, 501

Magas, 501

Mahābhārata, 5 f.
quoted—

Ādi-parvan—

272,—447

869,—445

2253,—116

2459,—451

2517,—122

2550, 2574,—123

2606,—445

2610,—476

2620-2635,—117

2914,—410

3128,—124

3143,—306

3151,—308

3533,—482

3727,—360

3750,—273

4719,—418

6638,—388

6695,—342

6699,—415

6802,—448

7351,—389

8455,—389

Sabhā-parvan—

489,—379

1031,—483

1045,—494

Vana-parvan—

10137, 10201—450

11234,—143

11248,—40

12460,—308

12469,—133

12619,—147

12747,—196

12826,—48

12952,—35

12962,—10

12981,—145

13090,—40

13436,—129

14160,—178

Udyoga-parvan—

373,—310

3721,—412

3970,—336

5054,—276

Bhishma-parvan—

227,—491

346,—495

389,—148

Mahābhārata continued—

Bhishma-parvan—

410,—501

455,—500

468,—502

Drona-parvan—

2149,—414

2395,—505

2443,—459

4747,—483

S'alya-parvan—

2295,—392

2281,—272

2360,—419

S'anti-parvan—

774,—32

1741, 1792,—423, 452

2221,—304

2247,—97

2280,—370

2304,—366

2429,—484

2674,—49, 149

2682 ff.,—49

2749,—127

2819,—140

3404, 3406,—150

3408,—49

4499,—388

4507,—209

5330,—376

6130,—506

6640,—429

6930,—138

7523,—125

7548,—507

7569,—122

7573,—125

7882,—430

8550,—60

8591, 8604,—423

10058,—151

10699,—430

10118,—423

10861,—130

11221,—334

11545, 11854,—430

12658,—215

12685,—122

13088,—145

13090,—40

Anuśāsana-parvan—

183,—412

186,—352

201,—354

1867,—440

1944,—229

2103,—482

Mahābhārata continued—

Anuśāsana-parvan—

2158,—482

2160,—130

2262,—466

2718,—474

2841,—494

3732,—374

3960,—460

4104,—443

4527,—128

4579,—128

4745,—314

6208,—507

6262,—514

6250,—514

6570,—132

7187,—462

As'vamedikha-parvan—

1038,—57

Mahābhāya, 124

Mahādeva, 75, 207

— taught by Angiras,
226

Mahākālpa, 213

Mahārīoka, 156

Mahārshi, 400

Mahat, 41, 75, 114

Mahāvīrya, 237

Mahendra, 451

Mahesvara, 74

Mahidhara, 490

Mashishas, or Māhishakas,
482, 488

Māhishmati, 462, 478

Mahodaya, 402

Mahoragas, 139

Maitrāvaruṇa, 155, 244

Maitrāvaruṇi, 186

Maitrāyaṇa, 230

Maitreya, 56, 58

Maitreyas, 230

Mālavas, 459, 495

Malaya, 205

Malinātha quoted, 395

Mamatā, 247

Mūna (Agastya?), 321

Mānava-dharma-sāstra
(or Institutes of Manu)—

Quotations from—

i. 8 ff.—35

— 22, 25,—38

— 30,—60

— 31 ff.—35, 446

— 58 ff.—38, 446

— 66 ff.—43

— 69 ff.—47

— 79 f., 86,—39

Mānava-dharma-sāstra
continued—

- i. 87, 93, 97,—40
- 88 ff.,—364
- 100,—129
- ii. 29,—137
- 38 f.,—481
- 170,—138
- 225,—138
- 241,—515
- iii. 171,—275
- iv. 239 ff.,—380
- v. 1, 3,—446
- vii. 2,—446
- 3 ff.,—300
- 38 ff.,—296
- viii. 17,—380
- 110,—329
- ix. 22,—336
- 66 f.,—297
- 149 ff.,—282
- 301 f.,—49
- 503,—300
- x. 4,—480
- 7 ff.,—282
- 8,—481
- 12,—481
- 20,—481
- 43 f.,—481
- 45,—482
- 105,—358
- 108,—377
- xi. 234 ff.,—393
- 32,—398
- xii. 39 ff.,—40
- Mānāvi, 186
- Mānāvi, 189
- Mānasas, 501
- Mandagas, 501
- Mandapāla, 336
- Mandēhas, 500
- Māndhātṛi, 225, 268, 279, 484
- Mantra, 2, 4 f.
- Manu, progenitor of the Aryan Indians, 161 ff., 183 ff.
- his bull, 188 ff.
- Manu, 119, 122, 297
- Auttami, 38, 111
- Chākshusha, 38, 298
- Raivata, 38
- Saṁvaranī, 217
- Sāvarni, 217
- Svārochisha, 38, 111
- Svāyambhuva, 25, 38 f., 44, 65, 72, 106, 111, 114, 298, 489, 511

- Manu Tāmasa, 38
- Vaivasvata, 37 ff., 44, 111, 115, 126, 196, 213, 217, 221, 279, 298, 306, 508, 610
- Vivasvat, 217
- Manu (a female), 116
- Manu (=mind), 23
- Manu's Descent, 183, 217
- Manush (=Manu), 165 ff.
- Manvantaras, 43 ff.
- Mārganapriyā, 116
- Marichī, 36 f., 65, 114 ff., 122 f., 126
- Mārkaṇḍeya, 48, 199, 207
- Mārkaṇḍeya Purāna quoted, 75, 81 ff., 221 ff., 379
- Mārtaṇḍa, 126
- Mārtikāvatas, 459
- Maru, 277
- Maruts, 20, 71
- their heaven, 63, 98
- Marutta, 222
- Matanga, 411, 440
- Mātariśvan, 128, 170, 256
- Mati, 241
- Mātrikā, 158
- Matsya-avatāra, see Fish-incarnation
- Matsyas, 431
- Matsya Purāna, 1, 12—203, 49, 39,—277, 132, 98,—278, 3, 32 ff.,—108
- Matthew, Gospel of St. xiii. 14 f.,—255
- Maudgalya, 235
- Medhātithi on Manu, 47
- Medhātithi, 234
- Medhyātithi, 170
- Mekalas, 482
- Men, Five races of, 163, 176
- their original condition, 62, 117, 145, 147
- Menakā, 407, 410
- Meru, 417, 491
- Metempsychosis, 385
- Mīmāṃsa-vārttika quoted, 508
- Mithilā, 279, 430
- Mitra, 27, 184, 186, 221, etc.
- Mitrasaha, 337, 414, 423, 514
- Mitrayu, 230, 322
- Mlecchas, 41 f., 141, 482, 484

- Mṛikshīpī, 271
- Mṛityu, 20, 124, 299, 303
- Muchukunda, 140
- Mudgala, 235, 279, 352
- Mukhya-sarga, 57
- Müller's, Professor Max, Ancient Sanskrit Literature quoted or referred to, 2, 4, 5, 8, 13, 48, 122, 181, 192, 253, 263, 326, 355, 358, 366, 426, 608
- Art. in Journ. Germ. Or. Soc., 365
- Art. in Journ. Roy. As. Soc., 115, 177
- Art. in Oxford Essays, now reprinted in "Chips from a German Workshop," 226, 231
- Chips from a German Workshop, 429, 431, 490
- Preface to Rig-veda, 348, 417
- Results of Turanian Researches, 327
- Mundaka Upanishad, i. 2, 1, quoted, 3, 39
- Muni (a female), 123
- Munis, 153
- Mūtibas, 358, 483

N

- Nābhāga, 224, 268
- Nābhāga, 126, 224
- Nābhāgāriṣhta, 126, 223
- Nābhānedishṭha, 221
- Nābhāganedishṭha, 192 ff., 221
- Nāgas, 37, 140
- Nagnajit Gāndhāra, 515
- Nahush, 165, 179, 307
- Nahusha, 133, 226, 232, 297, 307 ff., 393, 410
- Naigeya sākṣā of Sāma-Saṁhitā, 14
- Naimitika-laya, 45, 209, 219
- Naubandhana, 200
- Nairītas, 124
- Namuchi, 175
- Nara, 35, 76, 353, 400
- Nārada, 36, 119, 126, 400
- Nārāyaṇa, 35, 50, 54, 76, 154, 400
- assumes different colours in different yugas, 146

Nārāyaṇi, 353

Narishyanta, 126, 221, 223

Narmadā, 207, 478

Neshtri, 155, 261

Nēve, M., Mythe des Rihavas referred to, 161

Nichasūkha, 342

Nidāna-Sūtras, 136

Niggards, 259

Night of Brahmā, 43, 209

Nīla, a mountain, 491

Nīla, 235

Nīlakantha on M.Bh., 201

Nimi, 297, 316, 337

Niramitra, 235

Nirriti, 124

Nirukta, 5

— quoted or referred

to, 3

i. 8,—256

— 20,—147

ii. 10,—269

— 24,—338

— 25,—340

iii. 4,—26

— 7,—165

— 8,—177

— 17,—145

iv. 19,—154

v. 11,—253

— 13,—321

vi. 30,—322

— 32,—342

ix. 6,—253

— 26,—417

x. 44,—154

xi. 19,—442

— 23,—9

xii. 10 f.,

— 34,—162

xiii. 9,—252

Nishūdas, 177, 481, 153 f.

Nishūda, birth of, 301,

303, 403, 481

Nishāda-sthapati, 366

Nishudha, 491

Nītha, 241

Nivid, 241

Nodhas, 330

Nrīga, 221

Nyūya-mūla-vistara quot-

ed, 510

O

Oḍras, 482

Oha-brahman, 265

P

Pādma-kalpa, 44, 50

Padma Purāṇa, 379

Pahlavas, 351, 391, 398,

482, 484, 486

Paijavana, 366

Pāka-yajna, 187

Pakshyū, 342

Panchachūdā, 413

Panchadasa, 16

Panchajanāh and other

parallel terms, 176

Panchālas or Pānchālas,

431, 434, 495

Panchasika, 430

Panchaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa, 5

— quoted, 417

Panchaviṃśa's stoma, 492

Pāṇḍus, 5, 127, 381

Pāṇini, 3

— referred to, 513

Pāṇins, 353

Pannagas, 144

Para, 44

Pāradas, 482, 486

Paramarshi, 400

Parameshthin, 123

Parārdha, 44

Parāsara, 66, 58, 130, 322,

417, 430, 447

Parūsava, 481

Pārśākas, 495

Parasurāma, 350, 422, 442,

447 ff., 474

Parūvasu, 455

Parikshit, 438

Parivetttri, 275

Parivitti, 275

Parjanya, 20, 270

Parsis, 293

Pārthivas, 353

Paruchhepa, 172

Parushni, 490

Parvata, 400

Pāsadyumna, 319

Passion, 51, see Rājās

Paśupati, 108, 444

Pātālas, 504

Patangas, 498

Pātṇivata (Agni), 191

Faundras, or Faundrakas,

391, 482, 484

Paurava, 353

Paurukutsi, 351

Phena, 233

Pijavana, 268, 297, 322,

338

Pisūchas, 33, 37, 140

Pitas, 499

Pitris, 23, 37, 46, 58, 79,

88, 434

Plaksha-dvīpa, 490, 497

Plants, origin of, 59, 90,

95

Plato quoted, 147

Potri, 155, 251, 263

Prachetas, 36, 116, 126,

279

Prūchetasa, 125

Prachetases, 72

Pradhā, 123

Pradhāna, 51, 74

Pradyumna, 279

Prajāpati, 16 ff., 23 f., 29 ff.,

52 ff., 68 ff., 180, 184,

444, and *passim*

— born on a lotus-leaf,

32

— his exhaustion, 68

— his heaven, 63, 98

Prajāpati Parameshthin, 19

Prakāsa, 58

Prākṛita-sarga, 58

Prakṛiti, 74 f.

Pralaya, 214, 217

Pramaganda, 342

Prāṇis, 221

Prāṇava, 158

Prasāstri, 251, 263

Praskanya, 330

Praskanyas, 234

Prastotri, 41, 155

Prasūti, 65

Pratardana, 229, 268, 455

Pratihartri, 41, 155

Pratīpa, 273

Pratiprasthātri, 136

Pratisanchara, 44

Pratisarga, 49

Pratishthātri, 155

Pratyūsha, 400

Pravāṇa Jaivali, 433, 515

Prāyascitti, 294

Pretas, 141

Prishadasva, 224, 279

Prishadhra, 126, 221

Prithū, 494

Prithavāna, 305

Prithi, or Prithu, 268, 279,

301, 304, 511

Prithivī, 434

Prithūdaka, 272

Priyamedha, 172, 235, 268

Priyavrata, 65, 72, 106,

114, 489, 491, 497

Pulaha, 36, 65, 116, 122 f., 400
Pulastya, 36, 65, 116, 122 f., 400
Pulindas, 358, 482 ff.
Pundra, 232
Pundras, 358, 483, 495
Purāṇas, 3. 5 f.
Purāṇasva, 279
Purohitas, 41. 128. 507
Puru, 232, 277, 331, 360
Pūrus, 179
Purukutsa, 266, 279, 331
Purukutsāni, 267
Purumīḥa, 267
Purūravas, 126, 128, 158, 172, 221, 226, 279, 306, 349, 497
Purusha, 9 ff., 25, 32, 34 ff., 75 f., 106, 155
Purusha-sūkta, translated and discussed, 7 ff., 34, 155 f., 159, 161
Purushas, 500
Purushottama, 51
Pūshan, 19 f., 33, 71, 270
Pushkalas, 500
Pushkara, 405
Pushkara-dvīpa, 491, 501
Pushkaras, 500
Pushkarin, 237
Pushpaka (Rāma's car), 120

R

Rabhassa, 232
Raibhya, 455
Rājanya, 10, 258, 264, etc.
Rājarshi, 266, 400
Rajas (the Guna) 41, 58, 62, 66, 75, 79, 89, 92, 141, 154
Rajas (*masculine*) 335
Rajasūya sacrifice, 20, 225
Rājataranginī quoted, 424
Raji, 226
Rākshasas, 59, 140, 144, etc.
Rākshases, 33, 37, 59, 136, 177
Rakshovāhas, 459
Rāma, 5, 112, 115, 120, 305, 337
Rāma Mārgaveya, 438

Rāmas, 495
Ramaṭhas, 485
Ramāyana, 5 f.
 — quoted—
 i. 37, 4,—405
 — 51-65,—397
 — 55, 5,—329
 — 70,—337
 — 70, 41,—362
 ii. 110, 1-7,—115
 — 110, 2,—36
 — 110, 3,—54
 — 110, 6,—337, 400
 — 111, 1,—337
 iii. 14, 5-15, 29-31, —115
 iv. 43, 38,—493
 v. 82, 13,—59
 vii. (or Uttara-kūṇḍa) 30, 19 ff,—120
 74, 8 ff,—117
Rambhā, 226, 232
Rambhā, 336, 408, 413
Ramyaka, 491
Rantibhāra and Rantināra, 234
Rantideva, 423
Rasollāsa, 62
Raspi, 292
Rathachitra, 336
Rathakūra, 336
Rathaesthas, 293
Rathantara, 16
Rathavīti, 283
Rathītara, 224
Rathwi, 292
Rati, 106, 114
Rauhināyana, 72
Rāvāna, 21, 478
Re-marriage of Indian women in early times, 282
Renu, 346, 350, 357
Renukā, 350
Renumat, 352
Ribhukshans, 165
Ribbus, 255
Richika, 349, 405, 413, 450, 453, 476
Rig-veda, 2
 — Texts of, translated¹—
 First Mandala—
 10, 1,—246
 10, 11,—347
 13, 4,—167

Rig-veda continued—

First Mandala—

14, 11,—167
 15, 5,—253
 31, 4,—172
 32, 12,—490
 33, 9,—246
 36, 10,—167, 170
 — 19,—166, 167
 44, 11,—168
 45, 3,—341
 47, 6,—330
 58, 6,—170
 63, 7,—330
 65, 1,—170
 68, 4,—164
 76, 5,—166
 80, 1,—244
 — 16,—162
 83, 5,—169
 84, 7,—259
 92, 11,—45
 94, 6,—263
 96, 5,—243
 101, 4,—260
 — 5,—246
 102, 2,—322
 106, 5,—167
 108, 7,—246
 — 8,—179
 112, 16,—171
 — 19,—331
 114, 2,—163
 117, 3,—178
 — 21,—171, 174
 122, 9,—260
 124, 2,—45
 125, 7,—260
 130, 5,—173
 — 8,—174
 139, 9,—172
 144, 4,—45
 152, 6,—46, 247
 162, 6-7, 11, 15, 16,
 163, 3,—12 [—12
 164, 15,—362
 — 34, 35,—244
 — 45,—252
 — 50,—11
 167, 7,—173
 175, 3,—174
 177, 5,—183
 182, 3,—260
 185, 9,—331

¹ A large number of texts are referred to in pp. 45, 163, 170, 171, 241, 243, 245, 259, 329, etc., but as they have not been translated they are not included in this list.

Rig-veda continued—

Second Mandala—

- 1, 2, 3,—251
- 4 ff.—270
- 2, 10,—178
- 4, 2,—170
- 7, 1, 5,—348
- 12, 6,—244
- 19, 8,—243
- 20, 4,—243
- 6,—174
- 23, 1, 2,—242
- 4,—260
- 27, 1,—72
- 33, 1,—184
- 13,—163
- 36, 5,—253
- 39, 1,—247
- 43, 2,—252

Third Mandala—

- 1, 21,—345
- 3, 6,—165
- 5, 10,—170
- 18, 4,—346
- 23, 2-4,—245, 348
- 26, 1,—346
- 29, 15,—347, 362
- 30, 20,—347
- 32, 10,—244
- 33, 1-12,—339
- 34, 9,—176, 258
- 42, 9,—347
- 43, 4, 5,—344
- 5,—247
- 49, 1,—176
- 53, 6-16, 21, 24,—340,
- 354, 372
- 9,—362
- 12,—242
- 55, 19,—181

Fourth Mandala—

- 6, 11,—173
- 9, 3, 4,—252
- 16, 9,—242
- 25, 4,—348
- 6, 7,—260
- 26, 7,—175
- 37, 1,—165
- 42, 8, 9,—266
- 44, 6,—268
- 50, 7-9,—247
- 58, 2,—248

Fifth Mandala—

- 2, 12,—173
- 21, 1,—168
- 29, 3,—248
- 31, 4,—248
- 32, 11,—178

Rig-veda continued—

Fifth Mandala—

- 12,—248
- 37, 4,—247
- 40, 5 ff., 6,—242, 469
- 8,—248
- 45, 6,—166
- 53, 2,—331
- 54, 7, 14,—247

Sixth Mandala—

- 11, 4,—177
- 14, 2,—165
- 3,—174
- 16, 1,—167
- 9,—167
- 13, 14,—169
- 19,—349
- 21, 8,—243
- 11,—175
- 44, 11,—261
- 45, 7,—244
- 46, 7,—179
- 48, 8,—165
- 49, 13,—172
- 51, 5,—163
- 61, 12,—176, 178
- 70, 2,—167
- 75, 10,—252, 253
- 19,—242

Seventh Mandala—

- 2, 3,—168
- 5,—339
- 7, 5,—249
- 8, 4,—349
- 15, 2,—178
- 18, 4, 5, 21-24,—321
- 19, 3,—331
- 20, 2,—331
- 22, 9,—243
- 25, 3,—331
- 26, 1, 2,—241
- 28, 2,—243
- 32, 10,—332
- 26,—329
- 33, 1-13,—318
- 3,—242
- 11,—244
- 35, 7,—242
- 42, 1,—249
- 53, 3,—332
- 60, 8,—332
- 64, 3,—332
- 69, 2,—176
- 70, 2,—173
- 3,—184
- 5,—243
- 72, 2,—329
- 83, 1-8,—323

Rig-veda continued—

Seventh Mandala—

- 87, 4,—325
- 88, 3-6,—325
- 91, 1,—172
- 97, 1,—176
- 3,—242
- 100, 4,—172
- 103, 1, 7, 8,—253
- 104, 13,—258
- 12-16,—326

Eighth Mandala—

- 2, 21,—46
- 4, 20,—262
- 7, 20,—249
- 9, 10,—268
- 10, 2,—166
- 15, 5,—171
- 16, 7,—245
- 17, 2,—249
- 18, 22,—173
- 19, 21,—167
- 23, 13,—165
- 27, 7,—168
- 30, 3,—164
- 31, 1,—249
- 32, 16,—249
- 33, 19,—249
- 34, 8,—168
- 36, 7,—263
- 37, 7,—263
- 43, 13, 27,—168
- 45, 39,—249
- 50, 9,—264
- 52, 1,—163
- 7,—176, 178
- 53, 1,—261
- 7,—250
- 64, 6,—341
- 66, 5,—250
- 8,—253
- 81, 30,—250
- 85, 5,—250
- 6,—181
- 87, 5,—175
- 9,—250
- 91, 1,—172
- 92, 2,—348

Ninth Mandala—

- 65, 22, 23,—177
- 66, 20,—178
- 86, 28,—181
- 92, 5,—175
- 96, 6,—250
- 11,—166
- 112, 1, 3,—250
- 113, 6,—251

**Rig-veda continued—
Tenth Mandala—**

- 14, 1,—217
 16, 6,—253
 17, 1, 2,—217
 21, 5,—169
 26, 5,—167
 28, 11,—251
 33, 4,—262
 45, 6,—178
 46, 2, 9,—170
 49, 7,—175
 52, 2,—252
 53, 4,—177
 54, 3,—181
 60, 4,—177
 61, 7,—242
 62, 5,—341
 — 7,—193
 63, 7,—166
 68, 3, 4, 5,—72
 — 8, 11,—217
 69, 3,—166
 71 and 72,—13
 71, 1-11,—254
 — 11,—245
 72, 2,—46
 — 4, 5,—72
 — 5,—9
 73, 7,—175
 75, 5,—490
 77, 1,—245
 80, 6,—165
 81 and 82,—13
 81, 2, 3,—181
 82, 3,—163, 181
 85, 3, 16, 34,—245
 — 29,—251
 — 39, 40,—257
 88, 19,—256
 89, 16,—243
 — 17,—346
 90, 1,—32
 — 1-16,—9
 91, 9,—173
 92, 10,—169
 95, 7,—306
 97, 1,—46
 97, 17, 19, 22,—256
 98, 1-12,—270
 99, 7,—173
 100, 5,—164
 105, 8,—241, 242
 107, 6,—246
 109, 1-7,—256
 — 4,—244
 117, 7,—246
 121,—13

**Rig-veda continued—
Tenth Mandala—**

- 125, 5,—246
 129,—13
 — 4,—32
 141, 3,—251
 148, 5,—268
 161, 4,—13
 167, 4,—345
 Rikrūśva, 266
 Riksha, 235, 274, 360
 Rikshavat, 456
 Ripu, 298
 Richabha, 279, 357
 Rishabhas, 500
 Rishi, 243
 Rishis, 36, 44, 88, etc.
 Rishitishena, 269
 Ritabādha, 279
 Ritayn, 234
 Ritavratas, 501
 Rituparna, 322
 Roer, Dr. E., his translations of the Upanishads referred to, 25
 Rohidasva, 268
 Rohini, 389
 Rohita, 355
 Rohitāsva, 382
 Roth, Dr. R., his Literature and History of the Veda referred to, 289, 318, 324, 331, 339, 342, 360, 364, 372
 — articles in Journ. of Germ. Or. Society, 8, 192, 194, 217, 248, 289
 — article in Indische Studien, 48, 355, 376
 — Dissertation on the Atharva-veda, 395
 — Illustrations of Nirukta, 177, 253, 256, 321, 339
 Rosen, Dr. F., remarks on the story of S'unasēpa, 359
 Ruchi (*masc.*), 65
 Ruchi (*fem.*), 466
 Rudra, 3, 20, 65, 163, 194, 225
 Rudras, 19 f., 52, 117
 Rūpin, 360

S

- S'abaras, or S'avaras, 291, 393, 483 f.

**Sacrifices of no avail to
the depraved, 98**

- Sadasyas, 459
 Sādhyas, 10 f., 26 f., 38, 41
 Sagara, 337, 486
 Sahadeva, 266
 Sahajanyā, 336
 Saindhava, 495
 Saindhavāyanas, 353
 Saincya, 483
 Sainyas, 236
 Saivya, wife of Harischandradra, 380 f.
 Sākadvīpa, 491, 500
 Sākulas, 495
 Sākhi, 401
 Sakas, 391, 398, 482, 484, 486
 Sakti, or S'aktri, 315, 322, 328, 342
 S'akuntalā, 410
 Sakvaris, 255, 320
 Sākya (Buddha) 509
 Sālankāyana, 279
 Sālankāyanas, 353
 Sālāvati, 352
 Sālāvatyas, 353
 Sālmali-divīpa, 490, 498
 Salvas, 438
 Sālvas, 495
 Sama, 124
 Samantapanchaka, 451
 Sāma-veda, 2
 — quoted—
 i. 262,—180
 — 355,—163
 Samprakshālana-kūla, 217
 Saṁśraya, 116
 Saṁvarana, 360
 Saṁvartta, 207
 Sanaka, 51
 Sanandana, 51, 65
 Sanatsumūra, 114, 307
 S'āṇḍilya, 513
 Sanhitā, 2, 4
 Sanjaya, 148
 Sankara on the Brahma-Sūtras, 147
 — Chhāndogya Upanishad, 195
 Sankarshana, 207, 507
 Sāṅkhāyana Brāhmaṇa, 5
 Sāṅkhyā, 126, 210, 334, 430
 — Kūrīka, 158
 — Pravachana, 158
 Sankirtti, a Vaisya author of Vedic hymns, 279

Sankriti, 237
Sāṅkṛiti, 352
Sāṅkṛityas, 353
S'antanu, 269
S'aphari (fish), 205, 209
Saptadāsa, 16
Sapta sindhavaḥ, 489 ff.
S'arabhas, 391
S'aradvat, 279
S'aradvata, 279
S'arangī, 336
Sarasvatī, 71, 110, 141,
178, 315, 344, 421, 490
Sārasvatyas, 305
Sarga, 49
Sarvakāma, 322
Sarvakarman, 422, 456
Sarvasāra Upanishad, 361
S'aryāta, 221
S'aryūti, 126, 221
Sasarpārī, 343
Sat, 46
S'atadru, 417
Satānanda, 235
S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, 5
 — **Kūṇva S'ākhā, i. 6,**
 — **167, 382**
 — **Mādhyandina S'ākhā,**
 Texts from, translated or
 referred to—
 i. 1, 4, 12,—376
 — 1, 4, 14,—188
 — 3, 2, 21,—136
 — 4, 2, 2,—348
 — 4, 2, 5,—166
 — 5, 1, 7,—168
 — 5, 2, 16,—137
 — 5, 3, 2,—163
 — 7, 4, 1,—35, 107
 — 8, 1, 1,—181
 ii. 1, 4, 11,—17
 — 2, 2, 6,—262
 — 3, 4, 4,—147
 — 4, 2, 1,—96
 — 4, 4, 1,—125
 — 5, 1, 1,—69
 — 5, 2, 20,—136
 iii. 2, 1, 39,—369
 — 2, 1, 40,—136
 — 4, 3, 6,—513
 — 6, 2, 26,—147
 — 9, 1, 1,—68
 iv. 1, 5, 1,—221
 — 3, 4, 4,—262
 — 5, 4, 1,—9
 v. 3, 5, 4,—268
 — 5, 4, 9,—367
 vi. 1, 2, 11,—30

S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa con-
tinued—
Mādhyandina S'ākhā—
 vi. 6, 1, 19,—188
 — 8, 1, 14,—349
 vii. 4, 1, 19,—125
 — 5, 1, 5,—54
 — 5, 2, 6,—24
 viii. 1, 4, 10,—515
 — 4, 2, 11,—19
 — 4, 3, 1,—19
 x. 4, 1, 10,—438
 — 4, 2, 2,—69
 — 4, 4, 1,—69
 xi. 1, 3, 1,—31
 — 1, 6, 1,—35
 — 1, 6, 7,—30
 — 1, 6, 8,—29
 — 5, 1, 1,—226
 — 6, 1, 1,—443
 — 6, 2, 1,—426
 xii. 1, 6, 38,—333
 xiii. 4, 1, 3,—369
 — 4, 3, 3,—217
 — 5, 4, 1,—168
 — 6, 1, 1,—9
 — 7, 1, 15,—456
 xiv. 1, 2, 11,—53
 — 4, 2, 1,—24, 36
 — 4, 2, 23,—19
 — 5, 1, 1,—432
 — 7, 1, 33,—46
 — 9, 1, 1,—433
S'atarūpā, 25, 65, 72, 106,
110, 114
S'atayātu, 322
S'atendriyā, 114
Sattva, 41, 62, 66, 75 f.,
79, 89, 92
Sāttvika, 42
Sātyahavya, 493
Satyaketu, 231
Satyāṅgas, 498
Satyavati, 349, 405, 450,
453
Satyavrata, 207, 375
Satyavratas, 501
S'atyāyana Brāhmaṇa
 quoted, 320, 328
Saudāsa, 343, 414
Saudāsas, 328, 337
Saumya, 494
S'aunaka, 226, 279
S'aundikās, 483
Saurashtras, 495
Sauvīras, 495
Sausrutas, 353
Savana, 335, 445

Sāvanya and Sāvargi, 217
Savitri, 71, 181
Savitri, 110
Sāyakāyana, 498
Sāyana quoted, 2, 164 and
passim
S'ayu, 171
Schlegel, A. W. von, his
 edition of the Rāmāyana
 referred to, 397, 399,
 etc.
 Semitic source, was the
 Indian legend of the
 deluge derived from a,
 216
S'esha, 44, 116
Seven rishis, 200, 400, 404
Seven seas surrounding the
continents of the earth,
491
Sexes, their primitive re-
lations, 418
Shadgurusishya quoted,
343
Shadvīṃsa Brāhmaṇa
 quoted or referred to,
 334, 513
Simhikā, 123
Sindhudvīpa, 268, 272, 353
Sindhukshit, 268
Sinhalas, 391
S'ini, 326
S'iva, 389
S'ivis, 459, 493
S'lishti, 298
Smriti, 5, 139
Snehas, 500
Solar race, 220
Soma, 10, 19 f., 30, 71 f.,
124, 153, 166, 175, 181,
221, 225, 467, 469
Soma Maitrāyana, 230
Somasushma Satyayajni,
428
Somesvara quoted, 511
Sons, may be begotten by
 third parties, 418
S'onāmbu, 207
S'raddhādeva, 207
S'raddhādeva, 207, 335
S'rauta-sūtras, 5
S'ravanasya, 279
S'ri, 67
S'rīdhara, Commentator or
Bhāgavata Purāṇa,
 quoted, 210 f., 317
S'ringin, 491
S'rinjayas, 283, 512

S'rotirya, 442
 S'rutadharas, 409
 S'utarshis, 279, 400
 Sthānu, 116, 122
 Sthānuśrītha, 420
 Sthapati, 514
 Stoma, 241
 Streiter, Dr., his Dissertation de Sunahsepho, 48, 355
 Subhagā, 116
 S'uchi, 445
 Sudās, 242, 268, 297, 319, 321 ff., 338, 366, 371 ff.
 Sudāsa,
 Sudeshnā, 233,
 S'ūdras, 7 and *passim*
 — etymology of the word, 97
 Sudyumna, 221
 Sulma, 232
 Suhotra, 227, 267, 349, 353, 360
 Suhotri, 227
 Sukanyā, 283
 S'ukī, 117
 S'ukra, 305, 335, 445
 Sūkta, 241
 Sukumāra, 231
 Sulabhā, 430
 Sumantu, 349
 Sumati, 234
 Sumeru, 96
 Sumitra, 167
 Sumukha, 297
 Sunahotra, or S'unahotra, 226, 228
 S'unasēpa, 350, 353
 355 ff., 376, 405, 413
 Sunīthā, 299, 303
 S'unahpuchha, 352
 Surādhas, 266
 S'ūras, 495
 S'ūrpāraka, 455
 Sūrya, 245, 251
 Sūryavarchas, 336
 S'ushmins, 500
 Sushmīna, 493
 Sūta, 207
 Sutapas, 232, 235
 Sūtras, 5
 S'utudri, 338, 490
 Sushadman, 438
 Suvarchas, 279
 Suvitta, 279
 Suyavasa, 355
 Svāhā, 369
 Svarbhānu, 249, 469

Svarjit Nāgnajita, 515
 Svayambhū, 33
 Svayambhū, 96, 111, 122
 S'veta, 491
 S'vetaketu Aruṇeya, 428, 434
 S'yūparnas, 438
 S'yāvās'va, 283
 S'yena, 513
 S'yūmaras'mi, 171

T

Taittirīya-ūraṇyaka quoted, 31

Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, 5

— quoted —
 i. 1, 2, 6, —68
 — 1, 3, 5, —53
 — 1, 4, 4, —186
 — 1, 9, 10, —26
 — 1, 10, 1, —68
 — 2, 6, 1, —68
 — 2, 6, 7, —21
 — 6, 2, 1, —70
 — 6, 4, 1, —71
 — 8, 8, 1, —26
 — 8, 2, 5, —445
 ii. 2, 1, 1, —72
 — 2, 4, 4, —515
 — 2, 9, 1, —27
 — 3, 6, 1, —68
 — 3, 8, 1, —23
 — 7, 9, 1, —71
 iii. 2, 3, 9, —21
 — 2, 5, 9, —189
 — 3, 3, 1, —25
 — 3, 3, 5, —25
 — 3, 10, 4, —26
 — 4, 1, 16, —49
 — 8, 18, 1, —24
 — 9, 22, 1, —43, 46,
 — 10, 9, 1, —71 [163
 — 12, 9, 2, —41

Taittirīya Sanhitā, 2

— quoted —
 i. 5, 4, 1, —29
 — 7, 1, 8, —187
 — 7, 3, 1, —262
 — 8, 16, 1, —20
 — 16, 11, 1, —137
 ii. 2, 10, 2, —188, 510
 — 3, 5, 1, —124,
 — 4, 13, 1, —21
 — 5, 9, 1, —187
 — 6, 7, 1, —186
 iii. 1, 7, 2, —512

Taittirīya Sanhitā continued —

iii. 1, f., 4, —193
 — 5, 2, 2, —332
 iv. 3, 10, 1, —16
 v. 1, 5, 6, —184
 — 6, 8, 3, —136
 vi. 2, 5, 2, —187
 — 3, 10, 4, —32
 — 5, 6, 1, —26
 — 6, 6, 1, —191
 — 6, 8, 2, —26
 — 6, 10, 3, —26
 vii. 1, 1, 4, —15
 — 1, 5, 1, —52
 — 5, 15, 3, —187
 — p. 47 of MS., 328
 — Commentator on, quoted, 3
 Taittirīya Upanishad quoted, 443
 Taittirīya Yajurveda, 12
 Takshapa, 279
 Tālajanghas, 467, 486
 Tamas, 41, 57, 58, 62, 66, 75, 80, 89, 92, 141
 Tāmāsa, 42
 Tāmra, 116
 Tāmraliptakas, 459
 Tāmravarṇa, 494
 Tāṇḍya Brāhmaṇa, 5, 329
 Tansu, 234
 Tapas, 119, 141
 — its great power, 394, 410
 Tapoloka, 88
 Tārā, 225
 Tārakāyanas, 353
 Tiryak-srotas, 57
 Tishmas, 500
 Tishya (= Kali) age, 148
 Tortoise incarnation, 51, 54
 Trasadasya, 263, 266, 331
 Trayyaruna, 237, 267
 Tretā, 39, 43 ff., 92 ff., 119, 145, 149 f., 158, 447, 495 f.
 Triad of deities, see Deities
 Trigarttas, 459
 Trisanku, 362, 375, 401, 413
 Trishtha, 190
 Trishubh, 16
 Trisiras, 268
 Trivriṣṇa, 267
 Trivrit, 16
 Trisau, 320, 324

Troyer, Captain, his edition
of the Rājataranginī, 424
Tukhāras, 303
Tumburas, 303
Turvas'as, 179
Turvasu, 232, 482
Tushāras, 484
Tvāshṭra, 438
Tvashṭri, 181

U

Uddālaka Āruni, 195
— S'vetaketu, 419
Udgātri, 41, 155, 251, 294
Unnetri, 155
Upadrashtri, 4, 459
Upanishads, 2, 5
Upasruti (a goddess), 311
Upastuta, 170
Uru, 298
Ūrdhhabāhu, 335
Ūrdhvasrotas, 57
Ūrjja, 335
Ūrjā, 335
Urukshaya, 237
Uruujirā, 417
Ūrva, 351, 476
Ūrvasī, 226, 244, 306, 316,
320, 337
Us'anas, 226
Ushas, 108
Usinara, 268
Usinaras, 431, 482
Utathya, 279, 467
Uttānapad, 72
Uttānapāda, 65, 72, 106,
114, 298
Uttara Kurus, 491 ff.
Uttara Madras, 492

V

Vūch, 241, 246, 325
Vachus, 241
Vāhlika, 273
Vaibhojas, 482
Vaidya, 481
Vaikhānasas, 32
Vaikrita-sarga, 58
Vaina, Vainya, 208, 279
Vairāja, 16, 111
Vairūpa, 16
Vaisampūyana, 122, 153 f.

Vaisasa, 97
Vaisyas, 7, and *passim*
— etymology of the
word, 97
Vaivasvata Manvantara,
112, 214
Vājas, 165
Vājasaneyi Sanhitā quoted
or referred to—
xi. 32,—169
xii. 34,—349
xiv. 28,—16
xxx. 18,—49
xxxi. 1,—9
— 1-16,—8
— 13,—10
xxxviii. 26,—490
Vājasravas,
Vajrasirsha, 445
Valākāsya, 349
Valakhilya, iii. 1,—217
— iv. 1,—217
Valmiki, 5
Vamadeva, 114, 279, 330
Vamana-avatāra, see
Dwarf incarnation
Vandya, a Vaisya composer
of Vedic hymns, 279
Vanga, 233, see Banga
Vangas, 459
Vansū, 116
Vapushmat, 222
Varāha-avatāra, 53, see
Boar incarnation
Varāha-kalpa, 44, 50, 67
Varenya, 445
Varna (colour or caste),
140, 153, 176
Vārshagiras, 266
Varuna, 18, 20, 27, 71,
136, 168, etc.
— his adultery, 467
Vārūna, 494
Varuṇa-praghūsa, 136
Varūtrī, 190
Varvaras, 484
Vasās, 391
Vashatkūra, 487
Vashkalas, 353
Vasishṭha, or Vasishṭha,
36, 65, 110, 115, 122,
211, 244, 316 ff., 468,
486
— begets a son to king
Kalmashapāda, 418
Vasishṭhas, 242, 319 ff.,
402
Vasṭrya fishuyans 293

Vasumanas, 268
Vasundharas, 499
Vasus, 19 f., 52, 117, 124,
184, 186, 221, 444
Vātarasanas, 32
Vatsa, 231
Vatsabhūmi, 231
Vayata, 319
Vāyu, 10, 19, 33, 76, 128,
172, 464
Vāyu Purāṇa quoted, 225,
227, 232
i. 5, 11 ff,—74
— 6, 1 ff,—75
— 7, 22 ff,—81
— 9, 1 ff,—77
— 9, 100,—446
Vedāngas, 5, 126
Vedānta, 223
Vedas, 63
— antiquity of, 2
— undivided in the
Krita age, 144
Vedasarvas, 279
Vedhas, 65
Vedhas, a sage, 243
Vedhasa, 279
Vena, 126
Vena, 297 ff., 481
Veṇuhotra, 231
Venya, 268
Vibhu, 445
Videha, 426
Videhas, 431, 459
Vidhātri, 124
Vidūratha, 455
Vidyutpatāka, 207
Vijñāna Bhikshu, 158
Vikrīta, 123
Vinatā, 123
Vipās, or Vipāsū, 338, 417
Vipra, 243
Vipula, 466
Virāj (masc.), 9, 36 f., 106,
111, 195
— (fem.), 217, 333, 511
Viranchi, 112
Viriṇī, 125
Virochana, 233
Virūpa, 224
Virūpas, 311
Viryadharas, 499
Vis, 157
Vishnu, 3, 10, 51, 54, 62,
67, 75, 153, 172, 211,
495, etc.
— assumes different co-
lours in different yugas,

Vishnu Purāṇa quoted—

Book i.—

3, 10 ff., and 14 f.,—43

3, 16 ff.,—44

5, 1 ff.,—55

6, 1 ff.,—60

7, 1 ff.,—64

8, 12,—66

9, 15,—389

10, 10,—335

13, 7,—298

13, 54,—511

15, 52,—72

Book ii.—

4, 1, and 5 ff.,—497

4, 9,—198

4, 12 ff.,—499

4, 19 ff.,—500

4, 23 ff.,—500

4, 28 ff.,—501

4, 37 f.,—503

7, 19, 24,—504

10, 8,—336

Book iii.—

1, 3,—44

1, 6, and 9,—335

1, 14,—335

3, 9,—336

6, 21,—400

Book iv.—

1, 4,—220

1, 5,—72

1, 12,—221

1, 13, 14,—222

2, 2,—223

3, 5,—224

3, 13,—235

3, 18,—337

4, 25,—337

6, 2,—225

6, 19,—226

7, 1,—226

7, 4, and 14 ff.,—349

8, 6,—232

10, 12,—232

18, 1,—232

19, 9,—236

19, 10,—234

19, 16,—235

21, 4,—236

24, 44,—277

Book vi.—

1, 4,—43

Viśiṣṭipra, 166

Viśvajit, 352

Viśvakarman, 52, 76, 173, 181

— Bhauvana, 456

Viśvakrit, 352

Viśvāmītra, 128, 232, 242, 247, 265, 272, 279, 329 ff., 337 ff., 474, 483

Viśvāmītras, 342, 345 f.

Viśvantara, 438

Viśvaratha, 352

Viśvasrijah, 37

Viśvedevas, 16, 20, 71, 380

Viśahavya, 228, 268, 279, 285, 297

Viśatha, 227

Viśibhotras, 459

Viśvasas, 498

Viśvasat, 26 f., 37, 115 f., 122, 126, 163, 195, 199, 201

Vrajana, 360

Vrātya, 22, 481

Vrātya-stomas, 513

Vrihaspati, 310, see Brihaspati

Vrihāgir, 266

Vrihala, 482

Vriṣhan, 170

Vritra, 174, 310

Vyāsa, 6

Vyāsava, 268

W

Weber's Indische Literaturgeschichte referred to, 2, 5

— Indische Studien

quoted or referred to, 8, 9, 14, 32, 39, 48, 49, 108, 136, 141, 147, 155,

181, 186, 189, 216, 252, 272 f., 332 ff., 357, 367,

369, 373, 395, 438 f., 443, 446, 492 f., 511 f.

— articles in Journal Germ. Or. Soc., 189,

366, 385, 443

— his opinion on the origin of the Indian tradition of the Deluge, 216

— Vajra-sūchi, 140

Williams's, Prof. Monier, Indian Epic poetry referred to, 6, 34

Wilson's, Prof. H. H., Analyses of the Vishnu, Vayu, and other Purāṇas, 6, 505

— translation of the Rig-veda referred to, 360, 372, 490

Wilson's Sāṅkhya-Kārikā referred to, 430

— Vishnu Purāṇa referred to, 6, 49, 353, 446, and *passim*

— article on Human Sacrifices in India in Journ. R. As. Soc., 355

Women, estimation in which the ancient Indians held them, 26, 136

Y

Yādavas, 112

Yadu, 232, 477

Yadus, 179

Yajna-paribhāṣhū-sūtras, 2, 365, 367

Yajñūpeta, 336

Yajñavalkya, 25, 136, 428

Yajñavalkyas, 353

Yajur-veda, 2

Yakshas, 37, 139, 144, 499

Yama, 20, 122, 126, 129, 171, 217, 320

Yamādūtas, 353

Yamunā, 467

Yaska, 3, 5, see Nirukta

Yātudhānas, 326 f.

Yaudhāh (warriors), 511, 514

Yavanas, 391, 398, 482, 485 ff.

Yayāti, 232, 455

Year of Brahmā, 44

Year of gods, 43

Yoga 210, 334, 466, 478

— philosophy, 430, 508

Yogin, 153

Yudhājīta, 279

Yudhishtīra, 127, 133, 309

Yudhyamadhi, 322

Yugas, 39, 43 ff.

— system of, not mentioned in the hymns of the Rig-veda, 45

— their several characteristics, 39, 90 ff., 144

Yuga of the Kshatriyas 152

Yuvanāśva, 225, 268, 279

Z

Zendavesta, 293

Zota, 294

TRÜBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

"A knowledge of the commonplace, at least, of Oriental literature, philosophy, and religion is as necessary to the general reader of the present day as an acquaintance with the Latin and Greek classics was a generation or so ago. Immense strides have been made within the present century in these branches of learning; Sanskrit has been brought within the range of accurate philology, and its invaluable ancient literature thoroughly investigated; the language and sacred books of the Zoroastrians have been laid bare; Egyptian, Assyrian, and other records of the remote past have been deciphered, and a group of scholars speak of still more recondite Accadian and Hittite monuments; but the results of all the scholarship that has been devoted to these subjects have been almost inaccessible to the public because they were contained for the most part in learned or expensive works, or scattered throughout the numbers of scientific periodicals. Messrs. TRÜBNER & Co., in a spirit of enterprise which does them infinite credit, have determined to supply the constantly-increasing want, and to give in a popular, or, at least, a comprehensive form, all this mass of knowledge to the world."—*Times*.

Second Edition, post 8vo, pp. xxxii.—748, with Map, cloth, price 21s.

THE INDIAN EMPIRE : ITS PEOPLE, HISTORY, AND PRODUCTS.

By the HON. SIR W. W. HUNTER, K.C.S.I., C.S.I., C.I.E., LL.D.,

Member of the Viceroy's Legislative Council,
Director-General of Statistics to the Government of India.

Being a Revised Edition, brought up to date, and incorporating the general results of the Census of 1881.

"It forms a volume of more than 700 pages, and is a marvellous combination of literary condensation and research. It gives a complete account of the Indian Empire, its history, peoples, and products, and forms the worthy outcome of seventeen years of labour with exceptional opportunities for rendering that labour fruitful. Nothing could be more lucid than Sir William Hunter's expositions of the economic and political condition of India at the present time, or more interesting than his scholarly history of the India of the past."—*The Times*.

THE FOLLOWING WORKS HAVE ALREADY APPEARED:—

Third Edition, post 8vo, cloth, pp. xvi.—428, price 16s.

**ESSAYS ON THE SACRED LANGUAGE, WRITINGS,
AND RELIGION OF THE PARSI.**

By MARTIN HAUG, Ph.D.,

Late of the Universities of Tübingen, Göttingen, and Bonn; Superintendent of Sanskrit Studies, and Professor of Sanskrit in the Poona College.

EDITED AND ENLARGED BY DR. E. W. WEST.

To which is added a Biographical Memoir of the late Dr. HAUG
by Prof. E. P. EVANS.

- I. History of the Researches into the Sacred Writings and Religion of the Parsis, from the Earliest Times down to the Present.
- II. Languages of the Parsi Scriptures.
- III. The Zend-Avesta, or the Scripture of the Parsis.
- IV. The Zoroastrian Religion, as to its Origin and Development.

“ ‘Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings, and Religion of the Parsis,’ by the late Dr. Martin Haug, edited by Dr. E. W. West. The author intended, on his return from India, to expand the materials contained in this work into a comprehensive account of the Zoroastrian religion, but the design was frustrated by his untimely death. We have, however, in a concise and readable form, a history of the researches into the sacred writings and religion of the Parsis from the earliest times down to the present—a dissertation on the languages of the Parsi Scriptures, a translation of the Zend-Avesta, or the Scripture of the Parsis, and a dissertation on the Zoroastrian religion, with especial reference to its origin and development.”—*Times*.

Post 8vo, cloth, pp. viii.—176, price 7s. 6d.

**TEXTS FROM THE BUDDHIST CANON
COMMONLY KNOWN AS “DHAMMAPADA.”**

With Accompanying Narratives.

Translated from the Chinese by S. BEAL, B.A., Professor of Chinese,
University College, London.

The Dhammapada, as hitherto known by the Pali Text Edition, as edited by Fausböll, by Max Müller's English, and Albrecht Weber's German translations, consists only of twenty-six chapters or sections, whilst the Chinese version, or rather recension, as now translated by Mr. Beal, consists of thirty-nine sections. The students of Pali who possess Fausböll's text, or either of the above-named translations, will therefore needs want Mr. Beal's English rendering of the Chinese version; the thirteen above-named additional sections not being accessible to them in any other form; for, even if they understand Chinese, the Chinese original would be unobtainable by them.

“Mr. Beal's rendering of the Chinese translation is a most valuable aid to the critical study of the work. It contains authentic texts gathered from ancient canonical books, and generally connected with some incident in the history of Buddha. Their great interest, however, consists in the light which they throw upon everyday life in India at the remote period at which they were written, and upon the method of teaching adopted by the founder of the religion. The method employed was principally parable, and the simplicity of the tales and the excellence of the morals inculcated, as well as the strange hold which they have retained upon the minds of millions of people, make them a very remarkable study.”—*Times*.

“Mr. Beal, by making it accessible in an English dress, has added to the great services he has already rendered to the comparative study of religious history.”—*Academy*.

“Valuable as exhibiting the doctrine of the Buddhists in its purest, least adulterated form, it brings the modern reader face to face with that simple creed and rule of conduct which won its way over the minds of myriads, and which is now nominally professed by 145 millions, who have overlaid its austere simplicity with innumerable ceremonies, forgotten its maxims, perverted its teaching, and so inverted its leading that a religion whose founder denied a God, now worships that founder as

Second Edition, post 8vo, cloth, pp. xxiv.—360, price 10s. 6d.

THE HISTORY OF INDIAN LITERATURE.

By ALBRECHT WEBER.

Translated from the Second German Edition by JOHN MANN, M.A., and
THÉODOR ZACHARIAE, Ph.D., with the sanction of the Author.

Dr. BUHLER, Inspector of Schools in India, writes:—"When I was Professor of Oriental Languages in Elphinstone College, I frequently felt the want of such a work to which I could refer the students."

Professor COWELL, of Cambridge, writes:—"It will be especially useful to the students in our Indian colleges and universities. I used to long for such a book when I was teaching in Calcutta. Hindu students are intensely interested in the history of Sanskrit literature, and this volume will supply them with all they want on the subject."

Professor WHITNEY, Yale College, Newhaven, Conn., U.S.A., writes:—"I was one of the class to whom the work was originally given in the form of academic lectures. At their first appearance they were by far the most learned and able treatment of their subject; and with their recent additions they still maintain decidedly the same rank."

"Is perhaps the most comprehensive and lucid survey of Sanskrit literature extant. The essays contained in the volume were originally delivered as academic lectures, and at the time of their first publication were acknowledged to be by far the most learned and able treatment of the subject. They have now been brought up to date by the addition of all the most important results of recent research."—*Times*.

Post 8vo, cloth, pp. xii.—198, accompanied by Two Language
Maps, price 12s.

A SKETCH OF THE MODERN LANGUAGES OF THE EAST INDIES.

By ROBERT N. CUST.

The Author has attempted to fill up a vacuum, the inconvenience of which pressed itself on his notice. Much had been written about the languages of the East Indies, but the extent of our present knowledge had not even been brought to a focus. It occurred to him that it might be of use to others to publish in an arranged form the notes which he had collected for his own edification.

"Supplies a deficiency which has long been felt."—*Times*.

"The book before us is then a valuable contribution to philological science. It passes under review a vast number of languages, and it gives, or professes to give, in every case the sum and substance of the opinions and judgments of the best-informed writers."—*Saturday Review*.

Second Corrected Edition, post 8vo, pp. xii.—116, cloth, price

THE BIRTH OF THE WAR-GOD.

A Poem. By KALIDASA.

Translated from the Sanskrit into English Verse by
RALPH T. H. GRIFFITH, M.A.

"A very spirited rendering of the *Kumdrasambhava*, which was first published twenty-six years ago, and which we are glad to see made once more accessible."—*Times*.

"Mr. Griffith's very spirited rendering is well known to most who are at all interested in Indian literature, or enjoy the tenderness of feeling and rich creative imagination of its author."—*Indian Antiquary*.

"We are very glad to welcome a second edition of Professor Griffith's admirable translation. Few translations deserve a second edition better."—*Indian Antiquary*.

Post 8vo, pp. 432, cloth, price 16s.

**A CLASSICAL DICTIONARY OF HINDU MYTHOLOGY
AND RELIGION, GEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, AND
LITERATURE.**

By JOHN DOWSON, M.R.A.S.,

Late Professor of Hindustani, Staff College.

"This not only forms an indispensable book of reference to students of Indian literature, but is also of great general interest, as it gives in a concise and easily accessible form all that need be known about the personages of Hindu mythology whose names are so familiar, but of whom so little is known outside the limited circle of savants."—*Times*.

"It is no slight gain when such subjects are treated fairly and fully in a moderate space; and we need only add that the few wants which we may hope to see supplied in new editions detract but little from the general excellence of Mr. Dowson's work."—*Saturday Review*.

Post 8vo, with View of Mecca, pp. cxii.—172, cloth, price 9s.

SELECTIONS FROM THE KORAN.

By EDWARD WILLIAM LANE,

Translator of "The Thousand and One Nights;" &c., &c.

A New Edition, Revised and Enlarged, with an Introduction by
STANLEY LANE POOLE.

"... Has been long esteemed in this country as the compilation of one of the greatest Arabic scholars of the time, the late Mr. Lane, the well-known translator of the 'Arabian Nights.' ... The present editor has enhanced the value of his relative's work by divesting the text of a great deal of extraneous matter introduced by way of comment, and prefixing an introduction."—*Times*.

"Mr. Poole is both a generous and a learned biographer. ... Mr. Poole tells us the facts ... so far as it is possible for industry and criticism to ascertain them, and for literary skill to present them in a condensed and readable form."—*Englishman, Calcutta*.

Post 8vo, pp. vi.—368, cloth, price 14s.

MODERN INDIA AND THE INDIANS,

BEING A SERIES OF IMPRESSIONS, NOTES, AND ESSAYS.

By MONIER WILLIAMS, D.C.L.,

Hon. LL.D. of the University of Calcutta, Hon. Member of the Bombay Asiatic Society, Boden Professor of Sanskrit in the University of Oxford.

Third Edition, revised and augmented by considerable Additions,
with Illustrations and a Map.

"In this volume we have the thoughtful impressions of a thoughtful man on some of the most important questions connected with our Indian Empire. ... An enlightened observant man, travelling among an enlightened observant people, Professor Monier Williams has brought before the public in a pleasant form more of the manners and customs of the Queen's Indian subjects than we ever remember to have seen in any one work. He not only deserves the thanks of every Englishman for this able contribution to the study of Modern India—a subject with which we should be specially familiar—but he deserves the thanks of every Indian, Parsee or Hindu, Buddhist and Moslem, for his clear exposition of their manners, their creeds, and their necessities."—*Times*.

Post 8vo, pp. xlv.—376, cloth, price 14s.

**METRICAL TRANSLATIONS FROM SANSKRIT
WRITERS.**

With an Introduction, many Prose Versions, and Parallel Passages from
Classical Authors.

By J. MUIR, C.I.E., D.O.L., LL.D., Ph.D.

"... An agreeable introduction to Hindu poetry."—?

"... A volume which may be taken as a fair illustration alike of the religious and moral sentiments and of the legendary lore of the best Sanskrit writers."—*Edinburgh Daily Review*.

TRÜBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Second Edition, post 8vo, pp. xxvi.—244, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

THE GULISTAN;

OR, ROSE GARDEN OF SHEKH MUSHLIU'D-DIN SADI OF SHIRAZ.

Translated for the First Time into Prose and Verse, with an Introductory Preface, and a Life of the Author, from the Atish Kadah,

By EDWARD B. EASTWICK, C.B., M.A., F.R.S., M.R.A.S.

"It is a very fair rendering of the original."—*Times*.

"The new edition has long been desired, and will be welcomed by all who take any interest in Oriental poetry. The *Gulistan* is a typical Persian verse-book of the highest order. Mr. Eastwick's rhymed translation . . . has long established itself in a secure position as the best version of Sadi's finest work."—*Academy*.

"It is both faithfully and gracefully executed."—*Tablet*.

In Two Volumes, post 8vo, pp. viii.—408 and viii.—348, cloth, price 28s.

MISCELLANEOUS ESSAYS RELATING TO INDIAN SUBJECTS.

By BRIAN HOUGHTON HODGSON, Esq., F.R.S.,

Late of the Bengal Civil Service; Corresponding Member of the Institute; Chevalier of the Legion of Honour; late British Minister at the Court of Nepal, &c., &c.

CONTENTS OF VOL. I.

SECTION I.—On the Kocch, Bôdô, and Dhimal Tribes.—Part I. Vocabulary.—Part II. Grammar.—Part III. Their Origin, Location, Numbers, Creed, Customs, Character, and Condition, with a General Description of the Climate they dwell in.—Appendix.

SECTION II.—On Himalayan Ethnology.—I. Comparative Vocabulary of the Languages of the Broken Tribes of Népal.—II. Vocabulary of the Dialects of the Kiranti Language.—III. Grammatical Analysis of the Vayu Language. The Vayu Grammar.—IV. Analysis of the Bâhing Dialect of the Kiranti Language. The Bâhing Grammar.—V. On the Vayu or Hayu Tribe of the Central Himalaya.—VI. On the Kiranti Tribe of the Central Himalaya.

CONTENTS OF VOL. II.

SECTION III.—On the Aborigines of North-Eastern India. Comparative Vocabulary of the Tibetan, Bôdô, and Garô Tongues.

SECTION IV.—Aborigines of the North-Eastern Frontier.

SECTION V.—Aborigines of the Eastern Frontier.

SECTION VI.—The Indo-Chinese Borderers, and their connection with the Himalayans and Tibetans. Comparative Vocabulary of Indo-Chinese Borderers in Arakan. Comparative Vocabulary of Indo-Chinese Borderers in Tenasserim.

SECTION VII.—The Mongolian Affinities of the Caucasians.—Comparison and Analysis of Caucasian and Mongolian Words.

SECTION VIII.—Physical Type of Tibetans.

SECTION IX.—The Aborigines of Central India.—Comparative Vocabulary of the Aboriginal Languages of Central India.—Aborigines of the Eastern Ghats.—Vocabulary of some of the Dialects of the Hill and Wandering Tribes in the Northern Sircars.—Aborigines of the Nilgiris, with Remarks on their Affinities.—Supplement to the Nilgiran Vocabularies.—The Aborigines of Southern India and Ceylon.

SECTION X.—Route of Nepalese Mission to Peking, with Remarks on the Watershed and Plateau of Tibet.

SECTION XI.—Route from Kâthmândû, the Capital of Népal, to Darjeeling in Sikkim.—Memorandum relative to the Seven Coals of Népal.

SECTION XII.—Some Accounts of the Systems of Law and Police as recognised in the State of Népal.

SECTION XIII.—The Native Method of making the Paper denominated Hindustan, Népalese.

SECTION XIV.—Pre-eminence of the Vernaculars; or, the Anglicists Answered; Being Letters on the Education of the People of India.

"For the study of the less-known races of India Mr. Brian Hodgson's '*Miscellaneous Essays*' will be found very valuable both to the philologist and the ethnologist."

TURNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Third Edition, Two Vols., post 8vo, pp. viii.—208 and viii.—326, cloth, price 21s.

THE LIFE OR LEGEND OF GAUDAMA,

THE BUDDHA OF THE BURMESE. With Annotations.

The Ways to Nirbhan, and Notice on the Phongsies or Burmese Monks.

By THE RIGHT REV. P. BIGANDET,

Bishop of Ramatha, Vicar-Apostolic of Ava and Pegu.

"The work is furnished with copious notes, which not only illustrate the subject-matter, but form a perfect encyclopædia of Buddhist lore."—*Times*.

"A work which will furnish European students of Buddhism with a most valuable help in the prosecution of their investigations."—*Edinburgh Daily Review*.

"Bishop Bigandet's invaluable work."—*Indian Antiquary*.

"Viewed in this light, its importance is sufficient to place students of the subject under a deep obligation to its author."—*Calcutta Review*.

"This work is one of the greatest authorities upon Buddhism."—*Dublin Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. xxiv.—420, cloth, price 18s.

CHINESE BUDDHISM.

A VOLUME OF SKETCHES, HISTORICAL AND CRITICAL.

By J. EDKINS, D.D.

Author of "China's Place in Philology," "Religion in China," &c., &c.

"It contains a vast deal of important information on the subject, such as is only to be gained by long-continued study on the spot."—*Athenæum*.

"Upon the whole, we know of no work comparable to it for the extent of its original research, and the simplicity with which this complicated system of philosophy, religion, literature, and ritual is set forth."—*British Quarterly Review*.

"The whole volume is replete with learning. . . . It deserves most careful study from all interested in the history of the religions of the world, and expressly of those who are concerned in the propagation of Christianity. Dr. Edkins notices in terms of just condemnation the exaggerated praise bestowed upon Buddhism by recent English writers."—*Record*.

Post 8vo, pp. 496, cloth, price 18s.

LINGUISTIC AND ORIENTAL ESSAYS.

WRITTEN FROM THE YEAR 1846 to 1878.

By ROBERT NEEDHAM CUST,

Late Member of Her Majesty's Indian Civil Service; Hon. Secretary to the Royal Asiatic Society;
and Author of "The Modern Languages of the East Indies."

"We know none who has described Indian life, especially the life of the natives, with so much learning, sympathy, and literary talent."—*Academy*.

"They seem to us to be full of suggestive and original remarks."—*St. James's Gazette*.

"His book contains a vast amount of information. The result of thirty-five years of inquiry, reflection, and speculation, and that on subjects as full of fascination as of food for thought."—*Tablet*.

"Exhibit such a thorough acquaintance with the history and antiquities of India as to entitle him to speak as one having authority."—*Edinburgh Daily Review*.

"The author speaks with the authority of personal experience. . . . It is this constant association with the country and the people which gives such a vividness to many of the pages."—*Athenæum*.

Post 8vo, pp. civ.—348, cloth, price 18s.

BUDDHIST BIRTH STORIES; or, Jataka Tales.

The Oldest Collection of Folk-lore Extant:

BEING THE JATAKATTHAVANNANA,

For the first time Edited in the original Pali.

By V. FAUSBOLL;

And Translated by T. W. RHYS DAVIDS.

Translation. Volume I.

"These are tales supposed to have been told by the Buddha of what he had seen and heard in his previous births. They are probably the nearest representatives of the original Aryan stories from which sprang the folk-lore of Europe as well as India. The introduction contains a most interesting disquisition on the migrations of these fables, tracing their reappearance in the various groups of folk-lore legends. Among other old friends, we meet with a version of the Judgment of Solomon."—*Times*.

"It is now some years since Mr. Rhys Davids asserted his right to be heard on this subject by his able article on Buddhism in the new edition of the 'Encyclopædia Britannica.'—*Leeds Mercury*.

"All who are interested in Buddhist literature ought to feel deeply indebted to Mr. Rhys Davids. His well-established reputation as a Pali scholar is a sufficient guarantee for the fidelity of his version, and the style of his translations is deserving of high praise."—*Academy*.

"No more competent expositor of Buddhism could be found than Mr. Rhys Davids. In the Jataka book we have, then, a priceless record of the earliest imaginative literature of our race; and . . . it presents to us a nearly complete picture of the social life and customs and popular beliefs of the common people of Aryan tribes, closely related to ourselves, just as they were passing through the first stages of civilisation."—*St. James's Gazette*.

Post 8vo, pp. xxviii.—362, cloth, price 14s.

A TALMUDIC MISCELLANY;

OR, A THOUSAND AND ONE EXTRACTS FROM THE TALMUD,
THE MIDRASHIM, AND THE KABBALAH.

Compiled and Translated by PAUL ISAAC HERSHON,

Author of "Genesis According to the Talmud," &c.

With Notes and Copious Indexes.

"To obtain in so concise and handy a form as this volume a general idea of the Talmud is a boon to Christians at least."—*Times*.

"Its peculiar and popular character will make it attractive to general readers. Mr. Hershon is a very competent scholar. . . . Contains samples of the good, bad, and indifferent, and especially extracts that throw light upon the Scriptures."—*British Quarterly Review*.

"Will convey to English readers a more complete and truthful notion of the Talmud than any other work that has yet appeared."—*Daily News*.

"Without overlooking in the slightest the several attractions of the previous volumes of the 'Oriental Series,' we have no hesitation in saying that this surpasses them all in interest."—*Edinburgh Daily Review*.

"Mr. Hershon has . . . thus given English readers what is, we believe, a fair set of specimens which they can test for themselves."—*The Record*.

"This book is by far the best fitted in the present state of knowledge to enable the general reader to gain a fair and unbiassed conception of the multifarious contents of the wonderful miscellany which can only be truly understood—so Jewish pride asserts—by the life-long devotion of scholars of the Chosen People."—*Inquirer*.

"The value and importance of this volume consist in the fact that scarcely a single extract is given in its pages but throws some light, direct or refracted, upon those Scriptures which are the common heritage of Jew and Christian alike."—*John Bull*.

"It is a capital specimen of Hebrew scholarship; a monument of learned, loving, light-giving labour."—*Jewish Herald*.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.—228, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

THE CLASSICAL POETRY OF THE JAPANESE.

By BASIL HALL CHAMBERLAIN,

Author of "Yeigo Heikaku Shiran."

"A very curious volume. The author has manifestly devoted much labour to the task of studying the poetical literature of the Japanese, and rendering characteristic specimens into English verse."—*Daily News*.

"Mr. Chamberlain's volume is, so far as we are aware, the first attempt which has been made to interpret the literature of the Japanese to the Western world. It is to the classical poetry of Old Japan that we must turn for indigenous Japanese thought, and in the volume before us we have a selection from that poetry rendered into graceful English verse."—*Tablet*.

"It is undoubtedly one of the best translations of lyric literature which has appeared during the close of the last year."—*Celestial Empire*.

"Mr. Chamberlain set himself a difficult task when he undertook to reproduce Japanese poetry in an English form. But he has evidently laboured *con amore*, and his efforts are successful to a degree."—*London and China Express*.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.—164, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

THE HISTORY OF ESARHADDON (Son of Sennacherib),

KING OF ASSYRIA, B.C. 681-668.

Translated from the Cuneiform Inscriptions upon Cylinders and Tablets in the British Museum Collection; together with a Grammatical Analysis of each Word, Explanations of the Ideographs by Extracts from the Bi-Lingual Syllabaries, and List of Eponyms, &c.

By ERNEST A. BUDGE, B.A., M.R.A.S.

Assyrian Exhibitioner, Christ's College, Cambridge.

"Students of scriptural archaeology will also appreciate the 'History of Esarhaddon.'"—*Times*.

"There is much to attract the scholar in this volume. It does not pretend to popularise studies which are yet in their infancy. Its primary object is to translate, but it does not assume to be more than tentative, and it offers both to the professed Assyriologist and to the ordinary non-Assyriological Semitic scholar the means of controlling its results."—*Academy*.

"Mr. Budge's book is, of course, mainly addressed to Assyrian scholars and students. They are not, it is to be feared, a very numerous class. But the more thanks are due to him on that account for the way in which he has acquitted himself in his laborious task."—*Tablet*.

Post 8vo, pp. 448, cloth, price 21s.

THE MESNEVI

(Usually known as THE MESNEVIYI SHERIF, or HOLY MESNEVI)

OF

MEVLANA (OUR LORD) JELALU 'D-DIN MUHAMMED ER-RUMI.

Book the First.

*Together with some Account of the Life and Acts of the Author,
of his Ancestors, and of his Descendants.*

Illustrated by a Selection of Characteristic Anecdotes, as Collected
by their Historian,

MEVLANA SHEMSU-'D-DIN AHMED, EL EFLAKI, EL 'ARIFI.

Translated, and the Poetry Versified, in English,

By JAMES W. REDHOUSE, M.R.A.S., &c.

"A complete treasury of occult Oriental lore."—*Saturday Review*.

"This book will be a very valuable help to the reader ignorant of Persia, who is desirous of obtaining an insight into a very important department of the literature extant in that language."—*Tablet*.

Post 8vo, pp. xvi.—280, cloth, price 6s.

EASTERN PROVERBS AND EMBLEMS

ILLUSTRATING OLD TRUTHS.

BY REV. J. LONG,

Member of the Bengal Asiatic Society, F.R.G.S.

"We regard the book as valuable, and wish for it a wide circulation and attentive reading."—*Record*.

"Altogether, it is quite a feast of good things."—*Globe*.

"It is full of interesting matter."—*Antiquary*.

Post 8vo, pp. viii.—270, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

INDIAN POETRY ;

Containing a New Edition of the "Indian Song of Songs," from the Sanscrit of the "Gita Govinda" of Jayadeva; Two Books from "The Iliad of India" (Mahabharata), "Proverbial Wisdom" from the Shlokas of the Hitopadesa, and other Oriental Poems.

BY EDWIN ARNOLD, C.S.I., Author of "The Light of Asia."

"In this new volume of Messrs. Trübner's Oriental Series, Mr. Edwin Arnold does good service by illustrating, through the medium of his musical English melodies, the power of Indian poetry to stir European emotions. The 'Indian Song of Songs' is not unknown to scholars. Mr. Arnold will have introduced it among popular English poems. Nothing could be more graceful and delicate than the shades by which Krishna is portrayed in the gradual process of being weaned by the love of

'Beautiful Radha, jasmine-bosomed Radha,'

from the allurements of the forest nymphs, in whom the five senses are typified."—*Times*.

"No other English poet has ever thrown his genius and his art so thoroughly into the work of translating Eastern ideas as Mr. Arnold has done in his splendid paraphrases of language contained in these mighty epics."—*Daily Telegraph*.

"The poem abounds with imagery of Eastern luxuriousness and sensuousness; the air seems laden with the spicy odours of the tropics, and the verse has a richness and a melody sufficient to captivate the senses of the dullest."—*Standard*.

"The translator, while producing a very enjoyable poem, has adhered with tolerable fidelity to the original text."—*Overland Mail*.

"We certainly wish Mr. Arnold success in his attempt 'to popularise Indian classics,' that being, as his preface tells us, the goal towards which he bends his efforts."—*Allen's Indian Mail*.

Post 8vo, pp. xvi.—296, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

THE MIND OF MENCIUS ;

OR, POLITICAL ECONOMY FOUNDED UPON MORAL
PHILOSOPHY.

A SYSTEMATIC DIGEST OF THE DOCTRINES OF THE CHINESE PHILOSOPHER
MENCIUS.

Translated from the Original Text and Classified, with
Comments and Explanations,

By the REV. ERNST FABER, Rhenish Mission Society.

Translated from the German, with Additional Notes,

By the REV. A. B. HUTCHINSON, O.M.S., Church Mission, Hong Kong.

"Mr. Faber is already well known in the field of Chinese studies by his digest of the doctrines of Confucius. The value of this work will be perceived when it is remembered that at no time since relations commenced between China and the West has the former been so powerful—we had almost said aggressive—as now. For those who will give it careful study, Mr. Faber's work is one of the most valuable of the excellent series to which it belongs."—*Nature*.

Post 8vo, pp. 336, cloth, price 16s.

THE RELIGIONS OF INDIA.

By A. BARTH.

Translated from the French with the authority and assistance of the Author.

The author has, at the request of the publishers, considerably enlarged the work for the translator, and has added the literature of the subject to date; the translation may, therefore, be looked upon as an equivalent of a new and improved edition of the original.

"Is not only a valuable manual of the religions of India, which marks a distinct step in the treatment of the subject, but also a useful work of reference."—*Academy*.

"This volume is a reproduction, with corrections and additions, of an article contributed by the learned author two years ago to the 'Encyclopédie des Sciences Religieuses.' It attracted much notice when it first appeared, and is generally admitted to present the best summary extant of the vast subject with which it deals."—*Tablet*.

"This is not only on the whole the best but the only manual of the religions of India, apart from Buddhism, which we have in English. The present work . . . shows not only great knowledge of the facts and power of clear exposition, but also great insight into the inner history and the deeper meaning of the great religion, for it is in reality only one, which it proposes to describe."—*Modern Review*.

"The merit of the work has been emphatically recognised by the most authoritative Orientalists, both in this country and on the continent of Europe. But probably there are few Indianists (if we may use the word) who would not derive a good deal of information from it, and especially from the extensive bibliography provided in the notes."—*Dublin Review*.

"Such a sketch M. Barth has drawn with a master-hand."—*Critic* (New York).

Post 8vo, pp. viii.—152, cloth, price 6s.

HINDU PHILOSOPHY.

THE SĀṆKHYA KĀRIKA OF IS'WARA KRISHNA.

An Exposition of the System of Kapila, with an Appendix on the Nyāya and Vaiśeṣika Systems.

By JOHN DAVIES, M.A. (Cantab.), M.R.A.S.

The system of Kapila contains nearly all that India has produced in the department of pure philosophy.

"The non-Orientalist . . . finds in Mr. Davies a patient and learned guide who leads him into the intricacies of the philosophy of India, and supplies him with a clue, that he may not be lost in them. In the preface he states that the system of Kapila is the 'earliest attempt on record to give an answer, from reason alone, to the mysterious questions which arise in every thoughtful mind about the origin of the world, the nature and relations of man and his future destiny,' and in his learned and able notes he exhibits 'the connection of the Sāṅkhya system with the philosophy of Spinoza,' and 'the connection of the system of Kapila with that of Schopenhauer and Von Hartmann.'"—*Foreign Church Chronicle*.

"Mr. Davies's volume on Hindu Philosophy is an undoubted gain to all students of the development of thought. The system of Kapila, which is here given in a translation from the Sāṅkhya Kārika, is the only contribution of India to pure philosophy. . . . Presents many points of deep interest to the student of comparative philosophy, and without Mr. Davies's lucid interpretation it would be difficult to appreciate these points in any adequate manner."—*Saturday Review*.

"We welcome Mr. Davies's book as a valuable addition to our philosophical library."—*Notes and Queries*.

TRUBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Post 8vo, pp. x.—130, cloth, price 6s.

A MANUAL OF HINDU PANTHEISM. VEDÂNTASÂRA.

Translated, with copious Annotations,

By MAJOR G. A. JACOB,

Bombay Staff Corps ; Inspector of Army Schools.

The design of this little work is to provide for missionaries, and for others who, like them, have little leisure for original research, an accurate summary of the doctrines of the Vedânta.

"The modest title of Major Jacob's work conveys but an inadequate idea of the vast amount of research embodied in his notes to the text of the Vedântasâra. So copious, indeed, are these, and so much collateral matter do they bring to bear on the subject, that the diligent student will rise from their perusal with a fairly adequate view of Hindû philosophy generally. His work . . . is one of the best of its kind that we have seen."—*Calcutta Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.—154, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

TSUNI—|| GOAM :

THE SUPREME BEING OF THE KHOI-KHOI.

By THEOPHILUS HAHN, Ph.D.,

Custodian of the Grey Collection, Cape Town ; Corresponding Member of the Geogr. Society, Dresden ; Corresponding Member of the Anthropological Society, Vienna, &c., &c.

"The first instalment of Dr. Hahn's labours will be of interest, not at the Cape only, but in every University of Europe. It is, in fact, a most valuable contribution to the comparative study of religion and mythology. Accounts of their religion and mythology were scattered about in various books ; these have been carefully collected by Dr. Hahn and printed in his second chapter, enriched and improved by what he has been able to collect himself."—*Prof. Max Müller in the Nineteenth Century*.

"It is full of good things."—*St. James's Gazette*.

In Four Volumes. Post 8vo, Vol. I., pp. xii.—392, cloth, price 12s. 6d., Vol. II., pp. vi.—408, cloth, price 12s. 6d., Vol. III., pp. viii.—414, cloth, price 12s. 6d., Vol. IV., pp. viii.—340, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

A COMPREHENSIVE COMMENTARY TO THE QURAN.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED SALE'S PRELIMINARY DISCOURSE, WITH
ADDITIONAL NOTES AND EMENDATIONS.

Together with a Complete Index to the Text, Preliminary
Discourse, and Notes.

By Rev. E. M. WHERRY, M.A., Lodiāna.

"As Mr. Wherry's book is intended for missionaries in India, it is no doubt well that they should be prepared to meet, if they can, the ordinary arguments and interpretations, and for this purpose Mr. Wherry's additions will prove useful."—*Saturday Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. vi.—208, cloth, price 8s. 6d.

THE BHAGAVAD-GĪTĀ.

Translated, with Introduction and Notes.

By JOHN DAVIES, M.A. (Cantab.)

"Let us add that his translation of the Bhagavad Gītā is, as we judge, the best that has as yet appeared in English, and that his Philological Notes are of quite peculiar value."—*Dublin Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. 96, cloth, price 5s.

THE QUATRAINS OF OMAR KHAYYAM.

Translated by E. H. WHINFIELD, M.A.,

Barrister-at-Law, late H.M. Bengal Civil Service.

Post 8vo, pp. xxxii.—336, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

THE QUATRAINS OF OMAR KHAYYAM.

The Persian Text, with an English Verse Translation.

By E. H. WHINFIELD, late of the Bengal Civil Service.

"Mr. Whinfield has executed a difficult task with considerable success, and his version contains much that will be new to those who only know Mr. Fitzgerald's delightful selection."—*Academy*.

"The most prominent features in the Quatrains are their profound agnosticism, combined with a fatalism based more on philosophic than religious grounds, their Epicureanism and the spirit of universal tolerance and charity which animates them."—*Calcutta Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. xxiv.—268, cloth, price 9s.

**THE PHILOSOPHY OF THE UPANISHADS AND
ANCIENT INDIAN METAPHYSICS.**

As exhibited in a series of Articles contributed to the *Calcutta Review*.

By ARCHIBALD EDWARD GOUGH, M.A., Lincoln College, Oxford ;
Principal of the Calcutta Madrasa.

"For practical purposes this is perhaps the most important of the works that have thus far appeared in 'Trübner's Oriental Series.' . . . We cannot doubt that for all who may take it up the work must be one of profound interest."—*Saturday Review*.

In Two Volumes. Vol. I., post 8vo, pp. xxiv.—230, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

**A COMPARATIVE HISTORY OF THE EGYPTIAN AND
MESOPOTAMIAN RELIGIONS.**

By DR. C. P. TIELE.

VOL. I.—HISTORY OF THE EGYPTIAN RELIGION.

Translated from the Dutch with the Assistance of the Author.

By JAMES BALLINGAL.

"It places in the hands of the English readers a history of Egyptian Religion which is very complete, which is based on the best materials, and which has been illustrated by the latest results of research. In this volume there is a great deal of information, as well as independent investigation, for the trustworthiness of which Dr. Tiele's name is in itself a guarantee; and the description of the successive religions under the Old Kingdom, the Middle Kingdom, and the New Kingdom, is given in a manner which is scholarly and minute."—*Contemporary*

TRÜBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.—302, cloth, price 8s. 6d.

YUSUF AND ZULAIKHA.

A POEM BY JAMI.

Translated from the Persian into English Verse.

By RALPH T. H. GRIFFITH.

"Mr. Griffith, who has done already good service as translator into verse from the Sanskrit, has done further good work in this translation from the Persian, and he has evidently shown not a little skill in his rendering the quaint and very oriental style of his author into our more prosaic, less figurative, language. . . . The work, besides its intrinsic merits, is of importance as being one of the most popular and famous poems of Persia, and that which is read in all the independent native schools of India where Persian is taught."—*Scotsman*.

Post 8vo, pp. viii.—266, cloth, price 9s.

LINGUISTIC ESSAYS.

By CARL ABEL.

"An entirely novel method of dealing with philosophical questions and impart a real human interest to the otherwise dry technicalities of the science."—*Standard*.

"Dr. Abel is an opponent from whom it is pleasant to differ, for he writes with enthusiasm and temper, and his mastery over the English language fits him to be a champion of unpopular doctrines."—*A*

Post 8vo, pp. ix.—281, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

THE SARVA-DARSANA-SAMGRAHA ;

OR, REVIEW OF THE DIFFERENT SYSTEMS OF HINDU PHILOSOPHY.

By MADHAVA ACHARYA.

Translated by E. B. COWELL, M.A., Professor of Sanskrit in the University of Cambridge, and A. E. GOUGH, M.A., Professor of Philosophy in the Presidency College, Calcutta.

This work is an interesting specimen of Hindu critical ability. The author successively passes in review the sixteen philosophical systems current in the fourteenth century in the South of India ; and he gives what appears to him to be their most important tenets.

"The translation is trustworthy throughout. A protracted sojourn in India, where there is a living tradition, has familiarised the translators with Indian thought."—*Athenæum*.

Post 8vo, pp. lxx.—368, cloth, price 14s.

TIBETAN TALES DERIVED FROM INDIAN SOURCES.

Translated from the Tibetan of the KAH-GYUR.

By F. ANTON VON SCHIEFNER.

Done into English from the German, with an Introduction,

By W. R. S. RALSTON, M.A.

"Mr. Ralston, whose name is so familiar to all lovers of Russian folk-lore, has supplied some interesting Western analogies and parallels, drawn, for the most part, from Slavonic sources, to the Eastern folk-tales, culled from the Kabgyur, one of the divisions of the Tibetan sacred books."—*Academy*.

"The translation . . . could scarcely have fallen into better hands. An Introduction . . . gives the leading facts in the lives of those scholars who have given their attention to gaining a knowledge of the Tibetan literature and language."—*Calcutta Review*.

"Ought to interest all who care for the East, for amusing stories, or for comparative folk-lore."—*Fall Mall Gazette*.

TRUBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Post 8vo, pp. xvi.—224, cloth, price 9s.

UDĀNAVARGA.

A COLLECTION OF VERSES FROM THE BUDDHIST CANON.

Compiled by **DHARMATRĀTA.**

BEING THE NORTHERN BUDDHIST VERSION OF DHAMMAPADA.

Translated from the Tibetan of Bkah-hgyur, with Notes, and
Extracts from the Commentary of Pradjuavarman,

By **W. WOODVILLE ROCKHILL.**

"Mr. Rockhill's present work is the first from which assistance will be gained for a more accurate understanding of the Pali text; it is, in fact, as yet the only term of comparison available to us. The 'Udanavarga,' the Thibetan version, was originally discovered by the late M. Schiefner, who published the Tibetan text, and had intended adding a translation, an intention frustrated by his death, but which has been carried out by Mr. Rockhill. . . . Mr. Rockhill may be congratulated for having well accomplished a difficult task."—*Saturday Review*.

In Two Volumes, post 8vo, pp. xxiv.—566, cloth, accompanied by a
Language Map, price 25s.

A SKETCH OF THE MODERN LANGUAGES OF AFRICA.

By **ROBERT NEEDHAM CUST,**

Barrister-at-Law, and late of Her Majesty's Indian Civil Service.

"Any one at all interested in African languages cannot do better than get Mr. Cust's book. It is encyclopædic in its scope, and the reader gets a start clear away in any particular language, and is left free to add to the initial sum of knowledge there collected."—*Natal Mercury*.

"Mr. Cust has contrived to produce a work of value to linguistic students."—*Nature*.

Third Edition. Post 8vo, pp. xv.—250, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

**OUTLINES OF THE HISTORY OF RELIGION TO THE
SPREAD OF THE UNIVERSAL RELIGIONS.**

By **C. P. TIELE,**

Doctor of Theology, Professor of the History of Religions in the
University of Leyden.

Translated from the Dutch by **J. ESTLIN CARPENTER, M. A.**

"Few books of its size contain the result of so much wide thinking, able and laborious study, or enable the reader to gain a better bird's-eye view of the latest results of investigations into the religious history of nations. As Professor Tiele modestly says, 'In this little book are outlines—pencil sketches, I might say—nothing more.' But there are some men whose sketches from a thumb-nail are of far more worth than an enormous canvas covered with the crude painting of others, and it is easy to see that these pages, full of information, these sentences, cut and perhaps also dry, short and clear, condense the fruits of long and thorough research."—*Scotsman*.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.—312, with Maps and Plan, cloth, price 14s.

A HISTORY OF BURMA.

Including Burma Proper, Pegu, Taungu, Tenasserim, and Arakan. From the Earliest Time to the End of the First War with British India.

By LIEUT.-GEN. SIR ARTHUR P. PHAYRE, G.C.M.G., K.C.S.I., and C.B.,
Membre Correspondant de la Société Académique Indo-Chinoise
de France.

"Sir Arthur Phayre's contribution to Trübner's Oriental Series supplies a recognised want, and its appearance has been looked forward to for many years. . . . General Phayre deserves great credit for the patience and industry which has resulted in this History of Burma."—*Saturday Review*.

Third Edition. Post 8vo, pp. 276, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

RELIGION IN CHINA.

By JOSEPH EDKINS, D.D., PEKING.

Containing a Brief Account of the Three Religions of the Chinese, with Observations on the Prospects of Christian Conversion amongst that People.

"Dr. Edkins has been most careful in noting the varied and often complex phases of opinion, so as to give an account of considerable value of the subject."—*Scotsman*.

"As a missionary, it has been part of Dr. Edkins' duty to study the existing religions in China, and his long residence in the country has enabled him to acquire an intimate knowledge of them as they at present exist."—*Saturday Review*.

"Dr. Edkins' valuable work, of which this is a second and revised edition, has, from the time that it was published, been the standard authority upon the subject of which it treats."—*Nonconformist*.

"Dr. Edkins . . . may now be fairly regarded as among the first authorities on Chinese religion and language."—*British Quarterly Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. x.—274, cloth, price 9s.

THE LIFE OF THE BUDDHA AND THE EARLY HISTORY OF HIS ORDER.

Derived from Tibetan Works in the Bkah-hgyur and Bstan-hgyur.
Followed by notices on the Early History of Tibet and Khoten.

Translated by W. W. ROCKHILL, Second Secretary U.S. Legation in China.

"The volume bears testimony to the diligence and fullness with which the author has consulted and tested the ancient documents bearing upon his remarkable subject."—*Times*.

"Will be appreciated by those who devote themselves to those Buddhist studies which have of late years taken in these Western regions so remarkable a development. Its matter possesses a special interest as being derived from ancient Tibetan works, some portions of which, here analysed and translated, have not yet attracted the attention of scholars. The volume is rich in ancient stories bearing upon the world's renovation and the origin of castes, as recorded in these venerable authorities."—*Daily News*.

Third Edition. Post 8vo, pp. viii.—464, cloth, price 16s.

THE SANKHYA APHORISMS OF KAPILA,

With Illustrative Extracts from the Commentaries.

Translated by J. R. BALLANTYNE, LL.D., late Principal of the Benares College.

Edited by FITZEDWARD HALL.

"The work displays a vast expenditure of labour and scholarship, for which students of Hindoo philosophy have every reason to be grateful to Dr. Hall and the publishers."—*Columbia Mission*.

TRUBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

In Two Volumes, post 8vo, pp. cviii.-242, and viii.-370, cloth, price 24s.

Dedicated by permission to H.R.H. the Prince of Wales.

BUDDHIST RECORDS OF THE WESTERN WORLD,

Translated from the Chinese of Hiuen Tsiang (A.D. 629).

By SAMUEL BEAL, B.A.,

(Trin. Coll., Camb.); R.N. (Retired Chaplain and N.I.); Professor of Chinese, University College, London; Rector of Wark, Northumberland, &c.

An eminent Indian authority writes respecting this work:—"Nothing more can be done in elucidating the History of India until Mr. Beal's translation of the 'Si-yu-ki' appears."

"It is a strange freak of historical preservation that the best account of the condition of India at that ancient period has come down to us in the books of travel written by the Chinese pilgrims, of whom Hwen Thsang is the best known."—*Times*.

Post 8vo, pp. xlviii.-398, cloth, price 12s.

THE ORDINANCES OF MANU.

Translated from the Sanskrit, with an Introduction.

By the late A. C. BURNELL, Ph.D., C.I.E.

Completed and Edited by E. W. HOPKINS, Ph.D.,
of Columbia College, N. Y.

"This work is full of interest; while for the student of sociology and the science of religion it is full of importance. It is a great boon to get so notable a work in so accessible a form, admirably edited, and competently translated."—*Scotsman*.

"Few men were more competent than Burnell to give us a really good translation of this well-known law book, first rendered into English by Sir William Jones. Burnell was not only an independent Sanskrit scholar, but an experienced lawyer, and he joined to these two important qualifications the rare faculty of being able to express his thoughts in clear and trenchant English. . . . We ought to feel very grateful to Dr. Hopkins for having given us all that could be published of the translation left by Burnell."—F. MAX MÜLLER in the *Academy*.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.-234, cloth, price 9s.

**THE LIFE AND WORKS OF ALEXANDER
CSOMA DE KOROS,**

Between 1819 and 1842. With a Short Notice of all his Published and Unpublished Works and Essays. From Original and for most part Unpublished Documents.

By THEODORE DUKA, M.D., F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Surgeon-Major
H.M.'s Bengal Medical Service, Retired, &c.

"Not too soon have Messrs. Trübner added to their valuable Oriental Series a history of the life and works of one of the most gifted and devoted of Oriental students, Alexander Csoma de Koros. It is forty-three years since his death, and though an account of his career was demanded soon after his decease, it has only now appeared in the important memoir of his compatriot, Dr. Duka."—*Bookeller*.

TRUBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

In Two Volumes, post 8vo, pp. xii.-318 and vi.-312, cloth, price 21s.

**MISCELLANEOUS PAPERS RELATING TO
INDO-CHINA.**

Reprinted from "Dalrymple's Oriental Repertory," "Asiatic Researches,"
and the "Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal."

CONTENTS OF VOL. I.

- I.—Some Accounts of Quedah. By Michael Topping.
II.—Report made to the Chief and Council of Balamangan, by Lieut. James Barton, of his several Surveys.
III.—Substance of a Letter to the Court of Directors from Mr. John Jesse, dated July 20, 1775, at Borneo Proper.
IV.—Formation of the Establishment of Poolo Peenang.
V.—The Gold of Limong. By John Macdonald.
VI.—On Three Natural Productions of Sumatra. By John Macdonald.
VII.—On the Traces of the Hindu Language and Literature extant amongst the Malays. By William Marsden.
VIII.—Some Account of the Elastic Gum Vine of Prince-Wales Island. By James Howison.
IX.—A Botanical Description of *Urceola Elastica*, or Caoutchouc Vine of Sumatra and Pulo-Pinang. By William Roxburgh, M.D.
X.—An Account of the Inhabitants of the Pogygy, or Nassau Islands, lying off Sumatra. By John Crisp.
XI.—Remarks on the Species of Pepper which are found on Prince-Wales Island. By William Hunter, M.D.
XII.—On the Languages and Literature of the Indo-Chinese Nations. By J. Leyden, M.D.
XIII.—Some Account of an Orang-Outang of remarkable height found on the Island of Sumatra. By Clarke Abel, M.D.
XIV.—Observations on the Geological Appearances and General Features of Portions of the Malayan Peninsula. By Captain James Low.
XV.—Short Sketch of the Geology of Pulo-Pinang and the Neighbouring Islands. By T. Ware.
XVI.—Climate of Singapore.
XVII.—Inscription on the Jetty at Singapore.
XVIII.—Extract of a Letter from Colonel J. Low.
XIX.—Inscription at Singapore.
XX.—An Account of Several Inscriptions found in Province Wellesley. By Lieut.-Col. James Low.
XXI.—Note on the Inscriptions from Singapore and Province Wellesley. By J. W. Laidlay.
XXII.—On an Inscription from Keddah. By Lieut.-Col. Low.
XXIII.—A Notice of the Alphabets of the Philippine Islands.
XXIV.—Succinct Review of the Observations of the Tides in the Indian Archipelago.
XXV.—Report on the Tin of the Province of Mergui. By Capt. G. B. Tremenhoe.
XXVI.—Report on the Manganese of Mergui Province. By Capt. G. B. Tremenhoe.
XXVII.—Paragraphs to be added to Capt. G. B. Tremenhoe's Report.
XXVIII.—Second Report on the Tin of Mergui. By Capt. G. B. Tremenhoe.
XXIX.—Analysis of Iron Ores from Tavoy and Mergui, and of Limestone from Mergui. By Dr. A. Ure.
XXX.—Report of a Visit to the Pakchan River, and of some Tin Localities in the Southern Portion of the Tenasserim Provinces. By Capt. G. B. Tremenhoe.
XXXI.—Report on a Route from the Mouth of the Pakchan to Krau, and thence across the Isthmus of Krau to the Gulf of Siam. By Capt. Al. Fraser and Capt. J. G. Forlong.
XXXII.—Report, &c., from Capt. G. B. Tremenhoe on the Price of Mergui Tin Ore.
XXXIII.—Remarks on the Different Species of Orang-utan. By E. Blyth.
XXXIV.—Further Remarks. By E. Blyth.

**MISCELLANEOUS PAPERS RELATING TO INDO-CHINA—
continued.**

CONTENTS OF VOL. II.

XXXV.—Catalogue of Mammalia inhabiting the Malayan Peninsula and Islands.
By Theodore Cantor, M.D.

XXXVI.—On the Local and Relative Geology of Singapore. By J. R. Logan.

XXXVII.—Catalogue of Reptiles inhabiting the Malayan Peninsula and Islands.
By Theodore Cantor, M.D.

XXXVIII.—Some Account of the Botanical Collection brought from the Eastward,
in 1841, by Dr. Cantor. By the late W. Griffith.

XXXIX.—On the Flat-Horned Taurine Cattle of S.E. Asia. By E. Blyth.

XL.—Note, by Major-General G. B. Tremeneere.

General Index.

Index of Vernacular Terms.

Index of Zoological Genera and Sub-Genera occurring in Vol. II.

"The papers treat of almost every aspect of Indo-China—its philology, economy, geography, geology—and constitute a very material and important contribution to our accessible information regarding that country and its people."—*Contemporary Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.-72, cloth, price 5s.

THE SATAKAS OF BHARTRIHARI.

Translated from the Sanskrit

By the Rev. B. HALE WORTHAM, M.R.A.S.,

Rector of Eggesford, North Devon.

"A very interesting addition to Trübner's Oriental Series."—*Saturday Review*.

"Many of the Maxims in the book have a Biblical ring and beauty of expression."
—*St. James' Gazette*.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.-180, cloth, price 6s.

**ANCIENT PROVERBS AND MAXIMS FROM BURMESE
SOURCES ;**

OR, THE NITI LITERATURE OF BURMA.

By JAMES GRAY,

Author of "Elements of Pali Grammar," "Translation of the
Dhammapada," &c.

The Sanscrit-Pali word Niti is equivalent to "conduct" in its abstract, and "guide" in its concrete signification. As applied to books, it is a general term for a treatise which includes maxims, pithy sayings, and didactic stories, intended as a guide to such matters of every-day life as form the character of an individual and influence him in his relations to his fellow-men. Treatises of this kind have been popular in all ages, and have served as a most effective medium of instruction.

TRÜBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Post 8vo, pp. viii. and 346, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

**MANAVA-DHARMA-CASTRA:
THE CODE OF MANU.**

ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXT, WITH CRITICAL NOTES.

By J. JOLLY, Ph.D.,

Professor of Sanskrit in the University of Wurzburg ; late Tagore Professor
of Law in the University of Calcutta.

The date assigned by Sir William Jones to this Code—the well-known Great Law Book of the Hindus—is 1250–500 B.C., although the rules and precepts contained in it had probably existed as tradition for countless ages before. There has been no reliable edition of the Text for Students for many years past, and it is believed, therefore, that Prof. Jolly's work will supply a want long felt.

Post 8vo, pp. xxxii. and 330, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

**MASNAVI I MA' NAVI:
THE SPIRITUAL COUPLETS OF MAULANA JALALU'D-DIN
MUHAMMAD I RUMI.**

Translated and Abridged by E. H. WHINFIELD, M.A.,
Late of H.M. Bengal Civil Service.

Post 8vo, pp. 215, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

LEAVES FROM MY CHINESE SCRAP-BOOK.

By FREDERIC HENRY BALFOUR.

Author of "Waifs and Strays from the Far East," "Taoist Texts,"
"Idiomatic Phrases in the Peking Colloquial," &c. &c.

THE FOLLOWING WORKS ARE IN PREPARATION:—

In Two Vols., post 8vo.

**ALBERUNI'S INDIA:
AN ACCOUNT OF ITS RELIGION, PHILOSOPHY, LITERATURE,
GEOGRAPHY, CHRONOLOGY, ASTRONOMY, CUSTOMS, LAW,
AND ASTROLOGY (ABOUT A.D. 1031).**

TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

With Notes and Indices by Prof. EDWARD SACHAU,
University of Berlin.

* * * The Arabic Original, with an Index of the Sanskrit Words, Edited by
Professor SACHAU, is in the press.

